











# The Wars of Alexander

An Alliterative Romance

re-edited by

Walter W. Skeat

---

EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY

*Extra Series, 47*

1886

*Unaltered Reprint produced with the permission of the  
Early English Text Society*

KRAUS REPRINT CO.  
A U.S. Division of Kraus-Thomson Organization Limited

Printed in Germany

# The Wars of Alexander.

---

Early English Text Society.

Extra Series. No. XLVII. .

1886.

BERLIN :            ASHER & CO., 5, UNTER DEN LINDEN.  
NEW YORK :        C. SCRIBNER & CO.; LEYPOLDT & HOLT.  
PHILADELPHIA : J. B. LIPPINCOTT & CO.

# The Wars of Alexander:

AN

ALLITERATIVE ROMANCE

TRANSLATED CHIEFLY FROM THE

HISTORIA ALEXANDRI MAGNI DE PRELIIS.

RE-EDITED FROM MS. ASHMOLE 44, IN THE BODLEIAN LIBRARY, OXFORD,  
AND MS. D. 4. 12, IN THE LIBRARY OF TRINITY COLLEGE, DUBLIN:

BY THE

REV. WALTER W. SKEAT, Litt.D., LL.D.,

BEKINGTON AND BOSWORTH PROFESSOR OF ANGLO-SAXON,  
AND FELLOW OF CHRIST'S COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE.



LONDON:

PUBLISHED FOR THE EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY,  
BY N. TRÜBNER & CO., 57 & 59, LUDGATE HILL.

MDCCCLXXXVI.

~~725 v~~  
~~22~~  
~~Rev. 2~~  
~~no. 47~~

pl acc no. 37017

Extra Series,  
XLVII.

## CONTENTS.

## INTRODUCTION.

PAGE

- § 1. THE three fragments in alliterative verse of the Romance of Alexander. § 2. Fragments A and B belong to the same version: Fragment C is here printed. § 3. Stevenson's edition of MS. Ashmole 44. § 4. A gap in the story in that MS.; supplied from the Dublin MS. § 5. Plan of the present edition. § 6. Numbering of the lines. § 7. Description of MS. Ashmole 44; discussion of the dialect. § 8. Description of the Dublin MS. D. 4. 12; part 1: Piers the Plowman. § 9. Part 2: Alexander, and other contents. § 10. Dialect of the poem further discussed. § 11. Both MSS. printed in full; results of comparing them. § 12. Method adopted by the translator of the Latin text. § 13. Conjectures as to the date and dialect of the present version. The Glossarial Index ... .. ix

## THE WARS OF ALEXANDER.

- PASSUS I. Introduction. Anectanabus, king of Egypt, is master of astronomy and magic. Egypt is invaded by Artaxerxes. By making ships of wax, Anectanabus discovers that his fleet is being defeated. He disguises himself, and flees to Macedonia. The god Serapis prophesies the future defeat of the Persians. The Egyptians raise to Anectanabus an image of black stone ... 1
- PASSUS II. During the absence of Philip, Anectanabus visits queen Olympias, and tells her that the god Ammon will appear to her in a dream. Anectanabus visits Olympias by night in the form of a dragon. He causes Philip to see in a dream his queen embraced by Ammon. A seer tells Philip that the queen's child will conquer the world. He returns to Macedon, where Anectanabus appears in a dragon's form at a feast. Omen of the bird who laid an egg in Philip's lap ... .. 7
- PASSUS III. Prodigious at the birth of Alexander. His appearance described. His youth, how passed. Anectanabus predicts his own death at the hands of his own son. The prediction is accomplished when Alexander causes his death by drowning. Olympias mourns over the fate of Anectanabus ... .. 17
- PASSUS IV. A wild carnivorous horse is brought to Philip. Alexander tames him, and sets out on his first expedition against Nicholas, king of Peloponnesus. Nicholas insults Alexander, who slays him, and returns home. Philip takes a second wife, named Cleopatra. Alexander interferes, and Philip is reconciled to Olympias ... .. 27
- PASSUS V. Darius demands tribute from Philip, which Alexander refuses. Pausanias rebels against Philip, and wounds him mortally. Alexander appears, slays Pausanias, and buries Philip.

Accession of Alexander, who addresses his army, and chooses old and experienced soldiers to accompany him. He conquers Chalcædon, Italy, and Africa. He shoots a huge hart, and offers sacrifice to Ammon. He sees Serapis in a dream, who prophesies that he will be invincible. He builds Alexandria	42
PASSUS VI. Alexander finds the black image of his father Anectanabus. He attacks Tyre, but meets with a stout resistance. The bishop of Jerusalem refuses him aid. The 'foray of Gaders,' <sup>1</sup> Deeds of Meleager and Sampson. Balaan of Tyre destroys Alexander's siege-works. Alexander renews them, assaults and takes Tyre, and kills Balaan	58
PASSUS VII. Alexander approaches Jerusalem. Jaudas the bishop, and the inhabitants, receive him with great honour. Alexander kneels to God, and visits Solomon's temple. The prophecy of Daniel. Alexander grants Jaudas a boon. Darius scornfully sends Alexander three playthings	78
PASSUS VIII. Darius sends Alexander an insulting letter. Alexander likens him to a yelping cur that cannot bite, and sends him a defiant letter in return. Darius says Alexander wants a whipping, and again reproves him. The token of the glove full of seeds. Olympias falls ill, and Alexander determines to return to her	96
PASSUS IX. Alexander sends Darius a purse full of pepper. He defeats Amonta in a three-days' battle, who flees to Darius. Alexander goes to Sicily and Phrygia, and praises Homer. Returning to Macedonia, he finds his mother healed. He sets out for Persia, takes Abandra, comes to the Water of Winter, and advances to Thebes, which is taken and burnt. The oracle as to its rebuilding. Clytomachus fulfils it, and rebuilds the city	114
PASSUS X. Alexander sends a summons to Athens. Æschylus counsels the Athenians to resist him, but Demosthenes persuades them to submit. Alexander forgives the Athenians. The Spartans resist him, but in vain. Darius is alarmed. Alexander's parable of the wolf and the sheep. He is healed of a fever by Philip the physician. He crosses the Euphrates, destroying the bridges behind him	132
PASSUS XI. Darius collects an army. Great battle. A Persian wounds Alexander, who pardons him. Darius flees. Alexander seizes Darius' treasure, wife, and children. Darius writes to Alexander, warning him against over-confidence. Alexander replies. Porus is unable to help Darius. Rodogars, mother of Darius, advises him to submit. Lament of Darius	152
PASSUS XII. Alexander goes to Susa, and bids his men cut branches and carry them. Ammon tells Alexander to visit the camp of Darius. He crosses the river Granton alone, visits the hostile camp, and abstracts three gold cups from the tables. Anepo recognises him, and gives the alarm. He seizes a torch, mounts his horse, and flees, crossing the Granton on the ice, and escaping safely	166

<sup>1</sup> 'Gadres,' says M. Paul Meyer, 'is Gaza;' not Kedesb, as conjectured in the note to l. 1193.



PASSUS XIII. Decisive battle of the Granton (Granicus). Defeat and flight of Darius. He writes to Alexander, who bids him submit. The Greeks find the tomb of Ninus, and free some Persian prisoners. Darius sends to Porus for help. Two knights lay a plot against Darius; they attack him, and he falls	... 178
PASSUS XIV. Alexander comes to Susa, and finds Darius wounded. He laments over him. Their last conversation. Death of Darius, and accession of Alexander to the throne of Persia. Description of the throne of Darius. Proclamation by Alexander. He beheads the murderers of Darius, and weds Roxana	... 190
PASSUS XV. Porus defies Alexander, who returns the defiance. Porus assembles a great army, with unicorns, elephants, and scythed chariots. Alexander frightens the elephants by a stratagem. Porus takes to flight	... 206
PASSUS XVI. Alexander discovers the great wealth of India. Letter to him from the queen of the Amazons, and his reply. He makes a treaty with them	... 212
PASSUS XVII. Porus raises another army. Want of water. A knight offers water to Alexander, which he pours on the ground. The army comes to a castle in a river. It is assailed by scorpions, snakes, dragons, lions, boars, savages, mice, bats, and red birds. They advance to Bactria, and the country of the Seres. Single combat between Alexander and the gigantic Porus, who is slain	216
PASSUS XVIII. Alexander comes to the isle of Gymnosophists, who ask him for immortality, which he cannot give them. He comes to a dark desert, a hot river, and a dried lake. A monster slain. Elephants, bearded women, amphibious people, and rhinoceroses. Great storm of four winds. A cold valley, with sparks of fire. They arrive at the Ganges. Letter of Alexander to Dindimus the Brahman, with the parable of the lighted torch. Reply of Dindimus	... 223
PASSUS XIX. Reply of Dindimus continued. Description of the life of the Brahmans. Their moderation, contentment, abstinence, truthfulness, love of peace, life in caves, and dislike of play	... 231
PASSUS XX. The same continued. Dindimus accuses the Greeks, and condemns the stories concerning the Grecian gods, and their vain worship. The Greeks have as many gods as they have limbs, and each god presides over a limb. Dindimus threatens the Greeks with future torment	... 235
PASSUS XXI. Alexander reproves Dindimus, and accuses the Brahmans, whom he condemns as miserable and foolish. Dindimus replies, declaring that the Brahmans wisely despise gold and riches. Alexander replies, and calls them wretched prisoners. He rears a pillar of marble, to mark the end of his march	... 241
PASSUS XXII. Alexander and his host leave the Ganges. They come to a wood full of giants, who are slain by them. An uncouth monster appears, and is caught and burnt. Alexander comes to the trees which wax and wane in a day. He and his host climb a huge mountain, and are attacked by dragons, dromedaries, and snakes. They are nine days in a dark valley. They encounter a basilisk, which Alexander destroys by a	

	PAGE
stratagem. Alexander ascends a cliff covered with diamonds, and arrives at the house of the Sun ... ..	245
PASSUS XXIII. Alexander finds in the temple a god reclining on a bed, who asks him if he wishes to learn his fate from the trees of the Sun and Moon. He replies in the affirmative, and, with two companions, is guided through a wood to a tree bare of leaves, on which sits a phoenix. The Sun-tree is like gold; the Moon-tree like silver. The Sun-tree prophesies that Alexander will not return home. The Moon-tree tells him he will die in twenty months. He bewails his fate, and returns to his host. He erects two pillars of marble ... ..	251
PASSUS XXIV. He comes to the Precious Land, wherein dwells queen Candace, who sends him presents. The wife of her son Candoil is stolen by the king of Bebrik. Candoil goes to Alexander for help, and is received by Ptolemy, who has been commanded to personate Alexander, who is himself disguised as Antiochus. The pretended 'Antiochus' rescues Candoil's wife, and goes with Candoil to visit Candace, who receives him with favour ... ..	257
PASSUS XXV. Candace calls Alexander by his true name, and tells him he is in the power of a woman. Rage of Alexander, who is pacified by Candace. Caratros, another son of Candace, says he must have Alexander's life. Candoil interferes, and the brothers quarrel. Alexander pacifies them, and all are reconciled. Candace dismisses Alexander. He consults an oracle, and asks Serapis to say by whose hand he will die. Serapis will not tell him. Alexander and his host come to the valley of crowned snakes, who kill some of his men. He mounts Bucephalus, and has a great fight with griffins. The host cross the river of reeds in barges. Account of a strange kind of sirens ...	264
PASSUS XXVI. Alexander encloses twenty-two kings, including Gog and Magog, within a mountain. He comes to the ocean at the end of the world, turns westward, and reaches the Red Sea. He ascends into the air in an iron car raised by four griffins. He descends into the sea in an air-tight glass vessel. The host encounter various strange beasts. Death of Bucephalus, who is buried in a costly tomb. Appearance of strange white birds. Alexander conquers Babylon. He writes home to his mother and Aristotle ... ..	270
PASSUS XXVII. Description of the great throne in Babylon, inscribed with the names of all the countries conquered by Alexander. [ <i>End of the poem</i> ] ... ..	275
THE STORY CONTINUED. Epitome of the remainder of the story, taken from the <i>Historia de Prelis</i> ... ..	276
THE STORY OF ALEXANDER: A prose fragment from MS. Dublin D. 4. 12 ... ..	279
NOTES ... ..	285
Notes on the "Story of Alexander" ... ..	317
Glossarial Index, and Index of Names ... ..	319

## INTRODUCTION.

§ 1. OF the various Middle-English prose and verse translations of the Romance of Alexander the Great, only those which are in alliterative verse will be here discussed. As to these, I have already explained, in my Preface to "Alexander and Dindimus," that there are *three* such poems, all fragmentary, which I denote by the letters A, B, and C. These poems are as follows :

**A.** A fragment preserved in MS. Greaves 60, in the Bodleian Library, beginning—"Yee þat lengen in londe · Lordes and ooper." This was edited by me for the E. E. T. S. in 1867, being printed in the same volume with William of Palerne, pp. 177—218. It has never been printed elsewhere.

**B.** A fragment preserved in MS. Bodley 264, beginning—"Whan þis weith at his wil · weduring hadde." This was edited by Mr. Stevenson for the Roxburghe Club in 1849, and re-edited by me, with numerous corrections, &c., for the E. E. T. S. in 1878, with the title "Alexander and Dindimus."

**C.** A fragment preserved in MS. Ashmole 44, in the Bodleian Library, of which a portion is also found in MS. Dublin D. 4. 12. It begins—"When folk ere festid & fed · fayn wald þai here," and was also printed in 1849 by Mr. Stevenson, and in the same volume as the last, but from the Ashmole MS. only, without any consultation of the Dublin MS. This fragment C is the one which is re-edited in the present volume, and to which, for the sake of distinction, I have given the title of "The Wars of Alexander," because it follows the Latin text entitled "*Historia Alexandri Magni regis Macedonie de preliis*" more closely than either A or B does.

§ 2. With respect to fragments A and B, I must refer the reader to the Preface to "Alexander and Dindimus" for further information. It is sufficient to say here that Dr. Trautmann has shewn, from

internal evidence, that these two fragments are by the same author, and belong to a poem which, when complete, must have been of very great length. Fragment C, here edited, is wholly independent of these, in the sense that it was written by a different translator. Whatever it has in common with them is due to their common source. Accordingly, the remarks below refer to fragment C exclusively.

§ 3. Of the two MSS. containing this fragment C, viz. MSS. Ashmole 44, and Dublin D. 4. 12—which will henceforth be called simply the Ashmole and Dublin MSS.—the former is the more important, partly because it contains a much larger portion of the story, and partly because it is more correctly written. It was printed by Mr. Stevenson in full, and has thus become known, being frequently cited by Dr. Morris and other writers, whilst it has also been made use of by Mätzner and Stratmann in their Middle-English Dictionaries. Mr. Stevenson's text (like that of his edition of fragment B) is by no means free from faults, and was doubtless printed from an imperfect transcript, without due collation of the proof-sheets with the MS. itself.<sup>1</sup> Thus in l. 15, he prints "forwart" for "forwith," and "ettitlis" for "ettillis," though the latter word is rightly given in the Glossary. In l. 16, he has "o3efullest" for "a3efullest," and so on. In some cases the errors are still more serious; as in l. 70, where "it semyd" is turned into "or myd," and in l. 417, where "sweuyn" appears as "sodeyn." Nevertheless, the transcription was, in general, well made, and a little more caution would have given us a faithful text throughout, excepting in such minute particulars as the use of þ for *th*, & for *and*, and the mode of expressing contractions. The chief defects of the edition, after all, are due to the fact that the Dublin MS. was not consulted. Mr. Stevenson does, indeed, mention it, but says that he only knew of it through the kindness of Sir F. Madden, who had made a note that it commenced with l. 678 of the Ashmole text, and ended with l. 3426.<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Such a collation would have detected the omission of two whole lines in the transcript, viz. 4002\* and 4733.

<sup>2</sup> L. 3425 of the present edition. As it is always my endeavour to keep to old numberings of lines, for the sake of reference, I must explain how this

§ 4. It is surprising to find that Mr. Stevenson edited the Ashmole text without ever discovering that there is a great gap in the story. He prints l. 723, which is the first line on leaf 13 of the Ashmole MS. (as now numbered), as if it immediately followed l. 722, which is the last line on the back of fol. 12. Yet l. 722 forms a part of a speech of Anectanabus, and l. 723 a part of a speech of Alexander; and, according to the Ashmole MS., Anectanabus drops out of the romance in the middle of uttering a sentence, and is no more heard of, whilst a king of Peloponnesus, by name Sir Nicholas, jumps into the story without any introduction, and is at once found in the midst of an angry parley with Alexander. A moderate attention to the progress of the story shews us at once, that the Ashmole MS. must, at this point, have lost one or more leaves, and we now know that it has, in fact, lost just *two* leaves, or 122 lines. The discovery of the precise state of the case was made by Mr. Hessels in 1874, after a careful examination of the Dublin MS., and comparison of it with Stevenson's edition. He found that the very passage required to fill up the gap occurs in full in that MS., which, notwithstanding its incompleteness at the beginning and end, supplies this very material contribution to the continuity of the story. Even now, the conclusion of the Romance is wanting, since the Ashmole MS. has lost a few leaves at the end also. After making this discovery, Mr. Hessels made a transcript of the entire MS., and kindly consented to assist me in editing the Romance. Owing to pressure of other work, he resigned to me the preparation of the Notes and Glossary, and expressed the wish that my name alone should appear upon the title-page; but so much of the work was done by us jointly, that it is best to describe more fully the method of editing adopted by us.

§ 5. In the first place, a collation of Stevenson's edition with the Ashmole MS. was made by Mr. George Parker; and, as that edition was printed without any punctuation, the punctuation was

difference arose. It was because it escaped my notice that l. 3028 in Stevenson is immediately followed by l. 3030; so that, after following his numbering for more than 3000 lines, I was thus, to my regret, thrown out. There are other slight differences further on, as explained at p. xiii, but the difference in the numbering never amounts to more than *one* line.

added by myself. Meanwhile, the Dublin MS. was transcribed by Mr. Hessels, and both texts, thus prepared, were sent to press, and printed in full. In general, the Ashmole text occupies the left-hand page, and the Dublin text the right-hand page; but, throughout the first 21 pages and the last 71 pages, the Ashmole text occupies *both* pages, to save space. The word *Ashmole* or *Dublin* is printed at the top of every page, to prevent ambiguity. The gap in the Ashmole MS. is shewn by leaving a part of pp. 24 and 32 blank, as well as an entire blank on pp. 26, 28, and 30; and further on, a gap in the Dublin MS. is similarly shewn by leaving blank a part of pp. 197 and 201, and a blank on p. 199. Considering that the exact reproduction of the MSS. is, after all, the chief duty of editors, Mr. Hessels and myself have paid very close attention to this point. The proof-sheets were carefully compared with *both* MSS. by *both* of us separately, and we venture to think that the texts are faithfully reproduced in the minutest particular. Every tag and curl has been carefully watched, and notice is given in the foot-notes whenever a word is miswritten, or corrected, or supplied in the margin. The head-lines, side-notes, and Notes were prepared by me, and I accept the responsibility for them, but they have had the great advantage of revision by Mr. Hessels. As regards the Glossary, the shape in which it now appears is due to myself; but it was chiefly prepared by Miss Wilkinson, who has kindly assisted me on other occasions (particularly in the glossaries to my selections from Chaucer), and was much augmented by Mr. Hessels, who added to it numerous words and forms, chiefly from the Dublin MS., and also underwent the great labour of verifying all the references, which will, we believe, be found to be correct throughout. The preparation of this Glossarial Index has occupied a long time, and has delayed the appearance of the edition for some years; but, now that Dr. Murray's Dictionary is passing through the press, it seemed highly desirable to make the references as full as possible.<sup>1</sup> We also owe to Mr. Hessels the transcript of the very brief prose "Story of Alexander," which is

<sup>1</sup> Mr. Stevenson's Glossary, consisting of 12 pages, is rather a poor performance, and contains several false forms. Having, for example, printed "forwart" for "forwith" in l. 15, his Glossary has "*Fornwart*, to promise."

here printed for the first time, from the Dublin MS., at pp. 279—283.

§ 6. One great defect, in nearly all copies of poems in alliterative metre, is caused by the liability of the scribe to lose his place, and to miss one or more lines here and there. The Ashmole MS. is the more carefully written of the two, but (in addition to the gap contained in the lines numbered 733\* to 844\*), it misses ten other lines. In order to avoid much deviation from Stevenson's numbering of the lines, these extra lines are here denoted by asterisks, and are called respectively, lines 1633\*, 1766\*, 1767\*, 2168\*, 2538\*, 2724\*, 2842\*, 2980\*, 3167\*, and 3267\*. The Dublin MS. (in addition to the gap caused by the loss of leaf 40, ll. 3296—3356) has lost 30 lines, viz. 911, 1227, 1333, 1334, 1745, 1749, 1804, 1822, 1874—7, 2012, 2120—5, 2143, 2317, 2318, 2328, 2373, 2380, 2386, 2440, 2519, 2721, and 2808. Unfortunately, I did not discover, till too late, that Stevenson's printer missed counting a line after l. 3028, so that from that point to l. 4733, the number of each line in this edition is one less than in his. Here Stevenson misses a line which I have supplied,<sup>1</sup> thus bringing the numbering right. Unluckily, his printer again missed counting a line after l. 4933, so that from this point to the end the number of each line in this edition is again one less than in his. My last line (5677) is the one formerly called 5678.<sup>2</sup> This will not give much trouble to readers who refer to this volume for words mentioned by Mätzner and Stratmann, but it is best to explain how the difference arose. An old numbering, even if faulty, should be adhered to, where possible, for the sake of convenience of reference. I shall describe the MSS. more particularly.

§ 7. Respecting the Ashmole MS. 44, there is not much to be said. Nothing is known of its history previously to its acquisition by Ashmole. Mr. Stevenson dates it, no doubt correctly, at "the middle of the fifteenth century," and says that "it is on paper, written by a hand coarse, rough, and irregular, without any attempt at neatness, and without much regard to accuracy. The errors into which the scribe has fallen seem to indicate, in some instances, that

<sup>1</sup> Stevenson also misses a line after l. 4002, but I have called it l. 4002\*.

<sup>2</sup> See also note 1 on p. 56, explaining why Stevenson's l. 1098 disappears.



he was unable to read correctly the copy which he had before him, while others would appear to shew that he wrote from dictation." I have not observed any passages of the latter kind; and I think that the above description, though fairly indicating the general condition of the MS., errs somewhat on the side of severity. I should say that the scribe aimed at being both neat and regular, though his success in attaining to these is not of the highest order. Still it is a tolerably good MS., and I have seen many that are worse. No doubt it abounds with singular errors, but the number of these has been needlessly augmented in the former edition, as if it were the editor who, in just a few instances, "was unable to read correctly the copy which he had before him;"<sup>1</sup> though the general carefulness and correctness of that edition may be admitted. The MS. contains at present 97 leaves, wholly occupied with the Romance, and is imperfect at the end. Each leaf contains about 60 lines, sometimes more, and sometimes less; and we thus see that two leaves are missing after leaf 12, since the missing portion amounts to 122 lines; but the following leaf is numbered 13, as the gap in the MS. seems never to have been noticed. The MS. gives us no further information of any kind, so that we are entirely thrown back upon internal evidence. We may perhaps date it about 1450, as already suggested, and I think we may also say that it was probably written in the north of England. With reference to this question of locality, Mr. Stevenson ventures to "hazard the conjecture that this romance was written in one of the north-eastern counties of the midland division of England, some district in which the Anglian dialect had originally prevailed, untinged, however, by those peculiarities of vocabulary and construction which characterize the language of ancient Northumbria." I would venture to say, on the contrary, that the Northumbrian character of the dialect is very strongly marked. If we apply, for instance, such dialectal tests as are given in the Introduction to Morris and Skeat's Specimens of

<sup>1</sup> Examples: "forwart" for "forwith," 15; "sodeyn" for "sweuyn," 417; "Anec" for "anes," 478; "Anec analey" (*sic*) for "Anecanabus," scribal error for "Anectanabus," 487; "sey hevyn" for "seuyn heuyns," 1528; "to within" omitted, 1634; "odde" for "ald," 2176; "twine" for "turne," 2276; "chose" for "tholid," 2329; "herde" for "parde," 2707.



English, Part II., we easily find, in the Ashmole text, all the marks of the Northumbrian dialect. It may suffice to instance the use of the suffix *-is* in the first person singular of the indicative mood, as in *I ettilis* (15); the use of *-id* or *-yd* for all persons of the preterite indicative of weak verbs, as *I neuenyd* (76), *he hauntid* (16), *þai lerid* (36); the frequent<sup>1</sup> loss of *e* in the infinitive mood or the gerund, as in *rehers* (21), *to knaw* (54), *flay* (110); the use of *sall* for *shall* (21), and of *suld* for *sholde* (100); present participles in *-and*, as *feztand* (91), *comand*, *keruand* (63); the omission of *i-* or *y-* as a prefix to past participles, as in *fourmed* (3); the preservation of the final *-en* or *-yn* of past participles of strong verbs, as in *comyn* (85), *coruen* (129); the use of *þir* for *these* (262); the use of *scho* for *she* (267); the use of *thai*, *thair*, and *thaim* (very common); the use of *hethen* for *hence* (see Glossary); *fra* for *from* (139); *at* for *that* (161); &c. But it will be convenient to defer any further discussion of the dialect till after the Dublin MS. has been described.

§ 8. The Dublin MS. D. 4. 12 contains not only a portion of Alexander, but also part of a copy of the A-text of Piers the Plowman, and has already been partially described in a foot-note to my edition of Piers Plowman (E. E. T. S.), part ii. p. vi; and again, in my Notes to P. Plowman, p. 836. But I take the present opportunity of giving a more minute account of it. It is a paper MS., the size of each page being about 8 $\frac{3}{4}$  inches by 5 $\frac{3}{4}$ , and each page containing about 30 lines or rather more. The first 26 leaves contain an imperfect copy of the A-text of Piers Plowman, the contents of which have been turned by the scribe into a Northumbrian dialect. This copy shews a close connection with the curious copy in the library of University College, Oxford, denoted in my collation of the A-text by the letter U, as the following selected readings from it will shew.

PROLOGUE, l. 1. *whon—sonne*] as I south went. 2. *into*] in. *A—were*] as I a scheepe were. 4. *Wende—wydene*] I went wide. 9. *leonede*] lened me. 14. *imaket*] entyred (*sic*). 32. *hit—to*] it is sene in.

<sup>1</sup> The scribes often write an idle final *e* where it was not meant to be sounded; this is common, for example, in the MSS. of Barbour's Bruce.

After l. 54 of the Prologue it inserts 4 lines, though they do not occur in U. These are :—

Persons with þair *procurases* <sup>1</sup>*permutyn* þair *chirches*,<sup>1</sup>  
With al þe bysynes of þair body þe better to haue.  
Vicars on fele halue fandyn þam to done,  
Lede[r]es þai ben of lovedays & with þe lawe mellyth.

The two last lines occur also in MS. Rawlinson Poet. 137, which contains an A-text of P. Plowman of the same character.

After l. 83 of the Prologue there are two more extra lines, also not found in MS. U. These are :—

þan come þer a king knyghtis hym led,  
Conciens & þe king into þe halle went.

The former of these agrees with B. prol. 112.

After l. 95 of the Prologue we find another insertion of 10 lines, also not in MS. U; they resemble B. prol. 92—99, C. i. 90—94, and are as follows :—

Sum *seruis* þe kyng & hys syluer tellis  
Of wardis & of wardmutis of wayues & straves.  
Some sittis as synescallis & *seruis* other lordez,  
And syttis þer apon þair acounte þe pure to distroy,  
And haldis courtis in Cuntree like men of law,  
For to take vntrewly ayains conscience.  
Ye suffre your *parochyng*[s] spyl & paire for euir,  
Holy kyrke ye distroy & þat is gret rewth,  
þe *serue* god vn-dwelly (*sic*) it is dred at þe last  
þat crist in hys consistory of þow wol curse mony.

Line 100 of the Prologue runs thus :—

Talyours & tynkelers & tollers both.

In Passus I, the following remarkable readings are worthy of notice.

Instead of ll. 39 and 40, we find—

To shend þi sory saule be war with þair wyles.  
For l. 93—And ryde rapely to rensake þe realmes abowte.  
For l. 137—And in plente of pes *preche* þou it ofte.

The difficult word *a-liri* (A. vii. 115) appears as *of-lery*, shewing the nature of the compound. On fol. 6 of the MS. we find that Pass. i. 184 is immediately followed by Pass. vii. 71, thus shewing

<sup>1-1</sup> Not '*prouianses*' and '*cherches*,' as printed in Pref. to Text B, p. vi, note.

a transposition of the subject-matter closely resembling that in MS. U (see Pref. to text A. p. xx). On the back of fol. 8 is another transposition, where A. vii. 216 is immediately followed by A. i. 182 (over again), whence the text is continuous down to A. vii. 45. Thus A. i. 182-4 occurs twice over, and the order of the subject-matter is: A. prol. 1—i. 184; vii. 71—216; i. 182—vii. 45. On fol. 13 occurs the passage printed in the Notes to P. Plowman, p. 836. The text ceases at A. vii. 45, at the bottom of the back of leaf 26, the rest of the poem having been lost before it was bound up with the Alexander Romance, which has lost (probably) eleven leaves<sup>1</sup> at the beginning.

§ 9. With the Alexander Romance, the numbering of the folios recommences. Fol. 1 begins with l. 678 of the poem (see p. 23); and, most fortunately, just 45 lines *before* the gap of two leaves occurs in the other MS. It thus supplies the missing passage in lines 723\*—844\* (see pp. 25, 27, 29, 31, 33), and goes on without a break to the end of leaf 39 (l. 3295, p. 197). Here leaf 40 is lost, as shown by the blanks on pp. 197, 199, and 201 (lines 3296—3356). Leaf 41 is the last of the poem; at the end of which the poem comes to a sudden stop (l. 3425, p. 205), the rest having been torn away before the MS. was last bound up. It may here be remarked that the scribe is even more careless than the scribe of the Ashmole MS., and repeatedly misses lines, viz. 911, 1227, 1333, 1334, 1745, 1749, 1804, 1822, 1874-7, 2012, 2120-5, 2143, 2317-8, 2328, 2373, 2380, 2386, 2440, 2519, 2721, and 2808. Leaf 42 is bound in upside down, and has some names and numbers written upon it, evidently part of some accounts. Among the names mentioned are:—T. Hagirston, Ric. Hagirston, *Magister* Holborn, Ric. Barow, Joh. Watson de goswyk, *Willelmus sanderson de bukton*, Joh. haß de bolsden, . . de ancroft, . . de morpet. These obviously allude to a cluster of places lying in that northern extremity of the county of Northumberland, which is so oddly considered as forming a part of the county of Durham. In Pigot's County Atlas (1831) I here find *Haggerston*, *Goswick*, *Buckton*, and *Ancroft*, and (within Northum-

<sup>1</sup> The first 11 extant leaves contain 680 lines. The number of lines lost at the beginning is about 677.

berland proper) *Bosedon*, now Bowsden, *Howburn*, and much further south the well-known town of Morpeth. We are thus enabled to connect the MS., beyond any doubt, with the county of Northumberland.

On leaf 43 are various scribblings, amongst which occurs "Deletur de libro viuentium," which is quoted from P. Plowman, A. vii. 68, but does not occur in the body of the MS.; also—"Omnibus omnia non mea sompnia dicere possum"—"Explicit liber Amen quod Cuthbertus Emeryson (?)"—and other trivial remarks. On the back of leaf 43 is a tale in Latin, beginning—" [Nar]racio. Legitur in vita beati remegii quod quidem miles anglicus valde probus & in actibus nimis [MS. nimus] strenu[u]s ad diversa regna vadens propter acta militaria exercenda & in omnibus locis sive ubique locorum se viriliter gerens & victoriam optinens & triumphans demum Tediit laboris & reuersus est vt repatriaret ad propria propter (?) probitatem suam in sua patria enotescendam." And then the story goes on to tell how this invincible English soldier, riding through a forest, lost his way, wandered about for two days, being half famished, and finally met a dwarf a cubit high, who demanded who he was. On describing himself as an invincible but starving English soldier, the dwarf took him to a hall and his horse to a stable, and provided for the wants of both. Before parting, the dwarf addressed him, saying, "As you claim to be invincible, you must now fight me or one still smaller than me;" whereupon the soldier consented to wrestle, and was thrown prostrate on the earth. And so the story ends, being nearly illegible near its conclusion.

Leaf 44 merely contains four words<sup>1</sup> scribbled to try the pen, but in the same hand as that which wrote out the Romance. The back of the leaf is blank.

Leaf 45 is blank on the front, but on the back begins the short prose story printed at pp. 279—283. This occupies the rest of leaf 45, the whole of leaf 46, and the front of leaf 47. On the back of leaf 47 are three lines of music and some scribbling; and here the MS. ends.

<sup>1</sup> They begin with ornamental initials, and are merely long words in alphabetical order, viz. Annunciauerunt. Beneuolencia. Circumdederunt; and an illegible word beginning with D.

On a fly-leaf at the beginning are some accounts scribbled in Latin, which commence thus :—"Ludus specialis tentus apud Petyngton vndesimo die mensis septembris per (?) Magistrum Toma[m] castell priorem, R. Heryngton existente seneschallo anno domini Milesimo quingentesimo tercio," &c. This is interesting as containing an allusion to a play held at "Petyngton," which may be the modern Pittington, at no great distance from Durham, where there is now a railway station; and as giving us the date 1503. This again associates the MS. with the North of England, and leads us to suppose that the main part of the MS. was written, as would also otherwise appear, towards the close of the fifteenth century.

§ 10. The Dublin MS., like the other, shews decided marks of a Northumbrian dialect, as seen in the use of *sall* (688), of the pres. part. in *-and*, as *syl-and* (698), of *-es* in the pres. pl. indic., as *draw-es* (706), of *-yn* in the pp. of strong verbs, as *knaw-yn* (719); &c. But the remarks prefixed to Dr. Morris's second edition (1869) of the Early English Alliterative Poems warn us how extremely difficult it is to separate the pure Northumbrian dialect from the Midland dialect, where it borders upon the Northumbrian; for the latter is often marked by the use of Northumbrian forms. We have, first of all, to consider which of the MSS. probably gives the dialect more correctly; and here I have very little hesitation in at once preferring the Ashmole MS., which ought certainly to be most considered as being at once the older, more correct, and more consistent MS. of the two. If we compare, e. g., lines 678—722 (pp. 22—25), we find that the Ashmole MS. steadily keeps to the Northumbrian forms where the Dublin MS. varies from them. Examples are :<sup>1</sup> *A. wald*, D. *wold* (690); *A. fra*, D. *from* (694); *A. waytis*, D. *watyn* (700); *A. mon*, D. *must* (707); *A. slike*, D. *suche* (711). And a further collation of parallel passages will amply confirm these results. We even find, though rarely, in MS. A. such a clear mark of the Northumbrian dialect as the use of *at* for *to* to denote the gerund; as in *at grete*, i. e. to weep (872), *at drede*, to dread (4294). It would take a prolonged examination to enable me to speak decisively on

<sup>1</sup> I here (and below) denote the Ashmole MS. by "A.," and the Dublin MS. by "D."

this point; but I am inclined to think that the translation of the Alexander Romance here printed was originally made in a pure Northumbrian dialect, in some county lying between the Humber and the Tweed; and I think it will be found to exhibit this dialect in a purer form than any other unrimed alliterative poem now extant,<sup>1</sup> with the obvious exception of such as are in Lowland Scotch, viz. Dunbar's poem of the Twa Maryit Women and the Wedo, and the Prophecies in MS. Kk. 1. 5 in the University Library, printed in Bernardus de Cura rei familiaris, ed. Lumby, 1870 (E. E. T. S.).

§ 11. The method here adopted, of printing the two MSS. side by side, as far as they go, not only gives fuller information than could be shewn by a mere collation, but dispenses with a great deal of explanation and emendation. It will be found, repeatedly, that one MS. corrects the other; and the reader should compare them for himself. It is sufficient to point out a few obvious instances; there are other instances which require more thought, and some where the right reading is doubtful.

In D. 681, the alliteration fails; the line is corrupt, but is given correctly in A. The contrary takes place in l. 684. In l. 687, A. misses the necessary word *is*, which we have supplied. In A. 689, the spelling *werid* is due to the trilling of the *r*; the word meant is *werd*, i. e. weird, fate. In 692, D. misses *me*, supplied from A.; on the other hand, the reading *gane* in A. is false, as shown by the failure of alliteration; we must read *done*. In D. 710, read *byhynde* for *bylyue*. In 711, the reading *hym* (D.) is better than *he* (A.). The latter half of 714 is right in D., but wrong in A. In A. 717, we may read either *angirly* or *augirly*; but the latter is intended, as shewn by the spelling *awgardly* in D., and by comparing all the other passages; see *Augard*, *Augird*, and *Augirly* in the Glossary. We find, however, *angirly* elsewhere; see *Angrile* in the same. It is needless to multiply instances, as the comparison can so easily be made. It is also worth while to add here, that further help is sometimes to be obtained by consulting the *other* alliterative translations

<sup>1</sup> The Troy-book, as we have it, is West-Midland (pref. p. lv); so are the Alliterative Poems edited by Morris. The Morte Arthure abounds with Midland forms.

of the Romance, viz. fragment A (printed with William of Palerne) and fragment C (printed as Alexander and Dindimus). Of these, the former illustrates ll. 23—803\*, and the latter ll. 4019—4714; as noted at p. 285. For further examples of this, see the Notes.

§ 12. We come now to consider how the translator has performed his task. He has given us but little of his own, the chief original passage being the first 22 lines, which are introductory. He has also divided his work into Passus, by way of affording intervals of rest, and sometimes adds a few lines of his own at the beginnings and ends of these, such as ll. 212, 213, 214, 523, 524, &c. At such points, we may particularly observe that he uses such expressions as *þe text me recordis* (214); *as says me the text* (741\*, p. 27); *as þe buke sais* (881); *For all þe first [part] is in fittis* (3473). The most explicit passage is the following (ll. 3472-3):—

“*þe lattir ende of his lyfe · me list ȝow to tell.*  
*For all þe first is in fittis · & folowand the lettir.*”

Here he expressly tells us that he has already arranged the preceding part of the work in Passus, and that it was “following the letter,” i. e. a more or less literal translation from the “text” which was before him. It does not appear that he has adopted any single text exclusively, but the main part of the narrative follows, with tolerable fidelity, the Latin text known as the “*Historia de Preliis*.” Of this work, I fortunately possess an excellent black-letter copy, printed at Strassburg in 1489,<sup>1</sup> which has been of great help and service in making out the true sense of several passages. In order to shew how the translator has treated his original, I have quoted the whole of the first Chapter of this work in the note to l. 13, on p. 285. It answers precisely to the translator’s *Primus Passus*, ll. 23—211; lines 1—22 and 212, 213 being obviously additions to it. I have also, in the note to l. 722, quoted the whole of the Latin text answering to the two missing leaves in the Ashmole MS. But, in general, each *Passus* of the English version contains several chapters of the Latin text; thus *Passus Secundus* is equivalent to the second,

<sup>1</sup> In my Notes to Alexander, fragment A (printed with William of Palerne) and fragment B (Alexander and Dindimus), I have quoted a copy in the University Library, printed in 1490.



third, fourth, and fifth chapters of the Latin, and ends at the same point as the fifth chapter, lines 521-4 being additional; see note to l. 214, p. 289. All the more important elucidations of the English version, as obtained by help of the Latin text, are pointed out in the Notes. But it is necessary to add that the "*Historia de Preliis*" was not the sole text which our translator consulted, and it is tolerably clear that another source was the Latin version of the story of Alexander by Julius Valerius, as shewn in the Notes. Some expressions can be explained by help of the Latin text, called *The Letter of Alexander to Aristotle* (*Epistola Alexandri ad Aristotelem*). A copy of this is extant in MS. Cotton, Nero D. 8, fol. 169, and is printed in *Narratiunculæ Anglice Conscriptæ*, ed. Cockayne, 1861, pp. 51—62; see notes to lines 3782, 3926, 3932, 3944. For further information, I must refer the reader to my preface to William of Palerne, &c., pp. xxxiv and xxxvi, and the notes to the same, pp. 236—249; the preface to Alexander and Dindimus, and the notes to the same; and the notes to the present volume. The development of the Story of Alexander is a most difficult problem, and cannot be fully explained without long and patient research. An excellent book on the subject has just appeared, written by M. Paul Meyer, with the title "*Alexandre le Grand dans la Littérature Française du Moyen Age*," published at Paris in 1886. It is full of new information, drawn from manuscript sources, and is the more important because many of the MSS. are still inedited. I may here mention, for example, that M. Meyer tells us (p. 294) that the English rimed version of King Alysander, as printed in vol. i. of Weber's *Metrical Romances*, is chiefly taken from the inedited *Roman de Toute Chevalerie*, by Eustace of Kent.

It is proper to add that there are some words and phrases which point to the occasional use of sources which I have not found; cf. note to l. 5268. Both MSS. are often corrupt, and are merely poor copies of older MSS. The Dublin MS. is, usually, the more careless of the two, but occasionally corrects the other; and the fact that one of the MSS. is often correct where the other is obviously wrong, is not a little curious. As regards proper names, the misspellings are often of the most extraordinary character, and it is useless to guess



at them without at any rate consulting the chief Latin text; and even in that they frequently assume the most singular forms. In the English text, for example, the goddess Ceres becomes a god named *Serenon* (4510), Bacchus appears as *Bary* (4506), Hercules as *Arculious* (4068), and Cyrus as *Cusys* (3219).

§ 13. As to the date and dialect of the original composition, nothing is really known. We can only conjecture that the original was probably written in a pure Northumbrian dialect rather than in West-Midland (but even this may be wrong), and that the version belongs to the former half or to the middle of the fifteenth century. When the barrenness of this period is complained of, as is not unfrequently the case, we ought to remember that, in addition to the poems by known authors, it is probable that such anonymous poems as the *Morte Arthure*, the *Troy-book*, and the two versions<sup>1</sup> of *Alexander* belong to the same period, and compare favourably with the poems by Chaucer's successors. I suspect that the dates usually assigned to other alliterative poems are often too early; and that, for example, the date which I formerly suggested for the other fragments of the *Alexander Romance*, viz. 1340-50, should be placed later. At the same time, this is a point of extreme difficulty, as the MS. copies are all of later date than the period of the original compositions, and there is no available evidence by which we can correctly judge of the intervals to be assigned.

In the Glossarial Index, we have endeavoured to include every form that occurs in both the MSS., as well as to furnish a complete index of all the proper names. The poem seems to me to be of unusual difficulty. Many of the words could only be correctly explained by collating both MSS.; and others only by comparing the original Latin. Several forms are thus ascertained to be corrupt or inaccurate; and, in consequence, in some passages where there is but one MS. and no clearly corresponding passage in the original, it is very difficult to be quite certain that the correct sense has been given. We consequently offer the explanations for what they are worth; though they have cost a great expenditure of time and labour.

<sup>1</sup>. The former is that epic of tremendous length, of which fragments A and B are short relics; and the latter is the version here printed.

## ERRATA AND CORRIGENDA.

(The more important corrections are marked with an asterisk.)

- P. 9, l. 281. The stop after 'thrid' should be raised, like the rest.
- \*P. 15, l. 477. *For the second þe, read na.* See note on p. 290.
- P. 18, l. 554. *Insert a hyphen in Thonere-thrastis.*
- „ l. 562. *The same in bale-fyre.*
- \*P. 19, l. 580. *For schoutid read schontid.* See note on p. 290.
- P. 20, l. 606. *Read The tane, to breue [i. e. describe], &c.*
- „ l. 627. *Insert a comma after wele.*
- P. 29, l. 779\*. *Alter the slanting stroke to a raised full-stop, as in other lines.*
- P. 32, l. 740. *Insert a comma after he; and transfer the marks of quotation so as to precede hedirward instead of &.*
- P. 37, l. 798. *Read þai [þar] wod.* See note on p. 293.
- \*P. 48, l. 988. *Insert a hyphen in at-flee.* See *Atflee* in the Glossary, and in Murray's Dictionary.
- P. 50, ll. 1009, 1110. *Insert hyphens in topp-haris and here-wedis.* See note on p. 294.
- \*P. 60, l. 1175. *For wayne read wayue.*
- P. 72, l. 1370. *Insert a comma after nere.*
- P. 91, l. 1650. *Insert a comma after &, and alter the stop after wald to a comma.* See note on p. 298.
- \*P. 99, l. 1767\*. *Insert a hyphen in ouer-sheet.* See note, p. 298.
- P. 101, footnotes 1 and 4. *The MS. has a stroke over the final n in eughen, dyden.*
- P. 109, footnote 1. *The MS. has a tag to the final letter of acoount.*
- P. 110, l. 1970. *For wella<sup>7</sup> read wella<sup>8</sup>.*
- P. 124, footnote 1. *The MS. has a stroke over the final n in layn.*
- P. 132, fourth side-note. *For Alexander read Strasagoras.* See note to l. 2312, p. 302.
- P. 147, l. 2519. There should be a line of dots here, to shew that a line is omitted.
- \*P. 164, l. 2811. *Insert [of] before my warke.*
- \*P. 176, l. 2995. *Insert [in] after fettild, and add a semi-colon at the end of the line.* See the reading of the Dublin MS.
- P. 180, footnotes 4 and 8. *There is a stroke in the MS. over the n in the words ont and spilken.*
- P. 185, l. 3104. The stop at the end of the line should perhaps be a comma.
- \*P. 204, l. 3426. *For wayne read wayue.*
- \*P. 234, l. 4337. *For bewenes read beweues.*
- P. 236, l. 4417. *Insert a comma after sottis.* See note on p. 311.
- \*P. 241, l. 4590. *Delete the commas after þe and lede.*
- \*P. 242, l. 4606. *Delete the comma at the end of the line.*
- „ l. 4620. *Insert a comma at the end of the line.*
- P. 243, l. 4640. *Delete the comma after teeches.* (See note, p. 312.)
- „ footnote 1. *The MS. has a stroke over the n in On.*
- P. 244, l. 4658. *Insert [in] after settis.*
- „ l. 4665. *Alter the stop at the end to a comma.*
- P. 247, fourth side-note. *Read—Alexander comes to trees full of fruit. (The trees of the Sun and Moon appear at l. 5003.)*
- P. 268, fifth side-note. *For The snakes read Some beasts.* See note to l. 5433, p. 315.
- „ l. 5428. *For wond read woud.* See *Woud* in the Glossary.
- \*P. 329. 'Baisting' means 'abasement,' not 'boasting.' It is put for 'baising' (abasing), by confusion with 'baist' (abased). Cf. l. 466.

N.B.—A few other suggestions for amending the text will be found in the Notes and Glossarial Index.

## [Romance of Alexander the Great.]

[MS. Ashmole 44 ; fol. 1.]

**W**Hen folk ere festid & fed · fayn wald þai here      After meals,  
 Sum farand þing<sup>t</sup> efter fode · to fayn þare her[t],      men like to hear a  
 Or þai ware fourmed oñ fold<sup>t</sup> · or þaire fadirs oþer.  
 Sum is leue to lythe · þe lesing of Sayntis,      4      Some like to hear  
 þat lete þer lifis be lorne · for oure lordis<sup>1</sup> sake ;      legends of saints,  
 And sum has langing<sup>t</sup> of lufe · lays to herken,      others lays of  
 How ledis for þaire lemmans · has langor endured.      love,  
 Sum couettis & has comforth · to carpe & to lestyn      8  
 Of curtaissy of kny3thode · of craftis of armys,  
 Of kyngis at has conquirid<sup>t</sup> · & ouer-comyn landis.      others stories of  
 Sum of wirschip I-wis · slike as þam wyse lattis,      kings and  
 And sum of wanton werkis · þa þat ere wild-hedid<sup>t</sup> ; 12      conquerors.  
 Bot if þai wald oñ many wyse · a wondire ware it els ;  
 For as þaire wittis ere with-in · so þer wið folowis.  
 And I forwith 3ow aȝ · ettillis to schewe      I will try and tell  
 Of ane Emperoure þe aȝefullest · þat euer armys hauntid<sup>t</sup>,      you about the  
 þat was þe athill Alexsandire · as þe buke tellis,      17      most renowned  
 þat aȝte euyn as his awyn · aȝ the werd ouire.      emperor  
 For he recouerd quills he regnyd · þe regions aȝ clene,      Alexander.  
 And all rialme & þe riches · in-to þe rede est.      20  
 I saȝ rehers, & 3e wiȝ, renkis · rekyn 3our tougis,  
 A remnant of his rialte · & rist quen vs likis.

¶ Oute in þe erth of Egipt · enhabet vmquile      In the land of  
 þe wysest wees of the werd<sup>t</sup> · as I in writt fynd<sup>t</sup>.      24      Egypt lived the  
 For þai þe mesure & þe mett · of aȝ þe mulde couthe,  
 þe sise of aȝ þe grete see · & of þe grym wawys ;

<sup>1</sup> MS. lord = lordis *perhaps*.

They knew the  
 courses of the  
 stars,  
 [Fol. 1 b.]  
 and the signs.  
 Of þe ordere of þat odde home · þat ouer þe aire hingis  
 Knew þe kynd, & þe curses · of þe clere sternys, 28  
 Of Articus the aghiH · tre<sup>1</sup> airis & opire  
 Of þe fold & of þe firmament · wele þe fete cuthe ;  
 And Antarticus also · þat all<sup>2</sup> apoñ turnys,  
 þe pasage of þe planettis · þe poyntis & þe sygnes. 32  
 þai ware þe kiddest of þat craft · knawyn in þaire tyme,  
 And þe sotellest vndere son · segis in þaire lyfe.  
 þus ware þai breued for þe best · as þe buke tellis ;  
 All þai lerid of þat<sup>3</sup> lare · þat it lere walk. 36  
 All men heard of  
 their lore.  
 As wide as þe werd was · went worde of þaire teching,  
 Of sorcery & slike werkis · sleȝtis enogh.  
 Their king was  
 Anectanabus.  
 And þe kyng of þat contre · was a clerke noble,  
 þe athelest ane of þe werð · & Anec was hatten. 40  
 He was wyse enoȝe · wirdis to reken,  
 When he þe heuyn beheld · of lede[s] opoñ lyfe ;  
 He knew all the  
 japes of  
 geometry.  
 þe iapis of aH gemetri · gentilli he couth,  
 And wele as Aristotill · þe artis aH seuyn. 44  
 þer preued neuer nane his prik · for passing of witt,  
 Plato nor Piktagaras · ne Prektane him seluen.  
 As he sat one day  
 on the dais,  
 news came that  
 Artaxerxes, king  
 of Persia, had  
 invaded his land.  
 Emang his duykis on a day · as he oñ dese syttis,  
 þañ was him bodword vnþlyth · broȝt to þe sale, 48  
 þat Artaxenses was armed · with þe men of his rewme,  
 þe proude king<sup>4</sup> of Persy · to pase him agayñ.  
 þoȝe he þa sawis herd say · ȝit samyd he na princis,  
 Ne ost ordand he nane · of na kyd knyȝtis, 52  
 Bot airis euen furth him ane · & entirs his chambre,  
 To knaw by his clergi · þe come of his faa.  
 He fills a brazen  
 bowl with water,  
 He takis a Boll of bras · burneschid fuH clene,  
 And fuH he fillis it of the flode · at feH fra þe heuen.  
 On hiȝt in his a hand<sup>4</sup> · haldis a wand, 57  
 And kenely be coniurisons · callis to him spiritis.  
 In-to þis water as he waitis · was he ware sone

<sup>1</sup> So in MS.; *read* athille · thre.      <sup>2</sup> MS. *repeats* all.

<sup>3</sup> MS. 'þat o,' but o is expuncted.

<sup>4</sup> MS. hand hand, the latter underlined.

Of his ennys in þat Element · ane endles nombre ; 60 He sees his  
 He saȝe þam in þe hiȝe see · sailand to-gedire, enemies sailing  
 Was neuer sene slike a some · vnder þe son bemys. [Fol. 2.]  
 Carrygis comand he knew · keruand þe ithis, on the sea.  
 Dromonds dryfes ouer þe depe · with dukis & Erles, 64  
 Gales & grete schipis · fuH of grym wapens, He beholds a  
 And fuH of breneid bernes · bargis a hundreth, great navy.  
 Of slik a naue is noy · to here or to teH.  
 For all þe largenes of lenth · at he luke myȝt, 68  
 Slik was þe multitude of mast · so mekil & so thiȝe, The masts were  
 þat aH him þoȝt bot he treis · a hare wod it semyd. as thick as trees  
 At þe enteris of Egipt · as Anec had beden, in a wood.  
 Ware peris of his prouynce · & princes of his cytes, 72  
 Was comandid of þaire kyng · to kepe þa landis,  
 þat nane aproche it to paire · of Persy ne othire.  
 þan was a wardaH ware · oute in þe wale stremys  
 Of all þe naue & þe note · I neuenyd be-fore ; 76 One of his princes  
 Laȝt liztly his ledis · & leuys his warde, sees the fleet  
 Comes to courte to þe kyng · & oH kneys fallis, come,  
 Anec bi his awyn name · he onane gretis, and tells  
 Sais, “zare þe now ȝapely · or ȝild vp þi rewme ; 80 Anectanabus.  
 Artaxenses is at hand · & has ane ost reryd,  
 And resyn vp with aH his rewme · to ride vs agayH ;  
 For he him-self is oH þe se · with sicke a somme armed, “ Artaxerxes  
 þat any hathill vnder heueH · ware hardy to rekyn. 84 comes with a  
 For þer is comyH with him knyȝt[es]<sup>1</sup> · of landis dyuerse, great navy ;  
 Segis of many syde · oute of sere remys,  
 þe perseyns & a pupiH · þat parthy<sup>2</sup> is callid, Persians and  
 Men of Mesepotayme · & of Mede bathe, 88 Medes,  
 Of Syre & of Sychim · a selle nounbre,  
 Of Capidos & Caldec · kene meH of armes, Cappadocians  
 FeH feȝtand folke · þat Faire we caH, and Chaldeans,  
 þe Arrabiens & all þa · [of] þat origyne, [Fol. 2 b.] 92  
 Bernys out of Batary · batails arayed,  
 And oþire out of þe orient · many od hundrethe.” and others of  
 the east.”

<sup>1</sup> MS. knyȝt.<sup>2</sup> MS. panthy.

¶ þen Anec onane riȝt · efter þire wordis,  
The king laughs. A lowde laȝter he loȝe · & to þe lede said, 96  
“Haue þou na care,” *quod* þe kyng · “bot kene to þe  
marche,  
As I have demyd þe to do · & dred þou na ferryre ;  
For soth it is vnsemely<sup>1</sup> · slike sawis of a prynce.  
He reproves the I kan noȝt knaw at þou carpis · as a knyȝt sulȝ, 100  
prince, and  
accuses him of  
cowardice. Bot as a frek at ware ferid · & feynes riȝt nowe.  
Ert þou noȝt hurtles & hale ? · lat noȝt þi hert faile.  
For vertu vailes noȝt aȝ · if þou auaied worthe, 103  
Emang þe multitude<sup>2</sup> of meñ · quare mane ere togeder,  
Bot þer aboute as þai ere blend · with bignes of wiȝh.  
If þai be folke bot a fa · oft tydis þam þe better.  
Or elis wate þou noȝt wele · þe witles berne,  
How it is comonly carped · in contries a-boute, 108  
“Will not a lion þat anelepȝ leoñ · þat ouer þe land rynnys,  
put to flight many harts ?”  
Wiȝh make to fange to þe flizt · & flay many hertis ?”  
With þat þe segge<sup>3</sup> all him selfe · silis to his chambre,  
And in þe brasen boȝ · fuȝh [of] blak watere 112  
He makes little  
ships of wax, He shapis him of shire wax · litiȝh schipis many,  
And ȝapely ȝarkid in his hand · a ȝerd of a palme.  
þen coñ he chater & enchant · with aȝ his chefe miȝtis,  
A-vysid him in þe vesselȝ · & was auaied sone, 116  
and sees how the How þe powere out of Persy · pellid doune his knyȝtis,  
Persians are  
defeating his own And how his land suld be lost · withouten lett mare.  
men.  
[Fol. 3.] When he was ware of þis wathe · how it worthe sulȝ,  
þan wendis he wiȝtly furth · & his wede changis, 120  
Then he disguises  
himself as a Clede him aȝ as a clerke · & his croune shauys,  
clerk, And with a bytand blade · he his bered voydis.  
þen takis to him tresour · & trusses in baggis,  
As many Besandis oñ his bake · as he bere miȝt, 124  
and takes with And oþire necessari notis · as nedis to his craftis,  
him all things  
that he requires. To sike salmary dangeȝ · as him self vyses.  
He toke traimmes him with · to tute in þe sternes,

<sup>1</sup> MS. *vmsemely*.<sup>2</sup> MS. *multitudo*.<sup>3</sup> MS. ‘*gegge*,’ but the line is marked for correction.

Astralabus<sup>1</sup> algate · as his arte wald, 128  
 Quadrentis<sup>2</sup> coruen aH of quyte · siluyre fuH quaynte,  
 Mustours & mekil quat · mare þen a littiH.  
 When he was graped with his gere · a gladen he waytis,  
 And passis furþe at a Posterne · preuaily alane, 132 He slips out at a  
poster. gate,  
 Furþe on his fete withouten fole · he passis his way,  
 Vn-wetandly to any wee · þat wont in his wanes.  
 þus airis he out of Egipte · & his erde leuys, and leaves Egypt.  
 Fled for ferd of his fais · fere fra his kythis, 136  
 It was na bote him to bide · ne batiH to zelde;  
 For all his kyngdome he knew · suld be kast vnder.  
 Fra þe partis of Persy · he past bot a littiH,  
 And euyn so þurþe Ethyope · & þar hiH eft cletthis, 140  
 aH his liche in lyn claþe · for ledis suld trowe He clothes him-  
self as a prophet,  
 And all þe puple persayue · a prophete<sup>3</sup> he were.  
 þeH metis he furthe to MessadoH · fuH vñ-mete gatis, and goes to  
Macedonia.  
 And quen he come to þat kith · as þe chance tellis, 144  
 Oft with his instrumentis out · he openly deuynes,  
 And noþer hild he it ne hid · bot here qua sa likid.  
 Bot þan was methe<sup>4</sup> for to mele · þurþe men of his burþ,  
 þat he by-hind him at hame · withoute hede leuyd. 148 [Fol. 3 b.]  
 Slik care kindils in his curte · quen þai þer kyng myssid, His subjects miss  
him, and lament.  
 þat it ware tere any tonge · of þar tene to reken;  
 Princes of his palas · preses in-to chambre,  
 To laite þar lord at was lost · with latis vn-blythe; 152  
 Kairis in-to closettis · knyztis & Erlis, Knights and  
earls seek their  
king.  
 Sekand þar souerayn · with many salt terys;  
 Barons & bachelers · balefully gretis,  
 Swiers swemyle · swouned ladys, 156  
 And many was þe bald berne · at banned þar quile,  
 þat euer he dured þat day · vndede opon erthe.  
 Bot quen þai wist he was went · & wald nozt be foun, Finding he is  
gone,  
 Couth þai na bote þaH ebland · how best for to wirke,  
 Bot silis to ser Sirraphis · at sittis in his trone, 161 they ask counsel

<sup>1</sup> MS. Astralalus.<sup>2</sup> MS. In adrentes.<sup>3</sup> MS. preplete.<sup>4</sup> or meche.

of Serapis their  
god.

þat was þar god alþire-graythist · oñ þe ground samen.  
Him þai supplied & soȝt · & him ensence castis,  
Honourd him *with* offyrings · & elkend him fayre, 164  
þat he suld say þam þe sothe · & sorely þam teche  
Queder þaire kyng was becomeñ · at þar care kyndils.

Serapis says,  
“Your king is  
gone.

þan sayd Syraphis him selfe · he sayd þam þir wordis :  
“Anec, ȝour athill kyng · is out of his awyn land, 168  
For Artaxenses aȝe · is aH him ane foundid,  
þe proude kyng of Persee · þat passes vs a-gaynes.

He knew the  
Persians would  
conquer.

FuH wele he wist, er he went · quat suld worþe efter,  
And aH þe fourme of þe fare · þat faH ȝow be-houys.  
For aH þe erth of Egipt · fra end vñ-to othire 173  
Bees conquirid & ouercomyn · clene alto-gedre.

[Fol. 4.]

Artaxerxes will  
come and take the  
kingdom.

þe puple out of Perse · is purvaid aH samen ;  
þe kyng is comand fuH kene · *with* his kene ostis, 176  
þat saH oure renkis aH rayme · & oure rewme bathe,  
And we be aH at þare wiH · þus is wirdis schapen.  
Sen it is sett to be soo · & slipe it ne may,  
Ne schewid to be na noþire schap · ne we to schount  
nouthire, 180

But cease from  
your sorrow.

Bot gefe þaim vp þe girdih · vs gaynes noȝt ellis.  
Bot seses, *seris*, of ȝour syte · & soruzes na mare ;  
For *certayñ*,” *quod* Syraphis · “my-selfe I it knawe,  
ȝour king<sup>g</sup> saH in a noþire kithe · kast out his elde, 184  
And come a-gayñ eft ȝonge man · ȝit to his rewme.

Your king will  
yet avenge you,

þan sall þat victoure ȝow venge · oñ ȝour vile fais,  
And þe province of Persee · purely distruye, 187

and regain the  
kingdom.”

And gett agayñ his avyñ gronde · at he forgais nowe,  
And ane of þe oddist Emperours · of þe werde worthe.”

They raise an  
image of black  
stone to  
Anectanabus.

¶ When he þis talis had tald · þen tuke þai be-lyfe,  
And efter Anec on-ane · ane ymage gert make ;  
þe buke sais, of blake stane · aH þe bode ouyre, 192  
*With* corone & *with* conyschantis · as it a kynge were.  
Quen it was perfite & piȝt · a place þai it wayted,  
And stallid him in a stoute stede · & stiȝthed him faire.  
Lordis lift him oñ loft · & lawe to him bowid, 196



In reuerence of þe riche kyng<sup>1</sup> · at had þer rewme gydið.

Quen he was semely vp set · with septour in hand,

þen ledis at ware lettird · oñ lawe at his feet<sup>1</sup>

At the feet of the  
image is written  
the prophecy of  
Serapis.

AH þe sawis of þaire Syre · as Siraphis talð, 200

þare gañ þai graithly þam graue · in golden lettirs,

AH þe wordis at he þaim werpid · of þaire ware kyng.

þare þai wrate þam I-wis · as þe buke tellis,

Supposand þaim in sum tyme · for sothe to be knawen,

And men to make of þam mynd · euer-mare efter. 205

Be þat þaire enmes þar erde · was entird with-in,

The Persians  
attack them;

þe powere oute of Persee · with many proude osten;

Bot of þar batails to brefe · it botis mō na ferrire. 208

For aH þai conquirid elene · þis eithe at þaire wiH,

[Fol. 4 b.]  
and conquer.

And Anec<sup>2</sup> is aH his ane · ferre of his awyn landis,

With-in þe merris of Messedoyñ · þar na mañ him knewe.

Bot will 3e herken hende · now saH 3e here 212

I will tell you  
more about  
Anectanabus.

How he kide him in þe courete · & quayntid him with

ladis.

## ¶ Secundus passus Alexandri.

Syre, it be-tid oñ a tyme · þe text me recordis,  
þat þe mode kyng of Messedone · with mekiH  
nounbre,

þat was sire Philip þe fers · farne out of toune, 216

King Philip  
leaves Macedon  
to fight his foes.

For to fezt with his fais · out of fere landis.

Quen he was boune oute of burȝe · & his bake turned,

As tite as Anec him amed · out of his awyn kythe,

He paste vp to þe Palais · & preualy entirs, 220

þat he miȝt lend þare on loft · & luke on þe qwene.

Sone as him selfe was in þe sale · & saȝe hire with eȝe,

Anectanabus  
arrives, and  
salutes queen  
Olympias.

He beheld Olympadas · þat honourable lady;

Hire bewte bitis in his brest · & his bodi thrillis, 224

And drifes thurȝe his depe hert · as he ware dart-  
wondið.

<sup>1</sup> MS. fortes; cf. 'at his feete' in Alcx. A. 570.    <sup>2</sup> MS. Anes.

þe lede lawid in hire lofe · as leme dose of gledis,  
Put vp his hand to his hare · & heldid it bot littiH.

"Hail, quene!"  
he said.

"Haile, modi qwene of Messidoynes" · he maister-like  
said; 228

He did not call  
her madam.

þare deynd him na daynte · 'madame' hire to caH,  
Be-cause he knew him a kyng · he carpid oñ þis wyse.  
For if he come as A clerke · with a croune schauyn,  
And diȝt as a Doctour · in drabland wedis, 232  
3it aH þe erth of Egipt · had he bene aire ouire.

The queen  
replies, "Hail,  
master!"

þan answare him þe qwene · with fuH myld speche,  
"Haile, maister," quod þat myld · & made him to sytt  
On a sege hire be-syde · of silkyn clathis, 236  
And þar hire spakid with his speche · & spird of him  
wordis.

She asks if he is  
of Egypt.

Quen he was sete in his sete · þat semely qwene  
Ai of Egipt erd · enquirid if he were,  
þoȝt him like of þat lede · be langage & othire; 240  
[Fol. 5.] For-þi scho wetis if he wald · wete hire to say.

"I am glad to  
hear you speak of  
Egypt.

"A! athel qwene," quod Anec · "ai be þou ioyed!  
If þou a wirschipfuH worde · has werpid & spoken,  
A riath roun þou me redis<sup>1</sup> · a resoñ of blis, 244  
Quen þou mynnys of þat marche · & with þi mouth tellis.

There dwell the  
wisest men of the  
earth.

For þare enhabetis in þat erd · þat þou are sayd.  
þe wisest wees iñ þis werd · þe welken vndire.  
For þai cañ swyth of a sweuyñ · all þe swepe teH, 248  
Whepire it be sele or soroȝe · in a sete quile,

They can read  
the stars, and  
understand the  
song of birds.

And þai can certifi & se · by sygnes of þe heuyñ,  
Quat sall be-fall a-pon fold · with-inen a fewe ȝerys.  
Sum vndirstandis in a stounde · þe steuen of þe briddis,  
To say þe by þar sapience · quat þar sange menys; 253  
Sum cañ þi consaile declare · þofe þou it carpid neuire,  
þe poyntis of all þi preuates · pertly cañ schewe.  
Sum cañ þe brefe be-life · þe birth of þine childire, 256  
Be it hee, be [it] scho · haly þare werdes.

I myself have  
some skill."

And if I say it my-selfe · slik sotellte I haue,

<sup>1</sup> MS. redis a redis; the two latter words underlined.

Sa clere a witt & sa clene · my creatoure I lofe,  
 þat all þe notis at I neuyn · nobly I cañ, 260

As any prophet a-perte · to proue þow þe sothe."

Quen he þire sawis had sayd · he in his sege lened,

He stares on  
the queen's  
face.

In stody stiH as a stane · & starid in hire face,

Beheld haterly þat hend · þat had his hert percið, 264

With depe desire of delite · ay on þat dere waytis.

Sone as hire selfe it sawe · at he hire sa behaldis,

When she notices  
this, she asks  
him of what he is  
thinking.

þen scho talkis him to · & titely him fraynes :

"Quare-on muse þe sa mekiH, maister?" scho sayd; 268

"þe behald me sa hogely · quare-on is þour mynd?"

"My frely fode," quod þe freke · "nozt bot þe werdes

"I am thinking  
of what my gods  
have foretold."

Of my gracious goddis · þe grettest on erde. 271

þai haue talð me be-for þis tyme · þat now I trew fynð,

How I suld<sup>1</sup> lenge in a land · & loke on a qwene."

þan out of his bosom he brayd · a blesand table

[Fol. 5 b.]  
He takes out a  
table,

Of Euour & of othire þingis · odly fourmed,

Of bras & of brynt gold · & o[f] brizt siluer, 276

þat thre serclis sere · in it selfe hað.

marked with  
three circles.  
In the first stood  
the twelve 'under-  
standings';  
in the second, the  
twelve signs;

In þe first compas I ken · as me þe claus tellis,

Stude þe xij vndirstandings · stoutly engrauen.

In þis opir drazt ware deuysid · a dusan of bestis, 280

in the third, the  
sun and moon.

And semely sett was in þe thrid · þe soñ & þe mone.

Sethen he clekis out of a cas · vij clere sternes

To tell him takens of þe tymes · & talis of our werdis;

And vij stele-grauyn stansys · & stoute opire tway, 284

þat wald for hurte or for harme · any hathill kepe.

þus as he tuke furth his toylis · & his trammys<sup>2</sup> schewis,

As he shews his  
implements,  
the queen asks  
him to tell her  
when Philip was  
born.

"If I saH lefe on þi lare" · quod þe leue qwene,

"Say me þe day & þe same zere · & þe selfe tyme 288

Of þe birth of þe bald kyng · þat I best lufe."

þan ansvars Anec onane · sayd, "is þar ozt ellis

At þe wald, hend, of me here · or at þoure hert willis?

He says he can  
tell her anything.

For any cas þat is to com<sup>3</sup> · to know if þe likis, 292

<sup>1</sup> MS. I suld I suld; *the two latter words underlined.*

<sup>2</sup> MS. trammys.

<sup>3</sup> MS. con.

I saH as namely 3ow neuyn · as it ware nowe done."

"Then tell me  
what shall happen  
to me and  
Philip."

"þan will I," quod þe wale qwene · "3e wete me to say,  
Quat me & Philip · sall saH vs be-twene.

For, bow he fra þe bataiH · bernys me teH, 296

þen wiH he wed anopire wife · & wayfe me for euer."

"He will not  
long have another  
queen, but will  
return to you."

"Nay, no3t for ay," quod þe freke · "þar haue þai fals  
spoken ;

Neuer þe latter, or o3t lange · saH lymþ as þou sayd.<sup>1</sup>

Bot 3it I fynd, for all his fare · fleme he saH þe topire,

And wild 3our self to wiH · nyH he so wiH he." 301

þan was a-wondird of his wordis · þe worthe lady,

[Fol. 6.]

Be-so3t sekirly þis sire · if he safe vouchið,

þat scho my3t weterly wete · þe wiH of all þingis,

He continues,

Quatkyn poynt or plyte · predestend hire were. 305

"One of our  
greatest gods will  
descend to you."

"AthiH qwene," quod Anec · "as I am enfourmed,

Ane of þe grettist of oure godis · of grace & of mi3t,

I fynd, or it be fere · to<sup>2</sup> fleschely þe know, 308

And efter in all aduersites · is amed þe to help."

þan sayd Olympadas · "now, honourable maister,

"In what form  
will he come?"

I be-seke þe, my sire · if þou me say walð,

Quatkyn fygour on fold · or fourme at he beris, 312

þat demyd is or destaned · þis dede for to worche."

"þat wiH I wele," quod þe wee · "& no3t a word le3e.

"He is of middle  
age.

þis my3ty god at I me[ne] · is of a mediH age,

No3t of 3outh nor of eld · nor 3erris to many, 316

Bot euyn so be-twene twa · & to [mekyll] of nouthire.

He has two horns  
on his head,

How he is merkid & made · is mervaille to neuyn,

With—tachid in his for-toþ— · twa tufe<sup>3</sup> hornes ;

A berð as a besom · with thyn bred haris, 320

and a mouth like  
a mastiff.

A mouthe as a mastif<sup>4</sup> hunde · vn-metely to shaw.

Bot, dame, if he be þus di3t · drede þe neuer þe more,

Bot 3e be buxsom & bayne · & boune to his wiH.

Be ny3ter-tale he saH þe ne3e · þis note to begyn, 324

<sup>1</sup> Line 300 precedes l. 299 in the MS., but they are marked for transposition.

<sup>2</sup> MS. to þe ; *with þe underlined*.

<sup>3</sup> haris inserted here, but struck out.

<sup>4</sup> MS. mastis.

And ȝe be merryd neuer þe mare · bot mete him in sweuyn.” Be not afraid.”

“Now certayn, sire,” sayd þe qwene · “selly me thinke. “If this turn out true,

Bot may I se þis be sothe · at ȝe me say here,

Noȝt as a prophet ne a prest · I prays saht þi selfe, 328

Bot rehers þe as hieȝe gode · & hie þe for euire.” I will honour thee as a god.”

With þat rysis vp þe renke · & his rowme lefys,

Lazt leue at þe qwene · for a litiht quile,

Anectanabus  
takes his leave.

Gase him dcune be þe grecis · a-gayn fra þe sale, 332

Furthe to make his maistryse · & mose in his arte.

¶ þus passis he fra þe place · to proue his sleȝtis,

[Fol. 6 b]

Silis furth ail him selfe · þe cyte with-ȝuten,

Drafe in-to a depe dissert · & drewe vp herbis, 336

He goes into a  
desert, and picks  
herbs.

þe cholest for inchantment · at he chese couthe.

Quen he had gedird his grese · & grune þaim esundire,

For Iapis of his gemetry · þe ious out he wrengis,

Erne tiht exorȝise · & ethis euer elike, 340

þat it suld worthe as he wald · & oñ na way faile.

He clatird oñ coniurisons · & calid to him deuyls,

He begins to  
conjure,  
that the queen

And aht þe inchoseñ of his charme · with þat þe chefe

qwene

þe same nyȝt in hire slep · suld se with hire eȝen 344 may see Ammon  
in her sleep.

Amoñ hire awyn god · in hire armes ligge,

And dreme at he didd hire swa · & quen he done hadd,

þan suld he say to hire-selfe · sadly þire wordis, 347

“Now has þou, woman, I-wys · with-in þi twa sydis

Consayued him at in aht þi care · þi cors saht defend.”

þis ilk euyn ouer-ȝede · & arly oñ þe morne,

Next morning  
the queen tells  
her dream.

As arly as þe riche qwene · was resyn fra slepe,

þan efter Anec<sup>1</sup> oñ-ane · scho al aboute sendis, 352

Takis him betwene þam twa · tald him hire sweuyn.

“Ȝa,” quod he, “comly qwene · I couthe, & þou wald

He asks to be  
allowed to have a  
room in the  
palace.

Preualy in þi palais · lat me a place haue,

Make þe to se þe same gode · & þi-selfe wakan, 356

Face to face aht his fourme · & his effecte clene.

<sup>1</sup> MS. Anes.

The queen  
grants it.

[Fol. 7.]

"If it turn out  
true, I will  
cherish thee as if  
thou wert my  
child."

He chooses a  
place for himself.

Next night he  
enchants himself  
into the form of  
a dragon,

and flies to the  
queen.

He then becomes  
a man again.

He prophesies  
that her son will  
conquer all the  
world.

þis grete god fuH of grace · saH glide to þi chambre,  
In a dredfuH deuy · a dragons fourme,  
And þan þe figour of a freke · he saH take eftire, 360  
And preuāly in þat part · a-pere ȝowe be-forne."

þan ansvars him þe swete quene · & sone him it  
*grantis*,

"Sire, chese þe a chambre · quare þe chefe pinkis,  
Nowþire myne awen ne na nothire · god lat þe noȝt spare,  
Or any place at ȝow plece · my palas *with-in*. 365

For may þou hald me þis hest · as þou here tellis,  
And profe þus in my *presens* · as a *propire* sothe,  
þen saH I cherische þe *with chere* · as þou my child were,  
Loute þe louely & loue · aH my lyfe days." 369

"Graunt mercy," *quod* þe grete clerke · to þe gude lady,  
Thankis<sup>1</sup> hire fuH thraly · & þen forth wendis

To loke & layte him a loge · quare he lenge myȝte,<sup>2</sup> 372  
And buske him a bedsted · quare him best likid.

Qwen it was metyn to þe merke · þat men ware to ryst,  
And folke was on þaire firste slepe · & it was furth  
*euyns*,

þan Anec oñ ane · his artis he fandis, 376  
And changid by enchantmentis · his chere aH to-gedire.

þer worthid he by his wiche-craft · in-to a wild dragon,  
And to the ladi lere · he lendid in haste,

Flizand in his fethire-hames · & ferly fast sletis, 380  
And in a braide, or he blan · he þe bed entris.

Quen he was<sup>3</sup> laide be-lyfe · his liknes he changis,  
Worthis agayn to a wee · fra a worme turnys.

þen kisses he kenely þe quene · & clappis in armes,  
Langis sare to þe layke · & on-loft worthis. 385

Quen he had wroȝt aH his wiH · hire wame þen he  
touches,

And *with a renyst reryd* · þis reson he said, 387  
"þis concepcion *with kyngis* · sal be callid here-eftir

<sup>1</sup> MS. Thangis, *altered to* Thankis.

<sup>2</sup> MS. myȝtes. <sup>3</sup> MS. he was he was, *but corrected*.

- A verra victor a-vansid̃ · *with* aȝ þe vayne werde.”  
 þus be-gylid he this gude wyfe · & makis hire to wene  
 It ware na gett of na gome · bot of god ane.  
 Qwen þe day-raw rase · he rysis be-lyfe, 392 At daybreak he  
 Lendis a-lande fra þe loft · & left hire *with* child̃. leaves her.  
 Sone as hire bele gun bolne · aȝ hire blee changis,<sup>1</sup>  
 So was scho ferð & a-frizt · a ferly ware ellis. 395 [Fol. 7 b.]  
 To be bonden *with* barne · mekill bale to hire neȝehis,  
 For it & Philip hire fere · o-ferrom was sybb.  
 þan Anec hire awyn clerke · scho on-ane callis, The queen  
 “Lo, maister, slike a myschefe!” · & maynly hire laments, and asks  
 pleynes. for advice.  
 “I dred þat I nere dee · bot ȝe me deme sone 400  
 Quat me is beste of þis case · if euer þe kyng turne.”  
 “Be noȝt a-bayste,” *quod* þe berne · “ne a-bleyd “No harm shall  
 nothire, come to you ;  
 þare saȝ na chance þe chefe · þe charge of a pese.  
 For Amoȝ oure athiȝ gode · saȝ aȝ-way þe helpe, 404 Ammon will aid  
 And kepe þe fuȝ careles · if any cas fallis.” you.”  
 ¶ Quat dose now þis diuinour · bot to desert wendis, The enchanter  
 Airis on aȝ him̃ ane · out of þe cite, again goes to the  
 ȝede him furthe eftirsons · herbis to seche, 408 desert, and picks  
 Reft þam<sup>2</sup> vp be þe rotis · & radly þam stampis. herbs.  
 þe Iuse for his gemetry<sup>3</sup> · þat Iogloure takis,  
 A[nd] sythen<sup>4</sup> a brid of þe see · him seluyn him fangis, He anoints a sea-  
 Clatirs to hyre coynte þingis · kenely enchantis, 412 bird with their  
 And [with] þe wose of þe wede · hire wengis anoyntis ; juice.  
 And all þis demerlayke he did̃ · bot be þe deuyllis  
 craftis,  
 How he myȝt compas & kast · þe kynge to begyle. Hear how he  
 He wroȝt a wondirfuȝ wile · & wiȝ ȝe now here 416 beguiled Philip.  
 How he be-glouird̃ þis gome · & gilid him iȝ sweuyn ?  
 þis ilk Philip̃ þe fyrs · þat in þe fiȝt lenges, Philip dreams  
 þe same nyȝt in his slepe · he saȝe, as him thoȝt, that he sees the

<sup>1</sup> MS. g changis (*sic*). <sup>2</sup> MS. him, *copied from line above*.<sup>3</sup> MS. gremetry.<sup>4</sup> MS. cythen.

queen in  
Ammon's arms;

Amon his awen god · in armes *with* his qwene, 420  
And make *with* hire market · as [he] a man were.

And quen he wroȝt had his wiȝ · þen witrely him metis,  
þat he bowes to hire belechiste · & bigly it sewys,

and that Ammon  
seals her with a  
ring,

And sethen asselis it him selfe · semely & faire 424  
*With* a rede golde ryng · on þis aray *grayun* ;  
A lyons heuyd was on-loft · louely coruyn ;

[Fol. 8.]

þe bounde of a briȝt son · & a brande kene.

telling her she  
has conceived her  
defender.

And þen he went furth his way · sayd, "woman, þou  
haus 428

þi fuȝ defendoure oȝ fold · now frely consa[u]yd."

Als radly as þe riche kyng · rase oȝ þe morne,

Philip calls a  
seer,

Riȝt in þe dawying of day · a diuinour he callis, 431  
And as him dremyd ilke a dele · þat doctour he tellis,  
And fraynes him fast on þis fare · how it be-faȝ sulȝ.

who tells him  
the queen is with  
child,

"Phylip," quod þe phylsofyre · "þi fere is *with* childe,  
And *with* no gett of na gome · bot of god selfe.

And, gudman, [on] þe gold ryng · þe thro grauen  
thyngis,<sup>1</sup> 436

þai ere þus mekiȝ to mene · as me my mynd tellis.

who will be  
like a lion,

To þe lyoȝ hede," quod þe lede · "þen licken I, oȝ firȝ,  
þe birth þat scho bere saȝ · als best it be-semys, 439  
þat chefe saȝ to a chiftaȝ · & slike a chefe maister,  
As to be halden heuydman<sup>2</sup> · of aȝ þe hale werde.

and will pass  
over all the world  
to the far east;

Now saȝ I clerily declare · þe course oȝ þe sonne ;  
þat sygnyfys þe<sup>3</sup> same maȝ · þat sett is, be wurd,  
So many prouynce to pas · þurȝe prowis of armys, 444  
þat he saȝ hit *with* his hede · in-to þe heghe est.  
Now<sup>4</sup> of þis bytand brand · berne, wiȝ ȝe here ;

with sword in  
hand he will  
conquer all.

And aȝ is bot þis hathiȝ maȝ · as I are sayȝ, 447  
þat saȝ sa fele men afray · *with* fauchon in hande,  
And out of nounbre to neuyn · of nacions wynȝ."  
þan foundis Philip to þe fyȝt · & þe fild entres,

<sup>1</sup> MS. y thynges (*sic*).

<sup>2</sup> MS. heuysdman.

<sup>3</sup> ma inserted, but struck out.

<sup>4</sup> MS. W Now ; with W expuncted.



And sone in delingis of dyntis · a dragon aperis,  
 þat streȝt be-for him in þe stoure · strik'is doune his  
 faas, 452

A dragon appears,  
 and strikes down  
 Philip's foes.

And aȝ his ennys in þat erd · he endid in a stounde.  
 When Phylyp with his faire folke · had þe fild won,  
 þaȝ metis he him to Messadone · þar metis him þe  
 qwene, Philip returns to  
 Macedon, and  
 greets the queen.

Kyssid comly hire king · & of his come ioyis, 456

And how he fore scho him fraynes · ferly ȝerne.

“Wele, graunt mercy,” quod þe kyng · “my god, I him  
 loue; [Fol. 8 b.]

Bot how þat ȝe ga sa<sup>1</sup> grete · gud dame?” he sayð.  
 þou has ragid,” quod þe rengen · “with vnryd gestis; He enquires how  
 she does,  
 Now hafe I, lede, aȝ to lange · lengid fra hame.” 461

þus to bre hire o bourde · he breuys þire wordis;  
 “To quam has þou þe tane tiȝ · teȝ m[e] þe sothe?  
 Outhire mete has mendid þe fuȝ mekiȝ · as may I noȝt  
 trowe, and of her  
 condition. 464

Or ane has stollen in my stede · sen I was stad þare.”  
 þus bayst he þe briȝt qwene · þat aȝ hire ble changiȝ,  
 To skyre skarlet hewe · skyft'is hire face,  
 Hire chere at was chalke-quyte · as any chaffe<sup>2</sup> worthis;  
 So was scho schamed of þe schont · þat hire þe schalk  
 made. 469

The queer:  
 is ashamed.

“Nay, quod þe comly kyng · “cache vp þine hert,  
 þofe þou haue forfet, na force · so has fele othire.  
 þou has gildid, bot noȝt gretly · it greuys me þe les; 472  
 For god has geten þe þis gett · a-gaynes þi wiȝ;  
 All þat was done þe bedene · was me be drewe schewyȝ,  
 I saȝe it surely as my-selfe · slepe in my tentis,  
 And oure god aȝ-to-gedire · is ground of þe cause; 476  
 Of me worthis þe þe<sup>3</sup> wite · ne of na wee ellis.”

telling her he has  
 seen all in a  
 dream.

¶ þen tyd it anes oȝ a tym · a lytiȝ terme efter,  
 þis dere kyng oȝ a day · oȝ his dese syttis, 479  
 Had parrell him a proude feste · of princes & dukis,

One day, at a  
 feast,

<sup>1</sup> MS. *repeats* ga sa.    <sup>2</sup> Or *chasse*.    <sup>3</sup> Read *na*.

With maisterlingis of Messadone · & many opire  
noble[s].

he sits beside the  
queen.

þus as he sat in his sete · softly by his qwene,  
In schene schemerand schroude · aH of schire stanes,  
He kest vp his contenance · & knyȝtly he lokes, 484  
And gladis gudly his gestis · as his degre wald.

Anectanabus  
appears in a  
[Fol. 9.]  
dragon's form,

þaH Anec[t]anabus on-ane · in alpire-mast ioy  
Did oH him his dragon-hame · & drafe thurȝe þe sale,  
With slike a rowste & rerid · þe romance it wittnes,  
þat nere had bernis for þat bere · bene broȝt out of  
witt. 489

goes to the queen,  
and salutes her.

He was sa hatter & sa hoge · quen he þe haH entird,  
Lete sa lathely a late · & sa loude cried,  
þat aH þe fest was a-ferd · & opire folke bathe. 492  
To þe chefe chaiare of þe qwene · he chese him be-lyue,  
And laide as hendly as a hunde · his hede in hire arme,  
Sepin kyssis he hire clene mouthe · enclynes hire lawe,  
And braydis furth with a bryH bere · out at þe brade  
zatis. 496

Philip recognises  
the dragon.

þen sayd Philip to his fere · & aH his fre gestis,  
“Ȝone selfe dragon forsothe · I saȝe with myne eȝeH ;  
Quen I was stad in þe stoure · he strenthid aH myne  
oste, 499

Soon after befell  
another prodigy.

And þar þe floure in þe filde · I fangid þurȝe him selfe.”

A bird comes,

Anopire ferly þar feH · within fewe days,  
þe king was sett in his sale · with septer in hand ;  
þen come þar-in a litiH briȝ · in-to his arme floȝe,  
And þar hurkils & hydis · as scho were hand-tame ; 504  
Fast scho flekirs about his fete · & fleȝtirs aboute,  
And þar it nestild in a noke · as it a nest were,

who lays an egg  
in Philip's lap.

QwiH scho had layd in his laȝe · a litiH tyne egg,  
And þan scho fangis hire flȝt · & floȝe away swyth.

The egg falls,  
and breaks ; a  
serpent comes  
out, and soon  
dies.

þis egg, or þe kyng wȝst · to þe erth fallis, 509  
Brak, & so it wele burde · & brast aH e-soundir ;  
þan wendis þar-out a litiH worm · & wald it eft enter,  
And or scho hit in hire hede · a hard deth suffirs. 512

þaŋ was *ser* Philip of þat fare · ferly mekiŋ sturbid,  
 Callis to him a kid clerke · declaris to him þis wonder,  
 Besoȝt him quat it sygnified · to teŋ him þe treuthe. [Fol. 9 b.]

“þat graunt I gudly,” *quod* þe gome · & þus-gate he A seer says,  
 spekis : 516

“Sire, þere saŋ borne be a barne · of þi blithe lady,  
 þat driztyn efter þi day · has destaned to regne,  
 þe quilke sall walke aŋ þe werð · & wyŋ it him selfe,  
 And hent saŋ a fuŋ hetire deth<sup>1</sup> · or he may hame  
 couer.” 520

“Your queen’s  
 son shall conquer  
 all the earth, and  
 then die before  
 returning home.”

þus he vndid him ilka dele<sup>2</sup> · & him þe dome reched,  
 Said it was sett to be so · he saȝe by his artis.  
 And if ȝow likis of þis lare · to lesten any forthire,  
 Sone saŋ I teŋ ȝow a text · how it be-tid efter. 524

### ¶ *Terrius passus Alexandri.*

N ow it teȝt þe tyme · at trauald þat qwene,  
 Quen scho suld bryng furth · hire birth to þe werð. The queen’s time  
 of travail draws  
 nigh.

Scho bidis many hard brayde · baret enduris,  
 What of wandreth & wa · as wemen dose aŋ. 528

Thik schouris hire thrat · tholid mekiŋ sorozē,  
 Many peralus pull · grete payne suffirs,  
 Sa sare werkis hire þe wame · & sliƿ vñ-wyn dreis,  
 þat all scho dredis hire dede · & doute for þe werst. and expects death

þan efter *Anectanabus* · scho on-ane clepis, 533  
 And he was boune at hire bode · & bowes to hire  
 chambre,

Gais him vp at þe grece · & gretis him faire,  
 Fand hire sett in a sege · & sorozē ay elike. 536

*Anectanabus*  
 comes and  
 greets her.

“A ! Anec !” *quod* þe qwene · “me arȝes of my-selfe ;  
 I am aŋ in aunter · sa akis me þe wame, The queen  
 laments.

Of werke weŋ ne I wede · & slike wa tholis, 539  
 þat me ware dere to be dede · &<sup>3</sup> dure þus on lyfe.”

[Fol. 10.]

“ȝa, wynnes ȝow vp,” *quod* þe we · “& walkis a littiŋ,  
 “The moment  
 is inauspicious,”  
 he says.

<sup>1</sup> MS. derth ; see l. 512.

<sup>2</sup> MS. ilka adele ; *wrongly*.

<sup>3</sup> *Read* than.

For þe aire nowe & þe elementis · ere evyn in þis tyme  
 So trauailid out of temperoure · & troubild of þat sone,  
 þat makis þi grippis and þi gridis · a grete dele þe  
 kenere.” 544

She walks about. þan faris scho vp & farkis furth · a fute or tway,  
 And sone sesis aH hire syte · in a sete quyle.

At last she rests,  
 and Alexander  
 is born. “Now bow þe doune,” quod þe berne · & scho his bone  
 fillis,

And syttand so in<sup>1</sup> hire sege · was softly delyuerd. 548

Bot now is meruaiH · to me<sup>2</sup> of þis wondire,

Quen þis man fra his modire wambe · on þe mold feH;

The earth  
 quakes.

For all þe erd euyñ ouer · sa egirly schakis,

þat teldis, templis, & touris · tomble on hepis. 552

There is lightning  
 and thunder.

þe liȝt lemand late · laschis fra þe heuyñ,

Thonere thrastis ware thra · thristid þe welkyn,

Cloudis clenely to-clefe · clatird vn-faire,

All blakenid a-boute · & boris þe soñ. 556

The wind arises.

Wild wedirs vp werpe · & þe wynd ryse,

And aH<sup>3</sup> flames þe flode · as it fire were,

Nowe briȝt, nowe blaa · nowe oñ blase efter,

And þan ouer-qwelmys in a qwirre · & qwatis euer  
 e-like. 560

There is great  
 darkness.

þan slike a derknes<sup>4</sup> þar drafe · & demyd þe skewys,

As blesenand as bale fyre · & blake as þe heH,

þat it was neuer bot as nyȝt · fra þe none tyme

Till it to mydday was meten · oñ þe morne efter. 564

Gife þis ware mervale to myñ · ȝet emang<sup>1</sup> othire

Stones fall from  
 the sky.

þen rekils it vnruydly · & raynes doune stansys,

FeH fra þe fymament · as a hand lyftyng<sup>1</sup>,

[Fol. 10 b.]

And some as hoge as þi hede · fra þe heuyñ fallis. 568

Sa ferd was Philip of þat fare · þat his flesche  
 trymblid,

For sere sygnes at he saȝe · as selly ware ellis.

All the world  
 is warned.

As wyde as aH þe werd was þurȝe · warnyng þai hadd,

<sup>1</sup> Added in the margin. <sup>2</sup> MS. to me to me; but corrected.

<sup>3</sup> a in text; but alle in margin.

<sup>4</sup> MS. dreknes.

þat<sup>1</sup> houre þat Olympadas · was of hire soñ liȝter. 572

Than lendis him vþ þe leue kyng · his lady to vysite,

Quod þe man to his make · “I am in many thoȝtis,

Philip comforts  
Olympias.

þat þis frute saH haue na fostring · ne be fed<sup>d</sup> nouþire ;

I ges it be noȝt of my gett · bot of god fourmed ; 576

Be many cause at I keñ · I kan noȝt supose

It be consayued of my kynde · ne come of my-selfe.

I saȝe so, in þe same tyme · he seuyrd fra þi wambe,

þe erd & aH þe elementis · so egirly schoutid.<sup>2</sup> 580

And queþer ȝit, for any quat · a quyle latt him kepe,

Philip advises  
that her son  
should be  
nourished as  
his own.

And norisch him as namely · as he myne awyn warre,

ȝit wiH þare make of him mynde · & myn it here-eftire

Hathils, swilke a haly soñ · I hade in my tyme. 584

Anoþer barne,” quod þe berne · “I of my blode haue,

Ane of my sede, I supose · & sibbire of þe twa,

þat I wan on myne opire wyfe · þat I wedd first. 587

Lat him as ayre, quen I am erþed · enherit my landis,

“Let my first  
son be my heir,

And staH we him in stede of þis · to stiȝtiH my rewme,

For he is borne of my blode · & a-bore nerre,

And fedewe þis othire, þat<sup>3</sup> folke · quen weere fay worthiȝ,

and let this  
other be well  
taken care of.”

May sitt & carpe, slike a knaue · þaire last kyng hade.”

þai did all as he demed · & his domes plesed, 593

Cherest þai þis ȝonge child · & chosely him kepid ;

þai ware as besy him a-boute · birdis & ladis,

The ladies  
cherish the  
infant.

As he had bene þar hiȝe goȝ · for sa þai hopid aH, 596

þis barne, quen he borne was · as me þe boke tellis,

Miȝt wele a-prefe<sup>4</sup> for his a-port · to any prince oute.

Bot of þe lyfe þat he liȝt off · he like was to nane,

Nouþer of fetour ne of face · to fadire ne to modyre ;

[Fol. 11.]

þe fax on his faire hede · was ferly to schawe, 601

His hair was  
like lion's locks,

Large lyons lockis · þat lange ere & scharpe ;

With grete glesenand eȝen · grymly he lokis,

þat ware as blyckenand briȝt · as blesand sternes, 604

his eyes were  
bright as stars.

<sup>1</sup> MS. þat o ; but o is expuncted.

<sup>2</sup> MS. schoutis ; altered to schoutid. <sup>3</sup> Added in the margin.

<sup>4</sup> MS. a pere, altered to a prefe.

- 3it ware þai sett vn-sameñ · of serelyppy hewys ;  
 þe tane to brene at a blisch · as blak as a cole,  
 As any 3are 3eten gold · 3alow was þe tothire.  
 He was wall-eyed. And he wald-e3ed was · as þe writt schewys, 608  
 3it it tellis me þis tale · þe tethe in his hede  
 Was as bitand breme · as any bare tuskis.  
 His voice was as a lion. His steuyn stiffe was [&] steryn · þat stonayd many,  
 And as a lyon he lete · quen he loude romys. 612  
 His feH fygoure & his fourme · fully be-takend  
 þe prowis & þe grete pryse · þat he a-preuyd eftire,  
 His hardynes, his hyndelaike · & his hetter myztis,  
 þe wirschip þat he wañ · quen he wex eldire. 616  
 þañ sembled his syb meñ · be sent of þañ aH,  
 To consaile of þis kyng soñ · how þai him caH suld,  
 He is called Alexander. And so him neuyned was þe name · of his next frendis  
 Alexsandire þe athiH · be allirs a-corde. 620  
 He goes to school. þan was he lede furthe be-lyfe · to lere at þe scole,  
 As sone as to þat sapient · him-self was of elde,  
 Aristotle is his master. On-ane vn-to ArystotiH · þat was his awen maister,  
 And one of þe coronest clerkis · þat euer knew letter.  
 þan was he bro3t to a benke · a boke in his hand, 625  
 And faste by his enfourme · was fettild his place ;  
 For it come no3t a kyng soñ · 3e know wele to sytt  
 Doune in margoñ & molle · emange othire schrewis.  
 He is clever and wise. Sone wex he witter & wyse · & wonder wele leres, 629  
 Sped him in a schort space · to speH & to rede,  
 And seþen to gramere he gase · as þe gyse wald,  
 [Fol. 11 b.] And þat has he aH hale · in a hand-quyle. 632  
 He learns more in five years than others in seventy. In foure or in fyfe 3ere · he ferre was in lare  
 þan othire at had bene þare · seuynte wynter ;  
 þat he suld passe him in þat plite · vnpussible semed,  
 Bot at god wiH at gaa furth · qua may agayn stande ?  
 If Aristotle was away, In absens of ArystotiH · if any of his feris 637  
 Raged with him vnridly · or rofe him with harme,  
 he would knock his masters on the crown. Him wald he kenely oñ þe croune · knock with his  
 tablis,

þat al to-brest wald þe bordis · & þe blode folowe. 640

If any scolere in þe scole · his skorne at him makis,

He skapis him fuþ skathely · bot if he skyþ better.

þus *with* his feris he faȝt · as I fynd wreten,

As wele in letter & in lare · as any laike ellis. 644

He fights with  
his fellows.

þus skilfuþ lange he scolaid · & þe scole vsed,

Tille he was euyñ of eld · elleuyn wynter.

He had na pere in na place · þat proued so his tyme,

He has no peer.

For þe principalte of all þe pake · he of a-prefe wynyns.

And qwen it teȝt to þe tyme · of ten ȝere of age, 649

þen was him kend of þe kynde · & craft of bataile,

Wele & wiztly in were · to welden a spere,

He learns to  
wield a spear.

A[nd] preke oñ a proude stede · proudly enarmed. 652

þat lare was him lefe to · & lerid in a qwile

Was þar na lede to him like · *with-in* a fewe ȝeris.

So cheualus a chiftan · he cheuys in a stonde,

He surpasses all  
in arms.

þat in anters of armes · aþ men he passes. 656

Quen Philip see him sa fers · in his first elde,

His hert & his hardynes · hizely he lofed,

Philip commends  
him.

Comendid mekiþ his knyȝt-hede · & him callid oñ a day

Be-twene þam selfe oñ a tyme · & talkis þire wordis :

“Alexander,” *quod* þe kyng · “I augirly prayse 661

þi wirschip, þi worthines · þi wit & þi strenth.

Es nane so teche of þi tyme · to tryi now o lyfe.

[Fol. 12.]

How suld I, lede, for þi lofe · bot lufe þe in hert ? 664

Bot I am sary for sothe · my soñ, at þi fourme

“I am sorry,  
my son,  
that you are so  
unlike me.”

Is lickenand oñ na lym · ne like to my selfe ;

Oft storbis me þi statour · & stingis me ȝerne,

þat þi personale proporcioñ · sa party is to myne.” 668

þis herd hire þe hend quene · & heterly scho dredis,

The queen  
consults  
Anectanabus.

Sent efter Anec · & askis him be-lyue,

Be-knew him clene aþ þe case · how þe kyng sayð,

And frayns him fast *quat* þe freke · of hire fare thingis.

þen con he calke & a-conte · & kest on his fyngirs,

Lokis him vp to þe lifte · & þe lady swares : 674

“Be noȝt a-friȝt,” *quod* þe freke · “ne a-frayd nouþir,”

He comferts her,

and observes the stars.

Alexander asks him what he sees in the stars.

Anectanabus says he will tell him at night.

"I shall be slain by my own son."

[Fol. 12 b.]

Alexander follows his father

to the edge of a dyke.

Anectanabus says that his own doom approaches.

It saȝ þe noy noȝt a negi · nane of his thoȝtis." 676

With þat he heuys vp [his] hede · & to þe heuyn lokis,

Hedis heterly on hiȝe · behelde oñ a sterne,

Of þe quilke he hopid in his hert · sumquat to knawe,

Quat enire he wald wete · of <sup>1</sup> his wiȝt aȝ-to-gedire.

Quod Alexander to þis athiȝ · as he his arte fandis,

"Quat is þe planet or þe poynt · ȝe purpose to seme ?

Quat sterne is it at ȝe stody oñ · quare stekis it in

heuyn ? 683

May ȝe oȝt me in any maner · to þat sterne schewe ?"

"þat can I wele," quod þe clerke<sup>2</sup> · "ellis couthe I littiȝ ;

Noȝt bot sewe me, soñ · quen þe soñ is to reste,

Quen it [is] dreuyn to þe derke · & þe day fynyst,

And þou saȝ sothely se · þe same with þine eȝen." 688

"Is oȝt þi werid to þe wissid ?" · quod þe wee þan ;

"For þat I couet to ken · if þou me kythe waldȝ."

"Sire, sothely of myne aweñ soñ<sup>2</sup> · slayne moñ I worth,

So was me destaned to dye · gane many winter." 692

As tyte as Anec[*tanabus*] · þis aunter had taldȝ,

þen [he] treyned doune fra þe toure · to tute in þe sternes.

þaȝ airis ser Alexander · eftire his fadire, 695

þat euer he kyndild of his kynde · kend he bot litiȝ.

þus led he furthe his leue child · late oñ ane eueñ,

Sylis softlye him selfe · þe cite with-outen,

Boȝes him vp to a brenke · as þe buke tellis,

To þe hiȝt of þe depe dike · & to þe heuyn waytis. 700

"Alexander, athil soñ" · quod Anec his syre,

"Loo ! ȝonder behaldȝ ouer þi hede · & se my hatter werdis ;

þe euyȝ sterne of Ercules · how egirly it sorozes, 703

And how þe mode Marcure · makis sa mekiȝ ioy ;

Loo ! ȝonder þe gentiȝ Iubiter · how Iolye he schynes,

þe domes of my destany · drawis to me swythe.

<sup>1</sup> MS. of w his ; but w is *expuncted*.

<sup>2</sup> Added in the margin.



Hedes heterly on heght · beheld on a-sterne, 678 [Fol. 1.]

Of þe whilke he hopyd in hys hert · somqwatt to know,  
 What euer he wilnet for to wete · hys wille aH to-geder.  
 þen sayd alexander to þis atheH · as he by hym stonndes,  
 “What is þe planet or þe poynt · yhe purposse<sup>1</sup> to se?  
 Or what sterne at ye stody oñ · where stekys it in  
 heuen?

May 3e oght in any maner me · to þat merke shewe?” 684  
 “þat can I wele,” quod þis clerke · “ellys couth I bott  
 lytyH;

Noght bott shew<sup>2</sup> me now, sone · qwen þe soñ is at rist,  
 When it is dryven to þe dirk · & þe day fynysht,  
 And þu saH sorely þe same · see with þi egheñ.” 688

“Is oght þi werd to þe wist?” · quod þe wy þañ;

“For þat I Couett to keñ · if þu me kyth wold.”

“Syr, sothly of mync aweñ son · slayn moñ I worth,  
 So was [me] destinate to dy · done mony wynter.” 692

Als tyte as anectanabus · þees aunters had tald,  
 Than turned he douñ from þe toure · to tote on þe sternes.  
 þan ayres sir alexander · aftir hys fader,  
 þat euer he come of hys kynde · knew [he] fuH lityH. 696  
 þus lede he forth is leue sonñ · late on añ eueñ,

Syland softly þaim selfe · þe cyte with-owte,  
 Bownes þaim vp to a brenke · as þe buke tellys,  
 To þe hight of þe hye dyke · & to þe heuen watyñ. 700

“Alexander, atheH sonñ” · quod anec hys fader,  
 “Beyond be-hald ouer my hed · & see my hote werdez;

þe ilke sterne of ercules · howe egerly it sorowez,  
 And how þe mode of mercury · makys so mekyH Ioy; 704  
 Lo! how gentyH Iubiter · how ioyfully he shynes,  
 þe Domes of my destany · drawes vnto [me] swyth.

<sup>1</sup> MS. *proposse*.

<sup>2</sup> *sic*; read *sew*.

þik & þrathly am I thret · & thole moñ I sone  
 þe slazter of myne awen soñ · as me was sett euer." 708  
 Vnethis werped he þat worde · þe writt me recordis,

Alexander pushes  
 him into the  
 dyke,

þat ne Alexander as sone · was at him be-hindē,  
 And oñ þe bake with slike a bire · he bare with his  
 handis,

saying, "thou  
 art false in thy  
 predictions."

þat doune he drafe to þe depest · of þe dike bothom, 712  
 Sayd, "lo ! vnhappeiste vndire heuyn · þat þus oñ hand  
 takis

As be þe welken to wete · quat suld come efter !  
 þou has feyned þe for wyse · & fals aH-to-gedire,  
 Wele semys slike a saccheH · to syeþe þus of lyfe !" 716

Anectanabus  
 cries out,

þan Anec, as him ayt · wele augirly granys,  
 Dryues vp a dede voyce · & dymly he spekis,

"I knew it  
 would be so.

"Wele was þis cas to me knawen · & kyd many wynter,  
 þat I suld dee slike a dethe · be dome of my werdis. 720

Did I not say so ?

Sayd I þe nozt so · my selfe here be-fore,  
 I suld be slayñ of my son as now sothe worthis ?" 722

Thik & thraly am I thrett · & thole must I sone  
 þe slaughtre of my awne son̄ · als me was sett euer." 708  
 Vnneth warpyd he þis word · þe writt me recorder,  
 þat alexander als belyfe · was at hym bylyue,<sup>1</sup>  
 And on þe bak with suche a bir · hym bare with hys  
 handez,  
 þat Douñ he drafe into þe dyppest · of þe dyke bothum; 712 [Fol. 1 b.]  
 Sayd: "lo! vnhappyest vndir heuen · þat þus on hand  
 takes  
 Als be welkyn to wete · what worth saht her-aftir!  
 Hase fenyd þe for wyse · & fals aht to-geder,  
 Wele semys suche a sacheht · to sepe þus of lyfe!" 716  
 þan Anec, als hym awght · wele awgardly granes,  
 Dryvez vp̄ a dede voyce · & dymly he spekes:  
 "Wele was þis to me knawyn · & kyd mony wynter,  
 That I suld dey such a dede<sup>2</sup> · by<sup>2</sup> dome of my werdis. 720  
 Sayd I þe noght so · my self here beforne  
 I suld be slayn of my son̄ · als now is soth wortheñ?" 722  
 "What, and am I," quod alexander · "ane of þi You are my  
 childer?" 723\* son."  
 "3ha, son̄! als glad I my god · I gat þe my selueñ." 724\*  
 Fro he had hym þis worde sayd<sup>3</sup> · he wakens no more, Hic moritur  
 Bot gaue a gremly grane · & þe gast 3heldez. anectanabus  
 That oper wy for hys werkez · wepys eueryllyke, Alexander  
 So hard & so hertly · þat ne3 hys hert brestes. 728\* laments,  
 þus plenys þis prouud knyght · þe pyte of hys fader,  
 Cares hym downe into þe cafe · þar as þe cors ligges, and carries  
 Belife lyftes he on-lofte · euen on hys shulders, 731\* home the  
 And beres hym forth vppon hys bake · at þe brade 3ates. body.  
 Sone sayd þe whene, when sho hym see · with syland teres;  
 "What haue 3e done, my dere son̄?" · & drowpys douñ  
 in swone.  
 "Dame, now is þar none other to do · bot deme it þi selueñ, Alexander  
 For as þi foly was before · so foloweth aftir." 736\* reproves the  
 queen.

<sup>1</sup> read byhynde.<sup>2</sup> written above the line in MS.<sup>3</sup> written above the line in MS.



Than makes þis mañ & hys moder · menskfully & faire  
 Titely hys enterment · as þai þat tyme vsed.  
 þus shamesly of hys awne childe · hym chevyd such end.  
 And her fynes a fytt · & fayr when vs likez.

So perished  
 Anectanabus.

740\*

### Quartus passus.

The same & þe selue tyme · as says me þe text,  
 Fro þe cuntre of capadose · come a kyd prince  
 To kyng philipp þe fers · & hym a fole bryngez ;  
 A grett horse & a hoge · a hegh & a wilde,

A prince  
 brings to  
 Philip a wild  
 horse,

744\*

A store & a styf stede · stalwortly bondyn ;  
 His choH chaltird & chaelez · in chynez of yreñ ;  
 In rapes fast · for ryfing of bernies ;

[Fol. 2.]

For other mete þan manys flesche · mouthed he neuer. 748\*

who fed upon  
 human flesh  
 only.

Busifolen to þis blonk · was breued þe name.

He hed so ferdful a face · as ony fyre lokez ;

Bere als a boles<sup>1</sup> heued · a bryn on hys shulderr,

And toton owt of hys toþ · als tyndis of hornes. 752\*

The fayrnes of þis ilke fole · when philipp avysed,

Philip puts  
 him in a  
 stable.

þan says he to hys seruand · to see to þis capyH,

And stighillys hym in soñ stede · a stable by hym one,

With lang lates of yreñ · þat he might lig in. 756\*

And aH at wer dampned to þe deth · & demyd at þe lawe,

He is fed upon  
 criminals.

þai saH be brozt fra þe bare · þis blonk into stable,

To wery at hys awne wille · & weyle<sup>2</sup> of þe fattest. 759\*

3it philip of hys faire goddes · hym fanges such a sware,

The gods say  
 that whoever  
 tames the  
 horse will  
 succeed  
 Philip.

Yff ony berne wer so bald · baroñ or other,

Or wy þat myght þis wilde best · worth for to ryde,

Was dewly aftir hys day · destinate to regne.

When alexander was of elde · awght 3eres & foure, 764\*

þan was he worthy & wight · & wisely hed leryd

At arestoteH aH ouer · þe artez aH seueñ,

And castor, ane oper clerke þar · at wer hys kyd maisteres.

Alexander is  
 now 12 years  
 old.

So carez he in þe casteH-3arde & commes on a day 768\*

By a wyndow als þis wild horse · [was] warloked in bandez ;

<sup>1</sup> Altered to boyles in later hand.

<sup>2</sup> MS. wele, corr. to weyle.



- Lokes in at a lat · sagh ly hym byforne  
 So many menbres of men · wer mervayle to telH.  
 þar liggez lymmes of laddes · leggez & harmes, 772\* He sees the  
 Tharmes thrist owt of thees · banes & shuldres. horse sur-  
 Som hanchyd of þe heued · som þe handez etyñ, rounded by  
 Som þar riggez owt rytte · & som þar ribbez rent. men's legs  
 Of þis wonder he hed · & so he wele burð. 776\* and arms.
- And hardly hys awne hand · in at a hole puttes,  
 He<sup>1</sup> layd owt a lang neke · & hys hand likkys;  
 Faire faldes hys fete / & falles<sup>2</sup> hym<sup>3</sup> to þe erth,  
 Hendly haldes vp hys heued · byheld in hys face, 780\* The horse  
 On Alexander ay-whare · euer elike wates. licks his  
 þen wist þe wy wele enogh · hys wyH aH-to-geder; hand.  
 Brades vppe þe brade ȝate · & þe barre entres,  
 On þe rige with hys right hande · hym rodely strakez, 784\* He goes to  
 And he fuH frely & faire · hym faunys & loutez. the horse,  
 Was neuer barslett in band · more buxum to hys lord, and strokes  
 þen was þis blonke to þis berñ · for aH his breme teches. him.  
 þus lowtes þis lede on low · & lowsys hys chynez, 788\* He gets a  
 Blyssis blythly hym aboutte · & a bridyH fyndez; bridle and  
 Grathez on þis gay gere · & þen a gilt sadyH; saddle,  
 Ledes hym forth of þat loge · & þen of-lofte lepys. and mounts  
 Than strenys he hys steropes · & streȝt vp sittes; 792\* him.  
 Lad hym by þe lorañ · & hym þe lede wissez.  
 And he als rekyndly ran · rolland hym vnder,  
 As he þe sadyH hed sewyd · seuenten wynter.  
 Sone as philip þe ferse · hym on þis fole metes, 796\* Philip sees  
 “Soñ,” he sayd, “now er þe sawes · into þi seluen fyneshit, Alexander,  
 Right as my graceux gode · hase galet me before. and predicts  
 For þou must rewle aH my realñ · qwen I am raght hyne.” that he will  
 Quod alexander als belue · “my awne atheH fader, 800\* be king after  
 I beseke þe my soueren · þat þou my sete dresse himself.  
 In a chosyn chariott · as a chefe maister,  
 With folawand me a fair flete · of fele men of armes.”

<sup>1</sup> MS. And, *corr. to He.*<sup>2</sup> MS. faldis, *corrected.*<sup>3</sup> MS. hys fete, *repeated, but struck out.*





" þat graunt I gladly," *quod* þe gome · with a gode wille,  
 " Frist' of my faire foles · fang þe a hundreth ; 805\* Philip gives  
 And syne sixty thowsand, my soñ · þou<sup>1</sup> þi seluen wale Alexander  
 Of shillynges & of shire gold · to shote in þi Cofyre ; men and  
 Syne of my chefe chiftanes · chese þe þe<sup>2</sup> best, money.  
 þe most proved of my princez · in poyntez of were ; 808\*  
 Wyse ne no wale wede · want shaft þe noþer,  
 And held on with a hale here · þar hersound þou worth." 3  
 Thys barne hym buskes as he bede · & bade he no langre,  
 Bot grathes hym to þe gate · with a gyñ noble. 812\*  
 Forth with eufestys he ferd · a freke þat he loued, Alexander  
 þat was a fyne Philo[so]ff[e]r · a frend of hys awne. [Fol. 8.] takes with  
 3itte takez he hym with-owte þe town · twelf tried childer, him Eufes-  
 þat he hed Cosyn hym for chefe · hys chevalry to lede ; tius and 12  
 And fair enformed þam of fight · & fetez of armez 817\* others.  
 For 3apest in hys awne yoke · 3arly to drawe ;  
 Fers felons with hym fangez · & florens enowe,  
 Full preciose apparement' · hys person to cleth, 820\*  
 Comand kenely hys knyghtez · to kepe to hys blonkez,  
 þat no<sup>4</sup> vnchaunce þaim achefe · þat in þe chare 3odez.  
 He prekys forth on hys play · bot with a preuay menze, With a small  
 Chaterand with hys chiftanes · in hys child gere. 824\* force he  
 To poliponenses hase he passed · a prouince vnk[n]awyn, invades the  
 And so was strykyn or he styntyd · in-to þe strange realm. Pelopon-  
 The kyng of þatt cuntree · þat þe kyth weldyd, nesus.  
 Which was callyd nicholas · & hym naytly metes, 828\* The king's  
 Had rasyd vp a rode hoste · & heldyd hym ayayne name was  
 With bald baratours on bent · hym bateH to 3elde. Nicholas.  
 He flonge ow[t] on a fers fole · far from hys hoste,  
 Ayres to sir alexander · & angrely franes : 832\* Nicholas  
 " What is þi name, notesmañ · neuen me þe sothe ; interrogates  
 And whyne ert þou & who · & what makys þou here ?" Alexander.  
 þe knyght, as he wele couth · hym curtasly answers :  
 " Sir, kyng philip þe ferse · my fader was hateñ, 836\*

<sup>1</sup> MS. þat, *corr.* to þou.<sup>2</sup> MS. the, *corr.* to þe.<sup>3</sup> MS. wroth.<sup>4</sup> written above the line in MS.

[Fol. 13.]

Many things  
that are aloft  
go to the  
bottom."

þof I þis wirschip þe wayfe · as wald þine astate,  
Lat þou þi hert neuer þe hizere · hale in-to pride. 724  
For it was wont," *quod* þe wee · "as wyse men tellis,  
Fuht hiȝe þingis ouer-heldis · to held oþer-quile.  
Slike as ere now broȝt a-bofe · nowe þe bothum askis,  
And slike at left<sup>1</sup> ere on lawe · ere lift to þe sternes."  
"Sa ma aydeus," *quod* þat oþire man · "þou tellis me  
treuthe, 729

"Take care lest  
your predictions  
come true of  
yourself."

Soñ þis ensample of þi-selfe · þou sais me, I trowe.  
Vn-behalde þe wele oñ ilk halfe · & haue a gud eȝe,  
Les on þine ane here-efteward · þine ossyngis liȝt." 732  
þan Alexander aht in ire · angrile spekis :  
"Hy þe hethen-ward, þou hathiht · & houe þou na  
langire.

Sir Nicholas  
is as wrath as a  
wasp.

For na-þing as a-nente me · þou has noȝt to meht,  
Ne *with* þi domes me to dele · dole vndire sonne." 736  
Now<sup>2</sup> is *ser* Nicollas anoyed · & nettild *with* ire,  
As wrath as [a] waspe · & wode of his mynde,  
Reviles he þis oþire renke · *with* vnrid speche : 739  
"Behald," *quod* he hedirward · " & herken how I say ;  
Now be þe hert & þe hele · of my hathiht fadire,  
And be þe god," *quod* þe gome · " þat gafe me þe saule,  
A[ls] sprent [of] my spitting · a spekke oñ þi chere,  
þou saht be diȝt to þe deth · & drepid of my handis." 744

<sup>1</sup> *Indistinct ; see l. 814.*

<sup>2</sup> MS. *Nowith ; by confusion with line above.*

And aȝ þe marche of massydoñ · he manours clene ;  
 And I hys heyre alexander · als elders me calleñ.”  
 þat oþer renishit r[e]nke · hym rightes in þe sadyȝt,  
 Stranes owt hys sterops · & sternly lokez ; 840\*

Alexander  
declares his  
name.

With a sembland as a hye sir · settes owt þe brest,  
 Sayd : “ who am I þat am here · as þou supposez ? ”

“ Who am  
I ? ” asks  
Nicholas.

“ Sir, þou art a kyng of þis kyth · I ken wele my-selueñ,  
 Bott neuer þe latter in þis lede · if þou be lord here, 844\*

“ You are a  
king ; yet  
take heed.”

þof<sup>1</sup> I<sup>2</sup> þis worship þe<sup>3</sup> wafe · as wald þine astate, 723

Lett þou þi hert neuer þe hyer · hale to þe pride. 724

For it is wont,” quod þe wy · “ as wise meñ tellys,

The hyest thyng rapest<sup>4</sup> · heldes oþer while.

Suche as now is broght a-bowue · now þe bothom askeñ,

And siȝh als laft<sup>5</sup> now on loft<sup>6</sup> · er lyft to þe sternes.”

[Fol. 3 b.]

“ So madeus,”<sup>7</sup> quod þis oþer mañ · “ þou mellys me þe  
 sothe, 729

For þis ensampyȝ of þi-selfe · þou says me, I trowe.

Vmhede þe wele on ilke halfe · & haue a god Egeñ,

Lest on þi-seluen ane oþer tyme · þine asking liȝt.” 732

þan alexander aȝ in ire · angirly spekes :

“ Hy þe hyneward, þou atheȝ · & hofe here no langer.

For noþ[i]ng als anense me · þou hase lityȝ to melle,  
 Ne with me noȝht hase to do · ne dele vnder þe sonñ.” 736

Now [is] sir Nicholas noyet<sup>1</sup> · & netlett with ire,

Als wrath as a waspe · & wode owt of mynde,

Revylez he þis other renke · with vnrode speche :

“ Byhald,” he sayd, “ hyderward · & here qwat I say ; 740

Now by þe hert & þe heale · of my old fadir,

And be god,” quod þe gome · “ at gaue me þe saule,

Als sprent of þi<sup>8</sup> spyttyng<sup>1</sup> · a speke of my<sup>9</sup> face, 743

þou saȝ be diȝt to the deth · and drepyd of my handes.”

<sup>1</sup> MS. Of.      <sup>2</sup> þe follows after I in MS.

<sup>3</sup> þe written above the line in MS.      <sup>4</sup> MS. rapest.

<sup>5</sup> or last.      <sup>6</sup> so in MS. ; read laft er on lawe.

<sup>7</sup> MS. madeus, altered to madyng, in later ink.

<sup>8</sup> so in MS. ; read of my.      <sup>9</sup> read on þi.

He spits in  
Alexander's face.

Quen he had spokin so, for spyte · he spittis in his face,  
Dispises him despetously · dispersons him foule.

Alexander con-  
trols his anger.

"Hent þe þare," quod þe hatiH<sup>1</sup> · "as þe to haue<sup>2</sup> semes,  
Cure, for þi kene carþe · chache nowe a schame!" 748  
þan went him furthe Alexander · & his ande takis,  
Lete a-swage or he sware · þe swelme of his angirs,  
Be-seȝis him how he say wold · or he his saȝe ȝeld, 751  
And turnes him þen to þe tulke · & talkis þire wordis :

[Fol. 13 b.]

"For þou has noȝtid me now · Nicollas," he sayd,  
I swere þe, be my syre saule · & by his selfe pite,  
And be þe worthe wombe · of my wale modre  
þat I was geten in of gode · & graithely consayued, 756  
þou seis me, lede, or oȝt lange · in þi lande armed,  
And opire recouyre me þi rewme · or reche vþ þe  
girdiH."

They appoint  
a day for  
fighting.

þan set þai þam slike a day · to semble & to fiȝt, 759  
And þar-to take vp þaire trouthis · & twyned esondre.<sup>3</sup>  
þeñ ȝode him furthe þi[s] ȝong mañ · ȝapeli & swythe  
In-to þe marche of Messedone · & manly a-semblis  
Of sandiours & sekir men · a soume out of nounbre,  
þat was þe baldest & þe best · breueyd in armes. 764  
He parrails him a proude ost · of princes & opire,  
Farkis to ser Philip · & fangis his leue,  
And þañ Bocifilas his blonke · he bre mely ascendis,  
And bounes oñ with his bataiH · out at þe brade ȝatis.  
þe same day at was sett<sup>4</sup> · þe sembling of bathe, 769  
Aithire with a firs flote · in þe fild metis.

Alexander  
gathers a host.

þe nounbre of ser Nicollas · it noyes me to reken,  
And Alexander was ane oste · of augird many. 772  
With þat þai take vp þaire trompes · a-poñ þe twa  
sidis,

Both armies are  
very numerous.

Braidis banars a-brade · buskis to mete.

The clarions  
resound.

So kinlid þe clarons · þat aH þe cliffe rynges,

<sup>1</sup> So in MS.

<sup>2</sup> MS. hame, with first stroke of m subfuncted.

<sup>3</sup> MS. to semble & to fiȝt, struck through, with & twyned esondre above.

<sup>4</sup> Added in the margin.

When he had spokyn̄ so, in spite · he spittes at hys face,  
Dispysys hym dyspytussly · revylez hym foule.

“Hent þe þar-to,” quod þe atheH · “þat þe to haue semes,  
Cure, for þi kene carpyng · cache now a shame!” 748

þan ayres hym forth alexander · & hys aynde takes,  
To let swage or he sware · þe swelme of hys angre,  
Wysez hym how he say wald · or he aunswer ȝheldes,  
And turnyd hym þen to þis tulke · & talkez þir wordez :

“For þou hase noȝtyd me now · nicholas,” he sayd, 753

“I swere by my syre saule · & by hys selueñ pyte,  
And be þat worthi wombe · of my wale moder  
þat I was gettyn in of god · & grathly consaued, 756  
Thu sees me, lede, in þi land · or oght lang enarmed,  
And oper recouer me þi realm̄ · or reche me vppe [þe]  
girdyH.”

þan sett þai þaim on suche a day · to semble & to fight,  
And þar-to takez vpp þar trewthez · & twynnoñ in-sonder.  
þan ȝode hym furth þis yong mañ · ȝapely & swithe 761  
Into þe marche of masydon · & manly assembles

Of sowiours & of syker meñ · a some owt of nowmbre,  
þat wer þe baldest & þe best · breuet in armez. 764

He Apperels hym a pround oste · of princez & oper, [Fol. 4.]  
Ferkys to sire philip̄ · & fonges hys leue;

And þañ bucifolon hys blonk · he breinely assendes,  
And bownez on with hys bateH · in at þe brade ȝatez. 768

þe same day þat was set · þe semblyng of bath,  
Ather with a fers flete · in þe felde metyn̄.

þe nowmbre of sir nicholas · it neyt<sup>1</sup> me to rekyñ,  
And alexander was ane ost<sup>1</sup> · of awgerly mony. 772

With þat þai tukkyñ v̄p þair trompez · vpon þe two  
sydez,

Bradez baners on brade · buskes to mete.  
So knellyd þe clarions · þat aH þe clyff rongeñ,

<sup>1</sup> So in MS.

- þe holt<sup>is</sup> & þe haire heere<sup>1</sup> · & þe hillis scheuyn. 776  
 Ilk a hathiH to hors · hiȝis him be-lyue,  
 Stridis into stele-bowe · stert<sup>is</sup> apon loft,  
 Has a helme oñ his hede · & honge oñ his swyre  
 A schene schondirhand schild · & a schaft hentis. 780  
 Steeds stamp,  
 and dust rises. Quat of stamping of stedis · & stering of bernes,  
 AH dymed þe dale · & þe dust ryse.  
 With slik a bront & a brusche · þe bataiH a-sembild,  
 [Fol. 14.] As þe erth & aH þe el[e]ment<sup>is</sup> · at anes had wrestild.  
 Now aithire stoure oñ þar stedis · strikis to-gedire, 785  
 Spurnes out spakly · with speris in hand,  
 Shields are  
 broken. Breki<sup>s</sup> in-to blasons · bordren<sup>2</sup> shildis,  
 Beris in-to briȝt stele · bitand lances, 788  
 Lances are  
 splintered. Sone in scheuerand schidis · schaftis ere brosten,  
 Al to-sprynȝis in sprot<sup>is</sup><sup>3</sup> · speris of syris,  
 Dryfuys doune duchepers · & doyk<sup>is</sup> of þar horses,  
 Fellis fay to þe fold · many fresch knyzt<sup>is</sup>. 792  
 Nicholas attacks  
 Alexander. Quat dose now þis Nichollas · bot nymes him a spere,  
 Kest him on þis ȝong knyzt · to couire him a name ;  
 And Alexander with anothire · airis him agayne,  
 Girdis grymly to-gedire · greuosly metis. 796  
 Sa sare was þe semble · þire seggis be-twene,  
 þat al to-wraiste þai þar wode · & werpis in-sondire,  
 Their spears  
 break. Al to-clatirs in-to cauels · clene to þaire handis, 799  
 þar left nouþire in þar hand · þe lengthe of an ellyñ.  
 They fight with  
 swords. þen littid þai na langer · bot laschid out swerdis,  
 Aithire a blesynand<sup>4</sup> brand · brait out of schethe,  
 Hewis oñ hattirly · had thurgh mailes,  
 Many starand stanes · striki<sup>s</sup> of þaire helmes. 804  
 þen Alexander in ane ire · his arme vp-liftis,  
 Swythe swyngis out his swerde · & his swayfe feches.  
 þe noH of Nicollas þe kyng · he fra þe nebb partis,  
 Alexander  
 cleaves  
 Nicholas' head. þat doun he feH fra his fole · & fynyst for euir. 808  
 þus was him destand þat day · as driȝten had shapid<sup>4</sup>,

<sup>1</sup> read haire wode.<sup>2</sup> read broden.<sup>3</sup> MS. repeats in sprotis.<sup>4</sup> Added in the margin.

That þe holtez of þe heer wode · & þe hillez sheueñ. 776  
 Ilke atheft to hys hors · hyes hym belyue,  
 Striden to stele-bowe · startyn vpon lofte,  
 Had helmes vpon hedes ful hey · & hynget vmby þar shwyre  
 A shemerand sheld · & þair shaftez hynteñ. 780  
 What of stampyng of stedes · & strippynge of baners,  
 Ah demmyd þe dale · & þe duste risez.  
 With suche a bront & a broush · þe bateft assembled,  
 As þe erth & ah þe elementes · at anez had wrystyllyd. 784  
 Now ather stoure on þar stedes · striken to-gedir,  
 Sprenten owt spakly · with speres in hand,  
 Brochen both basynettes · & brouden sheldez,  
 Beres in-to bright stele · bitand lancez, 788  
 Sone in-to sheuerand shidez · shaftez to-bristeñ,  
 Ah to-sprongen into sprotes · sperez of cipriss,  
 Dryvez downe docesperes · and dukez of blonkez,  
 Felles fey to þe fold · many fers knyghtes. 792  
 What doys me now þis nicholas · bott nymmez hym a sper,  
 Kest hym on þis yong knyght · to gett hym a name;  
 And alexander with an oþer · ayers hym ayayns,  
 Ridyn grymly to-geder · & grysly metyñ. 796  
 So [sar] was þe semble · [þir] Seges by-twene,  
 þat ah to-wrasted þai wod · & warpyd in-sonder,  
 Ah claters in clyftez · clene to þair fistez,  
 þai lefte noþer in þaire [hand] · þe lenth of<sup>1</sup> ane Elne. 800 [Fol. 46.]  
 þan let þai no langer · bot laughtyn owt swerdes,  
 Aþir a brade blysnand brand · brade forth of shethez,  
 Hewen on heterly · hadon þorow malys,  
 Fele starand stanes · striken of þair helmes. 804  
 Than alexander in ire · hys arme vpp lyftes,  
 Swith swynnges vp hys swerd · & hys swaffe faches.  
 The nole of nicholas þe kyng · he fra [þe] nek partes,  
 That douñ he fel from hys fole · fynyshit for euer. 808  
 þus was hym destinate þat day · as driȝten hym shapyd,

<sup>1</sup> written above the line in MS.

To hent him þe hiȝere hande · of his athiȝ fais.  
 þare slike wirschip he wañ · ware wonder to teȝ;  
 Had of þat hiȝe kyng<sup>1</sup> · þe hede fra þe shuldurs. 812  
 þen was him geuyn vp þe ȝerde · & ȝolden þe rewme,  
 And aȝ at left was<sup>1</sup> o lyfe · lordis & othire,  
 Come to þat conquerour · & oñ knese<sup>2</sup> fallis,  
 And in his mercy & meth · mekely þaim put. 816  
 þis renke & his rounsy · þai reche vp a crowne,  
 As gome at has þe garland · & aȝ þe gre wonñ.  
 þus *with* þe floure in þe fild · he fangid his enmy,  
 And haldis oñ *with* hale here · hame to his fadire. 820  
 þañ fyndis he *Philip* oñ his flett · *with* a fest huge  
 Had wed him anoþer wyfe · & wayfid his quene;  
 Ane Cleopatras caled<sup>3</sup> · a grete kyngis doȝter,  
 And [laȝt] had Olympadas · & openly for-sakeñ. 824  
 “Fadire,” *quod* þis feȝ knyȝt · quen he þis fest entirs,  
 “þe palme here of my first price · I pray þe resayfe,  
 Forthe to þe weding or I winde · of my wale modire,  
 And kaire me to a-noȝire kyng<sup>1</sup> · to couple hire to wyfe.  
 For þe to felsen ne to foloȝe · fallis me na mare, 829  
 Ne here to dueȝt *with* þi douce · deynes me na langer,  
 Now þou mas þe slike a mangery · & macchis changis,  
 And I to<sup>4</sup> consaile vn-callid · I cañ noȝt þar-on.” 832  
*With* þat þar carpis<sup>5</sup> to þe kyng · a knyȝt at þe table,  
 Ane lesias, a lede · & oñ loude speches:  
 “Cleopatras a knafe child · coñsayue saȝ & bere,  
 þat demed is eftir þi deth · duly to regne.” 836  
 þañ *Alexander* at þis knyȝt · angirs vnfaire,  
 Wynnes him vþ a wardrere · he walt iñ his handis,  
 So hard him hittis oñ þe hede · his hernes out weltid,  
 And sa he lost has þe lyfe · for his leþer wordis. 840  
 þan was þe wale kyng wrath · as wonder ware ellis,  
 Braydis him vp fra þe borde · & a brand clekis,

[Fol. 14 b.]  
 All submit to  
 Alexander.

Returning,  
 he finds Philip  
 has wedded  
 another wife.

Alexander  
 refuses to submit  
 to Philip any  
 longer.

One Lesias,  
 a knight,

threatens  
 Alexander,

but loses his  
 life by

<sup>1</sup> MS. *repeats* was.      <sup>2</sup> MS. *ken knese*, *with* *ken struck out*.

<sup>3</sup> MS. *he caled*; *but he is not wanted*.

<sup>4</sup> *Added in the margin*.

<sup>5</sup> MS. *crapis*.



To hynt hym þe ouerhand · of hys athell foes.  
 þar suche a worship he wan · war wonder to telle ; 811  
 þan hed he of þe hye kyng · þe heued from þe shulders.  
 Than þai gave hym vp þe 3erd · & yolden þe realme,  
 And aH þat left wer [o] liue · lordez & other,  
 Comes to þe<sup>1</sup> conquerour · & on knes fallen,  
 And on hys mercy & his might · mekely þaim puttes. 816  
 þen þus reuerently · þai rechen hym a crowne,  
 Als gome þat hase þe garland · & aH þe gree wonne.  
 þus with þe floure in þe feld · fongez he is enmy,  
 And heldes on with a hynde heyre · home to his fader. 820  
 Then fyndes he philip with his flete · at a feste hoge  
 Had weddit hym ane oþer wiȝe · & waueschyd hys moder ;  
 Ane cleopatras was callyd · a grett kynges doghter,  
 And laft [had] olympades · & opynly forsaken. 824  
 “Fadre,” quod þis fele child · when he þe fest entred,  
 “The palme here of my first pride · I pray þe resaue,  
 Forth to þe weddyng wiH I wende · of my wale modre,  
 And caire me to ane oþer kyng · to cowpyH hir to wyfe.  
 For þe to filson ne to folow · falles me no more, 829  
 Ne here to dwelle at þi devyse · deynes me no langer,  
 Thou makes suche a mangery · & þi mache changes,  
 And I to counseH vncallyd · I can noght heron.” 832  
 With þat þar carpes to þe kyng · A knyght at þe table,  
 Ane lesyas, a lede · & on lowde spekes :  
 “Cleopatras a knaffe child · consaue sall & bere,  
 That destinate is aftir þi day · dewly to regne.” 836  
 þen Alexander at þis atheH · angers vnfaire,  
 Wynnes hym vp a wardrerd · he weld in hys hande,  
 So hard hym hitte on þe hede · his hernes owte weltyñ,  
 And so he lost hase hys lyfe · for his lether wordes. 840  
 Than [was] þe wale kyng wrath · als wonder wer elles,  
 Brades vp fro þe burde · & a brande clekez,

*Nota pri-  
mam victo-  
riam alex-  
andri.*

[Fol. 5.]

<sup>1</sup> written above the line in MS.

Philip attacks  
Alexander,  
[Fol. 15.]  
but staggers and  
stumbles.

Airid toward *Alexander* · & ames him to strike.  
Bot þan him failis þe feete<sup>1</sup> · or he first wenys, 844

He stakirs, he stumbils · & stande he ne miȝt,  
Bot ay fundirs & fallis · as he ferde ware.  
þe faster forward him<sup>2</sup> he faris · þe faster he snapirs ;  
Quat was þe cause of þe case · þat knawis oure lorde.

Alexander  
reproaches him.

“Quat now,” *quod* athiȝt *Alexander* · “quat<sup>3</sup> ailis þe  
to faȝt ? 849

Has þou na force in þi fete · ne fele of þi-selfe ?  
For a freke to be ferd · or a-fraid outhire,  
And þou þe gouernere of grece · þat ware grete  
wondire !” 852

He drags the  
bride out of  
the hall by her  
hair.

þen tittis he doune in þat tene · þe tablis ilkane,  
Out of þe haȝt be [þe] hare · halis he þe bride,  
And so þe wee in his wreth · wrekis his modire,  
And *Philip* falne [was] sare seke · & aȝ þe fest strubleȝ.  
As sone as *Alexander* · of angire he slakis,<sup>4</sup> 857

He lendis o-loft to þe lede · a litiȝt days eftir,  
Cairis vp with comfurth · þe kyng for to vysite,  
He comes to þe curten · & carpis þis wordis : 860

Alexander offers  
Philip his  
friendship,

“*Philip*,” *quod* þis ilke freke · & forwith hiȝ standis,  
“þof it vn-semely me sytt · þe so for to caȝt,  
Noȝt as þi suȝet & þi soȝn · my sawe I þe ȝeldȝ,  
Bot as a felaw or a frynde · fallis to a-nothire. 864

and asks him  
to forego his  
anger.

Sire, latt þi wreth a-wai wende · & with þi wyfe saȝtiȝ,  
And þe los of Lesias · litiȝ þou charge.  
I did bot my deuire · to drepe him, me<sup>2</sup> thinke ; 867  
For it awe him noȝt sa openly · slike ossing to make.  
And *ser*, vnworthely þou wroȝt · & þat þou wele knawis,  
Quen þou was boune with a brand · my bodi to  
schende.”

The king begins  
to weep.

þen rewis þe riche kyng · of vnride werkis,  
Blischis vp to þe berne · & braste out at grete. 872  
þen airis him oȝn *Alexander* · to his aweȝn modire ;

<sup>1</sup> MS. fete, *altered to feete.*    <sup>2</sup> *Added in the margin.*

<sup>3</sup> *quod.*

<sup>4</sup> *Read aslakes.*

Ayres toward alexander · & aymes<sup>1</sup> hym to smyte.  
 Bot he fayled þe fote · or he first wenēs, 844  
 He stakez, he stombles · þat stand he ne might,  
 Bott ay he fonders & falles · as he ferd wer.  
 The ferer forthward [he fares] · þe faster [he] snappers;  
 What was þe cause of þis case · þat knawys our Lord. 848  
 “What now,” quod alexander · “qiwatt ayles þe to  
 fale?

Hase þou no forse ne no fete · ne fele to þi seluen?  
 For oñ freke to be so ferd · or afrayd oþer,  
 And þou þe gubernare of grece · þat is a grete wondre!” 852

Then tittis he douñ in þat tene · þe tables ilkoñ,  
 Owt of þe halle by þe hare · hales he þe birde,  
 And so þe wye in his wrath · wrekes hys modre,  
 And philip fallyñ was seke · & aH þe fest stroblet. 856  
 So als byliue als alexander · on angre aslakes,  
 He lendes on-lofte to þe lord · a lityH dayes aftir,  
 Cares hym with comforth · þe kyng for to visitt,  
 Comes hym to þe cortyns · & carpez þees wordez: 860  
 “Philip,” quod þis fele freke · & for-with hym standez,  
 “þof<sup>2</sup> it vnsemely me sitt · þe so for to calle,  
 Noght als a sogett<sup>1</sup> ne þi sonne · my saw I þe yeld,  
 Bot als a fellow or a frend · falles to an-other. 864  
 Sir, lat þi wrethes aH wende · & with þi wyfe saghtyH,  
 And þe losse of sir lysyas · lityH þou charge.  
 I dyd bot my deuē · to drepe hym, me thynke, 867  
 For it awght hym nozt so opynly · sike ossynges to make.  
 And vnworthly þou wrought · & þat þou wele knawys,  
 When þou was bowne with a brande · my body to shende.”

Then rewys hym þe riche kyng<sup>1</sup> · of hys vnrode werkez,  
 Blisshes vpp to þe berne · & bristes owt to wepe. 872  
 Than ayres hym on sir alexander · to hys awne modre;

<sup>1</sup> MS. aynes.<sup>2</sup> MS. Of.

[Fol. 15 b.]

Philip and  
Olympias are  
reconciled.

"Bees not a-gloped, madame · ne greued at my fadire ;  
 If aȝ ȝe synned him be-syde · as ȝour selfe knawis,  
*par*-of na we may ȝe wite · it was godis wiȝ." 876  
*With* ȝat he fanges hire furthe · to *Philip* hire ledis,  
 And he conly hire kist · & cordis *with* hire faire,  
 Anes *with* Olympadas · & ȝe tothire woydis,  
 And lofes hire lely · to his lyfes ende. 880

## ¶ Quintus passus Alexandri.

Heralds come  
from Darius to  
Philip.

**S**one eftir in a seson · as ȝe buke sais,  
 Come driuand fra Darius · ȝe deyne Empereure,  
 Heraudis on heȝe hors · hendly a-rayedȝ,  
 To *ser Philip* ȝe fers · to feche *ȝar* trouage. 884  
 Litiȝ kyngis *ȝar* come · as ȝe clause tellis,  
 Liȝt doune at ȝe loge · & *ȝar* blonkis leues,  
 Caires in-to ȝe curte · to craue him *ȝar* dettis,  
 Touchis titly *ȝar* tale · & tribute him askis. 888  
 "Ȝa, caires hame," quod Alexander · "a-gayn to ȝour  
 kithes,

They demand  
tribute.  
Alexander  
refuses it,

And sais ȝour maister, he make · na ma sandis ;  
 For sen *Philip* had a fresche soȝ · ȝat fast now  
 encessis, 891  
 ȝat bees noȝt suffird, I supose · nane slike him to ȝeldȝ.  
 For sais ȝour lord, ȝe lefe heȝ · ȝat laide hir first egg,<sup>1</sup>  
 Hire bodi nowe *with* barante · is barely consumedȝ,  
 And is Darius so of his dett · duly deptryedȝ ;  
 And be ȝis titill, him tellis · na tribute him fallis." 896  
 ȝen merualidȝ ȝam ȝe messangirs · mekiȝ of his speche,  
 His witt & his wisdom · wonderly praysedȝ.

saying that the  
old hen is now  
barren.The messengers  
take their leave.

Faire at *ser Ph[ilip]* ȝe fers · fangȝ ȝai *ȝar* leue, 899  
 And syne clene of aȝ ȝe curte · & cairis to *ȝar* landis.  
 To ȝe palais of ȝe proude kyng · to *persie* ȝai went,  
 Dose ȝam in to Darius · *ȝar* he oȝ dese syttis,  
 And telles him how his trouage · is tynt al-to-gedire,

[Fol. 16.]

<sup>1</sup> MS. 'ege', corrected to egg.

"Beys noght aglopned, gude Dame · ne greued to my fadre,  
 Ak if þou haue synned hym bysyde · als þou þi-seluen says, [Fol 5 b.]  
 þarfore no gome may þe gylt · for it is goddes wille." 876  
 With þat fongez hir þis freke · & to philip ledes,  
 And he opynly hir kyssitt · & cordes with hir faire,  
 þus [he anes] with olimphades · & þis other woydez,  
 And leues louely with hir · aH hys lyue days. 880

### Quintus [Passus].

Sone aftir in a seson · als says me þe writtes,  
 Come dryvand from *sir* darius · þe digne Emperour,  
 Harraldes on hye horsez · hendly arayed,  
 To *sir* philopp þe fers · to fett þair truage. 884  
 Kengez þar come · als þe clause tellez,  
 Lightyd douñ at þe loge · laftyn þar blonkes,  
 Cairen fourth in-to þe courte · to crauen þair dett,  
 Tochetti titely þare tale · & tribute hym asked. 888  
 "3a, ayres hame," quod alexander · "agayn to your  
 kythez,  
 And says your maister, to me · he make no moo sondez;  
 For seth philop had a fressh sonñ · þat fast now en-  
 cresse[s],<sup>1</sup> 891  
 That beys not sufferd, I suppose · no suche to hym zeld.  
 And says your lord, þe leyue henne · þat lade hir frist Egge,  
 Hir body now with baraynte · is barely consumed,  
 And so is darius of hys dette · dewly deprived;  
 And be þis tale, hym telle · no tribute hym falles." 896  
 Than mervalett þes messyngers · mykyH of hys speche,  
 Hys witt & hys wisdom · þai wonderly praseñ.  
 Faire at philip þe fers · þair leue þai fangeñ,  
 And syne clene from þe courte · caires to þair landez. 900  
 To þe palass of þe proude [king] · to perse þai wenden,  
 And dyd þaim to *sir* darius · þare he on dese syttes,  
 And tald hym howe is truage · is tyntt aH-togedre,

<sup>1</sup> The lines 890 and 891 are written after line 892 in MS.

Messengers come  
to tell Philip  
that the men of  
Armenia have  
revolted.

As *Alexander* awyñ mouth · had þam aH enfourmed. 904

¶ þen messangirs to Messedoyne · come in þe mene  
q wile

To Ph[*ilip*] þe feH kyng · & freschly him talð,  
þat aH þe erthe of Ermony · Erles & princes,  
þat suld be suget to him-selfe · wald seke him with  
armes. 908

Philip invades  
Armenia.

And *Alexander* belyfe · as athil mañ suld,  
Vndirfangid to fezt · for Ph[*ilip*] to wende,  
Gedirs him a grete ost · graithes him in plates,  
And aires toward Ermony · þat erd to distroy. 912

A Macedonian,  
named Pausanias,

þan was a man in Messadone · in þe marche duellid,  
A proued prince & a proude · Pausanna was hatten,  
A big berne & a bald · in brenys to ryde,  
þe soñ of ane Cerastis · as þe buke witnes. 916

rebels against  
Philip.

þis freke aH his franche · of Ph[*ilip*] he haldis,  
And was a suget to him-selfe · & serues him azt;  
Bot þaH he depely many day · disired to haue þe quene,  
And lyes vmlapped with hire lufe · many lange wynter.  
And by<sup>1</sup> þat cause to þe kyng · he kest slik a hate, 921  
þat he desiris his deth · & diztis [him] þare-fore.

He had long  
loved the queen.

AH þe folke of his affinite · he freschly a-semblis, 923  
And sekis furth with a hoge some · a-saile<sup>2</sup> him to zeld.

Philip goes out  
against him.

Queñ Ph[*ilip*] heris of þat fare · gret ferly him thinke[s],  
Ferkis furth with a fewe folk · him in þe fild metis,  
Seis þe multitude sa mekiH · of men at he bringes,

Philip flees.

Braidis oñ his blonke toward þe burze · & þaim þe bak  
shewis. 928

þen schrikis schilli aH þe schalkis · & schoutis him at  
anes,

Pausanias  
pursues.

And Pausanna þe prince · a-pon a proude stede  
Sprengis out with a spere · & spedis him eftir,  
And þurgh þe bac in-to þe brest · him beris to þe erð; 932

<sup>1</sup> Inserted in the margin.

<sup>2</sup> h inserted before a-saile, but subpuncted.

Als alex[ander] awne mouth · þaim aH had enformed. 904  
 þan messyngers to masydoñ · come in þe meyne qwyle,

To philopp þe feH kyng · & felly hym toldyñ,  
 þat aH þe erth of ermony · Erelez<sup>1</sup> & princez,  
 At suld be sogett to hym-seluen · wald seke hym *with*  
 armez. 908

And alexander als beliuē · als athett man suld,  
 Vnderfonged þar þe feght · for philip his fader,

· · · · ·  
 And ayers toward ermony · þat erth to distroy. 912

Then was a man in massidon · þat in þe marche dwellyd, [Fol. 6.]

A proved prince & a proude · pausana he heght,  
 A Bigg<sup>1</sup> berne & a bald · in brenes to ryde,  
 þe sonne of one sorastes · als says me þe text. 916

This freke of all þe fraunches · of kyng philop haldes,  
 And was sogett to hym-seluen · & seruage hym awght.  
 Bot ȝett depely mony day · desirred he þe whene,  
 And leued vnappyd *with* hir loue · mony lang wynter. 920

And be þat cause to þe kyng · he kest suche a hate,  
 þat he desired hys deyde · & dight hym þarfore.  
 AH þe folke of hys affinite · he fresly assemblez, 923

And sekez owt *with* a hoge some · a-sawte hym to yelde.  
 When philip herd of þis fare · grett ferly he thynkez,  
 Ferkez forth *with* a few folke · & hym in feld metes,  
 Seys þe multitude so much · of men þat he brynges, 927  
 Brades toward þe burgh on hys blonk · & hys bak  
 shewys.

þan srikes shilly all þe shalkys<sup>2</sup> · & shotes at onys,

And pausana þe prince · vpoñ a proude stede  
 Sprynges forth *with* a spere · & spedes hym after,  
 And þorow þe bake in-to þe brest · hym berez to þe erth. 932

<sup>1</sup> *The MS. has & baron after Erelez, but crossed through and expuncted.*

<sup>2</sup> all þe is repeated here, but expuncted in MS.

[Fol. 16 b.]

AH ware he wondirly wondid · he wendis noȝt be-lyfe.  
 His men & aȝ þe Messadones · fuȝ mavnly ware  
 stourbed,

Pausanias is  
 puffed up with  
 his success.

Quat of doloure & dyn · quen þai him dede hopid.  
 Pausanna þan for þe prowis · slike a pride hentis, 936  
 Vnethes wist he for welth · wirke quat he miȝt.

Alexander  
 returns with  
 an army.

He prekis in-to þe palais · to puȝ out þe quene,  
 Wenys to wild hire at wiȝ · & away lede. 939

The queen sees  
 Alexander  
 coming.

þan comes Alexander in þat cas · þe cronacis tellis,  
 With a riall ost · of many able princes,  
 Airand out<sup>1</sup> of Ermony · & had aȝ þe erth woȝn;  
 Sees slike a rottillyng in þe rewme · & ridis al þe faster.  
 þaȝ past vp þe proud quene · in-to preue chambre, 944  
 Wayues out at wyndou · & waytis a-boute,  
 Saze be þe sygues & be sike · as with hire soȝn comys,  
 And be þe alyens armes · at he was aȝ maister.  
 With þat scho haldis out hire hede · & heȝe to him  
 callis, 948

She implores his  
 help.

“Quare is þi werdes, my wale soȝn · þou waȝn of þi godis,  
 þou suld be victour & venge · & vencust<sup>2</sup> neuire?  
 If þou hane<sup>3</sup> any hert here · help now þi modire.”  
 Sone as pausanna þe prince · with-in þe palais heris 952

Pausanias goes  
 out against  
 Alexander,

þe comyng<sup>4</sup> of þe kene knyȝt · he caires him agaynes,  
 Presis out of þe palais · with a<sup>4</sup> pake armed,  
 And metes him in þe myd-fild · with a mekill nounbre.  
 And Alexander be-lyue · quen he oȝn him waites, 956  
 He swyngis out with a swerd · & swappis him to dethe;  
 And þe renkis, aȝ the route · reches vp þaire wapen

who kills him.

Vn-to þis kid conquirour · & cried eftir socure.  
 þaȝ was þar ane in þe ost · oȝn Alexander callis, 960  
 Sayd, “Ph[ilip] þi fadire · is in þe fild drepid.”  
 And he halis furth on hede · & halfe-dede him fyn lis,  
 Brusches doune by þe berne · & bitterly wepis.

Alexander is  
 told that his  
 father is mortally  
 wounded.

<sup>1</sup> Inserted in the margin.      <sup>2</sup> MS. vencustis.  
<sup>3</sup> MS. haue hafe, altered to haue.      <sup>4</sup> Above the line.



He heldes douñ in þe hey way · & halfe deyde liggez, 933\*  
 And was so wonderly woundit · he wenyd noght to leve. 933  
 Hys men & aȝ þe masidons · fuȝ fowly wer stourblett,

What for doloure & dyne · when þai hym dede hopeñ.  
 Pausana for þees prowes · slike a pride hentes, 936  
 That vneth he<sup>1</sup> wist for welth · what he wirke might.  
 He prekes into þe palace · to puȝ owt þe whene,  
 Wenes to wilde hir at wiȝ · & away lede.

þan comes eueñ onon · þe cronacles telles, 940  
*Alexander with* ane oste · of mony able princez,  
 Ayrand owt of Ermony · hed aȝ þe erth wonne;  
 Herd suȝne a rastelyng in þe realm · & rydez þe faster.

2<sup>a</sup> victoria  
alexandri

Than passyd forth þe proude whene · into a prevay chamەر,  
 Wayfez vp a wyndow · & waytes þar-owt, 945

Sees wele by signes · at hir sonne come,  
 And by þe alyens armes · þat he was aȝ mayster.  
 With þat she haldez forth hir heued · & hegh to hym  
 calles : 948

[Fol. 6 b.]

“Whare er þi werdes, my wale sonñ · þou wan of þi goddez,  
 Thu suld be victour to venge · & venkest neuer?  
 Yf þou haue ony hert her · help now þi moder.”

Sone as pausana in þe place · þis tale herys, 952  
 And þe commyng of þis kene knyght · he carys hym ayayns,  
 Preses owt of þe palasse · with a pake enarmed,  
 And metes hym in þe myd-feld · with a much nowmbre.

Bot alexander als belyfe · as he on hym wates, 956  
 He swynges owt a sharpe swerde · & hym to deth swappys;  
 And þen hys renkez aȝ in rowte · rechen vp þar waypynnez  
 Vnto þis kyd conquerour · & cryeñ aftir socour. 959

þen sayd þar an with-in þe ost · & oñ alexander calles,  
 Sayd : “philip þi fader · is in þe feld drepyd.”  
 And he hyes þen fast forth · & halfe-deyde hym fyndez,  
 Brushys down by þe berne · & bitterly wepys.

<sup>1</sup> MS. hy, corrected to he.

[Fol. 17.]

"A ! Alexander !" *quod* þe kyng · "now am I at<sup>1</sup> ane ende ;" 964

A litiH listis vp his liddis · & lokis in his face ;

Philip is glad  
to know of  
Alexander's  
success ;

"Bot ȝit it gladis me," *quod* þe gome · "to ga þus to deth,

To se my slaare in my siȝt · be sa sone ȝolden, 967

A ! wele be þe, my wale soñ " · & waged *with* his hede ;

"þou has baldly oñ my bane · & bremely me vengid."

*With* þat he blopiis in þe brest · & þe breth stoppis,

and dies.

And in a spedfuH space · so þe sprete ȝeldis.

And Alexander ay oñ-ane · augirly he wepis, 972

And gretis for him as greuously · as he him geten hade.

*With* barons & bachelers · him broȝt to þe cite,

Alexander  
buries him.

And erdis him in his awen erd · as Emperoure fallis.

The day efter his deth · drerely him wendis 976

Alexander his aire · & syttis in his trone,

He assumes  
the crown,

A clene croune oñ his hede · clustird *with* gemmes,

To se how him seme wald · þe sete of his fadire.

He seis doune in þe sete · *with* septer in hande, 980

and summons all  
his knights.

Makis a crie þat aH þe curte · kniȝtis & erles

Suld put þaim in-to presens · his precep to here.

And aH comyñ at a kaH · & oñ kneis heldis ; 983

He addresses  
them.

þan blisches he to his baronage · & breues þir wordis :

"Lo ! maistirs of Messedone · sa miȝty meñ & noble,

ȝe Traces & of Tessaloyne · & ȝe þe trewe Grekis,

How likis ȝow nowe ȝour lege lord ? · lokis oñ my

fourme, 987

"Dismiss all fear.

And letis aH ferdship at flee · & fange vp ȝour hertis,

And aires for nane alyens · quils Alexander lastis.

For *with* þe graunt of my god · I gesse, or I dye,

þat aH the Barbare blode · saH bowe to my-selfe.

Every nation  
shall serve me

þare is na regioñ ne rewme · ne renke vnder heuen, 992

Ne nouthire-quare na nacioñ · bot it saH my name loute.

[Fol. 17 b.]

For we of grece saH haue þe gree · *with* grace ay to wild,

And anely be ouer þe werd · honourd & praysed.

<sup>1</sup> Inserted at the end of the line.

"Aa! alexander, sonn!" quod þis atheH · "[now] am I  
att on ende." 964

A lityH lyftes hys lendes · & lukes in hys face;

"Bot ʒett me gladdes," quod þis gome · "to byde þus on  
lyve,

To see my slaer in my sight · be so sone ʒholden. 967

A! wele be þou, wale son" · & wagged with hys heued;

"For þou hase baldly on my bane · & bremely me venged."

With þat he blothers in þe brest · & hys breth stoppys,

And in a spedfuH space · þe spirit he ʒeldez.

Bott alexander euerelike · awgerdly pleynez, 972

And grettes for hym als grefully · as he hym gettyn hed. Nota mortem  
philippi, &c.

With barons & with bachelers · he bare hym to þe cyte,

And erdes hym in hys awne erth · as emperour falles.

The day after hys deth · þen durely he<sup>1</sup> wendes 976

Alexander hys ayre · vppe in hys awne trone,

A clere croune on hys heued · clustird with gemmys,

To se how he<sup>1</sup> seme wald · þe sete of hys fader.

He sittes down in þat sete · with septour in hand, 980

Makes a cry þat aH þe courte · knyghtez & Erelez

Suld come & be present · hys precept<sup>t</sup> to here.

And aH þai come at hys calle · & on kneys heldit,

þan blysssez he vnto hys bernes · & breues þes wordez: 984

"Lo! maisterlynges of massydoñ · so myghty & so noble, [Fol. 7.]

Ye tracez of thessaloñ · & ye trew grekez,

How likez now you your leege lord? · loke on my forme,

And lettes aH ferdshipys<sup>2</sup> flee · & fongez vpp your hertes,

And arghes for no aliens · whilse alexander lefys. 989

For with þe graunt of my god · I gesse, or I dye,

þat aH þe barberon blode · saH bow to my seluen.

Thare is no region ne realm · so riche vnder heuen, 992

Ne noþer-whare no nacion · bot saH my name lowte.

For we of grece sal haue þe gre · with grace ay to weld,

And only ouer aH þe world · be honourd & prassed.

<sup>1</sup> read him.

<sup>2</sup> MS. frendshipys.

Whoever wants  
arms, let him  
take them."

'And quilk of aȝ myne athiȝ meȝ · þat any armes  
wantis, 996

All the old  
knights reply,  
saying,

Lat pas in-to my palais · & plates him delyuire,  
And he<sup>1</sup> at of his aweȝ has · harnas him swythe,  
And make him boune ilka berne · to bataiȝ to ride."  
þaȝ answard him *with* [a] voice · aȝ his prouȝ princes,  
And Erles in his Empire · þat ware in eld strikȝ, 1001  
Hathils of hiȝe age · Auncient kniȝtis,

" Our strength  
fails us.

Barons & bachelers · & bryssid ware in Armes :  
" Sire, we hafe farne to þe fiȝt · & bene in fild preued  
*With ser Ph[ilip]* ȝour fadire · mony fele wynter, 1005  
And now vs failis aȝ oure force · & oure flesch waykis ;  
For be þe floure neuer sa fresche · it fadis at þe last.

Our heads cannot  
bear the helmet.

Sire, aȝ þe ȝeris of oure ȝouthe · es ȝare syne passid,  
And we for-trauailid & terid · þat now oure topp haris,  
Al to heuy to be hildid · in any here wedis, 1010  
Or any angwische of armes · any mare suffire.

We beseech you  
to let us go.

For-þi, lord, *with* ȝoure leue · we lawe ȝow be-sechis  
We may noȝt stand now in stede · oure strenth is [to]  
febiȝ.

Choose younger  
men."

Wale ȝow oȝer werriouris · þat wiȝt ere & ȝonger,  
Slike as ere stife in a stoure · strakis to thole."

" Nay,"  
says the king,  
" I want old men,

" Nay, be my croune," *quod* þe king · " my couatyng is  
elder 1016

who are wary."

þe sadnes of slike meȝ · þaȝ swyftnes of childir ;  
For barnes in þar bignes · it baldis þaȝ mekiȝ,  
Oft *with* vnprouednes in presse · to pas out of lyfe ;  
For-thi ouer-siȝt of alde men · I anely me chese ; 1020

All praise his  
choice.

Be connyng & be consaile · þai kyth ai þar werkis."  
þe sleȝt of hys<sup>2</sup> sapience · þai selcuthely prayse,  
And clene a-cordis to his carpe · kniȝtis & othire.  
¶ þen dose him furthe þis dere kyng · a litiȝ dais eftir,  
Alexander *with* ane ost · of many athiȝ dukis, 1025

[Fol. 18.]

<sup>1</sup> Inserted at the end of the line.

<sup>2</sup> þar, altered to hys.

And whilk of aH my atheH men · any armour wantes, 996

Bot passe into my palasse · & plates hym delyver,  
And he þat of hys awne hase · harnes hym swith,  
And make hym bowne euerylke berne · to bateH to wend.”  
þen answerd hym *with* a voyce · aH hys proude princez  
And Ereles of hys Empire · þat wer in elde stryken, 1001  
Hatels<sup>1</sup> of hegh age · & auancet knyghtez,

Barons & bachelers · þat bresyd wer in armys :  
“ Sir, we haue faren in-to feld<sup>2</sup> · & ben in feld<sup>2</sup> preuett  
With *sir philip your fader* · many fele wyntre, 1005  
And now vs falez aH *our* force · & owr fleche wakens ;  
For be þe floure neuer so freshe · it fades at þe lasti.

Sir, aH þe ȝeres of owr youth · bene ȝare syne passyd, 1008  
And we for-traveld & for-tyred · þat now owr topp̄ horez,  
AH to hevy to be hold · *with* ony here wedes,

Or ony awnterez of armes · to any more suffre.  
For-þi, lorde, *with your leve* · we loughly besekes, 1012  
We may noght stande you in stede · *our* strenthez er to  
feble.

Lat wale you other weriowrs · þat wight er & yonge,  
Sike as styffe er in stowre · strakez to dele.”

“ Nay, by my Corone,” *quod þe kyng* · “ my covetyng is  
helder 1016

The sadnesse of suche men · þen swyftnes of childer ;  
For barnez in þair bignes · þat beldez þaim to mekyH,  
Oft *with vnpro[ued]nes*<sup>3</sup> in prese<sup>4</sup> · passen owt of liue ;  
For-þi ouersight of ald meñ<sup>5</sup> · I anely me chese ; 1020  
By Connyng<sup>6</sup> & conseH · þai kythen ay þar Werkez.”

[Fol. 7 b.]

So þe sleght of hys sapience · þai selcouthly praseñ,  
And clene acordes to hys carpyng<sup>1</sup> · knyghtez & othre.<sup>6</sup>  
Than dose hym furth þe derfe kyng<sup>1</sup> · a lityH days aftir,  
*Alexander with ane ost* · of mony atheH dukez, 1025

<sup>1</sup> So in MS.

<sup>2</sup> MS. repeats feld.

<sup>3</sup> MS. vnprones.

<sup>4</sup> MS. prorese, corrected to prese.

<sup>5</sup> MS. almeñ.

<sup>6</sup> MS. othree.

- Samed a vnsene somme · to saile he begynnes  
 He goes towards Italy. Ouer in-to ytaile · þa yles to distruye.  
 In-to þe coste of Calodone · he comes him ouer first,  
 He assaults Chalcedon. And þar a cite he asailes · &<sup>1</sup> in sege lengis. 1029  
 Bot wees wíztly *with-in* · þe wallis ascendid̃,  
 Freschly fendid of · & fersly *with-stude*.  
 He calls on its warriors to fight to the death, “þe Calodoyns,” *quod* þe kyng · he callis fra *with-*  
 oute, 1032  
 “Outhire macches ȝow maynly þerto · or namely dies,  
 And fíztis fast *with ȝour fais* · to ȝe fey worthe,  
 or to yield at once. Or ȝefes ȝarely vp þe ȝerde · & ȝeld me þe cite.”  
 So chaunses it þis chiftan · or he a-cheued þine, 1036  
 þat fele he brenes of þa bernes · & þe burȝe wynnes,  
 And caires so out of Calodone · quen he it couerid had̃,  
 He enters Italy. Ouer þe ythes in-to Italee · & þat Ile entirs. 1039  
 þeñ ware þai<sup>2</sup> [redles of] rede · aH redd of his come,  
 The Romans give him 60,000 besants. Prays him aH of þe pees · & presandis him faire,  
 Sexti thousand þai him send · of sekire besandis,  
 Of clere gold of paire kist · & coruns a hundrethe.  
 þare tuke he tribute þat tyme · þe titiH recordis, 1044  
 Out eyn in-to þe occident · of aH at þare duellid̃,  
 He lays Europe under tribute, and goes to Africa. Of qwilke þe erde & þe erthe · Europe was callid̃,  
 And ames þaH to Affrike · & aH at esse leues.  
 þan razt he fra þa regions · & remowed his ost, 1048  
 Cachis in-to anopire kythe · & crossis ouer þe stremes,  
 Aires in-to Affrike · *with* many athiH prince[s],  
 He wins Africa. Anoper wing of þe werd · & wynnes it be-lyfe,  
 þat syde sodanly & sone · þat ser he a-cheues. 1052  
 For þar he fand̃ bot fewe · þat felly *with-stude*,  
 Na ridars in þa<sup>3</sup> regions · ne rebeH bot littiH;  
 He laches it þe liztlyere · as was þe les wonder.  
 [Fol. 18 b.] þan kaires he fra þo contres · & kerue[s] ouer þe  
 stremes, 1056  
 Furthe to Frantites he ferd · slike a ferre Ile,

<sup>1</sup> Above the line.<sup>2</sup> MS. þe.<sup>3</sup> MS. na, corrected to þa.

Sampnez ane vnsene some · to sayle he begynnez  
 Oure in-to Itale · þe ylez to distroy.  
 In-to þe cost of calydoñ · he commez on first, 1028  
 And þar a cyte assalez · and in a sege lenges.  
 Bot wies wightly *with-in* · þe wallez ascendyñ,  
 Freshly defendyng<sup>t</sup> of · & fersly *with-stondyñ*.  
 “Yhe calodons,” quod þe kyng · and [calles] from *with-*  
 owte, 1032  
 “Owther mache yow manly<sup>1</sup> þarto · or maynly dyez,  
 And feght fast *with* 3ouer faes · to yhe faye worthen,  
 Or yevez 3arely vp þe 3erd · and gefes me vp þe cite.”  
 So chauncez it þat cheftan · or he achevet þine, 1036  
 That fele he britens of þa bernez · & þe burgh wynnez.  
 þen carez owt of calidoñ · when he it coueryd hadde,  
 Owre þe ylez of ytale · & þa ylez entrees.  
 And þai wer redles of-ragthe<sup>2</sup> · of þis kengez commyng,  
 Prayed hym all for þe pease · & present hym faire, 1041  
 Sixty thousand hym sendes · of sekyr besandez,  
 Of clere gold of þair kystez · and corownez a hundreth.  
 Thare tuke he tribute þat tyme · as þe text recorderz, 1044  
 Owt onon into þe occident<sup>t</sup> · of aH þat þar dwellyd,  
 Of þe whilke þe erth · of Ermony is callyd,  
 And amez hym toward aufrike · & aH at ease leues.  
 Than raught he from þe regions · & rowmyd hys oste, 1048  
 Cachez into an-other kyth · & crosez ouer þe stremez,  
 Ayrez hym into aufrik · *with* mony athell princez,  
 An-other wyng of þe werld · wynnes it belyue,  
 þat syde sodanly & sone · þat sire hym achevys. 1052  
 For þar he fand bott few · to fersly hym *withstonde*,  
 Ne ryders in þat regions · ne rebellez bot lityH;  
 And he þaim laught all þe lighter · as was les wondre.  
 þen cairez he fro þoes cuntrees · & kerues ouer þe  
 stremes, 1056  
 Forth to francides he fared · suche a ferme yle,

[Fol. 8.]

<sup>1</sup> MS. maly, corrected by later hand to manly.<sup>2</sup> So in MS.; both MSS. corrupt.

Seches þar to a synagoge · him-selfe & his princes,  
 Amon þar awen god · at þai honoure myȝt. 1059  
 And so to þe temple as he tiȝt · with his<sup>1</sup> tid<sup>1</sup> Erles,  
 þa<sup>n</sup> metis him myddis þe way · was meruale to sene,  
 A hert with a huge hede · þe hareest o<sup>n</sup> erthe,  
 Was to be-hald as a harow · for-helid ouer þe tyndis ;  
 And þa<sup>n</sup> comande him þe kyng · kenely to schote, 1064  
 Bot þar was na ma<sup>n</sup> so nemy<sup>H</sup> · þat him hit couthe.  
 He draws a bow, and shoots it ; “A ! hilla, haile,” quod Alexander · & him a narawe  
 hent,  
 Droȝe, & at þe first draȝte · him dreped for euire.  
 Fra þethen to þis ilk day · þan is þat ilke place, 1068  
 þe stede þar þis stith ma<sup>n</sup> · strikis þis hert,  
 Sagittarius forsoth · me<sup>n</sup> gafe it to name,  
 And wi<sup>H</sup> do for þat ilke werk · ay qwen þe werd turnes.  
 Alexander offers to Ammon. þen aires him o<sup>n</sup> ser Alexander · ti<sup>H</sup> Amo<sup>n</sup> temple,  
 Offirs to his awen gode · & honours him faire, 1073  
 Geuys him garsons of gold · & of gud stanes,  
 And hald hestes him to hete · him hettirly besekis.  
 He comes to a place with 15 towns, þan passes he þethen with his princes · to sich a place  
 wendis, 1076  
 Capho Resey we rede · þe romaunce it callis ;  
 And þar-in fyndis him þe freke · fyftene Burghes,  
 and 12 rivers. And glidand to þe grete see · xij grym waters.  
 Of ilka bild<sup>1</sup>, sais þe buke · barred was þe ȝatis, 1080  
 Stoken stifly with-out · with staplis & cheynes.  
 He halts there. þare lengis him lefe þe<sup>1</sup> kynge · & logis a<sup>n</sup> a neuen,  
 And sacrificy þar efsones<sup>2</sup> · to many sere godis.  
 He sees Serapis in a dream, [Fol. 19.] þe same niȝt in his slepe · Seraphis aperis, 1084  
 Anothire of his grete godis · in a grym fourme,  
 Cled in a comly clathe · of castans hewes,  
 And silis euy<sup>n</sup> to him-selfe · & said him þir wordis :  
 “Alexander, athi<sup>H</sup> kyng” · & asperly spekis, 1088  
 Toward a miȝti montayne · him myntis with his  
 fynger,

<sup>1</sup> At the end of the line.<sup>2</sup> Read eftsones.



Sekes þar to a synagoge · hym-selfe & hys princez,  
 Amonge þar awne god · þat þai adour mighten,  
 And so to hys tempyH to-teght · aH with hys tried Ereles.  
 Than met þaim in myd way · was mervale to see, 1061  
 Ane hert with a hoge heued · þe aughfulest on erth,  
 Was to behald as a harrow · foreheld ouer with tyndez;  
 And þan Comandez þaim þe kyng · kenely to shote, 1064  
 Bot þar was no man so nemyH · þat hym hit couth.  
 “A! eueH hale!” quod alexander · & an arow hyntes,

Drogh, and at þe frist draught · hym drepyd for euer.  
 Fro þine þan vnto þis day · þan is þat ilke place, 1068  
 The stede þar þis styffe man · strikez þis hert,  
 Sagittarius for soth · men seggeñ it to name,  
 And wiH do for þat ilke deyd · ay to þe werld lastes.  
 Than ayrez hym on *sir alexander* · to þe amonez temple,  
 Offers to hys awne god · & honours hym faire, 1073  
 Gyffez hym garsons<sup>1</sup> of gold · and other gude stanez,  
 And held hestez hym to hete · heterly besekez.  
 Than passid he þine with hys princez · to sicke a place  
 wendes, 1076

Chaipho rosey we rede · þe romanys it telles;  
 And þarin fyndez þe freke · fyftene burges,  
 And glydand to þe grett see · twelfe gret waters.  
 Off ilke belde, says þe buke · barred was þe zates, 1080  
 Stoken styfly withowte · with barrez of yren.  
 Thare lengez þe leue kyng · & loges aH an eueñ,  
 And sacrificed þar eft-sones · to mony sere goddez.  
 The same nyght in hys slepe · serapys appered, 1084  
 An-other of hys grett goddez · & in a grymme forme,  
 Clede in a clath · of castanez colour,  
 And syles euen to hym-selfe · & sayd hym þees wordez:  
 “A! alexander, ateH<sup>2</sup> kyng ” · and asperly spekys,  
 And toward a myghty mountane · hym myntyd with hys  
 fynger, 1089

<sup>1</sup> MS. garfons.<sup>2</sup> So in MS.

"May þou ozt, lede, þe ʒonder lawe · lyft oñ þi schulder,  
And stire it oute of þe stede · & stable in a-nothire?"

He answers,  
"Nay."

"Nay, qua miȝt þat," *quod* þe mañ · "for mede vndire  
heuen?" 1092

Serapis pro-  
phesies that  
Alexander's name  
shall endure as  
long as the  
mountain.  
Alexander asks  
when his death  
will come.

"Sire, as ʒone ʒondire hiȝe hiȝ · saȝ ay hald his place,  
So sall þi name fra now furth · be mynned in mynde,  
And ay to þe day of dome · þi dedis be remenbrid."

þan Alexander belyue · him askis a demaunde, 1096

"I be-seche þe now, Syraphas · if þou me say wald<sup>1</sup>  
þe prophecy, or þou pas · of aȝ my playñ werdis, 1099  
How me is destayned to dye · & quen my day fallis?"

Serapis says it is  
better for him not  
to know;

"Sire, *certayne*," *quod* Seraphis · "as to my-selfe  
thinkis, 1101

For any hathiȝ vnder heuen · I hald for þe better,  
Withouten wa<sup>2</sup> noȝt at wete · þe wathe of his ende  
þeñ know<sup>3</sup> þe cas or it come · & ay in care lenge. 1104

but he will be  
poisoned while  
still young.

Bot neuer-þe-les I saȝ þe neuē · señ þou me now prays,  
þou sall<sup>4</sup> be drechid of a drinke · a draȝte of vnsele,  
And aȝ þi ʒeris ere ʒeten ʒare · & þi ʒouthe fenyst, 1107  
Lange or þou haue metē þe merke · of þi mydill age.

Bot quen ne in quat time · sal qwaite þe þis aunter,  
Enquire me noȝt þat question · for I queth þe it neuer.

Another oracle  
will tell him  
more.

For outhire out of þe orient · saȝ openly here-efter  
Vndo þe dreȝt of þi days · & þi ded teȝ. 1112

þañ waynest him þis vayne god · & voidis fra þe  
chambre.

þe modi kyng on þe morne · aȝ monand he ryses;

[Fol. 19 b.]

þe mast parti of his princes · & of his proud ost  
Hastis þaȝ in-to Ascoiloym · & þar þai him bydis. 1116

He calls his  
carpenters,

þan callis he to hiȝ carpentaris · & comandis þaim  
swyþe

<sup>1</sup> After l. 1097 the MS. has a half-line, viz. 'For any hathiȝ vndire heuen.' This is really the former half of l. 1102 below, and is marked for omission in the MS. This accounts for the omission of l. 1098 in the numbering, which is made to agree with Stevenson's edition.

<sup>2</sup> MS. to noȝt at wete; but either to, or at, must be omitted.

<sup>3</sup> The w above the line.

<sup>4</sup> MS. sall sal.

"May þou oght, lede, yond[e]r low · lift on þi shulder,  
And stere it owt of one stede · & stablet in ane other?"

"Nay, wha myȝt þat," quod þe mañ, · "for mede vnder  
heuen?" 1092

"Sir, as yonder hye hille · saH hald ay hys place,  
So saH þi name owt of nowmbre · be nomyn in-to mynde, [Fol. 8 b.]  
And vnto þe day of dome · þi dedes be remenbryd."

Than alexander als belyue · hym askys a demande, 1096

"I beseke þe, sir serapys · yf þou me say wald<sup>1</sup>  
þe prophecy or þou passe · of aH my playne werdes, 1099  
How me is destanet to dye · & when my day fallez?"

"Sir, certainly," quod seraphys · "als to my-seluen  
thynkez, 1101

To ony atheH vnder heuen · I hald it for þe better,  
With-owtyn wa noȝt to witte · þe wothe of hys ende  
Ne know þe cause or it come · & ay in care lenge. 1104

Bot neuer-þe-lesse I saH þe neveñ · sen þou me prayes,  
Thu saH be drenchett with a drinke · a draught of vnelene,  
And aH þe yherez þar · in þi youth fynshytt,

Lange or þou metyn haue þe merke · of þi medyH age.  
Bott when ne in what age or tyme · saH falle þis awentur,  
Inquire me noght þis question · I queth it þe neuer. 1110

For other owt of þe orient · saH openly hereafter  
Vnto<sup>2</sup> þe droȝt of þi days · & þi deth to<sup>3</sup> telle." 1112

þan vanyshit þis wayn god · & · woydez from þe  
chawmbre.

The mody kyng on þe morne · aH murnand he risez,  
þe moste party of hys princez · & of hys proude ostez  
Bound to ascolon · and þar hym abydez. 1116

Than callyd he to hys carpenters · comand þaim  
swythe

<sup>1</sup> Line 1098 is omitted in the numbering; see note on p. 55.

<sup>2</sup> So; for Vndo.

<sup>3</sup> Better omitted.

and builds  
Alexandria.

In mynde & in memory of him · to make a cite,  
And neuens it his awen name · *pat* neuer syne changid,  
Bot Alexsander ay furth · efter him-selueñ.<sup>1</sup> 1120

### ¶ Sextus passus Alexandri.

He goes to  
Egypt.

**N**ow airis he furthe with his ost · to Egist he  
thinkes ;

And clene aH þe contre · quen þai his come herd,  
As he had bene a hiȝe gode · þai ȝode him a-gayñ,  
Resaued him with reuerence · & to þar rewme lede. 1124

There he finds a  
black image.

þere entirs him *pat* Emperoure · & in *pat* erd findis  
Of Anec his awen sire · ane ymage of sable,  
A berne was of blake stane · aH þe body heweñ  
With conyschance of a kyng · with<sup>2</sup> coroñ & septere.

He inquires who  
it is.

þan askis of þam Alexander · as he þar-oñ lokis, 1129  
Quat maner of mañ apoñ mold · it was made efter ?

He is told it is  
Anectanabus.

“Sire, Anectabus” · *quod* aH with a steuen,  
“*pat* aH þe erth of Egipte · enerid vmquile.” 1132  
With *pat* þe flammand flode · feH in his eȝeñ,

He weeps,  
saying, “It is my  
own father.”

“*pat* Anec,” *quod* þis athil kyng · “was myne awen  
fadire.”

þan fallis he flat oñ þe fold · & þe fete kyssis ;  
Oñ þe stane quare it stode · stilly he mournes. 1136

He goes to Syria.

Syne in-to Sirie with his seggis · he soȝt at þe gaynest,  
And þai<sup>2</sup> as baratours bald · him bigly with-standis,  
Set oñ him sadly · & sloȝe of his kniȝtis ;  
Bot ȝet ȝarely are he ȝode · þai ȝald him þe regne. 1140

Then to  
Damasus.  
[Fol. 20.]

þan drafte he sa to Damac · with dukis & princes,  
And sone he sesyd aH *pat* syde · & Sydoyne he takis,

He besieges  
Tyre.

And þen trussis him to Tyre · & þare his tentis settis  
Be-syde þe cite with a soñe · & in a seȝe lengys. 1144  
þare he lies with his ledis · lang or he foundes,  
Before þe burȝe with his bernis · & mekiH bale suffirs.

<sup>1</sup> callid added in a later hand, at the end of the line.

<sup>2</sup> Inserted at the end of the line.

In mynde & memory of hym · to make þar a cite,  
 And after his <sup>1</sup> awne name · þat neuer syne chaungett,<sup>2</sup>  
 Alexander ay forth · after hym-selueñ. 1120

### Sextus Passus.

Now ayers he forth with hys Ereles, · to egiþ he  
 wendes ;

And clene aH þe cuntree · when þai hys comyng harde,  
 Ais he hed ben a hegh god · þai halden hym agayns,  
 Resaved hym with reuerence · & to þair realm ledyñ.  
 Thare entrez hym þe Emperour · and in þat erth fyndez  
 Of anec hys awne syre · ane ymage of sabyH,  
 A berne was of blak stane · aH þe body eueñ 1127

With conyshaunce of kynges · coroñ and septur in hand.  
 Than askys he þaim alexander · als he þar-on wates,  
 What maner of man vpon mold · þat was merkyd after?  
 "Sir, anec," quod aH men · with a sterne stevenñ,  
 "That þe erth of egipt<sup>t</sup> · enhered some tyme." 1132

With þat þe femand flode · flashed in hys eghen,  
 "That anec," quod þis atheH kyng · "my awne fadre  
 was."

[Fol. 9.]

þan fallez he flatt on þe fold · & þe fote kyssez  
 Of þat stane þat stode · & styilly murnez. 1136

Syne into surry with hys seggez · he soght þe ganest,  
 And þai as baratours bald · hym bigly withstandyn,  
 Set vppon hym sadly · & slew of hys knyghtez ;  
 Bot 3arle or he 3ode · þai 3olde hym vp þe realm. 1140

Than draue he so to Damask · with dokez & princez,  
 And sone he sesys aH þat syde · and sy[do]ne he takez,  
 And þen he trussys hym to tyre · & þar hys tentes settes  
 Besyde þe site with a somme · & in a sege lengez. 1144  
 þair he lay with hys ledes · lange or he fondyt<sup>t</sup>,  
 Before þe burgh with hys bernes · & muche bale suffred.

<sup>1</sup> MS. myne ; *wrongly*.

<sup>2</sup> MS. *chaungett*.

His men grow  
weary, and  
complain.

Quat of ane, quat of <sup>1</sup> opire · oft his oste pleynes,  
For wele wist þai þam nane · to wyñ to þe cite, 1148  
It was sa stiffe & sa strang<sup>r</sup> · & stalworthly wallid,  
And<sup>2</sup> so hedously hiȝe · it was a huge wondire,  
Tildid fuþ of turestis · & toures of defence,

The strong forts  
of Tyre.

Batailid & bretagid · a-boute as a casteH. 1152  
þe wawis of þe wild see · apoñ þe wallis betis,  
þe pure populande hurle<sup>3</sup> · passis it vmby,  
It was enforced with sa fele · fludis & othire, 1155  
It semed neuer sege vnder soñ · be saute it to wyñ.  
þan etils him *sir Alexander* · & belyue makis

He builds a vast  
tower.

Be-side þe cite in þe See · to sett vp a loge,  
A hiȝe tilde as a toure · teldid oñ schippis,  
þat miȝt na Naue for þat note · neȝe to þe cite. 1160  
Quen he þis baisteH had bild · vþ to þe burȝe wallis,  
And tiȝt him as tyme was · þe toune to assaiH,

His men are  
famished,

Slik mischife in þe mene quile · emangi his men fallis,  
For megire & for meteles · ware mervaille to here. 1164  
þar was Princes in poynt · to perisch for euire,  
Alle in doute to be dede · dukis & erlis,

and nearly die of  
hunger.

In fere to be famyschist · many fers kniȝtis,  
For þar is na wa in þe werd · to þe wode hunger. 1168  
þan pleynis him þe proud kyng · þe pete of his mē,

He sends to  
Jerusalem.

And sendis out his sandis-meñ · with selid lettirs,  
To ierusalem to laudis · at þe iewes teches, 1171

[Fol. 20 b.]

þat was þe bischoþ in þat burȝe · breuyd in þa dais;

He demands help  
and more men.

Him moneste as a maister · him<sup>1</sup> mayñly to send  
Fresch folke for þe fiȝt · & fode for his oste,  
And aH þe trouage þare to him · tittly to wayne,  
þat he to Darius of dewe · was dangird to paye. 1176  
And ȝit comand he þis clerke · þe kyng in his writtes,  
For any richas him redis · rathere to thole

He tells them it is  
better to serve  
Greeks

þe mayntenance of þe Messedoyns · & of þe meri  
Grekis,

<sup>1</sup> *Inserted at the end of the line.*

<sup>2</sup> MS. And þai; but þai is better omitted. <sup>3</sup> read perle.

What of o þing, whatt of oþir · ofte hys oste plenys,  
 For wele trowde þai þan · none to wynne to þe cite, 1148  
 It was so stiffe & so strangi · & so stalworthly wroght,  
 And so hydusly hye · þat was A grett wondre,  
 Tyldet fuþ of torrettes · & towrez of defencez,  
 Bateld & britagett · abowt as a casteH. 1152  
 The wawes of þe wilde see · vpon þe walle betyñ,  
 The pure populand perle · passyd it vmbe,  
 It was enforsed so wele · with flodez & other, 1155  
 Þar semed neuer sege vnder þe soñ · by sawte it to wynne.  
 Than etellez hym *sir alexander* · & als belyue makes  
 Besyde þe cite in þe see · to sett vp a loge,  
 A hye tylde as a towre · tyldet of shippes,  
 Þat might no navy for þat note · negh to þe haven. 1160  
 When he þis basteH had byggyd · nere þe burgh walles,  
 And tight hym as tyme was · þe burgh to assaylle,  
 Such mischefe in þe meynne tyme · vppon þe men fallez,  
 For meger & for metelesse · wer mervell to telle. 1164  
 Thare wer princez in plite · to *perische* for cuer,  
 AH in dowte to [be] dede · dukez & Ereles,  
 In fere to be famyshyd · mony ferce knyghtez,  
 For þar is [na] wa in werld · to þe wod hunger. 1168  
 Than rewys hym þe proude kyng · þe pyte of hys meñ,  
 And sendys forth sendesmen · with selett *lettres*,  
 To Ierusalem to Iawdez · þat þe Iewes teches,  
 Þat of þat burgh was byshoþ · brevyd in þo dayes; 1172  
 He monyshytt hym as a minister · hym manly to sende  
 Fresh folk for þe fight · & fode for þe folke,  
 And aH þair truage · tyte to hym wayfe,  
 That he to Darius of dew · was dangert to pay. 1176  
 And 3it command he þis clerke · þe kyng in hys writtez,  
 For any richez he redes · rather to chese  
 The mayntenaunce of massidons · & of þe mony grekez,

[Fol. 9 b.]

**Epistola.**

than Persians.

þaṅ þaim<sup>1</sup> of Persy to pay · or to plesē authere. 1180

þaṅ takis þe bischop þe breue · & buzes to a chambre,

Resayued it *with* reuerence · & redis it<sup>2</sup> ouire,

Gase him doun be degrece · a-gayne to þe sale,

Swiftly to þe swiars · & þaṁ his sware ȝeldis : 1184

The bishop of  
Jerusalem says  
he will never go  
against Darius.

“Sirs, airis a gayn to Alexander · & aḥ þus<sup>3</sup> him tellis,

þat me was done many day · depely to swere,

Neuer Persy to paire · to pas *with* myne armes

In damaging of Darius · durand his lyfe.” 1188

Sone as þe wale kyng wist · he writhis him vnfaire,

Alexander is  
wrath, and wows  
to teach them  
better.

“Now be þat god,” *quod* þe gome · “þat gatt me on  
erthe,

I saḥ anes on þe iewis · enioyne or I die, 1191

Saḥ keṅ þaṁ quas comandment · to kepe at þaṁ  
faḥ.”

Ȝit for na torfar him tid · Tyre wald he noȝt leue,

Bot chese him out a chiftane · & charge[s] him belyue,

A mody man, *ser* Meliager · a maister of his<sup>4</sup> oste,

He sends men  
out on the  
‘foray of Gadirs.’

To fande him furth *with* a flote · of fyue hundreth

kniztis ; 1196

A[nd] Ioynes him to Iosaphat · his iournay to<sup>5</sup> take,

And aḥ þe pastours & þe playnes · prestly to driue,

And bring in aḥ þe bestaiḥ · barayn & othire,

þat he miȝt se oṅ any syde · þe cite of Gadirs. 1200

Meleager and  
Sampson enter  
[Fol. 21.]  
the valley,

þaṅ mouys he on, *ser* Meliager · þis miȝtifull prince

*With* a soume of sekir men · & Sampson þaṁ ledis,

A renke at in þa regions · haḍ redyn oft sythis,

And knew þe costis & þe kitthis · clene aḥ-to-gedire.

þus ȝede þai furthe egrily · & entirs þe vaile, 1205

And slike a prai þaṁ apreueḍ · as pyne were to rekeṅ,

and take a great  
number of cattle.

Bryngis furthe, sayd þe boke · bestis out of nounbre,<sup>6</sup>

And trottes oṅ toward Tyre · *with* taite at þaire hertis.

Bot or þai meteṅ ware a myle · þe meris *with*-outen,

<sup>1</sup> MS. þaim.    <sup>2</sup> *Inserted at the end of the line.*    <sup>3</sup> MS. þ<sup>us</sup>.

<sup>4</sup> MS. hio.

<sup>5</sup> MS. to to ; *with former to struck out.*

<sup>6</sup> MS. mounbre.



þen þaim of perse to pay · or to please owder. 1180  
 Than takez þe Bishop þe breue · & to chawmbre bownes,  
 Ressaves it *with* reuerence · & redes it ouer,  
 Gase hym downe be degrece · ayayn to þe sale,  
 Swythly to þe swyers · & þaim þe sware 3eldez : 1184  
 "Sirres, ayres agayn to alexander · & all þus hym tellys, *Epistola.*  
 That me was done mony day · deply to swere,  
 Neuer perse to pare · ne passe *with* none armez  
 In damagyng of darius · endurand hys lyue." 1188  
 When þe wale kyng wist · he wex wode wroth,  
 "Now by god," quod þe grome · "þat gatt me on  
 erth,  
 I saH seche Iewres on þe Iewes · enys<sup>1</sup> or I dye,  
 SaH kenne whoys commaundement · þat þaim to kepe  
 fallez. 1192  
 3it for no torfer þat he tyde · tyre wald he noght leue,  
 Bot chesez hym owt a chiftane · & chargez hym belyue,  
 A mody man, *sir meliager*, · a maister of hys oste,  
 To founde forth *with* a flete · of fyfe hundreth knyghtez ;  
  
 And iniones hym to Iosaphatt · hys Iornay to make, 1197  
 And aH þe pastours & þe playnes · prestly to<sup>2</sup> dryve,  
 Bot bring in all þes bestes · bareñ & other,  
 þat he might see in ony syde · þe cite of Gadars. 1200  
 Than mefes on *sire Meliager* · þis mightfuH prince  
 Wyth a soume of syker meñ · & sampson þaim ledes,  
 A renke þat in þa regions · had rydyn oft sythez,  
 And knew þe costez & þe kythez · clene aH-to-geder. 1204  
 þus hyed þai forth egerly · & entird þe wale,  
 And suche a pray þaim preved · als pyne wer to rekeñ,  
 Bringez forth, als says þe buk · bestes owt of nowmbre, [Fol. 10.]  
 And trottes on toward tyre · *with* ioy at þair hertes. 1208  
 Bot or þai metyn hed a myle · þe mers with-out,<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> read enioine.<sup>2</sup> MS. de.<sup>3</sup> MS. were out.

- þar metis þaīn with a mekill flote · þe maister of þe playnes,*  
 He *þat* was duke of *þe*<sup>1</sup> droues · & of þe derfe hillis,  
 One Theosellus withstands Alexander's men. Ane Theosellus, a tulke · *þat* tened *þaīn* vnfaire. 1212  
 He girdis in *with*<sup>1</sup> a gingi · armed in plates,  
 Alto-bruntes oure bernis · & brathly woundid,  
 Fellis fele at a frusch · fey to þe gronde,  
 And many renke at he roue · rase neuer efter. 1216  
 Sir Meleager fights manfully. *þan* was *ser* Meliager moued · & maynly debatīs,  
 Flingīs out oñ a fole · *with* a feH spere,  
 Gers many grete syre grane · & girdis þurȝe maillis,  
 And many bernis at a braide · in his brath endis. 1220  
 So do Sampson And Sampson oñ anothire side · setīs out belyue,  
 Bruschi furth oñ a blonk · brymly he smytīs,  
 Betīs oñ *with* a brande · broken was his lance,  
 Hewis doun of þa hirdis · hurtīs *þaīn* vn-faire. 1224  
 and Aristes. Arystes, ane athill man · ai elike fīȝtīs,  
 Spirris out *with* a spere · & spedis his mīȝtīs,  
 And noyed of þare note-men · at þe nete kepīȝ,  
 And many bald, or he blaī · broȝt out o-lyue. 1228  
 Caulus also distinguishes himself. Caulus, anothire knīȝt · oñ a kene stede,  
 Oñ Theosellus in twa · his tymbre he brekis;  
 And *þan* he dryfes to þe duke · as demys þe textīs,  
 And *with* a swyng of a swerd · swappis of hes hede. 1232  
 [Fol. 21 b.] When he was drepīȝ & dede · at þe droues ȝemyȝ,  
 þe prekaris of þe pastors · & of þe proude landis,  
 AH þe folke of his affinite · at fresch ware vñ-wondīȝ,  
*þat* outhire fote haȝ or fole · to þe flīȝt foundid. 1236  
 Meleager retreats in triumph, with all the cattle. þus Meliager *with* his meī · þe menske has a-chevyȝ,  
 For þe fairere of þar faes · & þe fīȝt wonī;  
 Raschis *with* rethere · & rydis bot a quyle,  
 But his troubles are not over. *þat* ne nezis *þaīn* a-nothire note · as new as þe first. 1240  
 Beritinus attacks him. þare was a maister of þe marches · mīȝtīȝt of othire  
 Ane Beritinus, a berne · as þe buke tellīs,  
 Come girdand out of Gadirs · out of þe grete cite,

<sup>1</sup> Inserted at the end of the line.

þar metes þaime a miche folke · þe maister of þe  
playnes,

The duke of þe drafes · & of þe derfe fellys,  
One teosellus a tulke · þat tenyd þaim vnfaire. 1212

He girdes in with a gyñ · grathed in playthes,  
Añ to-brountes þes bernes · & wykydly þaim woundes,  
Felles mony fey at a frush · fast to þe grunde,  
And mony renke þat he ouer-rade · rase neuer aftir. 1216

Than was sir meliager amoved · & manly debates,  
Flyngez forth on a fole · with a fele spere,  
And beres mony grett syre · þorow thike males, 1219  
Añ feñ bernes at [a] brayde · whilse his breth lastez.

And sampson on ane other syde · settez on belyue,  
Brushes forth on a blonke · brathly he smytez,  
Betes on with a brande · for brokyn was hys launce,  
Hewes douñ on þe herdez · & hurtez þaim vnfaire. 1224

Then arestes, an atheñ man · &<sup>1</sup> ay elike feghtez,  
Sparres forth with a spere · & spedes hys mightez,

. . . . .  
Mony bald or he blan · broght owt of lyfe. 1228

Than Caulus, an other knyght · oñ a ked stede,  
On thoosellus in twa · hys tembre he brekys;  
And þen he dryffes to þe duke · als tellys me þe texte,  
Bot with a swyng of a swerde · swappez of hys heued.  
When he was drepyd þus & dede · & þe drawes 3emyd,  
þe prekers of þe pasturs · & of þe pround Landez,  
Añ þe folk of hys affinite · þat frehsse<sup>2</sup> wer vnwoundet,  
þat other fote hed or fole · to þe flyzt foundez. 1236

Thus meliager with hys meñ · þe menske þar acheuett,  
Fellyd þe feirare<sup>3</sup> of þar foes · and þe feld wonnez<sup>4</sup>;  
And rachen with þair route · & ryden bott a while,  
Bot þar neghyd þaim ane oper note · als new as before;  
þar was a maister of þe marche · þe myghtiest of other.  
One beritinus, a berne · als þe buke telles, 1242

Come girdand furth of gaders · owt of þe grete cyte,

<sup>1</sup> Better omitted.    <sup>2</sup> Sic.    <sup>3</sup> MS. feirhare.    <sup>4</sup> Read wonn.

- 30,000 foes attack  
the Greeks.  
 ·With þe selcuthest soume · þat semblid was euire. 1244  
 Slik a mynd vñ-to<sup>1</sup> me · ware meruaiht to rekeñ,  
 Thretti thousand in thede · of thra men of armes,  
 Slike as was buskest on blonkes · in brenys & platis,  
 And othire folawand oñ fote · fele *with-uten* nounbre.  
 þe multitude was sa mekiht · as mynes vs þe writtis,  
 Of wees & of wilð horsis · & wapened prenyis,  
 Sa stithe a steuyn in þe stoure · of stedis & ellis,  
 As it was semand to sizt · as aht þe soyle trymblið. 1252  
 The Macedonians  
are dismayed.  
 þan ware þe Messedones amayd · quen þa see<sup>2</sup> sa many;  
 Sire Meliager [was] in gret mynd · a man out to sende  
 To *ser Alexander* belyue · þaire allire maister, 1255  
 To come & help *with* his here · or þai to hande 3ode.  
 None like to go on  
a message to  
Alexander.  
 þare was nane þat was glad · þat message to gange,  
 Bot ilka lathire & othire · to leue þaire frynde,  
 Fest þar forward in-fere · þat fewe at þai ware,  
 To do as drihten wald deme · & dyi aht to-gedire; 1260  
 [Fol. 22.]  
 Sir Meleager kills  
Beritinus,  
 Bot so þe mode Meliager · & his men feztis,  
 þat *ser Beritinus* þe bakð · þai bretned to dethe,  
 And Sampson oñ þis side · was slay þar-agaynys. 1264  
 but Sampson is  
slain.  
 þeñ mournes aht þe Messedones · & maynteñ him 3erne,  
 Makis þar mane for þat man · & many othire noble,  
 Many Greeks are  
killed.  
 For maistris & mynistris · menere & grettir, 1267  
 þat was in morsels magged · & martrid a hundreth.  
 And þat left ware oñ lyfe · bot a litiht me3ne,  
 Ware als malstrid<sup>3</sup> & mased · & matid of þaire strenthes,  
 Sa waike & so wyndles · & wery for-fo3teñ, 1271  
 þat þai were wiht in þis werd · qwat þai worthe suld.  
 Sir Meleager is  
sore wounded.  
 Sire Meliager & othire maa · mayned were sare,  
 Aht be-bled & to-brissid · þat ne3e þar breth failes,  
 þai were sa feble & sa faynt · & fuht of þaim-selfe,  
 þat all in fere was in fourme · þe filð for to zeld. 1276  
 Arestes goes to  
tell Alexander.  
 þañ aires him forth Arestes · was augrily wondid,  
 To *Alexander* onone · þas auntirs him tellis,  
<sup>1</sup> to added in margin.    <sup>2</sup> see added in margin.    <sup>3</sup> Sic.

With þe selcourest soume · þat semblyd was euer, 1244  
 With a mynd to me · wer merveH to rekyñ, [Fol. 10 b.]  
 A threti thouusand in thede · of thro men of armes,  
 Suche as wer on blonnkes · in brenys & platez,  
 And other folowand on fote · fele owt of nowmbre. 1248  
 The multitude was so much · as menys vs þe writtez,  
 Of wyes & of wild horse · & of wapenned bernys,  
 So styf a steuen in þe stoure · of stedes & enmys,  
 As it was semand [to sȳt] · as þe soñ tremblyd. 1252  
 þen wer þe masydons ameved · when þai so mony seen̄;  
 Sir meliager was in grete mynd · a mañ owt to send  
 To alexander als belyue · þaire aller maister, 1255  
 To Come to help with hys heir · or þai to hand rydyñ.  
 Bot þar was nane þat was made · þe message to fanngē,  
 Bot ilke lede elike loth · to leven þair frendes,  
 And festned þair forwardez in-fere · þe few þat þar wer,  
 To do as drighten wald deme · & dye aH to-geder; 1260  
 To teH þair torfer in tere · it wald tary me to lang.  
 Bot so þe mody meliager · & hys men foghteñ,  
 þat Sir bertinus þe bald · þai brityned to dede,  
 And sampson was of hys syde · slayn þar-agayns. 1264  
 þen murned aH þe masydons · & meynyð hym swyð,  
 Made grett mone for þis mañ · & mony oþer noble,  
 For maisters & ministers · meynere & gretter, 1267  
 þat wer in morsellys made · & martyred by hundrethis.  
 And þat left wer on-lyue · bot a lyteH meynhe,  
 Wer also maistrett & masyd · & mated of þair strennthes,  
 So wake & so wyndles · & wery for-foughteñ,  
 þat þai wer wille in þe werld · qwat þai worth suld. 1272  
 Sir meliager & oþer mo · mayned wer sare,  
 aH to-bled & to-brysed · þat nere þair breth fayled,  
 Thai wer so feble and so faynte · and fuH of þaim-selueñ,  
 þat aH in fere & in forme · þe feld for to zeld. 1276  
 Than ayres hym forth aristes · was augerdly woundett,  
 To alexander anone · þees aunders hym talles,

Alexander rallies  
some men round  
him, and leaves  
Tyre.

þe morth of aH þe Messedone[s] · & of þe many grekis,  
Rekens him þar resons · þat reuthe was to here. 1280

He laments the  
loss of Sampson.

With þat þe semely kyng · chacches his bernis,  
Semblis him a huge soume · & fra þe sege wendis,  
þe toure of Tire & þe toune · titly he leues,  
And Ioynes him to Iosaphat · fuH ioyles he rydes. 1284  
Ay he gretis as he gase · for grefe of his knyȝtis,  
Ay he pleynys as he passes · þe pite of his erlis,  
Ay he wepis as he wendis · for his wale princes,  
And soueraynly for Sampson · he sorowis ay elike. 1288

[Fol. 22 b.]

When he was tane fraward<sup>1</sup> Tyre · toward þe vaile,  
þe werke at he wroȝt haȝ · þat water whyt-in,  
þat he haȝ sett in þe see · þe cite with-out,  
þar-in he lefte haȝ a lede · þe loge for to kepe. 1292

Sir Balaan of  
Tyre assails  
Alexander's siege-  
works,

Bot þan ser Balaan, a berne · at in þe burȝe lengis,  
Ane of þe terands of Tyre · atyres him<sup>2</sup> belyue,  
Buskes him in breneis · with big meñ of armes, 1295  
With traumes & with tribochetis · þe tild to asaile.  
He bekirs out at þe bild · within þe burȝe-wallis,  
And þai without in þe werke · wigtly defendis,  
Schot scharply betwene · schomes<sup>3</sup> of dartis;  
Weris wondirly wele<sup>4</sup> · werpis out stanes. 1300

and breaks them  
down.

Bot Balaa[n] in þe barmekeñ · sa bitterly fȝtis,  
aH to-combirs þam clene · with cast of engynes.  
Sone þe top of þe toure · he tiltis in-to þe watir,  
And aH þe tulkis in þe tilȝ · he termens o lyue; 1304  
And þan in batȝ & in bargis · he bownes him swyȝh,  
To þe bothum of þe baisteH · he buskis him with-out,  
Bretens down aH þe bild · & þe bernys quellis, 1307  
Drenches hire in þe hiȝe see · & drawis hire oñ hepis.  
Quen it was smeten in smaH · with þe smert wazes,  
Ilka gobet his gate · glidis fra othire.

He destroys  
Alexander's  
towers, and  
throws them into  
the sea.

þus<sup>5</sup> þe strenth ilk stike<sup>6</sup> · was in a stounde wasted,

<sup>1</sup> MS. toward altered to fraward.

<sup>2</sup> MS. here inserts h, but it is struck out. <sup>3</sup> Read schoures.

<sup>4</sup> Added in the margin.

<sup>5</sup> MS. þus was.

<sup>6</sup> MS. stilk stike; but stilk is struck out.

The morte of aȝ þe masydons · & of þe mony grekez,  
 Rekens hym þe resons · þat reuth was to here. 1280

With þat þe comle kynge · chakez hys bernes,

**Semblett Hym A Hoge soume · & fro þe seige wendys,** [Fol. 11.]

The toure of tyre & þe towne · titely he levys,  
 And ioynes hym to Iosaphatt · full ioyles to ryde. 1284

Ay he gretes as he goys · þe grefe of hys knyghtez,

Ay he plenys as he passez · þe pite of hys Ereles,

Ay he wepys as he wendes · for hys wale princes,

And souerandly for sampsoñ · he sorows euerilyke. 1288

When he was turnyd froward tyre · toward þe wale,

The werk at he wroght had · þe water withiñ,

þat he hed sett in þe see · þe cite withowte,

Thare-in he left hed a lityH<sup>1</sup> · [þe] loge for to kepe. 1292

Bott þen sir balaan, a berne · þat in þe burgh lenged,

One of þe tiraundez of tire · atired hym belyue,

Buskes hym in brenes · with big meñ of armes,

With trawynns & trebgetes<sup>2</sup> · þe towre to assaylle. 1296

He bekere owt at þe beld · ouer þe brade walle,

And þai withiñ<sup>3</sup> þe werk · wightly defendeñ,

Shotoñ sharply bytwene · swappyn owt dartz ;

Weres wondrely wele · warpyn owt stanes. 1300

Bot balaan in þe britage · so bitterly feghtez,

All to-combers þaim clene · with cast of engynes.

Sone þe toppe of þe toure · he typys in þe water,

And aȝ þe tulkez in þe teld · he termys þe lyve ; 1304

Than in bargez & in botez · he bownes hym swyth,

To þe bothom of þe basteH · he buskez hym withowte,

Bretens downe aȝ þe belde · & þe bernes whelles,

Drenches hir in þe depe · & drawes hir on hepys. 1308

When it was smytyn so in smaH · withiñ þe smert wawes,

Ilke gobett fro oþer · glydes<sup>4</sup> fast þair way.

Thus þis strenth ilke steke · in a stound wastyd,

<sup>1</sup> *Read* lede.

<sup>2</sup> MS. *trebgetes*.

<sup>3</sup> MS. *withowt withiñ*.

<sup>4</sup> MS. *gydes*, *corr. to glydes*.

And Balaa[n] bowis in-to þe burȝe · & barris to þe ȝatis.  
 Be þis oure kyng with his kniȝt[is] · is comen in-to þe  
 vaile, 1313

Alexander  
 arrives at the  
 valley,

Alexander with ane ost · his kniȝtis to help,  
 Fyndis a fewe of his folke · feȝtand ȝerne,  
 And ay a segge be him-selfe · sett aȝ a hundreth. 1316

spurs Bucefalus,

With þat Bucifalon his blonke · he brased<sup>1</sup> in þe side,  
 Springis out with a spere · spillis at þe gaynest,  
 Ridis euen þurȝe þe route · þar rankest þai were,

[Fol. 23.]

Be rawe of þar rabetis · he ruschid to þe erthe, 1320

and overthrows  
 all before him.

He strikis aȝ fra þar stedis · streȝt him be-forne.  
 Was nane sa stiffe in þat stoure · miȝt stand him  
 agayn ;

Quare althire-thickest was þe thrange · þurȝe þaim he  
 rynnnes,

And makis a wai wyde enoȝe · waynes to mete. 1324

He draws his  
 sword, and leaves  
 no foe unslain  
 except the  
 captives.

He laschis out a lange swerde · quen his launce failes,  
 Threschis doun in a<sup>2</sup> thrawe · many threun dukis,  
 Stirs him sa in a stonde · & his stithe erlis

þat þar was [na] berne on bent · bott bretened or  
 ȝolden. 1326

þe seggis on his awen side · þat he slayn fyndis,

He buries his own  
 dead.

He mas to graue sum in grete · & sum in gray marble.

And þa þat laft ware o-lyue · he lokis þar woundis,  
 And faire fangis his folke · & fra þe fild wendis. 1332

þan bowes he to þe baistaȝ · & brymly it semblis,  
 Gedirs of ilk glode · grettir & smallire,

He leaves Gadirs,

And prekis furtli with his pray · & passes fraward  
 Gadirs,

and returns to  
 Tyre.

And tiȝt agayne toward Tyre · to termen his sege. 1336  
 Quen he was dreun ouer þe dales · & drewe to þe cite,

He sees his siege-  
 works destroyed.

With þat he blisches to þe burȝe · & sees his bilde  
 voididȝ,

Als bare as a bast · his baisteȝ a-way,

But outhire burde or bate · bot þe bradȝ wattir, 1340

<sup>1</sup> The a is ill-formed.

<sup>2</sup> Added in the margin.



And balaan bownes to þe burgh · & barres þe zatez. 1312  
 Be þat owr kyng *with* hys knyghtez · was comen to þe  
 wale,

Alex[ander] *with* an hoste · hys atheH to help,  
 Fyndes a few of hys folke · feghtyng fuH þarne,  
 And a sege by hym-self · sett to a hundreth. 1316

With þat bucefeloñ hys blonke · he brochys in þe sydez,  
 Spryngez forth *with* a spere · spyllez at þe ganest,

Rides euen þorow þe route · þare rankest þai were, [Fol. 11 b.]  
 The rawes of þair arayes · he rushes to þe erth, 1320  
 He strikez aH þair stedes · streght downe hym before,  
 Was none so styffe in þe stoure · to stand hym ayayns ;

þar aH þe thickest wer of thrange · through þaim he  
 rynnys,

And makez a way wyde enogh · waynez for to mete. 1324  
 He lashes owt a lang swerde · when hys launce wantes,  
 Thristez downe in a thraw · mony thryme dokes,  
 Stirrez hym so in a stound · he and hys styff ereles,  
 þat þar ne was bern on þe bent · bot bryttynett or  
 3olden. 1328

The segges of hys awne syde · aH at he slayn fyndez,  
 He makes to grave, some in grete · some in gray marbyH.  
 And þo þat left wer on lyue · he leches þair woundez,  
 And fair fangez he hys folke · & fro þe feld turnes. 1332

3<sup>a</sup> victoria  
alexandri.

. . . . .  
 . . . . .

Then prekes forth *with* hys pray · þus before gaders,

And turnes agayn toward tyre · to terme hys seige. 1336  
 When he was dreven ouer þe dales · & drew to þe cite,  
 With þat he blyshys to þe burgh · & seys hys beyld  
 woydett,

Also bare as ony baste · hys basteH away,  
 Bout ony buske or borde · bot þe brode water. 1340

þan mournes aȝ þe Messadones · & maynly was  
sturb[i]ð.<sup>1</sup>

And Alexander also · was augrely greuyð,  
So ware þai troubild out of tone · quen þai paire tilð  
miste,

Alexander de-  
spairs of taking  
Tyre,

þat of þe taking of Tire · trest þai na langire. 1344

And so him-selfe in his slepe · þe same niȝt eftir,

but dreams  
that he has a ripe  
grape  
in his hand,

Him thoȝt he hað in his hand · & held of a vyne

A growen grape of a grype · a grete & a rype, 1347

þe quilke he flange<sup>2</sup> oȝ þe flore · & with his fete  
tredis.

And quen he broken hað þe bery · als þe berne semes,

[Fol. 23 b.]  
which yields  
much wine.

þar folowis out of fresche wyne · feetles to mete ;

So largely & so delauly · of licoure, him thinkis,

Of ane rasyn to ryȝ · it was a ryfe wondire. 1352

þe kyng<sup>1</sup> callis him a clerke · kenely oȝ þe<sup>3</sup> morne,

A clerk tells him  
that this predicts  
his victory over  
Tyre.

Als radly as he rase · to reche him his sweuyȝ.

“Sire, bees a-dreð neuir a dele” · þe diuinour said,

“I vndire-take on my trouthe · Tire is þine aweȝ ; 1356

For þe bery at ȝe brake sa · is þe burȝe euen.

þai saȝ þe sesid þe fuȝ sone · & to þi-selfe ȝoldeȝ,

For þou saȝ eft aȝ oȝ earnest · entire oȝ þe wallis,

And foulire<sup>4</sup> vndir þi feete · with-in a fewe days. 1360

Now compas kenely þis kyng<sup>1</sup> · & castis in his mynd

How he miȝt couir in any cas · to come to þe cite,

Deuynes depely on dais · dropis many wiles,

Alexander builds  
up a larger tower  
than before,

If he cuthe seke any sleȝt · þat him serue waldȝ ; 1364

And makis to sett in þe see<sup>2</sup> · riȝt in þe same place,

þar as þe bild at he bi[l]did · biggid wasse first,

To stable vp a grete strenthe · aȝ on store schipis,

Hugir be þe halfe dele · & hiȝere þaȝ þe topire ; 1368

And þat he fiches & firmes · sa fast to þe waȝ,

So nere vnethes at ane eld · miȝt narrowly betwene,

higher than the  
walls of the town,

And band hire, as þe buke sais · bigly to-gedire, 1371

<sup>1</sup> The i is illegible.    <sup>2</sup> MS. inserts of, but it is struck out.

<sup>3</sup> Added in the margin.

<sup>4</sup> Read foule hire.

Than murnes all þe masidons · & felly wer trublett,

And alexander was also · awgerdly grevyde,  
So wer þai trublett of þe towne · qwen þai þar til-  
myssyd,

That of þe takyng of tire · trusted þai no lenger. 1344

And so hym-selfe in hys slepe · þe same nyght after,  
Hym toght<sup>1</sup> he had in hys hand · a held of a wyne,  
A growen grope of a gripe · a grett & a rype, 1347  
þe whilke he slonge of þe floure · & with hys fete  
tredes ;

And when he brokyn hed þe bery · als þe berñ semys,  
þar flowe owt of fresh wyne · flodez enowe ;  
So largely & so delavy · of liquor hym thynkez,  
Of ane raysyn to ryn · þat was a gret wondre. 1352

þe kyng callez a clerke · kenely on þe morne,  
Als radly as euer he rose · to rachen hym hys swevyn.  
“ Sir, beys dred neuer a dele ” · þe devinour hym sayde,  
“ I vndertake it on my trewth · tyre is þi nawne ; 1356  
For þe bery þat þou brake · þat is þe burgh eueñ,  
That sha't be sesyd þe ful sone · & to þi-seluen zoldeñ,

[Fol. 12.]

For þou sa't eft in earnest · enter þe walles,  
And fe't hir vnder fote · within a few days.” 1360

Now Compas kenely þe kyng · & castes in hys mynd  
How he couth in ony case · come to þe cyte,  
Devynez deply on days · dropes mony willes,  
If he couht seke ony sleght · þat hym serue wald ; 1364

And makes to sett in þe see · right in þe same place,  
þair as þe tild þat he bild · bigget was frist,  
To stabill vp a strenth · all of store schippes,  
Hoger by þe halfe dele · & hyer þen þat oper ; 1368

And þat he feghys & fermes · so fast to þe wa't,  
So negh þat vnneth a nedy't · myght narrowly bytwene,  
And band hir, as þe boke says · bigly to-geder,

<sup>1</sup> Sic in MS.

- With þat scho flisch noþer fayle*<sup>1</sup> · fyue score aukirs.  
 Quen he had tizt vp þis tram · & þis tild rerid,  
 Hit hað of bradnes abofe · to breue out of mesure;  
 and close against them. And to hede be a huge thing · hizere it semed  
 þan was þe wallis, sais þe writt · of þe wale touris. 1376  
 He ascends the tower, þan Alexander aH his ane · an-ane he ascendis,  
 Closid aH in clere stele · & in clene plates,  
 [Fol. 24.] And monestis ilk modire soñ · maynly & swyth,  
 þat all be bowne at a brayd · þe burȝe to assaile. 1380  
 and bids his men be ready. And aH þe ost euyñ ouir · he openly comandis  
 To be<sup>2</sup> radly aH arayd · & redy to fȝt;  
 He assaults Tyre; And quen þai saȝe þat him-selfe<sup>3</sup> · þe cite was entrid,  
 Wan vp wiztly on þe waHs · ilk wee him eftir. 1384  
 Now tenelis vp taburs · and aH þe toñ rengis,  
 drums and trumpets sound. Steryñ steuyn vþ strake · strakid þar trumpis,  
 Blewe bemys of bras · bernes assemblis,  
 Seȝes to oñ ilk syde · & a saute ȝeldis. 1388  
 þare presis to *with* paues · peple *withouten*;  
 Archers approach the walls. Archars *with* arows · of atter envemonde<sup>4</sup>  
 Schotis vp scharply · at shalkis oñ þe waHs,  
 Lasch at þam of loft · many lede floȝen, 1392  
 The besieged defend themselves. And þai ȝapely a-ȝayne · & ȝildis þam swythe,  
 Bekire out of þe burȝe · bald men many,  
 Kenely þai kast of · *with* kastis of stanys,  
 Driues dartis at oure dukis · dedly þam woundid. 1396  
 The Greeks ascend the tower. þan passe vp oure princes · prestly<sup>5</sup> enarmed,  
 In-to þe baistefl a-bofe · Bremely ascendid,  
 Sum *with* lances oñ-loft · & *with* lange swerdis,  
*With* ax & *with* alblaster · & alkenis wapeñ. 1400  
 Alexander performs wonders. Alexander ai elike · augrily feȝtis,  
 Now a schaft, now a schild · nowe a scheue hentis,  
 Now a sparth, now a spere · & sped so his miȝtis,  
 þat it ware tere any tonge · to of his turnes rekyn. 1404

<sup>1</sup> MS. flay fayle; but flay is struck out.<sup>2</sup> Added in the margin. <sup>3</sup> selfe added in the margin.<sup>4</sup> Sic.<sup>5</sup> MS. inserts er, but it is struck out.

Lest sho flechett or faylett · with fyfe score ankers. 1372  
 When he hed tight vp þis trame · & þis teld reryd,  
 It hed of bradnes aboue · to breue owt of mesour;  
 And to hede by hoge þing · hegher it semyd  
 Than was [þe walles], as þe writte says · of þe wale tourez.  
 þan alexander aH [his ane] · a-none he ascendeþ, 1377  
 Closed aH in clere stele · & in clene plateþ,  
 And monyshit iche moderson · manly & swythe,  
 þat aH be bowne at a brade · þe burght to asayle. 1380  
 AH þe hoste<sup>1</sup> euen ouer · opynly he comandes  
 3arly aH to be arraied · and redy to fight<sup>2</sup>;  
 And when þat þai see þat hym-selfe · þe cite was entird,  
 Wynnyn vpp vppo<sup>2</sup> þe walle · ilkè wy hym after. 1384  
 Now tynkyH vp taburnes · þat aH þe towne ringes,  
 Sterne stevyn vpon stroke · straked trompettes,  
 Blew bemes of brace · bernes assembled,  
 Sought to on ilk syde · & a saute 3eldyñ, 1388  
 To prese to with paves · a peple withowte;  
 Archers with arowes · of attar enuenmonyð<sup>3</sup>  
 Shoton vp sharply · at salkez on þe walleþ,  
 Lashe at þaim on-lofte · in mony lowd showte, 1392  
 And þai 3opely ayayn · 3eldyn þaim swythe,  
 Bekeryng forth of þe burgh · bald men many, [Fol. 12 b.]  
 Kenely þai kepe · with castyng of stanes,  
 Dryves dartez at owr dukeþ · deply þaim woundeñ. 1396  
 Than passyd vp of princeþ · pristly enarmed,  
 Into þe basteH abowne · bremely ascendeñ,  
 Some with launceþ on-lofte · & some with long swerdeþ,  
 With ax & with awblester · & alken wapens. 1400  
 And alexander ay elik · awgerdly feghteþ,  
 Now a shafte, now a shelde, · now a swerde henteþ,  
 Now a sparth, now a spere · & sped so hys mightez,  
 þat it wald tere ony tong · hys tournays to rekeñ. 1404

<sup>1</sup> Better oste.<sup>2</sup> Sic.<sup>3</sup> Read enuenomyd.

[Fol. 24 b.]

The Greeks are  
hard pressed.

And þai *with-in* on þe waḥ · *worthili with-stude*,  
 Fersly defend of · & fellid of his knyȝtis,  
 Thristis ouir thikefald · many threuyn berne[s], 1407

And doun bakward þam bare · in-to þe brað wattir.  
*With* þat oure wees without · writhis þam vnfare,  
 Went wode of þaire witt · & wrekis þam swyṯ;  
 For na wounde ne na wathe · wand þai na langir,  
 Bot aḥ wirkis him þe wa · & wrake at he cuthe. 1412

The Greeks fight  
very fiercely,

Sum braidis to þar bowis · bremely þai schut,  
 Quethirs out quarels · quikly be-twene;  
 Strykis vp of þe stoure · stanes of engynes,  
 þat þe bretage a-boue · brast aḥ in soundire, 1416  
 Girdis ouir garetis · *with* gomes to þe erthe,

and destroy the  
battlements of  
Tyre.

Tilt torettis doun · toures oñ hepis,  
 Spedely *with* sprygaldis · spilt þaire braynes,  
 Many miȝtfuḥ man · marris oñ þe wallis. 1420  
 And be þe kinnells ware kast · & kutt doun before,  
 Be þat þe baisteḥ & þe burȝe · ware bathe elike hiȝe,  
 And all oure werke without þe wallis · weterly semeð,  
 þe sidis of þe cite · to se to o fernes, 1424

Then Alexander  
enters the breach,

þaṅ Alexander belyf<sup>1</sup> · oñ þam aḥ entris,  
 Bruschi in *with* a brand · on bernis a hundreth,  
 Thrang' thurȝe a thousand · þare thickest þai were,  
 Wynnes worthly ouer þe wallis · *with-in* to þe cite. 1428  
 þe first modire soñ he mett · opire mañ outhire,

slays Balaan,

Was Balaan þe bald berne · as þe boke tellis,  
 And him he settis oñ a saute · & sloȝe him belyue, 1431

and throws  
him over the  
wall,

And werpid him out ouir þe waḥ · in-to þe wild streme.  
 Sone as oure athils be-hind · saȝe þar he entred,  
 His men & aḥ þe Messedones · maynly ascendis,  
 And þai of Grece gredely · girdis vp eftire,  
 Thringis vp oñ a thraw · thousandis many. 1436

[Fol. 25.]

The Greeks climb  
up,

Sum stepis vp on sties · to þe stane wallis,  
 On ilka staffe of a staire<sup>2</sup> · stike wald a cluster;

<sup>1</sup> MS. bely, *altered to belyf in later hand.*<sup>2</sup> MS. *repeats staire.*

And þai *within* on þe waß · wightly withstondyñ,  
 Derfley defenden of · & fellez of hys bernies,  
 Thraste ouer thikefald · mony thrifen knyghtez,  
 And douñ bakeward þai bare · into þe brade water. 1408  
 With þat oure wyes *withowte* · wrathen þaim vnfaire,  
 Went ne wode owt of þar witte · & wrekes þaim swyth ;  
 For no wa ne no wound · waned þai no langer,  
 Bot aß wirkyd þaim wa · & wrake at þai couth. 1412  
 Som braden to þair bowes · & Bremely shotyñ,  
 Whirres owt quarels · whikly betwene ;  
 Strike vp of þe stoure · stanes & <sup>1</sup> engynes,  
 þat þe britage abofe · brast aß in sonder, 1416  
 Girdes ouer garrates · *with* gomes<sup>2</sup> to þe erth,  
 Typed torrettes doune · towres on hepes,  
 Spedely *with* springaltez · spilten þair bernies,  
 Many mightyfull man · merred on þe walles. 1420  
 And be þe kernels wer kest<sup>1</sup> · & cut<sup>3</sup> down before,  
 Be þat þe basteff & þe burgh · was bath elike hye,  
 And aß owre þe werke *withowt* · witterly semyd,  
 The sydes of þe cite · to se to on fernesse, 1424  
 Than alexander als belyue · on þaim aß entres,  
 Brushes in *with* a brannde · on bernies an hundreth,  
 Thrang þorow a thousand · þar as þai thickest wer,  
 Wynnes wightly ouer þe waß · *within* to þe cite. 1428  
 The frist moderson þat he mett · or other man other, [Fol. 13.]  
 Was balaan þe bald berne · as þe buke tellez,  
 And hym he settes on a sawte · & slogh hym belyfe,  
 And wappyd<sup>4</sup> hym ouer þe walles · in-to þe wild stremes.  
 When þair hatels byhynde · saw þar heued entre, 1433  
 Hys men & aß þe masydons · manly ascendeñ,  
 And þai of grece gredely · girdes vp after,  
 Thronge vp on a thraw · thousandez mony. 1436  
 Some spettyñ<sup>5</sup> vp on styes · to þe stane walles,  
 On ilke staffe on a stare · steke wald a clostre ;

<sup>1</sup> & written above the line ; read of.<sup>3</sup> MS. owt.<sup>4</sup> Read warpyd.<sup>2</sup> MS. cunes ; wrongly.<sup>5</sup> Read steppyn.

some with  
ladders,  
and some  
without.

And qua sa leddirs had<sup>t</sup> nane · as þe lyne tellis, 1439  
Wald gett þam hald with þar hend · & on-loft clyme.  
Sa frezt ware þar othire · þat feztis withiñ,  
For Balaan þar bald duke · þat brozt was<sup>1</sup> of lyue,  
þat aH failis þam þe force · & so ferd worthe,  
þat nothire with stafe ne with stane · withstand þai na  
langir. 1444

Sire Alexander with his athils · & his aweñ sleztis

Thus was Tyre  
taken.

þe toune of Tire þus he tuke · & othire twa burzes,  
In þe quilke þe siriens of þis sire · so many soroȝes  
had<sup>t</sup>,

Alexander takes  
Gaza,

As wald bot tary aH oure tale · þaire tourment to reken.  
Sone as þis cite was sesid · & slayne vp & ȝolden, 1449  
þen ridis furth þe riche kyng<sup>t</sup> · & remowed his ost,  
Gais him furth to Gasa · a-nothire grete cite,

and approaches  
Jerusalem.

And þat he settis on a saute · & sesis it be-lyue; 1452  
And quen þis Gasa was geten · he graythis him swyth,  
And Ioynes him toward Ierusalem · þe iewis to distroy;  
And ȝe þat<sup>2</sup> kepis of þis carpe · to know any ferre,  
Sone saH I neuen ȝow þe note · þat is next eftir. 1456

### Septimus passus Alexandri.

When the bishop  
hears of his  
approach,

**A**ls hastily as þai herd<sup>t</sup> of · in þe haly cite,  
And bodword<sup>t</sup> to þe bischop · brozt of his come,  
For Alexander aȝe · almast he euen deis, 1459  
For he had nite him a nerand<sup>t</sup> · noȝt bot o new time.

he is much  
troubled.

And now him pinke in his þoȝt · him thurt noȝt haue  
carid

[Fol. 25, b]

In all his mast mystir · nad he þat man faylid<sup>t</sup>,  
When he for socure to þe cite · sent him his lettir;  
And he soyned him be his sorement · þat sare him for-  
thinkis. 1464

<sup>1</sup> Added in the margin.

<sup>2</sup> MS. inserts kis; but it is struck out.



And who so ledderys couth lache · as þe line wittnes,  
 Wald gett þair hald with þair hand · & on-lofte wyne.  
 So frigt wer þase other folke · þat foghten within, 1441  
 Fro<sup>1</sup> balaan þair bald duke · þat broght was of lieue,  
 þat aH failez þaim þe force · & so ferd worthen,  
 þat nowder with staffe ne with stane · withstode þai no  
 langer. 1444

Sir alexander with þoes athellys · & with hys awne  
 sleghtez

The toure of tire þus he tuke · and other ij burghez,  
 In þe whilke þe sariens of þis syre · so many sorowys  
 haddyñ;

AH wald bot tary owr tale · þaire turment to rekeñ. 1448 Obsaid[et] le  
 Sone als þis cite was sesyd · slayne vp & 3oldeñ, tyre.  
 þan rides forth þe riche kyng · & removes þe hoste,  
 Gase forth to gaza · ane othre grete cite,  
 And he settes on a sawte · and seses it belieu; 1452  
 And when þis gaza was gettyn · he grathes hym swyth,  
 And ioynes hym toward Ierusalem · þe Iewez to distroy;  
 And 3e þat kepys of þis carpyng · to here any ferrer,  
 Sone saH I neuen þou þe note · þat now is next after.

### *Septimus passus.*

Als hastely as þai herd of · in haly cite, 1457  
 And Bodword to þe bischof · was broght of hys come,  
 For alexander aw · almost he dyes, 1459  
 And for he hed nekyd hym with nay · in a new tyme.  
 And now he þenkez in his thought · he turht<sup>2</sup> noght haue  
 cared

In aH hys maste mister · made he hym faylez,<sup>3</sup>  
 When he for socour to þe cite · send hym hys lettre;  
 And he soned hym by þis case · þat nowe hym for-  
 thynkez. 1464

<sup>1</sup> Read For.    <sup>2</sup> Read thurt.    <sup>3</sup> Read nad he þe man fayled.

He had rather  
have been  
forsworn than  
have denied  
Alexander  
anything.

"For me had<sup>1</sup> leuer," *quod* þe lede · "be lethirely for-  
sworñ

Oñ as many halidoms · as opens<sup>1</sup> & speris,  
þañ anys haue greuyd þat gome · or warned him his  
erand<sup>1</sup> ! 1467

þat euer I warned him his wiñ · wa is me þat stonde !"  
þus was laudes of ioy · & iolite depryued<sup>1</sup> ;  
And all þe iewis of ierusalem · he Ioyntly a-sembles.

He addresses the  
Jews,

He said, "Alexander is at hand · & wiñ vs añ cumbre,  
And we ere dredles vndone · bot driȝten vs heȝp." 1472  
þan bedis þe bischoþ añ þe burȝe · barnes & othire,  
Athils of añ age · eldire & ȝongire,

and proclaims a  
3 days' fast.

Comandis to ilka creatour · to crie þurȝe þe stretis,  
To thre dais oñ a thrawe · be threpild to-gedire, 1476

All pray for help,

Ilk a frek & ilka fante · to fast & to pray,  
To occupy þar oures & orisons · & offire in þar temple,  
And cañ vp *with* a clene voice · to þe kyng<sup>1</sup> of heuyñ,  
To kepe þam, at þis conquiroure · encumbrid þaim  
neuīr. 1480

to be delivered  
from Alexander's  
vengeance.

Now seȝen þai to þar Sinagogis · añ þe cite ouire,  
Ilka bodi þar bedis · þat in þe burȝe lengis,  
Putt þam to prayris · & penaunce enduris,  
þe vengeance of þis victoure · to voide if þai miȝt. 1484  
þe niȝt eftir þe note · as<sup>2</sup> tellis me þe writtis,  
Quen añ þe cite was on-slepe · & sacrifis endið,

An angel appears  
to the bishop,  
and comforts  
him.

In ane abite of þe aire · ane Aungell aperis  
To laudas of ierusalem · & him *with* ioy gretis : 1488  
"I bringe þe bodword<sup>1</sup> of blis · *ser* bischoþ," he said<sup>1</sup>,  
"With salutis of solas · I am sent fra þe trone,  
Fra þe maister of mañ · þe miȝtfuñ fadere,  
þat bedis þe noȝt be<sup>3</sup> a-bai-t · he has þi bone herd ; 1492  
And I amonest þe to-morne · as I am enIoyned<sup>1</sup>,  
þat þou as radly as þou rise · aray añ þe cite,  
þe stretis & in añ stedis · stoutly & faire,

[Fol. 26.]  
"Array the city  
as if to receive a  
victor,

<sup>1</sup> MS. open ; *altered to opens in later hand.*

<sup>2</sup> MS. &.

<sup>3</sup> Added in the margin.

"For me hed leuer," quod þe lede · "bene letherly [Fol. 13 b.]  
forsworne

On aH þe halydoms · as opyn are to nevyñ,  
Than onys haue greved þis gome · or groched with hys  
erand ! 1467

þat euer I warned hym hys wille · wa is me bestound !"  
Thus was laudes of ioy · & iolyte depreuet ;  
And aH þe Iewes of Ierusalem · he iontly assemblez.  
And<sup>1</sup>, "alexander is at hand · & wille vs aH combred,<sup>2</sup>  
And we er vtterly vndone · bot dryghten vs shelde." 1472  
Than biddez þe bischoþ aH þe burgh · bernes & oper,  
AtheHes of aH age · bath elder & yonger,  
Comand iche creature · & cryed þorow þe stretes,  
TiH thre days on a thraw · wer threpelytt to-geder, 1476  
And ilke freke & euery faunt · to fast & to pray,  
To occupy in þair orisons · & offers<sup>3</sup> in þe temple,  
And calle vp with kene cry · vnto þe kyng<sup>4</sup> of heuen,  
And kepe þaim with þis conquerour · he comber þaim  
neuer. 1480

Thai soght to þair sinagoge · aH þe cite ouer ;  
Iche body to þair bedes · at in þe burgh lendes  
Putten þaim to prayers · & pennance indurett,  
þe vengeance of þis victor · to voyde if þai might. 1484

The thred nyght after þis note · as neuen me þe text,  
When aH þe cite was slepe · & sacrificese endytt,  
In ane habett of þe ayre · an angeH apperes  
To laudes of Ierusalem · and hym with ioy gretes : 1488

apparicio  
angeli  
episcopo  
Ieromo-  
solitano.

"I brynge þe bodworde of [blis] · sir bischoþ," he sayd,  
"With salutez of solace · am send fro þe trone,  
Fro þe hye maister of mageste · & þat mightfull fadre,  
A byddes þe noght be abaysed · he hase þi bone herd ;  
And I amonesh þe to-morne · als me was amoved, 1493  
þat þou als radly as þou ryse · aray all þi cite,  
The stretes & aH stedes · stoutly & faire,

<sup>1</sup> Read Said.    <sup>2</sup> Read combre.    <sup>3</sup> Read offer.

and go to meet  
Alexander,  
the great  
conqueror of the  
world."

All the Jews  
agree to receive  
Alexander with  
honour.

Then he arrays  
the city to  
receive Alexander.

He puts up  
awnings to keep  
off the sun's heat.

[Fol. 26 b.]

He opens the  
gates.

þat it be onest aH ouire · & opeñ vp þe 3atis. 1496  
 Lett þañ þe pupiH ilka poll · apareld be clene,  
 And al manere of men · in mylk-quyte clathis.  
 And pas, þou & þi prelatiſ · & prestis of þe temple,  
 Raueste aH oñ a raw · as 3oure rewih askis. 1500  
 And quen þis conquirour comes · caire him agaynes ;  
 For he moñ ride þus & regne · ouire aH þe ronde werde  
 Be lordschip in ilka lede · in-to his laste days,  
 And þen be<sup>1</sup> diȝt to þe deth · of driȝtins ire." 1504  
 ¶ Sone þe derke ouire-drafe · & þe day springiſ,  
 Oure bischop bounes him of bed · & buskis on his wedis,  
 And þen iogis aH þe iewis · & generaH callis,  
 A-uaies þaim his vision · how þe voice bedis ; 1508  
 þan consals him þe clergy · clene aH-to-gedire,  
 And all þe cite asentis · sarazens & oþir,  
 To buwne furth with aH þe burȝe · & buske þañ  
 belyue,  
 As him was said in his slepe · þis souerayñ to mete. 1512  
 þan rynnnes he furth in a rase · & arais aH þe cite,  
 Braidis ouire with bawdkyns · aH þe brade stretis,  
 With tars & with tafeta · þar he trede sulde, 1515  
 For þe erth to slike ane Emperoure · ware ouire feble.  
 He plyes ouire þe pauement · with<sup>2</sup> pallen webis,  
 Mas on hiȝt ouire his hede · for hete of þe soñe,  
 Sylours of sendale · to sele ouire þe gatis, 1519  
 And sammes þaim oñ aithire side · with silken rapis,  
 And þen he caggis vp on cordis · as curteyns it were,  
 Euen as þe esyngis ȝede · ouire be þe costes,  
 All þe wawis with-oute · in webis of ynde,  
 Of briȝt blasand blewe · browdeñ with sternes. 1524  
 þus atired he þe toune · & titely þar-estir  
 On ilka way wid open · werped he þe 3atis ;  
 And qua so lukis fra with-out · & with-in haldiſ,  
 It semyd as þe cite to se · ane of þe seuyñ<sup>3</sup> heuyns. 1528

<sup>1</sup> MS. he.

<sup>2</sup> Added above the line.

<sup>3</sup> MS. seuyñs ; with final s expuncted.

þat it be honest aH ouer · & opyn vp þe zates. 1496

Lett þen þi peple euerilke polle · aparaeld<sup>1</sup> be clene,

And aH maner of men · in milke-white clathez.

Bott passe, þou & þi pristez · & prelatez of þe temple,

Reuest aH on rawe · as your rewle askez. 1500

And when þis conquerour comez · carez hym agayns; [Fol. 11.]

For he must ryde & reyne · ouer aH þe brede of þe werlde,

And be Lord of ilke lede · vnto hys last dayes,

And þen be dight vnto þe deth · of drightenez ayre." 1504

Sone þe dyrke ouer-drafe · & þe day springez,

Oure Bishop bownes hym of bede · & buskes hys wedes,

And þen þat Iew of all Iewes · in generaH he clepys,

Says þaim hys vision · & as þe voyce biddes; 1508

Than counceyllys hym þe Clerge · clene aH-to-geder,

And all þe cety be assent · sariauntez & other,

To bowne hym forth with aH þe burgh · & buske hym  
beliue,

As hym was sayd in hys slepe · þis souerand to mete.

Than rynnes forth in a rese · arayes aH þe cyte, 1513

Spredes ouer with bawdkens · aH þe brode stretes,

With riche clothez of taffata · qwer he trede suld,

For þe erth to siche ane emperour · wer aH to feble. 1516

He plyes ouer þe payment · palleñ webbes,

Makez on hight ouer þe heued · for het<sup>2</sup> of þe soñ,

Silours of sendale · to syle ouer þe gateg, 1519

And sampnez þaime on aþer [side] · with sylkyn rapez,

And þan he cachez vp on cordez · als curtaynez it were.

Euen als þe esynges zode · ouer be þe costez,

AH þe wallez withowte · in webbez of Inde,

Of bright blysnand blew · browden with sternes. 1524

Thus attyred he þis toune · & titely þar-after

Of ilke way wide hopyn · warpyd he þe zateg;

Att who so wates fro withowte · & within hedes,

It semyd as to se to · on of þe seuen heuens. 1528

<sup>1</sup> MS. aparaeld; see l. 1552.

<sup>2</sup> The t is written above the line.

The bishop and  
priests are richly  
arrayed.

Now passis furth þis prelate · with pre-tis of þe temple,  
Reueschid him rially · & þat in riche wedis,  
With erst &<sup>1</sup> abite vndire aH · as I am in-fourmede,  
Fulle of bridis & of bestis · of bise & of purple; 1532  
And þat was garnest<sup>t</sup> full gay · with golden skirtis,  
Store starand stanes · strekilland all ouire,

Their garments  
are covered with  
gems.

Saudið fuH of safirs · & opire sere gemmes,  
And poudird with perry · was perroure & othire. 1536  
And sithen he castis on a Cape · of kastand hewes,  
With riche rabies of gold · railed bi þe<sup>2</sup> hemmes,  
A vestoure to vise on · of violet floures,  
Wrozt fuH of wodwose · & oper wild bestis; 1540

The bishop weare  
a golden mitre.

And þan him hiztild his hede · & had on a Mitre,  
Was forgid aH of fyne gold · & fret fuH of perrils,  
Stiȝt staffuH of stanes · þat straȝt out bemes,  
As it ware shemerand shaftis · of þe shire soñ. 1544

The rest are  
dressed in rich  
tunics.

Doctours & diuinours · & othire dere maistris,  
Iustis of iewry · & iogis of þe lawe,  
Ware tired aH in tonacles · of tarrayn webbis;  
þai were bret-full of bees · aH þe body ouire, 1548

So rich a sight  
was never-seen.

And oper clientis & clerkis · as to þe kirke fallis,  
Ware all samen of a soyte · in surples of raynes,  
þat slike a siȝt, I suppose · was neuer sene eftire,  
So parailed a processioñ · a person a-gaynes. 1552

[Fol. 27.]

The citizens  
follow in the  
bishop's train,

Now bowis furth þe bischop · at þe burȝe ȝatis,  
With pre-tis & with prelatis · a pake out of nombre;  
And aH þe cite in sorte · felowis him eſtir,  
Quirris furth all in quite · of qualite as aungels; 1556  
Maistirs, marchands, & Maire · mynistris & othire,  
Worthi wedous & wenchis · & wyues of þe cite;  
Be ilka barne in þe burȝh · as blaȝt ere þaire wedis

all in robes white  
as snow.

As any snyppand snawe · þat in þe snape liȝtis. 1560  
þar passis þe processioñ · a piple be-forne,  
Of childire aH in chalk<sup>3</sup> quyte · chosen out a hundreth,  
With bellis & with baners · & blasand torchis,

<sup>1</sup> Read an.    <sup>2</sup> Added in the margin.    <sup>3</sup> MS. shalk.

Now passes þis prelate · with pretez of þe temple,  
 Reuest fully rially · & *with* ryche wedes,  
 First ane habett<sup>r</sup> vnder aH · as I am enformed.  
 FuH of birdes & of bestes · of byse & of *purpurre* ; 1532  
 And þat was garneshed full gay · *with* gold skirtez,  
 Store starand stanes · strenklett aH ouer,  
 Sawdett *with* saphirez · and oþer sere gemmys,  
 And pouderet vith *perre* · was purer þar<sup>1</sup> oþer. 1536  
 Bot syne he kest on a Cape · of castans hewe,  
 With riche rybans of gold · raythely þe heñ,  
 A vesture of vyce · of vyolet flourez, [Fol. 14 b.]  
 Wroght fuH [of] wodwose · & oþer wylde bestes ; 1540  
 And þen he heghtlet on hys heued · a hoge fair myter,  
 Was forgett aH [of] fyne gold · & frett fuH of perlez,  
 Stight staffuH of stanes · þat straughten owt bemes,  
 Als it wer shemerand shaftez · shott fro þe soñ. 1544  
 Doctours & deynours · & oþer dere maistres,  
 Iustes of Iewry · & Iewes of þe lawe,  
 Wer tyrett<sup>r</sup> aH in tonacles · of tartareñ webbys ;  
 And þai wer brightfuH of bleez · aH þe body ouer, 1548  
 And oþer clerkez & colettes · at to þe kirke longen,  
 Wer aH sampnen in a sott · *with* surples of reynes,  
 That suche a sight, I suppose · was neuer sene aftir,  
 So paraeld a *processioñ* · ane *persoñ* agayns. 1552  
 Now bownes furth þe bischop · at þe brode gates,  
 With pristis & *with* *prelatez* · a pake owt of nowmbre ;  
 And aH þe cite of sorte · sylez hym after,  
 Whirrez forth aH in white · of qualite of angels ; 1556  
 Marchaundez, maister mair · mynister and oþer,  
 Worthy wedous and wifes · & whences of þe cite ;  
 Be ilke a barne in þe burgh · aH blaught is hys wedes  
 Als any snappand snaw · þat in þe snape lightes. 1560  
 Than passys þe *procession* · a peple beforne,  
 Of childer aH in chalke white · chosyn a hundreth,  
*With* bellys & *with* banners<sup>2</sup> · & blesand torchez,

<sup>1</sup> Read þan.<sup>2</sup> MS. barners.

Instrumentis & ymagis · with-in of þe Mynstire ; 1564  
 Children bear  
 censers. Sum with sensours & so[m] · with silueryn cheynes,  
 Quare-of þe reke aromatike · rase to þe welken ;  
 Sum with of þe saynt-ware · many sere thingis,  
 With tablis & topoures · & tretice of þe lawe ; 1568  
 Sum bolstirs of burnet · en-brouden with periH,  
 Bare before þe bischop · his buke on to lig ;  
 Others bear  
 candle-sticks and  
 relics. Sum candilstickis of clere gold · & of clene siluer,  
 With releckis fuH rially · þe richest on þe auutere. 1572  
 þus seyis all þe semle · þe cite with-oute,  
 Vn-to a stonen stede · strezt on þe temple,  
 Scopulus, by sum skiH · þe scripture it callis,  
 They await  
 Alexander. And þare þe come of þe kyng · þis couent abidis. 1576  
 Sone Alexander with ane ost · of<sup>1</sup> many athille dukis,  
 Alexander arrives,  
 and finds all  
 waiting to receive  
 him. Come prekanH toward þe place · with princes & erlis,  
 Sees slike a multitude of men · in milke-quite clathis,  
 And ilk seg in a soyte · at selly him thinkis. 1580  
 þan fyndis he in þis opire flote · fanons and stolis,  
 Practisirs & prematis · & prestis of þe lawe,  
 Of dialiticus & decre · doctours of aythir, 1583  
 Bathe chambirlayn & chaplayne · in chalk-quite wedis.  
 [Fol. 27 b.] And as he waytis in a wra · þan was he ware sone  
 Of þe maister of þat meneyhe · in-myddis þe puple,  
 þat was þe bald bischop · a-bofe alle þ[e]<sup>2</sup> iewis,  
 Was grafid in a garment · of gold & of pu[r]pre. 1588  
 He sees the  
 bishop in his  
 mitre, And þan he heues vp his eze · be-haldis on his myter,  
 Be-fore he saze of<sup>3</sup> fyne gold · forgid a plate,  
 þar-in grauen þe grettest · of aH gods names,  
 with the title  
 Tetragrammaton. þis title, Tetragramaton · for so þe text tellis. 1592  
 With þat comandis þe kyng · his knyztis ouire<sup>4</sup> ilkane,  
 Bathe beroñ & bachelere · & bald men of armes,  
 Na nere þat place to aproche · a payñ of þar lyuys,  
 Bot aH to hald þam be-hynd · heraud & othire. 1596  
 The king advances  
 alone, þan airis he furth aH him ane · to þis athiH meneze,

<sup>1</sup> Added in the margin.<sup>2</sup> MS. þ.<sup>3</sup> Here forgid is inserted, but is underlined.<sup>4</sup> Read euire.



Instrumentes & ymagez · within of þe temple ; 1564  
 Som with censours & som<sup>1</sup> · with syluer chynes,  
 Whar-of þe reke of aromatyke · rase to þe welkeñ ;  
 And of þe sanctuary · mony sere þingez,  
 With tabels & tapers · & tretes of þe law ; 1568  
 Som bolsters of burnett · enbrowden with perle,  
 Borne byfore þe bishop · hys boke on to lig ;  
 Som candelstyke of clene gold · & of good syluer,  
 With relikkez fully rially · þe richest of þe werld. 1572  
 Thus sezes aH þis semble · þe cite withowte,  
 Vnto a stonon stede · streȝt on þe temple,  
 Scopulus, be some skely · þe scriptur it calles,  
 And þar þe come of þe kyng · þis Couent abydez. 1576  
 Sone<sup>2</sup> Alexander with an hoste · of many atheH dukez, [Fol. 15.]  
 Come prekand to þe palace · with princez & Erelez,  
 Saugh suche a multitude of men · [in] mylke-white wedes,  
 And ilke a sege in a sote · þat selly hym thynkez. 1580  
 Than fyndez he in a nother flete · of fanons & stoles,  
 Practyf men in prevatez · & prestez of þe lawe,  
 Of Dialecticus and decre · doctours of ather,  
 Bath chamerlayn<sup>3</sup> & chapelayn · in chalke-white wedes.  
 And als he wates in a wray · þen was he war sone 1585  
 Off þe maister of þat meynze · in-myddez of þe peple,  
 That was þe bald bischop · abowne aH þe Iewes,  
 Was grathed in a garment · of gold & of siluer. 1588  
 Than he heldes vp on hegh · beheld on hys myter,  
 Before he se of fyne gold · forgett a playte,  
 An þar-on grauen on þe grethest<sup>1</sup> · of aH godez namez,  
 This title, tetragramatoñ · for so þe text wittnesse. 1592  
 With þat Comand þe kynge · hys knyghtez all,  
 Bath barouns & bachelers · bald men of armez,  
 No nere þe place [to aproche] · vpon payn of þair lyfez,  
 Bot aH to hald þaim byhynde · þe lesse & þe more. 1596  
 Than ayres he forth aH hym one · to þis atheH meynze,

<sup>1</sup> MS. so, *alt.* to set ; *but* read sō = som.<sup>2</sup> MS. Some.<sup>3</sup> MS. chamernlayn.

and kneels to the  
bishop.

Bowis him doun of his blonke · þe bischop be-forne,  
And kneland on þe cald erth · he knockis on his brest,  
And reuerencez þis haly name · at he seis wreten. 1600  
þan þe iewis of ierusalem · Iustis & othire,  
Lordis & ladis · & be þe litiH childere,

The lords kneel  
to the king.

Enclynys þam to þe conquirour · & him on<sup>1</sup> kneis gretis,  
Kest vp a kene crie · & carpis þir wordis. 1604

"Ay mozt he lefe, ay mozt he lefe" · quod ilka man  
twyse,

They cry, "Long  
live Alexander!"

"Alexander, þe athill aire · vndire þe heuyñ,  
Ay mozt he lefe, ay mozt he lefe<sup>2</sup> · þe lege Emperoure,  
þe wildire of aH þe werde · & worthist on erthe, 1608  
Ay mozt he lef, ay mozt he<sup>1</sup> leue<sup>1</sup>" · quod loude aH  
at anys,

Conqueror of all  
the earth!"

"Ouircomere clene of ilka coste · & ouircomyn neuir,  
þe grettest & þe gloriosest · þat euir god formed,  
Erle or Emperoure · & any erdly prince." 1612

All wonder at  
this greeting.

þare was comen with him kyngis · as þe clause tellis,  
Seneiours out of Sireland<sup>3</sup> · was to him-selfe zolden,  
And þai meruailed þam mekiH · as þe buke tellis, 1615

[Fol. 29.]

When þai it herd so be-heryd · & held it in wondire.

Then Permeon  
asks him why he  
kneelt to the  
bishop.

þan Permeon, a proude kniȝt · a prince of his oste,  
Aires to sir Alexander · & askis at him swythe,  
Syn him adoured aH men · eldire & zongir, 1619  
Qui he obeschið so lawe & bende · þe bischof of iewis?

He replies that  
he knelt to the  
great God,

"Nay," quod þe comly kyng · & þe knyȝt swais,  
"Nouthire haylsid I him · ne hildið him nouthire,  
Bot it was gode at I grete · þe gouernoure of aH, 1623  
Of quam in þe abite & þe armes · he was aH clethið.  
For in þe marche of Messedone · me mynes on a tyme,  
þat slike a segg in my slepe · me sodanly aperid,  
Euyn in slike a similitude · & þis same wedis,  
For aH þe werd as þis wee · wendis now atired. 1628

<sup>1</sup> Inserted in the margin.

<sup>2</sup> Here the MS. wrongly inserts quod.

<sup>3</sup> land is above the line in MS.

Bowes hym downe of hys blonke · þe bischoṕ before,  
 Kneland on <sup>1</sup> þe cald erth · & knokez on hys briste,  
 And hersouns þat haly name · þat he byheld writteñ.

þan aḥ þe Iewes of Ierusalem · Iustice & oþer, 1601  
 Lordez & lades · be þe lityḥ sottetz,

*Processio  
versus alex-  
andrum apud  
Ierusalem.*

Inclines þaim to þis conquerour · & hym on knees gretes,  
 Kest vp a kene crye · & carpyd þees wordes : 1604

“Ay mott he leue, ay mot he leue” · quod ilke a lede  
 twyse,

“Alexander, þe athelfullest<sup>t</sup> · hayr vnder hevenñ, 1606  
 Ay mot he leue, ay mott he leue · þis lege Emperour,  
 The welder of aḥ þe werld · & worthiest vnder wyld,  
 Ay mott he leue,” quod þe Land · [loude all] at anes,

“ouercommer clene of ilke coste · & ouercommyn neuer,  
 The grettest<sup>t</sup> & þe gloriest<sup>t</sup> · þat euer god formeð,  
 Ereḥ or ony Emperour · or erthlich prince !” 1612

þan Wer þair common whit hym kynges · als þe clause telles, [Fol. 15 b.]  
 Senyours owt of Surry · wer to hym-selue ȝoldenñ,

And þai amervale þaime mekyḥ · as menys me þe writtes,  
 When þai saw hym so heret<sup>t</sup> · & heldyn it a wondre. 1616

Than Permeonñ, a proude knyzt<sup>t</sup> · a prince of hys hoste,  
 Ayres to sir alexander · and askys hym swith,

Sen hym adouret aḥ meñ · alder & yonger,  
 Why he obeyd & bowed so · to þe bischop of Iewes ?

“Nay,” quod þe comly kyng<sup>2</sup> · & þe knyzt swerez, 1621

“Noþer haylsed I hym · ne heldit hym noþer,

Bod it was god at I gret · þe gouernour of aḥ,  
 Of whome in þe habett<sup>t</sup> & þe armez · he was aḥ clethyd.

For in þe marche of masydonñ · me menys on a tyme,

Suche a segh in my slepe · me sodenly appered, 1626

Euen in suche a sembland · & in þe same wedes,

For aḥ þis werld as þis wy · wendes now attyred. 1628

<sup>1</sup> MS. of.

<sup>2</sup> MS. knyge.

And þen I mused<sup>1</sup> in my mynde · how at I myȝt wyñ  
 Anothire aneH of þe erth<sup>2</sup> · þat Aysy we caH it,  
 And me thret to be thra<sup>3</sup> · & for na þing turne,  
 Bot tire me titely þarto · & tristly to wende. 1632  
 And syne saȝe I na segg<sup>4</sup> · þat sa was arayd̃ ;

. . . . .

"of whom I once  
 dreamt.

Now I hope to  
 destroy all the  
 Persians."

[Fol. 28 b.]

Alexander is  
 royally received,

and goes to  
 Solomon's temple.

Jaudas brings out  
 a book of Daniel's  
 prophecy,

how the Greeks

And sekirly yone semys · þe same to se<sup>4</sup> to witliñ,  
 þe same gode at I in my slepe · saȝe in my days ; 1635  
 And now I hope me, þurȝe þe helpe<sup>5</sup> · of þe haly fadire,  
 Of *quam* þe hered haly name · is ȝondire oñ hiȝe wreten,  
 To do *with* Darius or I dyi · how so me dere thinke,  
 And þe pride of aH þe Persens · purely distroy.  
 And ȝit I sothely supose · quat so my sale hopis, 1640  
 þat saH faH apon fold · slik fyaunce I haue  
 In þe *grace* of grete god · at gyes aH þe sternes,  
 þat it saH be in my wiH · & oñ na way faile." 1643  
 Now tas þe bischof þe berne · & to þe burȝe wendis,  
 With sange & solempnite · him to þe cite ledis,  
 He was resayned, as I rede · *with* reuerence & Ioye,  
 As he ware duke of ilk douth · & dreuyn doun fra  
 heuen. 1647

þan gas he furth *with* his gingis · to godis awen temple,  
 þat of *sir* Salamon þe sage · sett was & foundid,  
 And þare he lythis of þare lare · as þe law wald̃ ;  
 He offird in þat oratori · & honourd oure lorde.  
 And Iaudas of ierusalem · & aH þe iewis eftir 1652  
 Bringis out a brade buke · & to þe berne reches,  
 Was plant fuH of *prophasys* · playnely aH ouire,  
 Of þe doctrine of DanieH · & of his dere sawis.  
 þe lord<sup>5</sup> lokis on þe lyne · & oñ a lefe fyndis 1656  
 How þe gomes out of grece · suld *with* þaire grete miȝtis

<sup>1</sup> The d is above the line in MS.

<sup>2</sup> MS. *werd* erth ; *but werd is struck out.*

<sup>3</sup> MS. *repeats* to be thra ; *partly underlined.*

<sup>4</sup> MS. þe in same to to w ; *altered to þe same to se.*

<sup>5</sup> *Inserted in the margin.*

And þan I musyd in my mynde · how þat I might wynne,  
 Ane oper angle of þe erth · þat asy we calle,  
 And he me thrett to be tra<sup>1</sup> · & for no thyng turne,  
 Bot tyre me titely *parto* · & tristly to wend. 1632  
 And syne saw I no segh · þat so was atired ; 1633  
 And he<sup>2</sup> hoppyd þe helder þat þis was he · at he<sup>2</sup> saw  
 þeñ, 1633\*  
 For sekerly he semys so · to se *withowte*, 1634  
 The<sup>3</sup> same god þat in my slepe · I sawe in þo days ;  
 And now I hope, þorow help · of þe hye fadre, 1636  
 On whom þe holy name is 3ond · on hye writteñ,  
 To do *with* Darius, or I dye · how I some dere thynke,  
 And þe pride of aH þe persens · purely distroy.  
 Bot 3itte I sothly suppose · qwat so my saule þinkez, 1640  
 That sall be-falle vppon falde · slyke fiance I haue  
 In þe grace of þe grett god · þat gydez aH sternes,  
 That it saH in my will be · & in no ways faille.”  
 Now takys þis Bishop þe berne · & to burgh ledes, 1644  
 With sange & solempnite · *with* hym to cite wendes,  
 He was resaued, as I rede · *with* reuerence & Ioy,  
 As he wer duke of iche dochre · & drevyn owt of  
 heueñ.  
 þan gays he forth *with* hys gyng · to goddes awne temple, [Fol. 16.]  
 That of *sir* salamoñ þe sage · sett was & fondyn, 1649  
 And þar he lightez of þar lare · & als þe lawe wald ;  
 He offers in þat oratory · & honours owr Lorde.  
 And laudes of *Ierusalem* · þe Iewes fadir, 1652  
 Bringes forth a brade buke · & to þe berne reches,  
 Was plantyd full of prophecyes · playnly aH ouer,  
 Of þe doctryne of danieH · & of hys dere sawes.  
 The lede lokys on a lefe · & in a lyne fyndes 1656 *prophecia*  
 How þat þe gomez owt of grece · suld *with* þair grett mightez

<sup>1</sup> Read *thra*.<sup>2</sup> Read *I*; *twice*.<sup>3</sup> MS. Thame.

should destroy  
Persia.

þe pupiH out of Persye · purely distroy ;  
And þat he hopis sall be he · & hertly he ioyes.  
þan partis he to þa prelatiſ · many proude giftis, 1660  
Was nanē sa pore in þat place · bot he his purse fillis,

Alexander richly  
rewards all,

Geues þaṁ garsons of gold · & of gud stanes,  
Rife riches enoȝe · robies & perles,  
Besands to þe bischoṽ · he bed out of nounbre, 1664  
Reches him of rede gold · ransons many,  
Tas him to his tresory · talent him to shewe,  
Bad him wale quat he wald · & wild him þe toṽir.

and tells the  
bishop to take all  
he wants,

ȝit bedis he him, þe bald kyng · as þe buke tellis : 1668  
“Sire, quat þou wiH in þis werd · to wild & to haue,  
Noȝt bot aske it at<sup>1</sup> Alexander · quat þou wiH apon  
resoṁ,

and to ask a boon.

[Fol. 29.]

The bishop asks  
for leave to  
abide in his  
own religion,

And I sall grant, or I ga · with a gud wiH.”  
þan bowis doun þe bischop · & him a bone askis, 1672  
“Sire, þis I depely disire · durst I it neuyn,  
þat it be leuefuH vs oure lare · & oure law vse,  
As oure fadirs has folowid · forwith þis tyme ;  
As of ȝoure grete gudnes · at ȝe grant wald 1676  
To lat vs sitt be safe · bot for þis seuyn wyntir,  
But tribute or trouag · quils þe terme lastis,  
þan were we halden all þe hepe · to hiȝe þe for euir.  
And ȝit I wiH, be ȝoure leue · a worde & na mare, 1680

and that the men  
of Media and  
Babylon should  
become Jews.

þat þe men of Medi · man, be ȝoure leue,  
Lang aH in oure lawe · lely to-gedire,  
And þai of Babiloṁ bathe · & bede I na nothire.”

Alexander grants  
this,

Quod Alexander belyue · “all þis I graunt, 1684  
And els any othire thing · aske & be serued.”

and offers more.

“Nay, now na mare,” quod þe man · & mekly him  
thankid,

Alexander leaves  
a viceroy behind  
him.

“Bot ay þi lordschiṽ & þi loue · quils my lyfe dures.”  
Now kastis þis conquirour · to caire fra þe cite, 1688  
And mas to bide in þe burȝe · a berne of his awyn,  
A messagere to myn · on quat meṁ of him said,

<sup>1</sup> MS. at it.

The peple owt of *perse* · purely distroy ;  
 And [pat] he hopys suld be he · & heterly he ioyes.  
 Than he *partes* to þe *prelates* · mony proude gyftes, 1660  
 Was non so pure in þe place · bot he hys purse fillez,  
 Gyfez þaim garisons of gold · & of god stanez,  
 Riche giftez enogh · bath rubies & *perelez*,  
 Besaunde to þe bischopp · he badde owt of nowmbre,  
 Rechez hym of rede gold · raunsons mony, 1665  
 Takez hym to hys tresory · *talentes* hym shewys,  
 Bade hym wale qwat he walde · & wyld hym þaes oþer.  
 3it biddez hym þe bald kyng · als þe boke tellez : 1668  
 “Sir, qwat þou wiH in þis werld · to weld or to haue,  
 Noȝt bot aske at *alexander* · any thyng of resoñ,

And I saH graunte, or I gay · with a goode wille.”  
 Than bowes downe *our* bischoþ · & hym a bone askez,  
 “Sir, þis I depely *desirre* · durst I it neuē, 1673  
 þat 3e wald latte vs oure lare · & owre lawez vse,  
 Als owr faders hase foloued · forewith þis tyme ;  
 And of *your* grett goodnesse · if 3e þis graunte wald 1676  
 To latt vs sitte & be safe · bot for þis seuē wynter,  
 Withowte *tribute* or truage · whils þe terme lastes,  
 þen wer we halden aH þe hepe · to pray for you for euer.  
 And 3itt I wille, be *your* leue · a worde & no more, 1680  
 þat þe men of mede · may, be *your* leue,  
 Lenge aH in *your*<sup>1</sup> lawe · lely to-geder,  
 And þai of babiloñ bath · þan bid I none othre.”  
 Quod *alexander* als belyue · “aH þis I graunt, 1684  
 And ellys ony oþer thyng · aske & be *serued*.”

[Fol. 16 b.1]

“Nay, nowe no more,” quod þis mañ · & mekely hym  
 thankez,  
 “Bot *your* lordship and youre loue · whille my lyve lastes.”  
 Now kyst hym þis conquerour · to care fro þe cite, 1688  
 And made to byde in þe burgh · a berne of hir awne,  
 A messynger to meyn on · qwat men of hym sayd,

<sup>1</sup> Read our.

Ane Ardromacius, a gome · as<sup>1</sup> þe buke tellis.  
 þan bowis to þe bischoþ · his benyson to fang<sup>1</sup>, 1692  
 Takis lufly his leue · & lendis oñ forthere.  
 To Sere cites þar be-syde · he soȝt *with* his hostis,  
 And þai frendly & faire · frely resayued him.  
 þan of þe Siriens summe · in þe same tyme 1696  
 Folow fra þe fell kyng<sup>1</sup> · as fals men suld,  
 Did þam to *sir Darius* · & depely þam playnt,  
 Quat erreure of þis Emperoure · & euil þai suffird. 1699  
 And he<sup>1</sup> þam faire vndir-fong<sup>1</sup> · & fraynes þam ȝerne,  
 Askis þam of *sir Alexander* · aH at he cuthe,  
 Bathe of his statoure & his strenth · if he<sup>2</sup> ware store ben,  
 His qualite, his quantite · he quiryrs aH-to-gedire;  
 And þai in parchment him payntid · his person him  
 shewid, 1704  
 Ane amlaȝe, ane asaleny · ane ape of aH othire,  
 A wirling, a wayryngle · a wawil-eȝid shrewe,  
 þe cait[if]este creatour · þat cried was euire.  
 And þan, as he lenes · & lokis on his fourme, 1708  
 His litillaike & his licknes · he laythly dispiced,  
 And thre thingis of his thede · he poȝt him sa feble,  
 He dressis to him in dedeyne · & in dispite sendis:  
 First a baH, says þe buke · þe barne *with* to play, 1712  
 A herne-paH es of a berne · of brend gold yeuen,  
 For hottre & for hething<sup>1</sup> · a Hatt made of twyggis;  
 Sayd þat was benere him to bere · þan a briȝt helme.  
 Slike presandis out of *Persy* · he to þe prince sendis, 1716  
 His brefe *with* a brade sele · & biddis hum<sup>3</sup> ga  
 swythe.  
 And qua sa wiH has to wete · howe it worthis eftir,  
 Now sall I neuen vs here next · þe note of his lettir.

Some of the  
Syrians complain  
of Alexander to  
Darius.

[Fol. 29 b.]  
Darius enquires  
about Alexander,

and is shewn a  
caricature of him.

Darius despises  
Alexander,

and in disdain  
sends him a ball  
to play with,

a golden head-  
piece,  
and a hat made of  
twigs.

<sup>1</sup> *Inserted in the margin.*

<sup>2</sup> MS. *repeats* if he.

<sup>3</sup> *Read him.*



And<sup>1</sup> andromaci<sup>us</sup>, a mañ · as I am enformed.  
 þan bowys he to þe Bishoþ · hys benyson to fange, 1692  
 Keeches luffly hys leue · & lendez on ferther.  
 To setez þar bysyde · he soght *with* hys hostez,  
 And þai frendly & faire · & frely resaued hym.  
 Bot þen of surriens a soume · in þe same tyme 1696  
 Flowen from þis feH kyng · as fals men suldyñ,  
 Did þaim to *sir* Darius · & depely þaim plenyd,  
 What errour of þis emperour · & ille þat þai suffred.  
 And he þaim faire vnderfangez · & franez þaim *zaræ*,  
 Askez þaim of *sir alexander* · aH þat he couth, 1701  
 Bath of hys stature & hys strenth · if he wer sture-baned,  
 Hys qualite, hys quantite · enquirez aH-to-gedyr ;  
 And þai in perchemyñ depayntyd · hys person hym  
     sweyd,  
 Ane amlaugh, ane aslyn · ane ape of aH other, 1705  
 A wirlyng, a warlow · a waugle-e<sub>h</sub>ed shrewe,  
 The catyfest creatur · þat credylytt was euer.  
 And þen þe Lord, as he lenytt · & lokett on hys formē,  
 Hys litilayke & hys liknes · he loudly dispysez, 1709  
 And thro<sup>2</sup> thynggez of hys thede · hym thought so feble,  
 He dressyd to hym in dysdene · & dispite sendes :  
 Frist to<sup>3</sup> þe barne, says þe buke · a balle *with* to play,  
 A brayn-pañ of a berne · of brent gold þeñ, 1713  
 For hocour & for hetlyng · a hat made of wiggez<sup>4</sup> ;  
 Sayd, þat was bener hym to bring · þen a bright helme.  
 Suche presandez owt of perse · he to þe prince wayfez,  
 Hys brefe *with* a brade seale · & byddes þaim go  
     swithe. 1717  
 And who sa wete wald · how it worthed aftir,  
 Now saH I neuen vs on next · þe note of hys *lettra*

<sup>1</sup> Read Ane.<sup>2</sup> Read thro.<sup>3</sup> to above the line in MS.<sup>4</sup> Read twiggez.

## Octavius passus Alexandri.

A letter:  
"Darius to  
Alexander.

[Fol. 30.]

Thou art too  
proud and vain.

Thy men are lads  
and thieves.

Thou art too  
weak to harm us.

Thou hadst  
better submit to  
me at once.

The Persians are  
a mighty race.

"Sire dere Darius on dese · þe digne Emperoure,  
þe kyng<sup>1</sup> without comparisson · of kyngis aȝ othire,  
Of aȝ lordis þe lord · þat leues in erthe,  
Predicessour of princes · & pere<sup>1</sup> to þe sonȝ, 1723  
þe souerayne sire of my soyle · þat sittis in my trone,  
In fang *with* my faire godis · þat I affie maste,  
To Alexander, þat of aȝ · so augrily him letes,  
Oure subiet & oure seruand · þus we oure-selfe write.  
For it is wayued vs to wete · þat wickidly þou haues,  
þurȝe enmyte & enuy · elacion of pride, 1729  
Be vanyte & vayne glori · þat in þi wayns kindlis,  
Puruayd þe pletours · oure partis to ride.  
For þou has sameȝ, as men he<sup>2</sup> sais · a selly nounbre  
Of wrichis & wirlingis · out of þe west endis, 1733  
Of laddis & of losengers · & of litiȝ theuys,  
Slike sary sorowis as þi-selfe · to seke vs agaynes,  
And wenes to wilȝ aȝ þi wiȝ · & þat worthis ful laȝe,  
þe prouynce & principalte · of Persye la graunt. 1737  
For þou ert fere al to faynt · oure force to ministere;  
þof þou had gedird all þe gomes · þat euire god fourmedȝ,  
So, man, riued is oure rewine · þat þou may reȝt lycken  
þe store strenthe of oure stoure · to sternes of þe heuen.  
And slike a nekard as þi-selfe · a noȝt of aȝ othire,  
Is bot a madding to meȝ · *with* mare þan him-seluen.  
Forthi is bettir vnbynd · & of þe brathe leue, 1744  
And feyne aȝ *with* fairnes · & fayne at þou may.  
For mare menseke<sup>3</sup> is a man · to meke him be tyme,  
þan eftir made to be meke · malegreue his chekis.  
For aȝ þe gracious godis · & gudnes oȝ erthe, 1748  
þat sany sete & soile · & sustaynes þe erth,  
Prayses ay þe Persyns · passing aȝ othire,

<sup>1</sup> Read pere.

<sup>2</sup> Inserted in the margin; better omitted.

<sup>3</sup> So; for menske.

*Octarus passus.*

**Syr Dere Darius on dese · þe digne Emperour,** 1720 *Epistola darij.*  
**The kyng withowt comparisoñ · of kynges all oþer,**  
 Of at lordes þe Lord · þat leues in erthe, [Fol. 17.]  
 Predecessour of princez · & peir to þe Soñ,  
 The souerane syre of my sole · þat sittis in myne trone,  
 In fange with my faire god · þat I affye maste, 1725  
 To Alexander, þat of aH · so augerdly hym letes,  
 Oure seget<sup>1</sup> & our siruant<sup>1</sup> · þus our-selfe writtez.  
 For it is wayfed vs to wete · þou haues wikedly, 1728  
 Through enmyte & enuye · Elacion of pride,  
 Be vanyte & vaynglory · þat in þi vaynes kyndeles,  
 Purvayd þe pletours · oure partez to ryde.  
 For þou hase sampned, als men sayn · a sellich nowmbre  
 Off wrechez & of wyrlyngez · out of þe west ende, 1733  
 Off laddez & of losyngers · & of lityH thefez,  
 Sicke sary sorowez as þi-self · to seke vs agayns,  
 And wenys to weld at þi wille · þat worthez fuH late,  
 The prouince & þe principalite · of perse le graunt. 1737  
 Bot þou ert fere aH to faynte · oure force to withstonde;  
 þof<sup>2</sup> þou hade gederit<sup>3</sup> aH þe gomez · þat euer god formede,  
 So, man, ryfe is owr reme · þat þou may wele lekyñ  
 þe sture strenth of owr stoure · to þe sternez of heuen;  
 And sike a neker als þi selfe · ane noght of aH oþer,  
 Is bot<sup>4</sup> a maddying to meH · with mare þen þi-selue.  
 For-þi is better vnbende · & of þi brathe leue, 1744  
 . . . . .  
 For mare menske is a man · to meke hym be tyme,  
 Than after made to be meke · mawgre hys chekys.  
 For aH þe graciouse goddes · & goddesse on erth, 1748  
 . . . . .  
 Praysez ay þe persens · passyng aH oþer, 1750

<sup>1</sup> MS. souerent siruant; the former word expuncted.<sup>2</sup> MS. Of. <sup>3</sup> it written above the line. <sup>4</sup> MS. bod.

And for þe oddiste · ilka ost · honoures oure name. 1751

Thou art a dwarf  
and a grub.

And slike a dwinyng,<sup>1</sup> a dwaȝe · & a dwerȝe as þi-selfe,  
A grub, a grege out of grace · ane erȝ-growyñ sorowe,  
Wiȝ couet ȝit as a king · wiȝ caytefes to lyte,  
To couir at combrid aȝ þe kyngis · vndire þe cape of  
heuen !

[Fo. 30 b.]

Riȝt as a flaw of feȝ snawe · ware fallyñ of a ryft, 1756

Of a wysti wonñ waghe · wiȝ þe wynd blawen,  
So wiȝ a flote of Fresons · folowand þi helis,  
þou sekis fraward Sichim · þi-selfe wrothir-haile,

Thou thinkest to  
do as thee list,

And leuys as a loreȝ · þus oure lande to entire, 1760

And maa þi lepis & þi laikis · & quat þe liste ellis,

like rats or mice  
in a room.

As ratons or ruȝe myse · in a rowme chambre,  
Aboute in beddis or in bernys · þare baddis ere nane.

Bot I haue wilily waited · þi wiles & þi castis, 1764

And quen þou hopis aȝ þir hiest · to haue aȝ þar wiȝ,

But I shall slay  
thee.

I sall þe sett oñ a saute · & sla þe [wiȝ] my handis.

For þi for pompe or for pride · þi purpose a-vise, 1767

Turne þe, trechoure, be-time · þat þou na treson haue,

Return to thy  
den.

And drawe a-gayñ to þi deñ · vndire þi dam wyngis.

Se quat I send to þe,<sup>2</sup> soñ · þi-selfe wiȝ to laike,

A hatt & a hand-baȝ · & a herne-panne ; 1771

I send thee some  
playthings.

Slike presandis to play wiȝ · as pertines to babbis.

For ai a child mot him chese · to childire geris ;

For mestire & miserie · vnneth may þou forthe

þine awen caitefe cors · to clethe & to fede,

And supposis as a sott · to sese oure landis, 1776

And outhire darius to drepe · or dryfe fra his kythis !

Bot by þe grace & þe gude · þat god gaue my fadire,

Our land is so  
rich in gold that  
it outshines the  
sun.

So riued is þe rede gold · oure regions wiȝ-in,

þat qua sa had it on a hepe · haly to-gedire, 1780

<sup>1</sup> MS. dwinyng.

<sup>2</sup> MS. þi, altered to þe.

And for þe oddest of ilke one oste · honours owr name.  
 And slyke a dwynying · a drawgh of þi-selueñ, 1752  
 A grob, a grig out of grece · ane erth-groweñ sorow,  
 WyH couett zitte as a kyng · with catyffez liteH,  
 To couer & to combre aH þe kynggez · vnder þe Cape of  
 heueñ !  
 Right as a flaw of fell snaw · fallen wer fro þe drifte, 1756  
 Of a wistus wondyn wagh · with þe wynd blayñ,  
 So with a flote of fresons · folowand thi heles,  
 Thu sekys fraward sychim · þi-selue with eueH haille,  
 And Leues as a loseH · owr land for to entre, 1760 [Col. 17 b.]  
 And make þi lepyz & þi lakez · & qwat þou list ellys,  
 As ratons or ronke myce · in a rowme chaumbre,  
 About on beddes or in bernez · þar baddez er nane.  
 Bott I haue willyly wayted · þi wilez & þi castez, 1764  
 And when þou hopys aH-pir eldest · to haue at þou likez,  
 I saH þe sett on a sawte · & slaye þe with my handez, 1766  
 And so saH, fole, for þi folez · be fenyshit on dawes. 1766\*  
 For þi pompe & þi pride · þi purpasse avyse,<sup>1</sup> 1767  
 For yf þou shote ouer sheet · þou shendes þi flayne. 1767\*  
 Turne<sup>2</sup> þe, trechour, be tyme · þat þou no treson hable, 1768  
 And [drawe] agayn to þi den · vnder þi dame wengez.  
 Se qwat I sende þe, soñ · þi-selfe with to layke,  
 A hatt here & a hand-balle · & a herne-panne ;<sup>3</sup>  
 Slike presantes<sup>4</sup> to play with · as pertenyys þe to haue. 1772  
 For ay a childe most hym chose · vnto childer gammez ;  
 For mister & for michefe · vneth may þou forth  
 þine awne catef cors · to cloth & to fede,  
 And zit supposes as A sott · to sesyn owr Landez, 1776  
 And Darius to drepe · & dryve owt of hys<sup>5</sup> kythes !  
 Bot be þe grace & þe goode · þat god gafe my fader,  
 So ryfe is þe rede gold · oure regions within,  
 At who so had it on a hepe · holy to-gedre,<sup>6</sup> 1780

<sup>1</sup> MS. to avyse ; *but to is better omitted.*    <sup>2</sup> MS. To me *wrongly*,

<sup>3</sup> MS. payne, *corrected to panne.*    <sup>4</sup> MS. presandez presantes.

<sup>5</sup> lys, *corrected to hys.*

<sup>6</sup> MS. to gredre.

- It wald vs let, as I leue · þe list of þe soñ !  
 For-þi bið I þe badrich · on bathe twa þine eȝen,  
 And oñ þe plegg<sup>t</sup> & þe payñ · & perih as folowis,  
 Añ þi vanyte to voide · & þi vayne pride, 1784
- Return to  
Macedon,  
 And mew agayñ to Messedone · or any mare fañ.  
 For be þe saule of my sire · bot if þou sone turne,  
 We sall þe send sike a soume · of segis en-armed<sup>t</sup>,  
 [Fol. 31.] Nozt as Philips fant · salle fare with þi-selfe, 1788
- or thou shalt be  
hung like a thief.”  
 Bot as a prince of proued theues · pyne þe to dede.”  
 Als sone as his sandismen · to þis sire come,  
 þai present him þe playntis · þe pistill him rechis,  
 Alexander reads  
the letter aloud,  
 And Alexander belyue · be-fore añ his princes, 1792  
 To añ his ost euyñ oñ · he openly declaris.  
 And quen his knytis of þis clause · þe carpe vndirstode,  
 and his men are  
afraid.  
 þen ware þai frekly a-frayd · of þe feñ saȝes ;  
 And as sone<sup>1</sup> as him-selfe saȝe · his seggis amoued<sup>t</sup>, 1796  
 In bilding<sup>t</sup> of his bachelers · he breuys þire wordis :  
 He says,  
 “Quat now? my worthi werriouris · sa wiȝt & sa noble,  
 Mi bernes & my baratours · þe best vndire heuen ;  
 Lettis ñeüre it broȝt be oñ brade · for vpbraide of  
 schame, 1800
- “Be not afraid of  
Darius.  
 3e doute for þe indityngs · of Darius pistils.  
 I sett ȝowe an ensample · ȝe se it añ daye,  
 In thorps & in many thede · þar ȝe þurȝe ride,  
 He is like a yelp-  
ing cur, that  
cannot bite.  
 At ilka cote a kene curre · as he þe chache wald<sup>t</sup> ; 1804  
 Bot as bremely as he baies<sup>2</sup> · he bitis neuir þe fastir.  
 Bot in sum, I suppose wele · þat sothe is þe lettir,  
 þare as he tellis quyche a tunne · of tresoure he hauys.  
 For-þi vs buse to be bigg<sup>t</sup> · & bataill him ȝek<sup>t</sup>, 1808
- We must get his  
gold.”  
 þe grete garisons of gold · sañ gedire vp oure hertis.”  
 With þat comands þe kyng · his knyztis be-lyue,  
 þe donesmen þat fra Darius come · with þe derfe lettir,  
 þat þai suld titly þam take · & by þe toȝe throtis, 1812
- He gives orders  
 And for þaire souerayne sake · þam send to þe galawis.

<sup>1</sup> MS. *inserts him s ; but it is struck out.*<sup>2</sup> *The e is above the line.*

It wald hym lett, as I leue · þe light of þe Soñ!  
 For-þi bid I þe badly · vppon payn of þi egheñ,<sup>1</sup>  
 And on þe plight & payn · & perle þat folows,  
 AH þi vanyte to voyde · & þi vayn pryde, 1784  
 And mese ayayn to masydon · or ony mare falle.  
 For, be þe sawle of my sire · bot yf þou sone turne,  
 I saH send þe suche a sume · of segges enarmed, 1787  
 þat noght as philip faunt<sup>t</sup> · þou saH fare with þi-seluen,  
 Bot as a prince reproued · sall be pynynd to dede.”  
 Als sone as euer hys sondesmeñ · to þis syre commyñ,  
 Thai present<sup>t</sup> hym playnly · & þat pistiH hym rechys,  
 And alexander als byliue · before hys ateh<sup>2</sup> princez, 1792  
 And to þe host euen ouer · it opynly declares. [Fol. 18.]  
 And when þe knyghtez · of þis clause vnderstonde,  
 Than wer þai felly<sup>3</sup> affrayed · of hys feH sawes;  
 And als sone as hym-selfe se · hys seges ameyved, 1796  
 In beldyng of hys bachelers · he breues þees wordes:  
 “What now? my worthy weryours · so wight & so noble,  
 My bernis & my barotours · þe best vnder heuen;  
 Lett neuer it be broght on brade · for vmbrayd of  
 shame, 1800  
 Yhe dout<sup>t</sup> for þe dityng<sup>t</sup> · of darius pisteH.  
 I sett you an ensauple · ye se it euerilke day,  
 In thorpus & in mony thede · þare ye þorow rydeñ,<sup>4</sup>  
 . . . . . 1804  
 For yf he bre mely bays · he bitez neuer helder.  
 Bot in some way, I suppose wele · þat soght is hys lettre,  
 þair as he tellez which tunne<sup>5</sup> · of tresour he hase.  
 For-þi vs [bus] to be big · & batele hym zelde, 1808  
 þe grete garison of gold · saH geder vp ovr hertes.”  
 With þat commandez þe kyng<sup>t</sup> · hys knyghtez belyfe,  
 þare Domesmen þat from darius come · with þe derfe lettrez,  
 þat þai suld titely þaim take · & be toze nekez, 1812  
 For þair souerend sake · þaim send to þe galouse.

<sup>1</sup> MS. eugheñ.      <sup>2</sup> So in MS.      <sup>3</sup> MS. fellyd.<sup>4</sup> MS. dydeñ.      <sup>5</sup> MS. tyme.

to hang the  
messengers.

þan was þa messangers a-maied · as mervale ware ellis,  
With kene carefuH crie · þis conquirour þai said: 1815

They beseech him  
to be merciful.

“Allas! quat lake lyse in vs lord · if it be 3oure wiH,  
þus causeles for oure kyng · encumbird to worthe?”

“The sazes of 3our souerayn” · said þe kyng þeñ,

[Fol. 31 b.]

“Nedis me to slike notis · as I hað neuer etlic,

He says it is  
because Darius  
calls him a thief.

þat has 3ow sent to my-selfe · nozt sa as him aze; 1820

Loo ‘litiH thefe’ in ilka lyne · his lettir me callis.”

“3a,” quod þai, “comly kyng” · & oñ knes<sup>1</sup> fallis,

“þase ditis endited to 3owe · sir Darius him-seluyñ,

They remind him  
that it is Darius  
who wrote the  
letter.

For he knew nozt of 3our kni3thede · ne of 3our kid  
streñh; 1824

Ne wist nozt of 3our worthenes · & wrate all þe baldire.

Bot wald 3e grant vs to gaa · & gefe vs 3our lefe,

þen suld we bremely 3our bill · to þe berne shewe.”

þen lete þe lord þam allane · & went till his fest, 1828

He pardons them,  
and entertains  
them.

Takis þam with him to his tent · & þam at ese makis.

Sone as þai in his sale · were sett at þe table,

“Sire Alexander, athiH kyng” · quod aH with a steuyñ,

“Comands with vs to caire · kni3tis a thousanð, 1832

And we sall surely oure sire · þe send in þaire handis.”

“3a, make we blis,” quod þe kyng · “blithe mote 3e  
worthe,

For as for takynge of 3our lord · saH na lede wynde.”

He writes to  
Darius.

To Darius anopir day · enditis he a pistiH, 1836

A crest clenly inclosid · þat consayued þis wordis.

Alexander, þe aire · & eldest childe bathe

Of kyng Philip þe fers · þe fendere of grece,

And als of Olimpades · þat honourable lady, 1840

“Alexander to  
Darius, who calls  
himself a con-  
queror.

To þe, Darius, oñ dese · þus dite I my lettir.

þou prince of aH þe Persyns · þat peres to þe sonne,

þe conquirour of ilka cost · callid of þi-selfe,

With all þi gracious godis · graithid in þi trone, 1844

All þus I send to 3owe I my<sup>2</sup> sawe · vndir my sele wreteñ.

Sire, if we se with a suth · surely me thinke,

<sup>1</sup> MS. keies, altered to knes. <sup>2</sup> written above the line in MS.



þen wer þees messyngers amaced · as merveH wer ellez,  
 With carfuH chere · to þe conquerour þai saydyñ :  
 "Alas ! what lake lyes in vs · lord, be your lefe, 1816  
 Thus causles for owr kyng · encombred to worthe ?"  
 "The sawez of your soueren" · sayd þe kyng þeñ,  
 "Nedes me now to seche notes · as I neuer attelytt,  
 That he hase sent to my-seluen · noght as he awght"; 1820  
 Lo ! 'lityH thefe' in iche line · hys *lettre* me calles."

· · · · ·  
 "þis doyngze *sir* darius · indited you hym-selueñ,  
 For he knew noght *your* knyghthode · ne *your* kyd  
 strenthez ; 1824

Ne wist noght of yowr worthiness · & wrote aH þe balder.  
 Bot 3e wald graunt vs to go · & gyfe vs owr lyfez,  
 Than suld we bremely your blysse · vnto þe berne shewe."  
 þan lete þe Lord þaim aloñ · & lathys þaim to hys feste,  
 Takes þaim with hym to hys tent · & makez þaim at ease.  
 Sone as þees sandesmeñ in sale · wer sett at þe table, [Fol. 18 b.]  
 "Sir alexander, ateh kyng" · quod aH with a stevyñ,  
 "Comand with vs to care · knyghtez a thowsand, 1832  
 And we saH surely owr syre · you send in þair handez."  
 "Ja, make 3e blysse," quod þe kynge · "blyth mote 3e  
 worthe,

For þe lachynge of *your* Lorde · saH noght a lede weynde."  
 Bot to Darius on þat oper day · indited he a pisteh, 1836  
 A *lettre* clenly enclosyt · þat consaued þees wordes.

"I, alexander, ayr · & eldeste childe bothe Epistola.

Of kyng philip þe ferse · þe fender of grece,  
 And als of olimphades · þat honorable ladye, 1840

To þe, *sir* Darius, on dese · þus dite I my *lettre*.  
 þou prince of aH persens · þat apperys to þe soñ,  
 The conquerour of ilke coste · callyd of þi-selueñ,  
 With aH þi graciouse goddes · grathed in þi trone, 1844

AH þus I send þow to say · vnder my sealle wrytteñ.  
 Sir, yf we se þe sothe · surely me thynke,

All men's lands  
are but their own  
for a day.

Oure facultes, oure faire fees · oure fermes & our landis,  
We may noȝt chalangi þam̄ ne clayme · ne cañ þain  
oure awen, 1848

[Fol. 32.]

Bot all I deme it as det · & to a day borowid.  
For sen we riden on þe rime · & oñ þe ringe seten

Fortune's wheel  
turns swiftly.

Of þe qwele of Fortoun, þe quene · þat swiftly changis,  
Ofte pas we in pouert · fra plente of gudis, 1852  
Fra mirthe in-to mournyng · fra mournyng in-to Ioye.  
For now vs wantis in a qwirre · as þe quele turnes ;

When we think to  
be highest,  
Fortune drowns  
us.

Queñ we suppose in oure sele · to sit alþir heist,  
þañ fondis furth dame Fortoun · to þe flode-ȝatis, 1856  
Drazes vp þe damme-borde · & drenchis vs euire.  
For-þi a we þat has wit · þose he wele suffir,  
So sadly in soueraynete · he set neuire his hope 1859  
For pride of na pro[s]perite · ne prise at hiñ folewis,  
To olle ay oñ his vndireling · for ouer-laikē a quyle.

Let no man  
despise his  
smaller neigh-  
bour.

For any sele vndire son · a sott I him hald,  
þat ay has deyne & dispite · at dedis of litiñ,  
Sen oft þe hauenlest here · is houen to þe sternes, 1864  
And he þat graithist is of gudis · gird añ to poudire.

Ye dishonour  
your name in  
reviling me.

For-þi a depe dishonoure · ȝe do to ȝoure name,  
Ane emperoure þat oñ erth · is euyñ to ȝoure-selfe,  
To me sa litiñ & sa lawe · slike lettirs to sende, 1868  
And presand out of Persy · bot for a pure hethyng.  
For þou enherestis añ þis erth · & euens to þe soñ,

You call yourself  
king of all men,  
as if you were  
immortal.

And callis þe kyng of ilka kithe · vndir þe cape of heuen,  
And þarto sittis, as þou sais · in sege as ane Aungeñ,  
To-gedire with þi grete<sup>1</sup> gods · and oñ a gilt trone. 1873  
Bot syn gostid goddesses & gods · ere graythid neuir to dye,  
Bot ai sall last furth elike · oñ-lyue ouire<sup>2</sup> mare,  
þai naue no wiñ to my notis · ne wilnyng to haue,  
No dole ne no daliance · of dedely bernes. 1877

I know myself to  
be mortal, and  
attack you.

Bot I know I am corruptible · & caire ȝow agaynes,  
Als with a dedly duke · to do my bataiñ ;

<sup>1</sup> MS. *repeats with grete.*

<sup>2</sup> *Read euire.*

Our facultez or faire feys · owr fermez & owre goldes,  
We may noght chalynge þaim ne clame · ne calle þaim our  
awne, 1848

Bot aH I deme as dett · vnto a day borowed.

For yff we ryde on þi reme · & on þi renke settyñ

Off þe whele of forton & þe whene · þat whistely chaungez,

Of[t] passe we in-to pouerte · fro plente of godez, 1852

Fro mirthe into murnyng · fro murnyng into Ioy.

For now vs vantes in a whirre · as þe whele chaungez ;

When we supposye in howre-selſe · to sitte aH þar heldest,

þen fonndez douñ dame fortoñ · to þe flode-ꝛates, 1856

Drawez vp þe dame-borde · & drenchez vs for euer.

For-þi a wye þat hase witte · of þe whele sofre,

So<sup>1</sup> sodandly in hys souerente · to sett neron<sup>2</sup> hys hope

For pride of no prosperite · ne prise at hym folowez, 1860

To olle ay on hys vnderlinges · for ouerlayke a while.

For ony ceyle vnder heven · a sot I hym halde,

þat ay hase dene & dispyte · of dedes of lityH,

Syon oft þe haslokst her · is heuen to þe sternes, 1864

And he þat<sup>3</sup> grethest was of goddez · gird aH to-geder.

For-þi a depe disHonor · yhe do to your Name,

[Fol. 19.]

Ane Emperour þat on þis erth · is euen to your-selueñ,

To me so lityH & so lawe · such lettres to wayfe, 1868

And presentes owt of perse · bot for a pure hethinge.

For þou inheretes aH þis werld · & euens vnto þe suñ,

And calles þe kyng of ilke kyth · vnder þe cape of heueñ,

And þarto sittes as þou says · in sege as an angeH, 1872

To-gedre with þi grett goddez · on a gilt trone.

. . . . .  
. . . . .  
. . . . . 1876

I know I am corruptible · & caire þow agayns,

Als a dedlich duk · to do my bateH ;

<sup>1</sup> MS. So doys he so sodandly ; *of which doys he is subpuncted.*

<sup>2</sup> So in MS. ; *for neuer on.* <sup>3</sup> MS. þ, *with ht above the line.*

[Fol. 32 b.]  
If I win, great  
will be my  
honour.

Bot þof<sup>1</sup> þou þe victor a-vaile · na vaunte saH arise,  
Ne lose, bot as a litill thefe · 3ow limpid to encumbre.  
Bot chance it me, þat am a childe · þe cheuer to worthe,  
So þat be geuyn me þe gree · grete glorie is myn aweñ.  
For þan sall spring vp þe speche · & sprede out<sup>2</sup> of  
mynð, 1884

You speak of the  
plenty of your  
gold.

How I haue conquered a kyng · þe kideest of þe werd.  
Bot a tale 3e me tald · I trow be na faile,  
Of þe ryfenes of þe rede gold · 3our regioñ with-iñ,  
Quilke plente is in Persy · of perest & of ellis, 1888  
þe somme of siluer & of siche · & of sere stanes,  
þare-with oure wittes has þou wele · & oure wiH sharpid,  
And blid with þi besands · þe bataiH to zeld, 1891  
Made vs corageous & kene · 3oure clere gold to wyñ,  
And put a-way oure pouert · 3e plede vs to hald.

This makes us  
bold to hope to  
win it.

Bot as touchand þe trufils · þat 3e to me sent, 1894  
þe herne-pan, þe hand-baH · þe hatt made of twiggis,  
þare has þou prophesid apert · & playnely vs schewid,  
And faire affirmed vs before · þat saH fall eftir. 1897

I will explain  
what the play-  
things mean.

The ball is the  
world, which  
shall be mine.

For by þe baH, sir, I breue · aH þe brode werd,  
þe erthe at to myne empire · enterely bees 3olden.  
And be þe hat, þat is holewe · be-for þe heued bowet,  
I constru þat ilka kyng · saH clyne to my-selfe. 1901  
þan hope I by þe hernepañ · þat þe hede couirs,  
Ouir-comers<sup>3</sup> to be callid · & ouire-comen neuire.

The hollow hat  
shews that all  
shall give way to  
me.  
The headpiece  
shews I shall be  
head."

Now þou, þe grettest vndir god · graithis me trouage,  
With aH þis dignites be-dene · þat I diuined haue."  
þis brefe bedis þaim him bere · & besands þam rechis ;  
And eftir armes aH his ost · & airis oñ eftir forthire.  
Sire Darius for þe ditis · nere died he for angire, 1908  
To twa of þe derrest of his dukis · ditis he þis pistill :  
"I, þe corounnest kyng · of kyngis aH othire,  
To þe, sir primus, a prince · of Persye þe grettest, 1911  
And als to ser Antagoyne · myñ aweñ athiH dukis,

A letter.

"Darius to Sir  
Primus.  
[Fol. 33.]

<sup>1</sup> MS. Bot þou þof ; but þou is underlined.

<sup>2</sup> Inserted in the margin.

<sup>3</sup> Read Ouir-comer.

Bot if þou þe victour availe · no vaunt saH þar rise, 1880  
 No lose, bot of a lityH thef · enlympyd you to combre.  
 Bot chaunce it me, þat I am childe · þe cheuer to worth,  
 So þat if be<sup>1</sup> gefyn me þe gre · grete glory is my awne.  
 For þan saH springe vp þe speche · & sprede owt of  
 mynde, 1884

How at I haue Conquered a king<sup>t</sup> · þe kyddest of þe werld.  
 Bot one tale 3e me tald · I trowe be no fable,  
 Of þe refuse of rede gold · your regions within,  
 Which plente is in perse · of perle & of ellys, 1888

þe some of siluer & of siche · & of sere stones,  
 þar-with owr willes er replete · & our wittes sharped,  
 And baldit vs with þi besaundez · þe bateH to byd,  
 Made vs coragious & kene · þi clere gold to wynne, 1892  
 And put away our pouerte · yhe pledyn vs to hald.  
 Bot as tochand þe trufels · þat 3e to me send,  
 þe hærne-payn, þe hand-balle · þe hat made of twygges,  
 þair hase þou prophecied apert · & playnly vs schewed,  
 And fair enformed vs before · þat falle saH after. 1897

For be þe bale, sir, I breue · aH þe brode werld,  
 The erth þat to myne empire · entirely is 3holden. 1899  
 And be þe hatte, þat is holys<sup>2</sup> · & before þe heued<sup>3</sup> bo3et,  
 I Constrew þat iche kyng · saH incline to my-selueñ.  
 þan hope I, be þe harnepanne · þat þe heued Couers,  
 Ouercommer to be callyd · & ouercomyn neuer.

Now þe gretest vnder god · gyfes me truage, 1904  
 With aH þar dignitez be-dene · þat deuised I Hauc."

THys brefe he biddez þaim Bere · & besaundes þaim riches ; [Fol. 13 b.]  
 And aftyr armes hys oste · & ayres on forther.

Sir darius for þis detes · nere dyes for sorow, 1908  
 And to two þe derrest of hys dukes · ditez he þis pistetH :  
 "I, Coroundest<sup>t</sup> kyng · of kynges aH oþer, *Epistola.*  
 To þe, sir Priamus, a prince · of þe gretest<sup>t</sup> perse,  
 And also to þe, sir antigoñ · myne awne atheH dukes, 1912

<sup>1</sup> be, written above the line.

<sup>2</sup> Read holow.

<sup>3</sup> MS. heuend ; but see l. 1902.

- þe soueraynest of my *seniourie* · my *saroparis*<sup>1</sup> hatten,  
 Se here I send 3ow my seele · *with saluts* of ioye.
- Since Alexander  
 invades my lauds,  
 Fra *Alexander* þe kyng · as I am in-fourmed,  
 Is entrid *with* oure enmys · aȳ endles nounbre, 1916  
 þe Anglies of *Asie* · & has þam aȳ stroyed,
- I charge you to  
 attack him.  
 For-þi of life & o lym · my lege men I charge  
 To prestli 3ow apparaiȳ · & pas þam agaynes,  
*With* all þe hathils & þe heris · & þe hiȳe maistris 1920  
 þat 3e may semble in þe sidis · *saudiours* & othire.
- Take this boaster,  
 þen chese 3ow furth my chiftanes · & me þe child take,  
 Laches me þis losengere · & ledis me him hedire,  
 þat I may him skelp *with* a skorge · & þen<sup>2</sup> of<sup>3</sup> skire  
 porpуре 1924  
 A side slaun him sewe · & send him to his modire ;  
 For now he *proches* for pride · & *propurly* he wedis,  
 For-þi him bose to be bett · as a barne fallis.  
 For it<sup>4</sup> aȳe noȳt slik ane Asald · nane abletus to off  
 werres, 1928
- He is only fit to  
 play at bowls."  
 Bot at þe bowlis as a brode · or *with* a baȳ playe."  
 þire princes, sone as þe pistill · was put þam in hand,  
 þan part þai þe proud sele · þe printe þai adhoured,  
 Vn-lappis lȳtly þe lefe · & þe line redes, 1932
- A letter.  
 And þus-gate agynward · þai graithid him anothire.
- "Sir Priamus to  
 Darius.  
 "To þe kiddest kyng to a-count · of kyngis aȳ othire,  
 Sire Dari, *with* þi dere godis · drised oȳ þi trone,  
 Gouvernoure of ilk a gome · & god all þi-selfe, 1936  
 þi satrapairs, þi seniours · *with seruage* obescheȳ :  
 Sire, wetis it wele, 3oure worthines · & wenys it na  
 langire,  
 þat þis child, *with* his chiftans · þat 3e charge vs to take,  
 Has reden aȳ oure regions · & raymed oure landis, 1940  
 Departid aȳ oure prouynce · & purely it wastid.  
 And we þan lift vp a lite · & lent him a-gayne,  
 Ferd furth *with* a flote · & him in þe fyld metis ; 1943

This child, as you  
 call him,  
 has wasted our  
 lands.

[Fol. 33 b.]

<sup>1</sup> Read *satoparis* ; see l. 1937.

<sup>2</sup> MS. *þen þe* ; but *þe* is struck out.

<sup>3</sup> Inserted in the margin. <sup>4</sup> Written above the line in MS.

The soueranest of my senory · my satrapers haldeñ,  
 Se here I send þou my sealle · with salutes of Ioy.  
 For alexander the kyng · as I am informed,  
 Is entred with owr enmys · ane endles nowmbre, 1916  
 In þe angle of asy · & hase þaim aȝ stroyde,  
 For-þi on life & on lymez · my legemen I charge  
 To pristly þou apperale · & passe hym agayns,  
 With aȝ þe hatellys & þe herez · & þe hye maisters 1920  
 þat ȝe may assemble on þai sydez · saugeours & oȝer.  
 Chesse þou forth chiftanez · & me þis childe takes,  
 Laches me þis losynger · & ledes me hym heder,  
 And [I] saȝ hym skelþ with a scourge · & þen in skyre  
 purple 1924

A syde slaun hym insew · & send hym hys modre ;  
 For now he prokes for pride · & p[ro]prely wodez,  
 For-þi he must be bett · as a barne falles.  
 Bot it aught noght suche brolle · in none armez of  
 werez, 1928

Bot at þe bulez as a brode · or with a bale to play.”  
 þire princez, when þis pistell · was putt þaim in hand,  
 þai departyd þe prowde sealle · þe printe þai honour,  
 And vnlappyd lightly þe leffe · & þe lines redyñ, 1932  
 And þus agaynward · þ[a]i grathed hym one oȝer.

“To þe kyng to account<sup>1</sup> · of aȝ kynges on erth, Epistola.  
 Sir Dary with þi dere goddez · dressyd in trone,  
 Gouvernour<sup>2</sup> of ilke grome · & god aȝ þi-selueñ, 1936  
 þi satrapers, þi senyowrs · with seruyce obidiens :  
 Sir, wetes it your worthynes · & wenys no langer,

þat þis childe with hys chiftanys · ȝe charge vs to take,  
 He hase rideñ aȝ your regions · & raymet owr landez, 1940  
 Despersed aȝ our prouince · & purely distroyde.  
 And we þen liften vp a lite · & rydyn hym ayayns,  
 Ferd forth with a folke · & hym in þe feld metyñ ; 1943 [Fol. 20.]

<sup>1</sup> MS. acoant.<sup>2</sup> MS. Geuernour.

We fled before  
him.

Bot sone we bed him þe bake · & besely<sup>1</sup> we shapid  
Out of þe handis vn-hewyñ · of oure hatill<sup>2</sup> fais.

We beseech your  
help."

And now haly aH þe hepe · at 3e<sup>3</sup> 3oure help callis,  
Vn-to 3oure mekiH maieste · we mekely beseke,  
þat vs 3our lege & 3oure lele meñ · it likid 3ow to  
forthire, 1948

Darius hears that  
Alexander  
approaches.

Or þañ oure wirschip at-wynde · & wastid be þe regme."  
As radly as þe riche kyng · had red ouir þis pistiH,  
Be þat mevis in A<sup>3</sup> Messangere · & maynly him tellis,  
þat Alexander was at hand · & had his ost loygid 1952  
A-poñ þe streme of Struma<sup>4</sup> · þot strekis þurze his landis.

He is grieved.

Sire Darius for þa ditis · was depely a-greuyd,  
Callis him his consail · a clause he him enditis,  
Mas a brefe at a braide · & it in brathe sendis, 1956

A letter.

"Darius to his  
servant Alex-  
ander.

To Alexander as be-lyue · & aH þus him gretes.  
¶ "I, sir Dari, þe deyne · & derfe Emperoure,  
þe kyng of kyngis I am callid · & conquirour bathe,  
Of all lordis þe lord · a-lose<sup>5</sup> þurze þe werd, 1960  
And ane of þe soucrayne sires · vndir þe vij sternes,  
To þe, my seruand, I send · & suthely þou knawes,  
And wete þou wele þurze aH þe werde · is wirschip  
oure name.<sup>6</sup>

How couldst thou  
be so bold?

For aH þe gracious gods · at þe ground visitis, 1964  
aH ere done me to doute · duccses<sup>7</sup> & othire.

How burde þe þan be sa bald · for blod in þi hened,  
To moue þus ouir þe mountey[n]s · & ouir þe many  
watirs 1967

With slike a sounme ouir þe see · a saute vs to 3eld,  
Or any maistrie to make · my maieste a-gayne?

[Fol. 34.]

Thou hadst  
enough to do to  
keep Macedonia.

For wella<sup>7</sup> wide ware þe wele · wete þou na nothire,  
Bathe þi glorie & þi grace · þi gladnes in erthe, 1971  
Migt þou þe marches of Messedoyne · mayntene þi-selfe,  
And gouerne bot þine awen gronde · agaynes oure<sup>8</sup> wiH.

<sup>1</sup> MS. & hi besely.

<sup>2</sup> Read hathill.

<sup>3</sup> Inserted in the margin.

<sup>4</sup> The u is above the line.

<sup>5</sup> Read alosed.

<sup>6</sup> MS. namo.

<sup>7</sup> So (or duccses) in MS.

<sup>8</sup> Inserted in the margin.



Bot sone wer bidden þaim þe bake · & besely echapyñ 1944  
 Owt of handez to þe swerde · mony of owr athelles.  
 And we now haly aH þe hepe · þat 3e your helpe callyñ,  
 Vnto your mykle mageste · we mekely besekyñ,  
 þat vs your lege & your lele meñ · it liked 3ou to  
 forther, 1948

For owr worship is weynd · & wasted is owr remes."  
 And als radely as þe ryche kyng · had red ouer þe pisteh,  
 Be þat mefys in a messynger · & manyly hym tellys,  
 þat alexander was at hand · & hed an hoste loget 1952  
 Vppon þe streme of streuma · þat straughtit þorow þe land.  
 þen *sir* dary for þoe dedes · was deply agrevyd,  
 Callys hys counseH · a clause he inditez,  
 Make a breue in a brayde · & in a breth sendes, 1956  
 To alexander als belyue · & aH þus hym gretes.

"I, *Sir Dary þe digne · & derfe Emperour*,  
 The king of kynges am called · & conquerour bath,  
 Of aH Lordes Lord · lowsed þorow þe werld, 1960  
 And one of þe souerenest syres · vndir þe seuen sternes,  
 To þe, my *sir*uand, I send · & sothly I knaw,  
 And wete þou wele aH þe werld · worshippys my name.

*Epistola  
 darij.*

For aH þe gracieux goddez · þat þe ground viseteñ, 1964  
 AH er vndir my obedience · dredles I telle.  
 How durst þou be so bald · for blode in þi heued,  
 To mefe þus ouer þees montannez · & þes mony waters

With syke a soume for to seke · a sawt vs to 3elde, 1968  
 Or ony maistre to make · my mageste ayayns?  
 For wele wyde wer þi wele · wete þou none other,  
 Both þi glory & grace · þi gladnesse in erth, 1971  
 Might þou þe marche of masidoñ · mayntene þi-selueñ,  
 And gouern þine aweñ grund · agayns owr wyH.

Return home,

For-þi ware bettir vnbynde · or þou bale suffice,  
Remowe agayne to þi rewme · & rew of þi werkis.  
For certayne, nyf my *seniourie* · ne I my-selfe nouthire,  
Aȝ þe werd myȝt a wedowe · wele þaȝ be callid. 1977

before my hate  
kindles upon thy  
head.

For-þi turne þe be-time · or any tene worthe,  
Or at þe hate of my hert · a-poȝ þi hede kindiȝ.  
Lend agayȝ to þi lande · nowe quen þou leue hauys,  
þat I mete þe in my malicolý · my meth be to littiȝ.  
For-þi to keȝ þe to know · my kyndnes here-efȝir, 1982

As a token,  
I send thee my  
glove, full of  
seeds.

Bath my grace & my glori · & my grete strenthe,  
Loo here a gloue fuȝ of graynes · I graythe þe to take,  
Of þe chesses of a chesboȝ · chosen for þe nanys. 1985

If thou canst  
count them, then  
count my men.

For may þou sowme me þire sedis · surely þou trowe,  
þou miȝt a-count aȝ oure kniȝtis · & oure kyd ostis;  
And þou truches þaim to teȝ · þen tidis þe na nopir,  
Bot move a-gayȝ to Messedone · & meve<sup>1</sup> þe na forthire.  
Fyne, fole, of þi fare · & fange to þi kythis; 1990  
For þis sede I þe send · vnsowmyd bees neuire.

They are number-  
less."

So ere we of all folke · folke to be nombriȝ,  
Or any wee to a-counte · vndire þe clere sternys." 1993  
Now aires furth his athiȝ meȝ · to Alexander wendiȝ,

The messengers  
bring the letter  
and the seeds.

Vn-to þe streme of struma · streȝt with þa lettirs,  
And he þaȝ rediȝ in a rese · & reches to<sup>2</sup> þe sedis,  
Tastis þaȝ vndire his tuthe · & talkis þir wordis: 1997

Alexander bites  
the seeds, and  
says,  
"They may be  
many, but they  
are soft."

"Here I se," *quod* þis sire · "be þire ilke cornes,  
þat þe pupiȝ out of Persy · ere passandly many,<sup>3</sup>  
Bot þaȝ semes to be softe · as þir sedis prouys; 2000  
For-þi how fele be aȝ þe flote · it forces bot littiȝ."  
Be þis was meȝ of Messedone · fra his modire comen,  
And said þat semely was seke · & semed to die;  
And he þe waest of þe werd · wald worth hire to visite,  
Bot ȝit to Dary, or he went · he<sup>4</sup> diȝt þus a lettir. 2005

<sup>1</sup> MS. me, altered to meve.      <sup>2</sup> Added in margin.

<sup>3</sup> MS. meke many; but meke is struck out.

<sup>4</sup> MS. his, altered to he.

For-þi it wer better vnbeniden · or þou bale suffre,  
 Remefe agayn to þi real̃ · or þou sall it rewe.  
 For *certain*, yf my senory · & my-selue ne wer, 1976  
 Aȝ þe werld might albido<sup>1</sup> · wele þen be called.  
 For-þi turne þe be-tyme · or ony tene worth,  
 Or þe hate of my hert · on þi heued kyndle.  
 Lend Agayn to þi Land · Wiȝ I Leue gefe þe, 1980 [Pol. 20 b.]  
 Lest þou mete *with* my malicoly · þi might be to lityȝ.  
 For-þi to ken þe to knawe · my kyngdome her-after,  
 Both my glory & my grace · & my grete strenth,  
 Lo, her a glofe fuȝ of granes · I grath þe to rekyȝ, 1984  
 Off þe chefest of<sup>2</sup> chessebollez · chosyn for þe nonest.  
 For and þou may soume þees sedes · seurlly þou leue,  
 Thu may acount<sup>3</sup> aȝ ovr knyghtez · & ovr kyd osterz;  
 And yf þou thynkes þaim to tell · þen tydez þe none oþer,  
 To mefe agayn to masidoȝ · & meȝ þe no forther. 1989  
 Fyne, fole, of þi fare · and fange to þi kythes;  
 For as þis sede þat I send · vnsoumed is euer,  
 So ben we of aȝ<sup>4</sup> frekes · & folkez vnnowmyrd, 1992  
 Or ony weght to acount · vnder þe clere welkyȝ."  
 Now ayres forth þees messyngers · & to alexander wendyȝ,  
 Vnto þe streme of struma · streght *with* þis lettres,  
 And þaim redes on a rase he · & rechez to þe sedes, 1996  
 Castes þaim vnder his tothe · & talkys þees wordes:  
 "Here I see," quod þis sire · "be þir selue cornes,  
 þat þe peple out of perse · er passandly mony,  
 Bot þaim semys to be softe · as þees sedis preuez; 2000  
 And þen how fele be aȝ þe flote · it forcez bot lityȝ."  
 Be þat was men of masidon · fro hys moder commyȝ,  
 And þat semely was seke · & semyd to die;  
 And he þe woest of þe werld · wald for hir to visytt, 2004  
 Bot ȝit to Darius or he diȝt · he ditez suche a pistyȝ.

<sup>1</sup> *Read* a wido.    <sup>2</sup> MS. oft.    <sup>3</sup> MS. acoant; see l. 1993.

<sup>4</sup> *Here follows* ben we of all fo, *crossed through*.

## Nonus passus Alexandri.

A letter.  
"Alexander to  
Darius.

I find I must  
go home for the  
present.

It is not for thy  
boasts, but my  
mother is ill.

I shall soon  
return, with fresh  
men.

[Fol. 35.]  
I send you a  
purse, full of  
sharp pepper."

Alexander returns  
home.

In Arabia he is  
attacked by Duke  
Amonta.

"**A**lexsaundere þe athiȝ · aire oute [of] grece,  
þe soȝ of Ph[ilip] þe fers · & of his faire lady,  
Honoured Olimpadas · þe oddest vndire heuyn, 2008  
To þe, ser Dari, oȝ þi dese · þis dities I write.  
For I am sent, be þe sure · many sere letters,  
And namly now on newe time · fra myne aweȝ kith,  
Out of þe marche of Messadone · þat mekill me greues,  
Aȝ oȝer wais to wirke · & my wiȝh likis. 2013  
Bot I warne þe, or I wynd · & wiȝh at þou know,  
þat for na drede I with-draw · ne doute of þi pride,  
For baisting of þi bobance · ne of þi breme wordis, 2016  
Bot for to se þat is seke · my semely modire.  
Bot wete þou wele þis, I-wis · with-in a wale time,  
Fra þat I fraist haue þat faire · of my fayre lady,  
I saȝ þe seke with a sowme · of seggis enarmed, 2020  
Ane ost to noy þus to neuyn · aȝ of new knyȝtis.  
And for þe sake of þi sede · þou sent with þi lettre,  
Loo, here a purse fuȝh of pepire · my powere to keȝn,  
To se þi-selve a similitude · how all þi soft grayns 2024  
Sall vndire-put be aȝ þe pake · vn-to þir peper-cornes."  
þis pistill to Persyns · he with his pepir takis,  
Partis prestly þam to · many proude giftis, 2027  
And þai haue laȝt þam þar leue · & þe lettir fangis,  
And passis oȝ to Persy · þe princes to schewe.  
þan Alexander belyue · with his athiȝ dukis,  
Rais him radly to ride · & remowis his ost; 2031  
Fra þe streme of struma he streȝtis · & stiȝh mournes,  
And mevis him toward Messedone · his modir to visit.  
He aires þurȝe Arabie · & armed þar he findis  
A duke of Darys þe kyng · þat drafe him agayne,  
A pere out of Persy · & prince of his ost, 2036  
A maister man in þa marches · Amont was hatten.  
He girdis him with a gingi · þe grekis he asailes.

*Nonus Passus.*

"I, alexander, eldest · ayr out of grece,

*Epistola.*

þe son of Philip þe fers · & of hys faire lady,

Honored olimphades · þe oddest vnder heuen, 2008

To þe, sir darius, on þi dese · þis ditez I write.

For I am send, be þe sure · mony sere *lettres*,

And nomely now on new tyme · fro my awne kithes,

. . . . .

AH oper-wyse to wirke · þen my wille liked. 2013

Bot þis I werne, or I wende · & will at þou know,

þat for no drede I withdraw · þe dow of þi pryde,<sup>1</sup>

For basyng ne for bobas · ne for breme wordes, 2016

Bot for to Se þat is Seke · my awne Semelych Modre. [Fol. 21.]

Bot wete þou wele þis, I-wisse · in a wale tyme,

Fra þat I fraysted haue þe fare · of my faire lady,

I saH þe seche with a soume · of seggez enarmed, 2020

One oste to ney vs to newyn · & all of new knyghtez.

And for þe sake of þi sede · þou send with þi writte,

Lo, here a purse full of piper · my power to ken,

To se þi-selfe a similitude · how aH þees softe granes 2024

So vnder-put [be] aH þe pake · of þis pete cornez."

Thys pistyH to þe persens · he with þis peper takys,

Partes pristly to þaim · mony proude gyftez,

And þai haue laughteH þair leue · & þe *lettres* fangett, 2028

And passyd vnto perse · þe prince it to shewe.

Then alexander · with hys ateH Dukez,

Rachez hym radly to ride · & remevez hys ostez ,

Fro þe streme of struma · he moved & stilly murnez, 2032

And mefez on toward masydoH · hys moder to viset.

He ayers toward araby · & armyd þar he fyndez

A duke of Darius þe kyng · þat drafe hym agayus,

A Pere owt of perse · & prince of hys hoste, 2036

A maister man of þe marche · amonta was callyd.

He girdez in with a gyn · þe grekes assayleze,

<sup>1</sup> MS. *prøyde*, or *peryde* (like *per* in *piper*, l. 2023) ; *read* *pryde*.

They fight all  
day.

With Alexander all day · asperly feztis,  
Marres of þe Messedons · miȝtfuȝ kniȝtis, 2040  
Dingis doun of þe dukis · deris þam vn-faire,  
Fra morne to þe mirke niȝt · maynly þa cockeñ,  
Seȝes doun oñ aythire side · segis out of nounbre. 2043  
Begynnys sone in þe gray day · as any gleme springis,  
And so to sett of þe soñ · sesid þai neuire.

The battle lasts  
for three days.

þus thre dais out a thraw · þai threþ ay elike ;  
So lange, sais me þe lyne · lastid þe bataiȝ, 2047

Horses wade in  
blood up to the  
fetlocks.

Sike scoures were of blude · of schondirheȝ bernes,  
þat foles ferd in þe flosches · to þe fetelakis ;  
Sa store & stithe was þe stoure · þe story me tellis,

[Fol. 35 b.]

þat for soroȝe of þe siȝt · þe<sup>1</sup> soñ<sup>2</sup> oñ þe heuen  
Kest away his clerete · & his clippis suffris, 2052

The sun is  
eclipsed.  
At last the  
Greeks prevail,

For bale to blische oñ þe blode · at on þe bent floȝes.  
With þat oure gomes out of grece · gedirs vp þar hertis,  
Fey fallis in þe fild · fele of þire othire,

and the Persians  
give way.

þe pouwere of Persy · iñ partis many 2056  
Seȝes sidlings doun · slayñ of þaire blonkis.

And quen þe duke of ser Darys · þa dedis be-haldis,  
Amonta þe miȝtfuȝ · his men þañ he fangis, 2059  
And vneth limpid him þe lee · þe lyne me recordis,  
Fra his faes with a fewe · þe filde to de-voide.

Amonta flees  
to Darius,

And slike a pas, sais þe prose · to Persy he ridis,  
þat ȝit þe<sup>2</sup> selfe sandismen · he in þe sale fyndis, 2063  
þat fra þe streme of struma · were apon stedis wysid

and finds  
him perusing  
Alexander's  
last letter.

Fra Alexander & his ost · with his athiȝ pistiȝ.  
And ȝit ser dary oñ his dese · þa dities a-visis,  
Held þe lettir in his loue · & at þe ledis fraynes,  
Quat he said of þe sedis · þat he<sup>2</sup> him-selfe sent. 2068  
And þai swiftly him sward · & swyth þus him tellis :

The messengers  
repeat the story  
of the seeds.

“ þe kyng him kaȝt,” quod þe kniȝtis “ & on þe cornes  
bitis,

And wele he geses be þe graynes · ȝoure gomes ere fele,

<sup>1</sup> MS. of the ; of *being added in the margin, but smeared out.*

<sup>2</sup> *Added in the margin.*

And *with alexander* aH þe day · asperly feghteþ,  
 Marres of þe masidons · mightfuH knyghtez, 2040  
 Dynges downe of þe dukez · deres þaim vnfaire,  
 Fro morne vnto mirke nyght · manly þai feghtyñ,  
 Slew downe on ather syde · seges owt of nowmbre.  
 Began in þe gray day · when þe gleme spronge, 2044  
 And so to þe sett of þe soñ · sessyd þai neuer.  
 þus iij dayes in a thraw · þai threpyd euerelike ;  
 So lang, says þe line · lastyd þe bateH,  
 Slyke showrez of shire blode · of shenderet bernes, 2048  
 þat folez faired in flosshez · to þe fete-lakez ;  
 So sture & styff was þe stoure · þe story me telles,  
 þat for sorow of þat fight · þe soñ of heuen  
 Lost hase is clarite · & hys clepys sufers, 2052  
**For bale to Blissh on blod · þat on þe bent flowes.** [Fol. 21 b.]  
 With þat owr gomes owt of grece · gerdyn vp þair hertes,  
 And fellyd fele in þe feld · feyle of þis oþer,  
 þe power owt of perse · in parteez mony 2056  
 Sweyd slegtly downe · slayn of þair blonkes.  
 And when *sir* Darius duke<sup>1</sup> · þis dedes bihaldyñ,  
 Amonta þe mightfuH · hys men þen he fannges,  
 And vneth limpyd hym þe lyfe · þe line me recordes, 2060  
 And fro hys faes *with* A few folke · þe feld he deuodes.  
 And suche a passe, þen says þe prose · to perse he rydez,  
 þat 3it þe some sendesman · he in þe sale fyndez,  
 At fro þe streme of strema · was on stedes wysetH 2064  
 Fro alexander & hys hoste · *with* hys atheH pistyH.  
 And 3itt *sir* darius on þe dese · on þis dytes awaysez,  
 Held þis lettre in hys loue · & at þe ledes franes,  
 What he sayd of þaes sedes · þat he þaim send hed. 2068  
 And þai<sup>2</sup> swyftly hym sware · & sothly hym tald :  
 “The kyng þaim kacht,”<sup>3</sup> quod þe knyghtes · “& on þe  
 kirnels bote,  
 And wele he gessed be þe granes · your gomes er softe,

<sup>1</sup> MS. *ye* duke ; *but ye is subpuncted.*

<sup>2</sup> MS. *þai* hym, *but hym is subpuncted.*      <sup>3</sup> MS. *katht.*

Bot a thing, he said, he saze · þat solast him maste, 2072

Darius tastes the pepper, and finds it sharp.

þai ware bot soft, he suposed · for so þe sede proued."  
þan pullis him vp þe proude kyng · & oñ þe pepire tastis,  
Said, as it tuke him by þe tonge · "his tulkis ere fewe,  
Bot, be his kniȝtis as kene · as me þis cornes shewis, 2076  
Aȝ þe werd war to waike · his wrothe<sup>1</sup> to with-stand."<sup>2</sup>  
þe mody mañ Amonta · þan melis þir wordis,

[Fol. 36.]

"ȝis, he ledis bot a lite · lordȝ, with ȝoure lefe; 2079  
þare is<sup>3</sup> bot fewe at him foloȝes · bot feȝtand bernis,  
Bot mare fersere in feldȝ · feȝt neuire of modire.

Amonta says,  
"I attacked the  
Greeks with a  
larger army.

For I my-selfe with a sowme · set þaim agayns,  
With of þe Persyns proude · a pake out of nounbre,  
Felire þaȝ his folke · be fuȝ fyue thousandȝ, 2084  
And ȝit vs feȝt all to ferre · þe fayntir to worthe;  
For þai haue hedid of oure hathils · & a hepe woundid,  
Fey falne to þe fold · many fers erlis,

They beat us.

Bet doun oure bachelers · my banir to-rased, 2088  
And a selly somme · slayne of my kniȝtis.

For three days  
we fought them,

Quethire days<sup>3</sup> thre þurȝe-out · thraly we foȝteȝ,  
Derfe dintis & dreȝe · d-elt & takenȝ,

and at last we  
gave way.

And ȝit þe lawest at þe last · vs limpid to bee, 2092  
And vnethis sauȝd I my-selfe · vn-slayȝ of þar handis.  
Bot treuly, ser," quod þe duke · "gret tresore me thinke

As for Alexan der,  
he was none the  
prouder."

At Alexander þe athiȝ · for of<sup>4</sup> aȝ ware he maister,  
A-vanced with þe victore · & vengid oñ his faes, 2096  
Was neuire þe hezare of a hawe · his hert fuȝ of pride.  
For mekely ilka modire soȝ · his awen meȝ & othire,  
Als wele þe pure Persens · as þe grete grekis,  
Aȝ þe douth at was dede · be-dene he comands 2100  
To gedire þaȝ vp ilka gome · & þaȝ in grauȝs ligg."

Alexander goes  
to Sicily.

Now Alexander & his ost · armed oñ ridis,  
And sone Cecile he · with his seggis entriȝ,

<sup>1</sup> MS. to wrohe, *altered to wrothe to in the margin.*

<sup>2</sup> MS. hbith stand. <sup>3</sup> *Added in the margin.*

<sup>4</sup> Of *added above the line, indistinctly written; it is hardly wanted.*



Bot on<sup>1</sup> thyng, he sayd,<sup>2</sup> he sawgh · þat solast hym  
     mekyH, 2072  
 Thai wer bot softe, he supposyd · for so þe sede preved.  
 þen pullys hym vp þe proude gome<sup>3</sup> · & on þe peper tastez,  
 Sayd, als it toke hym be þe tong · “hys tulkes wer feH,  
 For, be hys knyghtez als kene · as me þe corne shewys,  
 AH þe werld is to wake · hys wrothe to wit-stande.” 2077  
 The worthy mañ amonta · þan mellys þir wordes,  
 Sayd, “he ledes bot a lityH · lord, be *your* lefe;  
 Thai er bot few at hym folows · of feghtand bernis, 2080  
 Bot more forcer on a feld · felle neuer of moder.  
 For I my-selfe with a soume · set hym agayns,  
 With þe persens proude · a pake out of nownbre,  
 Mo þen hys awne meynze · be fuH fyue thousand, 2084 *Victoria con-*  
 And ȝit vs fell aH be fere · þe faynter to worth; *tra amonta*  
 For þai he<sup>4</sup> hedit of owr athellys · & a [hepe] woundett,  
 And fey fallyn in þe feld · mony ferce Erelez, *ducem darij.*  
 Betyn Done owr Bachelers · my Barons aH distroyd, 2088 [Fol. 22.]  
 And a selly soume of my knyghte[s] · in þe feld slayne.  
 Wheþer thre<sup>5</sup> days out-þorow · thraly we feyten,  
 Drafte dyntes derfe · deltyn & token,  
 And ȝit þe lawest at þe last · vs limpyd to be, 2092  
 Bot vnneth saued I my-selue · vnslayne of þair handes.  
 Bot trewly, *sir*,” quod þe duke · “grete tresour me thynke  
 At alexander þe atheH · for aH was he maister,  
 Auancyd with wictory · & vengyd on hys enmys, 2096  
 Was neuer þe helder of a haw · [his] hert full of pride.  
 For mekely ilke modersoñ · hys awne men & othere,  
 Als wele þe pure persens · as þe proude grekez,  
 AH þe doghty be-dene · þat was dede he Commandez 2100  
 To geder þaim vp ilke grome · & þaim in graue bring.”  
 Now alexander & hys oste · armyd on he rydez,  
 And sone into cesyH · he with hys segez enters, 2103

<sup>1</sup> MS. ony, corrected to on.

<sup>2</sup> he sayd repeated; but once expuncted.

<sup>3</sup> Above the line in MS.

<sup>4</sup> Read haue.

<sup>5</sup> The r is above the line in MS.

- þar sere citis of þa sidis · to him-selfe sweren, 2104  
 And saudiours him to sewe · seuyntene thousand.  
 [Fol. 36 b.] þan ȝede he ouire in-to ane Ile · Yssanna was hatten,  
 And þat was ȝapely him ȝeuyn · & ȝolden be-lyue.  
 On the top of a cliff he finds Persepolis. þan vp he clame to a cliffe · þat to þe cloudis semeþ,  
 þe Tor<sup>1</sup> of Tare to taken · þe tretis it callis, 2109  
 þare fand he tildid oñ þe top · & tild<sup>2</sup> vp a cite,  
 þe proud<sup>3</sup> touñ of Persopole · & to þe place he neȝes.  
 þare saȝe he selcuthis sere · as þe buke sais, 2112  
 þe muses of musike & þe merke · how it was made first.  
 þan aires he in-to Asie · & ai as he fonndis,  
 AH þe citis of þa sidis · he sesis þam clene,  
 He goes to Phrygia, So fares he furth<sup>4</sup> to Frigie · a-nopire faire Ile, 2116  
 And ane þar of his ald gods · he honourd in a temple.  
 and sees Scamander. þan ferd he furth to a Flum · was fyue cubetis bradþ,  
 Scamandra þe slire<sup>5</sup> flode · þe scriptour it callis.  
 "Happy are all," "Now happy be ȝee," quod þe hathiþ · "aþ in hert  
 beris 2120  
 he says, "who are he honouris of þat odd clerke · Homore þe grete."  
 honoured by that odd clerk, Homer." "Mekiþ dere," quod ane Doctoneus · "of ȝow I deme saþþ,  
 And he of þe takyng of Troi · tald aþ his lyue."  
 "Nay, I wald more worth," quod þe [wee] · "a wyse  
 man disc[i]ple, 2124  
 þaþ þe honour þat Acheles · aȝt aþ his time."  
 In Macedonia, he finds his mother healed. þaþ moves he him to Messedone · with his mony princes,  
 Amendid of hire malidy · his modire he fyndis,  
 A litiþ dais with hire lengis · & of hire lyfe ioyes, 2128  
 And graythes him þan with his gere · & a-gayn fondis.  
 He returns towards Persia. He passes oñ to-ward Persy · & piȝt doun his tentis  
 Besyd a burȝe at þe buke · Abandra meñ<sup>6</sup> callis.  
 þai faþ on freschly · þe folke of þe cite, 2132  
 And barris bremely at a burȝe · þe foure bradþ ȝatis.  
 [Fol. 37.] þan takis þe kyng his kniȝtis · vmlapis þe wallis,

<sup>1</sup> MS. Top, altered to Tor.<sup>2</sup> MS. do tild; with do *underlined*. <sup>3</sup> MS. perroude.<sup>4</sup> MS. he furth he; with *second* he struck out.<sup>5</sup> Read skire.<sup>6</sup> Added in the margin.

Thare sere citez of þai sydez · to hym-selfe was 3oldyn,  
 And saugeours hym to sewe · seuentene thousand.  
 þan 3ode he ouer into an Ile · Yssanna was hateñ,  
 And þat was 3apely hym 3efeñ · & yolden belyfe. 2107  
 Than vp he clam to a clyffe · þat to þe clowdez semyd,  
 þe towre of taure to token · þe tretes it calles;  
 þar fand he tembret on þe toþ · & tyldit vp a cyte,  
 The proud towne of persipoñ · & to þe place goys.  
 þar saw he selcouthez sere · as sayn me þe writtes, 2112  
 The musys of musik & þar merke · how it was made frist.  
 þan ayrez he into asy · & ay as he fondez,  
 Añ þe citez of þo sydez · he sesez þam ilkoñ,  
 So fares he forth to frige · an-other fair yle, 2116  
 And one of hys olde goddes · honours in a temple.  
 þen faryd he forth to a flume · fyue cubettes of brede,  
 Scamandra þe skyr flode · þe scripture it neues. 2119

. . . . .

. . . . .

. . . . .

. . . . .

. . . . .

. . . . .

Then mefes home to masidon · with hys mony princez,  
 And mendyd of hir maledy · [his] moder he fyndeþ,  
 A lite dayes with hir he lenges · & of hir lyve ioys, 2128  
**And grathes** hym þan with hys gynge · & agayn fonndeþ. [Fol. 22 b.]  
 He passed on toward þerpe · & pyth douñ hys tentes  
 Besyde a burgh þat þe buke · bandara calles.  
 þen fell to þaim freshly · þe folke of þe cite, 2132  
 And barred bremely at a brush · þe foure brod 3ates.  
 Then caches þe kyng hys knyghtez · vmbelappes þe wallez,

He attacks  
Abandra.

Settis vp-on a saute · oñ sidis enoze ;  
Bot, for þe cite was vnsure · þe seggis withiñ 2136  
Mizt nozt þe braidis a-bide · of bernis enarmed.

The men of it  
say they only  
shut their gates  
for fear of  
Darius.

þan cries aH to þe kyng · "ser conquirour," þai said :  
"Ne steke we nozt oure stiff zatis · 3our strenthe to  
defend,

Bot for dred of ser Dary · þe derfe Emperoure, 2140  
Lest, had we haldit to 3our heste · he had vs eft wastid."  
"3a, werpis þam vp," quod þe wee · "& wyde open settis,  
If at 3e shap 3ow to shount · vnschent of oure handis.  
For quen I done haue with Dary · & my dede fenyschid,  
þan saH I tell 3ow my tale · how it sall tide eftir."

He frightens  
them,  
and they give up  
the keye.

So baiste þam þe bald kyng · with his breme wordis,  
þat þai vn3arked him þe zatis · & 3ald him þe keys.  
þe bur3e þus of<sup>1</sup> abrandra · he with his men takis, 2148  
To take & leue quat him list · & lendis oñ forthire.  
þen wyndis he to A wath touñ · was Wyothy hatten,  
And come so to Caldipol · anoper kid cite,

He comes to the  
Water of Winter.

So to the watir of wintir · as it þe writte callis. 2152  
þare nere was fey for defaute · enfamyschist his ost,  
Kniztis kest vp a crie · & kenely þam menes :

His men say,  
"our horses are  
dying."

"Loo, oure foles ere in fere · fodeles to dye;" 2155  
þai pleyne more þe pouirte · & þe pite of þar horsis  
þan þe soro3e of þam-selfe · by þe seuynt parte.  
"Quat ailes 3ow?" quod Alexander · to his athliH  
dukis,

He reproves  
them, saying  
they can get  
new horses ;

"Mi barons & my baratorus · þe biggest in erth,  
þat has þe angwisch of armes · ay to now suffird ; 2160  
Quethire euire 3oure hertis, I hope · for horsys abatis?  
May vs nozt limp, if any life · lenge iñ oure<sup>2</sup> brestis,  
To couer be cas at a cleke · courseris a thousand?

[Fol. 37 b.]

And vs demedð be þe dome · to die of þe werð, 2164  
þan standis in stede nozt of a stra · all þe store stedis.  
For-þi I rede," quod þe renke<sup>3</sup> · "we ride oñ forthire,

and bids them  
advance.

<sup>1</sup> Added in the margin.      <sup>2</sup> Miswritten oire in MS.

<sup>3</sup> MS. kenke.

And settes vp a sawte · to þe towne sydes ;  
 But for þe cite was vnsure · þe segez within 2136  
 Might noght þe barettes abyde · of seggez enarmed.  
 þen callyd þai to þe kyng · “*sir Conquerour*,” & sayd :  
 “ We steke noght our 3ates · your strenth to defende,

Bot for þe drede of *sir dary* · þe derfe Emperour, 2140  
 Lest, hed we heldit to your hest<sup>1</sup> · he hed vs eft wastyd.”  
 “*3a, warpez þaim vp*,” quod þe wye<sup>1</sup> · “ & wyde opyn settes,

. . . . .  
 For when I done haue with Darius · & my dede fenyshyd,  
 Than saH I teH you my tale · how it saH tyde after.” 2145  
 So babyst þaim þe bald kyng<sup>1</sup> · with hys breme wordez,  
 That þai vn3arked hym þe yatez · & yeld hym þe kees.  
 Thus þe burght of bandra · he with hys bernes takes, 2148  
 To lache & lefe qwat hym lyst · & lendez on forþer.  
 þan wendes he to a wale towne · was worthyly haldyn,  
 And Come so to cadypolez · ane oþer kyd cite,  
 So to þe water of wynter · als it þe writte calles. 2152  
 Thare negh was fey for defaute · enfamyshyd hys oste,  
 Knyghtez kest vp a cry · & kenely þaim meane ;  
 Sayd : “ lo, oure folez bene in fere · for fodeles to dye ;”  
 Plenyys more þe perty · & pety of þair blonkez 2156  
 þan of þe sorow of þaim selfe · be þe seuent dele.

“ What aylez you nowe ?” quod alexander · to hys athelH  
 Dukez,

“ My barons & my baratours · biggest on erth,  
 That hase þe angers of armes · ay to now sofferd ; 2160  
 Wheþer euer your hertes · for horse-fleshez abaytez ?  
 May we noght lympe, if ony lyfe · leng in our brestes,  
 To couer be case at a cleke · coursours a thouusand ?  
 And yf vs demyd be þe dome · to dye aH at ones, 2164  
 þan standes in stede noght of A stra · aH our styffe stedes.  
 For-þi<sup>2</sup> I rede,” quod þe renke · “ We rydyn on Forþer,

[Fol. 23.]

<sup>1</sup> MS. wyez.      <sup>2</sup> The i above the line in MS.

And pas to sum othire place · þare plente is in,  
þat we may fange at þe fuH · þe fude at vs wantis." 2168

· · · · ·  
þaṅ prekiṣ he furth with his princes · to slike a playn<sup>1</sup>  
wendis,

They soon find  
plenty of forage.

Luctus it hiȝt, þe letterure · & þe line þus it callis ;  
þare his forrayouris fand · þe fulth of vitaiH,  
Bathe to<sup>2</sup> berne & to blonk · bide queṅ him likið. 2172  
When he was fuH þare & fedð · he flittis with his ost,

At Tergarontes,  
he goes to  
Apollo's temple.

To Tergarontes he teȝe · þare tiȝt was a mynstre ;  
He piȝt doun his paulioṅ · & passis to þe temple,  
Sire Appoline to adoure · & othire alð goddis, 2176  
To offire iṅ þat oritorie · with honour he wyndis,  
And sum of þaṁ<sup>2</sup> at<sup>3</sup> spire · how he spede sulð.

Zacora tells him  
to come again  
another day.

Bot sone ane zacora him said · a semely summe,  
þan was naṅ honour of answaringis · bot on a-noþere  
bide. 2180

þan dose him furth þe dere king · & oṅ þe day eftire,  
He seȝis to þe Synagog<sup>r</sup> · & sacriff[is]e makis,  
And Appoline als beliue · him aykewordly swaris, 2183

The oracle  
calls him  
"Hercules."  
Alexander says  
the oracle is  
false.

'Sire Ercules þe Emperoure' · he euire in ane callis.  
þaṅ Alexander aH in ire · angrily spekis :  
"Now fynd I wele," quod þe freke · "þat fals ere þi wordis,  
Now þou neuyns me a new name · at I neuire hiȝt ;  
And þou a god," quod þe gome · "þat is grete ioye !" }  
þaṅ sekis he furth with a somme · & to A cite wyndis,

He next comes to  
Thebes.

þe toun Thebea · þe tretis it callis,  
And þare he biddis aH þe burȝe · þat foure bald kniȝtis  
Suld be lett with him lend · & lenge in his weris. 2192  
þen tened þe Thebes folke · & tynd to þe ȝatis,

[Fol. 38.]

The Thebans  
oppose him.

And to with-stand his strenthe · steȝid to þe wallis,  
Bad him bow oṅ be-lyue · & bide þare na laingire ; 2195  
For if he dið, withouteṅ dome · þe deth þai him hiȝt.  
þan fangis him vp þe fell kyng<sup>r</sup> · a fuyH feyned laȝtir,

<sup>1</sup> MS. ap layn.      <sup>2</sup> Added in the margin.

<sup>3</sup> After at, to is wrongly added above the line.

And passe we to som *oper* place · where plente is in,  
 Thare we may fang at þe fuht · þe fode at vs wantes, 2168  
 And bath our folk & ovr folez · fyht þaire wambes." 2168\*  
 Then prekys he forth *with* hys princez · to suche a place  
 wendes,

Luctus it þe *lettre* · & þe line calles ;  
 Thare as hys saugeours hase fondyn · þe fulth of þe vitale,  
 Bath to bern · & to blonke · byde whils he liked. 2172  
 When he was fulle þar & fed · he flittes hys osten,  
 To tergarontes he tigt · þar telde was a mynster ;  
 Pyzt douñ hys pauvilons · & passyd to þe temple,  
 Sir appolyn to adoure · & *oper* alde goddez, 2176  
 To offre in þat oratory · *with* honour in he wendes,  
 And of som sperete to spire · how he spede suld.  
 Bott on þacora hym sayd · a semlych Nonn,<sup>1</sup> 2179  
 þar was none *oper* answer · bot ane *oper* day to abyde.

þan drafe hym for[th] þe dere kyng · &, on þe day after,  
 He soght into þe sinagoge · & sacrifice makez,  
 And appolyne als belyue · hym aukwardly answers,  
 'Sir ercules þis emperour' · hym euer onon clepys. 2184  
 Than alexander aH in ire · angerly spekys :  
 "Now fynde I wele," quod þe freke · "þat false er þi wordes,  
 For þou nevens a new name · þat I neuer hight ;  
 And þou a god," quod þe gome · "þat is grete Ioy !" 2188  
 Then sekys he forth *with* a soume · & to a cyte wendes,  
 þat Ilke towne hight tebea · þe tretez so it calles,  
 And þar he biddez aH þe burgh · þat foure bald knyghtez  
 Suld be lett *with* hym wende · & in hys werys lenge. 2192  
 þen tenyd þe tebe folke · & tit to þe zatez,  
 And *with*stode his strenth · & strode to þe walles,  
 Bad hym buske on belyue · & abyde þar no langer ; 2195  
 For if he dyd, *with*owtyn dowte · þe dede þai hight hym.  
 þan fangez vp þe fele kyng · a ful fenyd laughter,

<sup>1</sup> *So in MS.*

Alexander says,  
"Ye Thebans  
boast to be brave,

Said, "3e of Tebet ere tried · þe tethiest oñ erth,  
Of aH þe seggis vnder soñ · þat citizens hatt ;  
Mast hi3e 3e ere hersið · & herid of 3oure strenthe. 2200  
And nowe sa 3ape meñ as 3e · þe 3atis hase stoken,  
And me & þe pruddest of my princes · *proferne* vs werre ;  
And at 3e so wiH, I-wis · wondire me thinke, 2203  
For þus wald neuer at 3e wro3t · þe wirsciþ of armes.  
It contraries kni3thede · 3e know wele 3our-selfe,

yet ye shut your-  
selves up behind  
walls."

To any wi3t werriours · in wallis þam to close.  
For he þat kid is & kene · & couettis a name,  
WiH fe3t fersely in fild · his famen agayns." 2208  
þan Alexander be-liue · aH a-boute þe cite,  
Makis foure thousand · with flanes & bowis,

He orders a grand  
assault,

Biddis þam to bend vp · brathly with arowis  
To wonde þe wees with-in · þat on þe wallis houys. 2212  
And twa thousand be tale · he titely comaundis,  
Of wele buskid bernys · in brenys & platis,  
Añ þe sidis of þe cite · þat sechus had biggid,  
And Amphion, añ athiH kempe · onane to distray. 2216

and bids his men  
fire the city.

A full thousand he fangid · to fire þe foure 3atis,  
And thre thousand of thra meñ · to thraw with engynes.  
Him-selfe of slingis & slike · a-semblis a me[n]3e, 2219  
To heede & help of his hyne · if any harme lympid.  
Now ere his seggis aH sett · & þe saute nezis,  
Were wakens be-twene · werbild in trompis ;

The attack begins.

Oure pepiH with payñs · pressis to without,  
Halis vp hemþ cordis · hurled out arowis ; 2224

[Fol. 38 b.]

Othire athils of armes · Albastis bendis,  
Quirys out quarrels · quappid thur3e mayles.

The Greeks  
throw stones out  
of guns.

Sum with gunnes of þe grekis · girdis vþ stanes,  
To tene þe Tebis folke · þat oñ þe touris fe3tis ; 2228  
Sum braide ouir þe barrers · in blasand wede,

The city is fired.

And faire fest on a fire · all þe foure 3atis ;



Sayd, "3e of tebe er triest · & thethiest on erth,  
 Off aH þe seges vnder suñ · þat citesyns er called ;  
 Most heyly ye be auancett · & hight in hert.<sup>1</sup> 2200  
**And** now so 3ope meñ as 3e · 3ates **Hase** stoken, [Fol. 23 b.]  
 Me & my proudest<sup>t</sup> of my princez · 3e do profre were ;  
 And þat 3e so wiH, I-wys · wondre me thynke, 2203  
 For þus wald neuer þat 3e wrought · worschip of armes.  
 It contrarys knyghthod · ye knawe wele *your-selueñ*,  
 To any wight wereour · in walles hym to clo-e.  
 For he þat kyd is & kene · & couates hym a name,  
 WiH fersly feght in þe feld · hys faymen ayayns." 2208  
 And alexander als belyfe · aH vmbe þe cyte,  
 Mase iiij Mille<sup>2</sup> to fonde · with flanes & bowes,  
 Byddes þame to bend vp · & brathly with arowez  
 To wound þe wyes within · þat on þe wallez hoked. 2212  
 And two thousand be tale · he tytely Commandez,  
 Of wele busked bernes · in brenes & in plates,  
 AH þe sydes of þe cite · þat sichus had bigged,  
 And amphion, þe atheH kemþ · anone to distroye. 2216  
 And iiij Mille<sup>2</sup> he fonge · to fyre þe iiij 3ates,  
 Bot thre Mille<sup>2</sup> of thra men · to throw with engynez.  
 Hym-self with slengers & slyke · he somned<sup>3</sup> a men3e,  
 To heyd & to help hys hynes · if any harme limpyd. 2220  
 Now er is seges aH sett · & þe saute neghed,  
 Were wakned be-twene · werblet trompez ;  
 Our peple with pavyce · presen to withowt,  
 Halez vp hemp cordez · hurlett owt arows ; 2224  
 Oper athells of armes · alblastrez bendeñ,  
 Whirres owt qwarels · wappyd thugh males.  
 Som with gunnez of þe grekys · gyrdyn vp stones,  
 To tene þe tebet<sup>t</sup> folke · þat on þe toure fighteñ ; 2228  
 Som bradyn oure þe barres · in blysnand wedes,  
 And faire fest on a fyre · aH þe foure 3ates ;

<sup>1</sup> *Catchword*—in hert ; *wrongly*.

<sup>2</sup> *Read* thousand, *which is intended by this contraction for*  
*Lat. mille.*

<sup>3</sup> *Or* soumed.

- They yield.      Aȝ þe burȝe at a braide · was on a bale kyndildȝ, 2231  
 And þa<sup>1</sup> þat sounde ware vnslayn̄ · als sottes þam̄ ȝeldis.  
 þan *with-out* in oure ost · as þe buke tellis,  
 One Sicistrus is      A Sire, at Sicistrus · was callid be name,  
 glad to see      A meri man, a Messangere · þat maynly was ioyd  
 Thebes on fire.      To se þe cite be sa sone · sindiȝ to brandis. 2236  
 One Hismon is      Anothre hathiȝ vndire hand · þat Hismon was<sup>2</sup> calliȝ,  
 sorry to see it,      Ane a maistre of musike · <sup>3</sup>a man of þe cite,<sup>3</sup>  
 Aires to *ser* Alexander · & in his hert wepis, 2239  
 As qua sai, “prince, of oure place · sum pete þou haue.”  
 þan lokis þe lord to þe lede · said, “lettrid berne,  
 Quare-to feynys þou þis fare · for-*with* myne eȝen?”  
 and begs      “Sire conquirowr,” *quod* þe clerke · “ȝoure corage to bendȝ,  
 Alexander to      And in ridding of oure riche toun · ȝour reuth for  
 shew mercy.      to caȝ.” 2244  
 þan was þe wale kyng wrath · & wiztly comaundis  
 The king is      To bete in-to þe bare erth · aȝ þe burȝe-walles;  
 wrath, and      And quen all kynd was oȝ colis · & kast apon hepis,  
 destroys the city.      þan airis he on *with* his ost · mare honour to wynȝ.  
 A Ientill maȝ full ioyles · iournais him eftir, 2249  
 Foloȝes þare fare · ai oȝ fote as þai ride,  
 A seȝe at of þe same toun · sire was & maistre,  
 Ane callid was Cletomacus · to crie eftir socure, 2252  
 His ledis at left ware o-lyue · a lite of þe cite.  
 One Clytomachus,      þan askid at sire Appoline · al<sup>4</sup> *with* a steuen,  
 a Theban, follows      “If euire it worthe saȝ to wee · quen þe werd standȝ,  
 his host.      Oure bu[r]ȝe agayȝ for to bigȝ · þat bretteȝ is to noȝt?”  
 [Fol. 39.]      þan gales þaire god · a-gayȝ & þus spekis : 2257  
 An oracle says,      “þe tulke þat tilld ȝour toun · saȝ tield vp & rere,  
 the man who is to      Saȝ thre times haue þe thra · of sum threuyȝ gome  
 rebuild Thebes      Of were ore of wristilling<sup>1</sup> · for þus has wirid shapeȝ.  
 will thrice con-      And quen þat wirschip is woȝ · *within* a wale time,  
 quer in wrestling.      þan sall he sett vp him-selfe · þe cite as be-forne.”

<sup>1</sup> MS. *apa*, with first a underlined.<sup>2</sup> MS. was was; the second was underlined.<sup>3</sup> Substituted in MS. for “& in his art wepis;” see next line.<sup>4</sup> Written above the line.

þat aH þe burgh at a brayde · was on a blasse kyndlett,  
 And þo þat sūde wer vnslayne · as seges þaim ȝoldeñ.  
 Than was *withowt* in þe ost · als þe buke tellys, 2233

A syre, þat *sicistreus*<sup>1</sup> · was seget to name,  
 A mery man, a messyngere · þat manly **was** Ioynet<sup>2</sup> [Fol. 24.]

To see þe cite be so sone · shendit to brandes. 2236

Ane-*oper* atheH vnder hand · þat Hisman was callyd,

One maister of musike · a man of þe cite,

Ayrez hym to *Alexander* · & in hys hert wepys, 2239

Als wha sa, “Prince, of *your* place · som pite ȝe haue.”

Then lokys þe lord to þe led · sayd, “*lettred* berne,

Whare to fenys þou þis fare · for-with my egheñ I see?”

“Sir Conquerour,” *quod* þis clerk · “your<sup>3</sup> corage to bynde,

And in riddyng of *our* riche towne · *your* reuth for to  
 calle.” 2244

Than was þe wale kyng wroght · & wittily *Commandes*

To bete into þe bare erth · aH þe burgh walles ;

And when aH kyndlett was on colez · & castyn vppoñ hepys,

Than ayrez he on *with* hys ost · more worship to wyñ. 2248

A gentilman fuH ioyles · þen iornays hym after,

Folows þe folke ay on fote · as þe faire rydeñ,

A sege of þe same cite · þat syre was & maister,

That callyd was *clytomacus* · to cry after socour, 2252

Hys ledes þat left wer on-lyue · a lyte of þe cite.

Then askyd þai at *sir* Apolyñ · aH *with* a stevyñ,

“Yf it worth saH to wy · whil þe world standes, 2255

Oure burgh ayayn to be beld · þat brytynd is to noght?”

Than galez þar god þaim ayayñ · & þus-gates he spekes :

“The tulke þat teld moñ your towñ · saH teld vp & rerre,

SaH thre tymeȝ haue þe tro · of some kynne gameȝ

Off were or of wristylyng · for so hase werdez shapyñ. 2260

And when þat worship is woñ · within a wale tyme,

Than saH he sett vp [him] selfe · þe cite als beforne.”

<sup>1</sup> Or *sicisterus*.

<sup>2</sup> Read Ioyed.

<sup>3</sup> MS. pore.

Alexander goes  
to Corinth,

þus ansvars þam þaire ald gode · & osses oñ þis wyse,  
And þai als fayne, aH þe flote · as foweH of þe day. 2264  
þan aires on ser Alexander · with his athiH princes,  
To þe casteH of Corynthis · he comes with his ost,  
With þe Pers of þa partese · to play on þe toures,  
As aH þe sires of þa sidis · him-selfe had required. 2268  
þe multitude ware sa miche · of men for to rekeñ,  
þat þare was sembild & sett · þat siȝt to be-hald.

and holds some  
games.

Quod Alexander bilyue · to aH at<sup>1</sup> þare stode,  
“Quat gome saH þis gammeñ · begin apon first?” 2272

Clytomachus  
asks to be allowed  
to wrestle ;

þan comes forth Cletomachus · & to þe kyng swaris,  
þe tulke out of Thebie · I tald ȝow be-forne,  
“If it ȝoure mekiH maieste · miȝt any thinge plese, 2275  
I wald to wacken ȝoure welth<sup>2</sup> · now wirstiH a turne.”  
þan mas þe prince him a place · & prestly him matches,<sup>3</sup>  
And he him girdes to þe grounde · & þe gree wynnes.

and throws his  
man thrice.

“Now faithly,” quod þe feH kyng · “faH þe so thrise,  
þou sall be crouned, or I caire · for kiddest of þe gameñ.”  
þan ȝede he<sup>4</sup> eftsones to · & his euen kastis, 2281  
Thingis to þe thrid time · & þe thra wynmys.

He is crowned,  
and they ask his  
name.

And þan comandis him þe kyng · a coroune oñ hede,  
As for þe prise of þe play · putfuH of stanes ; 2284  
þan bad him beddels belyue : ‘breue vs þi name.’<sup>5</sup>

[Fol. 39 b.]

He says it is  
City-less.

“Sirres, by my sothe,” quod þe segge · “Sitiles I hiȝt.”  
“Qwi so, my worthe werstillare?” · þe wale kyng said,  
“How tidis it þe & tou[n]les · þi<sup>6</sup> toname is callid?” 2288  
“Mi louely lorde,” quod þe lede · & law him declines,  
“Be-for ȝe come slike a kyng · & þe croune werriȝt,

“Once I had a  
city, but now  
have none.”

I had a cite<sup>7</sup> my-selfe · & segges I-nowe ;  
And sethen ȝe aȝt þis enpire · I am it aH priued.” 2292  
þan trowid trewly þe kyng · þat Theby he menyȝt,  
And beddels & bailyfs · he bad on brad crie,

<sup>1</sup> Added in the margin.    <sup>2</sup> MS. welah, altered to welth.

<sup>3</sup> MS. maches, altered to matches.

<sup>4</sup> MS. he to ; with to struck out.

<sup>5</sup> MS. name name ; the first struck out.

<sup>6</sup> MS. þi ton ; ton struck out.

<sup>7</sup> MS. a h a cite ; with a h struck out.

Thus answers þaim þis old god · & ossus on þis wyse,  
 And þai als fayne, aH þe flote · als foule is on morne. 2264  
 Than Ayrez hym on *sir Alexander* · with hys atheH Princez,  
 To þe casteH of corinthy · he commys with hys ostez,  
 With þe peres of þai partez · to play on þe towrez,  
 Als aH þe syres of þat sydez · hem-selfe hed required. 2268  
**The** multitude Wher to muche · **oF** men for to rekeñ,  
 That wer þar semblyd & set · þat fecht to be-hold.  
 Quod alexander als belyue · to aH þat þar stodyñ :  
 “What<sup>t</sup> gome saH þis gameñ · begyñ vpon first?” 2272  
 Then commes furth Clytomachus · & to þe kyng sweres,  
 The tulke owt of tebe · I tald you beforne ;  
 “If it your mekyH mageste · might any thyng please,  
 I wald to wakyñ oure welth · now wrastyH a turne.” 2276  
 þen makes þe prince hym a place · & prestly hym maches,  
 And he hym grydes to þe grund · & þe gre wynnez.  
 “Now fathfully, quod þe feyle kyng<sup>t</sup> · “þus faH þou thrisse,  
 Thu saH be crownyd, or I go · for kyddest of gamme.”  
 þen 3ode he eftsons to · & hys eueñ castes, 2281  
 Thrynges to þe thryd tyme · & þe thro wynnes.  
 And þen Commandes þe kyng<sup>t</sup> · a croune on heued,  
 Als for þe fee of þe play · pi3t-fuH of stanes ; 2284  
 Then byde hym bedels belyfe : · ‘breue vs þi name.’  
 “Sirs, be my soght,” quod þe seghe · “siteles<sup>1</sup> I hyght.”  
 “Whi so, my worthy wristiller?” · þe wale kyng sayd,  
 “How tydes it þe at tounles · þi to-name is called?” 2288  
 “My louely Lord,” quod þe lede · & law he declynes,  
 “Before 3e Come suche · & þe crowne wered,  
 I hed a cyte my-self · & seges enowe ;  
 And syne 3e aught þis empyre · & I am deprived.” 2292  
 Then trowyd trewly þe kyng · at tebet he neuynd,  
 And Bedels & bail3ais · he bad a-none crye,

<sup>1</sup> I. e. city-less ; so also town-less in line 2288.

Alexander  
grants him to  
rebuild Thebes.  
He goes to  
Platæa.

Diana's  
prophetess  
welcomes  
Alexander,

and tells  
Strasagoras he  
will lose his  
lands.

And so it  
happened.  
Alexander comes  
to Athens.

[Fol. 40.]

Be-fore his pupiH apert · þe powere him grauntis  
To sett his cite vp agayn · & of him-selfe halden. 2296  
þaH passis he to a proude touH · Platea was hatten,  
þare was stiztild ane Strasageras · þat was a<sup>1</sup> stiffe prince,  
Duse him in with his dukis · to Dyanaas temple,  
And fand a pure prophetas · aparaild iH vailes. 2300  
And scho, as sone as scho him saze · said him þir wordis:  
“ Welcom we, at aH þe werd · saH wyH with þi handis.”  
þe secund day before þe soH · he at þe cite wildid,  
In-to þe temple he turned · tythandis to herkeH; 2304  
“ Quat ware þi wiH, ser, to wete?” · þe womaH frayned;  
“ þou lesis aH þi lordschiþ · within a lite dais.”  
“ Quat, & has þou ossed to Alexander · þis ayndain wirdes,  
And me þus iH? vn-ably · þine abet þou weris.” 2308  
“ Nay, tene 3ow nozt, for treuly · þus tide bose it nede.”  
And so it worthid, for in a wrath · þe wale kyng swyth  
Him of his principaletē priued · & þaH þe prince fondis  
Onane to Athenas · & oH þe athiH playntes; 2312  
And þai said, soure suld him sowe · bot he þe cite zeld.  
And Alexander with his osten · aires on forthire,  
Ateynes him to-ward þe termes · & of þar tene heres,  
And slike a word he þaim wayues · be writ fra him-self.  
And qua so wiH has to wete · how it worthid eftir,  
Here saH I teH þam at loues · to here forthire. 2318

### Decimus passus Alexandri.

A letter.  
“ Alexander to  
the men of  
Athens.

“ I Alexander, þe aire · & eldest childe hatten  
Of kyng Philip þe fers · þat fest aH iH grece,  
And of þe quene Olimpades · þe oddest vnder heuen,  
To aH 3ow of Athenes · þus etiH I my sazes. 2322  
Fra þat my fadere was fey · & farne out o lyue,  
And I was sett in his sege · with septour to regne,  
Sethen went I with my werriours · in-to þe west endes,

<sup>1</sup> Added in the margin.

Before hys peple so pert · & hym þe power grauntez  
To set hys cite vp agayn · & of hym-self hald. 2296

þan passys he to a prouud touñ · platea was hateñ,  
þar was stizlet one strasagera · þat was a styffe Prince,  
Dose hym in with hys Dukes · to Dianas<sup>1</sup> temple,  
And fand a pure prophett · apparelt in wales. 2300

And als sone as sho hym see · sho sayd þees wordes :  
“ Welcom, wye, þat þe werld · saH wyne with þi handes.”  
þe second day before þe suñ · he þat cite weLdit,

[Fol. 25.]

To þe temple he tight · tithannde to herkeñ. 2304  
“ What is<sup>2</sup> þi wiH,” quod [the] woman, “ siñ, to witt · &  
how þou me franes ;

For þou lossez aH þi Lordschips · within a lityH dayes.”  
“ What & hase þu ossed to alexander · þus aydom wordes,  
And me þus? vnably · þinē habet þou werys.” 2308

“ Nay, tene þe noght, for trewly · þus tyde bus it nedes.”  
And so it worthed, for in a wrath · þe wale kyng swyH  
Hym of hys principalite deprives · & þen þe Prince fondes  
Anone vnto athens & on · of þe atheH Planettes ;<sup>3</sup> 2312  
And þai sayd, saire suld he sike · bot he þe cite 3elde.

And alexander with hys ost · þen ayres on ferþer,  
Attellys hym toward þe terme · & of þe tene heres, 2315  
And such a word he þaim wayffez · be writte fro hym-selueñ.

. . . . .  
. . . . .

### *Decimus Passus.*

**I alexander, ayre · & heldest child both**

Epistola.

Off kyng philip þe fers · þat fessit am in grece, 2320  
And of þe whene olimphades · þe oddest vnder hevyñ,  
To all you of atthenys · þus atthiH I my sawes.  
Fro þat my fader was fey · & fallyn out of lyve,  
And I was sett in hys sege · with septour in hand, 2324  
Syne went I with my weryours · in-to þe west ende,

<sup>1</sup> Read Dianas.      <sup>2</sup> Written above the line in MS.

<sup>3</sup> So in MS.; but corruptly.

I have conquered  
all Europe.

And ay *with*-out any armes · þaim aH at anys 3olden,  
aH Europe to myñ enpire · enterely þaim geuñ,  
Enyn to þe Occiane · out of ald<sup>r</sup> Rome. 2328

All who resist  
we destroy.

Qua þat vs rekinly resayues · na riddour þai tholid,  
And all at othire wais wrozt · we wast þam for euire.  
And now *fra* þe marche of Messedone · I meued opoñ late  
þurze þe anglis here of Afle · *with* myne athiH dukis,

The Thebans  
resisted in vain.

And so þe Thebies þam tizt · þe toun to defende, 2333  
And I þar pompe<sup>1</sup> & þaire pride · to poudire declined<sup>r</sup>.

Send me ten  
philosophers ;  
I ask no more,  
except that ye do  
homage."

To 3ow now write I oñ þis wise · þat, wald 3e<sup>2</sup> me send<sup>r</sup>  
Ten fyne Philisofours<sup>3</sup> · to fand *with* my wittes, 2336  
3oure burzes ne 3our brizt bees · bidd I þañ nothire,  
Bot at 3e know me for kyng · & caH me 3our lord<sup>r</sup>.

For & 3e nyk now to myñ empire · 3our nekis for<sup>2</sup> to bowe,  
þan bos 3ow bigger<sup>4</sup> to be · þen aH my bald princes,  
Or laite anothire ladis-mañ · a-losed mare of ætrentH  
þan I my-selfe or my seggis · be þe seuent dele."

[Fol. 40 b.]

þire athils of Atenes · þir augard<sup>r</sup> clerkis 2343  
þan reuerenst þai þe riche seele · & red ouer þe pistiH,  
Syne kest vp a crie · *with* a kene voice at anys,  
Suñ in comending of his carpe · & oñ clene it spitid.

One Æschylus  
recommends  
them not to listen  
to him.

A Filisphire þan oñ first · before þe folke risis,  
Ane Eschilus in erde · & ernstly he spekis, 2348  
þe douth & aH diuinours · be-dene he comaundis,  
þat þai suld corde be na cas · vn-to þe kingis hestis.

One Demosthenes  
is next  
consulted.

*With* þat aH samen on a sopþ · semblis þe pupiH,  
A doctour, ane Domystyne · þai derely beseke 2352  
To consaile þaim als iñ þe cause · & ken þam þe best.  
And he rekinly rase · & rekyns þire wordis :

" I be-seke 3ow now, my citizens . if þat 3e safe vouche,  
Bot sobirly a sete quile · my sazes for to here. 2356

Sirs, if 3e fele 3ow so fers · his force to *with*-stand<sup>r</sup>,  
Aires agaynes him *with* armes · admitts nozt his sazes.

He recommends  
the n to submit,

And if<sup>5</sup> 3e fynde 3e be to faynt · fulfillis his wiH,

<sup>1</sup> MS. ponpe.      <sup>2</sup> Added in the margin.

<sup>3</sup> so is written above the line.      <sup>4</sup> MS. biggis.

<sup>5</sup> MS. inserts fy, struck out.



And þai *withowtyn* armys · þaim aH at onys *zeldyn*,  
 AH europe to my empyre · *enterly* þai geveñ. 2327

Who þat rekenly vs resaued · no raddour tholett,  
 And aH þat other-wyse wrought · we wastyd for euer.  
 And now fro þe marche of massydoñ · I mefeld on late  
 Torow þe anglez of asy · with myne atheH Dukez, 2332

And so þe tebes þaim tyzt · þe touñ to defende,  
 That I þair pompe & þair pride · to powder haue declined.  
 And now writte I on þis wise · þat, wold 3e me send  
 Ten<sup>1</sup> fyne.philosophirs · to fond *with* my wittez, 2336

Your burghes ne *your* bryght bees · bidde I none oþer,  
**Bot** þat 3e know me for your kyng<sup>a</sup> · & calle me *your* Lord. [Fol. 25 b.]  
 For nyk yhe to myne empyre · *your* nekkys for to bowe,  
 þan bus you bigger to be · þan aH my bald Princes, 2340  
 Oþer lates ane oþer lodesmañ · alosed more of strenth  
 Then I my-self & my seges · be þe seuynt<sup>t</sup> dele.”

þoes athels of athens · þes awgerd Clerkez  
 þen reuerenst<sup>t</sup> þai þe riche seale · & red ouer þe pisteh,  
 Syne kestyn vp a clene voyce · & cried aH at onys, 2345  
 Some in Commendying of hys carpyng · & soñ in dyspysyng.  
 Than A philisofre<sup>2</sup> on þe frist<sup>t</sup> · before þat folke ryses,  
 Ane Esculus in þat erde · & egirly spekes, 2348  
 þe<sup>3</sup> Doughty & aH Dyuynours · be-dene he Commandez,  
 þat þai suld acord be no case · to þe kynggez heste.

With þat al sampnes in a sopp · assembles þe peple,  
 A Doctour, ane Domestyñ · þai derly besekyn 2352  
 To CounseH þaim in þat cause · & ken þaim þe best<sup>t</sup>.

And he þan rakenly rose · & rekens þees wordes :  
 “ I Beseke you now, my citesyns · if þat 3e saue woche,  
 Bot soberly a sete qwyle · my sawys for to herkyñ.” 2356  
 And sayd, “ if 3e feyle you so ferce · hys force to *withstond*,  
 Ayres ayayns hym *with* armes · admittes noght hys sawes.  
 And if yhe fynd 3e faynt<sup>t</sup> · fulfyH þan hys wyll,

<sup>1</sup> MS. Then.<sup>2</sup> MS. philipofre.<sup>3</sup> MS. 3e.

- Vn-to his mekiH maieste · mekely 3ow bowe. 2360  
 For Sexes in sum time · surmountid all kyngis,  
 3it lizt he law at þe last · for all his lethire prid.  
 because Alex-  
 ander alwys  
 wins.  
 Bot Alexander *with* his armee · in alkin rewmys  
 Has happend 3it ai hedire-to · þe herre of his faes ; 2364  
 Vnnombirable ere þe notis · to neuen of his weres,  
 And 3it betid neuir þe time · þat euire tuke he schame.  
 “ Did he not  
 conquer Tyre ?  
 Ware nozt þe tulkis out of Tire · þe tidiest oñ erth, 2367  
 þe kiddest kniztis to a-count · vnder þe cape of heuen,  
 Quat bathe for corage & kene · & connyng in armes ?  
 Loke quare it profet þam a peese · aH þaire proud strenth.  
 [Fol. 41.]  
 and Thebes ?  
 Was nozt þe Thebes þar-to · þe threyest<sup>1</sup> of othire,  
 þe worthiest wees of þe werd · & of witt clerest, 2372  
 Fra þat þaire cites ware sett · þe sotelest of weres ?  
 Quat seruyd aH þai sapient · or slezt<sup>2</sup> of bataH ?  
 and the people of  
 Peloponesus ?  
 Of Poliponenses þe pupiH · *with* þis prince fozteñ,  
 And þat þam lethirly con like · by þe lattir ende, 2376  
 For þar þe kyng of þaire kythe · was killid doun & heded,  
 His renkis raymed aH þe route · & all þe rewme 3olden.  
 Wate 3e nozt wele þur3e aH þe werd · how wirdis *with*  
 him cheues ? 2379  
 Hase he nozt cites butt saute · sesyd out of nounbre ?  
 Ye are angry  
 because of  
 Strasagoras’ fate.  
 And for Strasagirs þe strangr · he of his strenth priued,  
 3e meue al þus malicoly · his maieste a-gayne. 2382  
 þare do 3e nozt 3our deuire · þat dare I wele proue,  
 It was þe gilt aH of þe gome · & nozt of þe gud lord.  
 Ne had he trispast him to · I take it oñ my trouthe,  
 But he deserved  
 it.  
 Had neuire his cite ne his soile · be sesid fra him  
 nouthire.  
 Alexan ler is  
 known to be  
 courteous.”  
 For þe au aunt ser Alexander · is aH þe werd famyd  
 For ane of þe curtast kyng · þat euir croune werid, 2388  
 And wete 3e wele at slik a we · at is<sup>3</sup> wyse haldeñ,  
 He wald neuire suprise · no sege vndir heuen.”  
 The Athenians  
 With þat aH of Atenenys · þis aunceant maistir,

<sup>1</sup> MS. theyest ; *with a third e above y.*<sup>2</sup> MS. selezt ; *altered to slezt.* <sup>3</sup> *Added in the margin.*

Vnto his mekyH mageste · mekely you bowes. 2360

For sexes in som tyme · sirmountyd aH kynges,

3it liȝt he lawe at þe last · for aH hys lethir pride.

Bot alexander with hys armes · in alkyn realmes

Hase happynd ay 3it hyder · to þe hyer of hys foes ;

Vnnowmerable er þe notez · to nevyñ of þe weres, 2365

And 3itt betyd neuer þe tyme · þat euer toke he shame.

Wer noght þe tulkez of tire · þe triest of þe werld,

þe kyddest knyghtez to account · vnder þe cope of heuen,

What bath <sup>1</sup> of corage & kene · & connyng of arméz ?

Loke quar it profett þam a pese · all þair proude strenth.

Wer noght þe teбетtes þarto · þe tithiest of oþer,

The worthiest wyes of þe werld · & of witte clerest, 2372 [Fol. 26.]

· · · · ·  
What seruyd 3itte aH þar sapience · & sleghtes of were ?

Of poliponenses þe peple · with þis prince feghten,

And þat þaim lederly con like · 3it at þe latter ende, 2376

For þar þe kyng of þe kyth · was kyllyd downe & heued,

Hys renkes raymet aH þe route · & hys realme 3olden.

Wayte 3e noght wele þorow aH þe werld · how aH thyng

with hym goys ? 2379

· · · · ·  
And for strasagera þe strang · he of hys strenth priues,

3it 3e make you malicolý · hys mageste ayayns.

þarto yhe do not your Diuour<sup>2</sup> · I dar it wele pefe,

It was þe gilt of gome · not of þe gode Lord. 2384

For had he noght trasped hym vnto · I take on my saule,

· · · · ·

And for þe graunt of þe sir alexander · is aH þe werld famed

For one of þe curtasest kyng · þat euer crowne weryd,

And wete 3e wele þat suche a wye · þat is so wyse haldyñ,

He wald neuer sussprise · no sege vnder heven." 2390

With þat aH þise athenez · & þa auancet maisters,

<sup>1</sup> MS. has þe after bath, but it is struck out.

<sup>2</sup> MS. Diuour.

commend  
Demosthenes,

And clene aH þe clergy · comensure & othire, 2392  
þis diuinour Domestyne · bedene þai comendid,  
A-cordis þaim to his consaile · & kindly it prased.

and send a crown  
to Alexander.

þan amed þai to *ser Alexander* · onane for to send  
A croune aH of clere gold · clustrid with gemmes, 2396  
Of fyfty ponde with þe payse · as þe prose<sup>1</sup> tellis,  
þis tresoure tire þai him to · & tribute him hetes.

[Fol. 41 b.]

Now ere þe sandismen<sup>2</sup> · sett oñ paire horsis,  
A IentiH man þat IoweH · enioyned was to kepe, 2400  
þat was full sekirly & soft · aH in silke falden;  
Bot clerkis to þe conquirour · caired with þaim many.

The Athenian  
messengers  
arrive.

þan movis furth þe messagers · of mylis<sup>3</sup> bot fewe,  
þat þai nere lizt as belyue<sup>4</sup> · at þe kyngis tentis, 2404  
Knelid down befor þe kyng · & him þe croune rechið,  
And 3erely tribute him to geue · 3apely him hetis.

Alexander thanks  
them.

þan takis þe gudman þe gifte · & gretly þam þankis,  
And vndirstandis in a stound · how it stude clene, 2408

He learns about  
Æschylus and  
Demosthenes.

Of þe eging<sup>5</sup> of Eschilus · þat ertid his feris,  
þat þai with-sitt suld his sazes · & serue noȝt his pistitt.  
þe dities of Domestiane · so did he bathe,  
þat comaundid & his<sup>5</sup> comandmentis · to kepe in aH  
wyse, 2412

3it neuire-þe-lattir to þa ledis · a lettir he fourmed,  
In presidine with his awen<sup>6</sup> prince · reportand þa  
wordis :

A letter.  
" Alexander to  
the men of  
Athens.

¶ " I, kyng Philip soñ þe fers · & his faire ladis,  
Honoured Olimpades · þat I obesche maste, 2416  
I kepe neuire king to be callid · ne cache me þat name,  
TiH aH þe barbarine blude · a-bowe to þe grekis.

I do not attempt  
to enter Athens  
forcibly.

I etiH neuir Athenes · with armes for to entre, 2419  
Bot 3ow to question enquere · & qwete with my wittis.<sup>7</sup>  
I purpose ay out of repreue · 3oure persons to leue,  
And 3e þe contrari clene · 3oure concience it opence.

<sup>1</sup> MS. *prorose*.

<sup>2</sup> MS. *sandisment*.

<sup>3</sup> MS. *mylid*, altered to *mylis*.

<sup>4</sup> MS. *bely*, altered to *belyue*.

<sup>5</sup> Added in the margin.

<sup>6</sup> MS. *awent*, altered to *awen*.

<sup>7</sup> MS. *handis*, altered to *wittis*.

And Clene aH þe clerge · commensour & oþer, 2392  
 Thys Diuinour domestyn · by-dene þai commendyn,  
 Acorde þaim to hys counseH · & kenly it praseñ.  
 Then ameyd þaim to *sir alexander* · anone for to send  
 A Crowne aH of clene gold · clustred with gemmys, 2396  
 Of fifty pound was þe passe · as þe prose tellys,  
 Thys tresour tire þai hym to · & tribute hym highteñ.  
 Now er þe sandesmen in sute · sett on þar blonkez,  
 A gentilman þat IoweH · inioneyd was to kepe, 2400  
 þat was fuH sarkenly & full soft · aH in sylke falden;  
 Bot clerkes to þe conquerour · cayred with þaim none.  
 Then meffyd forth þe messyngers · myles bot a few,  
 And liȝt aH belyue · at þe lordes tentes, 2404  
 Knele downe before þe kyng · & hym þe crowne raughteñ,  
 And ȝerly tribute hym to gyf · ȝapely hym highteñ.  
 Than tase þe godmañ þair giftez · & gretly þaim thanks,  
 And vnderstonde in a stound · how it stode clene, 2408  
**And** of þe eggyng of Esculus · þat ertyd hys foes, [Foi. 26 b.]  
 To withsitte hys sawe · & serue noght hys pistyH.  
 The dytes of domestyn · & so dyd of both,  
 þat Counsellid hys Commaundment · to kepe on aH  
 wyse. 2412  
 Yit neuer-þe-leter to þo ledes · a letter he enformed,  
 In presydence hys Awne prince · reportand þes wordes :

“ I, kyng Philipp soñ þe ferce · & hys fayre ladys,  
 Honourd olymphades · þat I obey most, 2416  
 I kepe neuer kyng to be called · ne cache me þat name,  
 To<sup>1</sup> aH þe barberoñ blude · bowe to þe grekys,  
 I attellyd neuer athens · with armes to entre, 2419  
 Bot you questions to enquire · to wete with my writtes.  
 And purposed ay out of reproue · your persens to leue,  
 Bot ȝe þe contrary clene · in your conscience doys shew.

<sup>1</sup> Better Til.

Whoever opposes  
me will suffer.

Bot quilk as first of 3ow foundis · a fote vs agayne,  
SaH neuir deuoides my dedeyne · ne my derfe ire. 2424  
And 3e at wickid ere *withiñ* · ay wickidly 3e thinke ;  
For as þe *grayne* is in þe *grape* · growis þe *frutis*.

[Fol. 42.]

þe Tebies tulkid<sup>1</sup> vs *with* tene · a-tired þam in armes,  
3it rad for all þaire rebelte · resayued þai þaire medis.

Ye reprove me  
because of  
Strasagoras.

And for Strasagera þe stoute · 3e stithli me blamed,  
þare as he gilt me agayns · & I him gradid haue, 2430  
I wrate to 3ow at me to wayue · be teñ wyse clerkis ;  
3e kest out comaundmentis · 3e knew noȝt my strenth.  
I miȝt a-coupe of þat cause · if I it kythe wald ; 2433

I forgive you."

Bot I for-geue 3ow aH þe gilt · & greues me na mare.  
For-þi bees glad now, aH þe gingis · 3e saH na gref haue,  
þe diuinour<sup>2</sup> domestyne · for 3e his domes held." 2436

The Athenians  
rejoice.

Fra þai consayued had þe clause · & construed þe lettir,  
þai ware þe meriest modirsons · on morne miȝt<sup>3</sup> ryse.

Alexander goes to  
Lacedæmon.

¶ Now fonndis furth þe feH kyng · & flittis *with* his osten,  
Lendis him to Lacedoyne · a litiH fra þe cite, 2440  
*With*-out þe burȝe oñ a banke · he bildis his tentis,  
And þare him-selfe *with* a somme · in a sege le[n]gis.  
þe ledis out of Lacedone · belyue þam asemble, 2443

They agree to  
resist him.

Said, "bow we neuir to his bode · for bale apon erth,  
Ne lat vs neuir be sa lethire · at we like worthe  
To þam of Ateynes · it is oure opyn schame ;  
For þai ware baist of his bost · bredid for noȝt ;  
Bot be we kniȝtly & kene · oure corage to schew." 2448

They defend the  
walls.

*With* þat þai zarkid to þe ȝatis · & ȝode to þe wallis,  
Sum in Iopons, sum in Iesserantis · sum Ioyned aH in  
platīs.

They prepare  
their navy.

A grayne of þe grete see · þaim aboute glidis ;  
For-þi buskis þam þe burgh · a bataiH *with*-out, 2452  
Preses furth at posternes · in-to þe porte wyndis,  
Schalkis scott in-to shipis · aH in shire mailles ;  
Archars *with* arows · *with* attrid barbis,

<sup>1</sup> *Sic* ; perhaps for tulkid.    <sup>2</sup> MS. duinour.

<sup>3</sup> Added in the margin.

Bot whilke of yow as foundes frist · on fote vs agayns,  
 Saß neuer voyde my dysdane · ne my derfe Ire. 2424  
 And 3e at thynkys wykkydly · & wyrkys agayns;  
 For as þe grane is of þe grase · & þar growez þe frute.  
 The tebettes tulkyd<sup>1</sup> vs with tene · atyred þaim in armys,  
 3itt for aß þair riallte · resaued þai þair mede. 2428  
 And for strasagera þe stout · 3e styfly me blame,  
 Thar as he giltyd me ayayns · I hym gradit haue,  
 I wrate to you me to wafe · teñ wise clerkez;  
 Yhe kest out Commandmentes · & knew noght my strenth.  
 I might a-couþ you of þat cause · & I it kyth wald; 2433  
 Bot I forgyfe you aß þe gilt · & grefez me no more.  
 For-þi beys glade now, aß þe pake · 3e saß no grefe sofre,  
 The Diuynour Domestyn · for 3e hys domes halden." 2436  
 And fro þai consaued hed þe clause · & construed þe pistyß,  
 Thai wer þe meriest modersons · þat might on morne rise,  
 Now fonndes he furth þe fele kyng · & flittes hys osten,  
 . . . . . 2440  
 Without þe burgh on a bank · beldit he hys tentez,  
 And þar hym-self with a soume · in a sege lenges.  
 þe<sup>2</sup> ledes out of lacydon · belyfe þaim assembled,  
 Sayd: "how we neuer to hys body · for bale vppoñ erthe,<sup>3</sup>  
**Ne lett** vs neuer be so lethir · þat we leke wortheñ 2445 [Fol. 27.]  
 To pise out [of] athens · for it wer opyn<sup>4</sup> shame;  
 For þai wer basyt for hys beste · & ferd for noght;  
 Bot be we knyghtly & kene · oure corage to shew." 2448  
 With þat þai 3arken to zates · & 3oden to þe walles,  
 Some in Iompons & in Iesserauntez · som Ioned in  
 platez.  
 A grayne of þe grete see · glad þaim all vmbe;  
 For-þi buskys þaime þe burgesse · a batale withowt, 2452  
 Pressen forth at posternes · vnto a place wenden,  
 Shalkez shotten into shippez · aß in shire malys,  
 Arches with arows · with atterd barbes,

<sup>1</sup> Perhaps for tukkyd.<sup>3</sup> MS. To þe.<sup>2</sup> MS. erthd.<sup>4</sup> MS. orpyn.

[Fol. 42 b.]

Gais þam in-to galays · &amp; grathis þam be-forne. 2456

Bowes bernis in-to bargis · with basinettis on heued,

Sparrethis spetous to spend · &amp; speris in handis,

þai crosse ouir toward þe kyng · as kyndmen suld,

With as feyle on þe flode<sup>1</sup> · as foʒten with-in. 2460

þe lord him lokis on þe ledis · &amp; a litiH smyles,

A letter.

And sent twa vndir his seele · þir saʒes in a pistiH.

“Alexander to  
the men of  
Lacedæmon.

¶ “I, Philip soH þe fell kyng · as I first sayd,

And als of Olimpades · I anely ʒow rede, 2464

þat þe end of ʒoure eldirs · enterely ʒe be-hald,<sup>2</sup>And roomes noʒt at<sup>3</sup> þe ray[n]bowe · þat reche ʒe ne  
may,

And þe powere of þe Persens · so truly ʒe traist. 2467

Resist me, and  
get you a name.”

Lat se now, getis ʒow a name · &amp; naytis ʒour stre[n]the ;

Bot bowis first fra ʒour bargis · &amp; blythly þaim wayfe,

For, fest I aH on a fire · þe foly is ʒoure aweH.”

Ledis out of Lacedone · quen þai þe lettir redd, 2471

Were drery, bot for aH þe dole · þa diʒt þaim to fiʒt. . .

The assault  
begins.

With þat þe kyng &amp; his kniʒtis · vm-clappis þe cite,

Settis aH þe gailis on gledis · &amp; girdis doun þe wallis ;

þe citiʒens &amp; seriantis · at vne-slayne ware

They yield.

Bowis þam to þis baratour · bodis &amp; lyuys. 2476

“Now you have  
lost your ships  
and your walls  
are broken.“ʒe know wele,” quod þe conquerour · “my comyng  
was esye ;

Bot for ʒe fangid me noʒt faire · fired is ʒour schippis,

ʒour burʒe is bretind &amp; ʒour bernis · I bed ʒow

my-selfe, 2479

Never handle the  
stars.”

ʒe suld noʒt stody ne steH · þe sternes for to handiH.

For he þat steppis on a stee · quen þe staues failis,

þan fautis him festing to his fete · &amp; faH him be-houes ;

So, riʒt as Sexis was slayH · sum time with ʒour eldirs,

[Fol. 43.]

So ettild ʒe ser Alexander · bot þare ʒoure ame failis.”

Quen he þis saʒe had þam said · þe cite he þam grauntið,

Fondis furth with his folke · þar fraunches þam leues. .

<sup>1</sup> Added in the margin.<sup>2</sup> be added in margin.<sup>3</sup> Above the line.



Gone þaim into galays · & grathen þaim þarforne. 2456

Bowyn bernis into bargez · *with* Basynettes on heued,<sup>1</sup>

Sparthys spitous to spend · & speres in handes,

þai crossyn ouer toward þe kyng · als kene men shulden,  
*With* als fele on þe flode · as foughten *within*. 2460

þe lord hym lokez on þe ledes · & a lityll Smylez,

And Send þaim vnder hys sealle · þis saughez in a pistyH.

“Myself, philipp þe feth kynges [son] · as I first sayd, *epistola.*  
 & als of olimphades · I only you rede, 2464

þat þe ende of your elders · enterly 3e holden,

And rooues<sup>2</sup> noght at þe rayne-bowe · þat reche 3e ne  
 may,

And þe power of persyens · so purely 3e trasten.

Lettes se, nemmys yow a name · & naytes your strenthe ;

Bot bowes first fra your bargez · & blythly þam woydez,

For fest I al in a fyre · þe foly is your awne.”

The ledes owt of lacidon · when þai þe lettres herd, 2471

War drery, bot [for] aH þe dole · þai dight þaim to fight.

*With* þat þe kyng & hys knyghtes · vmbelappes þe cite,

Sett all þe Galays on gledes · brynt down þe wallez ;

The cetyners & þe sergeantes · aH þat vnslayne weryñ

Bowes þan to þe baratour · both bodes & lyfez. 2476

“3e knowe wele,” quod þe conquerour · “my Commyng [Fol. 27 b.]  
 was full easy ;

Bot for<sup>3</sup> 3e fonge me not fair · nowe fyryd er your shippez,

Your borgh es bryttynyð & your berne[s] · I byd you my-  
 selueñ,

3e suld nott study ne stem · þe sternes to byholda. 2480

For he þat steppys on a stegh · when þe stoure faylez,

þen fallys hym þe festyng of hys fete · & falle hym byhofys ;

So ryght as sixes was slayne · some tyme *with* your aldours,

Als ettled 3e Sir A[lexander]. · bot þar your kast faylyd.”

When he þis sagh hed þaim sayd · þe Cyte he þam grauntyd,

Fondes forth *with* hys folke · þair franchisez þaim lefys.

<sup>1</sup> MS. heuend.

<sup>2</sup> Or roones.

<sup>3</sup> Above the line in MS.

He goes to Sicily. þis souerayn with his seggis · þurȝe Sycile<sup>1</sup> he wyrdis,

Darius is  
frightened.

þoȝt to ride & to rayme · þe regions of barbres. 2488

þan was ser Darius dred · & sembled derf ostis,

His kniȝtis, his consaiht · & carpis þire wordis,

Said: "lo! myseris, now may se · ȝour-selfe with ȝour eȝen,

How Alexander in his armes · aȝ-way encreses, 2492

In valour & in victori · & vertues so noble;

"I threatened  
him as a thief;  
he fights like a  
warrior.

þare as I thret him as a thefe · thedis to dispoyle,

Now werrays he fuht worthily · as wiȝt man suld, 2495

Constreynes with his contenance · kniȝtis to him bow.

þe mare I spek him dispite · & in my speche hindire,

þe hiȝere I here him enhansed · & hersude his name.

I sent him  
playthings.

A baht & a herneþan · I to þe barne sent,

For burde & for bobance · þe bab with to play. 2500

Him þat I countid bot a knaue · may now be cald  
maistir;

For quare he fondis on fold · dame fortune him foloȝe[s].

For-þi<sup>2</sup> vs haue bos in hert · þe hele of oure pupiht,

We must no  
longer despise  
him.

And for na pompe ne na pride · his person dispice, 2504

For his lose, for aȝ his litillaike · is loued þurȝe þe  
werf.

And þe mare I myn oure maieste · þe mare it abatis,

God helps him."

þe grace of þe grete god<sup>3</sup> · I ges, wiht him help,

Of prise þe hiȝe prouynce · vn-to þis prince leues. 2508

Quen we hope althire-hiȝest · to hery him with<sup>3</sup> armes,

þan am I redd aȝ oure rewme · be reft vs for euire."

[Fol. 43 b.]

Sone as ser Dary till his dukis · deuysid had þir wordis,

Oriathar,  
Darius' brother,  
ays:

þan answers him ane Oriathire · ane of his awen  
brethire, 2512

"þou has þis come out of grece · so gretly e[n]hansiht,

þat we Elanda suld leue · & he þis landis entre.

"Your majesty  
should do as he  
does.

Bot wald ȝour maieste þe maners · of þis man sewe,

ȝe miȝt ȝoure rewme haue in ryst · & othire rewmes wyht.

<sup>1</sup> MS. Sytile.

<sup>2</sup> þi added in the margin.

<sup>3</sup> Added in the margin.

Thys souerayne with hys seneours · throghe secyH he  
wendes,

thoght to ryde & to rame · þe regions of Barbers. 2488

þen was sir darius a-drede · & derfly þan sembles

Hys knyghtes & hys Counsell · & carped þes wordes,

Sayd : “sirys, nowe may ȝe se · your-self with your eey,

How A[lexander] in hys armys · alway encreses, 2492

In valour & victory · & vertus so noble ;

þar as I thratt [him] as a thefe · thedes to dispoyle,

Nowe warreys he full worthily<sup>1</sup> · als wȳt<sup>2</sup> man suld,

Constraynes with hys contenance · knyghtes to bowe.

þe more I speke hym dispite · & in my speche endered,

The heyar I here hym enhaunsyd · & hersud hys name.

A baH & a brayne-pan · I to þe berne send,

For burde & for bobance · þe bab with to play. 2500

Hym þat I Counte bot a knaffe · may now be callyd  
[maister] ;

For whar he ffoundez apon fold · dame fortoune hym sewes,

For-thi vs hafe buse in hert · þe heyle of our peple, 2503

And for no pompe ne no pryde · hys person to dispyse,

For hys loyse, ffor all hys hattellayke · is losyt þorow þe  
werld.

And þe more I meng our maieste · þe more it debates,<sup>3</sup>

The grace of þe grete god · I gesse, wele hym helps,

[Fol. 28.]

Of pris þe hegh provynce · vnto þis prince lefys. 2508

When we hope aH þe heldest · to herye hym with armes,

þen am I raddest aH our realme · be raymed from vs first.”

Sone as sir Dary to hys dukez · devysed hase þees wordez,

þen answers hym oryather · on of hys awne brether, 2512

“ Now hase þis gome oute of grece · so gretly enhaunsed,

And we þe lande shuld leve · & he þe landes entre.

Bot wald þour maieste þe maners · of þis man sewe, 2515

ȝe myght your realme haue in rist · & other landes wyne.

<sup>1</sup> MS. worthtly.

<sup>2</sup> MS. with.

<sup>3</sup> Catchword—þe grace.

	For <i>Alexander</i> aH-ways · or any of his erles, 2517
He helps him- self."	Nayt's him-selfe in ilke nede · & so his name rysis."
	"Quat sall I take of him my temes · tittire þan he myne?"
Another says,	"Sire, on my pereH," quod a prince · "he passes all othire; þe wee wikkis aH be witt · he worthis þe bettir; 2521
"he is of a lion's kin."	For-þi of þe lion, as I leue · lazt is his birthe."
"How so?" says Darius.	"Quat knawis þou þat?" quod þe kyng · & þen þe kniȝt swaris :
"Sir, I once went to Philip's court.	"Sire, I was sent on a sand · my-seH oñ a time, 2524 To Philip his fadere · to feche oure trouage; þare had I siȝt of þe segg · his sapient I herde. For-þi plese it to ȝour person · ȝoure princes a-sembles, Of Mede of Mesopotane · þe men of Itaille, 2528 þe pupiH of Appolomados · þe panthis folke, And ma þat houes to ȝour hest · a hundreth & fifti. Lat vs gedire þus oure gomes · oure gods wiH vs help; And quen he sesse vs sike a sowme · sare will he drede. Ȝa, bot a wolfe, quod a wee · wiH were many flokis, <sup>1</sup> 2533 And so þe grace of þe grekis · ouire-gos þe barbers." Be þis ser Ph[ilip] soñ þe fers · of feztand folk Had sembrid ane vūsene sowme · as þe buke sais, Twa C. Milie in thede · aH <sup>2</sup> of threuen kniȝtis. Ridis furth iñ aray · removis his tentis; 2538 · · · · · 2538*
He heard that many would come to attack the Greeks, and remarked that one wolf can worry many sheep."	Vn-to a watere he wendis · as þe buke tellis, þat with þa marchesmen · Mociañ was hatten; 2540
[Fol. 44.]	It was clerire þan cristaH · & cole as a chiH;
He bathes in a cold river,	þare-in couet oure kyng · his cors for to bathe. With þat þan wan of his wede · & weschild him aH ouire, Quare-þurȝe he hent slike a harme · at hatirly him greued. 2544
He is chilled, and has a fever.	þis chele eftir chaufing · enchafis so his hernes, þat he was fallen in a feuire · or he first wend.

<sup>1</sup> MS. flokkis, i. e. flokkis.<sup>2</sup> Added in the margin.

For A[lexander] always · or ony of hys bernes, 2517  
Nates hym-self in ony nede · & so hys name rysys."

"Sir, on my pereH," quod a prince · "he passes aH oþer ;  
þe wee wyrches aH with witte · & worthes ay þe better ;  
For-þi of þe lyon, as I lefe · laght he hys byrth." 2522

"What knawez þou þat?" quod þe kyng · & þen þe knyght  
answers :

"Sir, I was send on a sond · my-self on a tyme, 2524

To philip hys fader · to feche hys trowage ;

þar hed I syght of þe segge · hys sapiens I herd.

For-þi ples it yowur person · 3our princes assembles,

Off medy & of mesothany · þe men of ytalle, 2528

The peple of appolomados · þe peranthez folkez,

And mo þen hewen<sup>1</sup> to your heystez · a hundreth & fyfty.

Let vs gedir to vs our gomez · our goddes wyll vs help ;

And when he seys vs suche a sowme · sore wyH he drede.

Ja, bot þen a wolfe, quod þe we · wyll wery mony  
flokkez, 2533

And so þe grace of þe grekez · ouergose þe barbres."

By þis sir philip son þe fers · of fightand bernes

Had semblyd hym a sowme vnsene · & þus says þe text,

Two hundreth thousand in thede · aH of thro knyghtez.

Rydez furth in aray · remewys hys tentes, 2538

[Fol. 28 b.]

And thoght to loge þar & rest' · & ease hym þat  
nyght. 2538\*

VntilH a water he wendes · as þe writt shewys,

þat with þe marche-meñ · of Mociañ es baldyn ; 2540

Clerar þen cristall · & cold as a chyH ;

And þarin couett þe kyng · hys Cors to be bathyd.

With þat þai wan of hys wedez · & wessh hym all ouer,

Whar-þorow he hynt suche a harme · þat hetterly hym  
grefyd. 2544

The chele after chawfyng · enchafys so hys harmes,

þat he was fallen in a feur · or he lest wende.

<sup>1</sup> Sic ; read houen.

þan mourned all þe Messedons · as meruaiht ware ellis.  
 þai saȝe him so to be seke · said ilkane to othire : 2548  
 “Be þis disese to *ser* Darie · & his dukis knaweñ,  
 He saht vs sett oñ a-saute · & surely en[c]ounbre.”  
 If þai were sary & so · na selly me thingke,  
 For ay þe hele of þe hede · helpis all þe menbris. 2552  
 þan callis to him þe conquirour · a clerke of his awenñ,  
 Ane Philip, his fesisiane · his fare to behald; ;  
 Of al manere of medcyne · man þat maste couthe,  
 A ȝonge berdles barne · as þe buke tellis, 2556  
 Said : “lat liztly my lord · for in a litiht stonde  
 My-self with a serop · saht saue ȝow be-lyue.”  
 þan permeoñ þe proude · a prince of his ost,  
 þat held þe erth of Ermonye · & enmyte hadð 2560  
 Vn-to þis clerke of þe kyngis · & be no cause els  
 Bot for þe lede was loued · & with þe lord chereschest ;  
 þan ames he to *ser* Alexander · on ane slike a pistiht :  
 “Kepis ȝow,” *quod* he, “conquirour · & caches noȝt his  
 drenke ; 2564  
 For *Darius* eftir his deth · his doȝter has him hiȝt,  
 And ȝow to sla be soñ sleȝt · to sese him his landis.”  
 ȝit was þe berne noȝt a bene · haist of his wordis,  
 He asurid him so sadly · þe serep he takis, 2568  
 þe licor in his awen looue · þe lettir in þe tothire,  
 And in-to Phili[pi]s face · fast<sup>1</sup> he behaldis.  
 He bad him dred neuire a dele · & it drink swyht, 2571  
 And þan þe pistill of þe prince · he put him in hand.  
 þe leche lokid ouire þe lynes · “my lording!” he saidð,  
 “I am noȝt gilty of þis gile · be aht þe grete gods !”  
 As fast was he fysche-hale · & Philip he callis,  
 Halsis him fuht hertly · & of his hiele thankis, 2576  
 Said, “wele knew þou my kynd · lufe þi concience,  
 First suposid I of þi serop · syne sesid þe þe lettir.  
 “Mi louely lordð, be ȝour leue · lattes him a-pere,  
 þe tulk at sike a trayne · has touchid to my-selfe.” 2580

<sup>1</sup> MS. face face fast.

þen murnyd all þe massydon's · as murvell wer ellez.  
 When þai hym sawe so be seke · sayd ichone to oper :  
 " Be þis disease to sir Dary · & to hys dukez knawyn,  
 He sall vs sett on a-saute · & surely vs Comb're."  
 Yff þai wer sory & so · no selly me thynke, 2551  
 For ay þe heylh of þe hede · helpis aȝ þe membrys.  
 þen callys to hym þe Conquerour · a clerke of hys Awne,  
 On philipp, hys fysycyañ · hys fare to byholde ;  
 Off all maner of medycine · mañ þat most kowth,  
 A ȝong berdles<sup>1</sup> bern · as þe buke tellys, 2556  
 Sayd : " letes lyghtly my lord · for in a lytyȝ stounde  
 My-self with a Syrope · shall safe you bylyfe."  
 þen was þar permeoñ þe prouud · a prince of his hoste,  
 þat held þe erth of Ermony · & enmyte hed 2560  
 Vnto þis Clerke of þe kengez · & be no cause ellez  
 Bot for þe lede was lofed · & with þe lord cheryst ;  
 þen says he to sir A[lexander] · anone suche a pystyll :  
 " Kepys you," quod he, " Conquerour · & kachez nott hys  
 drynkez ; 2564  
 For Darius after hys detli · hys doghter hase hym hyght,  
 And you to sla by som slyght · to seyse hym hys landez."  
 Yitt was þe bern not a beyne · bassyd of hys wordez,  
 He assuryd hym so sadly · þe syroppe he fangez, 2568  
 þe licour in hys Awne lofe · þe letter in þe toþer,  
 And into philipp face · fast he byholdes. [Fol. 29.]  
 He bad hym drede neuer a dele · bot drynke it Swyth,  
 And þen þe pistyȝ of þe prince · he put hym in hand.  
 The leche lukyd ouer þe lynes · " my lordyng," he sayd,  
 " I ne am noght gylty of þis · by all þe godes owte !"  
 Als fast was he fyssh-hole · & philip he clepys,  
 Halsys hym fuȝ hertly · & of hys heylle thankez, 2576  
 Sayd, " wele knew þou my kynde · þi conscience I lofe,  
 First suppyd of þi syroppe · syne sesyd þe my letter.  
 " My lofely Lord, be ȝour leffe · lettes hym apere, 2579  
 The tulke þat suche a trayne · has attachyd to my-selueñ."

<sup>1</sup> The d is above the line.

who suggests  
that Permeon  
should be sent for  
and beheaded.

þan eftir ser Permes his prince · pres'ly he sendis,  
And þare þe trechoure was tane · & for his trayne  
hedid.

Alexander wins  
Media and  
Armenia,

þaṇ mouys he furth with his meñ · & Medy he wynnys  
Enterly to his empire · & Ermonyþe þe mare. 2584  
Till a dissert þan he drafte · was dry & na watere,  
þurþe Adriac till Eufraten · & ames þare his tentis,

and makes a  
bridge over  
the Euphrates.

And mas a brig<sup>t</sup> ouire þe bourne · of Barges<sup>1</sup> with  
cheynes;  
Comandis his kniȝtis ouire to caire · & þar þai vncachid<sup>2</sup>  
hertis. 2588

His men fear to  
cross.

þai saȝe þe streme so stife · it stonaid þam aȝ,  
For ferd þe festing<sup>t</sup> suld faile · & þai in þe flode droune.  
He sends over  
lads and grooms,  
þan mas he laddis ouire to lend<sup>t</sup> · & lokars of bestis, 2591  
And monestis þam ilk modire-soñ · him maynly to teȝ.

and then crosses  
himself.

ȝit was his baratours a-baist · & þen þe berne writhis,  
Fandis him first on be-fore · & all folozes eftir.  
þan passid þare out of Paradese · twa proude Flummes,  
þurþe Medy & Messopotane · þai move, as I fynd, 2596

The rivers Tigris  
and Euphrates.

And so to<sup>3</sup> Babiloñ þai bowe · ane is þe bourne of Tygre,  
þe tothire is Eufrates full euen · & rynnys so to Sylus.

[Fol. 45.]  
He cuts the  
cables in two.

þan cutis<sup>4</sup> þe kyng in to þe cablis · & to his kniȝtis sais:  
“Lo! þof vs faȝ now to flee · we may na ferryre  
wend<sup>t</sup>; 2600

He says, “We  
cannot now flee.

þare I rede,” quod þe kyng · “oure bakis neuir to-  
turne,  
And if we did, with-uten dome · to die aȝ at anes;  
For he þat folowid has ai þe floure · & he at fled<sup>t</sup>  
neuire.

We will never  
return till we  
conquer.”

Bees liȝt & laches ȝow a lose · it is a lord gamen. 2604  
For I make a-vow at Messedone · we saȝ na mare see,  
Tiȝ aȝ þe barbres vs bow · þaṇ may we blith turne.”

<sup>1</sup> MS. Bargas. <sup>2</sup> MS. cachid, *with vn above.*

<sup>3</sup> In the margin.

<sup>4</sup> MS. tutis.



þen after for permeoñ hys prince · prestely he sendes,  
And þar þe trechour was tane · & for hys trayne hated.

þen mevys he forth *with* hys men · & medy he wynnez  
Enterly to hys empyre · & Ermonye þe more. 2584  
To a deserte þen he drof · was dry & no waterez,  
Throgh andriake to eufrateñ · & settes þar hys tentes,<sup>1</sup>  
And askez a brigg ouer þe burne · of bargez *with*  
chynez;  
Commandes hys knyghtez ouer to carye · þai hed kokell  
hertes, 2588

Seghen þe streme be so styff · þai stoned þe helder,  
For lest þe festynyng had faylyd · & þaim þe flude drenchyd.  
þen makys laddes ouer to lend · & lokers of bestes, 2591  
And monyshyd þen iche moderson · þaim manly to sewe.  
3itt wer hys baratours abaist · & þen þe berñ wrothed,  
Foundez first on before · & all folows after.  
þar passys owt of paradyse · twa brade flomes,  
Throgh medy & mesopothany · þai mouen, as I fynd, 2596  
And so to babyloyne þai bowe · þat is þe burne of tigre,  
þat oper is eufrates full eueñ · rynnez so to Nilus. [says:  
þen Cuttes þe kyng in two hys cablys · & to hys knyghtes  
“Lo! þof vs fallys now to flee · we may no ferre wend;

þarfore I breke,” quod þe berne · “our bakkez neuer to  
torne, 2601  
And if we did, *withowtyn* dome · to dye all at ones;  
For he þat folows hase þe floure · & he flees neuer.

[Fol. 29 b.]

Be light & lachys þou lose · it is a lordez gamme. 2604  
For I make a-wowe þat massydoyn · shall see vs no more,  
Tyll all þe barbrems vs bowe · þen<sup>2</sup> may we blyth bee.”

<sup>1</sup> Here follows—And þe knyghtez of þe coste as þai þe case  
seghen; but this is l. 2641, out of place.

<sup>2</sup> Above the line in MS.

## Undecimus passus Alexandri.

Darius collects  
an army.

Now has *ser* Darie þe derfe · of dukis & princes  
Heued vp a hoge ost · & fyue hundreth kniȝtis  
Ere chosen to chiftans · & chargid þaim to lede ; 2609  
Trottis him oñ to Tigre<sup>1</sup> · & þare his tentis settis ;  
þañ mett þai on þe opire morne · with a mekiȝ nombre,

Alexander meets  
him.

Sire Alexander þe hathiȝ · armed oñ blonkis. 2612  
þe multitude ware to me · meruaile to rekeñ,  
þat sammed was oñ aiȝir side · many sadd thousand.  
Now ere þe baners out-bred · & þe bate neȝis,

Trumpets are  
blown.

Blew bemys of bras · buskis to-gedire, 2616  
þe crie of þe clarions · þe cloudis it persyd ;  
For þe dewt<sup>2</sup> of þe dyn · daunced stedis.  
Bathe þe twa batails · bremely assemblis, 2619  
And aithire segg with his sowme · soȝt vn-to<sup>3</sup> othire.

Knights charge.

Kniȝtis oñ cursours · kest þan in fewtire,  
Taches in-to targetis · tamed þaire breȝys.

There is hard  
fighting.

þare was stomling of stedis · sticking<sup>4</sup> of erles,  
Sharpe schudering of schote · schering of mailles, 2624  
So stalworthly with in a stond · sterid þaim þe grekis,  
þat of þe barb[r]yne blod · aȝ þe filȝ flowis.

[Fol. 45 b.]

Darius is grieved  
to see his men  
beaten.

Sone as *ser* Darie þe deth · of his douth sees,  
þe pite of þe Persens · him prickis in his saule, 2628  
Sees his meneȝe so mynesch · & his men fangid,  
A few þat frescli ware vndefoulid · & to þe flizt  
tournes.

One Persian  
warrior is told he  
may marry  
Darius' daughter  
if he slays  
Alexander.

ȝit was ane of his ost · ane odd mañ of strentȝ,  
A burly berne & a bald · as þe buke tellis, 2632  
A segg at he ensurid haȝ · to sese him his doȝtir,  
If he miȝt sla with any sleȝt · þe seniour of grece.  
He cled him aȝ in clene stele · a conyschaunce ouire,  
þat made was & merkid · oñ þe messedone armes, 2636  
Aires him to *ser* Alexander · in aȝ-þir-mast puple,

<sup>1</sup> MS. Tirgre, corrected to Tigre.    <sup>2</sup> Read dowl.

<sup>3</sup> vn in the margin.

## [Andecimus Passus.]

**Nowe hafys sir Dary** þe derf · of dukez & princez  
 Hefyd vp a hoge hoste · of fyfe C knyghtez 2608  
 Er chosyn for chyftaneð · & chargett þaim to lede ;  
 Trottes on to tygre · & þar hys tentes settes ;  
 þen mette þai on þe toþer morne · with a multe nombre,  
 Sir *Alexander* & hys atheft men · armed on þar blonkez.  
 The multitude to me · wer merveft to Rekeñ, 2613  
 þe[r] sammed was on þat oþer syde · mony sad hundreth.  
 Nowe er þes baners oute brade · & þe bates neghez,  
 Blew bemes of brase · & buskyn to-gedre, 2616  
 þe cry of þe Clarions · the clodez it persyd ;  
 And for doute of þe dynne · dauncen stedes.  
 Both þe two batels · bremly assemble,  
 And seggez with hys soumez · soght vnto oþer. 2620  
 Knytes on þair coursours · kestyn in fewtre,  
 Tachyng into targettes · tamyd þair brynnes.  
 þar was stomblyng of stedes · stykkyng of Erles,  
 Sharpe shoderyng of shote · sheryng of malys, 2624  
 So stalwartly in a stounde · steryñ þaim þe grekez,  
 þat of þe Barbren blode · all þe bent flowez.  
 Sone as *sir Dary* þe deth · of hys doghty hedys,  
 The pite of þe persyens · hym prikkez in hys sawle, 2628  
 Seys hys meynze so amenyst · & hys men fonged,  
 A flew þat fresh wer vndefowled · to þe flyght turnes.

3yt was on wer of hys oste · an odde man of Strenth,  
 A borely berne & a bald · als þe buke tellys, 2632  
 A segge þat he sured hed · to seyse hym hys doghter,  
 Yf he myght slae with ony sleght · þe seneour of grece.  
 He clad hym all in clene stele · a Conyscaunce ouer,  
 þat mad was & markyd · on massidons armes, 2636  
 Kayres hym to *sir A[lexander]* · in all þe most prese,<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *Catchword*—as he.

He comes  
behind the king,

and wounds him  
in the head.

Alexander asks  
why he hit him;

the Persian being  
dressed as a  
Macedonian.

"I am no  
Macedonian.

I did this to  
gain Darius'  
daughter."

[Fol. 46.]

"What shall be  
done to him?"  
says the king.

"Let him be  
hung or burnt,"  
answer his  
counsellors.

"Nay, he only  
did as he was  
told to do,"  
replies the king.

As he a hathiH ware of his • behind him he stelis,  
A briȝt brynnand brand • he braidis out of shethe,  
And þurȝe-out þe helme in-to þe hede • he hurt him a  
littiH. 2640

And þe kniȝtis of oure cost • as þai þe cas saȝe,  
þan fange þai þis ilk freke • & be-fore þe kyng bryngis.  
"Quat now? my worthi werreours?" • þe wale kyng  
said,

He wend wele at he ware • a wee of his aweñ, 2644  
"Qui has þou brest so my brayñ • & with a brand  
wondid

ȝour sekire seruant in same • aH were I sire callid,  
aH ware I halden as for hede • ȝour helpere at nede?"  
"Nay, hope ȝe neuire," quod þe hathiH • "ser hiȝe  
emperoure, 2648

Me any Messedone to be • þou ames of þine aweñ,  
Bot of cruell kind • comen of barbres.

And þis I did for ser Darius • his doȝtir me hiȝt, 2651  
And cordid oñ þis condiciõ • to couple hire to wyfe,  
And he went out of þe werd • to wilð all his regne,  
To hew þi hede fra þi hals • & anys it him shewe."  
þaH callis oure kyng him his kniȝtis<sup>1</sup> • þaire consaile to  
frayñ,

"Quat saH be done him for þis dede?" • & þai bedene  
sware, 2656

Sum, at he hangid suld be hiȝe • sum þe hede priued,  
Sum bedis in a bale-fire • brin him to poudire.

"Quat has he fauted?" quod þe frek • "þof he him  
forced haue

þe charges<sup>2</sup> of his chiftan • chefely to fiH? 2660  
He þat him demes to þe dede • he dampnes him-selfe,  
And diȝtis him his awen dome • & þat dare I proue.  
For demed I any of my douth • ser darye to spiH, 2663  
As ȝe þis gentiH man enioyne • suld him be iug'd þeñ."

<sup>1</sup> The first i above the line.

<sup>2</sup> MS. changs, with stroke above ȝs.

[Fol. 30.]

As he an atheH war of hys · b[e]hynd hym he stelez,  
 A bryght brynnand brand · he brade owt of sheth,  
 And þorow þe helme into þe heued · he hurt hym a  
 lytyH. 2640

And þe knyghtes of þe coste · as þai þe case sawgh,  
 þen fange þai þis ilke freke · & byfore þe kyng brynggez.  
 “What now? my worthi werayour” · þe wale kyng  
 sayd,

He wend þat witterly it were · a wee of hys awne, 2644

“Why hase þou bryssyd so my brane · & with a swerd  
 woundet

Your sekir seruand in same · aH wer I sir clepyd,  
 AH wer I haldyn for hede · 3our helpar at nede?”

“Nay, hope neuer<sup>1</sup>,” quod þe atheH · “sir hegh Emperoure,

Me ony massydoñ to be · þou myssys of þi Awne, 2649  
 Bot of þe crueH kynde · Comen of þe barbrys.

And þus I dyd, for sir Darius · hys doghter hyght me,  
 And cordytt vnder þis condicion · to coupill hir to wyfe,  
 And qwen he went of þis warld · to weld all hys realme,  
 To hewe þi hede from þi halse · & onys it hym shewe.”

**Now kyng Alexander** callys þen hys knyghtes · þair counsell  
 to frayne,

“What suld be done hym for þis dede” · & þai bydome<sup>2</sup>  
 sone, 2656

Some, þat he hanged suld be · & some þe hede pershed,<sup>3</sup>  
 Some bydes in a bale-fyre · hym bryn aH to poudre.

“What hase he fautyd?” quod þe freke · “þof he hym  
 forsyd hafe

The charge of hys chiftane · chefely to fylle? 2660

He þat hym demys to be dede · he dampnes hym-selueñ,  
 And dytes hys awne dome · & þat dar I prefe.

For demyd I ony of my doghty · sir dary to spyH, 2663

As he is<sup>4</sup> genteH-man enjoyne · suld hym-self be iugged þeñ.”

<sup>1</sup> MS. nereuer.<sup>2</sup> Read beden.<sup>3</sup> MS. prishyd.<sup>4</sup> Read 3e this.

He dismisses the  
Persian in peace.

He *latiþ þe Persyn* in *pesse · pas* with his *hele*,  
Mekith for his *mayn strenth · & for his miȝt praysed*.

Darius assembles  
his men,

As sone as *Darye þe derfe · of þis dede heris*, 2667  
*þat he was<sup>1</sup> sauȝd vnslayne · he semblis his knyȝtis*,  
*Vp to a miȝti montayne · his men þaire he schewis*,  
*And gessis him wele þare to deȝrayd · þe grekis maistir*.

but takes to  
flight.

*þaȝ fandis he furth in-to þe filȝ · & fled als belieue*,  
*And Alexander with his ost · him asperly folowed* 2672  
*Riȝt to þe bu[r]ȝe of Batran · & bildid þare his tentis*,  
*Mas him glad<sup>2</sup> with his ginge · & to his godis offris*.

Alexander takes  
Batran,  
and finds Darius'  
treasure, and his  
wife and  
children.

*þe cite þan he assailid · & sesid oȝ þe morne*, 2675  
*With all þe burȝes þare a-boute · & busked þare his sete*.

*þare fand he tresour vntald · & als þe trew spouse*  
*Of ser Dary, bath his dame · & aȝ his dere childire*.

*Now dose him fra Darius · a dereworth prince*,  
*Aires to ser Alexander · adoures him lawe*, 2680

A Persian prince  
says he has  
served Darius for  
naught,  
[Fol. 46 b.]

*"I haue erdid with ȝoure enmy · ser emperoure," he said*,  
*"As soiet serued haue I þat sire · many sere wyntir ;*  
*And all my trauaill I tint · for tuke I no gudes*.

*Bot wald it now ȝour worthines · to wend with*  
*my-selfe*, 2684

and offers to  
deliver up  
Darius.

*A ten Milȝ vs take · of tulkis enarmed*,  
*I sall ȝow hete in ȝoure hand · to haue at ȝoure wiȝ*  
*Sire Dary, with þe mast dole · of his derfe erles."*

Alexander  
refuses.

*"Nay, leue, lat ane," quod þe lord · "þen leue I<sup>3</sup> no*  
*straungers*, 2688

*þat þou be willi in þi witt · to werray þine aweȝ*,  
*Ne tell þou me noȝt þat tale · I trow noȝt þi wordis."*

*Be þis ser Dary fro his dukis · deusyd his pistiȝ :*  
*þe kyng of kyngs was callid · & clere god bathe*, 2692

A letter.  
"Darius' satraps  
to their lord

*þus, vndirstand I, was þe stile · & stiȝt in þare-estir :<sup>4</sup>*  
*"ȝour satrapaires, ȝour seruant · with seruand obeschen ;*

<sup>1</sup> *In the margin.*

<sup>2</sup> MS. *ginge glad, with ginge struck through.*

<sup>3</sup> MS. *leuē þ* ; *with þ*<sup>4</sup> altered to *I*. <sup>4</sup> *or estir.*

He lattes þe perseñ in pes · pas with hys heyle,  
 Mekyll for hys mayne<sup>1</sup> strenth · & for hys myght doys  
 prayss.

Als sone as *sir* Dary þe derfe · of þis dede herys, 2667  
 þat he was saffed so vnslayne · he sembles hys kneghtez,  
 Vp tyll a maghty<sup>2</sup> mountane · hys men þar he schewez,  
 And gessys hym ȝitt degrad · þe grekyn maister. 2670

þen foundez he forth in-to þe feld · & fled als belyfe,  
 And A[lexander] with hys hoste · hym asperly folows  
 Right to þe burgh of batran · & byggyd þar hys tentes, [Fol. 30 b.]  
 And makez hym glad with hys geng · & to hys goddez offers.

þe **Cyte þan** he assaylyd · & sesyd it vppon þe morne,  
 With all þe burghes þar aboute · & buskett þar hys sete.<sup>3</sup>  
 þar fand tresour<sup>4</sup> vntalde · & þe trew spouse 2677

O[f] *sir* Dary, both hys dame · & hys dere chelder.  
 Now doys hym on from Darius · a darworth prince,  
 Kayres hym to alexander · & adours hym lowe, 2680

“I haue erdyd with your enmite · *sir* emperour,” he sayd,  
 “As sugett seruyd þat syre · mony sere wynter ;  
 And all my travell I tynt · for tuke I no gudez.

Bot wald now your worthynes · to wende with my-  
 selueñ, 2684

And teñ thouusand vs take · of tulkez ennarmed,  
 I shall you hete hym in your hand · to haue at your wille  
 Sir Dary, witt þe most dele · of hys derfe Erles.”

“Na, leyfe, lett be,” quod þe lord · “þar leuyn þe no lede,

þat þou be willy in þi witte · to werre þine awne, 2689  
 Na tell þou me not þat tale · I trowe noght þi wordez.”

**By þis *sir* Dary** fro hys dukez · devyse[d] hath a pistyH :  
 The kyng of kynges he hym cald · & clere god both, 2692  
 þus, vnderstandyng I, was þe style · & styght in þar-after :  
 “Ȝour satrapers, your soueraynte · with seruise obeysshying ;

<sup>1</sup> MS. maynte.<sup>2</sup> So in MS.<sup>3</sup> MS. fete.<sup>4</sup> MS. tresour.

Sire, we haue wayued to 3ow writtis · 3it write we þe same,

Alexander has  
defeated us.

How þis maistir of Messedone · has on oure marchis  
entrid, 2696

Brynd vp oure biggingis · bretted oure kniȝtis,  
And we ouire-sett be to sare · to suffire any langire.

Help us."

For-þi 3our dignite bydene · we drerily be-seke,  
A-gayns þe force of oure faa · vs forthire a quile." 2700  
Queñ he had red aȝ þe rawis · for rancour he swellis,  
And out oñ-ane to Alexander · aȝ þus he writis.

A letter.  
"Darius to  
Alexander.

"I, Dary, with þe dignite · þe diademe of Persee,  
Of aȝ þe kyngis þe kyng · þat corouned was euire, 2704  
To þe, my seruand, I say · as me was sent late,

Thou likenest  
thy lowness to  
my height.

How þi lawnes & þi litillaike · þou lickyns to my hight.  
Bot parde, þi prouidence · impossible it semes,

A heuy As to be houyn · vp to þe sternes, 2708

Thou lackest  
wings.

A thing threuyñ is & thiike · & þarnes þe wyngis,  
And fautis þe fethirhames · & þe fliȝt-loomes.

Boast not.

For-þi þi mynd neuir þe mare · lat mounte in-to pride  
For chance of na cheualry · þat þou a-cheued hase. 2712

[Fol. 47.]

For vertu ne no victori · ne vant noght þi-selfe ;  
He þat enhansis<sup>1</sup> him to heȝe · þe heldire he declynes.

I have heard of  
thy kindness to  
my kin.

I haue herd of þi hendlaike · of heraudis & of othire,  
Of þi noblay now o newe time · a-ntes my modire.

Bathe to my wyfe & to my barnes · quat bounte þou  
shewis, 2717

This will not  
make me thy  
friend.

Quat curtassy & kyndlaike · I ken alto-gedire.  
Bot surely aȝ þe sesoñ · þat þou þam so pleses,  
þou fangis me neuire to þi frynd · fyne quen þe likis.  
And if þou wirke þaim all þe wa · & wrak at þou may,  
þe mare vnfryndschip þarfore · fall sall þe neuire ;

Work them harm,  
if thou wilt."

For-þi to put þam to pyne · I pray þe noȝt wande, 2723  
For myñ angire on þine arrogance · saȝ at þe last kindiȝt."

• • • • •

<sup>1</sup> MS. ens enhansis ; *with ens expuncted.*



Sir, we haue send to you writtes · ȝitt writte we þe  
same,

How þis maister oute of massidoyn · our marches hath  
enteryd, 2696

Brynt vp our biggenges · bryttynd our kneghtez,  
And we ouerset be so sore · to suffre ony lenger.  
For whi your dignite bedene · we derely besekyn,  
Ayayne þe force of our foes · vs furthers a while." 2700

When he had rekkend all þe rawes · for rankour he swellez,  
And oute anone to A[lexander] · aȝ þus he writtez : *Epistola.*

"**I, Dary, with þe dignite** · þe dyademe of pers,  
Of aȝ kyngez kyng · þat Crouned was euer, 2704

To þe, my seruand, I say · als me was sent late,  
How þou<sup>1</sup> lownys in þi lityllake · þou likens to my hert.

Bot parde, þi prouydens<sup>2</sup> · impossible it semys,  
A hevy asse to heff · on hye to þe sternes, 2708 [Fol. 31.]

A thyng þat thryffyn is and thyke · & þarnes<sup>3</sup> wengez,  
And fawtes bath þe fethirhames · & þe flyght-lomes.

For-þi mynd neuer þe more · to mounte þe to pryde  
For chaunce of no chevallry · þat þou chefyd hase. 2712

For vertew ne victory · avaunte noght þi-selfe ;  
He þat enhaunses hym to hygh · þe lawer he declines.

I haue herd ȝit of þi hynlake · at harhaldes & at oȝer,  
O[f] þi noblay nowe anew · anence my awyn modre. 2716

Both to my bird & my barnes · qwat bounte þou schewys,

What curtasy & hyndlake · I ken aȝ-to-geder.

Bot surly all þe seson · þou þaim so ples,  
þou fonnges me neuer to þi frend · fyne if þou likez. 2720

· · · · ·  
þe more frendship þarfore · fall shall þe neuer ;

For-þi put þaim to pyne · I pray þe nogh[t] wonnd, 2723

For my angre on þi arrogaunce · sall at þe last kyndyȝ ;  
þarfor do þou þi best · god forbyd þou<sup>4</sup> spare." 2724\*

<sup>1</sup> Read þi.      <sup>2</sup> MS. peruydens.      <sup>3</sup> MS. ȝarnes.

<sup>4</sup> MS. þan, altered to þou.

A letter.  
"Alexander to  
Darius.

Quen he<sup>1</sup> hað lokid ouir þe lines · he lazes at his wordis,  
And ditis agayn to ser Dary · þis dete þat foloyes :

¶ "I, Alexander, þe eldest · & all myne ane  
Of kyng Ph[ilip] & his fere · þat frely lady, 2728  
Honourd Olimpades · þat anely me fosterd,  
To þe kyng of Persy · þis prolouge I write :

The gods hate  
vanity.

Sire, vanite & vayne-glori · & vices of pride  
þa ere þe gaudis, as I gesse · þat all gods hatis, 2732  
And ilka dedly douth · þai driffe þam to punesch,  
þat has driȝten of vndedlynnes · draȝen þaim to name.

I apply this to  
thee,

þis similitude to þi-selfe · I say all-to-gedire,  
þat a-suris so in þi surquetry · & sesis neuire-mare 2736

who so boastest.

To bost ne to blasfeme · blyn will þou nouthire.

Thou upbraidest  
me for shewing  
kindness.

Bot for þi gold & þi gudis · a god þou þe makis,  
þou vp-braydis me for þe beute · þat I þi blod schewid,  
As to þi modire I mene · & to þi mery childir, 2740  
þare mas þou þe to malicole · & meenes for litiȝ.

[Fol. 47 b.]  
I did it not to  
please thee, but of  
my own bounty.

I wroȝt it noþire for þi will · ne for þi<sup>1</sup> wale threte.

If I kid þam curtassy · it come fra my-selfe,  
Haly of oure aweñ hert · & of oure hynd thewis ; 2744  
Ne we prid vs for na prouwis · predestayned we ere,  
Oure gods gayñ vs þare-to · þat gretly þou spises.

Let this letter be  
the last."

Latt now þis lettre be þe last · & loke to þi-selfe, 2747

For sekire & oñ my surement · I seke<sup>2</sup> ȝow agayñs."  
þis brefe he bedis þam to here · þat broȝt him þe toþire,  
And takis þam of his tresoure · & twynnes with þaim  
faire. 2750

Alexander writes  
to his princes.

Quen þai to Persy ware past · a pistill he enfourmes,  
Wrote a writt of his wiȝ · so sendis to his princes,  
His seruandis & his senceschall · out of sere rewmes,  
And þus comandis he þam elene · þe kyng his stile.

The letter.

¶ "I, Alexander, þat as aire · avauuced is in grece,

"Alexander

þe soñ of Ph[ilip] þe fers · as I first tald, 2756  
And als of Olimpades · myne honorable modire,

<sup>1</sup> Above the line.

<sup>2</sup> MS. se slk, blotted, and altered to seke in the margin.

When he lukyd ouer þe lynes · he smyllys at hys wordes,  
And dytes ayayn to sir Dary · þe deteys þat folows :

“I, A[lexander], þe eldest · & aȝ my one Epistola.

Of kyng philip̃ & hys fere · þat frelich lady, 2728

Honord Olymphades · þat only me fosterd,

To þe kyng owte of persye · þis proloug I writte :

Sir, vanyte & vaneglory · & vieys of pride

þes er þe gawdes, I ges · þat þees goddes hatez, 2732

And iehe dedly do · þai dreffe þaim to ponysh,

þat hase dryghten of vndedlynys · drawyn þaim onone.

þis similitude of þi-self · I say aȝ-to-geder,

þat assurys so þi surquidry · & seses neuer more 2736

To bost & to blasfeme<sup>1</sup> · blyn wyll þou nowþer.

Bot for þi gold & þi gudez · a god þou þe makys,

þou vpbardez<sup>2</sup> me for þe bewte · þat I þi blude schewyd,

As to þi moder I mene · & to þi mery childer, 2740

þou makys þe to malycole · & menyys þe for lityȝ. [Fol. 81 b.]

I wroght it nowder for þi wille · ne for þi wale thoght.

Yff I kyd þaim ony curtasy · it Come of my-selueȝ,

Holy of owr awne hert<sup>1</sup> · & of our hend thewys ; 2744

Na we pride vs for no prowez · predestinate vs here,

Our goddes gyffyn vs þar-to · þat grettly þou dispysys.

Latt nowe þis letter be last<sup>1</sup> · & luke to þi-selueȝ,

For sekerly withoute surement<sup>1</sup> · I seche þe agayns.” 2748

þis brefe he biddes þaim bere · þat broght hym þe toþer,

Takys þam of hys tresour · & twynnys with þaim faire.

When þai to persye was past<sup>1</sup> · a pistyll he enformes,

Wrote a writte of hys wille · & wafed to hys Princez,

Hys seruandes & hys senescals · oute of sere landes, 2753

And þus Comandes he þaim clene · þe kyng in hys style.

“I, A[lexander], þat as heyr · avaunsyd am in grece,

þe son of philipp þe fers · as I first told, 2756

And also of Olympades · my honorable lady,

<sup>1</sup> *Read* blasfeme.

<sup>2</sup> *Read* vpl̃radez.

to his princes, þus send I to my satraparis · my princes & my dukes,  
 peers, My pers out of<sup>1</sup> siphagoyne · salutis & grace,  
 earls, Of þe sele of Surry · my seggis & myñ erles, 2760  
 knights, and lords. My kniȝtis out of Capados · & all my kid lordis,  
 þe ledis out of Landace · & all þe landis out-by.  
 I comand<sup>2</sup> ȝow oñ þe clere faithe · þat ȝe my croune aȝe,  
 þat belyue to Alysaundire · þat is myñ awen cite, 2764  
 Send skins of beasts to Alexandria, þat ilkane of ȝow send be *your*-selfe · of sere slayñ bestis,  
 Of fresch & of fyne wroȝt · fellis a thousand,  
 Sum grayne to be neȝire gloues · graythid to my kniȝtis,  
 and send the furs on to the Euphrates on camels.<sup>3</sup> Sum pureȝ pelloure depurid · to put in oure wedis, 2768  
 Lat kest þam apoñ camels · þat in þat kith lengis,  
 And aires *with þaim* to Eufraten · þis erand haues in mynd.”  
 [Fol. 48.] þan was a mañ, as me mynes · in þe morne-qwile,  
 Was of *ser* Daris a duke · þe derfe Emperoure, 2772  
 Nostanda, a duke of Darius, writes. Ane þat Nostanda was named · & a noble prince,  
 þat certified his souerane · þir saȝes in a pistiȝ:  
 ¶ “Sire Dari, duke of ilk a douth · & driȝten þi-selfe,  
 þe grete ȝlorius god · graythid in þi<sup>2</sup> trone, 2776  
 “Nostanda to his lord. Nostanday, to ȝour nobilnes · þat ay my nek bowis,  
 With seruage to ȝour senurie · my-selfe I comand.  
 It semed noȝt ȝoure seruand · sire, vndistreynd  
 Vn-to ȝour mekill maieste · þis mater to write, 2780  
 It grieues me to write. Bot I am depely distressid · þis dede for to wirke,  
 And made þis myscheffe to myñ · malegrefe my chekis.  
 For wete it wele ȝour worthines · þat of our wale<sup>3</sup> princes  
 Two of our chief princes have perished in battle. Twa of þe tethiest ere tint · & termynȝ of lyue, 2784  
 þat lost was now þe last day · a litiȝ fra Tygre,  
 In batail apoñ bent filiȝ · in-bland *with* þe grekis.  
 þare was I gird to þe gronȝ · & greuously woundidȝ,  
 I scarce escaped. Vnnethe it cheuyd me þat chance<sup>4</sup> · to chape to þe flȝt<sup>5</sup>;  
 And oȝire many of oure meñ · miȝtfuȝ kniȝtis, 2789

<sup>1</sup> MS. oft.<sup>2</sup> ‘þi’ *blotted* in MS.<sup>3</sup> faes *crossed through*.<sup>4</sup> MS. can chance; can *struck out*.<sup>5</sup> MS. flȝt.

þus send I to my satrapars · salutez of grace,  
 My peres oute of prynphagoyne · my princez & my dukez,  
 Of þe seneour of surry · my seggez & my erlez, 2760  
 My knytes oute of Capadoce · & all my kyd Lordez,  
 The ledes oute of Landace · & all þe Landes vmbe.  
 I command you on þe Clere fayth · þat 3e my crowne awe,  
 þat als belyfe to alexaunder · vnto my awne Cyte, 2764  
 Ilk one send be þaim-self · of sere slayn bestes,  
 Off fresh & of fyne slayn · fellys a thouusand,  
 Some grayne to be grathyd · to my bernez byhofe,  
 Some puryd pelour & depuryd · to put in our wedes, 2768  
 And cast þaim vppon camels · þat in þat kyth lenges,  
 And karys with þaim to eufraten · þis erand haue in  
 mynd.”

þe[n] was a man, as me of menys · in þe morne-while,  
 Was of sir Daryus a duke · þe derf emperoure, 2772  
 One þat Nostandy was namyd · a noble Prince, [Fol. 32.]  
 þat certyfyed hys souerente · þees sawez in a pistill :

“**Syre**<sup>1</sup> Dary, duke of iche douth<sup>2</sup> · drightyn þi-selueñ, *Epistola.*  
 The grete glorius god · grathyd in þi trone, 2776  
 Nostandy, to your nobelnes · & ay my neke bowe,  
 With seruage to your senyoury · my-seluen I Comaund.  
 It semyd not your seruand · [syre], vndistreynd  
 Vnto your mekyll mageste · þees materys to writte, 2780  
 Bot I am depely distryssyd · þis dede for to wirke,  
 And made þis mischeff to mene · mawgre<sup>3</sup> my chekez.  
 For wete it wele 3our worthynes · þat of our wale princez  
 Two of þe tithest er tynt · & termyd of lyfe, 2784  
 þat lost wer nowe þe last day · a lityll fro tygre,  
 In batell on bent feld · in-bland with þe grekez.  
 þar was I girde to þe ground · & greuously woundit,  
 Vnneth me chefyd in þat chaunce · to chape to þe flyght ;  
 And oper mony of owr men · mightfuH knyghtes, 2789

<sup>1</sup> The e is above the line in MS.

<sup>2</sup> MS. Syre duke of a Dary iche douth; with a above the line.

<sup>3</sup> MS. mawgra.

And erlis of all *3our* empire<sup>1</sup> · enterly deuydið,  
*3oure* lore & *3our* legaunce · lethirly forsaken,<sup>2</sup>  
 Aires þaim to ser Alexander · & on-ane *3eldis*. 2792  
 And he þaim faire vndirfange · enfeffid þaim belyue,  
 In palais, in prouince · in principall regnes."  
 þen to Nostanda oñ next · þus notis he a lettir, 2795  
 þat he suld semple him a sowme · & set þaim agaynes.  
 Anothire pistill lete he pas · to Porrus of ynde,  
 To come & helpe *with* his here · & he<sup>3</sup> him þus swaris :  
 ¶ "I, Porrus, þat possessid am · þe partyse of yynde,  
 And am þe corou be kynd · of clene aȝ þat Iles, 2800  
 Sire Dary, *with* þi dyademe · drest oñ þi trone,  
 To þe<sup>3</sup> þat salutis I send · þe sele of myñ armes.  
 þou prayes vn-to my persoñ · my powere to sempble,  
 And *3ow* enforce *with* my folke · *3our* faes to withstand;  
 And I am bouñ at *3our* bode · & buxsoñ was euire,  
 To heze & to help *3our* hest · quen I my hele lastis.  
 Bot now a langour me lettis · þat I laȝt haue,  
 Slike a seknes for-sothe · is oñ my-selfe halden, 2808  
 þat I ne may streyne me ne stere · for stondis so hard,  
 Bot lyse in langwysches & lokis · quen my lyfe<sup>4</sup> endis.  
 And as warysche I my warke · þat I am in wondeñ,  
 As me is wa for þi woȝe · & þi wrange bathe, 2812  
 I may noȝt ryde *3ow* to reschow · my reuthe is þe mare.  
 Bot I sall leue & be lechid · for-þi be liȝt-hertid ;  
 And I be couird of my coth · care for na grekis, 2815  
 Amay þe for na Messedoynes · ne meñ vndire heuen ;  
 For I sall hele aȝ in hast · & hale to *3oure* kythis  
 With ten legions at þe last · & aȝ of lele knyȝtis."  
 Be þis Rodogars þe riche · þat renewid lady,  
 þe dere dame of Dari · of þis dede heris, 2820  
 þat hire awen child *with* Alexander · amed eft to feȝt,  
 And sorowis selcuthly sare · & sendis him a pistill ;

Alexander  
receives the men  
who forsake you."

A letter.

"Porus, king of  
India, to Darius.  
[Pol. 48 b.]

I am ready to  
serve you.

But I am now  
sick.

I am sorry for  
you.

I shall soon  
recover,

and will then  
help you."

Rodogars,  
mother of  
Darius, writes.

<sup>1</sup> MS. empire.

<sup>2</sup> MS. saken forsaken; *with* saken struck out.

<sup>3</sup> In the margin.

<sup>4</sup> MS. lefe, corrected to lyfe.

And erls of our empire · enterely distroed,  
 þat oþer your legeance · lethirly forsakyn,  
 Karyn þaim to sir A[lexander] · & onone ȝelden. 2792  
 And he þaim fair vnderfongez · & feffys þaim in Landes,  
 In palacys, in prouynce · & principall regnes.”

**Then** to Nostady on next · notez he a letter, Epistola.

þat he suld semble hym a sowme · & sett þam agayns.  
 A-noþer pistell lete he passe · to porrus of Inde, 2797  
 To Come & help *with* hys heer · & he hym þus aunswers :  
 “**I, Porrus**, þat possessyd am · þe partyes of Inde,  
 And am þe crowne by kend · clene of all þe yles, 2800  
 Sir Dary, *with* þi diademe · dressyd in þi trone,  
 To þe *with* salutes I send · þe sealle of my Armez.  
 You pray vnto my person · my power to assemble,  
 And you enforce *with* my folke · ȝour foes to withstond ;  
 I am bowne at þi bode · & buxme was euer, 2805  
 To hye & to helpe at ȝour hest · whils my hele Lastes. [Fol. 32 b.]  
 Bott nowe a langor me lettes · þat I laght haue,

. . . . . 2808

þat I may strenge me ne stirre · for stoundes þat I haue,  
 Bott lyse & lukes langt · when my lyfe endes.  
 And as euer I warysh of werk · þat I am woundit in,  
 As me es wo for þi wogh · & þi wrange both, 2812  
 I may not ryde you to rescew · þe reuth is þe more.  
 Bott I shall lefe & be lightyd · þarfore be ȝe light ;  
 And be I couered of my cothe · kare for no grekys,  
 Remefe you for no massydons · ne man vppon erth ; 2816  
 For I sall hele all in hast · & hye to your kythez  
*With* teñ legions at þe lest · & all of lele knyghtes.”  
 Be þat Rodogors þe ryche · þe reuerent Lady,  
 The dere dame of Dary · of þis dede herys, 2820  
 þat hir Awne Childe *with* A[lexander] · etlyd ȝitte to fight,  
 And sorows selkouthly sore · & sendes hym a pistyH ;

"To king Darius,  
my son, greeting.

¶ "To kyng<sup>1</sup> dary<sup>2</sup> þe derfe · þe derrest of my childre,  
Rodogoras þe riche quene" · þis rauth scho him writis :  
"Bald baratour on bent · borne of my bosom, 2825  
Here send I þe, my swete · salutis & ioy.

þou has heuyd vp þi huge ost · as I haue herd teH,  
Samed all þi saudiours · & semblið þi pupiH, 2828  
And etils to *ser Alexander* · eft to assaiH.

[Fol. 49.]

Though thou  
shouldst gather  
all men against  
Alexander, it  
were in vain.

Wete þou wele it is nozt worthe · ware þe be tyme ;  
For hað þou gedird all þe gomes · I gesse, of þe werð,  
ȝit to *with*-stand him a stonde · þi strenthe ware to littiH.  
For godis providence apert · ay prestly him helpis, 2833  
Sauys & sustenes him-selfe · & socurs him euire.

For-þi hoo *with* þi hautes · & þine vnhemed wittis,  
A-vaile of þi vanite · & of þi vayne pride, 2836  
Obey þe to þe baratour · þe best I coñ rede ;

Submit to him.

Magnifie him *with* þi mouthe · & meke þi hert,  
For any hathill vndire heuen · þat at he ne hade may,  
Mare sekire it ware him to forsake · þen sewe any  
forthire ; 2840

It will be better  
to do so."

In pese & in pacience · possede at he miȝt,  
[þan] Be excludit out of his erd · & euire-mare duch."

Darius weeps.

Quen he þis rawis had rede · he rewfully wepid,  
His eldirs & his ancestris · als he remembris ; 2844  
þoȝt how pride þaim deprived : · & here a passe ende.

### Duodecimus passus Alexandri.

Alexander goes to  
Susa.

þen aires him on *ser Alexander* · furth *with* his  
princes,

To þe cite-ward of Susys · him-selfe he aproches.  
þare-in *ser Darius* duellið · *with* his derfe ostis, 2848  
So neze he come to þa clifis · he kend ouire þe cite.

He bids his men  
cut branches

*With þat* comaunds he he[s] kniȝtis · to cutt doune  
belyue

<sup>1</sup> MS. kynd, *corrected to kyng.*

<sup>2</sup> MS. I dary.



"To kyng Dary þe derf · þe derrest of hir childer,  
 Rodogors þe riche whene" · þus rathe scho hym writtes :  
 "Bald baratour on bent · berne of my-selueñ,                   2825  
 Here send I þe, my swete · salutes of Ioy.  
 þou hase hefyd vpp þi hoge hoste · as I haue late herd,  
 Sammyd all þi sougeours · & semblyd þi peple,                   2828  
 And ettlys þe *sir Alexander* · efte to assayle.  
 Bott wete þou wele it is not worth · & were ye be tyme ;  
 For hed þou gedderyd all þe gomez · I gesse, in þe werld,  
 To *withstond* hym a stoure · þi strenth wer to lityH. 2832  
 For goddes prouydence a-pert · ay prestly hym helpys,  
 Saffys & socours hym-self · & sustayns hym euer.  
 For-þi hoo *with* þi hatness · & þi vn-hemmyd wittes,  
 Avale of þi vanyte · & of þi vayn pride,                   2836  
 Obey ye to þis baratour · þe best I can rede ;  
 Magnyfyte hym *with* þi mouth · & mekyn þi hert,  
 For ony hatell vnder heuen · for power þai haue may,                   [Fol. 33.]  
 More sekir þai wer to forsake · & sewe ony forþer ;                   2840

In pease & in pacience · possede þat he myght,  
 þen be exclud oute of hys erth · & neuer in ease dwell."  
 Sir Dary for þoo dytez · was deply diseassyd ;                   2842\*  
 When he þoo rawez had redde · rewfully he wepys,  
 Hys alders & hys auncesters · als he remenbrys ;                   2844  
 Thoght how pride þaim depriffyd · & here a passe endes.

### Duodecimus<sup>1</sup> Passus A[lexandri.]

Fast kayrez hym on *sir A[lexander]* · *with* hys athell  
 princez,  
 To þe cyte-ward of susys · hym-self he aproched.  
 þar as *sir Dary* in dwellyd · *with* hys derfe hostes,                   2848  
 So negh he Come þe clyffe · he kend ouer þe cyte.  
 With þat he *Commandes* hys knytes · to cutte downe  
 be-lyffe                   2850

of trees, and  
fasten them to  
their horses.

Bowis of buskis & of braunches · of bolis & of lindes,  
And bynde to paire hors feete · of bobis of herbis, 2852  
Bath to Meeris & to mulis · & all maner of bestis.

The Persians are  
astonished.

þe popiþ out of Persy · þat slike a pake saze,  
Beheld oñ he to þe hillis · & heterly was stroub[li]d ;  
þai ware so woundird of þat werke · & wetirly it  
semed 2856

[Fol. 49 b.]

He challenges  
Darius.

As all þe grond & þe greues · had glid þaim agayns.  
So neze þe cite he sozt · & sett vp his tentis,  
þat thre days to þat thede · him tharne & na mare.  
Said : “ let ane dryue to<sup>1</sup> Dary · & bede him dryffe sone,  
Or put him to my powere · & plede we na langire.”

That night he  
sees his god  
Ammon in a  
dream, who says,

þe same nigt in his slepe · him soda[n]ly a-perid 2862  
Amoñ, his aweñ god · in aung[e]ls wyse,  
In a mery mantiþ · of mervailous hewis,  
Meuand as a Messedone<sup>2</sup> · in Marcure fourme ; 2865

“ Send no  
messenger,  
but go thyself.”

Said : “ vn-to Susys my soñ · na sandisman þou send,  
Bot fange my fygour to þe fast · & fand furth þi-selve,  
Clethe þe with my conyschaunce · & for na care drede,  
I hete þe haly my help · na harme saþ þou suffire.”

Alexander rises,

þan slade he slizly a-way · & he fra slepe ryse,  
A breme blasand blis · in his brist rysys. 2871

and determines  
to go.

He knew his kniztis þat cas · & þai him clene redd,  
þat he<sup>3</sup> suld graythe him to ga<sup>3</sup> · as him his god chargis.  
þan callis to him þis conquirour · ane of his kid prince[s],

He makes one of  
his princes go  
with him.

Emynelaus, þat his erlis · & his ost<sup>3</sup> ledes, 2875  
Hend & hardy of his hand · a huge man of strenthe,  
And þare-to lede lelist to his lord · leuand of lyue.

The pair ride to  
the flood of  
Granton,

which is frozen.

He bad him bouñ him belyue · & oñ a blonk worth,  
Anopire foole with him fange · & founde with himsele.  
Strad vp him-selve on a stede · in starand wedis, 2880  
And on a cursoure þe knigt · with<sup>4</sup> a colt folozes.  
To þe grete flode of Grantoñ · to-gedire þai ride,  
þai fand it forsen þaim be-fore · a fote-thike yse. 2883

<sup>1</sup> MS. & to ; *with* & *subpuncted*.

<sup>2</sup> MS. Messedono.

<sup>3</sup> *In the margin.*

<sup>4</sup> MS. on with ; on *being struck through*.

þe bowes & þe bobbez & braunches · of bulesse & of lyndez,  
 And bynd vnto þair blonkez fete · of buskez & erbes,  
 Both to merys & to mulez · & all maner of bestes.  
 The peple oute of persye · þat suche a pake sogheñ, 2854  
 Byheld on high to þe hyllez · & hetterly wer stourbed ;  
 þai wer son wondderytt of þat werke · þat witterly þam  
 semyd

As aȝ þe ground & þe gravez · had gane þaim ayayns.  
 So negh þe Cyte he þame soght · & sett vp hys tentes,  
 þat thre days to þat thede · he tharnyd & no more. 2859  
 Sayd : “ latt on dryfe to sir Dary · latt drysse hym to feght,  
 Or put hym to my power · & plete we no lenger.”

þe same nyght in hys slepe · to hym sodanly aperyð 2862

*Nota  
sompnium  
Alexandri.*

Amoyn, hys awne god · in angels wyse,

In A mery mantyll · of mervalous hewys,

Meuand as a massydoñ · in mercurius forme ;

And sayd : “ vnto Susys · no Sondesman þou wafe, 2866

Bott fonge þi figour to þe fast · & fonde furth þi-selueñ,

Cleth þe *with* my Conysaunce · & for no care dredȝ,

I hete þe holy my help · no harme sall þou hynte.”

þe[n] slode he slyghtly away · when he fra slepe rysys,

[Fol. 33 b.]

A breme blasand blysse · in hys hert kyndels. 2871

Be-knewe hys knyghtes of hys case · & þai hym clene redyñ,

þat he shuld grath hym to go · as hys god chargyd.

þen callys to hym þe conquerour · one of hys kyð princez,

Emenylaus, þat hys Erlez · & hys hoste ledes, 2875

Hende & hardy of hys hand · & hoge man of strenth,

And þarto lelyst to hys lord · of aȝ ledes oute.

He bad hym bowne hym belyfe · & on a blonke worth,

Anoper fole *with* hym fange · & found *with* hym-selfe. 2879

Strode hym-self vp on a stede · in a starand wede,

And on a cou[r]sour þe knyght · *with* a colt folowd.

To þe grete flode of gratun · to-geder þai ryddyñ, 2882

And fyndyn it frosyn þaim byfore · a fute-thyke ysyd.

þat is þe streme of Strama · with many steds clepid,  
 And ȝit þe pure propure name · in percynne tonge.  
 Alexander crosses it alone. þañ Alexander belyue · his wedes he changis, 2886  
 þis renke with his Ronsees · he ridis ouire & leuys.  
 “A! lat me lend with ȝow, lord” · þe lede<sup>1</sup> him besekis,  
 [Fol. 50.] “For drede þat angire or a-ventour · or any slike faH.”  
 He bids his friend wait for him. “Nay, houe þou here,” quod þe kyng · “vn-to my  
 hame-come. 2890  
 He þat I saw in my slepe · saH be my sekire helpe.”  
 With þat he braides oñ þe blonke · & broches him in  
 þe syd,  
 Bowis him to-ward þe burȝe · as briȝt as ane aungeH.  
 ¶ Þis reuere at I first rede · be rewle of his kynde,  
 This river always froze at night, even in summer, As wele in sesoñ of Somere · as in þe sad wintre, 2895  
 And þat is neuer bot oñ niȝtis · so naytely it fresys,  
 TiH any powere to pas · or preke oñ with stedis.  
 ȝit has þe floum, as I fynd<sup>2</sup> · a forelange obrede, 2898  
 And euire-ilke mornynȝ it meltis · for miȝt of þe soñ;  
 With slike a reryd þan it rynnes<sup>2</sup> · þe romance it witnes,  
 and melted at morn, and then could not be crosseel. þat qua so tuke it in þat tyme · tint ware for euire.  
 Be þis enproched him oure prince · vn-to þe proude cite,  
 Band his blonke at a barrere · with-out þe burȝe ȝatis.  
 The Persians wonder. þe Persyns of his passag · was passyngly wondird, 2904  
 And gesses him to be gode · for glori of his wedis.  
 Darius asks who he is, “Quat dones man ert þou?” quod Dary · & drafe him  
 agayne.  
 “Sire Alexander,” quod þis athiH · “has all þus me sent,  
 Bedis buske þe to bateH · quat bade makis þou here?  
 Outhire ȝare þe ȝapely þar-to · or tiH his ȝokke bowe.”  
 and thinks it must be Alexander himself, “Qwepire þu be he?” quod þe hathiH · “so hately þou  
 spekis, 2910  
 þou melis noȝt as a minister · a messangere bowis;  
 þou carpis euyn as a<sup>3</sup> kyng<sup>1</sup> · þat closid ware in pride.  
 Bot I am dred neuire a dele · of all þi bald saȝes. 2913

<sup>1</sup> MS. bede.<sup>2</sup> MS. remes, corrected to rynnes.<sup>3</sup> In the margin.

Thys is þe streme of Struma · with mony stedes clepyd,  
And 3it pure propre name · in persyens tounge.

**Then A**[lexander] als belyfe · hys abytt chaungez, 2886

Thys renke with hys rounsey · he rydes ouer & lefys.

“Na! latt me lend with þe, lord” · þe lede hym bysekys,

“Lest anger or aventur · or ony suche falle.”

“Nay hofe þou here,” quod þe athyll · “vnto my agayn-

Come; 2890

He þat I seght in my slepe · shall me sekir helpe.”

With þat he brades on hys blonnke · & brochez hym in þe  
sydes,

Bowys hym on toward þe burgh · als bright as an angeH.

Thys reuer þat I first rede of · be rewle of hys kynde,

Als wele in season of somer · as in þe sad wynter, 2895

And þat is neuer bott of nyghtys · so nataly it fresys,

To ony power on to passe · or preke with a stede.

3it hase þe flode, as I fynd · a furelenth of brede, 2898

And euerilke mornyng it meltes · for myght of þe soñ;

With suche a rerde þen it rynnys · þe Romayns it wittnes,

þat who tuke it in þat tyme · war termyd for euer. 2901

**Be** þis aprochyd hym þe Prince · vnto þe prouude Cite,

[Fol. 34.]

band hys blonnke at a barre · withoute þe brode zatez.

The persyens of hys passage · wer passandly wounderyd,

And gessyn hym all to be god · for glory of hys gere.

“What domesman art þou?” quod Dary · & drofe hym

ayayns. 2906

“Sir A[lexander],” quod þis athell · “hase all þus me send,

Byddes þe to batell buske · what bode mase þou here?

Ouder 3are þe 3apely þarto · or to his 3okke bowe.”

“Wheder þou be he?” þe hathell sayd, · “so hetterly þou

spekez, 2910

þou melles noght as a messenger · a mynyster bowez;

þou Carpys likar to A kyng · þat Closyd wer in pride.

Bot I am dred neuer a dele · of all þi derfe sawez, 2913

*28 Nota  
naturam  
aque de  
struma.*

- and asks him to  
supper.
- Bot for þi souerayne sake · þat sent þe þus hedire,  
 3it sall þou sit *with* my-selfe · & soupe or þou wynde.”  
 He raȝt him þan be þe arme · & reuerence<sup>1</sup> him makis,  
 And to his palais a-pert · *with* princes him ledis,  
 þare aires him in *ser* Alexander · & aȝ þus he thinkis,  
 “þis ilke bar-bryn berne · grete beute me schewys, 2919  
 [Fol. 50 b.] þat here þus hyndly be þe hand · ledis to his Innes ;  
 þis hame *with* help of my god · I haue saȝ he[r]-  
 eftir.”
- Alexander goes to  
sup with Darius.
- So silis he furth *with* þe sire · in-to a somere-haȝ, 2922  
 þare sesonde was a soper · þe sotelest vndire heuen.  
 Sire Darius drawis to þe dese · & opir dere princes,  
 Settis þis sire *with* him-selfe · lete *serue* þaim to-gedire.  
 The hall was all  
made of gold.
- þat bild was aȝ of brynt gold · as þe buke tellis, 2926  
*With* þe bath, þe bordis & þe benkes · beten of þat ilke.  
 þe wesseȝ to vyse on · was verraly þe same,  
 And aȝ þe sale of a<sup>2</sup> sute · set fuȝ of stanes.
- The Persians  
think Alexander  
a mean-looking  
man.
- þe popiȝ of *Persy* · opoȝ þis prince waitis, 2930  
 þe litillaike of his like · lathely þat þai spyse ;  
 Bot þe wisdomes & þe worthenes · & of þe wale thewis  
 þat in þat cors was enclosed · kend þai fuȝ litiȝ.  
 Butlers fuȝ besyly · broȝt vp þe wyne,  
 In grete gobletis of gold · graythid fuȝ of ȝymmes ;
- When Alexander  
drinks, he secretes  
the gold cup ;
- And Alexander belyue · as he<sup>3</sup> had ay dronkeȝ, 2936  
*With* þat he clekis vp þe coupe · & putis in his bosom.  
 Anopire boȝ was him broȝt · & bathe he deuoydid,  
 this he does thrice.
- And ȝit he threw to þe thrid · & thraſt iȝ þare-efter.  
 Sone as þe<sup>4</sup> clientis þat knew · at of þe coupe *serueȝ*,  
 þai knele down before þe kyng<sup>1</sup> · & him þe cas tald.  
 þan has *ser* Dary dedeyne · & derfely he lokes, 2942  
 Rysys him vp renysch · & reȝt iȝ his sete,
- Darius reproves  
him.
- “Quat faris þou *with*,” quod he, “frynde ? · a foȝ þe  
 besemes ;  
 Quy voydis þou my vesseȝ ? · it is a vile schame.”

<sup>1</sup> MS. reuerence.    <sup>2</sup> MS. same a ; *with* same struck through.<sup>3</sup> In the margin.<sup>4</sup> MS. as a þe.

3itt for þi souerand sake · þat send þe þus hyder, 2914  
þou shall sitt *with* my-self · & soupe or þou wende."

He raght hym by þe right harme · & reuerens hym makys,  
And to hys palays full pert · *with* princez hym ledes,  
þar kayres hym on Sir A[lexander] · & all þus he thynkez,  
"þus ilke barberen berne · grete bewte me schewez, 2919  
þat here þus hyndly be hand · hase lede me to Innes;  
Thys home<sup>1</sup> *with* helpe of my goddez · I hafe sall her-  
after."

So sylez forth *with* þis Sire · into a somer-halle, 2922  
Thar sesund was a soper · þe sotellest vnder heuen.

Sir Darius drawys to þe deyse · & oper dere princez,  
Settes þis sire *with* hym-selfe · lete serue þaim to-geder.  
þat belde was all of brynt gold · as þe buke tellys, 2926  
*With* both þe burdez & þe benche · betyn of þe same.

The vessell to vyse on · veraly of þe same,  
And all þe sale of a sute · sett full of Stanes.

The peple oute of persey · apon þe prince waytyñ, 2930  
þe lityllayke of hys lyth · lothly þai spysyñ;  
Bot þe wysdome & þe worthines · of hys wale theweþ  
þat in þat cors was closyd · knew þai full lytyH.

Botlers full besely · broght vp þe wynez, 2934  
In grete goblettes of gold · grathyd fulle of gemmys;

[Fol. 34 b.]

And A[lexander] als belyfe · as he hed onys drunkyñ,  
*With* þat he clyght vp a cupe · & cromys in hys bosoñ.  
Anoper boll was hym broght · & both he devoyded<sup>2</sup>, 2938  
And 3itt he threwe<sup>3</sup> to þe thryde · & thristyn þar-after.

Sone as þe clyentez it knew · þat of þe cope serued<sup>2</sup>,  
þai knele downe bfore þe kyng · & hym þe case taldyñ.  
þen hase sir Dary disdayne · & darfly he lukes, 2942  
Rerys hym vpp & remevys · in hys sete riche,  
"What farys *with*," quod he, "frende? · a fonne þou be-  
semys;

Whi woydes þou my veseall? · it is a vyle schame."

<sup>1</sup> MS. holme; but marked for correction.

<sup>2</sup> MS. dovoydede. <sup>3</sup> The h is above the line in MS

Alexander says  
it is the custom  
of Macedonia to  
do so.

“Sire, it is þe custum,” quod þe kniȝt · “in oure kyngis  
fest, 2946

[Fol. 51.]

þat, be it ane, be it opire · þat þai of drinke,  
þe gestis sall haue þe goblettis · & þaim gud þinke,  
To wild & wende with a-way · & wirke quat þaim likes ;  
Bot sen þis vse is here vn-honourable · here I þam  
leue ;”

Braidis þaim furth withouten bade · þe butlers þaim  
yeldis. 2951

Some of them  
praise  
Alexander.

“Now sothely,” quod þam ilk a segge · softly to-gedire,  
“þis maner at he melis of · is menskefuȝ & noble.”

One Anepo takes  
note of him,

þan was þare ane proude pere · a prince at þe table,  
Anepo, þat oñ Alexander · aȝ-way be-haldis,  
þan mynes him anes in Messedone · he had þe man  
sene, 2956

and remembers  
that he has seen  
him before.

Quen he was sent to his syre · to feche þaire trouage.  
His vertuse & his vysage · his voise he remenbris,  
His fourme & his fetoure<sup>1</sup> · his figoure a-vysis,  
He studis & he stuynes · he stemes with-in, 2960  
“Is þis noȝt Philip soñ þe firs · þe fedare of grece ?”

He leaves his  
seat,  
and tells Darius.

With þat he sleȝly vp soȝt · & his sete leuys,  
Droȝe hiȝ euyȝ to ser Dary · þare he oñ dese bydis,  
Said, “surely, ser, þis sandisman · þat sittis ȝow be-forne  
Is Alexander him awen self · or aȝ myȝ ame faillis.”

Alexander  
perceives his  
danger,

seizes a torch,

Sone þis gouernour of grece · is of þis gaude ware,  
He torkaus with & vndire-tuke · he touched of him-selfe,  
Herd a nyngkiling of his name · & naytis him to ryse,  
Buskis him vp at a braide · & fra þe burde rysys. 2969  
He tas a torche fra a tulke · þat by þe table standis,  
Felly fangis it in<sup>2</sup> his fist · & to his fole wyndis,  
Fyndis him faire him before · þare he him feste hade,  
Raȝt him radly þe reyne · & oñ his rige worthis. 2973  
With þat he brochis his blonke · þat þe blode fames,  
Sparis out spacly · as sparke out of gledes.

mounts his  
horse,

<sup>1</sup> MS. fetuore.

<sup>2</sup> MS. l ir ; the l being an imperfect h, due to his following.



"Sir, it is our cestone," quod þe knyȝt · "in our kynges  
fest,2946

þat, be it one, be it oþer · þat þai of drynkyn,  
The gestes sall haue þe goblettez · & þai gude thynke,  
To wyld & wynd away · & werke what þaim likez; 2949  
Bot sen þe vse is here vn-honorable · here I þam lefe;"

Brades þam forth with-owtyn bode · þe butler þaim  
zeldes.

"Nowe, sir," quod euerilke segge · softly to oþer,  
"þis maner þat he mellys of · is menskefull & noble."  
Then was þar one, a prouude · prince at þe tabyll, 2954  
Anepo, þat on Alexander · alway byholdes,  
þen menys onys in massydoñ · he had þe man knawyñ,

When he was sent be hys sire · to sese þair truage.  
Hys vertuez & hys visage · hys voyce he remenbris, 2958  
Hys forme & hys facioñ · hys fygure he visys,  
He stodes & he staddes with · & stempmys hym within,  
"Es noght þis philyp son þe fers · fennder<sup>1</sup> of grece?"  
With þat he shyllghly vp slayde · & hys sete left, 2962  
Droght hym euen to sir Dary · þar he on deyse bydes,  
"þat surely sir, þis sondesmañ · þat sittes yow aforne  
Is A[lexander] hym-self · or all my ame falys."

Sone as þis gouernour of grece · apon þis gaud<sup>2</sup> wates,  
He torkys with & vndertuke · it tochyd of hym-self, 2967  
Harde a nyckying<sup>3</sup> of hys name · & natys hym to ryse,  
Buskys hym vp at brade · & fro þe borde voydes.

[Fol. 35.]

He takys a torche fro a tulke · þat be þe burde standes,  
Felly fange it in hys fyst<sup>4</sup> · & to hys fole wendes, 2971  
Fyndes hym faire hym bifore · þar as he hym fest<sup>4</sup> had,  
Raght hym radly þe reyne · & on hys rigge ascendes.  
With þat he brochez hys blonnke · þat þe blode folows,  
Sparrys oute sarply<sup>3</sup> · as<sup>4</sup> sparke doys on gledes. 2975

<sup>1</sup> MS. founder, altered to fennder. <sup>2</sup> MS. gauyd.

<sup>3</sup> Sic; for spacy. <sup>4</sup> MS. &.

- and rides away. Be þe liȝt at he led · laches he þe way, 2976  
 And fandis fast to þe flizt · with a fers wiȝ.  
 þe pepiȝ of þe palais · quen þai his passe saȝe,  
 All rush after him. Rusches vp in a res · rynnes in-to chambres,  
 [Fol. 51 b.] Sum araies þaim iȝ ringis · & sum iȝ row brenys,  
 . . . . . 2980\*  
 With hard hattis on þaire hedis · hied to þaire horsis,  
 Prekis eftir þe prince · prestly enarmed.<sup>1</sup>
- Night comes. Bot now was niȝt oȝ þaȝ neȝed · þat noyd þaim sare.  
 Many lose their way. Sone ware þai willid fra þe way · þe wod was so thiȝe,  
 Sum oȝ buȝes & oȝ brerys · blemysched þe face, 2985  
 Sum ware dreuyȝ doun in dikis · sum in depe myrys;  
 Alexander escapes. Bot Alexander at myȝ ame · þaire aȝe is a-schapid,  
 Ay trottis him to þe trod-gate · as him þe torche wyssis.  
 Darius mourns at home. Sire Dary as a drery maȝ · duellis<sup>2</sup> at hame, 2989  
 With princes iȝ his palais · aȝ pense he sittis,  
 þe baldnes of þis baratour · he besyly remembris,  
 þat skapid so sone skatheles · fra all his schathill dukis.  
 There was an image of Xerxes, þaȝ was aȝ ymage within · as I am enfourmede, 2993  
 Of Sexeres þat sum-quyle · þat cite had to welde,<sup>3</sup>  
 Forȝid aȝ of fyne gold · & fettild his seete  
 Vndire þe souerayne seȝe · þare sett ere þe lawis. 2996  
 And sodanly þat semylacre · as tellis þe textis,  
 which suddenly fell to pieces. It all to-paschis in-to peces · & to poudire dryuys.  
 þan was þe wale kyng waa · & wepand he said:  
 This is a bad omen. “þis be-takens trombling of my tild · & tene of<sup>4</sup> my  
 regne.” 3000
- Alexander rides to the river, and crosseȝ the ice. And Alexander all þat quile · asperly rydis  
 To þe grete flode of Granton · & it oȝ a glace fyndis.  
 Or he was soȝt to þe side · ȝit sondird þe qweryns, 3003  
 His hors it hunyschist for euire · & he with hard  
 schapid.
- He returns safely. þaȝ aires he with Emynelows · euen to his princes,  
 And derfly oȝ þe topir day · a douth he assembles,

<sup>1</sup> MS. enr enarmed; *with enr struck through*.<sup>2</sup> *The e above the line.* <sup>3</sup> MS. ȝ welde. <sup>4</sup> *In the margin.*

By þe light þat he hed · lacchys on hys way,  
 And fonndez fast to flyght · with a fers wille.  
 The peple of þe palays · when þai hym passe sigh, 2978  
 þai russlyn vp in a reys · rynnyn into chaumbres,  
 Some arays þaim in rynggez · some in rawe brenys,  
 Some in stalwart stuffe · & some in stele plates 2980\*  
 With hard hattes on þair heddez · hyen to þair blonnkez,  
 Prikkyn after þe prince · prestly enarmed. 2982  
 Bot þen was nyght on þaim negh · þat noyed þaim sore.  
 Sone wer þai welt fro faire way · þe wod was so thykke,  
 Some of bowez & of breres · blemyst þe face,  
 Some wer drefyn into dykez · some depe mires; 2986  
 Bot A[lexander] at my ayme · þar augerly eschapys,  
 And ay trotes on þe troyde-gate · als hym þe torche vysys.  
**Sir** Dary as a drery man · dwelland in hys trone,  
 With princez in hys palays · aH pensey he sittes, 2990  
 The baldnes of þis baratour · he belyfe remenbris,  
 þat scapett so sone schatheles · fro all hys schateH dukez.  
 þen was ane ymage within · as I am enformed,  
 Off serexies þat some-while · þe Cyte hed to weld, 2994  
 Forgyd all of fyne gold · & feteld in hys sete,<sup>1</sup>  
 And vnder þat souerent segge · y-sett war þair lawez.  
 And sodanly þat symylacre · as says me þe text,  
 AH to-paschys into peces · & into powder dryfez. 2998  
 þen was þe wale kyng woo · & wepand he sayd:  
 “þis betokyns trublyng<sup>t</sup> of my teld · & tene to my [Fol. 35 b.]  
 realme.”  
 And A[lexander] þe while · asperly rydes  
 To þe grete flude of grantum · & it as glas fyndes. 3002  
 And be he soght to þe syde · zitt sounderd þe qwerne,  
 Hys hors it honyshyd for euer · & he with hard  
 schapyd.  
 þen kayres he with Emenylaus · euen to hys princez,  
 And derfly of þat oþer day · of doghty he assemblez,

<sup>1</sup> MS. fete.

He assembles  
200,000 men,

Twa hundreth thousand oñ a throñ · aH of threuen  
kniztis, 3007

and encourages  
them.

[Fol. 52.]

Cainis him vp to a cliffe · & comfurthis his hostis;  
“Sall neuir þe Persyns pake · be pere to þe grekis,  
And if þai ma ware be many · mayes nozt 3our hertis;  
FuH many flees may feH · bot a fewe waspis.”  
And aH þe company clene · comendid his wittis. 3012

### Terciusdecimus passus Alexandri.

Darius and his  
men come to the  
river.

**B**e þis ser Dary was dizt · whit his dere erles,  
Heuyd vp a huge ost · & hast him to ryde,  
His ginge & aH his garysons · in glyssynand wedis, 3015  
Gaes him oñ to grantoñ · & graithes þare his tentis.  
His stoure was so stalworthe & store · & strange to  
a-byde,

His host is  
innumerable.

He hað of meñ out of mynde · many mayñ hundreth,  
þat sike a sizt & a sowme<sup>1</sup> · of seggis enarmed  
Was neuer sene, I suppose · señ þe sege of troy. 3020  
þe chiftayne had chariotis · chosen for þe nanes,

He has 10,000  
chariots,  
armed with  
scythe-blades.

Ten thousand be tale · tried for þe were.  
And þai ware sett apire side · fuH of sythe-bladis,  
Kene keruand as kuyfes · & cursers þam drowe. 3024  
þe next day be þe none · new note ryses,  
Aithire freke with his folke · in þe fild metis,  
And bald bernis oñ bent · banars vnfaldis,  
Put pennons oñ pollis · payntid of silnir. 3028

Alexander mounts  
Bucephalus.

Alexander as belyue · is armed vp clene,  
Bounes him to his blonke · þe best vndire heuen,  
þat was þe blonk Bucifað · as þe buke tellis,  
A foole worth<sup>2</sup> fyfty of þe firste · þat in þe flode  
drowned. 3032

He spyannes him out a grete space · fra he[s] peris aH,  
Couers him fuH clenly · & closed in his gere.

<sup>1</sup> The me above the line.

<sup>2</sup> MS. with, altered to worth in the margin.

Twa c m in a thrume · all of trefe knytes, 3007

Cayrez hym vp to a Clyff · & comforthez hys hostez ;  
 “ Sall neuer þe persiens pakke · be pere to þe grekez,  
 And þof þai war mo be mony · mayse nott in hertes ; 3010  
 Full fele fleys may nott felle · bott a few wasspez.”  
 And all þe Company elene · Comendyd þan hys wittes.

[*Tertiusdecimus passus.*]

By þis sir Dary was dight · with hys derfe Erlez,  
 Hefyd vp a hoge hoste · & hastyd hym to ryde, 3014  
 Hys genge & hys garysoñ · in glasynand wedes,  
 Gose hym to *grantum* · & grathez vp hys tentes.  
 Hys stoure was stalwort & sture · & strang to abyde,

He hed of men for to mynd · mony mayne hundreth,  
 þat suche a sight & a some · of seggez enarmed  
 Was neuer [sene], I suppoise · sen þe seyge of troye. 3020  
 The Chyftanys hed chariottes · chosyn for þe nonest,  
 A Ten thouusand be tale · tried for þe were.  
 And þoo wer sett on ather syde · full of sythe-blades,  
 Kene keruand as knyffes · & coursours þaim drawys. 3024  
 The next day be þe none · new note rysys,  
 Ather freke with hys folke · in þe feld metyn,  
 And bald bernez on bent · banerys vnfaldyn,  
 Puttyn penons on pollez · payntyd with syluer. 3028  
 A[lexander] als belyfe · es armyd vp Clene,  
 Bownez hym on hys blonnke · þe best vnder heuen,  
 þat was þe bald bucyfañ · as þe buke tellez,  
 A fole worth fyfty of þat · at in þe flude drownyd. 3032

He spedes hym on a grete space · fro hys pers añ,  
 Couerys hym full clenly · & closys hym in hys gere.

[Fol. 36.]

- The Persians are frightened. þe powere out of Persy · queñ þay þe prince saze,  
Frayed was of his fourme · so ferdful̃ him semed. 3036
- The battle begins. ¶ Now ère þe batails boune · with braggins in trumpis,  
þe breme bemen blaste · beres to þe welkeñ.  
Alexander aþpire first · oñ þaim all<sup>1</sup> he settis,  
[Fol. 52 b.] And aithire ward<sup>1</sup> at a waþp · wiztly in loynes. 3040  
Archars & aþ meñ · asperly fiztis,  
þare was Iusting o Ioy · Iopons a-tameþ;  
Siles doun oñ aithire side · selcuth kniztis,  
Sum darid, sum dede · sum depe wondid. 3044
- A great flight of arrows. So feH<sup>2</sup> flizt was of flans · as I fynd wreten,  
Of arrows & of all quat · þat aþ þe aire blindiþ;  
Hogere oñ to be-hald · þaþ of<sup>3</sup> haile-stanes,  
The armies cover And aþ þe fild ful̃ of folke · fyue mile large. 3048  
five miles of ground. Als sone as þe soñ vp sozt · þe slaztere begynnēs,  
And so to þe soñ-sett · slakid þai neuire.  
Be þat þe barbyrne blode · be-gaþ to discende,  
The Persians þe proudest of þe Persyns · past out<sup>4</sup> of lyue. 3052  
give way. Sone as ser Dary it deuysid̃ · & sezis his foke faile,  
Darius flees. With þat he bedis þam<sup>5</sup> þe bake · & bidis na langir;  
þen queñ þai<sup>6</sup> fange to 3e flizt · was furth in with euyñ,  
Darkness comes. And mirke out<sup>4</sup> of mesure · na man þaim a-pered. 3056  
For-þi þe chariotis in þe chace · choppid þaim to deth,  
þe cartis þat I carpid of · with þe kene sythis,  
þare feH̃ as fele þam̃ before · of fotemeñ & othire,  
The scythe-chariots destroy the flying host. As risonis<sup>7</sup> in a ranke fild · quen riders it spilleñ.<sup>8</sup> 3060
- Darius goes to Sire Dary dryue in þe derke · & his douth folows,  
Gaes him on to grantun · vn-to þe grete burne,  
the frozen river, Fand it frosen him before · as feH̃ for þe time,  
and crosses it. Past him oñ with his pers · a pake out of nombre. 3064  
His folke fellis aþ þe flode · a forelange o brede,  
þe streme fra þe a strande · strezt to þat othire.  
The ice gives way, Sone fra him-self was at þe side · it sonders behind,

<sup>1</sup> In the margin.    <sup>2</sup> MS. felle felle.    <sup>3</sup> MS. oerf.<sup>4</sup> MS. oñt.    <sup>5</sup> MS. þam þaim.    <sup>6</sup> MS. þaim.<sup>7</sup> Or risoms, or risoins.    <sup>8</sup> MS. spilkē.

The power of *persee* · when þai þe prince see,  
 Was ferly frayd of hys forme · so ferdfull he semyd. 3036  
 Nowe er þe batels bowne · with braggyng of trompettes,  
 The breme beeme blast · beryd to þe welkyn.  
 A[lexander] all-*par* first · on þaim all settes,  
 And ayther ward at a wappe · wigh[t]ly enioynez. 3040  
 Archers & all men · asperly shotyn,  
 þar was Iustying of Ioy · Iopons attamyd ;  
 Seghen downe on ather syde · semelych knytes,  
 Some dasyd, some dede · some depe woundytt. 3044  
 So feH flyght was of flonys · as I fynd writtyn,  
 Of arows & of alblastres · þat all þe Ayre blyndyd ;  
 Huger to byhalde · þen þe hayle-stormes,  
 And all þe feld full of folke · fyfe myle large. 3048  
 Als sone as þe soñ hup soght · þe slaughter begynnys,  
 And to sett was þe same · sesytt þai neuer.  
 Be þat þe barbaryn blode · began to desend,<sup>1</sup>  
 The proudest of þe *persyens* · passyd owte of lyfe. 3052  
 Sone as *sir* Dary devysyd · & sawe hys doghty falle,  
 With þat he biddes þam þe bake · & bydes no langer ;  
 þen qwen þai fange to þe flyght · was nerehand eueñ, 3055  
 And merke *withowte* mesur · na man myght þam folow.  
 For-þi þe chariottes in þe chase · chopyd þaim to deth,  
 The cartes þat I Carpyd of · *with* þe kene sythez,  
 þai feH all fey þaim byfore · *with* fotemeñ & *oper*, 3059  
 As ressynnys in a ranke feld · when men ouer rydes.  
 Sir Dary dryfys in þe dirke · & hys doghty folows,  
 Goys hym on to *grantum* · vnto þe grete burne,  
 Fañde it frosyn hym byfore · as fell for þe tyme, 3063  
 Passys ouer *with* hys perys · a pak oute of nowmbre.  
 Hys floke fyllys at<sup>2</sup> þe flud · a furelonge of brede,  
 The streme fra þat one strande · streght vnto þat *oper*.  
 Sone fra hym-self was at þe syde · it sounderytt byhynd.

*See Nota  
 bellum inter  
 Darium &  
 Alexan-  
 drum.*

<sup>1</sup> MS. defend.

<sup>2</sup> Read al.

and many  
Persians are  
lost,

[Fol. 53.]

to the number of  
300,000.

Darius goes to  
Susa, and  
laments.

"Now am I cast  
down!"

He writes a letter  
to Alexander.

"I, Darius, salute  
Alexander.

Ye are wise.

Be not too proud.

Xerxes was  
proud, and failed.

'And aH at lent ware on-loft · loste þar þe swete. 3068  
þus many deed þat day · as þe buke tellis,

Of pollis out of Persye · withouten þe grekis,  
Thre hundreth Mille thra meñ · þat tharned<sup>1</sup> þaire lyues,  
With þe fool-s & þe folke · þat þe flode drowned. 3072

þis senioure out of Susys · to his cite wendis,  
Fallis doun oñ his face · flat in þe sale,  
"Wa is me!" quod he, "wriche · wa is me vnhappy!"  
Sizis selcuthely sare · & sadly he wepys, 3076  
"I þat was strazt to þe sternes<sup>2</sup> · am streken now to  
grond,

Now cratoñ, now caitefe · now am I kast vndire,  
þat had of the Orient all ouire · homage vñqwile.  
Wist any we quat him suld worth · þis werd wald he  
leue, 3080

FuH sympiH in a seteqwile · seke to þe cloudes,  
And þai at mast ere of miȝt · smyten aH to poudire."

With<sup>3</sup> þat reufully he rase · & renkis out he sendis,  
To Alexander belyue · & all slike a pistiH. 3084

¶ "I, drery kynge oñ my dese · Darius of Persy,  
To Alexander þat Aire · þat all has to wild,  
þe lege lord of my lyfe · to lose or to saue,  
þus send I to my souerayne · salutis & ioy. 3088

So wyde is þe wisdom · þat wonne[s] in ȝour saule,  
þat wele ȝe wate, of aH men · at I worthid here before,  
Of aH þe notis þat ere now · & quat oñ next sewes.  
For-þi ȝour werke ay be witt · ȝe wirke vñreproued.

Sire, I knowlage me a creatour · & come of a woman,  
Heues noȝt ȝour hert vp to hize · take hede to ȝour end;  
It limps noȝt aH-way þe last · to licken with þe first,  
Quat suld a kniȝt mare to kepe · bot conquire his  
enmy? 3096

Was noȝt Sexes him-selfe · þe souereynest in erth,  
And cheued him of cheualry · chekis out of nombre?  
ȝit for his wiH out of worde · was woñ in-to pride,

<sup>1</sup> MS. tharned. <sup>2</sup> MS. stremes. <sup>3</sup> MS. þat with; þat struck out.



And all þat lent wer on-lofte · lost haue þe swete. 3068 [Fol. 35 b.]

þus mony deyð þis day · as demys me writtes,  
Off polles oute of persye · withoute þe proude grekys,  
Thre C Mille<sup>1</sup> of throo · þat tharnyd þair lyfez,  
With þe folez & þe folke · þat þe flude drynched. 3072

þis seneour vnto susys · hys awne cyte wendes,  
Fallys downe on hys face · flatt in þe sale,  
“Wo is me!” quod þe wreche · “wo is me vnhappyñ!”  
Sighez selkouthly sore · & sadly he wepys, 3076  
“I þat was straught to þe sternes · am strykyn now to  
ground,

Nowe a crathan & a knaffe · nowe am I kest vnder,  
þat had of the Orient all ouer · homage vmwhile.  
Wist ony wee qwat hym suld worth · þis werld wald he  
lefe, 3080

Full symple in a sete-while · sekyn to þe clodes,  
And þai þat most er of myght · meltyn all to powder.”  
With þat he rewfully rose · & renkes oute he sendes,  
To A[lexander] als bylyfe · & all suche a PistyH. 3084

“I, drery Kyng on my dese · Darius of Perys, Epistola.  
To A[lexander] þe heyr · þat all hase to weld,  
þe leyge lord of my lyfe · to lese or to safe,  
þus send I to my soueren · salutes of Ioy. 3088

So wyde is þe wisdome · þat wonnys in your saule,  
þat wele ȝe wate of all þat was · & worth here byfore,  
Off all þe notes þat er nowe · & what on next sewys.  
For-þi ȝe wirke euer by witte · ye werke vnreprefytt. 3092  
Sir, I knalegh me a creatur · & Comyn of A womañ,  
Hefys nott your hert to hye · bott hedes to your ende;  
It lypmys nott allway þe last · be lykkynd to þe first,  
Quatt suld a knyght more Couett · þen conquer hys foes?

Was not Seryxes hym-self · þe soueranest on ground, 3097  
And chefyd hym nott of cheualry · chekez oute of nombre?  
ȝitt for hys wið oute of wardē · was wonne into pride,

<sup>1</sup> I. e. Three hundred thousand.

- [Fol. 53 b.] In þe lede here of Elanda · lithirly he feyned. 3100  
 þinke þat allanely of god · þis ouirlaike þou haues,  
 Remember that victory is from God. For-þi haue mercy oñ þi meñ · þi meche we<sup>1</sup> beseke,  
 Als of 3oure grete gudnes · to grant vs oure modire,  
 Restore my relatives, and take my wealth." Oure bride, oure barnes out of bande · for besandis eno3e,  
 For all þe feete<sup>2</sup> at oure fadirs · in þe fold<sup>3</sup> hade, 3105  
 In Battri & in þis bild · þe burȝe of Elanda,  
 þe maistri & þe maieste · of Mede & of Perȝy,  
 With all þe Iolyte &<sup>4</sup> Ioy · þat Iubiter vs lenes." 3108  
 The letter is taken to Alexander, þe seggis at fra Susses · was sent with þe pistiH  
 Aires to ser Alexander · onone hit<sup>5</sup> him reches ;  
 And he dos oñ before his ost · openly to rede, 3111  
 whose men rejoice. And all his kniȝtis for þe carpe · ware kenely reioysed.  
 þeñ was ane Permeoñ, a pere · a prince of his oste,  
 Permeon advises him to accept Darius' offer. Enclynes him doun to þe kyng · said : "kid emperoure,  
 Resayue þis risches, I rede · þat 3ow þis renke bedis,  
 And lyuers him his ladis · & aH his lele childire." 3116  
 Alexander says, þañ Alexander belyue · þa hathels he callis,  
 þe berne at broȝt<sup>6</sup> him þe brefe · said : "bowis to 3our  
 lord,  
 " How can Darius expect anything of me ? And say,<sup>7</sup> me wondirs, I-wisse · if he it wete wald,  
 For any mede a-poñ mold · his meneyhe to lyuire ? 3120  
 If he be falleñ vndire fote · & his folke streyned,  
 And vencust of oure violence · quat vailis him his hestis ?  
 His person & his prouynce · he put it in my wiH, 3123  
 And 3eld him vndire my 3oke · þañ 3erne I na mare.  
 Let him owe himself beaten." And if [he] grant him noȝt de-grayd · bot for þe gre  
 threpiis,  
 Bid buske him eft to þe bent · vs bataill to 3eld."  
 þus monest he þe messangers · þaire maistir to say,  
 Genys þañ giftis fuH gude · & lete þañ ga swyth. 3128  
 He bids the corpses to be buried. And þan comands he his kniȝtis · þe corses vp to  
 gedire,

<sup>1</sup> MS. de.      <sup>2</sup> MS. fadirs feete ; *with fadirs struck out.*<sup>3</sup> MS. fuld, *corrected to fold.*      <sup>4</sup> MS. & oi ; oi *struck out.*<sup>5</sup> MS. it hit.<sup>6</sup> MS. borȝt.<sup>7</sup> *In the margin.*

In þe lede of Elanda · lythirly he fynyd. 3100

Thynke howe only of god · þis ouerlake þou fonges, [Fol. 37.]

For þi haue mercy of þi man · þi myght we besekyn,

All of þi grete gudenesse · to graunt vs our moder,

Our birde, our barnez oute of bandes · for besaundes enoghe.

For all þe feetez þat our fadir · in þe molde<sup>1</sup> byddyn, 3105

In battrye & in þis beld · þe burgh of elanda,

The maistre & þe maieste · of medy & of perse,

With all þe Iolyte & Ioy · þat Iubiter vs lennys." 3108

þe segges þat fra susys · was sent with þis pistiH

Caryn þaim to A[lexander] · onone & it hym raghteñ;

And he doys one before hys hostez · it opynly to rede,

And all þe knyghtes for þe carpe · wer cleuly reioysyd.

þen was one permeon, a pere · A prince of hys heste, 3113

Enclynes downe byfore þe kyng · sayd: "kyd Emperour,

Resaue, I rede, þis rechez · þis renkez þat þou byddes,

And leuerys hym hys lades · & aH hys leue childer."

þen A[lexander] als belyfe · þis atheH he clepys, 3117

þe bernes þat broght hym þe breve · sayd: "bowys to

your Lord;

And says, me wonderys, I-wysse · yf he it wene suld,

For ony mede vppon molde · hys meynzey to delyver?

Yff he be fallyn vnder fote · & hys folke strenyd, 3121

And vencust of our vyolence · what valys hym hys heestes?

Hys person & hys prouynce · let put in my wyH,

And jiff hym vudir in zoke · I zarne hym no mare.

And yff he graunt hym nott degradyd · bott for þe gree

threpys, 3125

Byd hym buske hym eft to þe bent · & bateH vs zeld."

þus monyshest he þis messyngers · þair maister at say,

Gyffys þaim gyftes full gude · & byddes þaim go swyth.

And þen commaundeþ he hys knyghtes · þe corsez vp to

gedder, 3129

<sup>1</sup> Read folde.

- Of all þe douth at was dede · & diȝt þam in graues.  
 And at wondid was, I-wis · as þe writt tellis, 3131  
 To serche þaire saluys & þar saris · *with* surgens noble.  
 [Fol. 54.] At þe grete flode of Grantoñ · now graythis he his  
 tentis,  
 He offers to the gods. Honoured þare his ald<sup>1</sup> gods · & offirs þam nouches;  
 þare fand he palais vp piȝt · & many proud hames,  
 Sum-quile of Sexes ware sett · þe sire of þo landis. 3136  
 He bids his men not to burn any building. þa bildis he bedis þam to brin · sone of his bone rewis,  
 And bad na bereñ be sa bald · a brand for to kyndiH.  
 þare was a brade bent fild · was beried fuH of kniȝtis,  
 Of ald peres out of Persy · prince & dukes. 3140  
 þe Messedones in þe mold · mynes to þe graues,  
 The Greeks find an old sepulchre, Fand coupis all of clene gold · & costious stanes,  
 þe sepulture of a sire · þat of Surre was kyng.  
 that of Ninus, made of amethyst. Him was þe name Ninus · was in a noke fondeñ, 3144  
 Was of ane athiH amatist · & aH *within*<sup>2</sup> graueñ,  
 Plantid fuH of palmetres · & many proud fowles,  
 And slike a clerete it kest · þu[r]þe kynd of it-selfe,  
 þai<sup>3</sup> miȝt haue kend *without* þe kist · þe corps aH-  
 to-gedire. 3148  
 They next find a prison, with maimed men in it, who are set free. þare was a tenefuH toure · & tulkis in-closid;  
 Sum ware þe handis of heweñ · & sum wondid hoȝes,  
 Sum þe eȝen, sum þe eres · & eȝirly cries  
 On Alexander eftir help · & he þam all liuers. 3152  
 He wepis oñ þam for wa · said, “wa is me, my  
 childire!”  
 And ilkane of his talentis · he takis ten thousand.  
 þus ware þai diȝt of *ser* Dary · for he dedeyne hade,  
 þat þai<sup>4</sup> ware comen doun of kyngis · & be no cause  
 ellis. 3156  
 Be now þe douth of *ser* Daris · þe derfe messangere  
 Fra Alexander agayñ · his answare him broȝt;  
 And he þan girdis out to grete · eft graythis him to fyȝt,

<sup>1</sup> MS. h ald.<sup>2</sup> with is in the margin.<sup>3</sup> MS. þ<sup>i</sup>.<sup>4</sup> MS. þat, corrected to þai.

Of aȝ þe doghty þat was dede · & dight þaim in grafys.  
 And aȝ þat woundytt was, I-wysse · as þe writte tellys,  
 He gart seke þair sarys, & þaim salue · with *surgers*<sup>1</sup> noble.  
 At þe flude of *grantum* · nowe grathez he hys tentes, 3133

Honours hys olde goddes · & offers þaim ouchez;  
 þair fande he palays vp pight<sup>t</sup> · & mony proude homez, [Fol. 37 b.]  
 Some-while of Serxes was set · þe syre of þair landez.  
 þose beldes he byddes þaim bryn · & syne of hys bode rewys,  
 And bad no berne be so bald · a brand for to kyndyȝ.  
 þar was a brode bent feld · was fuȝ of beryd kynggez,  
 Off olde perys oute of pers · of Princez & Dukez. 3140  
 The massydoyns in þe mold · mynyȝ into þe grafez,  
 Founde coupes aȝ of clene gold · & costyous stonez,  
 þe sepulture of a syre · of Surry was crownyd.  
 Hym was þe name Ninus · was in a noke foundeȝ, 3144  
 Was of ane athyȝ amatyst<sup>t</sup> · & aȝ withȝ grafen,  
 Plantyd all with palmetres · & mony proude fowlez,  
 And suche a clarett<sup>2</sup> it kest<sup>t</sup> · þorow kynde of hym-selueȝ,  
 Men myght<sup>t</sup> haue kend withoute kyst<sup>t</sup> · þe cors all-  
 to-geder. 3148

þar was a tenefull toure · & tulkez inclosyd;  
 Some was þe harmes of heueȝ · & some þe lygez wantyd,  
 Some þe hoghez, some þe eres · & egerly crydeȝ  
 On A[lexander] after help · & he þaim aȝ delyuerys.  
 He wepys on þaim for woo · sayd: “woo is me, my  
 childer!” 3153

And ichone of hys talentes · he takys ten thouusand.  
 þus war þai dyght of Sir Dary · for he disdayne heȝ,  
 þat þai war comyn of kynggez · & be no cause ellez. 3156

Be þen þe Doghty of *sir* Darius · our derf messengers  
 Fro A[lexander] ayayn · hys Answer hase broghtyȝ;  
 And he þen gyrdes oute to grete · & grathez hym to fyght,

<sup>1</sup> *Read* surgens.<sup>2</sup> *Read* clartee.

To þe honoryd here out of ynde · þus ordans a pistiſſ.  
 “Darius to Porus, “þat þe sceptbure & þe soile · sesid am of Persy,  
 To Porrus vndire my present · plesance & ioy.  
 First wrate I to *your* worthines · 3it write I þe same,  
 Come and help me. To help vs at þire hathiſſ meñ · þat haue<sup>1</sup> wald my  
 regne, 3164  
 [Fol. 54 b.] And, be 3e sure, þe same way · is to *your*-self ettild.  
 For he þat werrais vs with · þe wildare of grece,  
 For Alexander is wroth as a lion. Is wrawid & wrathfuſſ of wiſſ · & wode as a lyoñ, 3167  
 . . . . .

And if I sande meñ & sammen · seggis out of nombre,  
 And cokke with þe conquirour · tiſſ I be cald drepid,  
 It is better for me 3it me is better oñ þe bent · in bataile be slayne,  
 to die than þan se þe lose of my ledis · & ay leue iñ sorowe.  
 to live in sorrow. For-þi 3oure lordschip as legeman · I lawly be-seke,  
 As I þat am in angwiſſ · myne askyng to fiſſ; 3173  
 I promise ten schillings to a well-armed soldier, fve to a foot-soldier. Ten schilling of my trew gold · a mañ þat is armed,  
 And fyue to a fote-man · faithfully I hete.  
 3it sall I ordane to *your* ane · quare-cuire oure ost liggis,  
 A ix score of new geere · of nurtrid maydens. 3177  
 You shall have the spoil.” Bucifalon þe bald stede · saſſ bathe be oure awen,  
 And þe armes of Alexander · & aſſ þe pilage.”  
 ¶ Now flees þar fra þe felt kynge · a fone of his kniȝtes,  
 Alexander is informed of this, To Alexander beliuē · & aſſ þus him tald, 3181  
 How þat ser Dary with his dukis · eft drissis him to  
 fiȝt,

Had prayd eftir powere · to Porrus of ynde.  
 and prepares to attack Darius again. þan ordans him þis honorable · with his ost flitiȝ, 3184  
 Agayñ þe Persyns king · him ordans to ride,  
 For þe name of añ Emperoure · ne wald he neuire fange,  
 Or þen þat souerayne ware slayne · or ȝild him his regne.<sup>2</sup>  
 Darius is frightened. Sone as þe kyng of þat kith · of his come herys, 3188  
 þañ was he ferly a-friȝt · & his folke bathe.  
 Than kest þam twa of his kniȝtis · him causeles to spiſſ,  
 Two of his own knights lay a plot to kill him. <sup>1</sup> þat haue in the margin. <sup>2</sup> MS. regne, altered to regne.

To þe honourd heere oute of Inde · þus Ordayns he a pis'tyH.

“That þe septour & þe soyle · sesyd am of pers, 3161

To porrus vnder my prynt · plesaunce & Ioy.

First wrote I to your worthynes · 3itt write I þe same,

To help vs Anest þees athell men · þat hery wald oure  
realme, 3164

And, be 3e sure, þe same way · is to your-selfe etteld.

And he þat werrys vs · is þe weldar of grece,

Es wrawyd & wrathfull of wiH · & wode as a lyoñ, 3167

As wawes of þe wild see · when wynd þaim dis-  
toubles; 3167\* [Fol. 38.]

And þof I somme & samme · seggez oute of nombre, 3168

And cok with þis conquerour · tyll I be cold drepyd,

3itt is me better on þe bent · in bateH to fayle,

þen see þe losse of my ledes · & ay lefe in sorow.

For-þi your lordshīp as lege mañ · I lofely beseche, 3172

As I þat am in angres · my askyns fullfyH;

Ten schelyng of my trew gold · a tulke þat is armyd,

And fyfe to A fotemañ · faythfully I hete. 3175

3itt shall I ordayne to your one · whar-euer our hoste liggez,

Nyne score of new gere · of norturryd maydens.

Bucyfall þe bald stede · sall als be your awne, 3178

With þe armez of Sir A[lexander] · & all þe oþer pelage.”

Nowe fleen þai fro þis feH kyng · a some of hys knyghtes,

To A[lexander] als belyfe · als þus hym told,

How þat Sir Dary<sup>1</sup> with hys dukez · dressyd þaim to  
fyght, 3182

Had send after power · to porrus of Inde.

þen ordayns hym þis honorable · & with hys hoste flyttes,

Ayayns þe persyen Prince · he purpose to ryde,

For þe name of emperour · wald he neuer fonnge, 3186

Or þat soueren wer slayn · & seysyd to hym þe realme.

Sone as þe kyng of þat kyth · of hys Come herys,

þen was he ferly affrayd · & hys folke both. 3189

And þen kest two of hys knyghtes · to causles hym spyH,

<sup>1</sup> he added here, but struck out.

Darius asks why  
they attack him,

þai trowid þan of Alexander · to adiH þaim a mede ;  
þire traitours oñ þis trechoure · trowthis has strakid,  
Lendis þaim on-loft to þe lorde · lazt out swerdis. 3193  
“Quat sall I dreze,” *quod ser Dary* · “my dere-worth  
childire ?

and says that  
Alexander will  
avenge him.

[Fol. 55.]

They wound  
him, and he falls.

First cald I 3ow my clyentis · þat now I caH lordis,  
Semes 3ow nozt it suffice · my sorowe with-out, 3196  
þat as a bitand brand · me brettens with-in,  
And slaa 3e me þus sudanly ? · þe se[n]ioure of grece,  
He<sup>1</sup> wiH me wreke on 3oure werke · wers þan of thefes !”  
þar<sup>2</sup> menyd þaim<sup>3</sup> na mercy · bot maynly him woundid,  
þat doun he hildis aH to-hewyn · þaire handis be-twene.  
þan dryfes furthe þa dones men · & halfe dede him leuys,  
Famand<sup>4</sup> out of fresch blok · & here a fitt end. 3203

### Quartusdecimus passus Alexandri.

When Alexander  
hears that  
Darius is  
wounded,

Q uen Alexander of þis athiH · þis auntir hadd herð,  
How he was dizt of his douth · & to þe dede  
woundid,

he goes to Susa.

He strezt him to struma · & ouire þe streme ridis,  
Sozt him in Sussys · him-selfe with his ost.  
þe pepill out of Persy · quen þai oure prince see, 3208  
þan 3ode þai furthe & vn-zarkid · þe 3atis of þe cite,  
Resayues him fuH rially · with reuerence & ioy,  
Said : “welcum be þou, werraieur · þat aH þe erð loutis !”  
Sone as þir weried wiztis · was ware of hes come, 3212  
þat sloze so þaire souerayne · þat neuire sake hadd,  
þai heze þaim to holes & hyrnes · & hydis þaim belyue,  
þozt, or þai wist of his wiH · þai wald nozt apere.  
þan gase he vp be degrece · the grece maistir, 3216  
Passis in-to þe palais · a paradyce semed,  
Was oñ þe make of þat mote · nozt<sup>5</sup> mervalled a litiH,

The Persians  
welcome him ;  
but some hide  
themselves.

He goes to the  
palace.

<sup>1</sup> MS. 3e.

<sup>2</sup> MS. þai.

<sup>3</sup> MS. þai him.

<sup>4</sup> Famend, altered to Famand.

<sup>5</sup> Here follows we, struck through.



þam afterward of A[lexander] · attelland a mede ;  
 þees *tratours* on þat *trichory* · trouthez hañ *stroken*,  
 Lenden þaim on-loft to þe lord · laghtyn oute *swerdes*. 3193  
 “What sall I dre,” *quod sir* Dary · “my dere worthy  
 childer?

First cald I yow my *elyentes* · þat now I calle *Lordes*,  
 Semys you nott it shuld suffice · my sorow now *withoute*,  
 þat as a bytand brand · me bytes *within*, 3197  
 And sla 3e me þus sodonly ? · þe senyour of grece,  
 He will me wreke on your werke · wers þen of *theffes* !”  
 þar mevyd þaim no *mercy* · bott manly hym woundit, 3200 [Fol. 38 b.]  
 þat downe he heldes aH to-hewyn · þair *handes* bytwene.  
 þen dryfen forth þoo *Domesmeñ* · & halfdede hym *lefes*,  
 Fomand oute of freche blode · & here a fytt *endes*. 3203

### Quartusdecimus<sup>1</sup> Passus A[lexandri].

Q[u]hen A[lexander] of þis atheH · þis *aunturs* had herd,  
 How he was dyght of hys doughty · & to þe deth  
 woundit,  
 He straght hym on to struma · ouer þe streme rydes,  
 Soght on to susys · hym-self *with* hys hostez.  
 þe peple oute of *persye* · when þai þis Prince see, 3208  
 þen 3ode þai furth & vn3arkyd · þe 3ates of þe Cyte,  
 Resaved hym full ryally · *with* reuerence enogh,  
 Sayd : “welcom be þou, weryour · þat aH þe world loutes !”  
 Sone as þees warryd wightez · was war of hys come, 3212  
 þat Sloghen so þair souerent · þat neuer þaim gilt made,  
 þai hyen þaim to holez · & hyden þaim belyfe,  
 þoght, or þai wist of hys wyH · þai wald not apere.  
 þen goyse he vp be degrees · þe greken maister, 3216  
 Passyd vnto þe palacys · þat *paradyse* semyd,  
 Was in makke of þat mote · noght mervaylled a lytyH,

<sup>1</sup> MS. Duodecim.

- bat* compast was of Cusys · *bat* kyng was of Persy.  
 The floor is finely paved. þe flore vndire þe fote · fynely was pauer, 3220  
 Couerd aH of cristah · & opire clere stanes.
- The walls are of pure gold. 3it ware þe wawes of þe wanes · wrozt, as I rede,  
 Polischid aH of pure gold<sup>1</sup> · & of plate werkis.  
 And þat was streken fuH of sternys · & of sere  
 gemmys, 3224  
 With brizt blasynand bees · as bemes of þe soñ.
- [Fol. 55 b.] þe hathiH hedis vp-on heze · & hogely he wondirs,  
*bat* euire suld emperoure in erth · slike ane herde wild.
- Alexander wonders. Quen he had ferlyd his fiH · apoñ þat faire hame, 3228  
 þurze-out þe sale þan he sozt · in-to þe selfe chambre,  
 þare quare þe lord in lay · with laythely woundis,  
 Girdid out as gutars · in grete giH-stremes,  
 3it was þare lyfe in his like · litiH if it semed, 3232  
 At ilk blast of his breth · þe blode fra him glidis,  
 Sire Alexander him avysis · & authly him thinke ;
- He pities him. þe pure pete of his payñ · persid his hert.  
 þan nymes he fra his awyn neke · añ emperoures  
 mantiH, 3236
- He embraces him, And þat he<sup>2</sup> couirs ouire þe kyng · & clappis him in  
 armes,  
 and weeps over him. With grym gretyng & gro · & grysely terys ;  
 " Be comforte I ; be king of Persia once more. Bad : " comfurth þe, *ser conquirour* · & of þi care ryse,  
 Don azayne þe dignite · þe diademe of Pers, 3240  
 And aH þe riztis of þi rewme · resayue as before,  
 My pure powarfuH gods · I prestly pauoure,  
 þine empire & þine erytage · enterely þe to zeld ; 3243  
 Suld neuir na gome be to glade · þofe he grete ware,  
 Of his neȝbour noy · enentis him-selfe,  
 Quen fortune foundis him fra · & him þe fete schewis,  
 And aH þe welth him at-wendis · & þe werd changis.
- Let no man vaunt of his success. Brynge furth þi banes, & with my brand · I saH þi  
 dede venge." 3248  
 þis saze sobband he said · & þe segge wakyns,

<sup>1</sup> MS. gold gold, but corrected.<sup>2</sup> In the margin.

þat Compast was of Susys · þat kyng was of pers.  
 þe flore vnder fute · fynely was pafvyd, 3220  
 Couered all of cristall · & oper clere stonez.  
 3itt wer þe wallez of þe wane · wroght, as I rede,  
 Polyshyd all of pure gold · & of plate werkes.  
 And þat was strengkyllyd full of sternez · & strykyñ *with*  
*gemmys,* 3224

*With* bright blasenand beys · as bemys of þe sonne.  
 þe hatheH hedes vp on hight · & hugely he wounderez,  
 þat euer suld Emperour in erth · suche a place welde.  
 Qwen he had farlyd hys fyll · on þees fair homez, 3228  
 T[h]rogh-oute þe sale þan he soght · vnto þe self chaumbre, [Fol. 59.]  
 þar as þe lord in lay · with lothlyche woundes,  
 Gyrrdand oute as gutters · in grete gylle-stormez,  
 3itt was þar lyfe in hys lyre · lytyll yf it semyd, 3232  
 Att Iche blast of hys breth · þe blode fro hym 3ettes,  
 Sir A[lexander] on hym avysys · & trewly hym thynkez ;  
 þe pure pite of hys payn · persyd hys hert.  
 þen nymmez he fro hys awne neke · ane emperours  
*manteH,* 3236  
 And þat he Couerys ouer þe kyng · & clepys hym in  
 harmez,

*With* greme gret yng & grone · & gryslyche terys ;  
 Bad : “comforth þe, sir conquerour · & of þi care ryse,  
 þu dose ayayn þi dignite · þe dyademe of pers, 3240  
 And þe rightez of my realme · resayve als before.  
 My pure powerfull goddes · prestly adoure,  
 þine empyre & þi herytage · þe purely to 3eld ;  
 Suld neuer no gome be glad · þof he grett wer, 3244  
 Off hys neighbors noye · anentes hym-selueñ.  
 When fortune fundes hym fro · & hym þe fete schewys,  
 And all þe welthe<sup>1</sup> þat he weldes · & þe werld chaungez,  
 Bryng fforth þi banes, & with a brand · þi bale shall I  
 venge.” 3248  
 þis sagh sobband he sayd · & so þe segge wakyns,

<sup>1</sup> MS. wethche.

Darius kisses  
Alexander's  
hand.

Hfyndely hildis him vp · & his hand kyssis,  
þe brest & þe bare necke · & breues þire wordis: 3251

“Ah! Alexander!

¶ “A! Alexander, athiH soñ” · & augrily granys,  
“þe depe distruccion of 3our dome · has many day  
bene<sup>1</sup> knawyn,

All turns at last  
to corruption.

þat aH þe welth of þe werlð · worthis at þe last  
To cayrayne & corupcion · clene aH-to-gedire.  
þe warnes of þi wale gode · þat wist aH before, 3256

[Fol. 56.]

God made man  
unstable,

And fully feld aH þe fare · þat faH suld on erthe;

now up, now  
down.

Oñ þis maner made he man · þurze his miȝt first,  
Suld noȝt be foun in him fast · ne ferme ne stable,  
Bot houande here a hand-qwile · & hingand in payse,  
Now in leueH, now on-loft · now oñ lawe vndire. 3261  
AH werdly þing, I-wis · þurze þe wiH of oure lord,  
In-to þe contrare clene · is at a clamp turned.

Had He given  
men prosperity  
only,

For had he worȝt<sup>2</sup> ay to wees · welth & na nothire,  
So grete had bene vayn glorie · glotony & pride, 3265  
Suld nane haue gessid þat grace · come of god, bot of  
þaim-selfe;

none would  
acknowledge His  
power.

So fra þe makare o mold · suld many mañ haue erryl.

. . . . .  
So feyle had bene þe frelettis · folozand oure kynd, 3268

We should all  
have despaired.

We had bene drawn aH bedene · in-to disspaire clene,  
And of þe godness of god · noȝt a grew<sup>3</sup> traisted.  
For-þi he wald of his wiH · his werkis to be changand,  
þat, quen a hathiH ware ouire hiȝe · in happ & in  
welthe, 3272

God's will is that  
pride should  
have a fall.

þat he knew noȝt his creatour · bi-cause of his pride,  
In-to þe dike of debonerte · droune bud him nede.  
þis was his wiH at it worthid · wene þou na nothire,  
þe gome his god at for-gatt · for any grace here, 3276  
His welth to wite all a-way · & wickidnes apere,  
To ken þe caytefe to know · qua caused him oñ first.

This has now hap-  
pened to myself.

þe same ensampiH of my-selfe · now is betid, þou sees;

<sup>1</sup> In the margin.

<sup>2</sup> For wroȝt.

<sup>3</sup> Here follows st. standing alone.

Hendly halsys hym vmbe · & hys hande kyssys,  
 þe brest & on þe bare neke · & brevys þees wordez :  
 " A ! *Alexander*, athyll soñ " · and augerdly gronys, 3252  
 " þe depe distruccion of þi dome · hase mony day beñ  
 knaweñ,

All þe welth of þis werld · waystes be þe last  
 To caryon & corrupcion · clene all-to-geder.  
 The wyssyng' of þe wale god · þat wist aH before, 3256  
 And fully fele aH þe fare · þat falle shuld on erth ;  
 On þis maner made he mañ · þorow hys myght first,  
 Suld not be funde in hym fastnes · ne ferme be ne stabyH,  
 Bot hofand here an hand-while · & hyngand on payse, 3260  
 Now in leneH, nowe on-loft' · nowe in law vnder.

AH wordly þ[i]ng', I-wys · þorow wyH of þat Lord, [Fol. 39 5.]

Into þe contray clene · is at a clampe turnyd.  
 For hed he wroght ay to wees · welth & none oþer, 3264  
 So grete had beñ vaneglory · glotony & Pride,  
 Suld nane haue gessyd þaim grace · of god, bott of þaim-  
 selueñ ;

So from þe maker of man · myght mony haue erryd. 3267  
 And had he shapyn Ay to shalkez · shendship & illys, 3267\*  
 So fele had ben þe frekes · folowand our kynd, 3268  
 We had beñ drawyn all bedene · into dispare clene,  
 And on þe gudnes of god · noght a dele traistyt!  
 For-þi he wald of hys will · aH warkys to be chaunged,  
 þat, when on athyH was so wele · in happe & in heyle, 3272

þat he knew not hys creatour · be-cause of hys pryde,  
 Into þe Dyche of debonerte · drench must hym nede.  
 þis was hys wille þat it shuld þus worth · wete þou no noþer,  
 The gome þat hys god forgatt · for ony grace here, 3276  
 Hys welth to wyte away · & wrychednes to apere,  
 To ken þe catyff to know · who causyd hym on first.  
 þe sampyH of my Awne self · þou seys nowe betyd ;

So grete I grew of my gods · & gold in my cofirs, 3280  
 þat kindly gods creatoure · I kend noȝt my-selfe,  
 Bot for his feloȝe & his fere · faithly me leued,  
 Pride blinded me. þus prosperite & pride · so purely me blyndid,  
 I couthe noȝt se fra my sege · to þe soile vndire, 3284  
 þat at me failed þan to fynd · fast at myñ eȝen.  
 [Fol. 56 b.] Be þe myrroure now of meknes · I may a myle knawe,  
 If a man be cast down,  
 If any hathill be so hard · with vnhap̄ woundid,  
 So at he hopis him no helpe · of þe heȝe fadire, 3288  
 þan liftis oure lord him on-loft · his langour he breggis,  
 he shall be exalted.  
 In-hanses him in hand-quile · & heues him to welthis  
 So heȝe, þat he for vn-hele · seȝes noȝt his driȝteñ.  
 Let man acknowledge his creator.  
 Lat þan him know his creatour · in kindling of ioy, 3292  
 þat he þat lawene has a lede · may lyft, if him thinke,  
 And he þat bringis him on-loft · breten aȝ to poudire.  
 Let not pride puff thee up.  
 þi saule, soñ, in-to surquitery · lat seke neuire þe  
 hȝhare,  
 For gre þe graunt<sup>1</sup> ere<sup>1</sup> of god · & noȝt<sup>2</sup> of þi grete  
 strenthis. 3296  
 Look to thine end.  
 If aȝ þe limp as þe list · loke to þine ende,  
 For die þe bose, queñ aȝ is done · & ay þi day scortis.  
 My life is like a cob-web, soon blown away.  
 ¶ Me pink<sup>3</sup> my lyfe as to þe lenȝth · is like to þis werke,  
 þat þis coppis opon keȝ-wyse · knytt in þe woȝes, 3300  
 With þe lest winde of þe werd · þat þe werd touches,  
 þe note anentis ilk ane · & aȝ to noȝt worthis.  
 Lo ! so þe quele of qwistsumnes · my qualite has changid !  
 I, who yesterday ruled all the world, am now driven down to dust.  
 I, þat was justirday so ȝape · & ȝemed aȝ þe werld, 3304  
 To day am dreuyñ all to dust · to dolour & paynes,  
 Has noȝt o maistri so meche · as miȝt of my-selfe.  
 My dere soñ," quod Daryus · "it drawes nere þe tyme ;  
 My banes, on my benyson · bery with þi hand, 3308  
 With þe proued princes out of Pers<sup>4</sup> · & with þe proude  
 grekis,  
 And þe maistirlings of Messedoyne · ȝe me to mold bring.

<sup>1</sup> Read is.<sup>2</sup> Added in the margin.<sup>3</sup> MS. Me pink me.<sup>4</sup> MS. Perers.

So grete I grew of my gudez · & gold in my coffers, 3280  
 þat kindly goddes creature · I knew nott my-selueñ,  
 Bott for hys felow & hys fere · faythfully me made,  
 þus prosperite & pride<sup>1</sup> · propyrlly me blyndyd,  
 I kouth noght see fro my seyge · to þe sette vnder, 3284  
 þat at me faylyd to fynd · fast at my eeyñ.  
 Be þe myrrow[r] of mekenes · I may a myle knaw,  
 Yff ony hatheH be so hard · with vnhappy woundit,  
 So þat he hopys hym no help · of þe hye fader, 3288  
 þen lyftes þe kyng hym on-loft · hys langor abreggez,  
 Enhaunes hym in hand-while · & hefys hym on-loft  
 So he, þat ere<sup>2</sup> for vnsele · segh nott hys Dryghtyñ. 3291  
 Lete þen hym know hys creature · in kyndyllyng of Ioy,  
 þat he laghtnes may lede · & lyft when hym thynkez,  
 And þat brynges hym abowe · bryttynd all to powder.  
 þi sawle, sir, into Surquydry · latt sech neuer þe  
 heyere, 3295

[*Leaf 40 is lost.*]

<sup>1</sup> MS. *proride*.

<sup>2</sup> For *ere*, read *he*.

- Let us fight no longer. Lat þan oure kyng-domes a-corde · & cock we na langir,  
Bot ay perpetuall pes · oure partys betwene. 3312
- I commend to you my mother and daughter. Vn-to 3oure mekiH maieste · my modire I comande,  
Rodogarus þe riaH · & rewis on my bride ;  
My doȝtir Rosan þe riche · resayues to 3our spouse,  
[Fol. 57.] It comys wele of hiȝe kyn · kyngis to descend. 3316
- Be kind to my men." Tak tent to þat at I teH · be tendire of my kniȝtis."  
And with þis speke at he spake · þe sprete he zeldis.  
þan was his body enbawmed · &, as he bede, graueñ.  
his bald baratoure him bare · & as a barne gretis, 3320
- Darius dies and is buried. So did þe pepiH out of Persy · bot for his pite mare  
þan for þe dethe of Dary · be dowble of þe twa.  
And Alexander belyue · as he was enterid,  
He meues agayñ to þe mote · & oñ þe morne eftir, 3324
- Alexander mounts the throne. Vp to þe souerayne sege · with Septour he wyndis,  
þat Cusus þe conquirour · of clere gold maked.  
þe mody men of Messedone · þe maistirs of Persy  
þan put þam in-to presens · as þe prose tellis ; 3328
- Darius' crown is put on his head. Sire Darius aweñ dyademe · þai did oñ his hede,  
A coroñ, ane þe costious · þat euire kyng weryd,  
On þe propurest of proiecte · þat euire prince bere.  
þe massy werke was þe menest · made of þe noble, 3332  
þe pride þar-of for to proue · it pynd any cristen ;
- The crown shines gloriously. It gaue so gloriu a gleme · of gold & of stanes,  
þat as þe loge for þe liȝt · lemed as of heuen. 3335
- The throne is of gold. þe sete þare him-selfe satte · in soȝte with þe croune,  
þat was lift a-poñ loft · oñ opire litiH segis,  
Seuyn cubet of clere gold · was countid þe hiȝt.
- It has seven steps ; And vij degrece was þar grayd · for gate vp of kingis,  
And þai ware Ientilly Ioyned · in a Ioyly wyse. 3340
1. of amethyst. þe first añ athil Amatast · as I añ infourmed,
  2. of sinaragdus. And of a Smeth [s]maragadane · Smyten was þe toȝir ;
  3. of topaz. þe thrid of a Topas a-tyred · & trelest & grauen ;
  4. of garnet. þe ferd degre a Granate · a gracious gemme ; 3344
- [Fol. 57 b.] þe fyfte was of ane Adomant · aH-to-geðire makid ;  
5. of adamant. þe sext of gletirand gold · gayle was forgid ;  
6. of gold.





7. of earth. þe ouirmast, aH of þe erth · *with-out* opire werkis,  
Apoñ þis wyse ware þai grayd · & for grete cause. 3348
1. The amethyst  
guards men  
against  
drunkenness.  
þe first was of aH Amatist · þat aH chaye demes  
Riche, said þe romance · & ronkenes of wyne,  
Lattis na dronkynnes<sup>1</sup> þam dere · þat douth at it beris.  
þe same wyse moñ a wee · waite to him-selfe, 3352
- A king must  
be of sober mind.  
A kniȝt at couettis to clym · to kyngs astate,  
Him bus haue warnes him *with* · of wit & of mynde,  
þat he wirke noȝt oñ þe wethire halfe · for wathe apoñ  
erth. 3355
2. The smaragdus  
protects the  
sight; a king  
must see clearly.  
þe s[e]cunde was of Smaragdone · þat ay þe siȝt kepis ;  
Quat berne as beris it him oñ · it briȝtens his eȝen.  
So bus a kyng to consaile · haue a<sup>2</sup> clere hert,  
To se at syttis him to se · & sagely to wirke. 3359
3. The topaz  
reflects an  
inverted image.  
þe thrid was a Topas, I trow · at to þe trone lengis ;  
þat is so clere of his kind · þe clause me recordis,  
þat qua-sum-euire in þat ilk · his ymage behaldis,  
þe face is to þe fold-ward · þe fete to þe firment.  
So comes it wele for a kyng · to know tiH his end, 3364  
How ay þe top to þe taa · is turned at þe last.  
Queñ fortune festis him · he fendis beliue,
- And aH his dignite bedene · driues in-to poudire. 3367
4. The garnet is  
the brightest of  
gems;  
a king must be of  
pure fame.  
þe ferð was a granate, I gesse · goules althire fynest ;  
Is nane so redy, as I rede · of aH þe riche stanes ;  
Slike color aȝe a kyng wele · in consychance to bere,  
þat he schape to na schauadry · þat schend suld his fame.
5. The adamant  
is very hard.  
[Fol. 58.]  
þe fift was all of adomant · as þe buke tellis ; 3372  
þat is he þat is so hard · þat hurt may nane tole ;<sup>3</sup>  
Is nothire stele ne na stane · so stife it may perce,  
And growis out of þe grete see · in graynes & in cragis.  
If any Naue<sup>4</sup> to it neȝe · þat naylid is *with* iryñ, 3376
- It attracts ships. þeñ cleuys it ay to þe clife · carryȝ & othyre ;

<sup>1</sup> MS. droncynnes, *altered to* dronkynnes. <sup>2</sup> MS. ai.<sup>3</sup> MS. thole tole ; *with thole struck out.*<sup>4</sup> MS. auc, *altered to* Naue *in the margin.*

What berne þat berys it hym on · it brightyns hys syght. [Fol. 41; leaf  
 40 being lost.]  
 So buse a kyng to consayve · hafe a clere hert,  
 To se þat sittes hym to see · & sagely to wirche. 3359  
 The thryd was a topas, I trowe · þat to þe trone longyd;  
 þat is So clere of hys kynde · þe clause it recordes,  
 þat who-someuer in þat ilke · hys vysage behaldes,  
 þe face is to þe foldward · þe fete into þe welkyñ.  
 So comys it wele to a kyng · to know to hys ende, 3364  
 Howe ay þe topp̄ to þe toes · is turnyd at þe last,  
 When fortoune fraystes frely hym in-fere · he fyndes hym  
 belyfe,  
 And all hys dignite bedene · dryfys into Powder. 3367  
 The fourte was a granate · þat glowys all þar fynest;  
 Is none so rede, as I rede · of all þe ryche stones;  
 Suche colour aght a kyng wele · in countenaunce to bere,  
 þat he shope to no cheualdre · þat shend shuld hys name.  
 The fyft was all of Adamant · as þe buke tellys; 3372  
 þat is he þat is so hard · þat hurt may no tule;  
 Is noþer stele nor no stone · so styff may it perce,  
 And growys out of þe grete see · in granes & in Craggez.  
 Yff ony navy to it negh · þat nalyd is with Irne, 3376  
 þen clefys it ay to þe clyff · carrak & oþer;

- Bot blode of body, sais þe buke · bees it neuire  
percid,<sup>1</sup>
- Or þe natour of anothire thing · þat nedis noȝt to rekeñ.  
þat same kynd suld a kyng · of his craft vse, 3380
- A king should be  
steadfast.  
So stable & so stedfast · to stand in his werkes,  
þat for na prayere ne pres · ne plesaunce oñ erthe,  
Out of þe rake of riȝtwysnes · reñ suld he neuire.
6. The gold is  
the chief of  
metals ;  
a king should be  
chief.  
þe Sext was of gold · graciously heweñ, 3384  
Of aH metals o mold · þe maistir & þe syre ;  
þe same cure is a kyng · be kind of his leggis,  
To gy & gouerne<sup>2</sup> his gomes · þe gretteſt he is makid.
7. The earth  
reminds a king  
that he is of  
earth.  
þe seuynt vp to þe sege · was of þe selfe erth, 3388  
þat is na mare for to mene · as me my mynd tellis,  
Bot ilka kyng suld him knaw · cried of þe soile,  
And to þe same sustenance · sodanly to worthe. 3391  
þus sett oure syre in his sete · with septoure in hand,  
In pelour & in paH · & proud meñ him by.
- Alexander sends  
out a letter.  
þaH lete he lettres belyue · with ledis out to send,  
þurȝe aH þe prouynce of pers<sup>3</sup> · promicid þis werkis.  
“ þe kyng with-outeñ compere · of kyngis aH othire,  
Of all þe lordis now þe lord · þat leſis apoñ erth, 3397  
Sire Alexander, athiH soñ · of Amoñ his driȝteñ,  
And als of Olimpades · anyly consayued,  
To þe souerayns & þe Senescalls · þe sires & þe maistris,  
And all þe pers out of persy · princes & dukis, 3401  
þe Iustis & þe gentils · & Iugemeñ of lawe,  
Bathe citizens & seriant · salutis of grace.  
Syn it lokid has þe largenes · of þe lord of heuen, 3404  
þat me þis diademe of Dary · demed is & graunted,  
And to be<sup>4</sup> here þus enhansið · in his hiȝe trone,  
þe sall be glad of my degre · & gretly reioid,  
And ordans aquare ouire aH · honourable princes, 3408  
Gouernours & gardens · of all þe grete burȝes,  
As was in Darius days · to deme men þe riȝt,
- Since the diadem  
of Darius is  
granted me,  
let all be  
administered as  
before.

<sup>1</sup> MS. lanced, *altered to percid.*<sup>2</sup> MS. gounere.<sup>3</sup> MS. perers.<sup>4</sup> In the margin.

Withowte blode of body, says þe buke · beys it neuer  
persyd,

Or þe nature of a-noþer thyng · þat nedes noght to rekyn.

The same kynd shuld a kyng<sup>t</sup> · of hys craft vse, 3380

So stabyll & so stedfast<sup>t</sup> · to stond in hys werkez,

þat for no prayer ne preese · ne plesaunce<sup>1</sup> on erth,

Oute of þe rakke of rightwyssnes · rynne shuld he neuer.

The sext degree was of gold · graciously hewyñ, 3384

Off all þe metallys of mold · þe maister & þe syre ;

The same cure is a kyng · be kend of hys leigez,

To gye & goueryne hys gomes · þe grettest is he grathyd.

The Seunte vp to þe sege · was of þe self erth, 3388

þat is no more for to mene · as me þe writte tellys,

Bot euerilke kyng shuld hym knawe · create of þe soyle,

And to þe same substance · sodanly to worth. 3391

þus sett our Syre in hys sete · with septour in hand,

[Fol. 41 b.]

In pelour & in palle · & proude men hym vmbe.

þen lete he letterys belyfe · with ledes oute to send,

þorow ail þe prouynce of pers · pronounsand þees wordez :

“ The kyng withowtyn compere · of kynggez aH oþer,

Of all lordes now lord · þat lefyn vppoñ erth, 3397

Sir A[lexander], athyll soñ · of amoñ hys drightyñ,

And also of Olympades · only consaved,

To þe souerayns & senescallez, · þe syrez & þe maisterys,

And aH þe peres oute of pers · princez & dukez, 3401

þe iustice & þe gentyles · þe iuggez of þe lawe,

Both cytezeyns & sergeantez · salutes of grace.

Seth lukkyd hath þe largenes · of þe lord of heueñ, 3404

þat me þis Diademe of Dary · demyd is & grauntyd,

And to be here þus inhaunsyd · in hys hye trone,

þe shall be glad of my degree · & gretly reiossed,

And ordayns ouer all & ay · honorable princez, 3408

Gouernours & gardens · of all my grete burghez,

As was in Darius days · to deme men þe right,

<sup>1</sup> MS. plesazunce.

And clene all þe client's · to kepe þaire demayndes.  
 Ilk a pepill his possession<sup>1</sup> · in pes mozt he broweke,  
 Let all armour be put away. Armoure & actons · y latt all þat be kepide,<sup>2</sup> 3413  
 Caires þam̃ to castells · & in kinge houses,  
 And none so bald̃, ere I bide · to bere þam̃ na mare.  
 Let the highroad be free." And fra þis marche to Messedone · quils I am maistir  
 here, 3416  
 þe passage in aithire part · sall playn be & open,  
 þe comers out of aithire coste · to caire vndistrobbed,  
 With message & Marchandise · & al manire of nedis."  
 ¶ Now is his pistils aH past · & pese he comandis ; 3420  
 He next bids the slayers of Darius to come to him,  
 " Quilke of my fryndis ere þe folke · þat my faa sloze,  
 þat was þe drepars of Dary · now doo þam a-pere,  
 þat þai may weld for þis werke · wirschip to mede.  
 My mekill miȝtfulH gods · I maynly ȝow swere, 3424  
 And on þe lay at I leue · & be my lufed modire,<sup>3</sup>  
 promising them their reward.  
 þe worthe wage þaim wayne · þat þai haue wele serued."  
 þan all þe pepill out of Persy · pouret out to wepe ;  
 Besan and Anabras present themselves,  
 Bathe Besañ & Anabras · as þe buke tellis, 3428  
 þat ware þe banes of his body · baldly þam̃ shawis ;  
 Said : " we to-hewid him [with] oure handis · hiȝe  
 emperoure."  
 þai wend wele þaim to wyñ · a waryson for euire. 3431  
 þan bad̃ he bernes þaim to bynd · & bringe þaim be-lyue  
 Vn-to þe gudmans graue · & hewe of þaire hedis.  
 " Allas, my lord," quod þa ledis · " & ȝe so late swore,  
 To ȝour worthi gods, ȝour wale dame · we suld no waa  
 suffire ! " 3435  
 as that is the right reward of traitors.  
 " Siris, as ȝe worthi ware, I-wisse · I wate wele I hiȝt,  
 And bot ȝour harmes were vnhid · I held noȝt myne  
 athlis.  
 For sen I wañ in-to þe werld · my witt has bene aye,  
 Quen treid was a trechory · þe tulkis to be hedid."  
 þan he did þaim to deth · as driȝten him praysed, 3440

<sup>1</sup> MS. posseciōn, *altered to possession.* <sup>2</sup> MS. kepis.<sup>3</sup> Here the Dublin MS. ends.

And clene all our clientes · to kepe þair demaundes,  
Iche peple þair possession · in pease myght þai broke,  
Armors & actons · lat aH þat be kepyd, 3413  
Cayrez þaim to castellys · & to kynggez housez,  
And none so bold, or I byd · to bere þaim no more.  
And fro þis marche to massydoyne · whil I am maister  
here, 3416

The passage shall in ather parte · plane be & opyñ,  
þe Comers oute of athir coste · to cayre vndistourblett,  
With message & with merchaundyse · & all maner of nedes.”  
**Nowe** er hys pistellys forth past · & pease he Commandez ;  
“Which of my frendes er þe folke · þat my foe slogh,  
þat wer þe drepers of sir Dary · nowe doys þaim apere,  
þat þai may weld for þair werk · worship & mede.  
My mekyll myghtfull goddes · I maynly you swere, 3424  
And on þe lay þat I lefe · & be my lofyd moder,

[*Here ends the fragment in the Dublin MS.*]

The land is at  
peace.

þe prouynce piȝt is in pes · & princes ere maked,  
An<sup>1</sup> ald derling<sup>2</sup> of Darius · was duke made of pers,  
Request of þe rials · ane of his riche vncles. 3443

Alexander again  
mounts the gilt  
throne,

Oure emperoure, quen þis was endid · erly oñ þe morne,  
With all þa alyens him by · & ancient lordis,  
He gase a-gayne to de-grece · vp to þe gilt trone,  
Dobbed in his diademe · & diȝt as be-fore ; 3447

and bids Roxana  
come to him,

As Dary demed, or he deid · his doȝtir he comandes,

whom he wedd,  
and makes  
empress.

Mad Rosañ þe riche · radly to apere,  
Hire hede vn-helid was oñ hiȝe · & hild aH in trissis,  
Vm-by-clappid with a coronacle · of costious stanes ;  
As þe manere of þat marche was · he wedd hire to wyfe,  
And in þe sege with him-selfe · to sitt he hir makis,  
Comands hire as a conqyres · of knyȝtis to be louted,  
And all þe pepill out of Persy · was passandly ioyed.

The Persians call  
him a god ; at  
which he is  
alarmed.

þai gone agraythen vp þaire gods · on gilden segis, 3456  
Sayed : “ þou ert duke of ilk dome · & driȝtin þi-selfe ! ”  
þan was he fraid in his flesche · bad, “ feyne of ȝour  
wordis !

I am a coruptible kyng · & of clay fourmeȝ ! ”

[Fol. 59 b.]

þañ out onone to Aristotil · & to his awen modire 3460  
Of all his weris & his welth · he wrate alto-gedire ;

He keeps an  
eight-days' feast  
in honour of  
Roxana.

And aȝt daies aH bedene · he dites in his pistiH,  
For reuerence of Rosan · to reveH & halowe. 3463  
Al be þe metire bot mene · þus mekiH haue I ioyned ;  
Forthi, lordis, be ȝour leue · list ȝow to suffire.  
Now will I tary for a time · & tempire my wittis ;  
And he þat stiȝe to þe sternes · stiȝtiH vs iñ heuen !

### Quintusdecimus passus Alexandri.

I will now tell  
you more about  
Alexander.

L ordis, wiH ȝe me lithe · & lestin a stonde, 3468  
Now sall I kithe vs a carpe · of a kyng riche,  
Of þe auntours of ser Alexander · þat aire was of grece,  
How all þe werd at his will · he wañ or he deid.

<sup>1</sup> MS. And.

<sup>2</sup> MS. derlingis.



þe lattir ende of his lyfe · me list ȝow to tēh. 3472

For aH þe first is in fittis · & folowand þe lettir,

The first part  
closely follows  
the original.

And he þat made ȝow þis mirth · oft mynes his saule,

þat driȝtiȝ deyne him to dele · a dele of his blis.

Sone as *ser* Dary was deid · & done out of lyue, 3476

And *Alexander* as<sup>1</sup> aire · had aH for to wild,

When he had  
married Roxana,

Resayued to his riche quene · Rosan his doȝtir,

And was þe croune be-kend · of clene all þus ends,

He gedird him a grete ost · & graythid him to ride,

A powere of þe Persens · & of þe prowde grekis, 3481

þe Messedones & all men · he [maynly] comandis

he proceeds to  
attack Porus,

On kyng *Porus* to preke · & prese him *with* armes.

Now gase he furthe *with* his ging · þe gaynest in-to  
ynde. 3484

and advances to  
India.

þare many daies be dissert · he dryfes *with* his ost,

He comes to a  
desert.

Be hiȝe hillis & howis · & be holuȝe doȝnes,

Be wast & be wildirnes · & be watirles bournes. 3487

[Fol. 60.]

Sone was he wery of þe way · so was his wale kniȝtis;

Menyd þaim þe Messedones · emang<sup>t</sup> þaim-selfe,

The Greeks  
mourn,

þai said, it miȝt be sufficient · þe sesyng<sup>t</sup> of Persy,

And him þat<sup>2</sup> trouage oȝ tyme · has tane of oure eldirs.

“Quat suld we fonde any ferre · now faylis oure  
strent[h]is; 3492

and ask why they  
are to go further.

þis erd of ynde is ilk dele · enhabet *with* bestis,

And he bet willis all þe werd · be weris him to loute,

His flesche is fostard & fedd · be fiȝt & by sternes.

“Alexander lives  
upon fighting,

And were his person in pes · bot for a pure tyme, 3496

þan suld he faile as a freke · at þe fode wantis.

Bot lat vs leue him at longe · & lende to oure hames,

but let us go  
home in peace.”

And pas quedire as him plese · *with* þe proud barbres.”

Sone as oure kyng of his kniȝtis · þis carpe vndire-  
stondis, 3500

He mas to stand all þe stoure · & standis vp in þe myddis,

Alexander  
harangues them.  
“Hear me!

“Bald baratours on bent · blythly me heris,

<sup>1</sup> MS. as ar; *with* ar struck out.

<sup>2</sup> MS. þat se; *with* se struck out.

I am your  
king.  
Ye lightly leave  
me.

Did not I comfort  
you when Darius  
threatened?

I have been in a  
hundred perils.

[Fol. 60 b.]

I will never turn  
my back,

though ye may  
do so."

His princes and  
knights beg his  
forgiveness,

and promise in  
future to follow  
him even to  
death.

All þe pepill out of Persy · ere put in my wiȝt;  
All ware rebeȝt in arest · now is þe rewme<sup>1</sup> ȝold, 3504  
And I your kyng as ȝe know · with croune & with septour.  
And now ȝe leue me þus listly · bot for a litiȝ pyne,  
To caire a-gayne to ȝour kithid<sup>2</sup> · I cañ noȝt þare-oñ.  
Knew ȝe noȝt how in ȝour care · I cu[m]furth ȝow anys,  
Quene ȝe dout so þe dities · of Darus in his pistiȝ?  
Eft quen we ferd in-to fild · & with oure faes mett,  
I was þe first ȝow before · þat þe fild entrid,  
Soȝt in-to Sussys · my-selfe for<sup>3</sup> ȝoure hele, 3512  
In þe habet of Anon · oure<sup>4</sup> allirs driȝten,  
Put my person in plegg<sup>5</sup> · & perils a hundreth,  
And in-to tourment oñ-tald · me tuke for ȝour sake.  
Bot wetis it wele with-out wene · I wene in my saule,  
As I ȝit haue hediretoward · heried all my faes, 3517  
So sall I gete hus ay þe gree · with my gud helpe,  
And for na tene at may betide · turne sall I neuire,  
If ȝe will lend in-to ȝour landis · loke at ȝour hertis!  
Bot me to do slike a dede · driȝtin it schilde! 3521  
I sall neuire graithe me to grece · gase quen ȝow likis,  
Or mare wirschip I haue woñ · for wathe vndire  
heuen." 3523  
Quen he þis resoñ had redd · þañ rewid his princes,  
And of forge[f]nes of þaire gilt · his grace þai be-seke.  
Kniȝtis callis<sup>5</sup> him oñ kneys · said: "kid emperoure,  
All oure life & oure lose · is lent in ȝour handis,  
Oure-selfe & oure seruage · is surely ȝoure aweñ, 3528  
Ai at ȝoure beding to be · oure bodi & oure gudis,  
Quare-euer ȝe wend in aȝ þe werd · in watir or in erthe,  
Ay mekely at ȝour mandment · ȝour maieste to folowe.  
If we suld die aȝ-bedene · at aȝ day tyme, 3532  
We sall neuer spise ȝow ne sporne · in speche ne in dede,  
Ne neuire ȝour rialte renay · bot rede to sewe,

<sup>1</sup> MS. rewe, *altered to* rewme.

<sup>2</sup> Or kichid.

<sup>3</sup> MS. oo, *corrected to* for.

<sup>4</sup> MS. a oure; *with a expuncted.*

<sup>5</sup> Read fallis.

- Quils any blast of oure breth · in oure brest lengis."  
 þan ȝede he furth in-to ynde · & in þase Iles weres ;  
 Queñ all þe iolite of giugne · & Iulus was endid, 3537 June and July  
being ended,  
 And messangers a-poñ þe marche · him metis belyue,  
 Fra kyng<sup>1</sup> Porrus þe proude · þis pistill him broȝt. a letter comes  
from Porus.  
 ¶ "I, Porrus, þat as principaH · possessid aH in ynde,  
 To þis michare out of Messedone · þis mandment I write.  
 þou, *Alexander*, þou Ape · þou Amlaze out of grece,  
 þou litiH thefe, þou losangere · þou lurkare in cites,  
 Sen þou ert destayned to die · & dedely þi-selfe, 3544  
 þat<sup>1</sup> agayn driȝtin of vnde[d]lynes · quat may þi dede  
 vaile? 3545
- Madding marrið has þi mode · & þi mynd changid.  
 Sen god has sent þe with to see · & ȝit þi witt failles,  
 I hope þou wenes at we be like · to þire lethire Persyñs,  
 þat þou þi lordschip to loute · has now oñ late strayned.  
 And for þou fellid has in fiȝt · a fiȝt at was symptuH,<sup>2</sup>  
 Now muses þou to þi miserie · my maicste to bowe. 3551  
 If gomes be gouerners of gods · þan mai þi gesse worth ;  
 And if þe land here on lawe · be lickned to þe heuen,  
 þe ministracion of meñ · to me were to febiH.  
 All driȝtens & dewessis · ere dute of my name ;  
 Ane *ser* Denys, a duke · gane many wintire, 3556 [Fol. 61.]  
"Madness has  
possessed thee.  
Thou thinkest we  
are like the  
Persians.  
 He bed vs bataill oñ bent · & þe back turned.  
 And or þat Sexes him-selfe · sesid was in Persy,  
 At þe marche of Messedone · made vs trouage.  
 Bot for þe<sup>3</sup> partise ere vn-prophetable · vs plese þaim  
 na langir, 3560
- Ai wald þe wise haue wale soile · mare þaH a wast lee.  
 Caire agayn to þi kith · caiteffe, I bidd,  
 Here na lordschip þe limpis · quat list þe disyre."  
 ¶ Sone as þis clause to oure kyng · [was] comyn &  
 deliure,<sup>4</sup> 3564
- Be-fore his bachelers oñ brade · he bedis it to rede.

<sup>1</sup> *Read* As; the usual idiom.<sup>2</sup> MS. symplille.<sup>3</sup> *In the margin.*<sup>4</sup> *Read* deliuered.

Alexander's men  
are afraid.

His tulkis of þis titil · quen þai þe tenour herd,  
þan ware þai sory of þa sawes · & selly frayed.  
“Quat now, my worthe werrayouris?” · þe wale kyng  
sayd, 3568

Alexander com-  
forts them.

“For Porrus pistill, I pray · ne for his proud wordis,  
No for na manas he mas · mayes noȝt ȝoure hertis.  
Did noȝt *ser* Dary to vs write · his pistill *with* pride,  
And all þe berbrens bernis · in bestis þam affyed,  
As lebards, lesards, & lenxis · lions & tigris?” 3573

He writes to  
Porus.  
[Fol. 61 b.]

*With* comfurth of his contenance · his knyȝtis he gladis,  
And þaȝn to Porrus apart · þis pistill he writis.  
¶ “I, þat<sup>1</sup> þe kyng am of kyng[s] · & crouned of lordis,  
þe eldist child of Amoȝn · þat all has to wilȝ, 3577  
And honourd Olimpades · *with* him ane geteȝ,  
To þe oddest aire out of ynȝe · þis answare I make.

“Thou hast made  
us bolder to  
fight.”

I-wis, oure wittis *with* þi wordis · þou has wele scharpid,  
And made vs bald *with* þi bost · þe bataill to ȝelȝ. 3581  
Oure boundis ere barrayne & bare · & þine fuȝ of welȝ;  
þe kenir is oure corage · ȝoure kyng-dome to wyȝ,  
To put away oure pouerte · & pas to ȝoure hiȝtes.  
And ga noȝt, as ȝe gude ware · agayȝ ȝow to fiȝt, 3585  
Bot a berne fuȝ of bost · a barbrene prince,  
Wenand me & all þe werd · to waike to ȝow-selfe.”

Porus is wrath,  
and assembles his  
men;

Queȝn Porrus *with* his preue men · þis pistill had redd,  
þan was he wondirly wrathe · & wiȝtly assembles 3589  
þe kniȝtis & þe captayns · of all þe coste by,  
His champions, his chiftans · his cheualry to-gedire.  
He feris him a faire flote · was feȝ for þe nanis,

also his unicorns  
and elephants,

Of vnicornes, of olyfauntis · & wondirfulle bestis, 3593  
As ilkane vsyd *with* in ynȝe · vmquile *with* to fiȝte,  
And aires agayne Alexander · *with* armes hiȝm to mete.  
þe powere of *sir* Porrus · was passandly many;

and his scythed  
chariots.

A stour stiffe vndire stele · þe strangest of þe werde  
Of sithid chariotis him sued · a selcuth nombre, 3598  
At þe fewist, as I find · a fouretene thousand;

<sup>1</sup> MS. þat at.

With-oute bachelers oñ blonkis · & bowmen oñ fote,  
 Foure hundreth Olyfants in-fere · folowid him enarmi[d],  
 With ilkane bunden on his bake · a borden casteH,  
 And thretty tulkis in ilk toure · tired in platiss. 3603  
 Oure mey-he<sup>1</sup> out of Messedone · quen þai so many saze,  
 þan ware þai storbet of þat stoure · so was þe stythe

He had 400  
 elephants,  
 each bearing a  
 castle.

[Fol. 62.]

Persyns.

AH þe athils of sir Alexander · was arzed in þaire hertis  
 To mache with sike a multitude · of men & of bestis.  
 þan was þir chiftans chosen · cheualous kniȝtis 3608  
 þat buskid ware on bathe halfe · þe bataiH to rewle.  
 With þat þai tuke vp þe trumpis · be thretty at anes,  
 A-grydis grymly to-gedir · þe grekes & barbres.

The Greeks are  
 dismayed.

Sire Alexander was armed · & askis his stede 3612  
 þat was þe bald bocifaloñ · & oñ his bake worthes;  
 Mare þan a stanecast at a count · be-fore<sup>1</sup> his kniȝtis aH  
 He standis vp in his stereps · in starand maylis.

Alexander mounts  
 Bucephalus.

þe men out of Medy · he mas, & of Pers, 3616  
 To enverom alle þe vaward · of aH þe vile yndes,  
 And he was graythid [with] a gingi · of grekis kniȝtis  
 And maistres out [of] Messedone · þis meyhe<sup>2</sup> to helpe.

þe pepiH out of Persye · ware petusly woundid 3620  
 Of Olifauntis ouir aH · with horrible hurtis;

The Persians are  
 wounded by the  
 elephants.

All at vnweried a-way · wynnes in þe stoundis  
 Durst neuir his face to his faes · eft oñ fold bide.  
 Sire Alexander him a-visis · & ames in his wittis 3624

How he miȝt bring it a-boute · þire bestis to deuoide;  
 And mas to beete aH of bras · as bernes it ware,  
 And full of gloranȝ gledis · þaim to þe gorge fillis;  
 Ane instrument aH of ireñ · þare ymage to bere, 3628

Alexander makes  
 brazen men,  
 filled with fire-  
 brands.

Was compast oñ carte-wise · & cursoures þaim dreȝe.  
 þire Olifantis of ynde · quen þai þare-on waite,  
 þai wend þai ware wees · & wyndis þaim agayñ  
 To drepe þaim as þaire first did · disclosid þai þe  
 chaviles, 3632

The elephants  
 attack these,

<sup>1</sup> MS. be before.

<sup>2</sup> Read meynhe.

- [Fol. 62 b.] And sone was snaypid on þe snowte · with þe snart hetis.  
 and take to flight. With þat þai fonge to þe fligt · be fifty at anes,  
 Of ilkañ athill ware þai azed · þat any armes werid.  
 Sone as *ser* Porrus of þe poynte · & o þe plite waytis,  
 þan was he tangid with tene · & turbled vnfaire. 3637
- The Persians and  
Medes attack the  
Indians. þan preses in þe Persyns · & of þe proud Medis  
 With arowis & with othire armes · agayn all þe yndis,  
 Tolls of þe tirantis · & termynd o lyue, 3640  
 Sezes doun on aithire side · a sowme out of nounbre,  
 Thretti dais on a throñ · þai threpid euire elike,  
 So lange at þe lest way · as lastid þe bataiñ.  
 þare was þe Medis martird · & many of Perses 3644  
 Gorred & gais<sup>1</sup> þurze · & grysely woundid.
- Alexander comes  
to the rescue. Oure mody kyng of Messedone · þe myschefe be-haldis,  
 Seis þaim faile so ethfully · & felly was greued.  
 Apoñ þe bald bucefeloñ · brant vp he sittis, 3648  
 Springis out a spere · sperid aH þe platīs.  
 þe brest of þe bataiñ · he baldly a-prochid,  
 Girdis doun of þe grettis · & þe gree wynnys.
- with his Greeks. His awen men of Messedone · maynly þai fezt, 3652  
 So did his gomes out [of] grece · & gate a grete name.  
 Sone discendid þare doun · þe duztiest of ynde,
- Porus takes to  
flight. And Porrus prekis fra þe place · & þe playn voidis,  
 His ledis at left ware o lyue · lendis him eftire. 3656  
 And Alexander in þat angle · aH þe niȝt logis,  
 Offirs all his old gods · his honour þam thankis,  
 As wele þe ynde as his<sup>2</sup> aweñ · he graue þaim aH.

### Sextus Decimus [passus] Alexandri.

[Fol. 63.]  
Alexander takes  
the chief city of  
India.

þe secund<sup>3</sup> day with a saute · a cite he takis, 3660  
 þe proddest ane at Porrus · possessour was<sup>4</sup> euire.  
 He past in-to his palais · & in þe place findis  
 þat semed no synfull saule · þe selcuthe to trowe.

<sup>1</sup> *Read* girt (struck)? cf. l. 3651. <sup>2</sup> MS. he.

<sup>3</sup> MS. sedū.

<sup>4</sup> *In the margin.*

First fand he þare of fyne gold · a foure hundreth postis, He finds 400  
pillars of gold,  
 With crafti coronals & elene · coruen of þe same. 3665  
 Be-twene þe pelers was piȝt · with precious leuys,  
 Gilden wyne with *grapis* · of gracious stanes. and golden vines,  
with grapes of  
pearls  
 Sum were of cristall clere · clustrid to-gedire ; 3668  
 Sum made ware<sup>1</sup> of Margarits · þe mast of þe werd ;  
 Sum was smeth smaragdins · & opire small gemmes, and other gems.  
 And new nychometis · nemellus endentid,  
 þat ware as semely · queñ þai ware samen, 3672  
 And all pargestis of plate · as pure as þe noble.  
 þe Messedons in þam merkid · with þaire mekill brandis,  
 And þe thinnest was a nynche thicke · quen þai ware The thinnest  
plate of gold on  
the walls was an  
inch thick.  
 þurȝe persed ; 3675  
 And þo ware strenkild with stanes · as sterne o þe heuyñ,  
 With charbokl[e]s oñ þe champ · & with chefe perles.  
 Smeteñ was smaragdans · in-to þe smeth werkis,  
 And athill amytists als · in aungels licknes ; There were  
amethysts,  
gates of ivory,  
 Of Euor & of Olifants · was ordand þe ȝatis, 3680  
 With barrers of ane Ebyñ-tree · bonden with cheynes. and bars of ebony.  
 þe Ebyñ, as þe buke sais · brin will neuir,  
 And growis in þe Iles of ynde · as Isodry tellis.  
 þe solers was of Sypirs · all of a soyte makid ; 3684 The chambers  
were of cypress.  
 And Symolacres in þe sale · was sett vp-oñ trones  
 Añ of glittirand gold · as gomes it were, There were  
images on  
thrones of gold.  
 Discheualer with chaplets · of changand hewes ;  
 And ilka tulke a tabernacle · tildid was ouire, 3688  
 And þat was grauen añ grayd · of gilden platis,  
 Flamband all in filour · & fewlis en-blanchid,  
 Mekely merkid & made · of añ manere of kyndis ;  
 And þa ware proudly depaynt · þe pennes & þe wingis,  
 Of all colours to a-counte · as þai ere cled here ; 3693 Also birds,  
marvellously  
[Fol. 63 b.]  
painted,  
with bills of gold,  
 Of fethirhame & añ fare · as feetely enjoyed,  
 As þai ware shapen o þe scheñ · to schew to oure eȝeñ.  
 Bet was all of brent gold · þe billis & þe chaulyls, 3696  
 And, queñ as Porrus coñ plese · in presens of lordis,

<sup>1</sup> MS. wade w ; but corrected.

which sang by  
magic art.

þai made as mery melcdy · & musik þai sanng<sup>t</sup>  
As in þe moneths of Mai · or mydsomere euyñ !  
þare fand he vessale of value · to vyse out of nombre,

Also cups of gold,

Gurds & Goblets · of gold althire-finest, 3701  
Coupis all of cristaft · & opire clere gemmes ;

with but few of  
silver.

þai fande bot a fewe dele · forged of silu<sup>ir</sup>.  
þan rade he fra þa regions · & remewid his hostis ;

Alexander comes  
to the Caspian  
gates,

To þe ȝatis of Caspy he come · & sett doun his tentis,  
A lande, as þe buke tellis · a large & a noble, 3706  
All sauand bot *serpentis* · & opire sere bestis.

and writes to the  
queen of the  
Amazons.

To þe mode qwene of Amazoyne · þan makis him þis  
pistiht.

“ I, þat þe kyng<sup>t</sup> am of kyngs · & kiddist of lordis,  
*Alexander*, athil child · of Amon oure driȝtin, 3710

To Calistride þe conquirese · comfurth & ioie !

Oure weris & oure wirschips · & of oure wale notis,

“ I suppose you  
know we have  
conquered Darius.

How we<sup>1</sup> haue done *ser* Dary · & drepid his kniȝtis,

Couerd all his kyngdoms · & conquirid his landis,

I leue it to *ȝour* ladyschip · þis lange noȝt vnknaueñ.

*With* Porrus in þe playñ fild · proued haue my  
strenthis, 3716

And opire fele, þat ware to faynt · oure force to with-  
stand.

Therefore pay me  
tribute.”

For-þi *ȝour* landis, if ȝow list · to leuire fra oure handis,  
Tas tite vn-to *ȝour* tresory · & trebute vs pays.” 3719

þañ writis agayne þe wale quene · & oñ þis wyse spekis :

The queen replies :

“ I, Calistride, þe conquirese · þat kepis all þis endis,  
*With* þe mery mai[d]ons<sup>2</sup> of Amazoyne · þe miȝtist in  
erthe, 3722

[Fol. 64.]

And othire birdis ebland · þe biggist in erthe,

To þe modi kyng of Messedone · message of blisse.

ȝoure saule sa full of sapient · sedis & floures,

“ Thou knowest  
the future.

þat all þe present is apert · puttis þou in mynde, 3726

And has of cases þat ere to come · a knowlage in dole.

For-þi oure soile or þou seke · vmse þe be tyme,

<sup>1</sup> MS. h we.

<sup>2</sup> MS. maios.



Quat tene & torfare may tide · & tent to þine ende.

þare werraid neuir *with* vs na wee · þat wirschip  
achewid, 3730

All that war with  
us are disgraced.

þat he ne was heried in hast · or had a heȝe schame.

For ilka lered man of lyue · him so lethir haldis,

If he þat for distruccion down · in-to þe depe fallis.

Bot oure werkis & of oure wonynge-stede · if ȝe wald  
knaue, 3734

I sal declare ȝow þe cas · elene by þire writtis.

Oure inhabetting, *ser*, is in añ Ilee · & amed as a sercle,

We live in an  
island,

With rynand all aboute oure erd · añ endles wattr.

And we ere of females at þe fewis · foure & xx Mille,<sup>ti</sup> 1

24,000 of us at  
least.

And twa hundreth þar-to · & all of tried ladis. 3739

A preue planke is at a place · to pas & to entre,

There is a secret  
bridge.

Oure bernis bildis noȝt vs by · bot ouir þe bourne  
wyndis.

Bot ȝet be-ȝonde ilka ȝere · make we vs festis, 3742

And thretti dais all be-dene · oure delitis hauntis.

If any consaue þar a knaf · þan kepis him his modire

If any of us have  
a son, he is sent  
to his father when  
7 years old;  
but we keep the  
girls.

Vij ȝere *with-in* oure-selfe · & sendis him his fadir.

And be scho lyuir of a lasse · scho lengis in oure burȝe,

And is oure thewis of oure thede · thryfandly

enfourmed.

3747

Quen we to feȝt *with* oure faes · fares out of wanes,

A hundreth thousand I hope we be · oñ horses enarmed,

We can raise an  
army of 100,000.

þa leues in oure lede · oure lithis to defend. 3750

Quen we repaire *with* þe palme · þan prayses vs oure feris.

And, buske ȝe to oure bondsward · vs bataiñ to ȝeld,

ȝet sall we maynly oñ þe marche · mete ȝow in<sup>2</sup> armes.

[Fol. 64 b.]

To lithe vs añ if þou limpes · na loung þou gettis,

For þou wynnes noȝt bot wemen · þare-of na worde rysis.

If you beat us,

Bot & god graunt vs þe gree · grete glorie haue we þañ,

you will win no  
glory;  
and otherwise,  
you are dis-  
graced."

For þe athelist emperoure we wañ · euen at oure wiñ.

Be noȝt to sturten *with* þi sturte · to stryue vs a-gayñ,

For many leres may þe limpe · sliik as þou noȝt wenes!"

<sup>1</sup> I. e. thousand.

<sup>2</sup> In the margin.

Alexander laughs, Quen he had lokid ouir þe lyne · he laȝes at hire wordis,  
and writes back. And to þat lady belyme<sup>1</sup> · þis lettre he writis. 3761

¶ “I, Alexander, þat am aire · of Amoñ him-selfe,  
To þe maistres out of Amazoyne · many-fald ioȝes!  
Thre partys of þe proud werde · I playnly haue woñ,  
Affrike & Asye · and Euroþ þat othire. 3765

“No man can  
withstand us.

3it was neuire man a-poñ mold · oure miȝtis to with-  
stand,

And feȝt *with* vs in<sup>2</sup> þe fild; · ȝow fallis þe same. .  
Bot be-cause we lufe ȝour comyng · we consall ȝow blyth  
To pas out *with* ȝour paramours · & pere vs be-forne.

But if you will  
come to me,  
I grant a safe  
conduct.”

On Amoñ oure athill sire · an athe I ȝow make, 3770  
Of vs to suffire na sare · to sauely to wende,

Bathe oure gold ȝow to gefe · & of oure gud kniȝtis,  
To mary to ȝoure maidens · & make þam a-vaunced.”  
Sone as þai wist of his wiȝt · þai wiȝtly him sente 3774

Ten vncorsayd coltis · þe clenest of þe werd,  
And as mony to amend · of milk-quyte stedis,  
Of mony & of mekill quat · mayñ giftis. 3777

They send him  
presents.

Dame Calistride þe conquiris · comes *with* hire ladis,  
Mas hire pes *with* oure prince · & pas to hire landis.

### ¶ Decimus septimus passus Alexandri.

[Fol. 65.]  
News comes that  
Porus has raised  
another army.

þen come a sande to þis sire · in þe same tyme,  
þat kyng porrus þe proud · *with* pers out of ynde  
Was in þe bonds of Batriane · & eft<sup>3</sup> had assemblid  
Anopire ost of odmen · him eft oñ to ride. 3783

As hastely as he it herd · his ostis he flittis,  
And athils harnest oñ hors · a hundreth & fyfti  
Was chosene<sup>4</sup> to chiftans · & all of chefe<sup>5</sup> dukes,  
Ordand of oure emperoure · his ostis to lede. 3787

Alexander goes to  
meet him.

þus pas he furthe *with* his princes · *ser* Porrus to mete,  
In August eftir Iuli · as þe boke tellis.

<sup>1</sup> Read belyue.    <sup>2</sup> In the margin.    <sup>3</sup> MS. oft or ost.  
<sup>4</sup> MS. chosens.    <sup>5</sup> MS. chede, altered to chefe.

Aȝ ware þai swollen of þe swete · & sweltid oȝ þe soȝ ; Some of his men  
die of heat.  
 Sum in þaire harnais for hete · was honest for euire.  
 þai went be waldis & be wastis · þar watirs ware nane,  
 And armed bud þam aȝ bee · for angwischis o bestis, They meet with  
snakes.  
 As colwers & for coltris · & crabbid snakis, 3794  
 And opire warlazes wild · þat in þe wod duelled.  
 As ai stremand sternes · stared all þaire wedis,  
 Of gai glitirand gold · glesenyd þaire schildis.  
 þai droȝe furth be dissert · & drinkles þai spiȝ, 3798 They have no  
water.  
 Was nouthire waldis in þar walke · ne watir to fynde.  
 A kniȝt þat zephall was callid · fand in a cole schade A knight brings  
water to Alex-  
ander.  
 A litiȝ drysynȝ of dewe · was droppid fra þe heuen,  
 þat it was in a holoȝe stane · & in his helme fillis,  
 And bringis it to oure bald kyng · to brigge with his hetis.  
 þan Alexander to þis athill · all þus he spekis, 3804  
 “ þis solayne sope if I sup · quethire sustene it may  
 þe menbris of þe Messedones · & of þe many Persens,  
 Or I my-selfe sall be serued · & þai sitt with nyfils ? ”  
 “ Sire, ȝe sall first be refreschid ” · faythly he sayd.  
 “ Quat ? & ȝe perisch ? ” quod þe prince · “ & pas out o  
 lyue ? 3809  
 Queȝir euir me list þan to lefe · with langour & sorowe ? ” [Fol. 65 b.]  
 And hilds it doun out of þe helme · befor his athils aȝ, and pours it out  
on the ground.  
 þam slike a comfurth þam enclosed · for his kynd wordis,  
 As aȝ þe watir of þe werd · ware in þaire wambs hellid.  
 þan ferd þai furth tiȝ a filode · & findis aȝ þe strandis They come to  
streams full of  
reeds.  
 Fuȝ of Redis, as I rede · rughere þan thornes. 3815  
 His folke feȝ to it fast · & freschely þai drynke,  
 Bot was na<sup>1</sup> renke at to it raȝ · at euire rase eftire.  
 It was so keruand & kene ! · þan was his kniȝtis stroubid  
 Mare for þe bale of þaire bestis · & <sup>2</sup> brist of þaim-selfe.  
 For with his florantis olifants · him folowed a thousand,  
 Of sithid chariotis & soo · & sextene hundreth, 3821 The elephants  
and camels lack  
water.  
 With coȝrres<sup>3</sup> & with clene floure · camels and mules,  
 And out of nounbre of nowte · at nedid to his ostis,

<sup>1</sup> MS. r na.<sup>2</sup> Put for than.<sup>3</sup> Sic.

- Thre C Mil<sup>1</sup> in thede · of thra meñ of armes.  
 All are in great distress. Be now þai ware so neȝe tane · þat þai for nede supposid,  
 Sum of his aweñ vryñ · & sum oñ Ireñ lickid, 3826  
 þat it was sorowe any segge · þe sizt to be-hald !  
 þan aires him on *ser Alexander* · with angwischis & payne,  
 Ay foloȝe furth by þe flumme · at I first tald,  
 And at þe aȝtand houre · I ame, of þe day, 3830  
 þan comes þaim to a castell · was closid in þe borne.  
 It was a mervalous mote · made aH of redis,  
 And foure forlange, I finde · þe flode was o brede.  
 A fewe *within* þe forslet · of folke þare a-perid, 3834  
 Waiteand out at wyndows · to wondire on his ostis.  
 The men in it will not speak. Sire *Alexander* bad his men · aske þaim of ynde,  
 And frayne quare þai find miȝt · any fresch watir ;  
 [Fol. 66.] And þai þañ hent in þaire hedis · & hidd þam belyue.  
 And he felly *with* flane · flingis at þe wallis, 3839  
 ȝit for na speH at he spirid · spek wald þai neuire.  
 And þan comandis he his kniȝt[is] · kenely to swymme,  
 Thirty-seven knights begin to swim, And þai aH bare, saue þe breke · *with* brandis iñ hand,  
 þan thringis in on a throw · thretty & seuyn. 3843  
 Als fast as þai þe forthing-dole · had of þe flode past,  
 þan girds þare vp fra þe ground · & grymly þaim woundis  
 but are drowned by seals. Of Seeles & of see-Bules · a swyth grete nounbre,  
 Droȝe þañ down in-to þe depe · & drouned þañ for euire.  
 þañ zede he þine *with* his erles<sup>2</sup> · & egirly him thristis ;  
 Lebar<sup>3</sup>ds lendis þaim agaynes · leons & beres ; 3849  
 Dragons & dromondaris · & of þir derfe Tigris  
 The army is attacked by dragons and tigers. Fra morne to þe mirke niȝt · þaim maynly assailed.  
 þus razt he fra þis reuir · be many ruȝe waies 3852  
 To it was meten to þe mere · to myd-ouir-vndorne.  
 þan come he streke oñ a staunke · þe store me tellis,  
 They find a pool of sweet water. Was neuir na hony in na hyue · vndire heuen swettir.  
 A foure furelange or fyue · it was of fuH brede, 3856  
 Umby-thorned<sup>3</sup> *with* a thike wod · thre mile a-boute,

<sup>1</sup> I.e. Three hundred thousand.<sup>2</sup> MS. el erles, *but corrected*.<sup>3</sup> MS. Umby-thonred.

Was aH of þe Rede ryse · as I redd first ;  
 And þat he cuttis doun clene · & kindils in fyris.  
 He gert tild vp his tentis · be þat terne syde, 3860 They pitch their  
 þoȝt þare a longe quile to lie · & lachen his esee. tents.  
 þe mone ouir þe montayns · meryly it schynes  
 Or he miȝt drinke any drope · & þen his dole neȝes.  
 þan comes þare-out creuesses · of manykins hewis, 3864  
 Scorpions þaim to scere · & scalid neddis, Scorpions and  
 And þai so large & so laith · & so lowd schrikis, snakes appear,  
 þat all þe soile of þa sidis · of þe sound ryngis. [Fol. 66 b.]  
 Dragons dryfes doun o driȝt · fra þe derfe hillis, 3868 and crested  
 With kene carefuH crie · and crestis on þaire hedis, dragons  
 Grisely gapand & grim · with gilden brestis,  
 And flawmes feruent as fyre · floȝe fra þaire eȝen ; with flaming eyes.  
 þai drewe toward oure douth · with dedly blastis. 3872  
 Sir Alexander & his ost · was arȝed vnfaire, Alexander com-  
 Was þare na freke in þe fild · þat faithly he leued forts his men.  
 To be deuowrid & devoidid · & vencuste for euire.  
 þe kyng þan comfurthid his kniȝtis · all if he care þoled :  
 “ Mi bald baratours,” he baȝ · “ a-baste noȝt ȝoure hertis ;  
 Seis ensampill at my-selfe · & seke ȝe na ferre,<sup>1</sup> 3878  
 Bot hedis haly to my hand · & harmes þar-efire.”  
 A brand & a briȝt schild · bremely he hentis, He seizes a sword  
 Feȝtis freschely & fast · with þa feH bestis, and shield,  
 Dasches dragons doun · geuys þaim depe woundis,  
 Slaes of þa serpentis · many sadd hundreth. 3883 and slays hun-  
 þan bildid of his bachelers · & braidis to þaire wapeñ ; dreds of serpents.  
 If þai ware mased & amayd · maynely þaim feȝt.  
 ȝit was þar twenti þat time · tangid to dede,  
 And þat þe comliest kniȝtis · at þe kyng ledis ; 3887  
 Of athiH archars als · as þe buke tellis,  
 A-boute a thretty in þat thede · tharned þaire lyfes.  
 þus many deid of his douth · as þe boke<sup>2</sup> tellis,  
 And him limpis all þe loose · be þe lattire end. 3891  
 Now comes a company of Crabbe-fische · as calues gret, Great crabs  
 appear.

<sup>1</sup> MS. ferre.<sup>2</sup> MS. beke.

Meuand of þis marras · oure men to assaiH,  
 With backis, as þe buke sais · bigg<sup>ir</sup> & hardere  
 [Fol. 67.] þan ony comon cogiH-stane · or cocatryse scales. 3895  
 No lances could pierce them.  
 Queñ kniȝtis of oure conquirours · kest at þam lances,  
 Was nane so wele-stelid poynt · at þam perse miȝte.  
 Bot gomes with þaire greues in twa · in þe gledis spurned,  
 And aH at left ware o lyue · in-to þe<sup>1</sup> loȝe entirs. 3899  
 Be þai had fyneschid þis fiȝt · was ferre in with euyñ,  
 Foure houres full farne · & þe fift<sup>2</sup> neghes.  
 Lions next appear;  
 And leons quyte as lylly · lent þam agayñ,  
 Of bodis biggire þan bules · berand vnfaire. 3903  
 Oure kniȝtis at þe first come<sup>3</sup> · clenly þaim sloȝe,  
 Alto-bretind þaim oñ bent · & broȝt þaim oñ fiȝt.  
 and then wild boars,  
 Wild berys in<sup>4</sup> þe wast · fra þe wodd comes,  
 With ilka tenefull tothe · as tyndis of<sup>5</sup> harowis. 3907  
 A cubete lenth, sais þe clause · cald was þe lest.  
 þai seke out be sundres · sexti to-gedire,  
 together with savages having six hands each.  
 With wild meñ of þe wast · & women e-bland,  
 With sex handis, & soo · sett out of kynd. 3911  
 þai held in hettirly · & hurtis of his kniȝtis;  
 And þai with brandis & bowis · bremely þaim woundis,  
 Sloȝe of þa sauagyus · a sowme out of nombre,  
 And many scopid into þe scoghe · without scath mare.  
 Sire Alexander & his ost · angwisch enduris, 3916  
 Was waik, as na wondre was · & wery for-foȝteñ.  
 Alexander lights fires all round the pool.  
 And þam he bedis at a braide · to beet vp þe stank,  
 With-out his ost ouir all · horrible fires. 3919  
 A black-headed beast appears,  
 þan come a beste of a busche · with a blak heued,  
 Mad & merkid as a Meere · þe mast of þe werd,  
 Fere fersere þan an olifant · as we find writteñ,  
 [Fol. 67 b.] Stayrand on to þe staunke<sup>6</sup> · þe stour to asaiH. 3923  
 þis breme best bare · as<sup>7</sup> þe buke tellis,  
 Before forne in þe fronte · thre fell tyndis,

<sup>1</sup> MS. to, with in and þe in the margin.<sup>2</sup> MS. fiȝte, altered to fift<sup>e</sup>.<sup>3</sup> MS. cl come.<sup>4</sup> In the margin.<sup>5</sup> MS. l of.<sup>6</sup> Here follows to þe stank, struck out.<sup>7</sup> MS. as as.

Hedous horns & hoge · & hiȝt in ȝaire tonge having three horns.  
 Adanttrocay *with* aȝ meȝ · as I am enfourmed.<sup>1</sup> 3927  
 Before scho drank of ȝis dam · his douth sho assaild,  
 And oure kyng *with* his carpe · his kniȝtis he gladis.  
 Aȝt & tuenti meȝ of armes · onone scho delyuird, The beast slays 28 men.  
 Bernes was diȝt ȝe deth · *with* dintis enoghe. 3931  
 ȝan mys out of ȝis marras · as any mayȝ foxes<sup>2</sup> Then appear mice as large as foxes ;  
 Come furth, & fedd ȝaim in-fere · of ȝe ded corses.  
 Aȝ at was bitten of ȝa best · was at a brunt dede,  
 Bot ȝit ȝai noyed bot a nykid · to nane ȝat was ermed.  
 ȝan floȝe ȝar by ȝe firmament · of ȝa foule Backes, also bats as large as doves,  
 Als store & as stalword · as ȝire sediȝ dowis 3937  
*With* mekiȝ maȝten teeth · as it of meȝ ware ;  
 And at vn-armed<sup>3</sup> was · ȝai asperly wondid,  
 Of sum ȝai nyppid fra ȝe nebb · ȝe nose be ȝe eȝen,  
 Of sum ȝai ete of ȝaire eris · euen by ȝe rotis, 3941 who bit the soldiers.  
 Sum ȝai luggid of ȝe lippis · ȝe lire fra ȝe chekis,  
 Bot ȝar bitis, as ȝe buke sais · blemest na kniȝtis.  
 ȝan come a flȝitir in of fowls · as fast as it dawid, Next come birde of a red colour,  
 To vise on as vovtres · as vermeoȝ hewid, 3945  
 ȝaire boukis & ȝar bathire fete · was of blak sable,  
 And did bot plaid by ȝe pepiȝ · & fed ȝaim on fyschis. but they only devour fishes.  
 Queȝ he had voidid ȝis vermyȝ · & vencust ȝat of ynde,  
 Out of ȝis perlaous<sup>4</sup> place · he past *with* his ost 3949 Alexander comes to Bactria. [Fol. 68.]  
 In-to the boundis of Bactry · ȝar bildid he his tentis.  
 ȝare reches was of redde gold · & many riche gemes ;  
 And clene all ȝat contre · qwen ȝai his come wist,  
 ȝai mett him full manerly · & mekely resayued 3953  
*With* presentes of pirre · & many proude giftes,  
 And thretti dayis in ȝat thede · he tholes & abidis.  
 A sertane folke was in ȝat soile · ȝat Serres ere callid, They meet with the Seres, whose trees have leaves bearing wool (silk).  
 And all ȝe lyndis in ȝat land · *with* leues<sup>5</sup> as wolle.  
 And so ȝire Serres, at I said · ȝaim in ȝe Somere gedirs,  
 And makis ȝaim wedis ȝar-of · to were for wintris blastis.

<sup>1</sup> MS. in enfourmed.    <sup>2</sup> MS. faxes.    <sup>3</sup> vn in the margin.<sup>4</sup> Sic ; read peralous.    <sup>5</sup> MS. levys, altered to leves.

þire baratours bawers · ere bremly reioyed 3960  
 Of þe conquest of þire cocatrices · & of þa kene bestis ;  
 And now he caire[s] fra þat kithe · & comes in a stounde  
 They find Porus. Quare Porrus with his powere · oñ a playn lengis.  
 Sire Alexander & his ost · caires<sup>1</sup> þaim a-gayne<sup>2</sup> 3964  
 With brade<sup>3</sup> baners & brizt · & bragging of troumpis.  
 Apon þe bald bocifaloñ · before his meñ aH  
 He flingis out a forelange · his feris to assaile.  
 They attack his Indians. þe Persens putt þaim in pres · & þe proude grekis ; 3968  
 þe Medis & þe Messedons · maynely þai fezt,  
 þai swey doun as swiftly · þa swart men of ynde,  
 As euire did corne in a croft · be-fore a kene sithe.  
 Sir Porus chal- Quen sir Porrus saze his princes · in þe prese faille, 3972  
 lenges Alexander to single combat. þan aires he out be-for his ost · oñ Alexander callis :  
 “ It comes,” he said, “ to na kyng · ne kidd emperoure  
 To latt his pepill þus pas · & perisch in ydiH ;  
 It fallis mare faire him þe ðzt · to fynescñ him-selfe.  
 Forþi lat stediH aH oure stoure · & stedd þam esoundire,  
 þi semble o þe taa syde · & myne oñ þe tothire ; 3978  
 [Fol. 68 b.] Lat vs twa termyn þe taite · be-twene vs alane.  
 If I be vencust in þe vaile · & voidid of my lyfe,  
 Lat aH my seggis & soile · be to þi-selfe zolden ;  
 And if þou failis in þe fild · & I þe floure wynñ, 3982  
 Latt þañ þine erlis & þine erd · myne empire obeyi.”  
 Alexander was Thus porrus in his hiȝe pride · to oure kyng spekis,  
 but a small man, For he was litiH & laghe · him laythly dispices.  
 For queñ he wañ to wax · þe writt me recordis, 3986  
 only three cubits high. Three cubettis fra þe croune doun · his cors had a lenghte.  
 Porus was at þe person of ser Porrus · past him þat hiȝt twyse,  
 least six cubits in height. He feetis him forth in his force · & in his faire hiȝte.  
 Bot þe prowis & þe prouidens · & of þe pure thewis  
 þat lurkis with-in þis lede · full litiH he kennes. 3991  
 Now is þe partise in pes · & þai þe place dele ;  
 Aithire kyng with his cause · encontres oñ othire.

<sup>1</sup> MS. a cayres.<sup>2</sup> MS. a gyñ gayne; corrected.<sup>3</sup> MS. brade brade; corrected.



Sire Porrus with a proude swerd · him oñ þe pañ strikis  
 So snelle at he snatirs with · nere snaypid him for cuire.  
 þan kastis vp a kene erie · þe kniȝtis out of ynde, 3996  
 For he was dased of þe dint · & half dede him semyd.  
 Porrus, as a prince suld · persayued þar latis,  
 Turnes him toward his tulkis · & titely rehetis.  
 Sire Alexander him avises · & his aande takis, 4000  
 As bald barratour & breme · his brand vp he liftis,  
 With bathe his handis in-to þe brayne · his basenet he  
 cleuys, 4002  
 And he fallis doun fey · & fynes in þat stound. 4002\*  
 þe pepill of ser Porrus · quen þai [him] pas saȝe, 4003  
 With aȝ manere of men · maynly þai fiȝt.  
 “A ! wriches !” quod þe wale kyng · & wisely he spekis,  
 “Eftir þe deth of ȝour duke · quat deynes ȝowe to stryue ?  
 Wete ȝe wele,” quod þe wee · “be werrayours laȝes,  
 þat queñ þe gouernoure is gane · þañ is þe gomes wastid̃.”  
 “Sire, it is better for to bate · & oñ þe bent faile, 4009  
 þan se þis rewthe oñ ȝour<sup>1</sup> renkis · & reft be ȝour<sup>1</sup> gudis.”  
 “Sirs, blynes of ȝour bataile · & bowes to ȝoure landis ;  
 ȝoure fermes & ȝoure fraunches · I frely ȝow grant ;  
 For ȝe haue cockid for ȝour kyng · ȝe sall no care suffice !”  
 And þan callid him oñ knese · & kest doun þaire armes.  
 þai come to þis conquirour · comend̃ him as driȝtin,  
 þan sett he sales vp of<sup>2</sup> silke · & sacrifice makis. 4016  
 Sire Porrus, as him wele feȝt · he proudely enteris,  
 And aȝ þe fey in þe filde · & here a fitt ende.

Porus strikes  
 Alexander's  
 helmet severely.

Alexander slays  
 Porus.

The Indians con-  
 tinue to fight.

Alexander re-  
 proves them ;

[Fol. 69.]

but grants them  
 their liberty for  
 their bravery.

Porus is buried.

### Decimus octauus passus Alexandri.

þan aires he furth with his erlis · & entris aȝ Ile,  
 Quare þir Exidracas as Ermetis · inhabet in caues,  
 A progenie of pore meñ · þat neuir pride hauntis,  
 And ȝit þe gentill genosophis · þaȝ in þe gest callis.  
 Is þare na bost þaȝm ebland · ne bataills vsyd, 4023

Alexander comes  
 to the isle of  
 Gymnosophists.

<sup>1</sup> Read our.

<sup>2</sup> In the margin.

- Nouthire cites in to sytt · cellis, nor na tounes, 4024
- They live in caves,  
and go naked. Bot crepis in-to creuesse · & craggis oñ hillis,  
And ay is naked [as] a nediH · as natour þam schapis.  
þe kyng of þat contre · quen he þe come heres  
Of þis prince & his parray · þis pistiH he him sendis.
- They write to  
Alexander. “We, corruptible creatours · & cald as be-fore, 4029  
To þe mode mañ of Messedone · aH þus-gate I write.  
Sire, it is sayd to oure-selfe · with sere mens tongis,  
How þou comes in-to oure kith-ward · to cumbre vs  
with care, 4032
- [Fol. 69 b.] And þat Vs wondres, I-wis · for wyñ may 3e nouthire<sup>1</sup>  
Nouthire gold ne na gude · at euer gode fourmed.<sup>2</sup>
- “We have no  
gems or jewels. Sen at we Ioy nouthire gemmes · ne Iuwels in cofirs,  
Pelour, pirre, ne perle · ne na proude wedis, 4036  
Ne sauand bot to sustene with · oure aweñ sary craftis,  
What can ye win  
from us?” Quat in þis time may 3e take · if 3e oure termes entre?  
If 3e wiH seke in-to oure soile · & sett vs agayne,  
Oure simplilnes & oure sobirte · forsake saH we neuire.”  
Quen he had lokid ouire þe lefe · a lettre he in-dities,  
þat he aproched aH with pes · & in na plite ellis.
- Alexander finds  
them living  
miserably in  
caves, Quen he was entrid þar erde · & sees þaim all nakid,  
And woñ as it ware wildirnes · in wastis & greues,  
Darke in dennes vndire dounes · & in derne holis,  
And bath þar bridis & þar barnes · with bestes oñ þe  
fellis,<sup>3</sup> 4046
- and asks if they  
have no houses. þan Alexander at þam askis · & all him a-wondres :  
“Haue 3e na houses ne na hames · ne holis in to bery?”  
And þar þai schewid him in schurrys · to schellis & to  
caues, 4049  
Said, “here we ilka day dueH · deuyse how 3ow likis.”
- He is sorry for  
their poverty, Quen he þaire simplilnes sees · he sorozes in his hert,  
Pleynes of þaire pouerte · & profurs þaim fuH faire,  
and offers them  
whatever they  
like to ask. “Quat euire 3e wiH in all þe werd · or I wend, askis,  
And I sall gladly 3ow geue · with a gud wiH.” 4054

<sup>1</sup> Read neur?<sup>2</sup> MS. fourmned.<sup>3</sup> MS. fild fellis; corrected.

"Sire, neuire to dee," *quod* þai þaṅ · "bot cuire dure  
o lyue,

They ask for  
immortality,

þat we desire 3ow bedene · & þan do vs na mare."

"Be driȝtin, sirs, I am a duke · dedelike my-selfe,  
Forþi vnde[d]lynes to dele · I dowe be na ways." 4058

which he cannot  
give.

"Now seṅ it worthis," *quod* þa wees · "wriche, for to  
die,

Quarto hizis þou fra half to halfe · & all þis harme  
wirkis?" 4060

"Sire, be my crowne," *quod* þe kyng · "þe cause at I [Fol. 70.]  
haue

Is purly gods prouidens · predestayned it is before.

3e se, wele seldom is þe see · with him-selfe turbild

Alexander says,  
"The sea is raised  
by winds;

Bot with þir walowand windis; · my wiȝt ware to rifte,

Bot a-nopir gast, & noȝt my gast · þar-of my gast lettis; "

so is my spirit  
stirred by a  
higher spirit."

And wendis a-way with þat word · & wemles þaim leuys.

þe secunȝ day with vp soṅ · he with his sowme neȝes,

Quare þire Imagis ere þat Arculious · had in aṅ Ile rerid.

He finds statues  
set up by  
Hercules.

þe tane was aȝ athiȝ gold · of siluir þe tothire, 4069

Twelwe cubettis fra þe topp̄ down · & twa was þe brede.

He made his pepiȝ þaim to perse · to prone þam with-in,

Quethire þai ware hologhe or hale · & hale he þam fyndis,

Saze þaim thike þurȝe-out · & aithire thriȝ stoppis,

And fillis þam florentis · a fyftene hundreth. 4074

þaṅ drafe he þine with his dukis · in a deyne entris,

He comes to a  
dark desert.

A wilsom wast & wild · & wondirly colde, 4076

As mirke as any mydriȝt · queṅ þe mone failes,

þat vnnethes ken may a kȝt · to se to his fere.

Fifty days be desert · he foundis with his folke, 4079

Tiȝ he come blesenand oṅ a brym · was welland hate,

He next finds a  
hot river,

And oṅ þe ferre halfe of þe bourne · was wemen oṅ hors,

þat frely faire ware of face · bot foule ware clethid.

Sum beris all of brent gold · brandis in þaire handis,

and finds there  
armed women.

Sum bataiȝ-axes & with bowes · aȝ of briȝt siluir,

For brase is nane with þa bonds · ne no bige Ireṅ;

Ne neuire na berne þam ebland · as þe buke tellis. 4086

He cannot cross  
the river for the  
dragons.

þaṇ wald his<sup>1</sup> pepiH & his princes · haue past ouir þe  
bourne,

[Fol. 70 b.]

And miȝt noȝt for þe morsure · & maynyng of bestis,  
It was so borely & brade · & bred full of ydres, 4089  
Of dragons & of othire deuyls · & doukand neddirs.  
þan caires furth oure conquirour · with his kid ostis,  
Lede þam be þe left side · of þe lande of ynde, 4092

He comes to a  
dried lake.

Sone was he dreuyṇ with his dukis · in-to a dryi meere,  
Was full of gladen & of gale · & of grete redis.  
þan snyȝes þar, out of<sup>2</sup> þat snyth hiH · as with a snyales  
pas,

He finds a  
monstrous  
animal,

A burly best with a bake · as bedeH as a saȝe, 4096  
Keue tethe as a knyfe · a cowdrife breste,  
Of sembalaunce as a see-bule · & sloȝe him twa kniȝtis.  
Wald þar na brande in him bite · ne no bigge launce,  
Bot alto-maukid hire with maces · & mellis of Ireṇ.

which his knights  
kill.

A twenti dais ouire ten · with torfare þai ride ; 4101  
To þe formast forest of ynde · oure folke<sup>3</sup> all aprochid.  
Euyṇ at þe flode of Eumare · oure emperoure logis,  
And at þe xj houre · I ame, as it ware, 4104

A great number of  
elephants attack  
them.

Of Olifants out of þe ways · aṇ endles nounbre  
Come with a carefuH crie · oure kniȝtis to assaiH.  
A-poṇ þe bald Bucifaloṇ · he bremely ascendis,  
Bedis of his swiers ga swyth · & swyne with þaim take.  
þai ware a-baiste all belyue · as þe buke tellis, 4109  
þat durst na berne oṇ þe bent · a-bide bot him-selfe.

Alexander com-  
forts his men.

“Be noȝt a-baist, my bachelars” · þe bald kyng sayd,  
“For with þe sweling of þe swyne · we saH þaim aH  
voide.” 4112

And so þai did al bedene · & sum oure douth sloȝe,  
Tuke out þe tuskis & þe tethe · & ternen of þe skinnis.  
þat oȝer dai be desert · þam destaned to ride,  
Be þe wild ynde woddis · & wemeṇ þai faunȝ 4116

[Fol. 71.]

With baie hedes as a barne · & berdis to þe pappis,

<sup>1</sup> MS. *repeats* his.

<sup>2</sup> MS. if, *altered* to of.

<sup>3</sup> In the margin.

And had na hattir þam to hele · bot hidis of bestis. They next find  
bearded women,  
 His seggis sesid of þam sum · & to him-selfe broȝt,  
 And he þaŋ askid þaŋ of ynde · & at þaŋ enquires,  
 Quat was þaire viaunce in þa vales · “ser, venysoŋ,” þai who live by hunt-  
ing.  
 said, 4121

“Slike as we haunt in þar holis · with hunting in tymes.”

þen ferd þai furth all in fere · & to fild comys,  
 Euyŋ to þe heued of Eumaure · as I first rekend. 4124  
 þare fand þai bernys & bridis · & aȝ bale-nakid, They find naked  
people,  
 At was resild as a resch · & roghe as a<sup>1</sup> bere.

ȝit was þe custoŋ of þar kinde · as þe clause tellis,  
 Als wele to bide in þe bourne · as oŋ þe brade laude. who are ampli-  
bious.

Onone as þai oŋ Alexander · & oŋ his ost waites, 4129

þai flee as fast in-to flode · & to þe founce plangid.

þan ferd þai furthe be þe frithis · fiftene dais.

And sa þai willid in-to a woȝ · was fuȝ [of] wild They come to a  
wood of rhi-  
noceroses.  
 bestis,

Rynoceros, as I rede · þe romance þam callis; 4133

And þai assembild oŋ oure seggis · bot þai ware sone  
 drepid.

þaŋ sexti days with his seggis · he soȝt be disert,

Till he was woŋ in-to a werd · aȝ of wast fildis, 4136 Next, to a vast  
plain.

Quare nouthire holtis was ne hilles · ne no hiȝe [h]eggis,

Bot aȝ as planir & as playŋ · as a playŋ table.

Eueŋ at þe ellenynt houre · or euynsange tyme, 4139

Quen he had tild vȝ his tentis · turbils þe welkeŋ; A great storm  
arises.

þe semblant sorowis of þe soile · & þe soŋ wadis,

þe werȝ wannes at a waȝ · & þe wedire glounes.

þan feȝ a fiȝt & a fire · betwene þe foure wyndis, Four winds blow  
at once,

Aquiloun & Afrike · & ewrus þe thrid, 4144

Vulturmus þe violent · þat voidis down þe leuys, [Fol. 71 b.]

þe south & of aȝ sydis · sadly þai mete,

A breme blast<sup>2</sup> oŋ þe bent · as þe buke tellis,

þat aȝ þaire tents it to-terid · & turned down þe hallis; which destroy  
their tents.

þar paulyoŋs of pirre · þaire payntid clathis 4149

<sup>1</sup> MS. inserts *abr, struck through*. <sup>2</sup> MS. A breme a blast.

The army is  
disheartened.

It alto-schatird, & to-scaled · þam in sondire.  
 þaṅ was kniȝtis of þe case · kenely affraid,  
 And ilka segge be him-selfe · said<sup>1</sup> vn-to othire, 4152  
 “ þe writhe of þe wale god · I wate, oñ vs liȝtis,  
 For oure founding ouire his forbod · so ferre to þe est.”  
 þan comforthis þaim þe conquirour · & carpis oñ þis  
 wyse,  
 Bad, “ baise ȝow noȝt, my baratours · ne batīs noȝt ȝour  
 hertīs, 4156

Alexander tells  
them it is only  
the equinoctial  
gale.

It is na greme of oure gode · ne grefe at vs fallis,  
 Bot þe entring of þe equinox · it euire elike-dele kyndils.”  
 Sone as þe wedire wex wele · & þe wynde pesid,  
 As, be þe bale neuir so breme · it blynnes at þe last,  
 þan ferd þai forth fra fild to fild · & freschly assemblis  
 All at was sperpolid on þe spene · & spilt with þe blastīs.  
 ¶ þan fandis he furth, as I fynd · fyue & twenti days,  
 Come to a velans vale · þare was a vile cheele, 4164  
 Quare flaggis of þe feH snawe · feH fra þe heuen,  
 þat was a-brade, sais þe buke · as battīs ere of woH.  
 þan bett he many briȝt fire · & lest it blin nold,  
 And made his folk with þaire feete · as flores it to trede ;

They light large  
fires.

þe hete was þam a hoge helpe · & hettirly it voidis,  
 And ȝit was perischist, or he past · a part of his kniȝtis.  
 þaṅ vmby-clappis þaim a cloude · & couirs aH ouire,  
 As any pynaund pik · þe planetīs it hidis, 4172  
 And þat so thestir & so thik · a thre dais eftir,  
 þai saȝe na leme of þe lyft · ne liȝt of þe soñ.

[Fol. 72.]

A thick cloud  
surrounds them.

Sparks of fire fall  
like rain,

þan feH þar fra þe firmament · as it ware feH sparkīs,  
 Ropand down o rede fire · þaṅ any rayñ thikire ; 4176  
 þaire cabons & þar couertours · it kindils oñ a lowe,  
 And aH þar pauillions of pall · it to poudire wastīs.

which burn up  
trappings and  
banners.

It tinds on tend lowe · trappour of stede,  
 And many costious costis · consumes in-to askis, 4180  
 Bages & baners · it blemyschid & swellis,  
 And quare it neȝes oñ þe nakid · it noȝis for euire.

<sup>1</sup> In the margin.

- þan knelis down oure conquirour · & callis on his driȝtins, Alexander prays,  
 Giffe þam siluir & so · & <sup>1</sup>sens at þaim castis. 4184
- Vnneth his <sup>2</sup>prayer was past · quen purid all þe cloudis,  
 And stint was all þe stikiȝ stormes · in a stand-quile. and the storm  
ceases.
- þen rade he in aray · remowis his ostis,  
 To þe grete flode of Gangem · & graythid þar his tents. Alex. and Dind.,  
p. 6.  
 His bernis blischis ouir þe bourne · & on þe banke saȝe They come to the  
Ganges.  
 Quare thre wees in a wraa · welk þaim allane. 4190 Alex. and Dind.,  
p. 7.  
 Sire Alexander bad añ athil · aske þeȝ of ynde, Three men ap-  
pear,  
 Quase þai ware, quethin þai were · & of quat kind.  
 And þai him swiftly swarid · with a swete steuyn,  
 “We ere bald Bragmenys · þat neuir bale thoȝt.” who say they are  
Brahmans.
- þan list þe lord on his lyfe · haue with þat ledis spoken,  
 Miȝt he haue woȝn ouir þe watir · for wounding of bestis,  
 As see-bule & serpentis · & soukand locerhes, 4197 [Fol. 72 b.]  
 Bathe eddirs & asgres · & atterand wormes.
- þire Cocatrice in creuensis · þar kindiles þai brede, The river is full  
of crocodiles,  
scorpions, and  
snakes, except in  
 Scorpions many <sup>3</sup>score · scautand neddis; 4200  
 And all-way bot in angwisch <sup>4</sup> · as þe buk sais,  
 And saue þe Iolite of Iuly · þai Iowke in þa strandis. July and August.  
 Queȝ he <sup>3</sup>persayued be na poynt · at he pas miȝt,  
 þan was he sary in þat siȝe · & sadly he pleynd,  
 Callid to his carpentars · & of his kid wriȝtis, 4205  
 Bad make him boun at a braide · a barge all of redis. Alexander has a  
boat made, and  
 Quen it was done at his diuise · & draȝen ouer with  
 hidis,
- Pared & parreld at his pay · pickid & taloghid, 4208 Alex. and Dind.,  
p. 8.  
 þan bowes þarin a bachelere · to bragmeyn he wendis, sends a letter  
across.  
 To þe souereayȝ sire of þe soile · & sesid him þis pistiȝ.  
 ¶ “I, þat kyng am of kyngis · & crowned of lordis,  
 Alexander þe aire · of Amone oure driȝtin, 4212 “Alexander, son  
of Ammon, greets  
king Dindimus.  
 And of þe quene Olimpades · þat I am of sprongeȝ,  
 To þe, ser Dindyȝ, on þi dese · dities of Ioye.  
 Sen we chapid out of childhede · & cheued to eldire,

<sup>1</sup> Above the line.<sup>2</sup> MS. Vnneth is his; *with* is underlined, and his above the line.<sup>3</sup> In the margin.<sup>4</sup> Read august.

Alex. and Dind.,  
p. 9.

[Fol. 73.]  
You differ from  
us greatly.

It cannot harm  
you to impart  
knowledge about  
yourselves.

Alex. and Dind.,  
p. 10.

Take the case of  
a bright candle ;  
its light is not  
lessened, though  
it lights others."

Dindimus sends  
an answer.  
" Dindimus to  
Alexander.

Alex. and Dind.,  
p. 11.

We have dis-  
cerned your  
desire.

No king can  
dispense with  
wisdom.

*þat* we cuthe any-gates gesse · betwux gud & ih̄, 4216  
Syne was oure wiȝh ay with witt · to warisch oure saule,  
And kest out all vnclennes · & clene it deuoidid̄ ;  
For *þe* philisophour in his fourme · vs feetly declares,  
*þat* saze with-uten sapience · it seldoum aproues. 4220  
And it is wayued̄ vs to wete · & warned now late,  
*þat* aȝh oure leuynḡ & oure lazes · *ȝe* wetirly dispice,  
And *ȝour* manars fra all othire mens · so mekiȝh ere  
deffirrid,

*þat* nouthire in see ne in soile · seke *ȝe* na helpe. 4224  
Bott deyned it *ȝour* doctryne · bedene vs to write,  
*ȝoure* customes & *ȝoure* conscience · & of *ȝour* clene  
thewis,

We miȝt sum connynge *per* cas · chach̄ of *ȝoure* wordis,  
And *ȝour* lare of a leke · suld neuire *þe* les worthi. 4228  
Slike similitude of science · is sett, as of kynde,

As of a blesand brand · or of a briȝt candiȝh.  
For many liztis of a lizt · is liztid othire-quile,  
And *ȝit* *þe* lizt at þam̄ liztis · is liztid as before." 4232  
Queȝ he had waytid ouer þis writtis · his mynd he  
remembris,

And be *þe* same sandismaȝ · him send sike anothire.  
¶ " I, *ser* Dindimus, a duke · *þat* neuire deere wroȝt,  
Blith berne on my benke · *þe* Bragmeyns maistir, 4236  
To *þe* modi kyng of Messedone · þis maundment I  
write.

Sire Alexander, *þe* athiȝh · at aȝh *þe* werd loutis,  
Sire, *þe* tenour of þi titiȝh · I trow, be na mare,  
Bot anly wisdom̄ & witt · þou willis in þi saule. 4240  
And bettir it is to pine a-bofe · þaȝ buschels of siluir,  
And mare passand of prisse · þaȝ all þi proude rewmes.  
Sen *ȝe* discrecion disire · we depely *ȝow* pray ;  
For a kyng with-uten cunnyng<sup>1</sup> · he can noȝt distreyne  
His subiectis, & to be<sup>2</sup> subi[e]ctis · as subiectis aȝe,  
Bot subiectis tiȝh his subiectis · his subiectis him makis.

<sup>1</sup> MS. cunmynge.

<sup>2</sup> In the margin.



þou prayes vs to þi<sup>1</sup> person · a pistiH to<sup>2</sup> write 4247  
 Of all oure lefyng<sup>1</sup> & oure laȝes · & oure land techis ;  
 Quare-of þe proces to preue · vnpossible it were, [Fol. 73 b ]  
 And if we did it to dome · it dose ȝow na gude. 4250  
 For þi tent is aH on terrandry<sup>3</sup> · & tourment of arnes,  
 In bost & in bobans · in bataills & stryuis,  
 A craft till oure condicions · at a-cordis bot litiH ; Your customs  
 For simplines & surquetry · a-sewis noȝt to-gedire. 4254 agree not with  
 Bot leue ȝe noȝt we be to heȝe · ne hanten of wiH ours.  
 To steryn or to sturtyñ · or sterid to enny ;  
 A partie of oure *propertes* · & of oure pure thewis Alex. and Dinē.,  
 ȝit sall I send ȝow to say · sen ȝe me soȝt haue. 4258 p. 12.  
 Yet think not I  
 grudge telling  
 you.

## ¶ Decimus Nonus passus Alexandri.

Sire, we þe Bragmeyns blode · birdis & othire, We are lowly  
 A lowly lyfe in oure land · we lede, and a clene. Brahmans.  
 All ydolatris in oure Ile · ere vttrily devoidid,  
 & to na syñ vndire soñ · a-sent we vs neuire. 4262  
 AH þat ouire mesure is to mekill · emell we declyne, We live a simple  
 And nouthire couet we na corne · bot þat vs kind life.  
 leues,  
 þat is þe filling<sup>4</sup> of fode · þat ilk flesch askis, 4265  
 And þar-to suffirand oure-selfe · & sobire as a maydeñ.  
 Hald we no hors for na harow · ne na horned stottis,  
 Ne nauthire sondire we þe soile · ne na sede sawis, We plough not.  
 Seke we neuire no sustinance · to saue *with* oure lyuis. We sow not.  
 Set we na saynes in þe see · ne sese we na fischis, We fish not.  
 Ne nouthire hunt we ne hauke · ne hent we na foules, We hunt not.  
 Bot sike as growis oñ þe gronde · *with*-outen gomes [Fol. 74 ]  
 werke. 4272  
 And þat we fede vs *with* in-fere · & fillis fuH oure tables,  
 A dayntefull diete · þat damage vs neuire. We desire no  
 dainties.

<sup>1</sup> In the margin.      <sup>2</sup> MS. inserts pis, struck through.<sup>3</sup> MS. terranrry, alt. to terrandry.<sup>4</sup> MS. filning, corr. to filling.

- Alex. and Dind.,  
p. 13.  
We never eat too  
much,  
  
and are always in  
health.  
  
We need no  
medicine.  
  
We die at a fixed  
age.  
  
We use no fire.  
  
We flee lusts.  
  
Alex. and Dind.,  
p. 14.  
We slay the foes  
within us;  
  
thou fightest  
against outward  
foes.  
  
[Fol. 74 b.]
- Haue we no cures of courte · ne na cointe<sup>1</sup> sewes,<sup>2</sup>  
Swanes ne na swete thing<sup>1</sup> · to sweft oure wames. 4276  
All superfluyte of soule · & surfet vs wlattis,  
To pegge vs as a peny hoge · þat praysis nozt oure lazes.  
Forþi failis vs all infirmit[e]s · of fleuyre & of ells,  
Ne for na febiH at we fele · na fysyke vs nedis. 4280  
Vs mistris neuire na medcyne · for malidy oñ erthe,  
Bot ay as fresche & as fere · a[s] fisçh quen he plays.  
Oure lord has lemett vs elike · þe lenthe of oure days,  
For þar leues na lede in oure lande · langire þan othire.  
If he be sexti ȝere of sowme<sup>3</sup> · þat a segge lastis, 4285  
His successoure has bot þe same · & þan þe saule ȝeldis.  
We chaufe vs at na Chymmneys · for chelis of wintir,  
Ne comes na clathis oñ oure corps · for na cald wyndis.  
We bede nozt to blemysch oure blode · with bodely  
dissires. 4289  
Perseuerance of pacience · & pes we reserue;  
Oure inward enmys ilkane · we inwardly drepis,  
þat is to say, aH þe syñ · at solp may þe saule, 4292  
As surfet, surquidry, & slawth · þe seuyñ aH bedene;  
So þat oure werraours without · vs worthis nozt at drede.  
For wele sonere is a cite · sesid, or a casteH, 4295  
þat segid is oñ bath sidis<sup>4</sup> · [than] þat segid<sup>5</sup> is with-out.  
And þou wrikis bot oñ þa witerward · & worthis þaim  
ouire,  
And suffirs so within þi flesche · þe faes of þe saule.  
And we sitt all-way so sure · be sand & be wattir,  
þat na supowett vndire soñ · seke we vs neuire, 4300  
Ne schroude to scheld with oure schap · bot þe schire  
banes,  
And with þe branches of þe bowis · þat beris vs oure  
fodis.  
Haue we na deliteable drinke · of diuerse wynes,

<sup>1</sup> MS. comite; but indistinct.<sup>2</sup> The former e in sewes is above the line.<sup>3</sup> The me added above the line.<sup>4</sup> MS. sidid, alt. to sidis.<sup>5</sup> MS. gegid, alt. to segid.

- Bot watir of a wale weſt · or of a wild bourne. 4304 We drink of a well.
- And þat sullepe sire · at sett aſt þe werde,  
In him we lely<sup>1</sup> beleue · & in na laze ellis.
- In all oure dizaſs oñ daies · þat duke we comend,  
Wele wenand in anothire werd · to woñ ay o-lyue. We praise God in all things.
- And quat as pertenyſ to na profe · vs pleſe noȝt at lesteñ,  
Ne mekills<sup>2</sup> mellis noȝt oure mouth · bot meſure oure wordis. Alex. and Dind., p. 15. 4310
- Quen as we ſpeke any ſpech · we ſpeke ai þe treuth,  
And þan is ſtill as a ſtane · & ſtirſ it na ferryñ. We always ſpeak the truth.
- Riches ne no rede gold · roſe we þam nouthire,  
Bot ay voide of enuy · & of vayne thoȝtis. 4314 We are not covetous, nor envious.
- Is þar na berne vs eblande · biggʳ þan anothire,  
Of land ne of lor[d]ſchiþ · bot all elike ſimple.  
þe pouert of oure perſoñs · for plente we hald, 4317  
þe quilke<sup>3</sup> is part vs, aſt þe pake · be parcellſ euyñ.
- Is þar na brag in oure bondis · ne bering of armes,  
B[o]t ay perpetuall peſ · piȝt iñ oure landis. 4320 We forſake warfare.
- Ne nouthire Iugement ne layH · ne Juſtice of aire ;  
For doſe na douth þar no dere · to dome to be callid.  
Ne cuſtome in oure contre · contrariſ oure lazes,  
Is þar na mercy ne methe · in oure marche vsyd ; 4324 We ſhew no mercy.
- And I ſall quethe þe forqui · & quat is þe cauſe :  
þar doſe na modirſoñ o-mys · na mercy to craue,  
For auyrice & errogaunce · & aſt we devoide,  
And to na licherous luſtes · leeue ve<sup>4</sup> oure membris,  
A-vowtri ne na vayne glorie · ne na vice hauntis, 4329 Alex. and Dind., p. 16. We flee luſts.
- Ne neuire to-pliȝt worth a perle · to-ponyſcht be-fore.  
Fynd we na faute in na freke · þat vs emange duellis,  
For ay oñ reſon & oñ riȝt · rewelle we oure-ſelfe. 4332  
Ne ſeȝes na ſegge of oure ſede · ſodanly of lyue,  
For þe aire within oure habitacle · is ai vñ-corumpid.  
Nouthire to toly ne to taunde · transmiſte we na vebbiſ,  
To vermylioñ ne violett · ne variant littis. 4336

<sup>1</sup> MS. lyly lely ; *with lyly ſtruck out.* <sup>2</sup> *Read mekill.*<sup>3</sup> MS. quikke ; *wrongly.*<sup>4</sup> *Sic ; for we.*

Our wives wear  
no finery of any  
kind.

Oure paramours vs to plesse · ne pride þaim bewenes,  
Nouthire ffurrers, filettis, ne frengs · ne frettis of perle.  
Is þam na surcote of silke · ne serkis of raynes,  
Ne kirtils of camlyn · bot as þam kynd leues. 4340  
Ne neþe we neuire þaim on nȝt · to naite for na luste,

Alex. and Dind.,  
p. 17.  
We never use a  
bath except the  
dew.

Bot for to sustayne oure sede · & syñ ay to voide.  
Make we na salues for na sares · ne na somir-bathis,  
Bot *with* þe wale dewe · & *with* þe warme soñ. 4344  
Howe durst any be so bald · to blemysche for schame  
þe hand-werke of þat hiþe gode · þat aH oure hapþe  
haues ?

All are equal  
amongst us.

List vs na lordschips lache · of ledis as oure-selfe,  
For all oure libertes elike · ere lante vs & payسد ; 4348  
And to sett him in-to seruitute · a syñ vs it thinke,  
þat god has fourmed to be free · & to his face licknud.<sup>1</sup>  
Make we na vessaH of virre · ne of na clere siluir,  
Ne store staned strenthis · ne na stithe hames, 4352  
Manere mynstre, ne mote · ne marbryn werkis,

We dwell in  
caves.

[Fol. 75 b.]

Bot duells here in disolat<sup>is</sup> · in dennes & in cauys ;  
Ne nouthire housing we haue · ay quils we herē dueH,  
Bot at is fetid of flesch · & of na fraunche piers ;  
þat is þe carious kistis · þat couers þe saule, 4357

Alex. and Dind.,  
p. 18.  
We do not go to  
sea.

A full faynt forcelett · & of feñ makid.  
We ere na sailers on þe see · to sell ne to byi ;  
Ne rede we neuire na retorik · ne rial to speke ;  
Bot certis in aH simplilnes · sett we oure wordis, 4361  
þat lat<sup>is</sup> neuire lesing · in oure lippis spring.

We do not culti-  
vate learning.

Ne foloþe we na ficesyens · ne philisophour scolis,  
As sophistri & slik thing · to sott *with* þe pepiH.  
It is bot wiles & wrenkis · at þai *with* dele, 4365  
And aH þare fete & þar fare · in<sup>2</sup> falshede it endis.

We dislike play.

We only read  
romances.

Lufe we no laike in oure lede · ne laþand mirthis,  
Bot queñ vs pleses to play · we passe & we rede 4368  
Of þe actis of oure auncestours · & of þar athill thewis ;  
And queñ we gamen suld & glade · we grete & we pleyñ.

<sup>1</sup> Or lickn'd ; *with misformed n.*    <sup>2</sup> Written above the line.

And othire sertis wee see<sup>1</sup> · þat solace oure hertis ;  
 First, þe faire firmament · fichid fuH of sterres, 4372 **Alex. and Dind.,**  
 þe rede soñ, queñ he ryses · & rynnys in his sercle, p. 19.  
 þat aH þe land with his leme · lewis & cleres ; We observe the  
 þe playne purperyñ see · fuH of prode fischis, 4375 sun, and the  
 For tide ne for tempest · it touchis nozt oure kythis, purple sea, which  
 Ne neuire sondres oure soile · bot sesis at þe brinkis. is not subject to  
 storms.

## ¶ Vicesimus passus Alexandri.

**A**nother mirth is in May · þat vs maste ioyes,  
 þe faire floryschit filds · of floures & of herbys,  
 Quare-of þe breth as of bawme · blawis in oure noose,  
 þat ilk sensitife saule · mast souorly delyte, 4381  
 As in þe woddis for to walke · vndire wale schawis,  
 Queñ all is lokiñ ouire with leuys · as it ware littiH **We love the**  
 heuen. woods, [Fol. 76.]  
 þaH haue we liking to lithe · þe late of þe foules, and the songs of  
 þe swozing of þe swift wynde · & of þe swete wellis. birds.  
 þe kind of þeire customs · we kepe euire-mare, 4386 **Alex. and Dind.,**  
 þe quilk, I hope, ser, þe to hald · vnhalesom it ware. p. 20.  
 If þou wiH chalangi þaim be chaunce · chese if þe likis,  
 For here is writteñ aH þi wiH · & we na writh serue.  
 As þe tenour of þour titiH is · oure techis haue we **These are our**  
 schawid, customs. 4390  
 Oure dedis & of oure disciplyne · a dele of þaim aythir ;  
 And of þi lare a litiH-quat · likis me to write,<sup>2</sup>  
 For þe sothe of oure solitude · wiH serue þe stille aftir.  
 Sire, 3e haue lazt now oñ late · wiðin a lite 3eres 4394  
 AH Europ & Asie · & Auffrik þe mare ;  
 þat seising burde sufficient · þofe sozt 3e na ferre.  
 Bot ay mekiH wald haue mare · as many man spellis ;  
 þe soñ, for sake of þour syñ · sesys his lizt, 4398 **Thou preventest**  
 Be-cause of þoure couatise · to clym to his bounds. the sun from  
 shining.

<sup>1</sup> Written above the line.

<sup>2</sup> MS. lere write; with lere struck out.

And 3e with wodnes of weris · aH þe werde fretis,  
 And 3it for-feȝtils ȝoure face · all fasting it semes. 4401  
 Alex. and Dind.,  
 p. 21.  
 Ye sacrifice your  
 children.  
 A-nothire laȝe is in ȝoure lande · at oure lord hatis,  
 As, slaa ȝoure soñnes in sacrifice · & othire synnys many,  
 To sawe emang þir simpil meñ · sedis of debate, 4404  
 And make a terant of a tulke · þat neuire tene thoȝt.  
 þe soile ne þe foure sees · suffice ȝowe nouthire,  
 Bot if 3e miȝt keñ þe costis · of þe clere heuen. 4407  
 Ye cannot have  
 enough.  
 Your gods used to  
 work all evil.  
 ȝoure giltis growis of ȝour gods · or god geue þam sorowe,  
 For many modirsoñ þai marre · miȝt ellis haue bene safe.  
 A-vise ȝow now be Venus · quat vertous him folozes,  
 þe Iusule of Iupitir · & of his Iapis als, 4411  
 [Fol. 76 b.] Dame Proserpyne, a prophetese · of ȝoure praysid laȝes;  
 Latis þis be witnes of<sup>1</sup> my wordis · & waitis now þar  
 tetchis.  
 Venus was a-vowtrere · & many vice hauntid,  
 And Iupitir a Iettoure · þat Iapid many ladis<sup>2</sup>; 4415  
 Jupiter was  
 lecherous.  
 So was Proser-  
 pine.  
 Alex. and Dind.,  
 p. 22.  
 Dame proserpine in preue place · playd as hire likid.  
 Loo, sary sottis slike a sowme · of synnars 3e lufe!  
 3e lett meñ of þar libertes · at þam oure lord grauntid,  
 Thryngis þam in-to thraldom · & of thaire þede spoiles.  
 Ye are all unjust.  
 Vn-iust is ȝour Iugementis · so is ȝoure Iugis aH; 4420  
 þe dedis of ȝour domesmen · 3e for dere halde.  
 Is þare na renke in ȝoure rewme · þat othire rewit kepis,  
 Bot “ þus me þinke ” & “ so me þinke ” · & threpis it is  
 lawe!  
 þus fra þe rote of riȝtwisnes · rauyst ere 3e clene, 4424  
 And to þe way of wickidnes · be warlaȝes gidid.  
 3e hald na wee of þe werd · of witt worthe a myte,  
 Bot he cañ practise & paynt · & polisch his wordis.  
 For all ȝoure wisdom, I-wis · is<sup>3</sup> wrokeñ to ȝour tongis,  
 And aH þe sauour of ȝoure sauls · is sattild in ȝour  
 mouthis. 4429  
 ȝoure grete garisons of gold · vngastly 3e spende

<sup>1</sup> In the margin.<sup>2</sup> MS. dadis ladis; with dadis struck out.<sup>3</sup> In the margin.

In bigging<sup>1</sup> of burgis · & bilding of toures ;  
 And quen 3e sitt in 3oure sale · with syris & dukis,  
 þan haue 3ee seggis 3ow to serue · sowmes enogh.  
 þan as a Mare at a moghe · 3oure mawis 3e fiH, 4434  
 With bakin mete & with briddis · holnes 3oure paunches,  
 Stuffis so 3our stomake · with stullis & of wyne,  
 þat vnethis haldis, be 3e hoo · þe hide of 3ow hale !  
 Quat dewis 3ow þan þir diatis · & aH þis dere fode,  
 3oure sowing in vnseon · 3oure surfete of drinkis,  
 Bot settis 3ow in-to sekenes · of sere-lepy kyndis, 4440  
 And gers 3ow die or 3oure day · many dre3e wyntir ?  
 þan 3e couett & craue · castels & rewmes,  
 And thristis eftir aH thingis · at in 3oure tho3t rynnes,  
 Iaspre, Iuwels, & gemmes · & Iettand perle : 4444  
 And all sall leue 3ow at þe laste · & in-to laire worth !  
 And maydese 3it, for aH your molle · þat modire ws<sup>1</sup> cried,  
 þat fourmed þe flode & þe flynt · & þe faire lyndis.  
 And, as I brefe it in þis buH · þe bragmeyns takens  
 Surmontis aH 3our sapientis · & oure assemy thewis.<sup>2</sup>  
 And opir werkis of wast · is wro3t in 3oure landis, 4450  
 As, graffis garnyscht of gold · & gilden tombis,  
 Thurghis to thrawyn in · quen 3e þraa worthe,  
 Sum of siluir, sum of sipirs · sum of sere gemmes.  
 þus make 3e vessels in vayne · to 3oure foule corses,  
 To crom in 3oure cariouns · þat kind 3ow defendis,  
 þat ilk slymand slugH · quen 3e ere slide hyne, 4456  
 And wiH no3t suffire þe erth · to haue at him fallis.  
 For iolite of Iupitir · 3e ioyen vp templis,  
 With Imagis of 3oure ydolatry · aH within payntid ;  
 Symolacris vp sett · of Seropis & othir, 4460  
 And slees in-to þe sacrifis · many sere bestis.  
 Quen 3e haue tildid vp-on [top] · 3our trouthles gods,  
 Sum of gold, sum of glas · sum of gray marbiH,  
 Sum of latoun & of lede · & sum of li3t siluir, 4464  
 And sum ere tiffid aH of tree · & sum of tyH pured,

Ye like to haue  
many servants.

[Fol. 77.]

Ye are but  
earth-born.

We surpass you  
in all things.

Alex. and Dind.,  
p. 23.  
Ye build fine  
tombs.

Ye make temples  
and idols,

<sup>1</sup> Read 3ow.

<sup>2</sup> MS. twethewis, alt. to thewis.

and worship your  
graven gods.

[Fol. 77 b.]

God hears not  
in in because of  
sacrifices.

Alex. and Dind.,  
p. 24.

We are like unto  
God through  
His Son.  
All are sustained  
by Him.

After death ye  
will go to hell.

Alex. and Dind.,  
p. 25.

Ye have as many  
false gods as  
a body has limbs.

þan fall 3e flatt oñ þe fold · with fees þaim adoures,  
Bath Amon & Appolyne · & asskis at þam welthys;  
Of any gud at 3e geet · a gift ye þam offirre, 4468  
A quantite of all-quat · of quike & of ellis;  
3e latt as þai mizt all leth · at ony lede wald,  
And þai may send 3ow bot vnsele · & nozt opir godis.  
þus 3e comende þaim on knees · as cocards suld, 4472  
þat nouthire sizt has ne saule · bot of segge werke;  
3e haue na sauour, I suppose · how þat þe kyñg of heuen  
He has na hert vs to here · ne no hathiñ ellis 4475  
For calues ne for kidis blode · ne for na crispe wethris,  
Bot an[l]y for oure orisons · & for na nopire giftis.  
God se3is oure sa3es for his soñ · at in him-selfe duellis;  
For sekire god is þe soñ · þat all oure sede loues. 4479  
And sothly, by þe same soñ · we ere him all like,  
And aH he sustayned of þat soñ · þat any saule wildis.  
Forþi vnhappy we 3ow hald · þat in 3oure hertis leues  
3oure kind with slike a conquirour · to comen or to euen.  
And othire harlotry 3e<sup>1</sup> hant · þat heris þe goste, 4484  
Of fornicacioñ & filth · & many foule synnes,  
Maumentry, & manslatir · mosardry & pride,  
þat dose 3ow dompe to þe deviñ · quen he<sup>2</sup> ere dede  
hethen.  
And we<sup>3</sup> þe contrari clene · kepis aH oure lyue, 4488  
þat we may bowe to þat blis · þat neuir saH haue ende.  
3e gronde 3ow nozt<sup>4</sup> on<sup>5</sup> a god · þat aH of glett fourmed,  
þat note newid aH of nozt · þat neuire sall hane ende,  
Bot opire many do 3e menske · ere him na<sup>6</sup> mare sibbe  
þan was þe flesch of þe fysch<sup>7</sup> · to þe faire me[m]bree.  
Ilk lede þat lizt is of 3our lede · 3e call þe litiñ werde,  
And gesse wele as many gods · as growis in him membris;  
Ilk a parcele of his persoñ a-proprid · is a-pert dri3tin,  
And euire-ilk lym, it awne lust eftir · as him list craues !

<sup>1</sup> MS. *inserts* to hald, *struck through*. <sup>2</sup> *Read* 3e.

<sup>3</sup> MS. 3e, *but underlined*, and *corrected* to we in the margin.

<sup>4</sup> MS. *repeats* nozt; *but the second nozt is underlined*.

<sup>5</sup> MS. ai (?); <sup>6</sup> MS. no, *alt.* to na. <sup>7</sup> MS. fesch, *alt.* to fysch.



- For marcure was manslaȝt · a mammlere of wordis,  
 ȝe graith him to be gouenoure · & god of þe tonge.  
 And Arcules has aythire arme · in his awen warde,  
 For þe xij wondirfuȝ werkis · he wroȝt with his handis.  
 Mars for his maisterris · & for his many weris, 4502  
 Him brefe ȝe for his<sup>1</sup> baratris · þe breste to defend.  
 Dame Iuno was a iettir · & ioyned fuȝh of iree,  
 For-þi scho hedis to þe hert · & has it to ȝeme.  
 Bary<sup>2</sup> he was brayne-wode · for bebbing of wyne, 4506  
 Forþi [þe] swire & þe swallow · þat swiere he kepis.  
 Cupido has þe custodi · & cure of þe mawe,  
 For he<sup>3</sup> was couatus & cursid · vnclene of him-selfe.  
 Serenon is sustenour · & sire of þe wambe, 4510  
 For hem was quartirs of qwete · vmqwhile out of nombre.  
 Dame venus þe a-v[er]ous<sup>4</sup> · for vices opon niȝtis,  
 Is possessour & principale · of aȝ þe preue menbris.  
 þus ilk canteh of ȝoure cors · ȝe caȝ þam driȝtins, 4514  
 Deu[i]dis it in-to duesses · & oȝire deuels many.  
 Of ilk gobet of þat glett · ȝe a god make,  
 And leues noȝt as mekill as a lym · ȝour liches on to  
 stand.  
 ȝe haue na hoping in þat hathill · at on hiȝe sittis, 4518  
 How he ȝoure nase & ȝoure nebb · & aȝ of noȝt cried,  
 Bot þinkis on þir othir thefis · & þam as thraȝ seruys,  
 And sacrifice to ilk a segge · a sere-lepy gifte.  
 To Mars in his mynstir · at maynteines þe weris, 4522  
 ȝe bringe him a wild bare · for his wale dedis.  
 þe carcas of a fatt kid · þat carayne is worthe,  
 þat bringe ȝe to ser bacus · to bere vp his drinke.  
 And Iupitir þat Ioglour · sum Iape bos haue<sup>5</sup>; 4526  
 A bullok or a fell bule · is broȝt to his temple.  
 And Iuno þe Ientiȝh · for ioȝ of his pride,  
 ȝe presand hire a pakoce · with pennes of aȝ Aungeȝh.
- Mercury is god of  
the tongue;  
[Fol. 78.]  
Hercules presides  
over the arms;  
Juno, over the  
heart;  
Alex. and Dind.,  
p. 26.  
Bacchus, over  
the throat;  
Cupid, over the  
stomach;  
Ceres, over the  
womb.  
Alex. and Dind.,  
p. 27.  
Ye believe not in  
the Creator.  
To Mars, ye offer  
a boar;  
to Bacchus, a kid;  
to Juno, a  
peacock;

<sup>1</sup> MS. ȝour his; with ȝour marked for erasure.<sup>2</sup> Read Bacy, i. e. Bacchus; see l. 4525. <sup>3</sup> In the margin.<sup>4</sup> MS. a vious.<sup>5</sup> MS. hs haue, with hs struck out.

Minerua<sup>1</sup> was a maistres · of many kingis werkis, 4530  
A ratland niȝt ravyñ · is him to rent ȝolden.

[Fol. 78 b.]

To Venus þe vowtriere · may noȝt ells a-vaile,  
Bot ilk moneth to mede · &<sup>2</sup> mi[l]ke-quite doufe.

t) Apollo, a white swan;

Appollo *with* a quite swan · is paid him to tende ; 4534  
A manere of<sup>3</sup> corne to mērcure · þat we þi muld caſt.

to Ceres, bran.

And Serenon is sone serued þat sees to þe paunche ;  
Haue he a boll full of brañ · bedis he na mare.

Alex. and Dind.,  
p. 28.

And Ercules as emperoure · emyddis aH he<sup>4</sup> standis<sup>5</sup> ;  
And for he preuyd ay þe prise · iñ prowis of armes,  
He has a hatt oñ his hede · hiȝtild o floures, 4540  
Of palme & of peruyk · & othire proud blossoms.

The temple of  
Cupid is strewn  
with roses.

þe kirke of cupido · is elenly a-rayed,  
þe stallis & iñ all stedis · strowid *with* Rose. 4543

Lo, to so many mayned gods · ȝour menbris ȝe dele,  
And will noȝt knaw ȝour creatour · at ȝow of clay  
fourmed.

For your wor-  
ship, ye shall be  
punished.

þire deme ȝe for ȝour driȝtins · þat drepis þe saule ;  
For þai may sende ȝow na sele · bot sla ȝow within.  
As many of þat feleschiþ · as ȝe trow & adoures, 4548  
As many turmentis & tene · ȝow tidis in heH.

A-vise ȝow now quat velany · & vices þai ȝow teche :  
Ane leris ȝow to be licherus · & leris ȝow to syñ ;  
Ane, to be grindand gluttis · & glorand dronkin ; 4552  
And ane, to bragg & to bost · & bate *with* þe pepiH.  
If ȝe be herd of ȝour happ<sup>6</sup> · vn-happe þai ȝow keñ ;  
Forþi bot harlotry or harme · is at ȝe here craue ;

Alex. and Dind.,  
p. 29.  
Whether they  
hear you or not,  
ye suffer.

And if ȝe hede to ȝour hestis · ȝour hert is a-meued,  
So queþir þai here or els-quat · it hurtis ay þe saule.  
ȝour doctours ere ȝoure duesses · þaire ditis alegis,  
How þat þai hampire in ȝour here · *with* many hard  
payñ. 4559

þai cause aH vnkindnes · & corperaH lustis,

<sup>1</sup> MS. Minuera.    <sup>2</sup> Read a.    <sup>3</sup> In the margin.<sup>4</sup> MS. y he ; *with y struck out.*    <sup>5</sup> MS. stondis, alt. to standis.<sup>6</sup> happ marked for erasure.

As surquetry & sacrilagi · & othire sere tecches ;  
 Constrene 3ow iñ-to cauatisē · to clame aȝ þe werd,  
 To rayme & to robry · to rayme meñ þaire godis, 4563  
 Wailaway to wriches · & wa is 3ow in erthe ;  
 Herefore 3e hinge moñ in hell · queñ 3e ere hethen  
passed !”

[Fol. 79.]

Ye shall dwell  
in torment.

þan was þe kyng of his carpe · crabbid vnfaire,  
 For he was spetous of speche · & spised his driȝtins ;  
 Queñ he had lokid oñ þe lyne · he lappid it to-gedire,<sup>1</sup>  
 And notid to him a-nothire new · þat now next fologhes.

Alex. and Dind.,  
p. 30.Alex. and Dind.,  
p. 31.

### Vicesimus primus passus Alexandri.

“ þe kyngē crouneȝ of kyngis · o lordis aȝ othire,  
 Ser Alexander þe athelest · of Amon's childire,  
 And of þe quene Olimpades · þat I was of geteñ, 4572  
 To þe best of bragmeyns · blissing & hele<sup>2</sup> !  
 Sire, be þis sothe at 3e say · of all seggis oute  
 3e may be sett be 3ow-selfe · for syn doo 3e neuire !  
 Bot sothely slike a simpilnes · as me my saule demys,  
 It comes bot of acoustoumes · & of na clene thewes.  
 And owþir 3e gesse at 3e be gods · for 3oure gud werkis,  
 Or deynes *with* oure driȝtins · for<sup>3</sup> þat we þam dere hald.  
 3e say 3e sawe neuire soile · ne na citis biggis ; 4580  
 How suld 3e telle *withouteñ* toles · or any tild rere ?  
 Is þer noñ Instrumentis of Ireñ · in aȝ þat Ile founden,  
 Ne nakiñ metaȝ of to make · messelyne ne othire.  
 For-quy as bestis oñ þe bent · 3e growe oñ þe greuys,  
 Refete 3ow *with* refuse · of rotis & of herbys ; 4585  
 þe same wyse dose a wolfe · þat wantis of his pray ;  
 Quen he has faute of his flesch · he fallis to þe soile !  
 Lo, if me list in-to 3oure land · *with* all my ledis entre,  
 Quat wisdoñ at 3our wricchidnes · or witt miȝt I lere ?  
 þe, lede, is litiȝ to loue · þat leuys ay in sorowe, 4590  
 Bot mekill mare he is menskid · þat in a mene duellis.

“ Alexander, son  
of Ammon,to Dindimus,  
greeting.  
If all is true, ye  
are very good  
men.Alex. and Dind.,  
p. 32.

Ye have no iron.

A hungry wolf  
must eat earth.<sup>1</sup> MS. to godire. <sup>2</sup> MS. helee. <sup>3</sup> MS. *inserts we, underlinvd.*

[Fol. 79 b.] Ware þai so wyse þat has waes · qua ware so<sup>1</sup> wide  
praysed

Alex. and Dind., If I 3oure parties aproche · & piȝt vp my tentis, 4594  
p. 33.  
If I it miȝt, as I ne may · for missyng of schipis,  
þare suld my folk for defaute · be famyscht for euire,  
And worthe in a wale quile · to wricchis as 3our-selfe !

Your wives use no 3e say 3our women has na wedis · þe werd with to plesse,  
gay apparel, Garlands ne no gay gere · to glyffe<sup>2</sup> in 3our eȝen, 4599  
Silke of Sipris, ne say · ne saffronde kellis ;

For-quy þare is nane to gete · now neuyn I þe cause !  
and no man com- Adultery on aȝ wise als 3e deuoyde,  
mits adultery. Echchewis<sup>3</sup> ay þat caffare · as castite wald ; 4603  
If 3e na wiȝt haue to þat werk · it wondres me littiȝh ;  
How suld 3e nayte euir þat note · þat neȝes neuir þe  
fode ?

Slik lust is lang on þe leuir · & likand spices,  
Mast cherischid & encheson · of chasteand metis ; 4607  
And 3e<sup>4</sup> bot fede 3ow with frute · at flays noȝt 3oure  
hongir,

Alex. and Dind., For-pi neuire ailes 3ow þat appetite · þir artis with to  
p. 34. dele.

Ye never study ; Is þar na lare in 3oure land · labour of scolis,  
Fesike, ne no filosofy · ne no fourme ellis, 4611  
Piromancie, ne poisei · ne practyse of lawe,

and never shew Ne neuire na mercy 3ow emeh · as mynes me 3our pistiȝh ;  
mercy. AH þis condicions I call · bot comon of bestis,  
Ye are as beasts. þat has no sent in þaire saule · ne sauour in na gude.  
Bot we þat fourmed is & fast · & has a fre wiȝt 4616  
Differris as in oure fraunches · fere fra 3oure kynde.  
It ware no possible poynt · to paise in my witt,  
þat all miȝt ay be eftir ane · with-uten any chaunge.

After bale comes For eftir baret or bale · blis vs aperis 4620  
bliss. And eftir wele comys wa · for so þe werd askis.

<sup>1</sup> MS. *inserts wyȝe h, underlined.* <sup>2</sup> *A curl over the g.*

<sup>3</sup> MS. *Ethchewis.*

<sup>4</sup> *In the margin.*

Ouir<sup>1</sup> wild is many ways wraiste · as þe wedire skiftis ; **Alex. and Dind.,**  
 For a clere cloudles day · mas a clene mynde ; p. 35.  
 Quen it is<sup>2</sup> briȝt all a-bowte · it blithis oure hertis. 4624 [Fol. 80.]  
 And be þar gold in oure gate · or any gud stanes, In fair weather,  
 We do bot foules it with oure fete · vs fayns it na more, men are merry.  
 And quen it walows · & wannes aȝ oure thestres,  
 Ȝet ere we toghid to & fra · be turnyng of eldris. 4628  
 For quilk a frek is bot a fañt · þan is he first simple, Man changes  
 And quen he preues fra þat prike · þañ is he proud-lokid, according to his  
 Metis oñ þe mediȝ merke · & þare his mynd stablis. age.  
 Mekill variaunce of vertus · enveronis oure saules, 4632  
 For we ere fetid full faire · & has oure fyue wittis. We use our five  
 Ane, oure siȝt with to see · & sauour at þe nasee, wits,  
 And ane to tast & to touche · & þen oure twa eris. sight, savour,  
 Of all þe frutis oñ þe fold · we fange at oure wiȝ, 4636 taste, touch, and  
 Bath venyson & volatile · & variand fisches. hearing.  
 If ȝe refreyne ȝow þar-fra · it falis bot of pride **Alex. and Dind.,**  
 Or ellis ȝow writhis with ȝour wele · for ȝe na welth p. 36.  
 haue ! 4639 We catch fish.  
 Be many opynion I prefe · þat pure is ȝoure tecches,  
 Mare fonden opon folȝ · þan ficchid oñ resoñ."  
 Sone as þe kyng of þe kith · þe clause had devysid,  
 He settis him doun full sobirly · & sendis him anothire.  
 ¶ "I, sir Dyndyñ þe derrest · at duells in þis Ile,  
 þe best of þe bragmeyns · of bounte & of thewis, 4645  
 To Alexander, þat aire · þat erles aȝ þe werd,  
 þe souerayne sire of aȝ þe soile · salus & ioye.  
 Sire, we erd noȝt in elementis · as euirmare to dueȝ,  
 Bot as qua pas a pilgrymage · fra Parysch to rome ;  
 To othire hames vs hiȝe · quen we ere hethen voided,  
 And in þe cites of syñ · þañ sitt we na langire. 4651  
 Vse we nane Epocrise · ne ire, ne no theftis,  
 Ne nothire gesse we vs gods · ne grym at oure driȝtiñ.  
 For many seerties we seet · þat sysed aȝ þe werde,  
 And wroȝt þe will of ilk we · to wale as him likid. [Fol. 80 b.]

<sup>1</sup> Or Oñ.<sup>2</sup> In the margin.

Alex. and Dind.,  
p. 38.  
He who avoids  
evil is God's  
friend.

Ye say we are as  
gods.

But ye are so  
rather,  
being rich,

and gaily clad.

Gold feeds no one.

We spurn it.

Alex. and Dind.,  
p. 39.

Gold quenches  
not thirst.

[Fol. 81.]

And he þat wayues ay þe werst · & wirkis þe bettir,  
þat<sup>1</sup> gome is gods gud frend · & god neuire þe hildire.  
And þis similitude þat oure sede · þou settis my pistiþ,  
þe same ensampiþ, as me semes · in-to þoure-self touches.  
For so þe qwele of qwistounes · þoure qualite encreses,  
þat nouþir gesse 3e gouernour · no god bot þour-selfe !  
3e brixsill our<sup>2</sup> benignite · oure bonerte repreues, 4662  
And beris a-poñ vs blasfeme · þat neuire bale tho3t.  
All be we suggets in oure-selfe · & simpifi oure latis,  
Voide & vacand of vices · as virgyns it ware.  
Neuir-þe-les of a laze · hald we vs dri3tins. 4666  
It is þoure-selfe & no3t oure-self · þat ai þe self hantis ;  
Aboundance of Auoure · 3ow all has englaymed,  
For 3e bot fage ay þe flesche · & felsen it wele.  
3e bide no besynes of bedis · bot to þe body clethe.  
Els 3e may cast 3ow to be coynt · 3e count for na ferrir.  
With soft serkis of silke · þoure sidis vñ-loke, 4672  
Doubeletis of damaske · & sum of dere tars,  
With ilka fingire on þoure fist · fillid fuþ of ryngis,  
Schard al of shire<sup>3</sup> gold · as it a schryne were. 4675  
Quat profetis 3ow þis paraile · & all þis proud iettis ?  
For nouthire saues it þe saule · ne þour-selfe fedis.  
Bot we, þat knawis wele & ken · þe kynd of þe noble,  
Quen we ere drinkeles & dry · we draw to þe bourne ;  
And be þar gold in oure gate · or any gud stanes, 4680  
We do bot foulis it with oure fete · vs faynes it na more.  
For nouthire purgis it oure plizt · ne priues it oure  
hungir,  
Ne nouþir salues it oure sares · ne sesis it oure thirst.  
For folowid it slike a fraunchis · at it<sup>4</sup> vs fede wald,  
þe cursed laike o couatis · ware clene<sup>5</sup> with it drenchid.  
3e vise 3ow þar-of vessell · for vanyte & pride ; 4686  
As gud ware crestyns of clathe · þe caryoñ to serue.

<sup>1</sup> MS. þate, with e expuncted.

<sup>2</sup> MS. 3our, altered to our.

<sup>3</sup> MS. schre, altered to schire.

<sup>4</sup> In the margin.

<sup>5</sup> MS. chene.

I se na godlaik in gold · bot grefe to þe saule,  
 For þe fastir it fallis oñ a freke · þe fastir he couettis."  
 Sire Alexander aH at ese · avisis him oñ þis pistiH, 4690  
 And wayues<sup>1</sup> to him a-nopire writt · at oñ þis wyse  
 spellis.

The more gold a  
 man has, the  
 more he wants."

Alex. and Dind.,  
 p. 40.

¶ "Hiȝe kyng *with-out comparisoñ · of kyngis* aH opire,  
 Of all lordis þe lord · þat leues vndire heuen,  
 Sire Alexander, þe aire · of Amon oure driȝtiñ, 4694  
 To þe, *ser Dyndyn* oñ þi dese · þis dities I write.  
 In slike a side of þe soile · ȝour-selfe is in-closid,  
 May wele na wee, if he wald · wyñ to ȝour kithis.  
 Forþi enhabete ȝe in angwysch · at ȝoure vnthankis;  
 And aH ȝoure lefing & ȝoure lare<sup>2</sup> · at ȝe so loude prayse,  
 It comis bot of a kyndnes · & of na clene thewys. 4700  
 And als ȝe fonde may na forþire · to hiȝeñ ȝoure name,  
 Bot pyned þar in a parroke · inparkid as bestis,  
 þus pere to þir presoñs · þat ay in payñ lengis,  
 And he þat seȝis to vs sage · ȝe bot a sott caH. 4704

"Alexander, son  
 of Ammon,  
 to Dindimus.

Alex. and Dind.,  
 p. 41.  
 No strangers can  
 come to you.

Ye are likewretch-  
 ed prisoners."

Be þe<sup>3</sup> grace of my god<sup>2</sup> · miȝt I ȝour grond entre,  
 I suld ȝow ken to be kniȝtis · & clethe ȝow *with armes*."  
 þan piȝt oure prince in þat place · a pelare<sup>4</sup> of marble,  
 Quare-oñ a tulke *with a toile* · þis titiH vp he wrate,  
 Sum langage oñ latine · & lettres of ynde, 4709  
 Sum was graithid o grew · þat þus to-gedire spekis:  
 "I, Philip soñ þe fell kyng · þe fondere of grece,  
 Sire Alexander þe athill · þ[a]t aȝe aH þe barbres  
 Eftir þe day & þe dethe · of Dary & of Porrus, 4713  
 þus fere I folozed haue my faes;" · & here a fitt end.

Alex. and Dind.,  
 p. 42.  
 Alexander rears a  
 pillar of marble.

[End of  
 Alexander and  
 Dindimus.]

## ¶ Vicesimus secundus passus Alexandri.

N<sup>ow</sup> gase he fra gangañ · and aH his ging<sup>t</sup> eftir,  
 Fondis forth *with* his folke · & a fild entris,

[Fol. 81 b.]

<sup>1</sup> Or waynes.

<sup>2</sup> In the margin.

<sup>3</sup> MS. Be þe þe þe; with Be altered to Bet, and the second  
 be þe underlined; Bot be þe is probably intended.

<sup>4</sup> A curl over the e.

They come to a wood,	Vnfaldin <i>with</i> a faire wod · florisch <sup>1</sup> out ouire 4717
	Of Appils & almands · & aH manere of frutis.
	All þe chiere of þe champe · was chargid <i>with</i> floures,
	Acree, sais oure autour · þat angih is hatten.
full of giants,	3it wont meñ in þa woddis · as þe buke tellis, 4721
	Of Ioynttours as Ieants · in Iopons of hidis,
who eat fruit only.	And þai ware fedd all of frute · & of na fode ellis,
	Of grapis & of gernetis · & othire gude spices,
	Of sike as growis in þe grewis · I tald of before. 4725
	þai ware as rughe as a resche · þe bake & þe sidis ;
	Quen þai persayued of oure prince · & slik a pake Armed,
They stand staring at Alexander.	þan stode þai glorand on his gome · <i>with</i> grisely mawis.
Alexander's men raise a shout,	And he mas heraud & heres · to hant for þe nanes,
	And sett vp a scharp schoute · at aH þe schaw ryngis.
	And þai for skere of þe skrike · in-to þe schaw fledd,
	For þai hadd herd neuire of how · ne of mans noyse ;
and the giants flee and are slain.	And sex hundreth was slane · & sesid <i>with</i> oure kniȝtis,
	And foure and threti, as I flode <sup>2</sup> · was in þe fild drepid,
	And iiij <sup>3</sup> score on þis side · & seuē at was armed 4735
	Was <i>with</i> þe churles in þe chace · choppid to deth.
	þus thre daies in þat thede · thurgh-out þai lengid,
The Greeks eat damsons.	And dietis þaH <i>with</i> damysens · & opir dere frute.
	þaH ferd he furth to a flumme · & sett þare his tentis,
	And newly eftir þe none · or nere þare-aboutē, 4740
	þare coms a bonde of a brenke · & breed þaim vnfaire ;
An uncouth beast appears,	A burly best & a bigg <sup>4</sup> · was as <sup>3</sup> a mañ shapē,
	Vnquile he groned as a galt · <i>with</i> grysely latis,
[Fol. 82.]	Vnquile he noys as a nowte · as a nox queñ he lawes,
	3armand & 3erand <sup>4</sup> · a 3oten him semed ; 4745
with bristles like a boar,	And was as bristils as a bare · aH þe body ouire ;
	Dom as a dore-nayle · & defe was he bathe,
	<i>With</i> laith leggis & lange · & twa lane <sup>4</sup> eres ;
and a head like a horse.	A heuy hede & a hoge · as it a hors ware, 4749

<sup>1</sup> MS. florischst.<sup>2</sup> MS. flode, in the margin, substituted for fynd.<sup>3</sup> In the margin.<sup>4</sup> Or lane.



And large was his odd lome · þe lenthe of a 3erde.  
 With þat comands oure kyng · his kniȝt's him to<sup>1</sup> take,  
 And þai a-saillid him sone · bot he na segge dredis,  
 For nouthire fondis he to flee · ne na fens made, 4753  
 Bot stude & stared as a stott · & stirred he na forthire.  
 þan callis to him þe conquirour · a comly maydeñ,  
 Bad hire be broȝt be-fore þe best · & bare to be nakid.

Alexander sets  
 before him a  
 naked maid.

And he be-held oñ þat hend · & hissis as a neddire,  
 He wald haue strangild hire streȝt · ne had stiffe men  
 bene ; 4758

He wald haue schowid oñ þat schene · had noȝt men He is then caught,  
 halden,

And to þe prince panieloñ · prestly him lede.  
 Queñ he had ferlied his fiȝh · oñ his foule schapp̄,  
 He gers þaim bynde him at a braid · & brent him to and burnt.  
 poudire. 4762

þen rade he fra þat reuir · & remowid his ost  
 In-till a brade bent fild · & bildid vp his tent's.  
 þare fande he lindis oñ þat lande · þe<sup>2</sup> lenthe of a spere,  
 And þai ware frett fuȝh of frute · þe fairest of þe werde.  
 It ware to tere any tong to tell · of þa trees kinde, 4767  
 For þai wald sett with þe soñ · & with þe soñ rise.

Alexander comes  
 to the trees of the  
 Sun and Moon,

Fra morewane to þe mydday · merely þai springi,  
 And þan discende þai doun · as þe day passis.  
 Lo, þis was a wondirfull werk · bot gods aweñ wiȝh,  
 þat þai suld wax soo & wane · within a wale time.  
 For, fra it droȝe to þe derke · ay tiȝh it dawid eftir,

which wax and  
 wane in a day.

It was bot vacant & voide · as vanite it were. 4774 [Fol. 82 b.]  
 þe kyng in his cabañ · with his kniȝt's he ligis,

Tutand out of his tents · & þe trees wait's.

A baȝ a berne of a bobbe · bring him a nappiȝh ;  
 þaȝ bowis furth a bachelere · his bedinge to fiȝh ; 4778

A man who  
 attempts to pluck  
 an apple is slain.

And he was sodanly sesid · & slane with a sprete.  
 With þat enverrouns aȝ þe vale · a voice fra þe heuen,  
 Said, "qua so fangis o þis frute · bees fey in a stounde!"

<sup>1</sup> In the margin.

<sup>2</sup> MS. a þe, but corrected.

The birds on the  
trees are defended  
by flames of fire.

3it bred þar briddis in þa braunches · at blith was & tame,  
And if a man had þaim hent · or with his hand touchid,  
þan floze þar flawmes out of fire · before & be-hind,  
And quare it liȝt oñ his like · it lichid him for euire.  
Now bowis furth þis baratour · & bidis na langire,

Alexander climbs  
a huge mountain.

Vp at a maȝte<sup>1</sup> mountane · he myns with his ost,  
And viij daies be-dene · þe driȝe was, & mare, 4788  
Or he miȝt couire to þe copp · fra þe caue vndire.  
Queñ he was comeñ to þe crest · his kniȝtis wald haue  
esid ;

Dragons, drome-  
daries, snakes,  
&c., appear.

And namely a new note · neghis oñ handȝ,  
Of dragons & of dromondaris · & of diuerse neddirs,  
Of lioness & of leopards · & othire laith bestis. 4793  
þare was hurling oñ hiȝe · as it iñ heȝ ware,  
Quat of<sup>2</sup> wrestling of wormes · & wonding of kniȝtis.  
As gotis out of<sup>3</sup> guttars · in golanand wedres,  
So voidis doun þe vemoñ · be vermyns schaftis. 4797

Many men are  
stung to death.

At opir time of<sup>4</sup> oure tulkis · was tangid to dede,  
And slayñ with þa serpents · a sowme out of noimbre.  
So hard þai hampird oure heere · & herid oure erles,  
Vnneth it chansid þaim þe cheke · þe cheffire to worthe.  
Quen he skonfet & skerrid · all þa skathiȝ fendis,

They next come  
to a valley, very  
dark.

þen metis he doun of þe mounte · in-to a mirk vale,  
A drere<sup>5</sup> dale & a depe · a dym̃ & a thestir. 4804  
Miȝ[t] þare na saule vndire soñ · see to a-nothire ;

[Fol. 83.]

þai ware vmbe-thonrid<sup>6</sup> in þat thede · with slike a thike  
cloude,

þat þai miȝt fele it with þaire fiste · as flabband webbis ;  
With all þe bothom fuȝ of bournes · briȝt as þe siluire,  
And bery-bobis oñ þe braes · brethand as mirre. 4809

They are 9 daies  
in darkness.

þus drafte þai furth in derknes · a neȝen daies euen,  
So lang þaim lackis at þe last · þe liȝt of þe soñ.  
þañ come þai blesnand tiȝ a barme · of a brent lawe,<sup>7</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Written maȝtene; see l. 4883.

<sup>2</sup> MS. ost.

<sup>3</sup> In the margin.

<sup>4</sup> MS. of of.

<sup>5</sup> MS. dreȝe.

<sup>6</sup> Or vmbe-thourid.

<sup>7</sup> MS. lawe, substituted for schawe.

Neȝe throtilk<sup>1</sup> with þe thik aire · & thrange in þare andes.  
 þai labourde<sup>1</sup> vp a-gayn þe lift · añ elleuen dais, 4814 They next climb  
for 11 days,  
 & quen þai couert to þe crest · þen clerid þe welkyn ;  
 þe schaftis of þe schire soñ · schirkind þe cloudis, and the sun shines  
out.  
 And gods glorious gleme · glent þam e-maunge. 4817  
 þañ past þai doun fra þat pike · in-to a playn launde, They come to a  
plain,  
 Quare all þe gronde was of gols · & growen fuH of Impis,  
 A cubete lenth, sais þe clause · cald was þe maste,  
 Quare-of þe feloure & þe frute · as fygis it sawourd.  
 þare fand þai Revers,<sup>2</sup> as I rede · ricchest of þe werd, with excellent  
rivers.  
 þof it ware Ioly Iurdañ · or Iacobs weH ; 4823  
 Was neuir no mede ne no milke · so mild vndire heuen,  
 Ne cliffe of cristall so clere · at euire god fourmed.  
 A hundreth daies & a halfe · he held be þa playnes,  
 TiH he was comen tiH a cliffe · at to þe cloudis semed, They come to a  
steep cliff,  
 þat was so staire & so stepe · þe store me tellis, 4828  
 Miȝt þar no wee bot with wyngis · wiñ to þe topp̄.  
 ȝit fand he clouen þurȝe þe clynt · twa crasid<sup>3</sup> gatis, with two paths,  
 Ane to þe noke of þe north · a-nothire to þe est. one north, and  
one east.  
 Sire Alexander him a-vises · &<sup>4</sup> all him a-wondres,  
 And trowid it was wroȝt · of na lede werkis. 4833  
 With þat stairis he forth þe styte · þat streȝt to þe est, They go eastward.  
 And seuē dais with his meñ · he soȝt be þa costis.  
 And on þe aȝtent day · eftire þe prime,  
 A Basilisk in a browe · breis þaim vñ-faire, 4837 They find a  
basilisk,  
[Fol. 83 b.]  
 A straȝtill & a stithe worme · stinkand of elde,  
 And is so bittir & so breme · & bicchid in him-selfe,  
 þat with þe stinke & þe strenth · he stroyes noȝt allane,  
 Bot quat he settis on his siȝt · he slaes in a stonde.  
 He vemons in þe vaward · valiant kniȝtis, 4842  
 Maistirs out of Messedone · of Mede & of Persee ;  
 þai seȝe doun sodanly · slane of þaire blonkis, who slays many  
knights.  
 To steȝ & to stand-dede · & in þe strete liggis.

<sup>1</sup> MS. babourde.<sup>2</sup> Written in the margin, as a substitute for þiuers.<sup>3</sup> MS. traside.<sup>4</sup> In the margin.

With þat areris aH þe route · & radly þai said, 4846  
 “ þe writh of þe wale god<sup>1</sup> · vs of þe wai lettis.”  
 Alexander finds the basilisk asleep, þe kyng to knaw of þat case · vp to þe cliffe wendis,  
 Saze quare þe same serpent · slepit in a roke.  
 þaH mas he bonds in a braide · at sall na pepiH pas,  
 In bole & in balaH · buskes he his fctes, 4851  
 A blasoH as a berne-dure · þat all þe body schildis,  
 and sets a mirror before him. And fches in a fyne glas · oH þe fere side.  
 þe sc[h]rewe in þe schewere · his schadow be-haldis,  
 Then the basilisk slays himself. And so þe slaztir of his sizt · in-to him-selfe entris.  
 þaH cald oure kyng him his kniztis · & comandis him  
 to bryn, 4856  
 And þai as sone as þai him saze · him for his slezt thankis.  
 Sone<sup>2</sup> as þis balefuH best · was brozt out o lyfe,  
 þan ridis furth oure riche kyng · & remowis his ost.  
 And of þis way at he went · sone worthis him a nende,  
 So at he flitt may na ferre · ne his folke<sup>3</sup> nouthire. 4861  
 They come to huge mountains, þare was so hedous & so hoge · hillis þam beforH,  
 Clozes at was cloude · he clynterand torres,  
 Rochis & rogH stanes · rokkis vnfaire,  
 Scutis to þe scharpe schew · skerres a hundreth. 4865  
 and return to the plain. þan ȝaris he him ȝapely · & a-ȝayne turnes,  
 [Fol. 84.] And past in-to þe proud playH · I proued to ȝow first,  
 þat aH was brett-fuH of bowis · & blossoms so swete,  
 þat hawme ne braunche o aloes · bettir was neuire.  
 They next try the path to the north. Fra þens oure note<sup>4</sup> men be northe · nymes þaim þe way,  
 And þat þaH<sup>5</sup> fonde aH þe flote · fiftene dayis. 4871  
 And þai croke ouire crosse · to cache þaim anothire,  
 þat led þam to þe left hand · & þat a lange quile ;  
 And þus þai dryfe furth þe driȝt · of daies foure score,  
 They come to a cliff covered with diamonds. Till at þai come till a cliffe · as þe clause tellis, 4875  
 Ane egge þat was all ouire · of Adamand stanes,  
 With, hingand in þe rughe roches · rede gold cheynes.  
 þan was þare graythed of degreces · for gomes vp to wynde,

<sup>1</sup> In the margin.<sup>2</sup> MS. Cone.<sup>3</sup> MS. fokke.<sup>4</sup> Here follows o, expuncted.<sup>5</sup> Perhaps þaim.

- Twa thousand be tale · & fyue trew hundrethe. 4879 It has 2500 steps  
on its face.
- And þai ware sett so in soute<sup>1</sup> · of safers fyne,  
þat of þe noblay to neuen · it neyd any cristeñ.
- þare logis þe leue kyng · late oñ añ eueñ,  
Vndire þis maȝte mountayne · & oñ þe morne eftir,
- þare setts he furth of sere gods · a selle nounbre, 4884 Alexander offers  
to the gods.
- þat he honours & his ost · & offirs ilk ane.
- Syne tas he *with him* titly · his twelue tried prince[s],  
Gas him vp be degreces · to þe grete lawe, He then ascends  
the steps.
- Trenes to þe topward · þat touched to þe cloudis, 4888  
þat he miȝt lend þar o-loft · & waite eftir wondirs.
- Vp-oñ þe coþ of þe cliffe · a closure he fyndis, On the top is a  
palace,
- A palais, ane of<sup>2</sup> þe preciousses · & proudest in erth,
- A bild, as þe buke sais · *with* twa brade ȝatis, 4892
- And seuenti wyndows beside · of serelep's werkes.
- þe ȝatis ware of ȝeteñ gold · ȝarkid of platis, with gates of gold;
- þe windows on þe selfe wyse · as þe writ schews<sup>3</sup>; [Fol. 84 b.]
- And þai ware coruen fuH clene · & clustrid *with* gemmes,
- Stiȝt staffuH of stanes · stagis & othire. 4897
- ȝit was a mynstir on þe mounte · of metall as þe nobiH, also a temple,  
and a garden of  
golden vines.
- Vmbe-gildid *with* a garden · of golden vynes,
- Was chatrid fuH of chefe frute · of charbocle stanes,
- With*-outen mesure emaunge · of margrite grete.<sup>4</sup> 4901
- þis hame at houes on þis hiH · was in þe hiȝe est,
- Forthi ȝit hedirto it hat · þe hous of the soñ. This is the house  
of the sun.
- It was so precious a place · & proudly a-tired,
- þare was na place it a pere · bot paradyse selfe. 4905

¶ *Vicesimus tertius passus Alexandri.*

- þen aires furth *ser Alexander* · in-to þis athiH temple, Alexander enters  
the temple,
- With* Caulus & *with* cleopas · & othire kidd princes,
- And fand a berne in a bedd · bawnand alane, and finds a man  
in a bed.
- Ane of þe graciosest gomes · þat euire god fourmed.
- All lemed of his letere · þe loge as of heueñ, 4910

<sup>1</sup> Or soute.<sup>2</sup> In the margin.<sup>3</sup> Substituted for schis.<sup>4</sup> Substituted for stanes; see line above.

- For it was gayly begane · *with* golden webbis.  
 A blewe bleaut o-bofe · brad him al ouire, 4912  
 Was browde all *with* brent gold · fuH of briȝt aungels.  
 The bed is gorgeously adorned. þe testre trased fuH of trones · *with* trimballand wingis;  
 þe silloure fuH of Seraphens · & othire sere halows,  
 With curtyns aH of clene silke · & coddis of þe same,  
 With cumly knottis & *with* koyntis · & knopis of perle.  
 It ware to tere me to tel · þe tirement to-gedire, 4918  
 Or a nany<sup>1</sup> clerke · þe cost to de-vise ;  
 [Fol. 85.] And he þat ristis in þat rowme · þe romance it tellis,  
 Was ane of þe borliest bernis · þat euire body hade,  
 With fell face as þe fire · & ferly faire schapeñ, 4922  
 Balgh brade in þe brest · & on þe bely sklendire.  
 His cheuelere as chauele<sup>2</sup> · for changing of eld,  
 The man's beard is white as snow. And as blaȝt was his berd · as any briȝt snaw.<sup>3</sup> 4925  
 Sone as oure prince *with* his peris · his person avyses,  
 Alexander perceives it is a god. He gesse him wele to be god · & of na gome kind.  
 He knelis down *with* his kniȝtis · on þe cald erthe,  
 With haile him hailis oñ heȝe · & opir hend wordis.  
 þe renke *within* þe redeH · þan raxsils his armes, 4930  
 Rymed him fuH renyschly · & rekind þir wordis :  
 The god salutes him, " Haile, Alexander !" quod þis athiH · " at<sup>4</sup> aH þe erth  
 weldis,  
 and welcomes him. þou ert welcum, I-wis · & all þi wale princes.  
 Sire, þou sall see *with* þi siȝt · slike signes, or þou passe,  
 As neuire segge vndire soñ · saȝe bot þine ane. 4935  
 And þou saH here apoñ happis · or þou hethen founde,  
 þat neuire hathill vndire heuen · herd bot þi-selfe."  
 " A ! A ! happy haly here mañ " · quod þis hathiH þañ,  
 Alexander is surprised to find himself known. " How þat þou neuynes my name · & þou me neuire  
 kend ? " 4939  
 " Ȝis, sothly, ser," saied þe segge · " þi-selfe & þi werkis,  
 Or any drope of þi delume · drechet had þe erd.  
 " Do you wish to List þe noȝt loke on þe lindis · þat leuys euire mare,

<sup>1</sup> Sic in MS.      <sup>2</sup> Or chaele ; indistinct.<sup>3</sup> Substituted for swaw.      <sup>4</sup> In the margin.

þat has þe surname of þe soñ · & of þe mone alls ;  
 þat is to mene, bot of þe mone · & miȝt has to speke,  
 And teġ þe trewly aġ þe text · quat tide saġ here-eftir ? ”  
 “ ȝis, by my croune,” quod þe kyng · & kyndly was  
 ioyed,

hear the trees of  
 the Sun and Moon  
 tell your fate ? ”

4946

“ þis word I wald, be ȝour wiġ · noȝt aġ þe werd leuir ! ” “ Yes, gladly.”

“ Ser, waite at þou be wemles · for womaġ touching,  
 þan may ȝe leuely oġ þaġ loke · & lesten ȝour wīdis.

[Fol. 85 b.]

For be ȝe pure of þat plizt · ȝe may þis place entre,  
 þat is þe sette of þat sire · þat sett aġ þe werd.” 4951

“ Ser, I am clene of þat craft · I know wele my-selfe,  
 Be þou oure gide to þe greuys · apoġ gods name.”

With þat bownes him þat berne · & fra his bed ryse,  
 Cled aġ in clene gold · kirtiġ & mantiġ,

The god rises  
 from the bed,

A grym grisely gome · with grete gray lokis ; 4956

Al glitered þe ground · for glori of his wedis.

“ Sirs, ȝe þat will has to wend · ȝour wapens deuoidis,  
 Nymes of ȝour nethirgloue · & nakens ȝoure leggis,  
 Pesan, pancere, & platīs · aġ to ȝoure preue clathis,  
 Iopoġ & iesserand · & radly me folows ! ” 4961

and bids Alex-  
 ander lay aside all  
 his armis.

þe kyng at his comaundment · with his kniȝtis him  
 spoilis,

Puttis of to þe selfe serke · senture & othire,

Takis with him ser telomew · aġ of his princes, 4964

He, Alexander,  
 and two others,  
 set out.

And Antiet, aġ athill duke · & eftir him wendis.

þai ferd furth all in fere · þir foure aġ to-gedire ;

þe lede at was þar ladisman · þe lord & his kniȝtis

Went þurȝe a wale wode<sup>1</sup> · was wondire of to teġ,

The guide goes  
 through a wood,

As it ware hiȝtild in þat hill · with handis of aungels.

For þare ware tacchid vp trees · þe triest of þe werd,

A hundreth fote to þe hede · þe hiȝt was & mare,

Lyke oleues out of lebanȝ · & lores so grene, 4972

containing olives,  
 sycamores, &c.

With sichomures<sup>2</sup> & sipresses · & sedrisse e-blande.

þar trekild down of þa · teres of iemmes,

Boyland out of þe barke · bawme & mirre, 4975

<sup>1</sup> Here follows an s erased.

<sup>2</sup> MS. sichourmes.

- [Fol. 86.] Of scence & of othire salue · as sechis out of wellis,  
 þat rase neuire of Aromitike · sike rekils in erth.  
 They find a tree bare of leaves, þai fande a ferly faire tre · quare-oñ na frute groued,  
 Was void of aH hire verdure · & vacant of leues,  
 A hundreth fote & a halfe · it had of lezt large, 4980  
 With-uten bark ouþir bast · fuH of bare pirnes.  
 upon which is a strange bird. þar bade a brid oñ a boghe · a-bofe in þe topp̄,  
 Was of a port of a paa · with sike a proude crest,  
 With bathe þe chekis & þe chauly · as a chykiñ brid,  
 And all gilden<sup>1</sup> was hire gorgi · with golden fethirs,  
 All hire hames be-hind · was hewid as a purple.  
 And aH þe body & þe brest · & oñ þe bely vndire  
 Was finely florischt & faire · with frekild pennys, 4988  
 Of gold graynes & of goules · fuH of gray mascles.  
 The king wonders. þan waitis oñ hire þe wale kyng · & wondire him thinke,  
 Was in þe figure of hire fourme · nozt ferlid a littil.  
 “Quat loke ȝe?” quod þe ladisman · “do lendis oñ<sup>2</sup>  
 forthire, 4992  
 ȝone is a fereles foule · a Fenix we calle.”  
 þan<sup>3</sup> bowe þa forthe aH ebland · & to þire treis comes,  
 þe plants of þe proud soñ · & of þe pale mone.  
 Their guide tells Alexander to ask what his fate will be. “Behalds now,” quod þis hare mañ · “to þir haly bowis,  
 And quat þou wiH of þaim to wete · wis in þi saghe.  
 Appose þaim aH in preuate · bot make na playñ wordis,  
 And þou may swythe haue a sware · at swike sall þe  
 neuire.  
 þan may þou gesse in þi gast · it is a gude sprete 5000  
 þat sends þe sike asouerance<sup>4</sup> · & sees to þi thoȝtis.”  
 þire boles was, as þe boke sayes · borly & hiȝe,  
 þe lind of þe list soñ · louely clethid, 5003  
 With feylour as of fine gold · þat ferly faire lemes,  
 þat oþir loken ouire with leues · as it ware list siluir.  
 þañ Alexander at þis athiH · askis a demande,  
 “In quatkyn manir of lede · sall me þir treis sware?”

<sup>1</sup> MS. wing lidin gilden; *with* wing lidin *struck through*.<sup>2</sup> *In the margin.*<sup>3</sup> MS. þam.<sup>4</sup> MS. asouerante.



"Sothly, *ser*, þe soñ-tree" · said þe segge þaṇ, 5008  
 Entris in with yndoyes · & endis in greke ;  
 And mast-quat ay þe mone-tree · þurȝe miȝt of hire  
 kynde,

The Sun-tree  
 begins to speak in  
 Indian, and ends  
 in Greek.

Quen it kithis vs any carpe · þe contrarie spekis ;  
 For scho begynes aȝ in grew · & endis in ynde, 5012  
 And þus be twinlepi tongis · teȝ þai oure wirdis."  
 þan knelis down þe<sup>1</sup> conquirour · vn-to þe cald erthe,  
 And aithire bole eftir bole · blithly he kisis,  
 And þoȝt if he suld with þe thra · of aȝ þe thedes wete,  
 If he suld move agayn to Messedoñ · quare his modire  
 duellid. 5017

The Moon-tree  
 does the contrary.

Alexander ask · if  
 he will return  
 home.

þaṇ schogs hire þe soñ-tree · & schoke hire schire leues,  
 And with a sweȝand swoȝe · þis sware scho him ȝeldis :  
 "Sire, þou ert lele of ilk lede · þe lorde & þe fadire ;  
 Bot þi sire soile in na side · see saȝ þou neuire. 5021  
 For þi modire nor ȝit Messedoñ · þou seȝis þaim na  
 mare."

The Sun-tree tells  
 him he will not.

þaṇ list him lithe of his lyfe · & of his last ende :  
 "So maideux," quod þe mone-tree · "þi meere bees na  
 langir 5024

He then asks  
 about his death.  
 The Moon-tree  
 tells him he will  
 live a year and  
 eight months.

Bot out þis anlepi ȝere · & aftir viij monethis ;  
 þaṇ sall he duale þe with a drinke · at þou fuȝ dere  
 traistis."

þaṇ makis he<sup>2</sup> mournyng & mane · & in his mynȝ  
 thinkis, 5027

Qua suld þat trecherous trayne · of tresoñ him wirke.  
 He said, "hende haly tree" · & halsid hire in armes,  
 "Quat person sall do me depresse · I pray þe me teȝ ?"  
 "Sire, sothely," said þe soñ-tree · "if I<sup>2</sup> þe sothe neuened,  
 Qua suld þe wite out of þe werd · & þe þi werdis dele,  
 þan suld þou slaa þe same segge · & so my sawis faile ;  
 And þat<sup>2</sup> may worthe be na wai · for ay my wordis  
 standis." 5034

He asks, "who  
 will kill me ?"

The Sun-tree  
 refuses to tell.

þaṇ lokid oñ him his ladismañ · said, "lefe of þi wordis,

[Fol. 87.]

<sup>1</sup> MS. þe k conquirour.

<sup>2</sup> In the margin.

For writhing of þir wale treeis · & willne þaim na mare.  
 Bot graythe þe, gome, oñ gods behalue · and a-gayñ  
 turne, 5037

For ouire þe lemetis of þir lindis · may no lede founde."

Alexander weeps, þen bownes agayñ þe bald kyng · baldly he wepis,  
 þat he so skitly suld skifte · & fra<sup>1</sup> his skars terme.  
 So did his princes, sais þe prose · for pete of him-selfe,  
 With 3edire 3oskingis & 3erre · 3ett out to grete. 5042

and tells his com-  
 panions never to  
 say what they  
 have heard.

þañ bedis þaim þe barotour · oñ bathe þaire e3en twa,  
 þat þai suld neuire þis note · to nane of his ost neuyn,  
 Quat þai beheld in þe hiH · & herd with þaire eres ;  
 And he þan styntis of his stoure · & steris his hert.  
 "If 3e will gange," quod þis gide · "a-gayñ to 3oure  
 kni3tis, 5047

Moves 3ow to þe nethire-ward · next I it hald."

Alexander  
 laments his fate.

þan passis he to þis proud place · & oure kyng leues,  
 And he gose doun be grece · a-gayñ to his tentis.  
 þar logis he fra þe late ni3t · till eft e þe<sup>2</sup> li3t schewis,  
 With sare sighingis & sadd · for sake of his wirdis ;  
 Costreynes him with his contenance · to with his kni3tis  
 play, 5053

Bot þat bot sprang of þe splene · þe sprite was vñ-esid.  
 Sone as þe day-raue<sup>3</sup> rase · he risis vp belyue,  
 Riches him radly to ride · & remows his ost,  
 Driues oñ with his dukis · day eftir othire, 5057  
 TiH he was meten to þe meere · quare he þe monte  
 entird,

He returns to the  
 plain,

þat was þe proud playñ fild · I proued 3ow be-fore,  
 Quare aH þe face of þe fild · was of fyne goules.

and remains there  
 one day.

þare pi3t he doun his paulyons · & with his princes  
 bidis, 5061

And þe dri3t of a day · he duellis in þa costis.

[Fol. 87 b.]

Betwene þa styres in a stound · þat strekis þur3e þe  
 mountis

<sup>1</sup> Sic ; perhaps read for.    <sup>2</sup> MS. his þe ; with his struck out.  
<sup>3</sup> MS. day day rawe ; but corrected.

He mas twa pylars<sup>1</sup> doun to pynche · all of playn marble, He makes two  
pillars of marble,  
 And tacchis vp of treid gold · a pelare in þe myddis,  
 With a prolouge in þat plate · on aithire post writen.  
 “I, Alexander þe athiſt · eftire þe date<sup>2</sup> 5067  
 Of þe prince & Persye & Porrus · þire pilars en-haunsid.  
 Qua list þis lymit ouir-lende · lene to þe left hand,  
 For þe rake on þe riȝt hand · þat may na mañ passe.”  
 þis titill was of twa tongis · tane out & grauen, 5071 inscribed with ‘a  
title in prose.’  
 Of Ebru & of yndoys · & of þire ald lettres,  
 Of latine & of othire lare · & leues out of grece,  
 Proudly prikid aȝ in prose; · & here a pas endis.

### ¶ Vicesimus quartus passus Alexandri.

**N**ow strekis he furth with his stour · & steris with He removes his  
tents.  
 his tentis, 5075  
 He leuys all þe march-gats · I neuend ȝow before,  
 And nymmes a-nothire on þe north · þe next to his kith,  
 þat to þe marche of Messedone · was him mast qweme.  
 Sone was he lent in a lande · a large & a noble, He comes to the  
Precious Land.  
 Preciosa, þe precious · þe prose þus it callis;  
 And clene aȝ þat contre · quen þai his come wist, 5081  
 With sike as provid in þa partis · presentis him faire, He receives pre-  
sents of skins of  
fishes.  
 Sum fellis of fischis · ferly to teȝ,  
 Was like as of lepardis · & lions skynnes;  
 Sum with lions on lyue · & lamprays sloȝis, 5085  
 þat sex cubettis clere · was of clene lenghe.  
 þar was a cite in<sup>3</sup> þat side · asid aȝ with gemmes, In a city in that  
land  
 With-uten lyme or laire · a lady it kepid, 5088  
 A worthi wedow & a wlonk · with thre wale childire, [Fol. 88.]  
 þat qwene Candace þe clere · was callid in þa bonds. dwelt queen  
Candace.  
 Now sall I sothely of hire soȝis · say ȝow þe names;  
 þe first wos Candoyle callid · a kniȝt althire-fairest;  
 þe medilmast of þe meȝ · was Marcipy hatteȝ; 5093  
 þe thrid Caraptus is cald · þat kepid aȝ hire landis.

<sup>1</sup> A curl over p. <sup>2</sup> MS. datere. <sup>3</sup> MS. þ in; with þ struck out.

Alexander writes  
to Candace.

Sone as þe kyng of hire knew · a clause he hire writis,  
Añ Image all of athill gold · of Amoñ hire sendis ;  
To mete him in þe montayns · þat mild he<sup>1</sup> be-sechis,  
þat þai miȝt sacrif[is]e samme þar · to his sere driȝtins.

Candace sends  
him presents,

Sone as þis princes of pris · þis pistiH had deuysid,  
þañ sendis scho to him sandis-men · with selid lettris,  
With tribute & trouage · & many tried giftis, 5101

and writes a  
letter.

And þire þe wordis of hire write · at oñ þese wyse  
spekis.

¶ “To þe kiddest kyng · of kyngs aH othire, 5103  
Sire Alexander þe athilest · of Amons strinds,  
I, Candace þe conquires · coround of Mede,

“I commend  
myself to you.

To ȝour honoure with obeyaunce · me ane I comaunde.  
For it was purveid a-pert · of þe kyng of heuen,  
Pre-desteyned of his prouydence · & of his pure miȝt,  
þat ȝe suld pas in-to Pers · & prese it with armes. 5109  
Itale, Egipt, & ynde · & aH þire Iles ouire,

Your worth is  
widely known.

ȝour wirschip & ȝour worthenes · [in] aH þe werd sprong,  
ȝour curtassy, ȝour kniȝthede · & aH ȝoure clene thewis.  
And þat with meñ of þe mold · noȝt melid vs alane,  
Bot driȝtins & duesses · ȝour dedis declaris. 5114  
Forþi like it to ȝour lordschip · & lathis noȝt my sawis.

[Fol. 88 b.]

We at ere voide ay of vice · & vacant of syn,  
Quat suld we moue in-to þe montts ? · þat mysters bot  
litiH, 5117

We do not care to  
adore Apollo;

Outhire Appole to adoure · or any othire driȝtins.  
Bot señ it syttis noȝt to oure simplines · ȝour saȝe to  
with-stande,

but I send you  
presents,

Ne nopir to mele ne to mote · ȝoure maieste a-gayñ,  
ȝit sall I send ȝow fra my soile · a certañ of giftis, 5121  
For reuerence of ȝour rialte · & of ȝoure rosid werkis.  
I drysse ȝow here a diademe · ȝoure druits to were,  
þe gaiest gift vndire god · of gold & of stanes,  
And to ȝow selfe of þe same · o serelepy hewis, 5125  
A hundreth in a hale heere · hiȝtild with crestis,

<sup>1</sup> MS. ho ; in the margin.

And twa hundret & teñ · be tale at þe leste,  
 Of rekanthes of rede gold · railed of gemmes,  
 With pellicans & pape-ioyes · polischt<sup>1</sup> & grauen, 5129 pelicans, and  
parrots, all of  
gold,  
 With cambs & with coronacles · aH of clene perle,  
 Thretti goblettis of gold · þe grattest in þe worde,  
 Fyue hundreth aH of euyñ elde · of Ethyops childire,  
 Rynoseros,<sup>2</sup> a roghe best · with raggid tyndis. 5133 a rhinoceros,  
 Añ a3te to<sup>3</sup> 3our empire · I fra myn erd wayue,  
 Berrers of ane Ebyñ-tree · & brilles a thousand,  
 Foure hundreth Olifants in fere · þis fardiH to bere, 400 elephants,  
 And thretti hundreth of my thede · þat threuen ere &  
 tame. 5137  
 I presand 3ow, of panter · fuH of proud mascles, and 400 panther-  
skins."  
 Foure hundreth fellis 3it to fee · þat fynely ere tewid."  
 Of lepard · & of lionesses · þis lady him sendis,  
 A purtrayour in preuate · scho prays with þaH to pas, She prively sends  
a painter to take  
Alexander's  
portrait.  
 And his personele proporcions · in perchemeñ hire bring.  
 All was done as scho demed · & he<sup>4</sup> hire dere thankis,  
 And graithis hire giftis agayñ · þe gaigest vndire heuen.  
 þe payntour presentis his aport · & shoo was proud þeñ,  
 For scho had depely many day · desyrid him to see. [Fol. 89.]  
 þeñ wendis furth hire dere soñ · a litiH dais eftir, 5147  
 þat was ser Candoile þe kene · þat was hire kidd aire, Candace's son,  
Candoil, goes  
from home.  
 His wife & his women · & with his wale feres,  
 Out of þe cite þai so3t · to solace þar hertis;  
 þe kyng of Bebrike þe bald · him oñ þe bent metis, The king of  
Bebrik assaults  
him,  
 With a company clene · of kni3tis enarmed,  
 Maynes many of his meñ · & him his make refis, 5153  
 For he þat lady had loued · many lange wintire. and robs him or  
his wife,  
 He gers a berne oñ a blonke · hire bremely to cast  
 Before a bald bachelere<sup>5</sup> · oñ a bigg stede;  
 Scho gaffe skirmand skrikis · at aH þe skowis range, who shrieks  
shrilly.  
 It mi3t a persid any hert · to here how scho wepid.

<sup>1</sup> MS. polischa, *altered to* polischt.<sup>2</sup> MS. lynoseros.<sup>3</sup> MS. fra to; *with fra struck out.*<sup>4</sup> *In the margin.*<sup>5</sup> MS. bachele, *altered to* bachelere.

Candoil goes to  
Alexander's tents,

to ask his help.

Candoil is led to  
Ptolemy, the  
second in com-  
mand.

Candoil tells him  
of his misfortune.

[Fol. 89 b.]

Ptolemy tells  
Alexander.

Alexander tells  
Ptolemy to per-  
sonate him,

and to call for  
him by the name  
of Antiochus,

þan was *ser* Candoile in þat cas · kenely distourbid,<sup>1</sup>  
Aires oñ as bely[ue] · to Alexander tentis, 5160  
Thoȝt he wald sewe to þat sire · & seke him of grace,  
If he wald helpe with his heere · þat hend to reschowe.  
Be he þe paulyioñ a-prochid · it past with-in euen,  
And sone þe wacche-meñ with-out · quen þai him þare  
sawe, 5164

þai tuke him, & to Telomew · titte þai him ledd,  
þe mast praysed of þe pers · bot þe prince selfe.  
“Quat dons mañ ert þou?” *quod* þe duke · “& quat  
dos þou here, 5167

Quat is þe cause of þi come? · do kith vs þi name.”  
“Sirs, Candaces soñ þe conquires · & Candoile I hiȝt;”  
And clene tald him [of his<sup>2</sup>] care · þe cause aȝ-to-gedire.  
þan trines oñ *ser* Telomew · & fra his tent wyndis,  
Comands *ser* Candoile to kepe · in a kniȝtis warde,  
Cairys in-to a cabayne · quare þe kyng liggis, 5173  
Fand him slowmand oñ slepe · & sleely him rayses,  
And tellis him of þat tithandis · þe tale how itt standis,  
How þar was comyñ slike a kniȝt · to craue him of help,  
þe soñ of Candace þe quene · þe kepare of Mede; 5177  
And how þe Bebrik kyng<sup>3</sup> · had him his wyfe refid.  
“Ȝa, aire a-gayñ,” *quod* Alexander · “in-to þine awen  
tent;

Do oñ þi hede a dyademe · þe derrest at I haue,  
A crouñ all of clene gold · & a kyngis mantiȝ, 5181  
A-seȝee þe doun in my seȝe · as þou my-selfe ware;  
Lat com a-boute þe my kniȝtis · & call ye my name,  
with<sup>3</sup> liȝt lions latis · as a lord suld;

Say pi-selfe is my-selfe · & þañ my-selfe caȝt, 5185  
As I ware Antioc þat athill · noñ aghe of me þou stand,  
And I sall hiȝe to þi hest · as [I] þi hathiȝ ware.  
Quen I com to þi call · & knele þe before,  
þou saȝ declare me þe cas · of Candals auntir, 5189

<sup>1</sup> MS. distroubid.

<sup>2</sup> MS. tald him him care.

<sup>3</sup> MS. w, followed by a blot and with; probably with with.

Befor his person apert · ilk poynt as he touchid.  
 Be noȝt a-baist quen I bow · ne bede me<sup>1</sup> noȝt to ryse,  
 Bot lat þi semblance be sadd · quen þou þi saȝe zildis;  
 And sai þaȝ, ‘Antioc, myn athiH’ · quen þou has aH tald, and leave the rest to him.  
 ‘Latt se þi witt in þis werke’ · & wysely me rede.”  
 þaȝ<sup>2</sup> trines furth ser Telomew · & tyris him belyue;  
 In emperouris apareH · his<sup>3</sup> person he clethis. 5196  
 And Alexander as belyue · in antioks name, Alexander pre- tends to be Antiochus,  
 Quen he was<sup>4</sup> callid, with a kniȝt · he coms in a stounde.  
 þan tellis to him ser Telomew · þe tale aH-to-gedire,  
 Be-fore ser Candale þe kene · his consaile him askis.  
 “Ware<sup>5</sup> it ȝour will,” quod þe wee · “wale emperoure, and offers his advice.  
 þan wald I fare with þis freke · his fere to reskowe,  
 And bid þe Bebrike · oȝ bathe twa his eȝeȝ, [Fol. 90.]  
 Withouten bade to þis briȝt · his brid to restore; 5204  
 And say þat sire, oȝ þi<sup>6</sup> be-half · bot he hire sone zeld,  
 We saH his cite & him-selfe · synge in-to poudire!”  
 With þat inclynes þe kniȝt · & kyndly him loues, Candoil is pleased.  
 Said, “antiok, of aH men · ay be þou Ioyed; 5208  
 It semes þe, for þi sapience · to sit in a trone,  
 And to be cled as a kyng · with croune & with septir!”  
 þan aires him furth ser Alexander · as Antiok it ware, Alexander, sup- posed to be Antiochus,  
 Cairis oȝ with candoile · & caȝt him his leue,<sup>7</sup> 5212  
 Soȝt furth þe same niȝt · & to þe cite wan,  
 Quare þe Bebrik kyng · with þe bird lengis. goes against king Bebrik,  
 Sone þe wacchis oȝ þe wallis · þaȝ wiȝtly ascryes,  
 Qua þai ware, & of quethen · & quat was þar errande.  
 “It is ser Candoile,” quod þe kyng · “is comyn for and says he is come for Candoil’s wife.  
 his spouse; 5217  
 And I am messangere made · þat mild to delyuire.  
 þe maistir out of Messedone · ȝow maynly enjoynes,  
 If ȝe ȝoure cite wiH saue · to sese him his brid.” 5220  
 þan was þe burgaige a-baiste · & brest vp þe ȝatis,

<sup>1</sup> ne bede me *in the margin.*

<sup>2</sup> MS. La þaȝ; *corrected.*

<sup>3</sup> MS. his his; *corrected.*

<sup>4</sup> MS. had was; *corrected.*

<sup>5</sup> MS. With; *altered to Ware.*

<sup>6</sup> *In the margin.*

<sup>7</sup> MS. wyfe, *altered to leue.*

She is restored. 'Of þe palais of þe proud kyng · his paramour him tuke.  
Sire Candoile to oure conquirour · carpis þire wordis,  
And adoures him for his athiſt dede · & Antiok him calls.

Candoil asks the supposed Antiochus to go with him to Candace. "I pray þe, prince, with me pas · to my praysid modire,  
þat þou may merote haue &<sup>1</sup> menske · & mede for þi  
werkis." 5226

þan was oure kyng of þat carpe · kyndly reioyed,  
For him had list on hire to loke · many lang<sup>r</sup> wintir.  
He said, "aire we to Alexander · & askis him his leue,  
[Fol. 90 b.] And I saſt fayn with þe found · & felsyn þi wiſt."

Alexander pre- tends to ask leave to go. þan trines he to ser Telomew · at in<sup>2</sup> his trone sittis,  
Lazt his leue at þe lede · as he his lorde ware. 5232  
þis kid he for a coyntise · & kest slike a wile,  
Lest he ware knawyñ for þe kyng · þe kniȝt for to  
blinde.

Candoil and Alexander ascend a hideous hill. þan caires he furthe with Candoile · vp at a cliffe wyndis,  
A hidous hiſt & a hiȝe · þat to þe heuen semed,  
Was loken all in lange lindis · like to þe cedres, 5237  
Growand full of gernetts · & gracious frutes.  
þare fand þai bery-buskis · & braunches with grapis,  
þat vnnethes bere miȝt a berin · a bole on his schuldire.  
With hesils hild of hoderen · cloud lang<sup>r</sup> þa appills,  
And aſt þe woddis fuſt of wolſes · & of wild apis. 5242  
þai bow vp to a<sup>2</sup> banke · & þe burgh neȝes;

Candace hears they are coming, And Candace þe conquires · quen scho þe cas heris,  
How bathe hire barne & his brid · was broȝt hame sond,  
þan was scho glad in hire gast · & gretly reioysed.  
In-to a chambre<sup>3</sup> scho chese · & changid hire wedis;

and attires herself richly. A Robe aſt of rede gold · & þan a riche mantiſt, 5248  
A croune & a corecheffe · clustert with gemmes,  
And [cam] doun of hire closere · with kniȝtis him to  
mete.

A grete gate be degrece · agayñ þaim scho foundis;  
"Kys me, ser Candoile" · & clappis him in armes,

<sup>1</sup> Above the line.<sup>2</sup> In the margin.<sup>3</sup> The h is above the line.



Said, "welcum be þou, wale soñ · & þou, my wale dozȝtīr !  
 And I am glad of þoure gest · as gode geffe me ioye." She welcomes her son Candoil.

Sire Alexander hire a-vises · & aȝ his hert liȝtis, 5255  
 Him þoȝt hire like at a loke · his lady his modire.

Scho was so faire & so fresche · aȝ faucon hire semedȝ,  
 Añ elfe out of añ-othire erde · or ellis añ Aungeȝ. Alexander is pleased with Candace.

Hire palais was fuȝ precious · þof it parades ware,  
 Plied ouir with pure gold · aȝ þe plate-rofes, 5260

And þat was ioyned fuȝ of gemes · & of ioly stanes, [Fol. 91.]  
 With breme blasenandȝ bemes · briȝt as þe soñ.

þe kyng with dame Candace · þe casteȝ he entres, Alexander enters a large hall,  
 Silis in with þat semely · in-to a somere-haȝ, 5264

A strenthe, was stiȝtild all of stagis · þe stithest of þe  
 werd,

Was nane so comly a close · vndire þe can[o]pe of heuen,  
 þe bild was aȝ of brent gold · þe beddis of þe same,

Piȝt fuȝ of pentests · & oȝire proude stanes, 5268 full of precious stones and adorned with gems.  
 Of Onycles & orfrays · & orient perles,

And with þire precious piers · of paradise stremes,  
 Bathe þe benkis & þe bordis · bett of þe noble,

Smeteñ fuȝ of smaragdins · & oȝir small gemmes, 5272  
 Of Acats & of Amatistis · & adamants fyne,

Calcidoynes & crisopaces · & oȝir clere bees.

þe pilars ware of purfire · polischt & heweñ, The pillars are of porphyry.  
 With gomes grouelings of gold · graythid for þe nanes,

Fondand on aȝ foure · on fote & oñ handis, 5277

Buskid vndire þe baisens · to bere vp þe postis.

þare ran a reuire, as I rede · vndire þat riche hame, A crystal river runs through the hall.  
 Was neuir na cristalȝ so clere · as was þa clere strandis.

þe kyng & Candace þe quene · & Candeile hire aire,  
 þe same day in þe sale · was serued to-gedire. 5282

Scho sesis him on þe secunde day · [& sone] with him Next day Candace takes Alexander to her chamber.  
 laches,

Raȝt him by þe riȝt hand · & raikis to a chambre,

Was parraillid aȝ of plate-gold · pariet & oȝire,

With stoute starand stanes · þat stremed as þe soñ. 5286

Was þar na leuyand lede · ne lyfe bot þam ane.  
 And þan scho laches him be-lyfe · & ledis him forthire,  
 In-to a clochere with a kay · þe clenrest of þe werde,  
 Was sammed aH of sipris · & seder-tables. 5290

### ¶ Vicesimus quintus passus Alexandri.

[Fol. 91 b.] **Þ**is selere was be sorsry · selcuthely foundið,  
 This room turned round by concealed machinery. Made for a mervaH · to meeue with engine;  
 It begins to move. Twenti tamed Olifants · turned it a-boute,  
 Quirland aH oñ queles · quen þe quene entres. 5294  
 Quen þai ware sett þar in sameñ · oñ silkin webbis,  
 Sone begynnes it to gaa · & gretly he wondres.  
 “Ware slike a wondire in oure marche · of Messedone,”  
 he said,  
 “It ware a daynte to deme · for any duke oute!”  
 Candace calls him by his true name. þaH answers him þis athiH quene · & Alexander him  
 callid, 5299  
 “Mekill grettir it ware to ȝow of grece · & to<sup>1</sup> gomes  
 here.”  
 þan stemes he with þe stoute kyng · & stiggis with his  
 name;  
 Alexander turns pale. His chere out of chere hew · it changis in-to pale,  
 þan has þat hende him by þe hand · & hent vp a laȝtir.  
 Candace shews her portrait of him. In to A preue parlour · þai passe bathe to-gedire, 5304  
 And þar in perchement depayntid · his persoñ scho  
 schewid.  
 Said, “se pi-selfe a sampiH · þat I þe sothe neuyñ!”  
 When he sees this, he trembles. As fast as he oñ þis figour · festid his siȝt,  
 AH falowis his face · & his flesche trimblis; 5308  
 “Qui fadis so þi faire hew?” · said þe faire lady  
 “þe werreour of aH þe werd · & wastoure of ynde,  
 þou þat has brettend oñ þe bent · þe barbrins folke,<sup>2</sup>  
 þe pepiH out of Panty · þe Persens & þe Medis. 5312  
 She tells him be Loo, now, þe here withouten hiȝt · in-to my handis sesed,

<sup>1</sup> In the margin.<sup>2</sup> MS. fokke.

Bot in a womans ward · for aH pi wale dedis !

is in a woman's  
power now.

Ser, wete it wele 3oure worthenes · þat for na wele here

Suld neuire no hathiH vndire heuen · [be] to hi3e losed ;

For aH þe welthe of þe werd · ware it a wee grantid,

It witis a-way at a wapp · as þe wynd turnes." 5318

þan chawfis him þat chiftane · & with him-selfe chidis,

[Fol. 92.]

All if he spared to spek · his sprete he rehetis.

Alexander is  
enraged, and  
gnashes his teeth,

As any terand for tene · he with his tethe gnaistes,

And hitherly on ilk side · his heued he declines. 5322

"Qui colkins þou, ser conquirour · & crabbis so pi saule,

Quat may pi vertu now a-vaile · & aH þine vayn pride?"

"I swete," quod þe swete kyng · "þat I na swerd haue,

because he has no  
sword.

For I na wapeñ haue, I-wis · my writh with to venge!"

"Now, bald baratour oñ bent · if þou a brand hade,

Quat prowis mi3t pi persoñ · a-preue in þis stounde?"

"For I vnwarly," quod þe kyng · "am to 3oure wiH

If he had one, he  
would kill her and  
then himself.

taken,

5329

I suld þe slaa þare þou sittis · & þan my-selfe eftir!"

"Now, be my crouñ," quod þe quene · "as kni3tly þou

swaris ;

Bot neuir-þe-lattir 3it be li3t · & lete of þi sorowe.

For þou has bro3t my soñ wife · of bebricans handis,

And I sall surely þe saue · vnseid of þe berbrens.

Candace assures  
him he is safe.

For ware it knawen of þi come · þai walld pi cors schind,

For opressing of þe gud prince · Porrus of Ynde. 5336

And Caratros my kid soñ · has couplid him to wyfe

þe doz3tir of þis dere kyng · þat þou to dethe bro3t."

With þat scho sesis þis sire · & to þe sale ledes,

She takes him  
back to her sons.

Sendis eftir hire sons · & sobirly þam tretis 5340

þis athiH of ser Alexander · as þai were aH haldeñ,

At þai suld menske him & mirthe · & make him at esee.

"I knaw it wele," quod Caratros · "my comly modire,

Caratros says he  
must kill Alex-  
ander,

þat he my brothirs<sup>1</sup> brid · has out of bands leuird,

& how þe kyng, be þat cause · has to þis kith sent ;

Bot my wyfe will ga wode for wa · bot I þis wee spiH.

or his wife will go  
mad.

<sup>1</sup> MS. brothirð.

- Ne ware he a messangere · & 3it mare for 3oure-selfe,  
 Sure suld him sowe for his sake · at him has sent hedire.  
 [Fol. 92 b.] So saH his maistir, & I may · be my dire saule, 5349  
 For he þe fadire of my fere · has in þe feld drepid.”  
 “A!” quod þis lade, “leue soñ · if we þis lede slo3e,  
 Suld we vs nymme any name · o3t bot of sorowe?”  
 Candoil says he must save him. “3a, Cartros,” quod Candoile · “þis kni3t has me saued,  
 And I sal<sup>1</sup> lede him on lyue · vn-to his lord tentis.”  
 ‘Quat baitis þou me so, my brothire · with þi breme  
 wordis, 5355  
 List<sup>2</sup> ye we stryfe in þis stede · & strike aithire opir?”  
 The brothers quarrel. “þat kepe I no3t,” quod Candoile · “3it for na cas  
 neuend,  
 Bot if þe langis to þat laike · lo me here redy!”  
 Candace tells Alexander to pacify them. þan callis Candace þe kni3t · in consaille him takis,  
 Sees hire sons wald him sla · & radly scho pleynes;  
 ‘Lord Alexander, þine are · quare is þi wittis? 5361  
 I prai þe for þi providence · pesse now my childire.”  
 þan bows þis baratour · þire brethire to stere,  
 He finds the brothers fighting. Fand caratros & candoile · at knyfes to-drawen,  
 Bad, “blyns, bernes of 3oure brathe · & of 3our breme  
 wordis; 5365  
 3e fare bot with folite · quare ere 3oure fyue wittis?”  
 Alexander pacifies Caratros, þan carps he to ser Caratros · & kythis on þis wyse,  
 Ser, if þou lessen my life · na lowere þou wynnes.  
 For Alexander of his aweñ · has many athiH kni3tis  
 þat ere mare sekire at a-say · þan slike seueñ houndreth.<sup>3</sup>  
 For if I ware fallen fey · him forced bot littiH. 5371  
 saying that it is not worth his while to kill him. For ware I a tresour to þat tulk · trowe wele þi-selfe,  
 þat me so sodanly þat sire · had no3t sent hedire,  
 With-uten wees me to warde · nay, wene þou þat neuir.  
 Bot if þe list oñ þat lede · loke with þine e3en, 5375  
 Sire Alexander þe athiH · þine aldfadire bane,  
 þe thare bot graunt me to geue · quat guds as I craue,

<sup>1</sup> In the margin. MS. Lift.<sup>3</sup> MS. henndreth, altered to houndreth.

And I saH prestly þat prince · present in-to þi handis." [Fol. 93.]

þan ware þire brethire fuH blithe · þus ware þai bath  
pesed, 5379

And Candoile callis to þe king · & kindly him thankis, Candoil thanks Alexander.

"Had I ȝow ay with me here · happy ware I þan,  
þan wald I wene with ȝour witt · to wast aH my fais."

With þat scho kende him a croun · clustrid with gemmes, Candace gives him a crown covered with gems.

With Amatists & Adamands · & an athiH mantiH,

Sterind & stiȝt fuH of stanes · sithin stelis to him cussis,

With othire preuates him plesis · bad pas oñ with hele.

Nowe aires furth oure conquirour · & candoile him gidis,

Driues furth all þe dai · till doun was þe soñ, 5388

And so þai come till a caue · was out of course hoge,

Be-twene twa hillis in a hope · & herberd all niȝt.

"Sire," quod candoile þe kene · & to þe kyng said,

"All spritis in þis spelonk · here speke þai to-gedire,

Here is þaire comon consaile;" · & þis þe kyng heris,

Makis he gracis to his goddis · & þan þe grofe entres.

Quen he was douñ in þe depe · he saȝe a dym cloude

Full of starand sternes · and stiȝtild in þe myddest

A grete grysely god · oñ a gay trone, 5397

þat liȝt lemand eȝen · as lanterns he had.

Oure mode kyng was so maied · myndles him semed :

"Haile, Alexander þe hende" · quod þat hiȝe driȝtin.

"Sire, qua ere ȝe?" said oure ser · "Synches I hiȝt ; An oracle calls Alexander by name.

And to my powere vndire-putt · is aH þe playn werd.

For þi name a cite has þou sesid<sup>1</sup> · bot þou settis me na  
temple." 5403

"Sire, if I miȝt merke to Messedone · a Maistir I þe  
hiȝte ; Alexander is told he shall never return to Macedon.

SaH nane be like it in na lede;" · "nay,<sup>2</sup> lange noȝt  
þar-eftir !

þou saH neuir loke on þat land · ga lawere & be-hald."

þañ kend him quare anothire cloude · was fuH of briȝt  
sternes, 5407

<sup>1</sup> MS. sesis.

<sup>2</sup> MS. nay nay.

[Fol. 93 b.]

And quare a-nothire grym god · was graythid oñ a sege.  
 “Sire, quat ert þou,” said þe segge · “*ser* Sirapis, I-wis;  
 þe grond & þe begininge · of all þe godis oute.”

Alexander asks  
 Serapis who is to  
 slay him.

“Now I be-seke þe, Serapis,” · said oure kyng<sup>1</sup> þaþ,  
 Quat segge is sett me to slaa · þe sothe þou me teH.”

“Sire, I haue neuend þe or now · þat, ware þat note  
 knawen 5413

Serapis will not  
 tell him.

Till any douth of quat dome · þeñ died I for sorowe.  
 þou has<sup>1</sup> a blisful þurȝe · biggid to þi name,  
 Quare many bernis sall debate · & bald emperouris,  
 þare saH þi berynes be bildid · & þi body graueñ.” 5417  
 þan come vp oure kidd kyng<sup>1</sup> · and fra þe kniȝt partis,  
 þus kaires he fro candele · bad, ‘kepe wele him driȝtin.’

Alexander and his  
 men come to a  
 valley full of  
 snakes,

Moues him oñ to his meny · & oñ þe morne eftir  
 þaþ dryues he furth *with* his dukis · in-to a deyne entris,  
 A vale full of vermyñ · & all of vile neddirs. 5422

all with crowns  
 on their heads.

And þai ware crokid & coynt · *with* corouns oñ hede,  
 As it smytten [ware] aH of smythis · of smaragdens fine.  
 ȝit ware þai pasturde of pepir · as þe prose tellis, 5425  
 Of gyloffre & of gingere · els ioyed þaim na fodis.

For all ouire couerd was þe coue · claggid *with* spices,  
 þat makis pire wormes so wele · & wond in þaire kyndis,  
 þat ilka twelmonth a turne · þai turnay to-gedire, 5429  
 Ilkane mellis *with* his make · & so þare many dies.  
 þaþ pas þai thethen tiH a place · of perlious bestis,  
 With clouen clees, sais þe clause · as kynd of þe hoggs.

The snakes kill  
 some of his men.

þai ware thike & threuen<sup>2</sup> wele · thre foote o brede,  
 Quare-*with* þai faȝt *with* in-fere · & fellid of his kniȝtis,  
 þai ware so brefe at a blisch · borely & grym.

Oñ ilka best a bares hede · full of breme tuskis, 5436  
 þus ware þai fourmed aH be-fore · & farand be-hynde  
 Like as it ware lepardis · & lions *with* tailis.

Griffins also  
 appear.

ȝit was þar gedird out of gripis · & griffons emange,  
 þat felly flappid at þe faces · of þe feH erles, 5440

<sup>1</sup> MS. *inserts* biggid, *struck through*.

<sup>2</sup> MS. *theeuen*, *altered to* threuen.

And euir ilka best was so bigge · of body & of wyng,  
 þat he miȝt bere away a blonke · & a kniȝt armed.  
 þe kyng was oñ his couresere · to comforth his dukis,  
 Oñ þe bald bucifaloñ · eblande þaim he rydis,  
 Prekis fra place in-to place · bad, “plukis vþ ȝour  
 hertis,” 5445

[Fol. 94.]

Alexander mounts  
Bucephalus,

And cherischest his chiftans · with chelous wordis.  
 He baldis of his bachelers · & his bowmen he cheris,  
 To flay with flanes of þe fowlis · & þe feht bestis. 5448  
 And it was done at his dome · with-drewe þai na langir,  
 Bath archere & albiastis · & all þaim a-sailed.

and encourages  
his archers.

þe bataile oñ bathe halfis · brymly begynnys,  
 Oure seggis & þe Synagyns · semblid vnfaire ;  
 Gripis gripis of oure gomes · out of gilt sadils, 5453  
 Tuk þam in þaire talons · & titt fra þaire blonkis.

A great battle.

The griffins tear  
men out of their  
saddles.

Bot ȝit oure kyng with his kniȝtis · so kenely defendis,  
 And with his ginge out of grece · þat he þe gree wynnes.  
 Bot ȝit was herid of his here · twa hundreth & ouire,  
 þus gafe vþ þe gaste · with gold oñ þai heles.

þan ferd he furth tiȝt a flode · & þat a ferly hoge, 5459  
 Twenti forelangt & ferre · it had of fuȝt breede,  
 And aȝ þe strands of þe streme · stode fuȝt of stith  
 reedis,

The army comes  
to a great river  
full of reeds,

Quare-of he beds at a braid · him bargis to make.  
 Quen it was hewyn at his hest · with heggis ouire-foldeñ,  
 þan entirs in of his erles · & ouire þe ee passis. 5464  
 And aȝ þat kith of oure kyng · quen þai his come wist,  
 þai perid to him with presands · þe proudis of þat land.  
 Sum spends oñ him of spon[ges]<sup>1</sup> · a sparles nounbre,  
 Of mirre & of mekiȝt quat · milke-quite<sup>2</sup> 5468

which they cross  
in barges.Alexander re-  
ceives presents of  
shells and seal-  
skins.

Sum meñ muscles him mett · & with so mekiȝt schellis,  
 þat sex pond miȝt paise · haue ni of watre.  
 Sum of seelis of þe see · sendis to him cotis,

<sup>1</sup> MS. þ spon, followed by a small blank space. The Latin text has spongiās.

<sup>2</sup> The line is incomplete; add—‘& purple.’ Latin text, albas et purpureas.

- [Fol. 94 b.] Sum bees at ware blode-rede · & borely wormes  
 As large as a mans lege · & lamprays of weȝt 5473  
 Twa hundreth pond ay a pece · & past it be fifty.  
 In that river were ȝit was þar wonand in þis watir · as women it semed,  
 creatures like þat ferly faire ware of face · with haare to paire heelis.  
 women, Ouire-stride þar any strange mañ · or be þir strandis  
 sailed, 5477  
 who drew men þai droȝe þaṁ down in-to þe depe · & drowned þaim for  
 down under euire,  
 water, and Or els þai tillid þaim to þe trees · as þe buke tellis,  
 drowned them. And gert þaim laike with þaim so lange · till þaim þe  
 life wantis. 5480  
 Two of them are Oure meñ tuke of þaim twa · was teñ foote of hiȝt,  
 caught. Als blaȝt as any briȝt snaw · & as biche sons<sup>1</sup> tothed.

### Vicesimus sextus passus Alexandri.

- Alexander en- Alexander en-  
 closes two and closes two and  
 twenty kings, twenty kings,  
 Including Gog Including Gog  
 and Magog. and Magog.  
 Names of all the Names of all the  
 kings. kings.  
 [Fol. 95.] þan aires furth ser Alexander · & with his arte closis  
 Of terands of þir tartaryns · twa & twenti kyngs.  
 He stekis þaṁ vp with þar stoures · in a straite lawe,  
 And I saht neuen ȝow þar names · if ȝe þaim neuire herd.  
 Gogg & magogg þe grete · he with þir gomes pyndis,  
 Agekany & Anafrage · & Almade bathe, 5488  
 Sire Camour & ser Cacany · with aht þar kidd ostis,  
 And ane ser Clambert þe kene · was kyng of þer ostis;  
 Gamarody þe goblyn · a-nothire gryñ<sup>2</sup> sire,  
 Marthyney þe miȝtful · & Magen his fere,  
 Appedanere, Olaathere · & Alane þe grete, 5493  
 And ane ser naby onone · he in þe nabb speris.  
 He lockis in ane ser limy · with a laith mey[n]he,  
 And raryfey, a riche ray · he in þe roche stoppis,  
 Sire Filies, a fell kyng · with aht his fers kniȝtis, 5497  
 And ane ser Bedwyñ þe bald · with many briȝt helmes.  
 Arteneus ane athiḥ kem̄ · als-so he in-parkis,  
 And ane ser Tarbyñ, a tulke · with many toore  
 thousandis; 5500

<sup>1</sup> Or sous.<sup>2</sup> Read grym.



Sire Saltary, a-nothire sire · now is þe sowme reckend.  
 All þire he closis in þat cliffe · & cairis on forthire  
 To þe occyañ at þe erthes ende · & þar in an Ilee he  
 heres

Alexander comes  
 to the ocean at the  
 world's end.

A grete glauir & a glaam · of grekin tongis. 5504

þañ bað he kniztis þaim vnclethe · & to<sup>1</sup> þat kithe swym,

Bot all at come in-to þat cole · crabbis has þaim drenchid.

þañ sewis furth þat souerayñ · ay by þa salt strandis

Toward þe settynge of þe soñ · in sesoñ of wintir ;

He turns to the  
 west,

Sexti dais with his sowme · sadly he ridis,

Razt oñ to þe reede See · & rerid þare his<sup>2</sup> tentis. 5510

and reaches the  
 Red Sea.

þare was a miȝti montayne · at to þe mone semed,

He gessis it gaynir to god · þan to þe grounde vndire,

And slike a fonned fantasy · þan felt in his hert,

How þat he listid miȝt be fra þe lawe · vn-to þe list  
 sternes. 5514

He wishes to  
 ascend in the air.

þan made he smythis to gaa smert · & smethe him a  
 chaiere

Of blake ireñ & of bigge · & bynde it with cheynes,

He has an iron  
 chair made,

A sekire sege in to sitt · & sett him on-loft. 5517

And foure Griffons full grym · he in<sup>1</sup> þat graythe festes;

to be raised by  
 four griffins.

He makis to hinge ouir þaire hede · in hokis of ireñ

Flesch on ferroim þaim fra · at þai miȝt noȝt to reches,<sup>3</sup>

To make þaim freke to þe flizt · þat fode for to wyñ,

For þai ware fastand be-fore · halden for þe nanes.

Now is he woñ þurȝe þar wingis · vþ to þe wale cloudis;

They bear him up  
 to the clouds,

So hiȝe to heuen þai him hale · in a hand-quile, 5524

Midil-erth bot as a mylnestane · na mare to him semed,

And aȝ þe watir of þe werd · bot as a wrethen neddire.

þe vertu of þe verray god · envirounis<sup>4</sup> him swythe,

And þañ þai feȝ oñ a fild · as ferre fra his ost 5528

and descend in a  
 field.

As any freke miȝt founde · in fiftene daies,

And he vnhurt with mikiȝ vnhome · he to his ost

[Fol. 95 b.]

wynes.

<sup>1</sup> In the margin.

<sup>2</sup> MS. is his; *with* is struck out.

<sup>3</sup> Read reche.

<sup>4</sup> The first i above the line.

- A-nothire wondirfull witt · 3it worthid in his hert,  
 He wishes to dive in the sea. How he miȝt seke doun sounde · in-to þe see bothom,  
 To see quat selcuthē is seet · in þe salt watir, 5533  
 How many kind<sup>3</sup> of creatours · þat in þe cole duellis.  
 He has a glass box made, strengthened with iron, þan gert he gomes for to gang<sup>1</sup> · & grayth him a tonn  
 Of grene glitterand glas · with gerrethis of iren,  
 þat he miȝt sitt in him-selfe · & with his seȝt pers<sup>2</sup> see  
 Ane & othire & aȝ þing · at outwith it lengid. 5538  
 Sone was it blawen at a braide · & broȝt him be-forne,  
 an<sup>1</sup> supported on chains. Aȝ boun as he badd<sup>3</sup> · & bunden with cheynes.  
 þan of his bald bachelers · þe biggist out callis,  
 And raȝt to þaim þire rekenthis · to rewle & to hald.  
 He makis a conand<sup>3</sup> with his kniȝtis · & kend þaim þe  
 time, 5543  
 Howe lange him likid fra þe lande · to leng<sup>1</sup> in þe depe,  
 He enters the box, and is let down. In at a wicket he<sup>1</sup> went · & wynly it speris;  
 Princes pointid it with pik · & he þe plunge entres.  
 þare saȝe he figours of fischis · & fourmes diuerse, 5547  
 þat kend he neuir so many kindis · ne of so qwaynt  
 hewis.  
 He sees strange four-footed fishes. Sum ferd all oȝ foure feete · & farand<sup>3</sup> as bestis,  
 Bot quen þai blischt oȝ þis berne · þan bade þai na langir.  
 And opir sellis<sup>2</sup> he saȝe · at sai wald he neuir, 5551  
 þat ware vnlikly to leue · to any man wittis.  
 Sone so þe setnes was gane · þat him-selfe made,  
 He is drawn up again. þai dreȝe him vp to þe drye · & he na dere sufird.  
 þan raikis he by þe reede see · & rides ay þe sannd<sup>3</sup>,  
 Ferly ferre with his<sup>3</sup> folke · &<sup>4</sup> ficchid his tentis, 5556  
 þare fande he bestis oȝ þe brym · with bemes as sawis,  
 þat ware as bitand breme · as bladis of swardis.  
 þai sett in a sadd sowme · & sailid his kniȝtis,  
 Porris doun of his princes · & persys þar schildis, 5560  
 3it fellid his folke of þaim fey · foure score hundreth,  
 And foure hundreth, & ferre · be fifti, þai drepid.

[Fol. 96.]

<sup>1</sup> In the margin.    <sup>2</sup> MS. seer sellis; with seer struck out.<sup>3</sup> MS. he, altered to his.<sup>4</sup> MS. repeats &.

- þan driues he þethin *with* his dukis · in-to desert landis, He comes to a great desert.  
 Is riȝt betwene þe reede see · & Arrabie costis, 5564  
 A wilsom wast & a wild · & wons fuȝ of neddirs,  
 And þai ware hedously hoge · & horned as Tupis.  
 þai turred down of his tulkis · & *with* þar tyndis sloȝe ;  
 Bot þe dreȝest deele of þaim died · of his dukis handis.  
 þan past he to a-noȝir place · & piȝt down his tentis, He fights against various strange beasts.  
 And fand a bataiȝt of bestis · as breme as þe first. 5570  
 þai ware of figour & of fourme · as fendis of heȝ,  
*With* heuȝ hedis & hoge · as horses it were.  
 And þai ware tacchid fuȝ of tethe · as tyndis ere of Some are like fiends.  
 harows,  
 And feȝt flammes as of fire · floȝe fra þaire mouthes.  
 A selly sowme of his seggis · was slane or he wist,  
 And he þaȝ hertis his here · biddis, “hewis oȝ, my  
 childire ;” 5576  
 And ferly ferd of his folke · was in þe fild strangild.  
 Bot aȝ þe dreȝe of þa deuels · þai drenchid or þai past.  
 þan fondis he furth *with* his folke · in-to a fild entris, He comes to a plain.  
 And þar he logis *with* his lordis · & lengis for a quile.  
 For slike a feȝt infirmite · was in his hors bundeȝ,  
 Bucifalon þe bald stede · þat he for bale dies. 5582 Bucephalus dies.  
 þe berne blischis oȝ his blonke · & seȝes his breth faile,  
 Siglis selcuthly sare · & sadli he wepis,  
 For he had standen him in stede · in stouris fuȝ hard,  
 Woȝ him wirschlip in were · fra many wathe saued.  
 þe kynge to þis carioȝ · he castis his eȝen,  
 Said, “ fare wele, my faire foole · þou failid me neuire !  
 Saȝ now þi flesch here be freteȝ · *with* fowlis & *with*  
 wormes, 5589  
 þat has so doȝtyly done ? · nay, driȝtin for-bede ! ”  
 þaȝ bilds he þare a berynes · þis beste in-to ligg, and builds him a costly tomb.  
 Of schene schemerand gold · as it a schrine ware,  
 A tombe as a tabernacle · & tildis vȝ a cite 5593 [Fol. 96 b.]  
 In reuerence of þat riche stede · & eftir him it callis.  
 þan ridis he to a Reuere · a ruyde & a hoge,  
 ALEXANDER. T He comes to a great river ;

Detiratȝ þe depe · þe meñ þare it callis ;  
 Fyue thousand Olifants in feree · þa frithmeñ him broȝt,  
 A hundreth Mille<sup>1</sup> heuy chargis · ware heweñ for þe  
 were.

and then to a  
 palace of Xerxes.

þan pas he to a proude place · a palas of ioye, 5599  
 Of Sexis, at sum time · was senyours of Persy.  
 þar fand he garetȝis aȝ of gold · & gildin chaumbres,  
 And many a miracle in þe mote · þat miche ware to  
 reken.

He finds white  
 birds,

þar fand þai bridis in þa bilds · borely & quite,  
 Of fepir fresch as any fame · as ere þir fedith dowfis,  
 þat see wald of a sekemañ · or any sorow ailid, 5605  
 Queþir he suld warisch of þat waa · or of þe werd  
 turne.

who can tell  
 whether a sick  
 man will recover.

For if þai blithly vp blenkid · & blischt oñ his face,  
 þañ suld he couir of his<sup>2</sup> care · men knew by þe  
 takens ;

He conquers  
 Babylon,  
 and kills king  
 Nabuzardon.

And if þai chaungid opoñ chaunce · his chere to be-hold,  
 With-outeñ doute he was dede · þañ durid he na langir.  
 Now bowis furth þis baratour · & Babiloyñ he wynnys,  
 Brettenes þe bald kyng · & bringis him of lyue, 5612  
 Ane Nabizanda was named · & a noble kniȝt,  
 Was ane þe proudest of his pirs · & prince of his ward.  
 He lengis in lithis & in lee · to his lyues ende,

He writes home  
 to his mother  
 and to Aristotle.

A seuen monethis in sonde · & sende out a pistiȝ 5616  
 To his modire in-to Messedone · & to his maistir als  
 Of his auntours, of his angwisch · & of his athiȝ werkis,  
 And Aristotiȝ be-lyue · him anothire writis.

“To þe kyng of kyngis,” quod þis clerke · “comande I  
 myselfe. 5620

[Fol. 97.]

Sire, quen I waitid oñ ȝour werkis · I wex aȝ affraid  
 Sum grayne of godhede, I gesse · was growen ȝow  
 within ;

Aristotle's reply.

For þou has said þat neuir did segge · ne saȝe bot þine  
 ane ;

<sup>1</sup> I. e. thousand.

<sup>2</sup> In the margin.

3it miȝt neuir, I lofe oure lorde · my lege, ȝow with-  
 stande ;  
 Sire, blissid be aȝ pi bachelers · at þe in<sup>1</sup> bales helpid !"  
 And now fynes here a fitt · & folows a-nothire. 5626

### Vicesimus septimus passus Alexandri.

Oure bold<sup>2</sup> kyng<sup>1</sup> in Babiloun<sup>2</sup> · nowe bildis vp a trone,  
 þe postis with aȝ þe apurtynance · as pure as þe  
 noble, Alexander builds  
 a throne in  
 Babylon.

þat was so wondirly wroȝt · of werkis diuerse,  
 þat slike a sege vndire soȝ · was neuire sene eftir.  
 So grete garisons of gold · þe grekis in broȝt, 5631  
 þe Medis & þe Messedons · many horsis chargid,  
 þat pai out of ynde & els-quare · with olifants lede ;  
 It wald haue wlated any wee · þat welth to be-hald.  
 Twelfe cubettis fra þe cald erth · he castis it oȝ hiȝt,  
 And xij degreces aȝ of gold · for gate vȝ of lordis ;  
 And twyse sex Semylacris · sesid he þar-vndire, 5637  
 þat held oȝ hiȝe with þaire handis · aȝ þir heuy werke.  
 And þar was grauyn in þos gomes · with grekin letteris,  
 And titild in þe tried names · of his twelfe princes.  
 With ilk a statute þat þar stude · stoutely enarmed,  
 And euer-ilk a persoȝ a prince · payntid was eftir.

It was 12 cubits  
 high,  
 with 12 images.

Aȝ þe sete of þe sege · was smaragdys fyne, 5643  
 Off tried topaces & trewe · tyrid was þe wawes,  
 A tabernacle ouir þe trone · tildid vȝ oȝ<sup>3</sup> loft,  
 And þan with stanes of ilka state · waȝ þe stoure clustrid.  
 A charboele as a chasse · was in þe chefe boȝ, 5647  
 þat brynt in bely-blind<sup>4</sup> niȝt · as briȝt as þe soȝ,  
 With Imagis vndire in ilka nend · & Impid in þe names  
 Of aȝ þe prouynces & þe places · þat he was prince ouire.  
 And pai ware visid aȝ in versis<sup>4</sup> · in variant lettirs,  
 Sum in latens lare · sum langage of grece,

The seat was of  
 precious stones.

[Fol. 97 b.]

It had inscriptions  
 in various  
 languages,

<sup>1</sup> In the margin.

<sup>2</sup> MS. Baliloun.

<sup>3</sup> In the margin.

<sup>4</sup> MS. verser.

	Assisid aH of sex foote · & sett in betwene,	5653
	Ay thre paire oñ a plate · qware a poynt ristis.	
with the names of all the countries he had conquered;	Now sall I neuyn 3ow þe names · note 3e þe wordis;	
	¶ þe pepiH out of Panthi · is plant in first,	
	Pruto, Picard, & Pers · & Pamphalie <sup>1</sup> bathe,	5657
such as Portugal,	Portingale & Paiters · it paies me trouage,	
Arabia,	Arrabe & Artoyes · and Assie þe mare,	
	Abbeoñ & Aufrike · & Acres anothire,	
Ethiopia,	Effosym̄ & Ethiops · þire ebrues folke ;	5661
	aH Ermony & Ewrope · enterely me serues,	
England and India, and Ireland,	Ingland, Itaille, & Yndee · & Ireland costis,	
	Meede & Mesopotayme · & Massedoyne eke ;	
	Turke, Tuscan, & Troy · and Tartary <sup>2</sup> clene,	5665
	Surre, SysyH, & Saarde · & Syres aH ouire ;	
Greece and Gascony,	Gyane, Garnad, & Grece · & Gascoyne I haue,	
	Baxe, Bayoñ, & Burdeux · & Bretayn þe graunt,	
	Capidos, & Calde · þe Canony pepiH,	5669
Russia and Cornwall,	Russe, Romayn̄ & Ramys · a rent þai vs zeld̄.	
	aH Calabree & Corwaile · oure coroun obieñ,	
	Bathe naples & Norway · þire Nauernes aH,	
Hungary and heathen Spain,	þe beeris <sup>3</sup> out of Hungry · & out of haythen Spayn̄,	
	Frigie, Flandres, & Fraunce · & Femony vs loutis,	
	Ascalioun, & Arcagee · all of vs haldis ;	
Tyre, Thessaaly, and Palestine.	Tiree, & Tasse, & Tessale · oure tributars ere,	
	Poliponens, & Pentapoł · & Palestyne þe riche.	5677

[Here ends the fragment in the Ashmole MS.]

<sup>1</sup> MS. Pamplalie.

<sup>2</sup> MS. Tartasy.

<sup>3</sup> Sic ; perhaps for heeris.

*The remainder of the story may be briefly paraphrased as follows from the Historia de Preliis :—*

Alexander next causes a golden crown to be made, adorned with precious stones, with an inscription.

A certain woman in Babylon is delivered of a monstrous child,

the upper half of which is born dead. A soothsayer tells Alexander that it signifies his approaching death.

At that time there was a man in Macedon named Antipater, who conspired with others to kill Alexander. He designed to do so by poison.

Antipater procures very strong poison, and sends it to his son Cassander. Cassander instructs his brother Roboas (whom Alexander loved, but had chidden for a slight fault) how to convey the poison to Alexander.

Alexander makes a great feast in Babylon. Roboas puts the poison in a cup, and hands it to Alexander, who drinks it, and cries out, "Help, help!" In falling, his sword pierces his liver; yet he rises again, and bids his guests continue the feast.

Alexander asks Cassander for a feather, to cause vomiting, and Cassander hands it to him, dipped in poison, which only increases the malady. Alexander passes a sleepless night, during which his lamp goes out. He crawls along on hands and knees to drown himself in the Euphrates. Roxana stops him, and replaces him in his bed, lamenting. Alexander sends for a notary to make his will.

The will instructs Aristotle to give a thousand talents of gold to the priests of Egypt. If Roxana gives birth to a boy, he is to be emperor; if to a girl, she is to be empress, married to some princely Macedonian, who is to be made emperor. Let Ptolemy have Egypt and marry Cleopatra; let Cleother have Ethiopia, Antiochus Syria, Arrideus Peloponnesus, Aristus India, Nicanor Seleucia, Ysmachas Hungary, Haulus Armenia, Lyochus Dalmatia and Sicily, Simon the notary Cappadocia and Pelagonia; lastly, let Cassander and Roboas have all as far as the river named Sol, and let their father Antipater have Cilicia.

When the will was made, there followed thunders and lightnings and great earthquakes, and all the world knew that his death was near. The Macedonians crowd round the palace, demanding to see him, and to know who is to be his successor. He names Perdiccas, to whom he commends Roxana and all his soldiers.

Then the Macedonians all begin to kiss him and to weep bitterly. Their lamentations are as low thunder, and even the sun is eclipsed.

A certain Macedonian, named Solentius, asks what they shall do when Alexander is gone. They all deplore the great calamity, and think that the great empire will fall to ruins. Alexander directs his crown to be sent to the temple of Apollo, gives instructions for the embalming of his body, directs Ptolemy to erect to his memory a golden sepulchre in Alexandria, and dies.

After his death, his princes dress the body in imperial state. He is conveyed to Alexandria, and buried in a costly tomb.

Alexander was of middle height, with a long neck, bright eyes, and ruddy cheeks. The days of his life were thirty-two years and seven months. He began to war at eighteen, and in seven years subdued all the barbarian nations. He was born on the eighth of the kalends of January, and died on the fourth of the kalends of April. He built twelve cities (which are enumerated).

Alexander's tomb was of gold. It was visited by philosophers, of whom the first said: "Alexander has made his treasure of gold." The second said: "Yesterday all the world was not enough for him; to-day four ells of it suffice him." The third: "Yesterday he ruled the people, to-day the people rule him." The fourth: "Yesterday he could deliver many from death, to-day he could not deliver himself." The fifth: "Yesterday he led an army out of the city, to-day he is led by it to his burial." The sixth: "Yesterday he pressed the ground, to-day the ground presses on him." The seventh: "Yesterday all nations feared him, to-day they despise him." The last: "Yesterday he had both friends and enemies, to-day all men are alike to him."<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Compare the *Gesta Romanorum*, ed. Herrtage (E. E. T. S.), p 516, no. **xxx**i.



## The Story of Alexander.

[THE following epitome of the life of Alexander, in English prose, is copied from the Dublin MS., beginning on fol. 45, back.]

- Alexander the grete, þe sone of philip kyng<sup>t</sup> of macedon<sup>e</sup>, which philip regned vij 3ere, and þe said alexander began to regne in the xviiij 3ere of hys age.
- 4 And he said to hys peple in þis wise: "Fair lordes, I will in no wise be contrarye to your willes, ne to your dedes. But I schewe to you þat I hate frawdez & maleces, & as I haue loued you duryng my faders lyff,
- 8 so will I do in tyme Commyng. And I bothe counsell & pray you that 3e drede god, obeye hym as souerayn of aH, And chese hym for kyng; & be most obeyssiant to hym þat shall best purvay for þe gude astate of hys
- 12 people, & þat shall be most debonar & mercifuH to pure folkez þat beste<sup>1</sup> woll kepe iustice & þe right of þe feble ayenst<sup>t</sup> the mighty; hym also that shaH best dispoyse for þe publyke wele<sup>2</sup> & for no dilectacion of
- 16 wordly<sup>3</sup> plesaunce shaH not be slowefuH to kepe & defende you, and by whom 3e shall be defendytt, & aH eueH & harmez by þe meane of hys goode dedes shall be distroyed; And he þat most hardly shall put hym
- 20 in devour to distroy your enmys; for suche ought to be chosen kyng<sup>t</sup> and none other."

Alexander begins to reign.

His address to his lords.

"Dread and obey God;

obey also him who takes most care for the public welfare;

and him who best endeavours to destroy your enemies."

<sup>1</sup> MS. þat beste þat best.      <sup>2</sup> MS. publyke like wele.

<sup>3</sup> A correct form.

His people  
applaud him.

"We beseech  
thee to reign  
over us."

He thanks them  
for their prayers  
on his behalf.

Darius, king of  
Persia, demands  
tribute from him,  
which he refuses.

The Brahmane  
of India ask  
Alexander not to  
war against them.

He goes to visit  
them.

He finds them to  
be very poor.

And whan hys people had herd hys reasons aboue-  
said, & knowen his grete discrecion, witte, & vnder-  
stondyng, thei wer gretly amerveld, and answered to 24  
hym þus: "We haue herd & vnderstand thy grete  
reasons, And haue resseyued & resseyue thy good  
CounceH, and theirfor we will & beseche the that þou  
regne vppon vs & haue þe lordship vppon vs. Duryng 28  
þi lyf we hope þer is none that hase so wele deseruyd  
to be our kyng." And þus þai chese hym to be þair  
king, and Coroned hym, & yaff hym þair blessynges,  
And prayd to god that he wold blesse & maynt[en]e<sup>1</sup> 32  
hym. To whom he said: "I herd þe prayer that 3e  
haue made for me, besechyng þat he wol stedfast þe  
loue of me in your hertes & coragez, And þat by no  
maner of the delectacion he suffre me do þat thyng 36  
þat is ayen your profectez ne to my disworship."

And sone after he send letters to all hys princez &  
good townes of all hys Royaume. And when [he] hed  
sent hys letters, one Dary, king of perce & of medy, 40  
sent to alexandre for tribute like as he hed of hys  
fadre. And he sent hym word at þe henne þat layde  
þe gret egge was deyde. And after þis alexandre  
made grette conquestes, And conquerd Inde, he went to 44  
a cuntree called Bragman; the which when þai wist of  
hys Comyng, þai sent mony wise men to hym, whiche  
salute hym & sayd: "Sir alexander, þou hast no cause  
to werre vppoñ us, ne to euill willyng; For we be<sup>2</sup> 48  
both meke & poure, & we haue no-þing bott sapience,  
the whiche if you will haue, pray god þat he wyll  
gyff hir the; for by batayH þou shalt neuer hafe hir."  
And when alexander herd hym say so, he made all hys 52  
oste to tarye, & with few of hys knyghtez went within  
þe sayd cuntree, for to enquere further of þe trouth.  
And when he entred within þe same ground he found  
mony poore folkez, women & chylde all naked, gad- 56

<sup>1</sup> MS. maynte.      <sup>2</sup> MS. be ben.

deryng herbis in þe feldez. And he asked of þaim  
 many questions, to whiche þai answerd wisely. And  
 þan he bad þaim aske of hym some þing þat might  
 60 do þaim good & to all þair people, and he wold gyff  
 þaim it gladly. And þen þai said: "Sir, we aixe þe  
 none other þing bot at þou wol gyff vs euerlastyng  
 lyfe." Thenne *alexander* answerd & said: "howe  
 64 might a man make other mennes liues euerlastyng<sup>t</sup> when  
 he may not lennthe hys awne life one houre? And  
 þat 3e axie of me is in no mannez power þat leueth."  
 Thenne þai said to hym: "Seth þou hase good know-  
 68 legh therof, wher trayvelles þou þi-self<sup>t</sup> to distroye all  
 the worlde and gadre aH<sup>1</sup> þe wordly tresours, And  
 wotte not when þou must<sup>t</sup> lefe þaim?" Then *Alex-*  
*ander* sayd to hym: "I do nott<sup>t</sup> aH þis at 3e say as of  
 72 my-self. Butt god hath sent me thugh all þe world  
 for texalte<sup>2</sup> and magnifye hys lawe and distroy all þem  
 þat beleue not in hym."

He offers to grant  
 them a boon.

They ask for  
 everlasting life.

He says he  
 cannot give it.

They ask him  
 why he toils so  
 much to win  
 what he cannot  
 long keep.

He replies that  
 he is doing God's  
 will.

And some tyme *Alexander* wente disgyseð visityng<sup>t</sup>  
 76 hys lordez & enquiryng<sup>t</sup> of þair dedes. And on a tyme  
 he Come in-to a towne of hys awne, And sawe two men  
 of þe same towne bifore a iuge pletyng<sup>t</sup>, of the which  
 on said to þe Iuge: "Sir, I haue boght on house of  
 80 thys man; And, long<sup>t</sup> after, I haue founde in it a  
 tresour vnder þe erthe, which is nott myne. And I  
 haue offerð to deliuer it to hym: And he hath refusyd  
 it; wherfore, Sir, I beseche the he be compellyd to  
 84 take it, for alse moche as he knoweth it is not myne;  
 for I haue no right þerto." Thenne the Iuge com-  
 maund<sup>t</sup> hys aduersarie parte to answere to þe same.  
 And þen he sayd: "sir Iuge, that same tresour was  
 88 neuer myne; but he hath edyfyed<sup>t</sup> in þat place that  
 was byfore comyn to aH þoo that wold haue edyfyed  
 ther-in. And þerfore I haue no right to take it."

He visits a town,  
 and sees two men  
 pleading before  
 a judge.

One says, "I have  
 found a treasure  
 in the house  
 which I bought of  
 this man; compel  
 him to take it."

The other replies  
 that the treasure  
 was never his.

<sup>1</sup> MS. and gadre alle (fol. 46 b) And to gedyr all.

<sup>2</sup> MS. to texalte: (texalte = to exalte).

Both ask the  
judge to take it  
himself,

but he refuses.

He finds that one  
of them has a son,  
and the other a  
daughter; and  
says, they must  
be married, and  
so divide the  
treasure.

Alexander is  
astonished,  
saying, that many  
judges would have  
done otherwise.

The judge makes  
a reply,

at which Alex-  
ander marvels  
still more.

Alexander comes  
to a city where all  
the houses are of  
equal height, and  
before every  
house-door there  
is a grave.

And þen þai both required þe Iuge that he wold take  
it to hym-self; to qwom he answerd & sayd: "sithen 92  
it is so that ye say that [ye] haue no right herto, ne he  
hath no right to whom þe herytage hath longed and  
yet bylongeth whar þe tresour was founden, how shuld  
I haue ony right þerto, that am bot a straunger in that 96  
caas, And neuer afore herd speke þerof? And ye wold  
excuse yow þerof & yeue me þe charge of þe tresoure;  
which is euyH done." Thenne he askyd of þaim þat  
hed founde þe tresour, whether thay had ony children? 100  
and þe tone answerd & sayd, he hed a soñ: and [he]  
asked þat other in like wyse, & he sayd, he hed a  
doghter. And þen þe Iuge comaundyd to make a  
maryage bitwene þaim two, And at þai shuld haue þe 104  
tresour by þat meane. And when Alexander herd þis  
Iugement,<sup>1</sup> he hed gret mervayle therof, and sayd þus  
to þe Iuge: "I trowe þer is nott in all þe world so  
rightwise a Iuge as þou art." And the Iuge, þat 108  
knew hym nott, sayd & asked of hym whether ony  
Iuge in hys cuntree wold haue done otherwyse: "ye,  
certainly," sayd alexander, "in many landez." Thenne  
þe Iuge, hauyng grete mervayH þerof, asked of hym 112  
whether it rayned and þe sone dyd shyne in tho  
landez; as he wold haue sayd, that it was mervayH  
þat god shuld send ony light or rayne or other goode  
thynggez to them that do nott right & trew Iugement. 116  
And therefore Alexander had gretter meruayH than by-  
fore, And said, þer was bott few suche people vpon  
erth as þai were in þat land.

And as alexander went owt of þat land, he passyd 120  
thurgh a cite in þe which all þe housez of þat Cyte  
were of one hight, & byfore þe dure of euery hous was  
a grete pitte or graue; in whiche cite þer was no Iuge,  
wherof he had gret mervayll; and asked of þe inhabit- 124

<sup>1</sup> The latter syllable (*ment*) is written in the middle of the  
lower margin of the leaf. Fol. 47 begins with he hed.

antis therin wherof such thynges shuld serue. The  
 which answerd hym & sayd: "First, for þe outragez<sup>1</sup> The inhabitants  
 hight of housez, loue & Iustice can nott be long a towne explain to him  
 128 among þe people." And þai sayd, þe pittez & grauez the meaning of  
 wer þair awne housez, to þe whiche þat þai shuld these things.  
 sone go to, and þer dwelle vnto þe day of Iugement.  
 And as tochyng<sup>t</sup> that thai hed no Iuge, þai sayd, þai  
 132 made good Iustice of þem-self, wherfore þai nede no  
 Iuge. Thenne *Alexander* departed from þaim<sup>2</sup> right  
 well pleasyd.

And afore hys deth, he wrote a letter vnto hys Alexander writes  
 136 moder, desering<sup>t</sup> hir to make no sorow for hym. And to his mother,  
 sone aftir *Alexander* died & was putt in a coffre of gold, dies, and is buried  
 & buried in alexandria with grete reuerence by princez in Alexandria  
 & oþer grete lordes that keped<sup>3</sup> & fulfilld hys testa with great  
 140 ment<sup>t</sup> as he had ordeigned: thenne stert vp one of þe honour.  
 grettest<sup>t</sup> lordes of þaim that kept<sup>4</sup> hym, and sayd þus:  
 "Thay þat neuer . . .

[*The rest of the story is lost.*]

<sup>1</sup> So in MS.; read outrageouz.      <sup>2</sup> MS. þaim them.

<sup>3</sup> MS. kepeth.      <sup>4</sup> MS. kepeth.



## NOTES.

IN the following notes some attempt is made to elucidate a few passages in the text, especially where additional light is to be obtained from comparing it with the original Latin, or with the other English versions. In some cases phrases are explained, but the reader should, in general, turn to the Glossarial Index for help with respect to the more difficult words. The question of the various texts of the Alexander Romance is more fully treated of in the Preface. It is sufficient to mention here that the Latin text cited below is the "Historia de preliis," as printed (at Strassburg) in 1489. The English alliterative fragment cited as "A." is that edited by myself in 1867 as an Appendix to William of Palerne (E. E. T. S.); whilst that cited as "B." is the text called "Alexander and Dindimus," also edited by me in 1878. These two fragments are allied to very different parts of the present text. A part of A. resembles ll. 23—803\* of our text, whilst B. resembles ll. 4019—4714.

Lines 1—22 are obviously original, and intended as a Prologue.

13. *Bot if*, unless. "It were a wonder else, unless they would in many a way (desire to hear wanton works); for, as their wits are within (them), so their will follows (those wits)."

15. *Ettillis*, I will endeavour, the present being used for the future. *Ettillis* is the first person; and the suffix *-is* at once marks the dialect as Northumbrian; for further remarks on this point, see the Preface.

17. *The buke*, i. e. the Latin text here followed.

18. "All the world over" is a phrase still in use.

21. *And ye will*, if ye will. *Renkis*, men, hearers; the story is supposed to be recited or read aloud.

23. Here the Romance begins, and in order to shew clearly how the translator has treated his original, the whole of the first chapter of the Latin text is here given, answering to the *Primus Passus* of the translation, which ends at l. 213. It should be further compared with the corresponding passage of A., viz. ll. 452—573.

"[S]apientissimi Egipcii, scientes mensuram terre vndasque maris et celestium ordinem cognoscentes, id est, stellarum cursum, motum etiam firmamenti, tradiderunt etiam vniuerso orbi per altitudinem et per noticiam artium magicarum. Dicunt enim de Anectanabo rege ipsorum quod fuerit ingeniosus in astrologia et mathematica eruditus. Quadam autem die dum nunciatum fuisset ei quod Artaxerses rex persarum cum valida manu hostium super eum veniret, non mouit militiam neque preparauit exercitum, sed intrauit cubiculum palatii sui; et dependens

concham eream plenam aqua pluiali tenensque in manu virgam eream, hic per magicam incantationem demones conuocabat, et per magicas incantationes intelligebat in ipsa concha classes nauium super eum potentissime venientes. Erant enim principes in custodiam militie positi Anecta[na]bi a confinibus persarum. Uenit quidam exors dicens, "Maxime Anectanabe, insurgit in te Artaxerses rex persarum cum multitudine hostium et gentilium infinitis. Sunt enim Parthi, Medi, Perse, Syrii, Mesopotamii, Drapes, Phares, Argiri, Caldei, Bachiri, Confires, Hircani, atque Agiophii, et alie pluresque gentes de orientalibus partibus procedentes." Cum hec audisset Anectanabus, suspirans dixit: "Custodiam quam tibi condidi bene obserua, sed non tamen sicut princeps militie egisti, sed sicut homo timidus. Uirtus enim non hec valet in multitudine populi sed in fortitudine animorum; an nescis quod vnus leo multos ceruos in fugam vertit?" Et hec dicens iterum intrauit cubiculum solus, et fecit nauculas ereas in concha cum aqua plena pluiali, tenensque in manu virgam palme et respiciens in ipsam incepit totis viribus incantare, et videbat qualiter egyptii sternebantur impetu classium Barbarorum. Statimque mutato habitu, radens sibi caput et barbam, et tulit aurum quantumcunque portare potuit, et quecunque erant sibi necessaria ad astrologiam et ad artes magicas exercendas, fugit prope pelusium de egypto. Denique veniens ethiopiam induit linea vestimenta egipcus quasi propheta, intrauit macedoniam, sedensque manam (*sic*) grecis (*sic*) coram omnibus palam videntibus diuinabat. Egiptii vero vt viderunt quia Anectanabus non inueniebatur ad curtum, perrexerunt ad Serapim deum illorum maximum, et rogaerunt eum vt vera responsa daret eis de anectanabo rege eorum. Serapis autem respondit: "Anectanabus rex vester abijt de egypto propter Arthaxersem regem persarum, qui vos sno imperio subiugabit. Post modicum vero tempus reuertetur ad vos reijciendo a se seruitutem et vlciscetur de inimicis vestris subingando illos vobis." Et hec responsa recipientes statim fecerunt statuam regalem ex lapide nigro in honorem Anectanabi, et scripserunt ad pedes eius responsa vt in posterum memorie mandaretur. Anectanabus autem mansit macedonie incognitus."

We must not omit to notice here that Gower, in his *Confessio Amantis*, bk. vi. (ed. Pauli, iii. 61), gives a long extract from the *Alexander Romance*, which he designates as being

"A great cronique emperiall,  
Which euer into memoriall,  
Among the men, how so it wende,  
Shall dwelle to the worldes ende."

See also the verse translation of "Kyng Alisaunder," edited by Weber, and the *Life of Alexander* by Plutarch.

25, 26. Here we have mention of the two lower elements, earth (*mulde*) and water (*see*).

27. Here the third element of *air* is mentioned, beyond which was a "periphery" of fire, not noticed. The "odde home" above the air



refers to what Gower calls *orbis* or the fifth element, otherwise the firmament; see Conf. Amant. iii. 105, 107. In this *orbis* are contained the seven planets and the fixed stars. The "courses of the clear stars" in l. 28 refers to the orbits of the planets.

29. For *aghill tre* read *athill thre*. The reference is to the three "peripheries" into which the element of air was subdivided.

"This air in periferies *thre*

Devided is, of such degre," &c.; Gower, C. A. iii. 93.

*Articus* and *Antarticus* refer to the two poles of the heavens.

35. A clear reference to the opening words of the Latin text—"Sapientissimi Egiptii," &c.

36. "They taught all, that desired to learn it, (some) of that lore." *Lere* is here improperly used, the right word being *learn*. The converse error, of using *learn* in the sense of 'teach,' is common in provincial English.

41. "When he beheld the heaven, he was wise enough to reckon the destinies of men alive."

44. How Aristotle taught Alexander "the nature of philosophy" is told by Gower in his seventh book. On the "seven arts," see my Notes to P. Plowman, p. 243.

46. The three authors alluded to are doubtless Plato, Pythagoras, and Priscian; they are not mentioned in the Latin text, the translation being much amplified.

50. "To pass (i. e. to march) against him."

56. Compare A. 480—"Of rain-water ryght full · þe rink gon it dress." Lat. "concham plenam aqua pluuiiali."

70. *Hare wod*, hoar wood, i. e. bare wood, one stripped of leaves, as in winter-time. So also "*hore okez*" and "*bare twyges*," Gawain and the Grene Knight, 743, 746; "*a forest highe and hore*," Le Morte Arthur, ed. Furnivall, l. 314.

71. *Anec*, for Anectanabus; this shortened form occurs frequently.

81. *Artaxenses*, Artaxerxes. As in all M.E. poems, the spelling of proper names is very inaccurate. So in l. 87, the MS. has *panthy*.

87. These names may be compared with those in the Latin text (above), and in A. 494—500. Hence *Syre* is Syria; *Sychim* (perhaps suggested by Sicheim in the Bible) answers to none of the Latin names; *Capidos* no doubt means Cappadocians; *Faire* represents the Lat. *Phares*; *Batary*, the Lat. *Bachiri* (perhaps Bactrians). See note to A. 493.

97. *Kepe to þe marche*, guard the border-land; or, as A. has it, "Keepe well thyne owne koste" (coast).

105. "But only in that case where they (i. e. men) are blended (i. e. compounded) with greatness of will" (i. e. of courage).

107. For *þe* (as in MS.) we should certainly read *þu*, thou (voc. case).

110. "Will cause to take to flight, and will terrify, many harts." See note to A. 515.

118. "Without more hindrance."

126. None of the texts help to explain this line.

128. This line curiously resembles that in Chaucer, C. T. 3209—"His astrolabie, longing for his art." See Chaucer's Treatise on the Astrolabe.

129. *Quadrentis*, quadrants. We suggest this word as an improvement upon the corrupt reading *In adrentis* of the MS. The alliteration demands a word beginning with *qu*, and as the MS. has the rest of the word, the correctness of the suggestion can hardly be doubted.

130. *Mekil quat*, much of various kinds, many various things. See Morris, Outlines of English Accidence, p. 137, § 213.

145. *Openly deuynes*; Lat. "*palam . . diuinabat*." Frequent similar coincidences of expression leave little doubt as to the fact that the poet's translation was made (mainly) from the "*Historia de preliis*."

146. "Let him hear, whoso desired"; *here* being in the imperative mood. Phrases of a similar cast are not uncommon in Middle English.

150. *Tere* is a less common form of *tore*, difficult; see *tere*, *tor* in Stratmann, and the Glossary.

161. *Ser Sirraphis*, the Egyptian god Serapis. See l. 5409.

168. This is an instance of an ambiguous oracle, but the ambiguity only appears in the original Greek, as given in the note to A. 565. It could be read as meaning: "Your fugitive king will again return to Egypt, not as an old, but as a young man, and will destroy and subjugate our enemies," or otherwise, "and will subjugate our enemies, the Persians"—*τοὺς ἐχθροὺς ἡμῶν πέρσας ὑποτάξει*. See ll. 184—189 below. It was fulfilled in the latter sense, when Alexander, the son of Anectanabus, arrived in Egypt before defeating the Persians; see ll. 1121—1136.

174. *Bees*, shall be; just as the A.S. *beón* is often used with a future sense.

179. "Since it is ordained to be so, and it cannot fail, nor (be) shewn to be in any other way, nor (are) we (likely) to avoid it, (there is nothing for us) but to give them up the girdle; it avails us not (to think) otherwise." Many of the sentences have similar abrupt transitions; it is easier to catch the sense than to define it precisely. The phrase "to give up the girdle" means to submit to the inevitable, to acknowledge oneself to be powerless, and is a translation of a French proverb given in Cotgrave, s. v. *ceincture*. In Howel's Familiar Letters, 5th ed. (1678), p. 463, we find: "The other Proverb was *Il a quitte sa cienture* (*sic*), he hath given up his girdle, which intimated as much as if he had becom bankrupt, or had all his estate forfeited, It being the ancient Law of *France*, that when any upon som offence had that penalty of confiscation inflicted upon him, he us'd before the Tribunal of Justice to give up his *Girdle*, implying thereby, that the *girdle* held every thing that belong'd to a mans estate, as his budget of money and writings, the keys of his House, with his Sword, Dagger and Gloves, &c."

192. Here again we are referred to "the book"; and accordingly the Lat. text (sign. a 1, col. 2) has "ex lapide nigro."

199. For "at his fortes," as in MS., read "at his feet," as in A. 570. Lat. "ad pedes eius;" same column.

210. *All his ane*, alone by himself; precisely equivalent to the mod. Sc. *his lane* (short for *his all ane*).

214. Here the Second Passus begins precisely where the second chapter of the Latin text does, but comprises four chapters of the latter; and, in general, each Passus contains several such chapters.

227. "Put his hand up to his hair, and bent it downward but a little." This was a form of salutation, much like that practised by the modern soldier. Lat. "extendensque manum suam salutavit eam;" a 1, back, col. 1.

228. Lat. "*Aue regina* Macedonie; dedignatus ei dicere *domina*."

246. "For there dwell, in that region that thou before didst speak of, the wisest men," &c.

257. "Whether the child be a male or a female." *Werdes*, destinies.

274. Lat. "protulit de sinu suo purificam tabulam eream et eburneam mixtam auro et argento, tres in se circulos continentem. Primus continebat in se intelligentias duodecim. In tercio vero sol et luna parebant. Post hec apparebat cathena eburnea et ex eo protulit septem splendidissima astra, horas explorantia et natiuitates hominum, et septem lapides sculptos et duos lapides ad custodiam hominum constitutos;" a 1, back, col. 1. The "blesand table" was an astrolabe planisphere, with circles (1) of the 12 intelligences, (2) of the "dozen of beasts," i. e. 12 signs of the zodiac, (3) the circle of the sun and moon. Gower expressly calls it an astrolabe; C. A. iii. 64. And see Kyng Alisaunder, ed. Weber, l. 287.

282. The seven stars are the seven planets, and the seven stones are the precious stones severally assigned to them; see them enumerated in the note to A. 628.

295. "What shall happen between us, viz. between me and Philip."

299. "Nevertheless, ere any long time, it shall happen as thou saidst,"

308. *Or it be fere*, ere it be far, ere long.

309. *Is amed*, is destined to know thee carnally and afterwards to help thee in all adversities.

317. "But just so between the two, and too much of neither."

319. "With two tough horns, attached to his forehead." These horns characterised the god Ammon. Hence Alexander acquired the surname of Dulkarnein, or the two-horned, as being the supposed son of Ammon.

340. *Erne till exorjise*, eager to exorcise. Here *erne* stands for *zeorn*, eager, as shewn by Mätzner, s. v. *eorne*, and cf. Alex. A. 1091. In the word *exorjise*, the symbol ȝ stands (as occasionally in other

MSS.) for the letter *z*. *Ethis euer elike*, conjures continually. The verb *ethen* is only known to occur in two other passages, both in Gawayne and the Grene Knyght, ll. 379, 2467—

“Fyrst I *eþe þe*, haþel, how þat þou hattes.”

I. e. first I conjure thee (to tell me), noble one, what is thy name. And again—

“Perfore I *eþe þe*, haþel, to com to þy naunt.”

Dr. Morris translates it by ‘ask,’ and Mätzner thinks it may be allied to the word *ask*. Both have missed the obvious etymology. The M.E. *e* (when long) often corresponds to A.S. *é*, as being a modification of *á*; as in *ehte*, possessions, from A.S. *éht*, a derivative of *ágan*, to own. So also here, *ethen* = A.S. *éðan*\*, to conjure by oath, from *að*, oath. This sense explains all three passages.

368. “Then shall I cherish thee with such demeanour as if thou wert my child.” The translator has quite missed the point. Lat. “*te quasi patrem pueri habebō* ;” a 2, col. 1. In fragment A. 771, this is given correctly.

397. “For it (the child) and Philip her husband were related afar off,” i. e. were not sufficiently nearly related.

403. “Even to the value (lit. weight) of a pea.”

408. See note to fragment A. 808.

421. “Make his market with her.” Doubtless a proverbial phrase.

423. See notes to fragment A. 826, 837.

427. *The bounde*. Surely the translator must have read his text as having *cursus* (not *currus*) *solis*. *Bounde* would signify limit, orbit. This is verified by l. 442, where we have the very word “course.” So also in A. 853. Other versions have *ἐκτύπωμα ἡλίου* (see Notices des Manuscrits de la Bibl. du Roi, xiii. 233, Append.) ; *solis effigies*, *solis forma* (id. 270) ; and *le char du soleil* (id. 296).

440. *Chefe sall*, shall achieve, or attain to be.

464. “Either meat has mended thee,” i. e. food has fattened thee.

477. Read *þe na* for *þe þe*. “No blame shall be to thee from me, nor from any man else.”

488. Here the translator again appeals to the Lat. text, which reads: “*Anectanabus autem per artem magicam induit formam draconis, et per medium triclinium discumbentium transiens fortiter sibilabat, vt conuiantes omnes pauore ac perturbatione maxima torquerentur* ;” a 2, back, col. 1. Cf. Gower, C. A. iii. 74 ; also Alex. A. 981.

501. So also in Gower, C. A. iii. 76 ; and Alex. A. 999.

525. See the *French* version of this passage, as given in Alex. A., p. 209.

532. For *doute*, a better reading would be *doutis*, i. e. fears.

539. “On account of the pain I go nearly mad, and I suffer such woe that I would rather be dead (lit. it were dearer to me to be dead) than thus remain alive.”

580. *Schoutid* ; Mr. Stevenson prints *schouted*, but the Lat. text

shews that the right reading is *schontid*, i. e. shunted, moved; Lat. "vidi elementa *mutari*;" a 2, back, col. 2.

581. "And nevertheless, on any account, let him be kept awhile and nourished as particularly as if he were my own."

583. "Yet will noble people make remembrance of him, and record it hereafter, that I had in my time such a divine son."

588. The poet here departs from his original, which says, on the contrary, that Philip's elder son was not to be his heir; Lat. "in filii quem ex altera vxore habui succedat [Alexander] locum;" a 2, back, col. 2.

597. As the Latin text is appealed to, the description of Alexander is here given. "Coma capitis sicut leonis aspersa videbatur. Oculi eius sicut stelle micantes sed colore dispari radiabant, vnus niger, alter vero glaucus apparens. Dentes siquidem eius erant acuti, impetus illius feruidus vt leonis."

608. "If, as the original shews, he was wall-eyed." Here "wall-eyed" seems to be used in the sense of having eyes of different colours.

642. "He escapes him with great difficulty, unless he can skip away more quickly."

668. *Sa party is*, is so different from mine.

676. "It shall not annoy thee to the value of an egg, viz. none of his thoughts" (shall annoy you).

678. Here begins the Dublin fragment; see p. 23.

684. For *sterne* read *merke*, as in the Dublin MS., on account of the alliteration. The reader, having both texts before him, can readily supply for himself improvements of this character.

686. "Only follow me." Here *nozt bot* is the familiar North of England *nobbut*, i. e. not but, only.

692. "Many winters being done," as in Dublin MS., i. e. many winters ago.

703. Lat. "Vide stellam Herculis qualiter conturbatur. Mercurius vero gaudet. Iouem siquidem video coruscantem;" a 3, col. 1.

708. I. e. death at the hands of my own son. Cf. l. 722.

722. Here two leaves are lost in the Ashmole MS., as shewn by the Dublin MS., which supplies the missing 122 lines. As we are here dependent upon one MS. only, the corresponding portion of the Latin text is here given (a 3, col. 1, &c.):

"Alexander dixit, 'Ergo filius tuus sum?' Anectanabus respondit, 'Reuera ego genui te.' Et hec dicens expirauit. Alexander autem filiali pietate motus eleuansque corpus eius super humeros suos portauit ipsum in palacium suum. Cunque videret illum Olympia dixit Alexandro, 'Fili Alexander, quid est hoc?' Cui ille respondit, 'Corpus Anectanabi est.' Olympia dixit, 'Anectanabus pater tuus fuit.' Respondit ille, 'Quemadmodum stulticia fecit tua, ita est.' Et iussit illud sepeliri.

**Qualiter quidam princeps de Capadocia adduxit equum buci-  
fallum ad Philippum regem Macedonum.**

[I]n ipsis denique temporibus princeps Capadocie adduxit vnum equum indomitum, magnum corpore et pulcrum nimis, ligatumque ex omni parte catenis ferreis. Comedebat enim ille equus Bucifallus homines, propter aspectus horribilitatem, siue a signo quod thaurinum caput quod maius habebat vstum, seu quod in fronte eius quedam mine corniculorum procedebant. Cum igitur vidisset Philippus rex ipsius equi pulcritudinem, dixit ministris suis: Conficite cancellos ferreos vt latrones qui mori debent ex lege trucidentur ab eo.

**Qualiter reuelatum fuit Philippo quod ille post eum regnare debebat qui dictum equum Bucifallum equitabit, et de Alexandro sedente in curru et de verbis habitis cum rege Arridorum.**

[I]n ipsis denique diebus responsum habuit rex Philippus per somnium quod post mortem suam ille regnare deberet qui hunc ferocem equum equitaret. Alexander itaque cum esset annorum duodecim factus fortis, audax, sapiens et discretus. Didicerat enim plene omnium liberalium artium disciplinas Aristotilis et castoriem. Quadam vero die cum pertransiret per locum vbi stabat ille equus indomitus, vt videret inter cancellos ferreos, et ante eum manus et alia membra hominum dispersa iacentia, miratus est valde; misit ilico manum suam per cancellos. Equus autem extendens collum suum cepit lambere manum illius, et prostrauit se in terram pedibus complicatis, erigensque caput cepit fortiter aspicere Alexandrum. Intelligens autem Alexander voluntatem equi aperuit cancellos, et ingressus cepit dorsum equi suauiter manu tangere. Statimque incepit ille mansuescere nimis. Et sicut videtur canis coram domino suo, sic equus coram Alexandro parebat. Denique Alexander ascendit illum et equitans cepit exire. Cumque ergo vidisset eum Philippus, dixit ei: 'Fili Alexander, omnia responsa deorum impleta sunt in te, quia post mortem meam regna mea tuo imperio gubernabuntur.' Cui Alexander ait: 'Pater, si fieri potest, dirige me vt in curru sedeam regali.' Respondit ei Philippus: 'Grantanter hec facio. Tolle tibi centum equites et septuaginta milia solidorum aureorum, et vade potenti militia circumfultus.' Et factum est. Exiens igitur Alexander vna cum Ephesio philosopho amico et duodecim pueris quos elegerat et ingo suo docuerat, detulitque ornamenta preciosa et solidos. Precepitque militibus suis vt equis curam imponerent diligentem. Veniente itaque Alexandro in Peloponensem, occurrit ei Nicolaus, rex eiusdem prouincie, cum exercitu suo, vt pugnam cum eo committeret. Et appropinquans dixit ei: 'Quis es tu, dic mihi.' Cui Alexander respondit: 'Ego sum Alexander Philippi Macedonis.' Nicolaus rex ait: 'Quem me speras esse?' Alexander respondit: 'Tu es rex Arridorum. Non tamen eleuetur cor tuum in superbia, quia regalem honorem tibi attribui. Solentque alta petere profundum, Paruitas vero vsque ad sidera sublimari.'

Compare also Alex. A. 1110—1201.

751\*. "Bears a brand on his shoulders like a bull's head, and out of his top there stick up as it were tines of horns." Thus the English version adopts *both* reasons for the name of Bucephalus (i. e. Bull-head),

where the Latin text merely offers alternative explanations. The reason assigned in the Greek text is: ἐπειδὴ ἐν τῷ μηρῷ αὐτοῦ ἔκκαυμα (βόος κεφαλὴν ἐξέφηγεν (Notices des Manuscrits, xiii. 246). See note to Alex. A. 1114, p. 248.

766\*. *At*, from. As to the seven arts, see note to l. 44 above.

769\*. *Warloked*, fettered. In the Prompt. Parv. we find *warlok*, a fetter-lock. The verb is also found in the form *warroken*, as in P. Plowman, B. iv. 20.

778\*. Here a line has probably been lost, as shewn by the sudden change of subject. In the preceding line, *hys* refers to Alexander; but here *He* refers to Bucephalus. In Alex. A. 1164, the words *þe horss it awaytes* partly fill up the gap.

803\*. Here ends all agreement with fragment A. of the romance. Here also begins the imperfect edition of Julius Valerius, as edited by Mai in 1817.

809\*. "Neither men nor any excellent armour shall be lacking to thee; and hold on (go forth) with a well-equipped (lit. hale) army, where thou shalt be obeyed." For the form *held*, see *helden* in Strattmann. And see l. 820, p. 39.

813\*. It is remarkable that the Latin text has *Ephesio*, for the English form *Eufestys* is somewhat nearer the mark; probably our author found in his copy the form *Ephesio*. The person alluded to is certainly Hephæstion of Pella, celebrated in history as Alexander's friend; even in the romance the Greek text has Ἡφαιστίωνι (Notices des Manuscrits, xiii. 248).

828\*. Julius Valerius says that Nicolaus was king of Acarnania (ed. Mai, p. 3).

729. *Sa ma aydeus*; *So madeus*. These are corruptions of the hybrid phrase *So m'aide deus*, so may God aid me, the first word being English, the rest French.

738. "As angry as a wasp" is given in Heywood's Proverbs; see Skelton, Elynour Rummyng, 330, and Dyce's note.

743. The Ashmole MS. is right here; it means, "as a speck of my spittle is sprinkled on thy face." See l. 745.

748. *Cure*, i. e. cur, hound; Lat. "Tolle quod te decet habere, catule, et erubescere;" a 3, back, col. 2.

757. *Seis*, shalt see; cf. note to l. 174.

758. "And I will either gain for myself thy kingdom, or reach up the girdle." To *reach up the girdle* is the same as *give up the girdle*; see note to l. 179. Omit the second *me* in the Dublin MS.

773. Lat. "Itaque tubis bellicis clangentes vterque hostiliter sunt commoti, et acriter pugnare ceperunt;" a 4, col. 1.

798. In the Dublin MS. the insertion of *þar* before *wod* seems necessary; "they wrested in pieces their wood," i. e. the shafts of their spears. It deserves to be especially noted here, as a proof of our author's poetical powers, that the whole of the fine passage comprised in ll. 777—806 is expanded out of the four words *et acriter pugnare ceperunt*!



804. *Starand stanes*, shining stones. This seems to shew that the helmets of chieftains, at any rate in romances, were adorned with gems.

817. The Ashmole MS. is the better here; Lat. "Imposuerunt siquidem milites Alexandro *et equo coronam*;" a 4, col. 1.

821. "Inuenit autem Philippum in conuiuio nuptiali sedentem;" *ib.*

826. This line is hardly correctly translated. Lat. "Prime mee victorie palmam recepi coronatam. Attamen quando matris nuptias celebrabo, sociando eam regi alteri in vxorem, te nullatenus inuitabo; cum ipse nuptias facias, ad quas nullo indicio sum vocatus;" *ib.*

834. *Lesias*; Lat. "Lisias;" Julius Valerius has "Lysias," p. 8; but Plutarch has "Attalus."

838. *Wardrere*, warder, i. e. staff or truncheon; Lat. "baculo."

847. *Snappers*, trips up. Though Stratmann gives but two examples of this word, it is not very scarce. Jamieson cites from Kelly, p. 26, the Scotch proverb—"A horse with four feet may *snapper* by a time," i. e. sometimes. "I *snapper*, as a horse dothe that tryppeth; my horse dyd nat stumble, he dyd but *snapper* a lytell;" Palsgrave. And see Dyce's index to Skelton.

872. *At grete*, to weep. The use of *at* for *to*, as in Scandinavian, is a clear instance of Northern dialect.

879. *Anes with*, becomes one with, is reunited to. *Woydis*, leaves.

885. *Litill kyngis*; Lat. "reguli;" a 4, back, col. 1. This accounts for the reference to the original "clause."

890. *Sais*, tell; imperative plural. Lat. "Postquam enim Philippi filius adoleuit, gallina que oua aurea generabat consumpta est sterilitate;" *ib.* An allusion to the fable of the goose with the golden eggs.

907. *Ermony* is the usual M.E. form of Armenia; Lat. "Armenia."

911. This line is omitted in the Dublin MS., as shewn by the dots. On the other hand, l. 933\* is omitted in the Ashmole MS.

916. Lat. "Pausania (*sic*) filius Cereuste;" *ib.*

935. *Hopid*, supposed; see Notes to P. Plowman, p. 371.

946. *Sygnys*, standards; Lat. "signa et vexilla;" a 4, back, col. 2.

949. Lat. "Fili Alexander, vbi est fatum quod a diis accepisti, vt victor et non victus existeres?" (*ib.*)

969. *Bane*, murderer; Lat. "interfectorem;" *ib.* Cf. Icel. *bani*, a slayer. So also in l. 3248.

985, 986. Lat. "Uiri Macedones, Traces, Thessalonicensenses, et Greci, intuemini Alexandrum;" a 5, col. 1.

1010. *Here-wedis* is probably a compound word; lit. 'army-weeds,' i. e. armour. So also, perhaps, *topp-haris*, hairs of our head, in l. 1009.

1018. "Quia iuuenes solent mortem recipere in iuuentute sua nimium confitentes. Senes autem agunt cuncta consilio titubantes;" *ib.*

1028. *Calodone*; Lat. "Calcedoniam;" a 5, col. 2.

1033. *Namely*; read *maynly*, as in the Dublin MS.

1042. *Besandis*, besants; used to translate Lat. *talenta*.

1044. "Alexander vero, recepto a Romanis tributo, et a cunctis



Italiam habitantibus vsque ad mare Occidentis, quorum regio vocatur Europa, reliquit eos in pace ;" *ib.*

1053. "In qua paucos rebelles inuenit ;" *ib.*

1057. "Venit ad Pharanradem (*sic*) insulam ad deum Hamonem consulendum ;" a 5, col. 2. Valerius has "Pharum." In North's Plutarch, ed. 1631, p. 686, it is "the Ile of Pharos, the which at that time was a little above the mouth of the riuer of Nilus, called Canobia, howbeit it is now ioyned vnto firme land, being forced by mans hand."

1063. The Lat. text (*ib.*) has simply "ceruus," without further description. Read *with tyndis* ; it means "a hart with a huge head, the hoarest on earth, (which head) was to look upon like a harrow, covered all over with tines." The allusion is to the immense number of tines on the horns of this very aged hart ; they were as numerous as the tines (prongs) of a harrow. The age of a hart was known by the number of tines ; see the Book of St. Albans.

1077. "In locum qui dicitur Taphostri ;" *ib.* Valerius calls it Taposiris, which he explains as 'tomb of Osiris ;' from Gk. *τάφος*, a tomb. The form *Caphoresey* seems to have come out of *Taphosiri*, first changed to *Taphorisi*, and then misread as *Caphorisi*.

1097. Note that l. 1098 is purposely omitted in the numbering ; see footnote 1, p. 56.

1106. "Post bibitam potionem mortem gustabis amaram. In iuuentute enim finies tuos (*sic*). Noli tamen horam aut tempus inquirere, quia nullatenus tibi reuelabo. Dicitur enim tibi a diis orientalibus fatum tuum ;" a 5, back, col. 1. As to this matter, see ll. 5024, 5406, 5413.

1116. *Ascoi loym*, Ascalon ; not mentioned in the Latin text.

1120. *Alexsander*, an error for *Alexandria*.

1121. *Egist*, an obvious error for *Egipt*, Egypt. The translator has inserted this line, quite forgetting that Alexander is already supposed to be there.

1126. This black monument is the one already mentioned, in l. 192.

1142. *Sydneyne*, Sidon ; not in the Lat. text.

1147. "What with one thing, and what with another."

1149. "Erat fortis ciuitas, tam maris circumdatione, tam edificiorum constructione, tam et ipsius loci fortitudine naturali quod nullatenus ciuitatem poterat cum impetu obtinere ;" a 5, back, col. 2.

1154. *Populande*, poppling. To *popple* is to bubble (Halliwell), or to purl, ripple (Jamieson). *Hurle* is shewn by the alliteration to be an error for *purle* or *perle* (as in Dublin MS.). The sense, however, is not 'pearl,' but 'ripple' or 'wave' ; it is the Scotch *pirle*, a ripple (Jamieson). Thus the sense is—'the pure rippling wave (or bubbling ripple) encompasses it around ;' a poetical rendering of *maris circumdatio*.

1171. Lat. "ad pontificem Iudeorum nomine Iadelum ;" *ib.* Josephus mentions this letter, and calls the high priest Jaddua ; Antiquities of the Jews, bk. xi. c. 8. §§ 3, 4.

1178. "For the (sake of) any riches, advises him rather," &c.

1191. The right reading is to be got by comparing the MSS., viz. "I sall seche Iewise on the Iewes enioyne or I die," I shall enjoin such punishment on the Jews ere I die. *Iewres* is certainly an error for *Iewies* = *Iewise* or *Iuwise*, not an uncommon word for judgment, punishment, used by Chaucer. It is merely the O.F. form of the Lat. *iudicium*. Lat. "Talem faciam vindictam de Iudeis vt discernant quorum precepta debeant obseruare;" a 5, back, col. 2.

1193. Here begins the famous episode known as 'the foray of Gadirs,' which is sometimes expanded almost into a separate romance. This foray is the subject of the first part of 'The Buik of the most noble and vailzeand Conquerour Alexander the Great,' printed at Edinburgh for the Bannatyne Club in 1834, being a reprint from an earlier edition by Arbuthnot in 1580.<sup>1</sup> It is concerned with the exploits of Meleager and others in trying to obtain cattle for the support of the army at Tyre. In the present romance, this episode terminates at l. 1336. *Gadirs* is in the Latin text *Gadii*; and, since Plutarch describes Alexander as making war at this time against the Arabians of Antilibanus, I suppose the place meant is Kedesb in Galilee, which belonged to the Tyrians, and is at no great distance from Tyre; see *Kedesb* in Smith's Dict. of the Bible.

1207. The Lat. has "predamque ducerent *infinitam*;" a 6, col. 1.

1212. Lat. "Theosellus dux armentorum;" ib.

1225. *Arystes*; not mentioned in the Lat. text till further on (l. 1277), where the Lat. has *Arrideus*.

1229. Lat. "Gaulus vero ipsius ducis armentorum verticem amputauit;" ib.

1242. *Beritinus*; Lat. *Bitirius*. "Dum igitur hec omnia essent Bitirio cognita, de ciuitate Gadii exiuit cum equitibus triginta milibus ad prelium preparatis. Tanta siquidem erat copia pugnatorum quod ex nimio clamore terre [*read terra*] tremere videbatur;" ib.

1270. *Malstrid*; so written, but (by the common use of *t* for *c*) it stands for *malscrid*, as noted by Stratmann, s.v. *malskren*. It means bewildered; see *Maskede* in Halliwell.

1282. This line, in the Dublin MS., is written in large letters merely because it is the first line on the page. Ll. 1281—1341, with all their graphic details, are expanded out of a few lines of the Lat. text, which merely has the following passage. "Alexander autem relinquens Tyrum venit in Iosaphat vbi Bytirium et totum eius exercitum confudit. Reuersus autem Tyrum inuenit edificium quod in mari construxerat funditus dissipatum. Balaam enim cum omnibus habitantibus Tirum, post recessum Alexandri egressus, edificium illud viriliter expugnauit. Quod videntes Macedones iterum turbati sunt;" ib.

1350. *Feebles to mete*; probably *feebles* is for *felles*, vessels (Stratmann). Then *felles to mete* would mean 'vesselsful by measure,' which is equivalent to 'floods enough' in the Dublin MS.

<sup>1</sup> See an epitome of it in Weber's Metrical Romances, vol. i. p. lxxiii.

1360. *Foulire*, for *foule hire*, i. e. tread her (the city) under foot; Lat. "ipsamque pedibus conculcabis;" a 6, col. 2. "*Fouler*, to tread, stampe, or trample on;" Cotgrave.

1366. "Where the building that he built was first reared."

1370. *Ane eld*, put for *a neld*, or *ane neld*, a needle; so also *a nedyll* in the Dublin MS. The Lat. has: "Construxit itaque in mare ingens edificium classium quod erat centum anchoris alligatum. Erat siquidem tante celsitudinis quod muris et turribus Tyrorum Alexander eminebat;" ib.

1385—1420. This spirited passage, evidently written with keen enjoyment of the scene, is not in the original.

1421—4. This somewhat varies from the original, which has: "Descissis itaque anchoris edificium parebat ad latera muri ciuitatis;" ib.

1437. "Alii scalis, alii manibus adherentes;" ib.

1447. "In quibus quanta mala sustinuerunt Syrii vsque hodie inemoratur;" a 6, col. 2, and a 6, back.

1457. A large portion of the Seventh Passus, down to l. 1687, agrees rather closely with the account in Josephus, Antiq. of the Jews, b. xi. c. 8, which should be compared with the text.

1460. "Had refused him an errand," Ashinole; "had denied him by saying nay," Dublin.

1462. "In all his greatest need, had he not failed that man."

1466. "On as many halidoms as open and shut." The sense of *halidom*, in this case, is a small box for containing relics. Hence the phrase "to swear on the halidom"; Rob. of Brunne, Handlyng Synne, 5629. See the glossaries to Layamon and the Ormulum.

1469. *Iaudes*, Jaddua; see note to l. 1171.

1504. "Deinde ipsum ira domini conculcabit;" a 6, back, col. 1. Hence *ire*, not *ayre*, is right.

1513—1572. This splendid passage, abounding in fancy and invention, is not in the Latin text.

1536. "And powdered (sprinkled over) with jewellery, which was purer than (any) other." Cf. Rich. the Redeles, i. 46.

1575. *By sum skill*, for some reason. Lat. "peruenit ad locum qui scopulus nuncupatur, vnde templum et ipsa ciuitas conspicitur;" ib. *Scopulus* represents the Gk. σκόπελος, a look-out place. Josephus (tr. by Whiston) says: "a place called *Sapha*, which name, translated into Greek, signifies a prospect, for you have thence a prospect both of Jerusalem and of the temple;" Antiq. xi. 8. 5.

1583. "Doctors both of dialectics and of decrees."

1592. Lat. "super caput ei[us] habentem syndonem mundam et desuper laminam auream fabricatam, in qua nomen Dei tetragramaton scriptum erat;" ib. Josephus likewise mentions this head-plate. The *tetragramaton*, or word of four letters, is YHWH, or *Yahveh*, the exact origin of which is still disputed; see Gesenius, Heb. Dict. 9th ed. p. 323.

1605. Lat. "Uiuat uiuat altissimus Alexander venit. Uiuat uiuat altissimus imperator Alexander," &c.; a 6, back, col. 2.

1614. Lat. "Uidentes hec reges Syrie plurimum obstupefacti murmurabant;" *ib.*

1617. *Permeon*; Lat. (*ib.*) "Parmonen;" in Josephus, Parmenio.

1630. *Anell*; read *angell*, i. e. angle, corner. *Aysy*, Asia.

1631. Lat. "illud siquidem in somnio me negligere nullatenus incitabat, sed confidenter transire;" a 6, back, col. 2.

1633\*. Not in the Ashmole MS. For *he*, read *I*, twice; for *hoppyd* read *hopis*, 1st pers. pres. indicative. Lat. "Ideoque animaduerto ipsum esse quem per somnium intuebar;" *ib.*

1650. *Lythis of*, listens to; the reading *lightez* is corrupt. In the Dublin text it would be better to put commas after *&* and *wald*; it means, "and, as the law appointed, he offers," &c.

1655. See Daniel vii. 6; viii. 3—8, 20—22; xi. 3. The text expressly meant is no doubt Dan. viii. 21.

1679. "Then we should be bound, all the heap of us, to speed thee (*otherwise*, to pray for thee) for ever."

1681. *Men of Medi*, i. e. the Jews dwelling in Media. Lat. "vt Iudei in Media et Babylonia constituti suis legibus potirentur;" a 7, col. 1.

1687. Here ends the parallel passage in Josephus.

1691. The Lat. text (*ib.*) calls him Adromaticus.

1710. The words "he thought him so feeble" are in a parenthesis; the "three things" are in the accusative case.

1712. Lat. "Direxit ei pilam ludricam et zocham que fit de virgis que a capite curuatur, et cancrum auream;" *ib.* See note to l. 1900.

1720. Part of the story here following agrees tolerably closely with the account in Julius Valerius, ed. Mai, ch. xlii, &c.

1725. *In fang with*; Lat. "vna cum;" a 7, col. 2.

1731. *Purayd þe pletours*, provided for thyself pleaders. *Pleaders* is here used as a term of reproach; Jamieson gives *plede*, a quarrel, broil. Hence it means brawlers; Lat. "latrunculos;" *ib.*

1738. *Fere*, far, by a long way.

1744. "Therefore it is better to unbend [*as in* Dublin MS., *for see* 1974] and desist from thy violence, and feign all with fairness, and rejoice as far you may." Perhaps for *feyne* (or for *fayne*) we should read *fange*, i. e. receive, accept.

1753. *Sorowe* is certainly an error for *schrewe*, i. e. shrew-mouse. "Ane erd-growyn schrewe" is a close translation of the Lat. "mus prosiliens de scissura;" *ib.*

1756—8. Not in the original.

1759. Lat. "Egressus enim de terra Cethim et per spaciosa loca Perside tradis, saltus et ludos exercis [*read* exercens] vt mus in domibus vbi catule vel muscipule non sunt;" *ib.*

1766. "I shall set an assault (i. e. make an attack) on thee."

1767\*. "For if thou overshoot thy shot, thou spoilest thine arrows." A hyphen should be inserted between *ouer* and *sheet*, *ouersheet* (over-

shoot) being all one word. For the distinction between *shot* (shot) and *shete*, to shoot, see Stratmann, s. v. *schot*, *scheoten*.

1774. *Forthe*, afford; the simple verb whence M.E. *aforthen* (now spelt *afford*) is derived.

1792. *Atell*; for *athell* (the usual spelling). See l. 1831.

1809. "The great stores of gold shall gather up our hearts," i. e. rouse our courage.

1813. This harsh command is made more intelligible by noting that it was meant in retaliation for the threat of Darius to *crucify* Alexander; for, in l. 1789, where the E. version has *pyne þe to dede*, the Latin has "vt principem latronum *crucifigant*;" ib. Cf. l. 1821. Julius Valerius tells the story very well; ed. Mai, pp. 55, 56.

1816. "Alas! what fault lies in us?"

1832—5. The Lat. text is more clearly worded. "Sedentibus illis dixerunt Alexandro, Rex, si vestre placet maiestati, imperate vt equites mille nobiscum veniant, quia Darjum in manibus eorum trademus. Quibus Alexander respondit, Letetur animus vester in hoc quod sedetis, quia pro traditione vestri regis non dabitur vnus miles;" a 7, back, col. 1.

1837. *Crest*; i. e. the crest on the seal; see l. 1845.

1846. "If we see with a sooth," i. e. truly; Lat. "si bene volumus inspicere veritatem;" a 7, back, col. 2.

1850. *þe rime*, the rim; not *þi reme*, thy realm (as in Dublin MS.). Lat. "cum omnes in rota fortune volubili militemus;" ib.

1858. "Therefore a wise man, though he be in prosperity."

1859. *Set*, sets. This is a Midland and Southern form, short for *setteth*; the right Northern form is *settis*.

1864. "Cum minimus sepiissime extollatur, et altissimus vsque ad puluerem deprimatur;" ib.

1874. "Sed cum dii sint immortales, mortalium habere consortium penitus vilipendunt;" ib. He argues that, if Darius were really godlike, he would not have any transactions with a mortal like himself.

1881. "Nor any praise, except that you happened to overcome a little thief" (Lat. *latrunculum*).

1882. "But if it befal me, that am a child, to be the stronger" (lit. *chiefer*).

1893. Lat. "et quam nos dixisti habere paupertatem repellere;" b 1, col. 1.

1900. "Per zocham que a capite curua existit, contemplamur quod omnes reges et terrarum principes coram nostra presentia curnabuntur. Per cancrum auream, quod caput hominis induit et congrirat, nos victores et non victos arbitramur;" ib.

1911. Lat. "Primo et Anthiocho satrapibus gaudium;" ib. J. Valerius calls them Hystaspes and Spynther; p. 61.

1915. *Fra*, from the time that. *For*, i. e. since, is better.

1924. Lat. "vt illo pueriliter flagellato induam purpura et dirigam eum matri sue Olimpie derogatum;" b 1, col. 2.

1929. Lat. "sed cum pueris puerilia exercere;" *ib.*

1949. "Before our worship departs;" *or*, "For our worship is gone."

1951. *Be þat*, by that time.

1953. Lat. "super flunium qui Siragma dicitur;" *ib.* J. Valerius gives no name to the river.

1970. "For very great (lit. well wide) would be thy weal," &c. Read *þi wele*, as in Dublin MS.

1972. *Mayntene*, hold, keep. Perhaps *þi-selfe* is in the dative, and means 'for thyself.'

1974. See note to l. 1744.

1976. *Nyf*, were it not for; understand *wer*. Note the reading *yf ne wer* in the Dublin MS. Lat. "Cum absque nostra dominatione terra posset quasi vidua nuncupari;" b 1, back, col. 1. Perhaps *vidua* merely means 'empty, desert,' rather than 'a widow.'

1984. Lat. "hec grana papaueris que in mantica destinamus;" *ib.*

1988. "If thou failest to count them;" Lat. "quod si facere non valebis;" *ib.* See *trukien* in Stratmann.

1991. "For this seed that I send thee shall ever be uncounted;" Lat. "innumerabilis est nostrorum copia pugnatorum;" *ib.* For *neuire* read *euir*, as in the Dublin MS.

1997. *Tastis* is the right reading, as shewn by the alliteration. Lat. "mittens manum in mantica tulit de ipso semine, mittensque illud in os suum cepit mandere dicens: Uideo quod homines illius multi sunt, sed sicut hoc semen molles reperiuntur;" *ib.*, and col. 2.

2004. *Wald worth*, would become, i. e. set out. *For* in the Dublin MS. is a mistake for *worth*.

2021. "An host (which is) a trouble thus to enumerate," i. e. too great to count; Lat. "maxima copia pugnatorum;" b 1, back, col. 2.

2025. "Shall be subdued, all the pack, unto these peppercorns" (Ashmole); "So subdued by all the pack of these little grains" (Dublin).

2037. Lat. "Amonta princeps militie;" *ib.*

2051. Lat. "passus fuit sol eclipsim nolens tantam sanguinis effusionem contemplari;" b 2, col. 1.

2060. Lat. "tergauersus de manibus inimicorum vix cum paucis euasit;" *ib.*

2067. *In his loue*, in the palm of his hand; Lat. "in manu;" *ib.*

2097. "His heart was none the fuller of pride, even by the value of a haw;" lit. "was never, the higher by a haw, his heart full of pride."

2103. *Cecile* is the usual M.E. form of *Sicily*; but the Lat. has *Cilicia*, which is clearly intended. So also in l. 2487. It is due to changing *Silice* into *Sicile*.

2106. *Yssanna*; Lat. text (*ib.*) *Sauinia*, which is not called an island. In fact, the M.E. *ile* merely means 'province'; see l. 2116, where it is used of Phrygia.

2109. *The tor of Tare*, the tor of Taurus. *Tor* is still used in Devonshire in the sense of hill-top. In passing from Cilicia, Alexander

crossed the Taurus range of mountains. Lat. "Ascendit . . . in montem Thaurum;" b 2, col. 2.

2112. Here the poet must have had a different reading or have used a different text, since the Lat. has only "in qua [ciuitate] sunt nouem milia;" ib. I have no doubt this allusion is due to a passage in Julius Valerius, ed. Mai, p. 69, where, immediately after a mention of the "culmen Tauri montis" (see l. 2109), we have an account of Alexander coming to a "Pierian" city, sacred to the muses; "ibidem musæ etiam Pierides consecratæ videbantur, unaque omnigenum figmenta viventium Orphei musicam demirantia."

2117. Lat. "ingressus templum solis ibidem victimas immolauit;" ib.

2118. *Flum*, river; Lat. "flumen." *Fyue*; the Lat. says *fifteen*.

2120. Lat. "Beati qui laudes Homeri adepti estis. Quidam vero ex circumstantibus nomine Doccomictus respondens ait: Rex Alexander, vberiores laudes de te scribere queo quam fecit Homerus de hiis qui ciuitatem destruxerunt Troianam;" ib. In l. 2123, *And* has the force of 'than.'

2124. Lat. "Magister, cupio sapientis esse discipulus magis quam vilis laudes habere;" ib. The translator has quite missed the point; it means, "I would rather be the disciple of a wise man (like Homer) than receive the praises of an inferior man (like you)."

2131. *Abandra*; Lat. "Abdyron;" ib. Abdera is meant; see J. Valerius, ed. Mai, p. 74.

2150, 2151. *Wyothy*; Lat. "Brochia;" b 2, back, col. 1. *Caldipol*; Lat. "Caldeopolis."

2152. But the Lat. calls it "flumen senis;" ib. In J. Valerius, ed. Mai, p. 75, it is called lake Mæotis.

2165. "Then all the strong steeds stand us in stead not to the value of a straw."

2170. *Luctus*; Lat. "Lutrus;" ib. Locris is meant; see J. Valerius, p. 77.

2174. *Tergarontes*; Lat. "Tragacintes;" ib. In J. Valerius, p. 77, it is called Agragantum.

2179. *Zacora*; Lat. "Zochora;" b 2, back, col. 2. For *summe* read *nunne*, as in the Dublin MS.; the Lat. calls her "sacerdos femina virgo."

2210. Insert *to fonde*, i. e. to advance, as in Dublin MS.

2215. *Sechus*; Lat. "Zochus;" ib. The allusion is to Zethus, brother of Amphion.

2221—30. Not in the original. Cf. J. Valerius, p. 79.

2234. *Sicistrus*; Lat. "Sistorus;" b 3, col. 1.

2237. *Hismon*; Lat. "Ysuinea;" ib.

2252. *Cletomachus*; Lat. "Dithomatus;" ib. But Clytomachus in J. Valerius, p. 83, where the story is told at length.

2258. Lat. "Ille qui Thebanam construet ciuitatem tres victorias consequetur;" ib. Thebes was rebuilt by Cassander, B.C. 316.



2285. *Beddells*, beadles; Lat. "precones;" b 3, col. 2.

2286. Lat. "Sine ciuitate vocor;" ib.

2288. &; error for *at*, that. *To-name*, nickname.

2298. *Strasageras*; Lat. "Straxagonas;" ib. In J. Valerius, "Stasagoras"; p. 86.

2299. *Duse him in*, enters; referring to Alexander.

2303. "He that ruled the city;" i. e. Strasagoras.

2308. "Non es digna sacerdotio fungi. Alexander ingressus est ad te, et bene vaticinata es ei; mihi autem dixisti quod vniuersum perderem principatum;" b 3, back, col. 1.

2312. "Venit Athenas; audiens autem que Athenienses dicebant, scripsit," &c.; ib. The English is obscure, but is cleared up by referring to J. Valerius, p. 88, where it appears that the *prince* (l. 2311) is Strasagoras, who "goes to Athens, and complains of (Alexander) the noble one. And they (the Athenians) said harm would come to him (Alexander) unless he yielded up the city to Strasagoras."

2332. *Afle*, an error for *Afric*; Lat. "Affrice;" ib.

2348. *Eschilus*; Lat. (b 3, back, col. 2) "Eusculus," as if *Æschylus* were meant; but J. Valerius (p. 90) correctly has *Æschines*.

2352. *Domystyne*, Demosthenes; Lat. "Demosteni;" ib.

2361. *Sexes*, Xerxes; but the Lat. has "Sennes;" ib. Cf. J. Valerius, p. 93.

2384. "Culpa enim Straxagonis interuenit; quoniam sicut audiuimus Alexandrum etiam sapientia circumfulsum, quod sine culpa Straxagonem minime eiecisset;" b. 4, col. 1.

2397. *Payse*, weight; "pensantem libras centum quinquaginta;" ib.

2412. Omit &, which interrupts the sense.

2419. The English is obscure. "Non cogitauimus ciuitatem vestram cum exercitu introire, sed tantum cum principibus quos habemus. Proposuius siquidem vos ab omni suspitione criminis liberare. Uos autem de nobis contrarium cogitastis, prout vestra manifestat conscientia;" b 4, col. 2.

2425. "Sed, vt scitis, mali semper cogitant mala et committunt;" ib. The next line is not in the Latin.

2430. *Gradid*, degraded; "deposuimus;" ib.

2431. "Scripsimus vobis vt decem philosophos mitteretis;" ib.

2436. "Because ye held to the counsels of the sage Demosthenes."

2440. *Lacedoyne*, Lacedæmonia. Cf. J. Valerius, p. 111.

2451—2460. Expanded out of a few words: "Ascenderunt etiam naues sibi que ad littus maris obuiam exierunt;" b 4, back, col. 1.

2466. "Et nolite manus extendere ad altissima que tangere non potestis;" ib.

2469. Lat. "vt gratis de vestro nauigio exeatis priusquam ignis vos turpiter compellat prosilire;" ib.

2480. Compare note to l. 2466 above.

2487. *Sycile*, Sicily; but Cilicia is meant; see note to l. 2103.

2494. "Whereas I threatened him as being a robber (fit only) to



despoil small nations." Lat. "Ego autem putabam illum esse latrunculum qui tanquam predo regiones debiles preliaret;" b 5, col. 1.

2505. "For his fame, notwithstanding all his littleness of stature, is celebrated throughout the world."

2506. Lat. "magnitudo nostra deficiat;" ib.

2508. *Leues*, leaves, grants; answering to Lat. "concedere;" ib.

2512. *Oriathire*; the Lat. has "Macher;" ib. But J. Valerius (p. 115) has *Oxyathrus*.

2513. "Magnificasti Alexandrum, dicens quod ille exardescit ingredi Persidiam quam nos Elladam occupare;" ib. Here *Elladam* clearly stands for *Hellada*, i. e. Hellas or Greece, and such is meant by *Elanda* in l. 2514. "We are to give up Greece, and he is to enter Persia."

2519. "Debeo ab illo, an ille a me exemplum colligere?" b 5, col. 2.

2528, 2529. *Itaile*; Lat. "Itali;" ib. *Appolomados*; Lat. "Appolli-mati." *Panthis*, for *Parthis*; Lat. "Parthi."

2533. "A wolf will worry many flocks of sheep." Compare the saying of Anectanabus in l. 109, which gives point to l. 2522 above. In the text, *a wee* is taken as being an inferior reading to *pe we*, i. e. the man, which in that case is Alexander. This clearly gives the most point to the story, and was probably the original form of the narrative; and, if so, the gathering together of the Persians (ll. 2527—32) should also refer to the same occasion; cf. l. 889. Still, it must be admitted that, as the story now stands, the right reading must be *a wee*, i. e. a certain man, viz. another of the courtiers of Darius. This requires the insertion of marks of quotation after *drede* (l. 2532), and then l. 2533 should be read—"3a, bot a wolfe," quod a wee · "will were [i. e. worry] many flokkis," &c. The side-note should be altered accordingly. The Lat. text and J. Valerius agree with this latter view.

2540. *Mocian*; Lat. "Oceanus;" b 5, back, col. 1. In Plutarch, the river is the Cydnus, according to the usual account. So also in J. Valerius, p. 117; cf. Kyng Alisaunder, ed. Weber, p. 145.

2554. *Philip*; called by Plutarch "the Acharnanian."

2559. *Perneon*, Parmenio; see the epitome of the story in the note to J. Valerius, p. 119. The Lat. calls him "Parmerius;" ib. Parmenio was put to death by Alexander, but not on this occasion. In fact, he is alive again in l. 3113. This error is noticed in Kyng Alisaunder, ed. Weber, p. 146.

2575. *Fysch-hale*, fish-whole, as sound as a fish. Hazlitt's Proverbs, p. 71, has "as sound as a roach" and "as sound as a trout." *Fysh-hole* occurs again in the Chevalere Assigne, l. 353. And see l. 4282 below, p. 232.

2586. *Adriac*; Lat. "Adriacus;" b 5, back, col. 2.

2588. *Vncachid hertis*, lost their courage; Lat. "timuerunt;" b 6, col. 1.

2592. *Him to tell*; an error for *thaim to sewe*, to follow them, as in the Dublin MS. Lat. "deinde omnis exercitus sequeretur;" ib.

2593. *Writhis*, better *wrethis*, grows angry; "iratus est;" ib.

2598. *Sylus*, or *Nilus*; Lat. "in Nilo incorporatur" (*sic*); *ib.* This is a singular specimen of medieval geography.

2603. *The floure*, i. e. the floral crown of victory.

2631. So also in J. Valerius, note to p. 119; and in Kyng Alys-  
aunder, ed. Weber, p. 160.

2646. "Nonne cognoscebas me esse Alexandrum adiutorem et  
seruum vestrum?" b 6, col. 2.

2670. *Degradyd*, subdue; Lat. "superare;" b 6, back, col. 1. But a  
line or two should have been added after this line, stating that a new  
battle took place, in which Darius was soon worsted.

2673. *Batran*; Lat. (accus.) "Bacerem;" *ib.*

2707. "Sed impossibile est inertem et ponderosum asinum ad sidera  
sublimari, cum alis et volatuiis careat instrumentis;" c 1, col. 1.  
Hence *As* = ass.

2725. *Lazes*, laughs; Lat. "subridens;" *ib.*

2733. *Dedly*, mortal. "Sicque mortales puniunt cum sibi nomen  
immortalitatis assumunt;" *ib.* Hence l. 2734 means—"who have  
assumed the name of Lord of Immortality."

2759. *Siphagoyne*; Lat. "Deplogione" in the gen. case; c. 1, col. 2.  
*Surry*, Syria. *Capados*, Cappadocia. *Landace*, Laodicea.

2767. Lat. "et nostris militibus tam indumenta quam calciamenta  
preparentur;" *ib.*

2773. *Nostanda*; Lat. "Nostodi;" *ib.*

2795. *He*, i. e. Darius; as the Latin shews; c. 1, back, col. 1.

2810. *Lyse*, I lie, abide; *lokis*, I look, expect, wait.

2811. "And, as I hope to recover (lit. may recover) of my sickness  
that I am now involved in, so am I sorry," &c.

2819. *Rodogars*; Lat. "Rodoga;" *ib.* Her name was Sysigambis.  
J. Valerius calls her Rogodune; p. 131.

2839. *Hade*; read *haue*. "For, as for any noble under heaven, it  
were safer for him to give up that which he cannot have than to pursue  
(his object) further."

2851. An early example of the "Birnam wood" story. Cf. Kyng  
Alysaunder, ed. Weber, p. 168.

2875. *Emynelaus*; Lat. "Eumulus;" c 2, col. 1.

2882. *Granton*; Lat. "Grancus;" *ib.* Evidently the Granicus,  
though the battle there fought belongs to an early period in Alexander's  
career.

2884. *Strama*; Lat. "qui Stagnia lingua Persica nuncupatur;" *ib.*

2900. Lat. "cursu tam rapido fluit," &c.; c 2, col. 2.

2906. *What dones man*, what sort of man, lit. man of what make or  
sort; Lat. (*ib.*) "quis es tu?" On this curious expression see my note  
to P. Plowman, B. xviii. 298 (p. 419); and cf. Alex. and Dindimus, ll.  
222, 999. For the story, cf. Kyng Alisaunder, ed. Weber, p. 171.

2955. *Anepo*; Lat. "Anapolis;" c 2, back, col. 1. In Weber's  
edition, he is called Pertage; l. 4230. Cf. ll. 883—888.

2988. For *to read on*, as in D. *On the trode-gate*, along the trodden

road, along the pathway; Lat. "recto tramite incedebat;" c 2, back, col. 2.

3003. Lat. "Sed antequam exiret, dissolutus est fluuius, et equum eius absorbit, et ipse cum difficultate maxima exiliuit;" ib.

3011. "Multitudo muscarum nullam inferet lesionem vespium paucitati;" c 3, col. 1. Cf. ll. 109, 2533.

3032. *The firste*, the former one; see l. 3004.

3060. Lat. "sicut messis in campo;" c 3, col. 2. See *rizome* in Halliwell.

3078. "Nunc fugitiuus et subiectus factus sum;" ib.

3080. "Si cognitum esset homini misero quid accidere sibi debeat in futuro, illud in presenti cogitaret. In puncto enim vnus diei venit quod homines vsque ad nubes exaltat fortuna, et sublimes vsque ad tenebras demergit in profundum;" c 3, col. 2, and back, col. 1. Perhaps some lines have been lost in the English version.

3100. Lat. "omnes suas victorias in Ellada consummauit." *Ellada* (E. *Elada*) appears to refer to Hellas, i. e. Greece, as above; see note to l. 2513.

3113. *Permeon*, Parmenio; see note to l. 2559.

3123. *He put it*, i. e. let him put it.

3148. *Kist*, chest, i. e. tomb. The sense intended is that the amethyst was so transparent that the body could be as clearly seen as if it had been tombless. "Et tam lucidus erat ametistus vt etiam a foris integrum corpus hominis appareret;" c 4, col. 1.

3164. *At*, against; Lat. "contra illos qui," &c.; c. 4, col. 2.

3174. Cf. the parallel passage in Valerius, p. 121.

3190. The two traitors are, by Valerius, called Besas (usually written Bessus) and Ariobarzanes; p. 122. See l. 3428 below.

3219. *Cusys*, put for *Cury*s, i. e. Cyrus (as in the Lat. text).

3242. "Iuro enim tibi per potentissimos deos meos quod veraciter tibi totum imperium renuncio;" c 5, col. 1.

3248. *Thi banes*, thy murderers; "interfectores tuos;" ib. See l. 969.

3267\*. This line is essential to the sense.

3274. "In humilitatis foneam demergatur;" c. 5, col. 2.

3293. "Et quem deprimit exaltare potest; et quem exaltat hominem potest sternere in profundum;" ib.

3296. For *ere* (are) read *is*; "for victory is granted thee by God."

3299. Lat. "araneorum artificio comparatur;" ib.

3301. For the second *werd* read *werk* (as in l. 3299) or *web*. "With the least wind in the world that touches the work (*or web*), each (bit of the) work is destroyed and all comes to nothing." *Note* is profit, advantage, &c.

3315. *Rosan*, Roxana, whom Alexander married; but it is doubtful if she was the daughter of Darins. See Mai's note to J. Valerius, p. 125.

3324. *Mote*, meeting, assembly; "ad regale palacium Darii;" c 5, back, col. 1.

3326. *Cusus*, i. e. Cyrus; as before. See l. 3219.

3342. "Secundus ex smaragdo;" c 5, back, col. 2.

3349. "Amatistus enim reprimit fortitudinem et fumositatem vini;" ib.

3355. Lat. "vt nequaquam incidat ratione impericie in sinistrum;" ib.

3365—7. "Ne prout thopasius ostendit caput eius, hoc est dignitas ipsius ex altitudine vsque ad puluerem deprimatur;" ib.

3376, 3377. These two curious lines are not in the Latin text; but the same statement occurs in Mandeville's Travels, ch. xxvii. p. 270. In the Bestiary by Philip de Thaun, ed. Wright, p. 125, we are told that the adamant could be broken by means of the blood of *goats*, and this is what is meant in l. 3378, where the Lat. has "nec . . . potest collidi nisi sanguine fuerit hircino perfusus;" c 6, col. 1.

3386. A *lyng* is here a dative case; "the same diligence is for a king," i. e. is needful for a king to have.

3390. *Cried*, created; Lat. "procreatum;" ib.

3427. "Omnis populus Persarum fleuit amarissime;" c 6, col. 2.

3428. Lat. "Byfflex et Anarbasontes;" ib. Cf. note to l. 3190.

3437. "And, unless your crimes had been discovered, I should not have kept my oaths." The story is told at much greater length in Kyng Alisaunder, ed. Weber, p. 192.

3443. Perhaps a line is lost before this, as the sense is imperfect. "Eodem siquidem tempore quidam senex cui nomen erat Duricius auunculus Darii imperatoris, qui plurimum a Persis amabatur, hic ad petitionem totius populi ab Alexandro dux in Perside est constitutus;" c 6, back, col. 1.

3458. *Feyne*, put for *fyne*, cease; "nolite me colere;" col. 2.

3467. Here ends the *first part* of the romance; the second part is concerned chiefly with the war against Porus and the description of the wonders of India. See ll. 3472, 3473. Cf. J. Valerius, bk. iii. p. 135. Ll. 3464—3479 are not in the Latin text.

3494. "Alexander autem iste nihil optat nisi vt vniuersum mundum debellando sibi subiiciat. Prelia enim et contentiones nutriunt corpus suum;" ib.

3517. *Heried*, harried, beaten; "sicut hucusque vici;" d 1, col. 1.

3521. *Me*, for me. *Driztin*, &c., the Lord forbid it!

3534. *Bot rede*, but (we are) ready to follow.

3540. Cf. J. Valerius, bk. iii. c. 4.

3547. "Cum tuipse oculos habeas et non videas;" d 1, col. 2.

3550. For the second *fizt* read *folk*, i. e. people; "cum mollibus siquidem pugnasti;" ib.

3556. *Denys*, the French form of *Dionysius*; Lat. "Dionisius Bachus, qui Liber pater dictus est;" ib. Hence Porus refers to Dionysus or Bacchus; and this explains the context, especially l. 3555, which means "all gods and goddesses are afraid of my name;" Lat. "non solum homines verum etiam Dii nomini nostro famulentur." This also

explains *ministration*, i. e. lowly service, in l. 3554. See J. Valerius, p. 139.

3558. "Ante siquidem quam Xerxes regnaret in Persida, Indis censum Macedones erogabant. Sed quoniam inutilis erat eorum terra regique displicens, dedignati sunt illam Indi;" *ib.* In l. 3559, *At* = that, i. e. know that.

3560. *Vs*; "it pleases us (to regard) them no longer."

3604. *Oure mey[n]he*, our company; see l. 3619.

3622. "All that, in the times (of fighting), get away unharmed never durst afterwards abide on the field, (each with) his face to his foes."

3633. "Statimque ex calore nimio vrebantur;" d 2, col. 1.

3642. "Itaque per continuos viginti dies pugna duravit;" *ib.*

3658. "Offers to all his old gods, and thanks them for his honour; as well the Indians as his own men, he buries them all." For *grauē* read *graves*.

3665. "Quadringentas columnas aureas cum capitellis aureis preparatas;" *ib.*

3670. Lat. "alii de smaragdis, et alii onichimata quod naturaliter videretur ibi esse. Parietes vero ipsius palatii erant de laminis aureis cooperti," &c.; d 1, coll. 1 and 2.

3676. "Erantque ipsi parietes ornati ex margaritis, vnionibus, carbunculis, smaragdis, et amatistis;" d 1, col. 2.

3682, 3683. Not in the Latin text; yet the translator alludes to his original here.

3688. "And a shrine was built over each man."

3707. "Sed in ea multa genera serpentium consistebant;" *ib.*

3711. Lat. "Talifrida;" *ib.* Cf. J. Valerius, p. 202.

3725. "Audiuimus quod animus tuus sapientia floreat et coruscat, et preterita recolis, presentiaque disponis, habens noticiam futurorum;" d 2, back, col. 1.

3738. "Et sumus numero ducentarum quatuordecim milia feminarum;" *ib.*

3746. "Si autem femina fuerit, nostris moribus enutritur;" col. 2.

3751. "Cum autem cum victoria redimus, a nostris vnanimiter adoramur. Itaque si contra nos veneris, viriliter proposuimus preliari. Quod si tu nos viceris, nullam laudem penitus consequeris," &c.; *ib.*

3759. "Quia multa tibi possent aduersa contingere que nullatenus meditaueris;" *ib.*

3768. "Sed quia conuersationem vestram diligimus, in consilium vobis damus," &c.; d 3, col. 1.

3771. For the second *to*, we should perhaps read *but*.

3775. Lat. "polleros decem indomitos;" *ib.*

3777. The line is too short; read *many many gifts*.

3778. *Conquiris*, put for *conqueres*, conqueress.

3780. Cf. J. Valerius, bk. iii. c. 11, p. 145.

3782. *Batriane*; Lat. "Bactricen"; i. e. Bactria (*ib.*). Written

"Bactriacen" in the Lat. text given in Cockayne's *Narratiunculæ*, 1861, p. 53, l. 1; which text may also be profitably consulted.

3790. *On*; read *of*, i. e. "*by* the sun."

3794. Lat. "*vbi multitudo serpentiam et ferarum erat*;" *ib.*

3800. *Zephall*; Lat. *Zephir* (col. 2); or, in Cockayne's Latin text, *Severus*. A similar story is told by *Plutarch*. See 2 *Sam.* xxiii. 16.

3807. "*Au ego solus nutriar sine illis*?" (*ib.*)

3820. "*Habebat enim elephantes mille Alexander, qui aurum eius portabant, et quadringentas quadrigas omnes falcatas, et mille ducentas bigas, equites trecenta milia, camelos, mulos, dromedarios, innumerabilem multitudinem qui annonam et alia necessaria exercitui deferebant*;" *ib.* It may be observed that the translator, in the latter part, begins to curtail the story, omitting some unimportant details. Cf. *Kyng Alisaunder*, ed. *Weber*, p. 211.

3834. "*Et in ipso castro homines apparebant*;" d 3, back, col. 1.

3844. "*Et cum iam quartam partem fluminis transnatassent, insurgentes ipsius fluminis yppetani eos continuo deuorauerunt*;" col. 2. See *Kyng Alisaunder*, ed. *Weber*, p. 214.

3849. "*Occurrebant eis leones, pardi, et vrsi, rinocerontes, tigres, dracones, et eos fortiter impugnabant*;" *ib.*

3852. "*Mirantes autem ipsum fluuium circa horam vndecimam inuenerunt stagnum mellifluum et suaue*;" *ib.*

3858. "*Que silua . . . ex prenomminatis calamis est iuncta*;" *ib.* It would thus appear that *ryse* means 'rushes', with reference to *redis* in ll. 3815, 3832, where the Latin text also has *calamis*.

3862. "*Cumque luna inciperet lucere, subito inceperunt in ipsum stagnum scorpiones mire magnitudinis aduenire; deinde dracones et serpentes ceperunt ex diuersis coloribus festinare, totaque ipsa terra eorum sibulis resonabat*," &c.; *ib.*

3884. "Then (some) of his soldiers were emboldened." Lat. "*milites eius confortati sunt*;" d 4, col. 1.

3888. Lat. "*viginti milites et triginta serui a draconibus perierunt*;" *ib.*

3891. "And to him, finally, falls all the praise."

3894. Lat. "*habentes dorsa duriora cocodrillis*;" *ib.*

3898. "*Uerum multos ex eis interfecerunt. Alii intraucrunt stagnum*;" *ib.* The English is obscure; but cf. *Kyng Alisaunder*, ed. *Weber*, l. 5380:

"Ac natheles in her honden  
Hy henten grete fire-bronden:  
And thorough that fyre, and goddes myghth  
Hy hem sloughen dounerighth."

3902. Lat. "*venerunt super eos leones albi*;" *ib.*

3906. *Berys*, (properly) bears; but read *barys*, boars; Lat. "*porci*;" *ib.*

3907. Lat. "*quorum dentes vno cubito longi erant; et illis homines agrestes . . . vna cum porcis super homines similiter currebant*;" col. 2.

3918. "And then he bids them quickly to light, close upon the pool, outside his army everywhere, horrible fires."

3921. *Meere*, mare; "similis equo;" ib.

3926. "Nominabantur autem, secundum Indicam linguam, *Onocentaurus*; et antequam de ipsa aqua biberet, fecit impetum super illos;" ib. Cf. Kyng Alisaunder, ed. Weber, p. 224, where the same strange animals are called *deutyran*s. But the name should certainly have been printed *dentyran*, short for *denti-tyran*, Lat. *dentityrannus*. In fact, Cockayne has "dentem tyrannum;" p. 56, l. 18. This is the Lat. form of *Odontotyranus*, the name given to the creature in J. Valerius, p. 167. The E. version has *Adanttrocay*, evidently founded (partially) on the same name; for which *Onocentaurus* has been substituted by confusion in the Lat. text. It is probable, however, that the form *Odontotyranus* is also a corruption (as it gives no good sense); and I suspect that the original word was *Odontokeratias*, i. e. 'with horns like teeth.' The form in the E. version seems to point to this name. In Mandeville's Travels, ed. Halliwell, p. 290, a picture of the animal is given; he is there called *Odenthos*.

3932. Lat. "mures maiores talpis," ib.; Cockayne has "mures . . . *uulpibus* siniles;" p. 56.

3936. "Ceperunt enim volare vespertilioes vt columbe, quorum dentes erant vt dentes hominum;" ib. J. Valerius (p. 168) has: "Ad hæc alites quibus apud nos vocabulum vespertilio est, sed quæ illic super columbæ magnitudinem," &c.

3939. "And they sharply wounded that which was unarmed," i. e. the unprotected faces of the soldiers.

3943. *Blemest*, killed; in a stronger sense than mod. E. *blemished*. The Lat. has "vulnerantes," from the employment of which word the poet infers that no one was actually killed.

3944. "Venerunt aues magne, colorem rubicundum habentes, pedes vero et rostra nigra, neque nocuerunt eis;" ib. Cockayne has "aues *uulturibus* similes;" p. 56. Hence *voutres* are vultures. *Boukes* (bodies) is an error for *bekkes* (beaks).

3947. *Did bot plaid by*, did no more than played with.

3950. Lat. "venerunt in partibus latrimariis" (*sic*); d 4, back, col. 1.

3957. "Et arbores folia vt lana habentes, que gentes ipse colligebant et ex ea vestimenta faciebant;" ib. An interesting notice of silk. Cf. Mandeville's Travels, ch. xxvi. p. 268; Cockayne's text, p. 53, l. 2.

3987. "Confidebat igitur Porus in altitudine corporis sui, que in quinque cubitorum altitudine videbatur;" d 4, back, col. 2.

3995. "So sharply that he totters with it, and (he) nearly felled him for ever."

3996. "Milites vero Pori altis vocibus vociferauerunt, audiens itaque Porus clamorem quem suns exercitus faciebat, faciem suam versus eos voluit;" ib. Cf. J. Valerius, p. 148.

4010. For *jour* read *our*; it refers to the Indians.

4015. Lat. "ceperunt Alexandrum tanquam deum glorificare;" ib.



4019. Here begins the "Fragment B" of the Alexander Romance, edited by me for the E. E. T. S. under the title of Alexander and Dindimus. The Latin original of several passages is printed in the same book, to which the reader is particularly referred. See also the notes to the same, at p. 45. It is needless to repeat here explanations which have been already given. Cf. Mandeville's Travels, ch. xxix.

4026. "As naked as a needle;" a proverbial phrase. See P. Plowman, C. xv. 105, xx. 56; and the Notes to P. Plowman, p. 290.

4044. Insert *in* before *wildernes*. The scribe has obviously omitted it by error.

4060. "Why dost thou hasten from place to place?"

4064. *Rifte*; evidently an error for *riste* = *reste*, rest. "It would be my desire to rest, but another spirit, and not my spirit, prevents my spirit from so doing." Lat. "Uellem siquidem in pace consistere," &c.; d 5, col. 2.

4067. Here there is a break in "Fragment B"; see Alex. and Dind. p. 5.

4068. Lat. "vbi erant statue quas Hercules erexerat;" ib.

4074. Insert *with* after *fills*; "and fills them with florins, to the number of 1500." The story is that this enormous quantity of gold was required (or at any rate, assigned) merely to fill up the holes which had been made through the statues. This is shewn by the parallel passage in J. Valerius, p. 214, which is much more clearly expressed.

4096. "Exiuit . . bestia similis ippotauro habens pectus vt cocrillii, dorsum vt serra, dentes vero ipsius vt gladii acuti videbantur. In accessu uero ipsius tarda erat vt testudo;" d 5, back, col. 1. Cf. Kyng Alisaunder, ed. Weber, p. 236.

4103. *Eumare*; Lat. "Thamar." Cf. Kyng Alis. p. 236.

4108. The Latin is clearer. It tells us that the squealing of swine (called *swelyng* in l. 4112) was efficacious in frightening the elephants. Hence Alexander directs his men to take swine with them, and beat them till they should squeal. Cf. Kyng Alis. p. 237.

4121. *Viaunce*, viand, food; as if from Lat. *uiuentia*.

4126. Lat. "habentes corpora pilosa sicut bestie;" d 6, col. 1. Cf. Kyng Alis. p. 239.

4130. Lat. "se in ipsum fluium dimererunt;" ib. Cockayne has "marini fluminis se immererunt uorticibus;" p. 58.

4140. Cf. J. Valerius, p. 169.

4158. Lat. "propter autumnale equinoctium hoc contingit;" ib.

4162. Lat. "omnia que ventus disperserat collegerunt;" ib.

4166. Lat. "cadebantque nives magne vt lana;" d 6, col. 2. Cf. J. Valerius, p. 169.

4168. For *And* read *He*; "and, lest it should not cease, he made his men tread it down, like floors, with their feet."

4182. "And, where it approaches the unprotected skin, it harms it for ever."

4188. See the references, in the margin, to the parallel passages in



Alexander and Dindimus. The side-notes, in many places, closely correspond.

4221. See the note to Alex. and Dindimus, p. 47 (l. 221).

4228. "And your learning shall be none the less, even to the value of a leek," i. e. in the least degree.

4233. *He*, i. e. Dindimus. *Him* (l. 4234), Alexander.

4246. The fourth *subiectis* should be *subiect*. "For an unwise king cannot rule his subjects, and (make them) to be subjects as subjects should be, but his subjects make him subject to his subjects."

4263. "We decline, amongst us, all that is too much above measure."

4264. "Except that which Nature leaves us."

4293. *The seyn*, i. e. the seven deadly sins.

4318. "Which is parted, among all the pack of us, by equal portions." In the Lat. text (Alex. and Dind. p. 15) read "*quia* communiter omnia supportamus," not *quam*; e 1, col. 1.

4321. *Iustice of aire*, judge on circuit; "justice in eyre" is a common law-phrase.

4326. For *nulla*, in the Lat. text (Alex. and Dindimus, p. 15) read *nulla mala*; the word *mala* was accidentally omitted.

4376. In the Lat. text (Alex. and Dind. p. 19) for *moueter* read *mouetur*.

4387. "The which I suppose, sir, it would be unwholesome for thee to observe." In the Lat. text (Alex. and Dind. p. 20) for *vident* read *videtur*.

4389. *And we*, &c.; "and we deserve no wrath." Cf. the E. version in Alex. and Dind. l. 512.

4397. "Much would have more;" a proverb.

4408. *Or* should probably be *our*; "may our God give them sorrow!" It is a form of curse.

4410. *Him*; a curious error. Read *hir*, her.

4416. In the Lat. text (Alex. and Dind. p. 21), last line but one, read *Proserpina*. The letter *p* was unfortunately shifted.

4417. Insert a comma after *sottis*; it is in the vocative case.

4446. *Maydese*, may God aid us! "And yet, as may God aid us, for all your toil(?), that mother created you;" [read *3ow* for *us*].

4449. *Assemy*; perhaps an error for *semly*, seemly. The alliteration demands the letter *s*.

4460. *Seropis*, Serapis. In the Lat. text (Alex. and Dind. p. 23, last line but two) for *solem* read *solam*.

4470. "Ye act (lit. let) as though they might cure all that any man would like (to have cured)." *Leth* is the same as *lethien*, to mitigate, relieve, assuage, comfort, cure. The sb. *leth* occurs in l. 4593.

4473. "Which (gods) have neither sight nor soul, but (are) the work of man."

4478. *For his son*, for the sake of His Son. This is a curious specimen of anachronism; the Brahmas are here made Christians. In

l. 4486, they are made to denounce 'maumetry', i. e. the idolatry supposed to be practised by Mahometans.

4487. "That thrusts you plump down to the devil, when ye are dead (and gone) hence."

4492. "But ye pay respect to many others that are no more akin to Him than is the flesh of fish to the fair member (of men)," i. e. to a man's limb.

4494. See note to l. 645 of Alex. and Dindimus, p. 52.

4510, 4511. *Serenon*, a form due to *Cererem*, acc. of *Ceres*; see the Latin. *Hem* is for *him*, i. e. Ceres (supposed masculine). "For formerly quarters of whete without number (were owing) to him;" i. e. Ceres first sowed wheat. See notes to Alex. and Dind. p. 54, l. 692.

4517. "And leave not so much as a limb for your bodies to stand on."

4528. "For joy of his (the peacock's) pride."

4531. For *him* read *hir*; "is yielded to her as tribute."

4534. See notes to Alex. and Dind. p. 54, l. 719.

4583. "Nor any sort of metal to make (tools) with, neither *meslin* nor other metal."

4589. *Lere at*, learn from.

4592. "Were they that have pains so wise, who would be so widely praised as lepers?"

4619. "That all might continue in one condition."

4621. *So*, &c.; "so the world requires." A common phrase; see P. Plowman, B. prol. 19; Alex. and Dind. l. 407.

4622. *Ouir wild*; an error for *our will*; Lat. "*humana voluntas*;" e 2, back, col. 2.

4626. "We do but trample on it." See l. 4681.

4639. "Or else ye are angry with your good fortune."

4640. Probably *pure* is an adverb, signifying purely, wholly. If so, omit the comma after *tecches*.

4649. "From Paris to Rome." A singular illustration.

4653. "Nor (are) angry with our Lord." Understand *ar*.

4654. *Seerties*, varieties; Lat. "*varietates*;" e 3, col. 1. For *we seet* read *he set*, he appointed; Lat. "*constituit*."

4657. "That man is God's friend, and (yet) is none the more a god." Lat. "*non Deus, sed Dei amicus appellatur*;" ib.

4658. Read *in* before *my*. "This similitude, that thou appliest to our race in my letter." Also by "my letter" we must understand "the letter sent to me."

4664. *All be we*, although we be. At the end of l. 4665, substitute a comma for the full-stop.

4666. "Nevertheless (as *ye* say) we consider ourselves to be gods by a (recognised) law(?); but it is *you*, not *we*, that continually practise the same," viz. that attempt to be as gods.

4682. In the Lat. text (Alex. and Dind. p. 38, last line, p. 39, first line) for *bibiberit* read *liberit*.

4685. "The cursed game of avarice would be altogether drowned (i. e. put an end to) by it."

4714. Here ends Fragment B. of the Romance.

4720. *Acrea*; Lat. "Adzea;" e 3, back, col. 1. *Angill*, angle, nook.

4734. For *flode*, read *fynd*; see the footnote. "As I find (in the book)."

4741. Lat. "venit super eos quidam homo agrestis corpore magno et pilosus vt porcus et vox illius tanquam porci, et non loquebatur sed semper tanquam stridebat;" e 3, back, col. 2. The description in the English text is much amplified.

4765. *Lindis*, lindens; hence, trees in general. Cf. J. Valerius, p. 171; also Alex. and Dind. p. 5.

4777. *A bad*, he bade. *A nappill*, an apple.

4791—4802. The Lat. merely has: "Subito peruenit draconum serpentium et leonum multitudo, qui eos maxima angustia angustiauerunt. Taudem ab eorum periculis euaserunt;" e 4, coll. 1 and 2.

4808. *Bothom*, bottom of the valley. *Bournes*, streams.

4810. *A nezen daies*, a (period of) nine days; Lat. "Completis . . octo diebus;" e 4, col. 2. Cf. l. 4814.

4812. Lat. "peruenerunt ad radicem vnus montis;" ib.

4819. *Gols*, gules, i. e. red; cf. l. 5060. Lat. "inuenerunt planiciem maximam, cuius terra erat valde rubicunda. Erantque in ipsa planicie arbores infinite que vltra mensuram cubiti non crescebant, quarum fructus et folia suauissima vt ficus;" ib.

4830. "Erantque ipsi montes excissi vt paries, ita vt nullus posset ascensum facere ad cacumen;" ib.

4850. Lat. "constituit terminos quos nullus [trans]ire presumebat. Et fecit fieri clipeum magnum et longum cubitis septem et latum cubitis quatuor; et ab exteriori parte in superficie clipei fecit speculum maximum fieri. Fecitque sibi subtalares lineos. Cepit contra basiliscum opposito sibi clipeo incedere," &c.; e 4, back, col. 1. The English version is too much abridged.

4867. The plain is described before; l. 4818.

4875. "Et . . . peruenit ad quendam montem adamantinum in cuius ripa auree cathene dependebant;" e 4, back, col. 2.

4885. "That he and his host honour, and offers to each."

4908. "Inuenerunt hominem iacentem in lecto aureo pallio textilorum ornato;" e 5, col. 1. Lines 4912—4919 are not in the Latin text.

4925. Lat. "cuius caput et barba tanquam purissima lana videbatur;" ib.

4936. "And thou shalt hear, perhaps, ere thou go hence."

4941. For *þi delume* read *þe deluue*, the deluge; Lat. "Priusquam vnda diluuii operiret terram;" ib. And probably *drenchet* should be *drenchet*. The form *diluue* (deluge) occurs in P. Plowman, B. x. 411.

4942. "Does it not please thee to look on the trees that live for evermore?" As to the Trees of the Sun and Moon, cf. J. Valerius,

p. 172; Kyng Alisaunder, p. 277. See also Yule's edition of Marco Polo; Mandeville's Travels, p. 298; Cockayne's text, p. 60.

4947. "This word I would desire (to hear), if it be your will; all the world is not dearer to me (than this desire)."

4964. Lat. "vna cum Ptholomeo et Anthiocho et Perdica incedebat;" ib.

4972. "Erantque ipse arbores alte peditus centum et lauris erant similes et oliue ex quibus thus et balsamus largissime effluebant;" ib.

4982. The Lat. description of the Phoenix is as follows. "Et auis gerebat in capite cristam similem pauoni, et fauces cristatas, et circa collum circulum aureum fulgentem. Postrema vero parte purpurea erat. Extra caudam vero roseis pennis in quibus ceruleus color erat;" e 5, col. 2.

4996. "Sursum aspice et de quocunque scire volueritis in corde vestro reuoluetis. Sed palam nolite aliquid enarrare;" ib.

5017. "Si cum triumpho Macedoniam remearet;" ib.

5036. *For writhing*, for fear of making angry, for fear of offending.

5083. Lat. "encenia plurima sibi contulerunt, videlicet, pelles ex piscibus habentes figuram pardi et leonis, et pelles morenarum que per longum septem cubitis tendebantur;" e 5, back, col. 2.

Hence *slozis* (5085) means 'sloughs' or skins.

5088. Lat. "sine calce constructa;" ib. Cf. J. Valerius, lib. iii. c. 44, p. 177. The name of *Candace* is doubtless borrowed from Acts viii. 27. Cf. Kyng Alisaunder, ed. Weber, p. 305.

5092. Called in the Latin Candeolus, Marsipius, and Carracorus. In J. Valerius, the eldest son is called Candaules; in Weber, Candulake.

5113. *With*, by. Before *melid* understand *is*. "And that is not only told us by men of this world."

5123. "Dirigo Amoni deo tuo bipedes centum, aues spirciones ducentas, catenas aureas insertas lapidibus preciosis in quibus erant decem dependentes plena aibus supradictis; et ceneras aureas triginta, uectes hebenos mille quingentos, rinoceros octuaginta, pantheras tria milia, pelles pardi et leonis quingentos;" e 6, col. 1. The translator makes the description in l. 5127 refer to the *rekanthes* (i. e. chains) in l. 5128, and translates the whole in a very free way. He seems to have consulted J. Valerius, lib. iii. c. 47, which has: "Habebis ergo tibi ex nobis amicitie argumentum centum laterculos auri grandissimos, Æthyopas impubes quinque (cf. l. 5132), psittacos sex, phrygasque sex, præterque hæc Hammoni deo nostro coronam smaragdis ac margaritis etiam toreumatis pretiosiore. His et loculos refertissimos cuiusque generis margaritarum atque gemmarum ad decem numerum, eburneosque alios loculos octaginta una misi . . . elephantos trecentos quinquaginta," &c.

5151. Lat. "rex Ebraicorum;" ib. But J. Valerius has "a quodam Bebryciorum tyranno;" p. 181. See Weber, p. 307.

5158. "It might have pierced any heart."

5163. "By the time that he approached the tent."

5205. "And say to that sire, on thy behalf," &c. *On thi behalf* = in thy name, i. e. in the name of the (pretended) Alexander.

5239. "Uidebant etiam vites habentes vuarum botros maximos, quos vnus homo portare non potuisset, et nuces ferentes maximos fructus vt pepones;" e 6, back, col. 1. Cf. Mandeville's Travels, ch. xxvi. p. 265.

5268. *Pentests*. There is no such word in the Lat. text, nor in J. Valerius, lib. iii. c. 57.

5299. "Respondit regina, bene dicis, Alexander. Plus enim apud Grecos quam apud Indos digna fuissent;" f 1, col. 1. Hence, in l. 5300, & stands for 'than'.

5319. "Audiens hec Alexander stridere dentibus et caput eius reuoluere cepit omni parte;" ib.

5323. "Ut quid inter temetipsum irasceris et turbaris?" (ib.)

5333. *Behricans handis*, the hands of the Bebrician; cf. l. 5151.

5337. Lat. "Karotherus" (col. 2); but before, Carracorinus; see note to l. 5092.

5377. "It is only needful for thee to grant (assent) to give me what goods I ask for."

5401. "Quis est tu, domine? At ille respondit, Ego sum Thinthisus, regnum mundi tenens et mundum subiugans, qui vniuersos mundanos tue supposui maiestati. Fabricasti nomini tuo ciuitatem [i. e. Alexandriam], et nomini meo non construxisti templum;" f 1, back, col. 2. J. Valerius, lib. iii. c. 67, calls this deity Sesonchosis.

5413. "I have told thee ere now;" see l. 1103. Lat. "Si esset homini nota causa mortis, dolore intollerabili moueretur;" ib. The E. text is corrupt; in l. 5414, I should of course be *he*. "Were that evidence known to any man, of what (were his) doom, then *he* would die for sorrow." Serapis, being immortal, could not die at all.

5417. "Ibi fabricabitur sepulcrum tuum;" ib.

5419. "Prayed that the Lord would well preserve him."

5425. "Ipsi vero serpentes viuebant de lasere et pipere que vallis ipsa gignebat;" ib.

5433. The side-note, by an oversight, is wrong. Alexander's men are not killed by the snakes, but by the beasts having claws three feet wide.

5442. A picture of this griffin is given on the title-page of Halliwell's edition of Mandeville's Travels; see ch. xxvi. of that book, p. 269.

5458. For *thai* read *thair*. "With gold on their heels," i. e. knights of rank, who wore gold spurs.

5467. Lat. "obtulerunt ei munera, scilicet spongiarum albas et purpureas mire magnitudinis et conchas maximas, per singulas duos vel tres sextarios continentes. Necnon et tunicas de vitelis (*sic*) maximis confectas, et vermes quos de ipso fluuio attrahebant, quorum grossitudo erat maior coxa hominis, et eorum gustus erat dulcis vt piscis . . . et morenas . . . Pondus autem de vnaquaque morena erat ducentarum quinquaginta librarum;" f 2, coll. 1 and 2.

5475. Here we have the story of the sirens or mermaids.

5482. Lat. "dentes habebant vt canes;" col. 2.

5483. Cf. Mandeville's Travels, ch. xxvi. p. 265.

5487. Lat. "Gog et Magog, Agatan, Magehon, Aleghthor, Appelmai, Limith, Iunii, Rothe, Redem, Cemarre, Cabellea, Camarciant, Cathomi, Anarde, Getimadi, Anafag, Candorem, Rinocephali, Thirbei, Alonis, Accimei, Philonis, Satramei et Soltani;" ib.

5504. Lat. "homines lingua Greca loquentes;" f 2, back, col. 1.

5512. Lat. "vt fere celo propinquius esset;" ib.

5520. "Flesh a little way off from them that they could not reach to."

5530. Lat. "cum angustia maxima ad exercitum peruenit;" col. 2.

5531. I give the Latin of this remarkable passage. "Post hec ascendit in cor Alexandri vt maris profunda quereretur et omnium piscium genera scrutaretur. Statimque iussit vitrarios ante se venire, et precepit eis vt facerent dolium ex vitro clarissimo et splendidissimo vt possent a foris omnia clarissime conspici. Factumque est ita. Deinde inussit eum cathenis ferreis religari et a fortissimis militibus teneri. At ille intrans ipsum dolium clausa porta ex pice composita descendit in profundum maris. Uiditque ibi diuersas figuras piscium et diuersos colores habentes imagines bestiarum terre, et per terram in profundo maris tanquam bestie pedibus ambulantes et comedebant fructus arborum que in profundo maris nascebantur. Ipse autem belue veniebant vsque ad eum, postea fugiebant. Uiditque alia mirabilia que nemini voluit enarrare eo quod hominibus incredibilia viderentur. Tempus vero mansionis sue in aquis quod militibus suis predixit Alexander completum erat, et traxerunt eum milites ad superiora;" ib.

5557. "Inuenerunt animalia que habebant in capite ossa serrata et acuta vt gladius;" f 2, back, col. 2, and f 3, col. 1.

5566. *Tupis*, tups, rams; Lat. "arietes;" f 3, col. 1.

5594. Lat. "quam in eius memoriam nominauit Bucifallam;" col. 2.

5596. *Detiraty*; Lat. "flumen qui (*sic*) dicitur Tyrum. Et obuenerunt sibi homines illius terre ferentes ei elephantum quinque milia et currus falcatos centum milia;" ib.

5613. *Nabizanda*; Lat. "Nabuzardon;" ib.

5615. Lat. "vsque ad diem obitus sui ibidem per septem menses, in pace mortuus;" ib.

5619. The letter of Alexander to Aristotle is given by J. Valerius, bk. iii. capp. xxiii—xliii, and contains an account of the wonders which Alexander had seen in his expedition, many of which have already been narrated in the present version. An Anglo-Saxon version of Alexander's letter was edited by Mr. Cockayne in 1861 in his "*Narratiunculæ Anglice Conscriptæ*."

5641. *Statute*, an error for *statue*; the Lat. text has *statua*.

5644. "Parietes vero ex topasio et per vniuersos gradus erant preciosi lapides cuiusque generis inserti. Erat etiam in summitate ipsius lapidis rubicundus qui tam in nocte quam in die lucebat. Et in ipso

throno erant imagines vndique constitute, in quibus erant versus scripti Grecis literis et Latinis nomina omnia prouinciarum que seruiebant Alexandro ;" f 3, back, coll. 1 and 2.

5656. This list of names is not in the Latin text. *Panthi* is Parthia. Many of the names seem to be inserted at random, and the list includes places scattered over almost every part of Europe and Asia ; compare the list of places conquered by king Arthur, as given in the alliterative *Morte Arthure*, p. 2.

5677. The fragment ends here. The rest of the story, as given on pp. 276—278, is abridged from the Latin text, leaf f 3, back, &c.

## NOTES ON THE "STORY OF ALEXANDER."

- P. 280, l. 42. See p. 42, l. 893 of the Poem.  
 ,, , l. 45. See ll. 4019—4066 of the Poem ; and cf. l. 4194.  
 P. 281, l. 62. See Alexander and Dindimus, p. 3, l. 69.  
 ,, , l. 72. See the same, p. 4, l. 88.  
 ,, , l. 75. This story is neither in the Romance here printed, nor in Alexander and Diuidimus. The same remark applies to the next story, beginning at l. 120.  
 P. 283, l. 135. See p. 274, l. 5617.  
 ,, , l. 140. "One of the grettest lordez" may refer to Ptolemy of Egypt ; but the story referred to is insufficiently indicated.





## GLOSSARIAL INDEX, AND INDEX OF NAMES.

FORMS enclosed in marks of parenthesis, as for instance (Abaytez), given under Abates, occur in the Dublin MS. As a rule, words should be looked for under the form in which they occur in the Ashmole MS. Thus *abaytez* in the Dublin MS., l. 2161, should be sought as if spelt *abatis*, the spelling in the Ashmole MS. in that line. It is then easily found under Abates.

Lines marked with an asterisk, such as 789\* (under Aboute), occur only in the Dublin MS. See the starred lines, 723\* to 844\* on pp. 25 to 33; also a few additional lines so marked further on, which can cause no difficulty.

Besides the abbreviations *s.*, *adj.*, *adv.*, for *substantive*, *adjective*, *adverb*, &c., the following are used in a special sense:—*v.*, a verb in the infinitive mood; *ger.*, a gerund; *pr. s.*, present tense, 3rd person singular; *pt. s.*, past tense, 3rd person singular; *pr. pl.*, present tense, 3rd person plural; *pt. pl.*, past tense, 3rd person plural. Other persons are denoted by the figures 1 or 2. Note also *imp. s.*, imperative singular, 2nd person; *imp. pl.*, imperative plural, 3rd person; *pp.*, past participle.

A large number of references are given, but they are not exhaustive. All forms of words are recorded, with but few unimportant exceptions.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <p>A, <i>art.</i> a, 13, 22, 39, 47, &amp;c. So, probably, in l. 131.<br/> A, <i>adj.</i> one, 57, 1131, 3066.<br/> A, <i>interj.</i> ah! 242, 964, 3252; (Aa, in Dublin MS.), 964.<br/> A, <i>pron.</i> he, 4777; (A), 1492.<br/> A, <i>v.</i> have, 5158.<br/> Aande, <i>s.</i> breath, 4000. Icel. <i>andi</i>, <i>önd</i>. See Ande.<br/> A-baist, <i>pp.</i> abashed, afraid, 2593, 5191; (Abaysed), 1492; Abaiste, dismayed, 4109; Abayste, cast down, 402.<br/> Abandra (Bandara), <i>a city</i>, 2131. See Abrandra.<br/> A-baste, <i>imp. pl.</i> 2 <i>p.</i> abase, 3877. (<i>Error for Abase.</i>)<br/> Abates (Debates, <i>wrongly</i>), <i>pr. s.</i> lessens, 2506; Abatis (Abaytez), <i>pr. pl.</i> fail, sink, 2161.<br/> A-bayste, <i>pp.</i> afraid, cast down, 402; (Abaysed), 1492. See A-baist.</p> | <p>Abbeon, <i>a country</i>, 5660.<br/> Abet (Habet), <i>s.</i> habit, dress, 2303; Abite (Habet), garment, dress, 1487, 1531. See Abite, Abytt.<br/> A-bide (Abyde), <i>v.</i> endure, 2137; Abidis (Abydez), <i>pr. s.</i> awaits, 1576. See A-byde.<br/> Abite (Habet), <i>s.</i> habit, dress, 1624. See Abet, Abytt.<br/> Able, <i>adj.</i> powerful, 941.<br/> Abletus, <i>for</i> Abbetus, <i>pl.</i> habits, robes, 1928. See Abet.<br/> A-bleyd, <i>pp.</i> with sorrowful looks, sad, 402. "To look <i>blae</i>, to look blank, having the appearance of disappointment;" Jamieson.<br/> Abofe (Abowne), <i>adv.</i> above, 1398; (Aboue), 1374; (Abowue), to the top, uppermost, 727. MS. D. can be read either as <i>abowne</i> or <i>abowne</i>; perhaps the latter is better. See <i>Above</i> in Murray's New Dict.</p> |
|--|--|

A-bofe (Abowne), *prep.* over, 1587.  
A-bofe, *s.* a being above, exaltation, 4241.

A-bore, *pp.* born, 590.

Aboue (Abofe), *adv.* above, 1416.  
See Abofe.

Aboundance, *s.* abundance, 4668.

A-boute, *adv.* about, around, 108, 505, 556, 945; (Abowt), all round, 1152; (About), everywhere, 1763.

Aboute, *prep.* around, round, 595, 2209; About, 505; (Abouute), 789.\* See Per.

A-bowe (Bowe), *pr. s.* submit, 2418.

A-brade (On brade), *adv.* abroad, widely, 774.

A-brade, abroad, cast or strewn abroad; *but prob. an error for* As brade, as large (see note), 4166.

Abandra (Bandra), *a city*, 2148.  
See Abandra.

(Abreggez); see Breggis.

Absens, absence, 637.

A-byde, *ger.* to resist, 3017. See Abide, Bide.

(Abyt), *s.* habit, dress, 2886. See Abet, Abite.

Acats, *pl.* agates, 5273.

Acheles, Achilles, 2125.

A-cheues (Achevys), *pr. s.* achieves. wins, 1052; (Achefe), *pr. s. subj.* may happen, 822\*; A-cheued (Achevet), *pt. s.* finished his journey, got away, 1036; Achewid, *pt. s.* achieved, 3730; A-cheued (Chefyd), *pp.* achieved, 2712; Achevyd (Acheuett), 1237.

A-corde, *s.* agreement, 620.

A-corde, *v.* agree, 3311; A-cordis (Acordes), *pr. pl.* agree, 1023.

A-count, *ger.* to account of, 1934; A-counte, *ger.* to reckon, compute, 3693; A-counte (Account), *ger.* to count, 1993; A-count, *v.* count, 1987; A-conte, *v.* count, 673.

A-coupe (Acoup), *v.* accuse, blame, 2433. O.F. *acouper*, to blame.

Acrea, *Lat.* Adzea, 4720.

Acres, 5660.

Actis, *pl.* acts, 4369.

Actons, *pl.* tunics, leather jackets, 3413. Orig. a jacket of quilted cotton, worn under the coat of

mail. O.F. *auqueton*, from Span. *alcoton*, lit. 'the cotton.'

Acustounnes, *pl.* customary behaviour, customs, 4577.

Adamand, *s.* adamant, diamond, 4876; Adamands, *pl.* 5384; Adamants, 5273. See Adomant.

Adantrocay, 3927. See the note.

Adill, *ger.* to earn (for themselves), 3191. Icel. *ðíla*, refl. *ðíla-sk*, to earn for oneself; from *ðal*, property. See *Addle* in Murray.

Admitts (Admittes), *imper. pl.* 2 *p.* admit, receive, 2358.

Adomant, *s.* adamant, diamond, 3345; (Adamant), 3372. See Adamand.

Adoure, *ger.* to adore, 2176, 5118; (Adour), *v.* adore, 1059; Adoures, *pr. s.* does honour to, honours, 5224; (Adours), reverences, 2680; Adoures, *pr. pl.* 2 *p.* adore, 4466, 4548; Adoured (Adouret), *pt. pl.* 1619; Adhoured, 1931; (Adoure), *imp. s.* adore, 3242.

A-dred (Dred), *pp.* afraid, 1355; (A-drede), 2489.

Adriac (Andriake), *prop. name.* 2586.

Aduersites, *pl.* adversities, 309.

A-ferd, *pp.* afraid, 492.

Affie (Affye), *pr. s.* 1 *p.* trust in, 1725. See Affyed.

Affinite, affinity, kindred, 923; followers, 1235.

Affirmed (Enformed), *pp.* declared, 1897.

Affraid, *pp.* afraid, 4151, 5621; (Affrayd), 3189. See Afray.

Affrike, Africa, 3765; (Aufrike), 1047; (Aufrik), 1050; the South wind, 4144.

Affyed, *pt. pl.* trusted, relied; þam affyed, put their trust in, 3572. See Affie.

Afle, *error for* Asie, Asia, 2332. (Dublin MS. has Asy.)

Aforne; see Beforne.

Afray, *v.* frighten, affright, 448; A-fraid (Afrayd), *pp.* 851; A-frayd, 675; (Affrayed), 1795. See Affraid.

A-fritz, *pp.* affrighted, 395, 675, 3189. (After), *adv.* after, afterwards, 1435; (Aftir), 736.\* See Eftire.

- (Aftir), *prep.* after, 763\*; Efter (After), 976; Eftire (Aftir), 695.  
 Agayn, *adv.* again, 188, 332, 383; Agayne, 1336; Agayn (Ayayn), back, 1183, 1785; Agayn, back, 185, 889.  
 Agayn, against; Agayn-stande, *v.* resist, 636.  
 Agayn, *prep.* against, 50, 82, 3545; towards, 4814; (Ayayns), against, 1322; (Agayns), to meet, 1123; A-gayne, to meet (them), 3964; (Agayns), against, 2423; (Ayayns), against, towards, 795, 1969, 2382; Agaynes, against, contrary to, 473; (Agayns), against, 1501, 1878, 1973; towards, to meet, 170, 953; Agayns (Ayayns), *prep.* against, 2208, 2748; to meet, 2857.  
 (Agayn-come), *s.* return, 2890.  
 (Agaynward); see Agynward.  
 Age, *s.* age, 315, 1002, 1108, 1109, 1474.  
 Agekany, *Lat.* Agatan, 5488.  
 Aghe, *s.* awe, 5186.  
 Aghille, *adj.*; error for Athille, 29.  
 See Athill.  
 (Aght), *pt. s.* ought, 3370.  
 A-gloped (Agloped), *pp.* terrified, alarmed, 874. The prefix *a-* is intensive (A.S. *á-*). Icel. *glápn*, to be downcast.  
 Agraythen, *v.* to array, deck, set out, 3456. Icel. *greiða*, to arrange.  
 A-greuyd, *pp.* aggrieved, angered, 1954.  
 A-grydis, *pr. pl.* dash, clash, 3611. Cf. *gride*, *v.* as used by Milton, P. L. vi. 329; M. E. *girden*, to strike.  
 Agynward (Agaynward), in return, 1933.  
 Ai, *adv.* ever, always, 239, 242, 1875, 3529; (Ay), 1225, 1401, 1773, 2114, 2250. See Ay, Aye.  
 Ailis (Ayles), *pr. s.* ails, 849; Ailes (Aylez), 2158; incites, 4609; Ailed, *pt. s.* (who) was ill (of), 5605.  
 Aiquare, *adv.* everywhere, 3408.  
 Aire, *s.* air, 27, 542, 4334; Of the aire (ayre), (made) of the air, 1487; Airis, *pl.* atmospheres, 29.  
 Aire, *s.* heir, 233, 3470, 3579; (Heyr), 2755, 3086; (Hayr), 1606; (Ayre), 977; Ayr, 2006.  
 Aire, *s.* eyre, circuit, 4321.  
 Aires, *pr. s.* goes, journies, 2680, 3595; (Ayres), 1277, 1907, 1994; (Ayrez), 1050, 1072, 2239; (Ayers), 912, 2034; Airis, goes, 53, 135, 407; (Ayres), 695, 873, 1597; (Ayers), 795, 1121; (Ayrez), 2248; Aires, *pr. s. refl.* goes, 2637; *pr. pl.* go, 3110; Airid, *pt. s.* went, 843; Aire, *imp. s.* 2 *p.* go thou, 5179; Aires, *imp. pl.* go, 989, 2770; Airis, 1185; Airand (Ayrand), *pres. pt.* coming, 942. O.F. *eirer*, to journey, Low Lat. *iterare*; from L. *iter*, a journey. See Ayres.  
 Aipir, *adj.* each, either, 2614; Aithire, 2620, 5066; (Ather), 770, 785, 1520, 3417; (Apir), 802.  
 Aix, *for* Axe, *pr. pl.* 1 *p.* ask, *p.* 281, l. 61; Axie, 2 *pr. pl.* *p.* 281, l. 66.  
 (Ak), *conj.* but, 875. A.S. *ac*.  
 Akis, *pr. s.* aches, 538.  
 Al, *adv.* all, 943; wholly, 640, 790, 798, 799; Al to, wholly too, much too, 1010, 1738. See All.  
 Al, *conj.* although, 3464.  
 A-lande, *adv.* on land, hence downwards to a place of rest, 393. See the context.  
 Alane, *adj.* alone, 132.  
 Alane, *Lat.* Allonis, 5493.  
 Albastis, *for* Alblastis (Alblastrez), *pl.* cross-bows, 2225.  
 Alblaster (Awblester), cross-bow, or cross-bow-bolt, 1400; (Alblastres), *pl.* cross-bow-bolts, 3046.  
 Alblastis, *pl.* cross-bow-men, 5450.  
 Ald (Old), *adj.* old, 2263; (Olde), 2117; (Alde), 2176; Alde (Ald), 1020.  
 Aldfadire, *gen.* of thy father-in-law (?), lit. old father's, 5376. A.S. *eald-fæder*, a grandfather, ancestor.  
 (Aldours); see Eldirs.  
 Alegis, *pr. pl.* allege, 4558.  
 Alexander, *passim*, *spelt* Alexsandire, 17, 620; *gen.* 904.  
 Alexsander (Alexander), Alexandria

- (the town), 1120. See Alysaudire.
- Algate, *adv.* by all means, i. e. especially, 128.
- Alkin; Alkin rewmys (Alkyn realmes), realms of every kind, 2363; Alkens (Alken), of every kind, 1400.
- All, *adj.* all, 63, 76, 82, &c. See Al, All-pir, Allire.
- All, *adv.* wholly, entirely, 121, 532, 875, 1302; All him-selfe, quite by himself, 111, 335; All his ane, alone by himself, 210, 1377; All him ane, 407; All þus, just thus, 2907. See Al.
- All, *conj.* although, 933, 2646, 4664; notwithstanding that, 2647; All if, although, 3876, 5320.
- Allane, *adj.* alone, 4840; (Alon), 1828.
- Allanely, *adv.* only, solely, 3101. Compounded of *all* and *anely*, i. e. only.
- Allas (Alas), *interj.* alas, 1816, 3434.
- All-bedene, all at once, 3532. See Bedene.
- Allire (Aller), *gen. pl.* of them all, 1255; Allirs, of all, 620; Oure allirs, of us all, 3513. See All.
- All-quat, *s.* everything, something of every kind, 4469.
- Alls, *adv.* also, 4943. See Als.
- All-pir, *put for* Alpir, *gen. pl.* of all; (All-þar), 1855; All-pir hiest (eldest), highest of all, especially, most particularly, 1765; All-pir-mast (All þe most), most of all, greatest of all, 2637; All-pire-first, first of all, 3039. From A.S. *ealra*, *gen. pl.* of *eal*, all, with inserted *th*. See All, Althire.
- All-to-gedire, *adv.* altogether, 476; (All-to-gedyr), 1703; (All-to-geder), 715, 1204, 3255; (All-to-geder), 782.\*
- All-to-hewyn, *pp.* cut all to pieces, 3201.
- All-way, *adv.* always, 404; ever, 4299; (Alway), continually, 2492; All-ways (Always), 2517.
- Almade, *Lat.* Amarde, 5488.
- Almands, *pl.* almonds, 4718.
- Almast (Almost), *adv.* almost, 1459.
- Aloes, *pl.* aloes, 4869.
- A-losed, *pp.* renowned, 2341; *mis-written* A-lose (Lowsed), 1960. O.F. *aloser*, to praise; from *los*, sb. praise, due to L. *laus*.
- Als, *conj. and adv.* as, 430, 439, 2353; also, 1840, 2677, 5617; (Als), as, 693, 2152; Als, as, when, 2844; as it were, 751\*, 752\*; where that, 769\*; Als (Also), so, 1270; as (I hope), 724\*; Als belyue, as soon as may be, 2183; Als belive (belyfe), as quickly as possible, immediately, 2671.
- Also, also, 31; Als-so, also, 5499.
- Althire-fairest, fairest of all, 5092. See All-pir.
- Althire-finest, finest of all, 3701; Althire-fynest, 3368.
- Alpire-graythist, readiest of all, *but an error for* Alpire-gretist, greatest of all, 162.
- Alpir-heist (All-þar heldest), *adj.* the highest (chief) of all, 1855; Althire-higest (All þe heldest), *adv.* chief of all, especially, 2509.
- Alpire-mast, *adv.* greatest of all, excessive, 486.
- Althire-thickest (All þe thickest), *adj. superl.* thickest of all, 1323.
- Alto-bretind, *put for* Al to-bretind, *pt. pl.* utterly broke in pieces, 3905. See Bretens.
- Alto-bruntes (-brountes), *pr. s.* wholly destroys, 1214. Bruntes is an error for Brutens, *pr. s.* of Brutenen, or Brutnen, to dash, break in pieces. See *brutnen* in Mätzner; and see Alto-bretind.
- Altogedre, *adv.* altogether, 174; Al-to-gedire (All-togedre), 903.
- Alto-maukid, *misprint for* Alto-mankid = Al to-mankid, *pt. pl.* maimed to pieces, mangled, 4100. See *Mank* in Jamieson. Cf. *Lat. mancus*.
- Alto-schatird, *pt. s.* (for Al to-schatird), utterly shattered in pieces, utterly scattered, 4150.
- Alyens, *pl.* aliens, strangers, 3445; (Aliens), 989; Alyens, *gen. pl.* strangers', 947.

- Alysaundire (Alexaunder), Alexandria, 2764. See Alexandria.
- Am, 1 *pr. s.* am, 574, 842\*, &c.
- (Amaced), *pp.* amazed, 1814.
- Amatist, amethyst, 3145, 3349;
- Amatast, 3341; Amatists, *pl.* 5384; Amatistis, *pl.* 5273; Amytists, 3679.
- Amay þe, *imp. s.* dismay thee, be dismayed, 2816; A-maied, *pp.* dismayed, 1814; Amayd, *pp.* 1253, 3885. O.F. *esmaye*, to dismay.
- Amazoyne, the land of the Amazons, 3708, 3722.
- Ame, 1 *pr. s.* I think, judge, suppose, 3830, 4104; Ames, *pr. s.* aims, thinks, 3624; addresses, 2563; (Amez), directs his way, 1047; pitches, sets, 2586; Ames (Aymes, *M.S.* aynes), *pr. s.* aims, endeavours, 843; Ames, *pr. s.* 2 *p.* supposet (but a false reading), 2649; Amed, *pt. s.* intended, 2821; *refl.* intended to go, 219; Amed (Ameyd), *pt. pl.* purposed, intended, 2395; Amed, *pp.* determined, 309; reckoned, considered, 3736. F. *aimer*.
- Ame, *s.* aim, guess, suspicion, 2965; aim, endeavour, 2484; At myn ame (ayme), as I suppose, 2987.
- Amend, *ger.* to amend (the gift), to add (thereto), 3776; Amendid (Mendyd), *pp.* recovered, 2127.
- (Amenyst), *pp.* diminished, 2629.
- A-mened, *pp.* moved, 4556; (A-meved), 1253.
- Amlaze (Amlaugh), *s.* an imbecile, weak person, 1705, 3542. Icel. *amlóði*.
- Amon, Ammon, 345, 404, 420, 3398; Amone, 4212; Amon (Amone), 1059; (Amoyne), 2863; Amon (Amonez), *gen.* Ammon's, 1072.
- Amonest (Amonesh), 1 *pr. s.* admonish, charge, 1493. E. *admonish*.
- Amonta, *proper name*, 2059, 2078; Amont, 2037.
- Amoued (Ameyved), *pp.* moved, disturbed, 1796; (Amoved), moved, exhorted, bidden, 1493.
- Amphion, *proper name*, 2216.
- Amytists; see Amatist.
- An, one, 3532; a space of, 4814; (Ane), an, 800. See Ane.
- Anabras, Anarbasontes, 3428.
- Anafrage, *Lat.* Anafag, 5488.
- An-ane (Anone), *adv.* anon, at once, 1377. See Anone.
- Ancestris (Auncesters), *pl.* ancestors, 2844.
- Ancient, *adj.* old, 3445.
- And, *conj.* and (usually expressed by &), 6, 12, 15, &c.; if, 21, 354, 2164, 2339, 2653; than, 540, 2840, 3819, 5300. *An* = than, is given in Halliwell as in use in the *North* and *East*. Hence, in l. 540, the reading *and* is to be retained. Cf. Icel. *en, enn*, than. See *And* in Murray, p. 317, col. 2.
- Ande (Aynde), *s.* breath, 749; Andes, *pl.* breathings, 4813. See Aande.
- Ane, *adj.* one, 40, 189, 307, 586, &c.; an, 191, 697, 767\*; alone, 391; some one, 465; Eftir ane, after one pattern, all alike, 4619; Ane oþer, another, 1240; pine ane, thyself alone, 732, 5623; Him ane, himself alone, 53, 169; þour ane, each one of you, 3176. See All, An.
- Anec, *short for* Anectanabus, king of Egypt, 40, 71, 79, 95, 168, 191, 210, 219, 242, 290, 306, 352, 398, 537, 670, 701, 717, 1126, 1134.
- Anectanabus, king of Egypt, 533, 693; Anecanabus, 486; Anectabus, 1131. See Anec.
- Anelepý, *adj.* a single, 109. See Anlepi.
- Anell (Angle), *put for* Angle, nook, corner, region, 1630. See Angle.
- Anely (Only), *adv.* only, merely, 995, 2464, 2729; alone, 1020. See Anly.
- A-nente (Anense), *prep.* about, concerning, 735 [Anense = Anentes; and hence Anens-t, with added t]; A-nentes (Anence), touching, regarding, 2716. See Enentis.
- Anentes, *pr. s.* becomes annihilated, 3302. O.F. *anienter*, to bring to naught. See *aniente* in Murray.
- Anepo, *proper name*, 2955.

- Anes, *adv.* once, 478, 1191 ; At anes (At onys), at once, 929. See Anys.  
 Anes, *pr. s.* unites, 879.  
 (Anest), *prep.* as regards, 3164. *Put for* Anenst. See Anente.  
 Angire (Angre), *s.* anger, 857, 1908, 2724 ; (Anger), trouble, sorrow, 2889 ; Angirs, *pl.* angers, passions, 750 ; (Angers), miseries, 2160. See Angres.  
 Angirs, (Angers), *pr. s.* becomes angry, 837.  
 Angle, *s.* corner, place, province, region, 3657 ; Angill, 4720 ; Anglis (Anglez), *pl.* angles, corners, 2332 ; Anglies (Anglez), nooks, 1917.  
 (Angres), *pl.* sorrows, troubles, 3173. See Angire.  
 Angrile (Angirly), *adv.* angrily, 733 ; Angrily (Angerly), 2185 ; (Angrely), 832.\*  
 Angwisch, *s.* anguish, pain, 3173 ; hardship, suffering, 2160, 5618 ; woe, 3916 ; Angwische, 1011 ; Angwischis, *pl.* sorrows, 3828 ; annoyances, 3793.  
 Ankers ; see Aunkirs.  
 Anlepi, *adj.* one, single, 5025. A.S. *ánlêpig*. See Anelepy.  
 Anly, *adv.* only, simply, 4240. See Anely.  
 (Anone), *adv.* anon, 2294. See Anane.  
 Anoper (Ane oþer), another, 822 ; Anoper, 585 ; Anothre (Ane oþer), 2237 ; Anopire, 297, 501, 795, &c.  
 Anoyed (Noyet), *pp.* annoyed, vexed, 737.  
 Anoyntis, *pr. s.* anoints, 413.  
 Answare (Answer), *s.* answer, 3158 ; (Answer), 2180. See Aunswer.  
 Answaringis, *pl.* answers, 2180.  
 Answars, *pr. s.* answers, 234, 290, 362 ; (Answers), 2183, 2263 ; Answard (Answerd), *pt. pl.* answered, 1000.  
 Antagoyné (Antigon), Antigonus, 1912.  
 Antarticus, the Antartic or south pole, 31.  
 Anters, *pl.* adventures, 656. See Aunter.  
 Antiok, Antiochus, 5208 ; Antioc, 5186, 5193 ; Antiet [*or* Antiec], 4965 ; Antioks, *gen.* 5197.  
 Any, any, 84, 134, 261 ; (Ony), 1200 ; Any mare (more), any more, 1011.  
 Any-gates, *adv.* in any way, 4216.  
 Anyly (Only), *adv.* only, singularly, 3399. See Anely, Anly.  
 Anys, *adv.* once, 3508 ; (Onys), 1467, 2654 ; At anys (anes, onys), at once, 1609, 2326, 2345. See Anes, *adv.*  
 Apareld (Aparaerld), *pp.* apparelled, 1497 ; Aparaild (Appareld), 2300.  
 Aparell, *s.* apparel, 5196.  
 Apart, apart ; *or for* Apert, openly, 3575.  
 Ape, *s.* ape, 1705, 3542 ; Apis, *pl.* 5242.  
 A-pere, *v.* appear, 361 ; Apere, 3215, 3422 ; be present, 2579 ; Aperis, *pr. s.* appears, 451, 1084 ; (Aperes), 1487 ; A-perid (Aperyd), *pt. s.* appeared, 2862 ; (Appered), 1084, 1626. See below, and see Apperys.  
 A-pered, *pt. s.* appeared (to them), 3056. *Perhaps for* Apeired = harmed.  
 Apert, *adj.* open, evident, obvious, 2833, 4496 ; manifest, 3726 ; Aperte, well-known, 261.  
 Apert, *adv.* openly, plainly, 1896, 2295, 5190.  
 Appetite, *s.* appetite, 4609.  
 Apon, *prep.* upon, 31, 251 ; (Vpon), 778, 930, 1130 ; on, 773 ; (Vppon), on, 1641 ; in, 1670, 2247.  
 Aport, *s.* outward appearance, personal bearing, deportment, 598, 5145.  
 Apparail (Apperale), *ger.* to apparel, prepare, 1919.  
 (Apparement), *s.* apparel, 820.\*  
 Appedanere, *Lat.* Appelmai, 5493.  
 (Apperys), 2 *pr. s.* appearest like, 1842. See Apere.  
 Appils (Appills), *pl.* apples, 4718, 5241.  
 Appollo, Apollo, 4534 ; Appole, 5118. See Appolyne.  
 Appolomados, 2529. See note.  
 Appolyne, Apollo, 4467 ; Appoline (Apolyn), 2254 ; (Appolyn), 2176 ; (Appolyne), 2183. See Appollo.



- Appose, *imp. s. 2 p. question*, 4998.  
 A-prefe, *v. approve*, be approved, 598. See Apreue.  
 A-prefe, *s. approbation*, approval, 648.  
 A-preue, *v. exhibit*, prove, make good (lit. approve), 5328; A-preued (Preved), *pt. pl. acquired* (for themselves), 1206; A-preuyd, *pp. gained*, attained, 614. See Aprefe, Aproues.  
 Aproche, *ger. to approach*, 1595; *pr. s. subj. 74*; Aprochid, *pt. s. approached*, came, 4102.  
 A-proprid, *pp. considered by itself*, 4496.  
 Aproues, *pr. s. proves good*, 4220.  
 Apurynance, *appurtenance*, 5628.  
 Aquiloun, the wind Aquilo, north wind, 4144.  
 Arabie (Araby), Arabia, 2034.  
 Aray, *s. order*, manner, 425; (Arayes), *pl. ranks*, 1320.  
 Aray, *pr. s. 2 p. subj. array*, 1494; Arais (Arayes), *pr. s. arrays*, 1513; Araies (Arays), *pr. pl. 2980*; Arayd, *pte. dressed*, 1633; (Aræd), arrayed, 1382; Arayed, arrayed, 93; (Arayede), 883.  
 Arcagee, Arcadia (?), 5675.  
 Archere, *s. archer*, 5450; Archars (Archers), *pl. 1390, 3041*; Archars (Arches, *for Archers*), 2455.  
 Arcules, Hercules, 4500; Arculious, 4068.  
 Ardromacius (Andromacius), *proper name*, 1691.  
 Are, *s. favour*; þin are, with thy favour, 5361. A.S. *ár*.  
 Are, *adv. ere*, before, 246, 1140. A.S. *ér*.  
 Areris, *pr. s. retreats*, draws backward, 4846.  
 Arest, *s. arrest*, seizure, 3504.  
 Arestes (Aristes), *proper name*, 1277. See Arystes.  
 (Arestotell), Aristotle, 766.\* See Aristotil.  
 (Arghes), *imp. pl. be afraid*, fear, 989. See Arjes.  
 Arise (Rise), *v. arise*, 1880.  
 Aristotil, Aristotle, 3460; Aristotill, 44, 5619; Arystotill, 623, 637.  
 Arly, *adv. early*, 350, 351.  
 Arme, *s. arm*, 494, 503, 805; Armes, *pl. 345, 384, 420*.  
 Armed, *pp. armed*, 49, 83, 1213; (Armyd), 2034, 2102; (Enarmed), 757, 954.  
 Armee, *s. army*, 2363.  
 Armes, *pl. arms*, 90, 803\*, 996; (Armez), 764, 908, 1594; Armys, 9, 16, 444; (Armes), 2363; Armes (Armez), coat-armour, hence, array, special dress, 1624.  
 Armoure, *s. (Armors, pl.) armour*, 3413; (Armour), 996.  
 Aromatike (Aromatyke), *adj. aromatic*, 1566.  
 Aromitike, aromatics, 4977.  
 Arows, *pl. arrows*, 2455; (Arowes), 1390; Arowis (Arowez), 2211; (Arows), 2224.  
 Arrabe, Arabia, 5659; Arrabie, *gen. Arabia's*, 5564.  
 Arrabiens, *pl. Arabians*, 92.  
 (Art), 2 *pr. s. art*, 843.\* See Ert.  
 Artaxenses, Artaxerxes, 49, 81, 169.  
 Arte, *s. art*, science, 128, 333, 681, 5483; Artis, *pl. arts*, 44, 376, 522; ways, 4609; (Artez), 766.\*  
 Arteneus, *Lat. Accimei*, 5499.  
 Articus, Arctic pole, north pole, 29.  
 Artoyes, Artois, 5659.  
 Arystes (Arestes), *proper name*, 1225. See Arestes.  
 Arystotill, Aristotle, 623, 637. See Aristotil.  
 Arjes, *pr. s. impers. it terrifies me*, I am afraid, 537; Arjed, *pp. terrified*, afraid, 3606, 3873. A.S. *eargian*, to be inert. See Arghes.  
 As, *conj. as*, 11, 14, 17, 18, 24, &c.; as if, 193, 225, 368, 421, 504, 506, 558, &c.; like, 1063, 1152, 1159, 3796; As . . . as, as . . . so, 2811, 2812.  
 As, *as rel. pron. that, which*, 1783.  
 As (Asse), *s. ass*, 2708.  
 Asaile (Assaylle), *ger. to assail*, 1296; Asaille, 3923; Asailes (Assaylez), *pr. s. assails*, 2038; (Assalez), 1029. See Assaile.  
 A-saile (A-sawte), *s. assault*, attack, 924. See Asaute.

- Asald, *s.* ass, little ass, 1928. See below. O. Northumb. *asal*, *asald*, Matt. xviii. 6; xxi. 2.
- Asaleny (Aslyn), *s.* little ass, 1705. See above.
- A-saute, *s.* assault, attack, 2550; (Asawte), 924. See Asaile.
- A-say, *s.* trial, 5370.
- Ascalioun, Ascalon, 5675. See Ascoiloyrn.
- Ascendis (Ascendez), *pr. s.* ascends, climbs up, 1377; (Assendes), mounts, 767; Ascendis (Ascenden), *pr. pl.* 1434; (Ascenden), 1398; (Ascendyn), 1030; Ascendid, *pt. pl.* 1030, 1398.
- A-schapid, *pr. s.* escaped, 2987.
- Ascoiloyrn (Ascolon), Ascalon, 1116. See Ascalioun.
- Ascres, *pl.* newts, lizards, 4198. M.E. *ask*, *arsk*; see Mätzner.
- Ascryes, *pr. pl.* cry out to, challenge, demand of (them), 5215. Cf. O.F. *escrier*; see *ascrien* in Mätzner.
- A-semblis, *pr. s.* assembles, 2219; (Assembles), gathers, 762; (Assemblez), 923; Assembles (Assemblez), 1470; A-sembild (Assembled), *pt. s.* assembled, encountered, 783; A-sembles (Assembles), *imp. pl.* gather together, 2527. See Assemblis.
- A-sent, *pr. pl.* 1 *p.* assent, 4262; Asentis (Assent), *pr. pl.* 1510.
- A-sewis, *pr. pl.* agree, suit, 4254.
- A-seȝe, *imp. s.* sit, 5182. O.F. *asseoir*, from Lat. *assidere*.
- Asie (Asy), Asia, 1917, 2114. See Aysy.
- Asid, *pp.* constructed, 5087. Lat. text, *constructa*. O.F. *assis*, *pp.* of *asseoir*, 'to set, settle'; Cot. See Assisid.
- Askis, *pr. s.* asks, 670; (Askez), 1672, 1701; asks for, 3612; requires, 1500, 4265, 4621 (see note to this line); Askis (Asken), *pr. pl.* seek, 727; ask, 888; Askid (Askyd), *pt. pl.* asked, 2254; (Asked), 888; Aske, *imp. s.* ask thou, 1670, 1685.
- Askis, *pl.* ashes, 4180.
- Ask yng (Askyns = askyngs, *pl.*), *s.* request, 3173; (Asking), enquiry (*a false reading*), 732.
- (Aslakes), *pr. s.* ceases, 857. Lit. 'grows slack.'
- Asouerance, *s.* assurance, 5001.
- Asperly, *adv.* fiercely, 2039, 3041; quickly, eagerly, 2672; sharply, roughly, severely, 1088, 3939; fiercely, swiftly, 3001.
- Assaile (Asayle), *ger.* to assault, 1380; Assaill (Assaylle), to assail, 1162. See Asaile.
- Asselis, *pr. s.* seals up, 424.
- Assemblis, *pr. pl.* collect, re-unite, 4161; (Assembled, *pt. pl.*), encounter, 1387; Assemblid on, *pt. pl.* gathered against, attacked, 4134. See Asemblis.
- Assemy, 4449. Probably a false reading; the alliteration requires a word beginning with *s*, and *oure* gives no sense. For *oure assemy* read *ȝoure semly* (i.e. your seemly).
- Assie, Asia, 5659.
- Assisid, *pp.* made of a certain size, sized, 5653. See Assisid.
- Asskis, *pr. pl.* 2 *p.* beseech, 4467. See Askis.
- Astate, *s.* estate, dignity, rank, condition, 723, 3353, *p.* 279, l. 11.
- Astralabus, *pl.* astrolabes, 128. (MS. Astralalus.)
- Asuris (Assurys), 2 *pr. s.* trustest, art secure, 2736; Asurid (Assuryd), *pt. s. refl.* assured himself, felt confident, 2568.
- A-swage (Swage), *v.* be assuaged, 750.
- Asy. See Afle, Asie.
- Asye, Asia, 3765. See Asie, Assie.
- At, *prep.* at, 71, 132, 178, 5364; of, 1618; of, from, 766\*, 1670, 2715, 4467; by, 757\*; to, suitably with, 4208; against, 3164; At hand, 81. See Att.
- At, *pron.* which, that, 927; who, 1045, 1171; that which, 636; whom, 1059, 1216; that, 10, 56, 68; *conj.* that, 100, 266, 1480. Most common as a relative pronoun, as in 152, 161, &c. Used like mod. E. *that*. See Pat.
- At, to (as sign of gerund), 872, 4294.



- At, 3559; *read* Al, i.e. all.  
 At flee; see At-flee.  
 A-tamed (Attamyd), *pp.* pierced, 3042. See Gloss. to Piers Plowman.  
 At anes (At anez), at once, 784.  
 Atell, *for* Athell, *adj.* noble, 1088, 1792, 2030. Only in the Dublin MS. See Athel.  
 Atenes (Athens), Athens, 2343; Ateynes, 2446; Atenenys (Athenez), 2391. See Athenes.  
 Ateynes, *pr. s. refl.* attains, reaches, 2315.  
 At-flee, *v.* flee away, pass away (from you), be dismissed, 988. It is better to take *atflee* as one word. A.S. *ætfléon*. See *atfleon* in Mätzner.  
 Athe, *s. oath*, 3770; Athis, *pl.* 3437.  
 Athel, *adj.* noble, 242; Athill, 17, 168, 306, 404, 620, 849, 1994, 3145; (Athell), 810, 996, 1577, 1597; (Atell), 1831; Athil, excellent, 3341; Athil (Athell), 701, 909, 1134; Athill (Athell), *adj. as sb.* noble one, 681, 837, 964; noble king, 3204; Athils (Hatels), *pl.* nobles, 1433; (Athelles), 1474; (Athellys), 1445; (Athells), 2225. A.S. *æþel*. See Atell.  
 Athelest, *adj. superl.* noblest, 40, 4571; Athelist, 3757; Athilest, 5104.  
 (Athelfullest), *adj.* noblest, 1606.  
 Athenes (Athens), Athens, 2419; (Atthenys), 2322; Athenas, 2312. See Atenes.  
 (Ather); see Aiper.  
 Apire (Ather), *adj.* either, each, 3023. See Aiper.  
 Atired (Attyred), *pt. s.* attired, decked, 1525; (Atyred), *pt. pl.* 2427; A-tired, *pp.* 4904; (Attyred), 1628; (Atired), 1294, 1633. See Atyres.  
 (Att), *prep.* at, 964.  
 (Att), *conj.* so that, 1527.  
 (Attachyd), *pp.* attached, 2580.  
 Attamyd; see Atamed.  
 (Attellys), *pr. s. refl.* advances, 2315; (Attelyt), 1 *pt. s.* intended, 1819; (Attelland), *pres. pt.* devising, expecting, 3191. See
- Etlit. Icel. *ætla*, to think, intend.  
 Atter, *s.* poison, 1390. A.S. *átor*.  
 Atterand, *pres. pt.* poisoning, i.e. poisonous, 4198. See above.  
 (Atthill), *miswritten for* Attell, 1 *pr. s.* direct, 2322. See Attellys.  
 Attrid (Atterd), *adj.* poisoned, 2455. See Atter.  
 At-wendis, *pr. s.* leaves, escapes, goes away from, 3247. Cf. A.S. *ætwindan*, to flee away, escape.  
 At-wynde, *pr. s. subj.* may depart, 1949. A.S. *ætwindan*.  
 Atyres, *pr. s.* attires, 1294; Atyred, *pp.* adorned, made, 3343. See Atired.  
 Aufrike, Africa, 5660; Auffrik, 4395. (*For* Au = Av-, see under Av-.)  
 Augard (Awgerd), *adj.* proud, or excellent, 2343. This word is the same as *ogart*, proud, in Halliwell, and allied to *overgart*, excessive, in Stratmann. I suppose the orig. sense to be merely 'extreme'; it stands probably for *of-gart*, where *gart* is the *pp.* of *gar*, to make. Cf. Swed. *afgjord*, *pp.* of *afgöra*, to settle; Dan. *afgjort*, *pp.* of *afgjøre*, to finish; Norw. *avgjord*. See Augird.  
 (Aughfulest), most terrible, 1062.  
 Augird (Awgerly), *adv.* exceedingly, 772. See Augard, Augirly.  
 Augirly, *adv.* extremely, excessively, 661; (Awgardly), 717; (Awgerdly), 972; (Augerly), entirely, wholly, 2987; Augrily (Augerdly), extremely, 3252; (Augerdly), proudly, 1726; severely, greatly, 1277; fiercely, 1401; Augrely (Awgerdly), extremely, 1342. See above.  
 August, August, 3789.  
 Auncestours, *pl.* ancestors, 4369.  
 Auncient, *adj.* ancient, 1002; Aunceant, old, 2391.  
 Aungell, *s.* angel, 4529, 5258; (Angell), 1487, 1872, 2893; Aungels (Angels), *pl.* angels, 1556; figures of angels, 4913; *gen.* Aung[e]ls (Angels), angel's, 2863.  
 Aunkirs (Ankers), *pl.* anchors, 1372.

- (Aunswer), *s.* answer, 751. See Answer.
- Aunter, *s.* adventure, 3204; peril, 538; (Awentur), mischance, 1109; Auntir, adventure, 5189; Aunter, (*pl.* Aunters), adventure, case, 693; Auntirs (Aunters), *pl.* adventures, 1278; Auntours, 3470, 5618; (Aunturs), 3204. See Auters.
- Authere (Owder), *conj.* either, 1180.
- Authly, *adv.* (?) 3234. It seems to mean 'sadly'; cf. Icel. *auðr*, void, desolate.
- Autour, author, 4720.
- Autere, *s.* altar, 1572.
- A-vaies, *pr. s.* informs, 1508; Avaied, *pp.* informed, made aware, 116; If þou avaiied worthe, if thou art (well) informed, if you take heed, 103. O.F. *aveier*, *avoier*, to set on the road, guide, inform; Godefroy, p. 537.
- A-vaile, 2 *pr. s.* subj. prevail (to be), 1880.
- A-vaile (Avale), *imp. s.* lower, diminish, 2836. O.F. *avaler*.
- A-vanced (Auancyd), *pp.* advanced, exalted, 2096; Auancet, *pp.* advanced, chief, 2391; A-vansid, *pp.* advanced, exalted, 389; (Auancet), *pp.* advanced in years, 1002; (Auancett), *pp.* advanced, honoured, 2200; A-vaunced, *pp.* advanced, rendered prosperous, 3773; (Avaunsyd), exalted, 2755.
- Auaunt, *shortened form of* Auenaut, courteous, 2387. O.F. *avenant*, spelt *advenant* in Cotgrave. See the context; and see *Aveaunt* in Halliwell.
- (Avaunte), *imp. s.* vaunt, 2713.
- A-ventour (Aventur), *s.* mishap, 2889.
- A-verous, *adj.* avaricious, 4512.
- A-vised (Avyse), *imp. s.* consider, 1767; *imp. pl.* 4410; A-visis (Awysez), *pr. s.* reads over, 2066; Avises him, considers with himself, 4000; Him a-visis, 3624. See Avyses.
- Auoure, *s.* property, wealth, 4668. O.F. *avoir*.
- A-vow (A-wowe), *s.* vow, 2605.
- A-vowtrere, *s.* adulterer, 4414.
- A-vowtri, *s.* adultery, 4329.
- Avyn, *adj.* own, 188. See Awen.
- Auyrice, *s.* avarice, 4327.
- Avyses, *pr. s.* perceives, 4926; Avysis, beholds, 3234; (Visys), *pr. s.* notices, takes notice of, 2959; (Avysed), *pt. s.* perceived, 753\*; Avysid him, looked, 116. See Avise.
- A-wai, *adv.* away, 865; Away, 508.
- Awe, *pt. s.* behoved, 868. (Properly *pr. s.*) A.S. *āh*. See Awght.
- Awen, *adj.* own, 364, 420, 623, 708, 3659; (Awne), 873, 3178.
- Awen (Awne), *adj.* one, 2569. (A curious spelling; confused with *awen* = own.)
- Awgerd, Awgerdly, &c.; see Aug-. (Awglit), eight, 764.\* See A3t.
- (Awght), *pt. s.* behoved, 868. A.S. *āhte*, *pt. t. of āh*. See Awe, A3e.
- Awne, *adj.* own, 4497; also in 739\*, 759\*, 777\*, 800\*, 814.\* See Awen.
- (Awnterez), *pl.* adventures, 1011. See Aunter.
- A-wondres, *pr. s.* surprises, 4832; *refl.* is amazed, 4047; Awondird, *pp.* astonished, 302.
- Awyn, *adj.* own, 79, 168, 210, 219; (Awne), 3236. See Awen.
- Ax, *s.* axe, 1400.
- Ay, *adv.* ever, 265, 298, 972, 994, &c.; Ay elike, always alike, 536, 2046. See Ai, Aye.
- (Ayaynez), *prep.* against, 829.\*
- Aydeus (*for* Aide deus), God aid (me), 729. Adapted from O.F. *aide deus*.
- (Aydom), *adj.* 2307. See Ayndain.
- Aye, *adv.* continually, 3438. See Ay.
- Aykeywordly, (Aukwardly), *adv.* indirectly, ambiguously, 2183.
- Ayndain, *adj.* 2307. The Dublin MS. has *aydom*. These forms point to a reading *aydand*, i.e. aiding, assisting, hence favourable, which seems to be the sense required. See the note. Cf. F. *aidant*, helping; *Dieu aidant*, if God help me; Cotgrave.

- Ayre, *s.* heir, 588. See Aire.  
 (Ayres), *pr. s.* goes, 832\*; (Ayrez), 2114; (Ayres hym), goes, 749; (Ayres), *imp. pl.* go ye, 889. See Aires.  
 Aysy (Asy), Asia, 1630. See Asie.  
 Aythire, *pron.* either, each, 4500; (Ather), 2043; Aythir, 4391; (Ather), either, 1583.  
 (Ay-whare), *adv.* everywhere, 781.\*  
 A3ayne (Ayayn), *adv.* again, back again, 1393, 3240.  
 A3e, *s.* awe, terror, danger, 2987; (Aw), awe, 1459; Artaxenses a3e, fear of Artaxerxes, 169.  
 A3e, *pr. s.* ought (lit. owes), 3370; ought (to be), 4245; (Aght, *pt. s.*), 3370; (Awght, *pt. s.*), it becomes (him), 1820; (Aught, *pt. s.*), it becomes, 1928. A.S. *áh*.  
 A3e (Awe), *pr. pl.* 2 *p.* owe, 2763; *pr. s.* owns, rules over, 4712. A.S. *áh*.  
 A3ed, *pp.* terrified, lit. awed, 3635. See A3e, *sb*.  
 A3efullest, *adj. superl.* awefullest, most terrible, 16.  
 A3t (Awght), *pt. s. impers.* ought (for him to do), 717; owed, 918; A3t, possessed, 2125; (Aught), 2 *pt. pl.* did possess, 2292; A3te, *pt. s.* owned, possessed, 18. A.S. *áhte*. See Awght.  
 A3t, *num.* eight, 3462, 3930.  
 A3tand, *ord.* eighth, 3830; A3tent, 4836.  
 A3te, *s.* possession, valuable property, hence, present, 5134. Lowl. Sc. *aucht*; A.S. *éht*.  
 Bab, *s.* babe; The bab with to play = for the babe to play with, 2500; Babbis, *pl.* babes, 1772.  
 Babilon, Babylon, 1683; (Babyloyne), 2597; Babiloun, 5627; Babiloyn, 5611.  
 (Babyst), *error for* Bayst, 2146. See Baise.  
 Bac (Bake), *s.* back, 932; Backis, *pl.* 3894.  
 Bachelere, *s.* young knight, 4209, 4778; (Bachelers, *pl.*), 1594; Bachelers, *pl.* bachelors, young knights, novices in arms, 155, 974, 1003, 1797, 2088; Bachelars, 4111.  
 Backes, *pl.* bats, 3936. "Bakke, *respertilio*"; Prompt. Parv.  
 Bactry, Bactria, 3950.  
 Bacus, *s.* Bacchus, 4525.  
 Bad, *pt. s.* bade, 2294, 3138, 3458; (Bade), 1667; Badd, 5540; Bad, *pt. pl.* 2195; (Byde), *pt. pl.* 2285.  
 Baddis (Baddez), *pl.* cats, 1763. Cf. Sc. *badrans*, a cat; the game called cat is also called *bad* (see Halliwell).  
 Bade, *pt. s.* abode, 4982; remained, waited, 811\*; *pt. pl.* waited, abode, 5550.  
 Bade (Bode), *s.* delay, tarrying, 2908, 2951, 5204.  
 (Badly), *adv.* badly, 1782. A corrupt reading; see Badrich.  
 Badriche, *s.* foolish one (?), 1782. It seems to be a vocative case. Cf. A.S. *wædling*, an effeminate person; *badling*, a worthless person (Halliwell).  
 Bages, *pl.* badges, 4181.  
 Baggis, *pl.* bags, 123.  
 Baies (Bays), *pr. s.* bays, barks, 1805.  
 Bailys (Bailzais), *pl.* bailiffs, 2294.  
 Baise, *imp. pl.* abase (yourselves), be dismayed, 4156; Baiste (Babyst), *pt. s.* humbled, 2146; Baist (Bassyd), *pp.* abashed, cast down, 2567; (Basyt), humbled, 2447. See Bayst.  
 Baisens, *pl.* basins, 5278.  
 Baistell (Bastell), *s.* building, fort, tower, 1161, 1306, 1339, 1398, 1422; Baistall, 1333. O.F. *bastille*, from *bastir*, to build.  
 Baisting, *s.* boasting, 2016.  
 Baitis, *pr. s.* 2 *p.* dost bait, dost provoke, 5355.  
 Bak, *s.* back, 928; Bake, 124, 218, 711, 732\*, 3054, 3602; Bakis (Bakkez), *pl.* backs, 2601.  
 Bakin, *pp.* baked, 4435.  
 Bakward (Bakeward), *adv.* backward, 1408.  
 Balaan, *proper name*, 1293, 1430, 1442; Balaa[n], 1301, 1312.  
 Balan, *s.* (perhaps) a kind of hempen

- cloth, 4851. Lat. text—'subtilares lineos.' Cf. O.F. *ballin*, a kind of hempen cloth (Godefroy); Bret. *ballin*, *pallin*, a linen quilt, a winnowing-cloth. See Bole. "*Baullin*, pièce de toile grossière que l'on étend sur le sol quand on vente le blé;" Godefroy.
- Bald, *adj.* bold, 157, 289, 761\*, 915, 1138, 1263, 1394, 1442; a bold man, 1228.
- Baldest, *adj. superl.* boldest, 764.
- Baldire (Balder), *adv.* more boldly, 1825.
- Baldis, *pr. s.* encouragements, 5447; (Beldez), 1018. Cf. A.S. *byldan*.
- Baldly, *adv.* boldly, 969.
- Baldnes, *s.* boldness, 2991.
- Bale, *s.* bale, calamity, 396; sorrow, harm, injury, 1146, 1974; ill, evil, 4194, 4620; sorrow, 2053; illness, 5582; misfortune, 2444; evil fate, 3248; Bales, *pl.* dangers, 5625.
- Bale, *s.* fire, blaze, 2231. A.S. *bdl*.
- Bale-fyre, *s.* pyre, fire for burning a man, funeral pile, 562, 2658. See above.
- Balefull, *adj.* destructive, 4858.
- Balefully, *adv.* sorrowfully, 155.
- Bale-nakid, *adj.* belly-naked, naked down to the belly, hence, entirely naked, 4125. See *Belly-naked* in Halliwell.
- Balgh, *adj.* swelling out, full in shape, 4923. Cf. A.S. *belgan*: and see examples in Mätzner, *s. v.* *balz*.
- Ball (Bale), *s.* ball, 1898, 1929; (Balle), 1712.
- Banars (Banerys), *pl.* banners, 3027; (Baners), 774. See Baners.
- (Band), *pt. s.* bound, tied, 1371, 2903.
- Band, *s.* bond, 786\*; Bande (Bandes, *pl.*), imprisonment, 3104; Bands, *pl.* bonds, 5344; (Bandez), 769.\*
- Bane, *s.* slayer, 5376; murderer, 969; Banes, *pl.* murderers, 3248, 3429. Icel. *bani*.
- Baners, *pl.* banners, 781, 4181; (*miswritten* Baners), 1563. See Banir, Banars.
- Banes, *pl.* bones, 773\*, 3308.
- Banir, banner, 2088.
- Banke, *s.* bank, 5243; (Bank), low hill, 2441.
- Banned, *pt. s.* cursed, 157.
- Barante (Baraynte), *s.* barrenness, 894. See Barayn.
- Baratour, *s.* bold fighter, hero, warrior, 2476, 2825, 2991, 3320, 4786; Barotour, 5043; Barratour, 4001; Baratours, *pl.* fighters, 830\*, 1138, 2593, 3502, 3877; Baratorus (Baratours), 2159; (Barotours), 1799. O.F. *barateour*, from *barat*, confusion, strife.
- Baratris, *pl.* conflicts, 4503. *Error for* Baratis, *pl. of* Barat, confusion, strife. See Baret.
- Barayn (Baren), *adj.* barren, 1199.
- Barbare (Barberon), *adj.* barbarous, barbarian, 991; Barbarine (Barberon), 2418; Barbres, *pl.* barbarians, 3499, 3611; (Barbers), 2488; (Barbrys), 2650; (Barbrens), 2606; Barbers (Barbres), 2534. See Barbryn.
- Barbis (Barbes), *pl.* barbs of arrows, 2455.
- Bar-bryn (Barberen), *adj.* barbarian, 2919; Barbryne (Barbaryn), 3051; Barbrene, 3586; Barbyne (Barbren), 2626; Barbrins, *gen. pl.* barbarians', 5311. See Barbare.
- Bare, *s.* boar, 4523, 4746; Bares, *gen.* 5436; Bare, *gen.* 610.
- Bare, *pt. s.* bore, pushed along, 711; (Bare), bare, 974; *pt. pl.* bore, 1408; (Borne), carried, 1570.
- Bare, *adj.* bare, 1339, 2246, 3842. (Bare), *s.* bar (of justice), 758.\*
- Barely, *adv.* nearly, 894.
- Baret, *s.* strife, debate, hardship, 4620; trouble, 527; (Barettes), attacks, 2137. O.F. *barat*, *baret*, confusion.
- Barge, *s.* barge, raft, 4206; Bargis, 66, 5462; (Bargez), 1305, 2457.
- Barke, *s.* bark (of a tree), 4975.
- Barme, *s.* brim, edge, verge, 4812. Icel. *barmr*, brim, edge.
- Barneken, barbican, the outermost defence of a fortified town or castle, 1301. Lowland Sc. *barmkin*. See Barme.
- Barne, *s.* bairn, child, 396, 517, 585, 597, 1559, 1712, 1927, 3320, 4117;

- young man, 811\*; Barnes, *pl.* children, 2717, 4046; (Bernes), 1473; (Barnez), 1018.
- (Baron), *s.* baron, 761\*; Barons, *pl.* 155, 974, 1003, 2159. See Beron.
- Baronage, baronage, assembly of barons, 984.
- Barotour, Barratour; see Baratour.
- Barrayne, *adj.* barren, 3582. See Barayn.
- (Barre), *s.* enclosure formed by bars, 783\*; (Barrez), *pl.* bars, 1081.
- Barrere (Barre), *s.* barrier, 2903; Barrers, *pl.* barriers, 3681; (Barres), 2229.
- Barris, *pr. s.* bars; Barris (Barres) to, bars to, fastens up, 1312; Barris, *pr. pl.* (Barred, *pt. pl.*) bar, fasten, 2133; Barred, *pp.* 1080.
- (Barslett), *s.* a kind of hound, 786.\* Barslett in band = hound in a leash. See *Barsletys* and *Bercelettus* in Halliwell.
- Bary, *error for* Bacy, Bacchus, 4506.
- Basenet, basnet, helmet, 4002; Basinettis (Basynettes), *pl.* 2457; cf. 787.
- Basilisk, *s.* basilisk, 4837.
- Bast, the inner bark of a tree, 4981; Als bare as a bast (baste), as bare as a tree with only its inner bark left, 1339 (cf. l. 4981).
- (Basyng), *s.* abasement, attempt to put down, 2016. *Short for* Abasyng.
- Bataillid (Bateld), *pp.* embattled, 1152.
- Bataill, *s.* (1) battle, 296, 3643; (Batell), 999, 1879, 1891, 2047; (Batele), 1808; Bataile, battle, war, 650; Batall, 2374; Bataills, *pl.* 4023; (2) Bataill (Batell), battalion, body of troops, 768, 783; Batails, *pl.* battalions, 93, 3037. See Batell.
- Bataill-axes, *pl.* battle-axes, 4084.
- Batary, *prop. name*, 93.
- Bate, *ger.* to debate, to fight, contend, 4009, 4553.
- Bate (Bates, *pl.*), debate, conflict, 2615.
- Bate, *s.* stick, piece of wood, lit. bat, 1340. See Battis.
- Batell, *s.* battle, 2908, 830\*; Batill, 137. See Bataill.
- Bath, *adj.* both, 4046; (Both), 1983, 2678; Bathe, 88, 177, 5203; (Bath), 769, 1422, 1584; *pe* bath, both of them, 2927; Bathe, *adv.* also, 492.
- Bathe, *ger.* to bathe (Bathyd, *pp.*), 2542.
- Bathire, *adj.* both, 3946. Icel. *báðir*, both.
- Batill; see Bataill, Batell.
- Batis (Botez), *pl.* boats, 1305.
- Batis, *imp. pl.* abate, lower, 4156.
- Batriane, Bactria, 3782; Batran, 2673; Battri (Battrye), 3106.
- Battis, *pl.* lumps, large pieces, 4166. Cf. *brick-bat*. See Bate.
- Bawdkyns (Bawdkens), *pl.* rich cloths, expensive pieces of cloth, 1514. O.F. *baudequin*, Ital. *balzacchino*, from Ital. *Baldacco*, Bagdad.
- Bawers, *pl.* archers; Baratours bawers, warrior-archers, 3960. Lit. 'bowers', bow-men.
- Bawme, *s.* balm, balsam, 4380, 4869, 4975.
- Bawnand, *pres. part.* 4908. The sense is clearly 'abiding' or 'dwelling'; prob. for *bownand*, as if from M.E. *bounen*, to get ready; but used in the sense of the orig. Icel. verb *búa*, to dwell, abide.
- Baxe, a country, 5668.
- Bayne, *adj.* prompt, ready, 323. Icel. *beinn*.
- Bayon, Bayonne, 5668.
- Bayst, *pt. s.* cast down, made abashed, 466. See Baise.
- Be, *v.* to be, 5, 118, 159, 1476, &c.; *ger.* 179, 180, 204; Sall be, shall be, 178; Be, *pr. s. subj.* 249, 322; may be, 308; whether it be, 257; 2 *pr. s. subj.* 844\*; *pr. pl. subj.* 106, 2076; *imp. s.* be thou, 242; Be þis = if this be, 2549. See Bee.
- Be, *prep.* by, 58, 206, 240, 443, 617, 2084; by aid of, 714; beside, close to, 3940; with respect to, 4410; through, 3792. See Bi.
- Be, *conj.* by the time that, 3900, 5163.

- Be now, by now, by this time, 3825.  
 Be þis (pat), by this (that) time, 1313.  
 Be tyme, betimes, 1746.  
 Bebbing, *s.* bibbing, drinking, 4506.  
 Be-bled (To-bled), *pp.* covered with blood, 1274.  
 Bebricans, the Bebrician's, 5333.  
 Bebrik, *adj.* Bebrician, 5178, 5214.  
 Bebrike, Bebricia, 5151.  
 Be-cause, *conj.* because, 230. See Bicause.  
 Becomen, *pp.* gone, 166.  
 Bed, *s.* bed, 381; (Bede), 1506; Beddis, *pl.* 5267; (Beddes), 1763.  
 Beddels (Bedels), *pl.* heralds, lit. beadles, 2285, 2294.  
 Bede, *v.* bid, 2860; Bedis, *pr. s.* bids, commands, 3565; Beds, 5462; Bedis (Biddez), 1473, 1668, 1906; Bedis (Byddes), *pr. s.* bids, 1492, 3137; (Biddes), 2749; Bedis, *pr. s.* offers, 3115; Bedis þam þe bake, offers them his back, takes to flight, 3054; Bede, *pr. pl.* 1 *p.* offer, 4289; Bedis (Bydes), *pr. pl.* bid, advise, 2658; Bed, 1 *pt. s.* (Byd, 1 *pr. s.*) bade, 2479; Bede, *pt. s.* bade, 811\*, 3319; Bed, *pt. s.* offered, 3557; (Badde), offered, 1664; Bed hem (bidden þaim) þe bake, took (taken) to flight, 1944; Beden, *pp.* bidden, 71.  
 Bedell, *adj.* sharp, 4096. Evidently a variant of M.E. *bitel*, biting, sharp, Ormulum, 10074; Layamon, vol. ii. p. 395; vol. iii. p. 73.  
 Bedene, *adv.* forthwith, at once, quickly, 474, 1905, 2100, 2656, 3367, 4056, 4113, 4225; continually, 4788; All bedene, all at once, 3743. See All-bedene.  
 Beding, *s.* bidding, 3529; Bedinge, 4778.  
 Bedis, *pr. s.* requires, asks, 4537; (Bedes), prays, 1482; Bede (Bid), 1 *pr. pl.* pray, ask, 1683.  
 Bedis, *pl.* prayers, 4670.  
 Bedsted, *s.* place for a bed, 373.  
 Bedwyn, *name*, 5498.  
 Bee, *v.* be, 3793; (Be), *ger.* to be, 2092; Bees, *pr. s.* used as future, will be, shall be, 174, 1899, 1991, 4781; (Beys), 892; will be, can be, 3378; Bees (Be), *imp. pl.* 2 *p.* be ye, 2604; (Beys), 874, 2435; used for the sing., 1355. And see Be.  
 Beeris, error for Heeris (as shewn by the alliteration), *pl.* armies, hosts, 5673.  
 Bees, *pl.* ornaments, jewels, chains (of gold), 1548, 2337, 5274; (Beys), 3225. A.S. *béah*. In l. 5472, *bees* signifies ornaments of gold; and as gold is, in poetry, said to be *red*, the author has been led by alliteration to describe the *bees* as blood-red.  
 Beet, *ger.* to kindle, 3918. A.S. *bétan*.  
 Beete, *ger.* beat out, forge, 3626.  
 Befall, *v.* happen, 251, 433; (Befalle), 1641.  
 Before, *prep.* before, 1146, 2295, 2303; Befor, 272, 1900, 3973; *adv.* before, beforehand, 76, 736\*, 798\*, 1240; Be-for (Before), *conj.* before, 2290; Here-before (before), ere now, 721.  
 Be-forne, *prep.* before, 361, 3769, Beforn, 4862; Beforne (Before), 1321, 1598; (Aforne), 2964.  
 Be-forne, *adv.* before, 2262, 2274; in front, 1561.  
 Begane, *pp.* adorned, 4911. A.S. *be-gán*, *pp.* of *be-gán*, to go round.  
 Begin (Begyn), *v.* begin, 2272; (Began), *pt. pl.* 2044. See Begyn.  
 Be-glouird, *pt. s.* deceived, beguiled, lit. flattered, 417. See *glavren* in Stratmann.  
 Begyle, *ger.* to beguile, 415; Begylid, *pt. s.* 390.  
 Begyn, *ger.* to begin, 324; Begynnes (Begynnez), *pr. s.* 1026; Begynnys, *pr. s.* 5451; *pr. pl.* 2044.  
 Be-hald, *ger.* to behold, 1063; (Behold), 2270; Behaldis, *pr. s.* (Beheld, *pt. s.*), looks, 1589; Behaldes (Bihaldyn), beholds, 2058; Behaldis, *pr. s.* beholds, 266; Behald, 2 *pr. pl.* 269; Beheld, *pt. s.* 42, 223, 264; Behald (Byhald), *imp. s.* 702, 740; Behalds, *imp. pl.* 4996.  
 Behalue, *s.* behalf, 5037.



- Be-heryd (Heret), *pp.* bepraised, 1616. A.S. *herian*.
- Behind (Byhynde), *adv.* behind, 1433; Be-hynde, 5437; Be-hynd (Byhynde), back, 1596.
- Be-houys, *pr. s.* it behoves, must needs, 172.
- Be-hynde; see Behind.
- Be-kend, *pp.* proclaimed, made known; Was þe croune be-kend, was proclaimed as the crown, i.e. as the chief, 3479. Or *croune* may be taken as dative; i.e. he was entrusted with the crown. *Be-kenne* is properly to commit to, entrust to.
- Bekirs (Bekers), *pr. s.* fights, 1297; Bekire (Bekeryng), *pr. pl.* skirmish, 1394. E. *bicker*.
- Be-knew, *pt. s.* acknowledged (to), 671; (Be-knewe), made known, 2872.
- (Beld), *pp.* built, 2256.
- (Beldez); see Baldis.
- Bele, *s.* belly, 394. See Bely.
- Belechiste, belly-chest, belly, 423.
- Beliue (Belyfe), *adv.* soon, 2209; Belyue (Beliue), 1511; Belife, 256, 731\*; Als belieue, as soon as possible, at once, 800\*; (Als belyue), 2183; (Als belyfe), 3181. See Belyue, Bilyue.
- Bellis (Bellys), *pl.* bells, 1563.
- Bely, *s.* belly, 4923. See Bele.
- Bely-blind, lit. belly-blind, extremely dark, 5648. See Bale-nakid.
- Belyme, *error for* Belyue, *adv.* quickly, 3761. See Belyue.
- Be-lyue, *adv.* quickly, soon, forthwith, 493, 670, 777, 2793; (Belyfe), 956, 1810, 2285; (Byliue), 1792; (Beliue), 1452; Belyfe, 190, 382, 621; (Belyue), 1051; (Beliue), 909; Belyf (Belyue), 1425; Als belyfe, as soon as possible, 710, 2404; (All belyue), very soon, 2404; As belyue, as quickly as possible, 3029, 5160.
- Bemes, *pl.* beams of light, 1543; (Bemys), sun-beams, 3225; Bemys, 62.
- Bemes, *pl.* beams, i.e. projecting horns (*but prob. an error for* Banes, bones, Lat. text, *ossa*), 5557. See the note.
- Bemys (Bemes), *pl.* trumpets, 1387, 2616; Bemen (Beeme), *gen. pl.* of trumpets, 3038. A.S. *býme*, *béme*, a trumpet.
- (Ben), 1 *pr. pl.* are, 1992.
- Ben, *for* Baned, i.e. boned, 1702. MS. D. *has baned correctly*.
- Benche; see Benke.
- Bend (Bynde), *ger.* to bend, soften, cause to give way, 2243; Bendis (Benden), *pr. pl.* bend, 2225; Bende, *pt. s.* bent down to, 1620; Bend up, *ger.* to wind up or draw up (their crossbows and bows), 2211.
- (Bene), *v.* to be, 1465; (Bene), *pr. pl.* are, 1008, 2155; Bene, *pp.* been, 233, 489, 596; (Ben), 1004, 1123.
- Bene (Beyne), *s.* (the value of a) bean, 2567.
- Benere (Bener), *adj. comp.* fitter, better, easier, 1715. See Bayne.
- Benignite, benignity, goodness, 4662.
- Benke, *s.* bench, seat, 625, 4236; Benkis, *pl.* 5271; Benkes (Benche), 2927.
- Bent, *s.* field, plain, grassy field, 830\*, 1328, 2053, 2825, 3027, 3126, 3170, 3502, 3557, 5151.
- Bent-fild (Feld), open field, field of battle (lit. field of bent-grass), 2786, 3139, 4764.
- Benyson, *s.* benison, blessing, 1692, 3308.
- Berand, *pres. part.* making a noise, roaring, 3903. See Bere, *s.*
- Berbrens, *pl.* barbarians, 5334; *gen.* 3572.
- Berd, beard, 320; Berdis, *pl.* 4117. See Bered.
- Berdles, *adj.* beardless, 2556.
- Bere, *v.* bear, carry, 124; bear (a child), 439; bear, 835, 1906; wear, 1715; Beres, *pr. s.* carries, 732\*; (Beres), bears, 1219; Beris, bears, 312; thrusts, 788; carries about, 3351; (Berez), thrusts, 932; Beris, 2 *pr. pl.* bear, 2120; Beris, *pr. pl.* 2 *p.*: Beris a-pon vs, bring upon us, accuse us of, 4663; Bere, *pt. s.* bore, 751\*.

- Bere, *s.* noise, din, 489, 496. See *bere* in Mätzner.
- Bere, *s.* bear, 4126; Beres, *pl.* 3849.
- Bered, beard, 122. See Berd.
- Beren (Berne), *s.* man, 3138. See Berin, Berne.
- Beres, *pr. s.* resounds (Beryd, *pt. s.*), 3038. See Bere, *s.* Berand.
- Beried (Beryd), *pp.* full of graves, lit. buried, 3139.
- Berin, *s.* man, 5240. See Berne.
- Bering, *s.* bearing, 4319.
- Beritinus, *proper name*, 1242; (Bertinus), 1263.
- Berne, *s.* man, hero, 107, 157, 402, 446, 547, 585, 761\*, 872, 999, 4110; (Bern), 787\*, 1328, 1349, 2172; Bernes, *pl.* men, warriors, 66, 489, 747\*, 781, 1146, 1214, 1220, 2517, 3432, 3572; husbands, 3741; (Bernes), 1037; Bernns (Bernes), 2214; (Bernes), 984; Bernys, 93, 296, 4125; (Bernes), 1307. A.S. *beorn*. See Beren, Berin.
- Berne-dure, *s.* barn-door; As a b., as great as a barn-door, 4852.
- Bernys (Bernes), *pl.* barns, 1763.
- Beron, baron, 1594; (Barouns), *pl.* 1594. See Baron.
- Berrers, *pl.* caskets (?), lit. bearers, things to carry things in (?), 5135. Lat. text, *loculos*, of which it is probably a translation.
- Bery, *s.* berry, 1349, 1357.
- Bery, *ger.* to hide, 4048; *imp. pl.* bury, 3308.
- Bery-bobis, *pl.* bunches of berries, 4809. See Bobb.
- Bery-buskis, *pl.* bushes bearing berries, 5239.
- Berynes, *s.* sepulchre, tomb, 5417, 5591. See the Troy-Book (E. E. T. S.).
- Berys, *pl.* bears, 3906. (But see the note.)
- Besan, Byffex, 3428.
- Besandis, *pl.* besants, i.e. coins of Byzantium, 124; (Besaundes), 3104; (Besandez), 1042; Besands (Besaundes), 1664, 1891; (Besaundes), 1906.
- Be-seche (Beseke), *pr. s.* 1 *p.* be-seech, 1097; Be-sechis (Besekes), *pr. pl.* 1 *p.* 1012. See Beseke.
- Beseke, 1 *pr. s.* 311, beseech, 801\*; (Besече), 3172; Besekis (Besেকে), *pr. s.* beseeches, 1075; Beseke (Besekyn), 1 *pr. pl.* beseech, 1947, 2699; *pr. pl.* 2352. See Besече.
- Besely, *adv.* quickly, 1944.
- Besemes (Besemys), *pr. s.* beseeems, befits, suits, 2944; *Be-semys*, 439.
- Besejis, *pr. s. refl.* considers, 751. A.S. *beséon*, to look about.
- Beside (Besyde), *prep.* beside, 1158. See Besyde.
- Besom, brush, 320. Du. *bezem*, A.S. *besma*.
- Be-sojt, *pt. s.* besought, 303, 515. See Beseke, Besече.
- Best, *adj.* best, 35, 807\*; Beste, 401.
- Best, *adv.* best, 160, 289, 373, 439.
- Bestaill, *s.* cattle, 1199. O.F. *bestaille*.
- Beste, *s.* beast, 3920, 5591; Best, 762\*, 4096, 4742, 5133, 5436; Bestis, *pl.* beasts, 280, 3493, 3572, 3593, 4118; animals, 5431; creatures, 3793; Bestes, beasts, 2765; Bestis (Bestes), 1207, 1532, 1540, 2853.
- (Beste), *error for* Boste, *s.* boasting, 2447. See the other MS.
- (Bestound), *for* Be stound, by the time, at this time, 1468.
- Besy, *adj.* busy, 595.
- Be-syde, *prep.* beside, 236, 1144; (Bysyde), against, with respect to, 875; Besyd (Besyde), beside, 2131. See Beside.
- Besyde (Bysyde), *adv.* near, 1694.
- Besyly, *adv.* busily, 2991; (Besely), 2934.
- Besynes, *s.* business, busy employment (about), 4670.
- Bet, *adv.* better, rather, 3494.
- Bet, *pp.* beaten, made, 3696; (Betyn), beaten, 2088.
- Be-takens (Betokyns), *pr. s.* betokens, foretells, 3000; Be-takend, *pt. s.* betokened, 613.
- Bete, *ger.* to beat down, 2246; Beten (Betyn), *pp.* beaten, made, 2927. See Betis, Bett.
- Be-tid, *pt. s.* betided, befel, hap-



- pened, 214, 524; (Betyd), 2366; Betid (Betyd), *pp.* happened, come to pass, 3279.
- Be-time (Be-tyme), *adv.* betimes, in time, 1768, 1978.
- Betis (Betes), *pr. s.* beats, 1223; (Betyd), beat, 1153. See Bete.
- Betokyns; see Be-takens.
- Bett, *pt. s.* kindled, 4167. A.S. *bétan*.
- Bett, *pp.* beaten, 1927; beaten (out), 5271. See Bete.
- Better, *adj.* 1102; *adv.* 106, 642.
- Be-twene, *prep.* between, 295, 317, 353, 660; (Bytwene), 797.
- Betwene, *adv.* between whiles, 1414; at times, 1299; (Bytwene), between, 1370.
- Betwyx, *prep.* betwixt, 4216.
- Beute (Bewte), *s.* beauty. In ll. 2739, 2919 it occurs in the unauthorised sense of 'kindness'; but it is probably an error for *bonte*, i. e. bounty, goodness, kindness.
- Bewenes, *error for Beweues, pr. pl.* cover (themselves with no proud clothing), put on (no proud clothing), 4337. See *biweven* in Mätzner, and *biweved* in Halliwell.
- Bewte, *s.* beauty, 224. See Beute.
- Bezonde, *adv.* beyond, i. e. on the other side of the stream, 3742.
- Bi, *prep.* by, 79; along, 1538. See Be.
- Bi-cause of, because of, 3273. See Because.
- Bicclid, *pp.* as *adj.* evil, 4839. See *bicched bones* in Chaucer.
- Biche, *s.* bitch, 5482.
- Bid, *pr. s.* 1 *p.* pray, 1782; Biddis (Biddez), *pr. s.* prays, asks, 2191.
- Bide, *ger.* to bide, wait, remain, stay, 137; (Byde), *v.* 2172; *ger.* 1689; (Abyde), *v.* 2180, 2195; Bidis (Bydes), *pr. s.* waits, 3054; endures, 527.
- Bide (Byd), 1 *pr. s.* bid, command, 3415; Bidd, 3562; Bidd (Bidde), *pr. s.* 1 *p.* I bid, require, 2337; Biddis, *pr. s.* bids, 5576; (Byddes), 1717, 2211.
- Big, *adj.* strong, 1295; Bigg, big, great, 4742, 5156; (Big), bold, 1808; Bigge, strong, stout, 5516; Big (Bigg), 915; Bige, big, strong, 4085.
- Bigg, *ger.* to build, 2256; Biggis, *pr. pl.* 2 *p.* build, 4580; Biggid, *pp.* built, 5415; (Bigged), 2215; (Bigget), 1366. Icel. *byggja*.
- Bigger, *adj.* stronger, 2340; Big-gire, bigger, 3903.
- Biggest, *adj.* strongest, 2159.
- Bigging, *s.* building, 4431; Bigging-is (Biggenges), buildings, towns, 2697. See Bigg.
- Bigly, *adv.* strongly, 1371; stoutly, 1138; largely, 423.
- Bignes, *s.* greatness, 105; arrogance, 1018.
- Bild, *s.* building, 1366, 4892, 5267; (Beld), building, 1297; town, 3106; (Belde), building, 1307, 2926; town, fort, 1080; (Beylde), 1338; Bilds, *pl.* buildings, 5603; Bildis (Beldes), 3137.
- Bilds, *pr. s.* builds, 5591; Bildis, *pr. s.* (Beldit, *pt. s.*), builds, pitches (tents), 2441; Bildis, *pr. pl.* build, hence dwell, 3741; Bi[l]-did (Bild), *pt. s.* built, 1366; Bildid, *pt. s.* set up, 2673; Bildid, *pt. pl.* built, pitched, 3950; Bildid, *pp.* built, 5417; Bild, *pp.* 1161.
- Bildid, *pt. pl.* became emboldened, took courage, 3884. (*Of* = some of.) A.S. *byldan*.
- Bilding, *s.* building, 4431.
- Bilding (Beldyng), *s.* emboldening, encouragement, 1797. See Bildid.
- Bill, *s.* bill, writing, 1827.
- Billis, *pl.* bills, beaks, 3696.
- Bilyue (Belyue), *adv.* soon, 2271.
- Bird, *s.* lady, 5214; Birdis, *pl.* women, ladies, 595, 3723, 4259. (Birde); see Bride.
- Bire (Bir), rush, force, 711. Lowl. Sc. *birr*, *beir*, force. Cf. Icel. *byrr*, a favouring wind.
- Birth, *s.* birth, 256, 289; child, 439, 526.
- Bischop, *s.* bishop, 1458, 1473, 1489; (Bishop), 1506, 1570, 1644, 1692; (Bischopp), 1598, 1664.
- Bise (Byse), *adj.* bice, blue colour, 1532. Often described as purple;

- see *bis* in Mätzner. O.F. *bisse*, Lat. *byssus*, Gk. *βύσσος*.
- Bitis, *pr. s.* bites, 224, 2070; (Bitez), 1805; Bitand, *pres. pt.* biting, sharp, 610, 788, 3197, 5558; Bitten, *pp.* 3934.
- Bitterly, *adv.* keenly, 1301; bitterly, 963.
- Blaa, *adj.* livid, 559. Icel. *blár*, Dan. *blaa*.
- Blade, *s.* blade of a razor, 122; Bladis, *pl.* blades, 5558.
- Blak, *adj.* black, 112, 606, 3920; Blake, 192, 562; (Blak), 1127.
- Blakenid, *pp.* blackened, 556.
- Blamed, 2 *pt. pl.* (Blaine, 2 *pr. pl.*), blamed, 2429.
- Blan, *pt. s.* ceased, 381, 1228. A.S. *blinnan*, *pt. t.* *blann*. See Blin.
- Blasand, *pres. part.* blazing, bright, ardent, 2871; (Blesand), 1563; (Blysnand), 1524, 2229.
- Blase, *s.* blaze; On blase, in a blaze, 559; (On a blasse), 2231.
- Blasenand, *pres. part.* blazing, shining, 5262. See Blasand, Blasyinand.
- Blasfeme, *ger.* to blaspheme, 2737.
- Blasfeme, *s.* blasphemy, 4663.
- Blason, *s.* large shield, 4852; Blasons, *pl.* shields of arms, 787.
- Blast (Blast), *s.* blast, noise, 3038; blowing, drawing, 3233; Blastis, *pl.* blasts, 3959, 4162.
- Blasyinand (Blasenand), *pres. pt.* blazing, shining, 3225. See Blasenand.
- Blawis, *pr. s.* blows, 4380; Blawen, *pp.* 5539; (Blayn), *pp.* 1757.
- Blazt, *adj.* bleached, white, 4925, 5482; (Blaught), 1559. Lowl. Sc. *blaucht*; cf. A.S. *bléced*, bleached, *pp.*
- Ble, *s.* countenance, mien, 466; Blee, 394. A.S. *bléo*.
- Beaut, *s.* coverlet of linen, 4912. O.F. *blialt*, *bliaut*, F. *blaude*, a rich vestment. Hence E. *blouse*.
- (Bleez), *pl.* appearance, 1548; see Ble. But doubtless an error for *bees*, as in MS. A.
- Blemysche, *ger.* to blemish, pollute, 4345; Blemysch, to harm, 4289; Blemyschid, *pt. s.* blemished, damaged, spoilt, 4181; Blemysched (Blemyst), *pt. pl.* blemished, harmed, tore, 2985; Blemest, *pt. pl.* blemished, (but here) killed, 3943; see note.
- Blend, *pp.* blended, compounded, 105.
- Blenkid, *pt. pl.* glanced, looked, peered, 5607. E. *blink*.
- Blesand, *pres. pt.* blazing, 604, 4230; shining, bright, 274. See Blasand.
- Blesenand, *pres. part.* blazing, 562; Blesynand (Blysnand), flashing, 802; Blesnand, gazing, staring, 4812; Blesenand, 4080. See *blusnen* in Mätzner; so also the M.E. *bluschen* means (1) to shine, (2) to gaze.
- Blew, *pt. pl.* (they) blew, 2616; Blewe (Blew), 1387.
- Blewe (Blew), *s.* blue, 1524.
- Blid (Baldit), *error for* Bild, *pp.* emboldened, encouraged, 1891. See Bildid, of which *Bild* is a shorter form.
- Blin, *v.* cease, 4167. See Blan, Blyn.
- Blinde, *ger.* to blind, deceive, 5234; Blindid (Blyndyd), *pt. s.* became dark, 3046.
- Blis, *s.* bliss, 244, 1489; (Blysse), mirth, joy, 1834, 2871.
- Blisch, *s.* glance; At a blisch, at a glance, in a moment, 606, 5435. See *blusch* in Mätzner; cf. E. 'at the first blush.'
- Blische (Blissh), *ger.* to look, 2053; Blischis, *pr. s.* looks, gazes, 5583; Blisches (Blyshys), looks, 1338; (Blyssesz), looks, 984; Blischis (Blissches) *vp.* looks up, 872; Blischis, *pr. pl.* look, 4189; Blischt, *pt. pl.* looked, glanced, 5550, 5607. See *bluschen* in Mätzner.
- Blisfulle, *adj.* happy, fair, 5415.
- Blissid, blessed, 5625.
- Blissing, *s.* blessing, 4573.
- Blithe, *adj.* blithe, 517; (Blyth), 1834.
- Blithis, *pr. s.* gladdens, 4624.
- Blithly, *adv.* blithely, 5607.
- Blode, *s.* blood, 640, 991; kindred, 585, 590; (Blod), 2053; Blod

- (Blode), 1966; Blod (Blude), kindred, 2739. See Blude.
- Blonk, *s.* horse, 749\*, 758\*. (Blonke), 1222, 2172; Blonke (Blonk), 767, 928; (Blonnke), 2974; (Blonkez), *pl.* horses, 791, 821\*; (Blonukes), 1247; Blonkis (Blonkes), 886, 2057. Orig. a *white* horse.
- Blopirs (Blothers), *pr. s.* gurgles, rattles, 970. Cf. *bloberond*, bubbling, gurgling, in the Troy-Book, l. 9462; and see *blother* in Halliwell.
- Blude (Blode), *s.* blood, 2048; race, 2418. See Blode.
- Blyckenand, *part. pres.* glittering, 604. See *blyknen*, to glitter, in Allit. Poems, ed. Morris.
- Blyn, *v.* cease, 2737; Blynnes, *pr. s.* 4160; Blynnes, *imp. pl.* desist, leave off, 4011; Blyns, cease, 5365. See Blin, Blan.
- Blydid, *pt. pl.* blinded, 3283.
- (Blysse), *s.* prosperity, 1827. See Blis.
- Blyssis, *pr. s.* looks, 789\*. See Blisch.
- Blyth, *adv.* blithely, gladly, 3768.
- Blythly, *adv.* gladly, 789\*, 3502.
- Bobance, *s.* arrogance, vanity, presumption, boasting, 2500; Bobans, 4252; (Bobas, for Bobans), 2016. "*Bobance*, insolencie, surquedrie, proud or presumptuous boasting;" Cotgrave.
- Bobb, *s.* bunch, cluster, 4777; Bobis, *pl.* 2852; (Bobbez), 2851. Lowl. Sc. *bob*, a bunch. Cf. 'a *bob* of grapy's;' Cath. Anglicum.
- Bocifalon, Bucephalus, 3613; Boci-filas (Bucifolon), 767.
- Bode; see Bade.
- Bode, *s.* command, message, 534, 2805, 3137. A.S. *bod*.
- Bodely, *adj.* bodily, 4289.
- Bodword, *s.* message, 48, 1458 (Bodworde), 1489. See Bode.
- Body, *s.* body, 1127, 1548; Bodi, 224; (Body), 870, 894, 1482; Bode, 192; Bode (Body), body, person, 2441; Bodis, *pl.* 3903; (Bodes), 2476.
- Boghe, *s.* bough, 4982.
- Boke, *s.* book, 597, 625; (Buk), 1207.
- Bole, *s.* trunk (of a tree), 5015; Boles, *pl.* trunks (of trees), 5902; Bolis (Bulesse), *pl.* boles, trunks, 2851. *Bulesse* in Dub. can hardly mean 'bullaces.' Cf. Icel. *bolr*, *bulr*, trunk.
- Bole, *s.* coarse linen, 4851. "*Baule*, pièce de toile grossière;" Godefroy. See Balan.
- (Boles), *gen.* bull's, 751\*.
- Boll, *s.* bowl, cup, 55, 112, 2938, 4537; a cluster, 5240; a boss, 5647. Cf. *Bolls*, ornamental knobs; Halliwell. In l. 5240, perhaps we should read *bob*; see Bobb.
- Bolne, *v.* swell, 394; Bolnes, 2 *pr. pl.* swell, fill out, 4435. Icel. *bólga*.
- Bolstirs (Bolsters), *pl.* cushions, 1569.
- Bonde, *s.* peasant, hence, uncouth man, 4741. Lat. *homo agrestis*. Icel. *bónði*.
- Bonden, *pp.* bound, 396, 3681; (Bondyn), 745\*.
- Bondis, *pl.* bounds, territories, 4320.
- Bonds, limits (Lat. *terminos*), 4850; bounds, 3782; territories, regions, 4085, 5090.
- Bondsward; To our bondsward, i.e. to our bounds-ward, towards our bounds, 3752. See Bondis.
- Bone, *s.* boon, prayer, request, 547, 1492, 1672.
- Bone, *s.* command (lit. petition), 3137. (But read *bode*, as in D.)
- Bonerte, *s.* goodness, 4662. Short for Debonerte.
- Borde (Burde), *s.* board, table, 842; (Borde), 1340; Borde, 1857; Bordis, *pl.* tables, 5271; (Burdez), 2927; boards (of the tablets), 640. See Damme-borde.
- Borden, *adj.* wooden, 3602.
- Bordren, error for Broden (Brouden), *pp.* ornamented, 787. A.S. *brogdan*, *pp.* of *bregdan*, to braid, &c.
- Borely, *adj.* burly, great, large, 4089, 5435, 5472, 5603; Borly, 5002. See Burly.
- Boris, *pr. s.* becomes dim, is surrounded by a *burr* or haze, 556. A haze round the sun or moon is called a *burr* in the Whitby dialect and in East Anglia.

Borliest, *adj. superl.* burliest, biggest, 4921. And see Borely.

Borne, *pp.* born, 517, 590, 597.

Borne, *s.* burn, stream, 3831.

Borowid (Borrowed), *pp.* borrowed, 1849.

Bos, *pr. s.* behoves; Bos haue, behoves to have, must needs have, 4526; Vs bos (buse) haue, it behoves us to have, 2503; Bos (Bus), it behoves, 2340; Bose, 1927; is necessary for, 3298; (Bus), it is necessary, 2309. See Bus, Bud.

Bosom, *s.* bosom, 274.

Bost, *ger.* to boast, 2737.

Bost, *s.* boasting, 2447, 3581, 4023.

Bot, *conj.* but, 53, 101, 146, 147, 159, 161, 2913, 3321; (Bott), 686, 793; unless, 2313. 3437, 4427; Bott, but, 844\*, 4225; (Bott), 686, 846; (Bod), 1623; Bot, only, 106, 139, 447, 5054, 5525; Bot if, unless, 13, 642, 1786; Bot and, but if, 3756; Bot out, except the whole of, save wholly, 5025.

(Bote), *pt. s.* bit, 2070.

Bote, *s.* use, advantage, 137; remedy, 160. A.S. *bót*.

Botez; see Batis.

Both; see Bath.

Bothom, *s.* bottom, 5532; (Bothom), 1306; (Bothuni), 712; Bothom, bottom (of the valley), 4808.

Botis, *pr. s. impers.* it profits, 208. See Bote, *s.*

Bott, *prep.* but, except, 2080; (Bot), 1328.

Boukis, *pl.* bodies (but see the note to l. 3944), 3946.

Boun (Bowne), *v. reflex.* get himself ready, 2878; Bounes, *pr. s. refl.* goes, 3030; (Bownez on), advances, 768; Bounes him (Bownes hym), *pr. s.* makes him ready, 1506; (Bownez hym on), 3030; Bound, *pt. pl.* made themselves ready, hence, journeyed, went, 1116. Formed from Boune, *pp.* and *adj.* See Bownes.

Bounde, *s.* orbit, circuit, 427 (see the note); Boundis, boundaries, lands, 3582.

Boune, *pp.* (*properly* ready to go),

gone, 218; *adj.* ready, 323, 534, 3037; (Bowne), 870, 999; Boun, 4206, 5540; Boun (Bowne), 2805. Icel. *búinn*, *pp.* of *búa*, to make ready.

Bounte, bounty, goodness, 2717.

Bourde, *s.* jest, 462.

Bourne, *s.* stream, burn, brook, 3741, 4081, 4304; (Burne), 2587, 2597; Bournes, *pl.* burns, water-courses, 3487. See Burne.

Bowe (Bow), *v.* bow, submit, 991; *ger.* to bend, 3551; Bow, *v.* pass, go, 2195; Bowes, *pr. s.* bows down, 423; turns, 1333; proceeds, 534; Bowis, *pr. s.* bends, comes, 4778; Bows, *pr. s.* goes, applies himself, 5363; Bowis (Bowes), *pr. s.* bows, 1672; (Bowys), bows down, 1692; (Bowe), bows down, is subservient, 2911; Bowis (Bowes), *pr. s.* directs himself, 2893; stoops, 1598; Bowes þarin, enters in, 4209; Bowis (Bownes), *pr. s.* goes, hastens, 1312, 1553 (but here we might rather read *bownis*); Bowis (Bowe), 1 *pr. s.* bow, 2777; Bowe, *pr. pl.* bend, turn, 2597; Bow, go, mount, 5243; Bowis (Bowes), *pr. pl.* yield, submit, 2476; (Bowed), *pt. s.* bowed to, 1620; Bowid, *pt. pl.* bowed, 196; Bow, *pr. s. subj.* if he return, 296; Bowe, *pr. pl.* submit to, 2606; (Bowed) (Bozet), *pp.* bowed, bent, 1900; Bow, *imp. s.* bend, 547; Bowis (Bowys), *imp. pl.* return, 3118; (Bowes), depart, 2469; Bowes, return, 4011.

Bowes, *pl.* bows, 4084; Bowis (Bowes), 1413, 2210.

Bowis, *pl.* boughs, 4302, 4868, 4996; (Bowes), 2851.

Bowlis (Bulez), *pl.* game of bows, 1929.

Bowmen, *pl.* archers, 3600, 5447.

Bowne, *adj.* ready, 1380. See Boune.

Bownes, *pr. s. refl.* prepares him, gets ready, 4954; goes, 1305; (Bownes þain up), make their way up, 699. See Boune.

- Boyland, *pres. part.* oozing, welling, 4975.
- Bozes him vp, *pr. s. refl.* turns, goes up, 699.
- Brad, *pt. s.* spread, 4912. A.S. *bréðan*. See Braidis, Bredid.
- Brade, *adj.* broad, 496, 768, 732\*, 783\*, 1653, 1717, 3965, 4089; (Brode), 1340, 1514; Brad, 2118; (Brod), 2133; (Brade), 1408; (Brade), 802, 1297; On brade, abroad, in public, 1800; aloud, 3565; On brad, aloud, 2294. See Brode.
- (Brades vppe), *pr. s.* opens, 783\*; (Brade), *pt. s.* drew, 2639. A.S. *bregdan*, Icel. *bregða*. See Braidis.
- Bradnes, *s.* broadness, breadth, 1374.
- Braes, *pl.* steep banks, 4809.
- Brag, *s.* bragging, 4319.
- Bragg, *ger.* to brag, 4553.
- Bragging, *s.* braying, noise, 3965; Braggins (Braggyng), brayings, loud sounds, 3037.
- Bragmenys, *pl.* Brahmans, 4194; Bragmeyns, *gen. pl.* 4236, 4448.
- Bragmney, the land of the Brahmans, 4209.
- Braide (Brayde), *s.* instant, moment; In a braide (brayde), in a short time, at once, 381, 1956, 4850; At a braide, in a moment, as soon as possible, 1220, 1956, 2231, 3918, 4206, 5539; At a braid, 5462; Braidis, *pl.* attacks, sudden assaults, 2137. Icel. *bragð*. See Brayde.
- Braidis, *pr. s.* draws, 2639; (Brades), snatches, 2951; leaps, 928; leaps quickly, jumps, 2892; Braide (Bradyn), hurry, 2229; Braidis, *pr. pl.* seize; Braidis to, take to, 3884; (Braden to), seize, 1413; Brait (Brade), *pt. s.* drew, 802. See Brades vppe, Braydis.
- Braidis, *pr. s.* spreads, extends, 1514; (Bradez), *pr. pl.* unfurl, display, 774. See Brad, Bredid.
- Brak, *pt. s.* broke, 510; Brake, 2 *pt. pl.* ye brake, 1357.
- Bran, *s.* bran, 4537.
- Brand, *s.* brand, fire-brand, 3138, 4230; sword, 446, 802, 3197, 3248; (Brande), 842, 870; (Brannde), 1426; Brande, sword, 427, 1223; Brandis (Brandes), *pl.* brands, burning logs, 2236; swords, 3674, 3842.
- Brant, *adj.* straight, erect, 3648. Cf. Swed. *brant*, steep. See Brent.
- Bras, *s.* brass, 55, 276; (Brace), 1387; Brase, 4085.
- Brasen, *adj.* brazen, 112.
- Brased, *pt. s.* pricked (?), 1317; *but doubtless an error for broched, as in MS. D.*
- Brast, *pt. s.* burst, 510, 1416; Braste, 872.
- Brathe, *s.* anger, 1744, 5365; (Breth), 1956; Brath (Breth), violence, fury, 1220. Cf. Icel. *bráðr*, sudden, rash.
- Brathly, *adv.* severely, 1214; vigorously, 2211. Icel. *bráðr*, sudden.
- Braunches, *pl.* branches, 2851, 4782, 5239.
- Brayde, *s.* turn, throe, 527; At a brayd (brade), in a moment, 1380. See Braide.
- Braydis, *pr. s.* rushes, 496; Braydis him vp (Brades up), springs up, 842; Brayd, *pt. s.* drew, 274. See Braidis.
- Brayne, brain, 4002; (Brane), 2645; Braynes, *pl.* 1419.
- (Brayne-pan), *s.* cap, hat, head-piece, 2499; (Brayn-pan), 1713.
- Brayne-wode, mad in the brain, 4506.
- Bre, *ger.* to frighten; To bre hire o bourde, to frighten her in jest, 462; Breis, *pr. s.* terrifies, 4837; Breed, *pt. s.* terrified, 4741. A.S. *brégan*, to terrify; from *brôga*, terror. 'Bree, to frighten, North'; Halliwell.
- Bred, *in phr.* Bred-full, i. e. brim-full, 4089. Swed. *brädd*, brim; *bräddfull*, brimful. See Bret-full.
- Brede, *pr. pl.* breed, 4199; Bred, *pt. pl.* bred, 4782; Thyn bred, *pp.* thinly grown, 320.
- Brede, *s.* breadth, 3856, 4070, 5433; (Brede), 1502, 2118; O brede, in breadth, 3065, 3833. A.S. *brádu*.

- Bredid, *pp.* scattered abroad, dispersed, lit. made broad, 2447. See Brad, Braidis.
- Breed, *pt. s.*; see Bre.
- Breede, *s.* breadth, 5460. See Brede.
- Brefe, *s.* letter, 1717, 1906, 2749; (Breue), 1956; (Breve), 3118. "*Bref*, a briefe, note, short writing;" Cotgrave. See Breue.
- Brefe, *adj.* speedy, quick in action, 5435. Cf. '*brief* in hand' in Shak. K. John, iv. 3. 158, which Schmidt explains by 'must be speedily dispatched.' Jamieson gives '*brief*, keen,' as in use in Upper Clydesdale.
- Brefe, *v.* describe, 256; briefly state, 4448; *ger.* to record, 208; Brefe, *pr. pl.* 2 *p.* appoint, 4503. Icel. *brefa*, to give a brief account of; from Lat. *breuiare*. See Breue.
- Breggis (Abreggez), *pr. s.* abridges, shortens, 3289. *Short for* Abreggis.
- Breis, *pr. s.* frightens, 4837. See Bre.
- Breke, 1 *pr. s.* disclose my opinion, 2601; Brekis, *pr. s.* breaks, 787; (Brekys), 1230. *Break*, to disclose or open one's mind, occurs in Shakespeare; cf. *breaking*, disclosure, Antony, v. 1. 14.
- Breke, *s.* breeks, breeches, 3842. A.S. *bréc*, pl. of *bróc*.
- Breme, *adj.* glorious, bright, 5262; fierce, 610, 787\*, 2146, 4001; furious, 3038, 4147, 4839; sharp, 5558. A.S. *bréme*, illustrious; and see Mätzner.
- Bremely, *adv.* fiercely, 767, 1398, 3880; (Bremly), 2619; Bremely, sternly, 969; severely, 3913; angrily, 1413, 1805; quickly, 1827, 5155; Bremly, extremely, 3960.
- Brene, *ger.* to burn, 606; Brenes, *pr. s.* 1037; Brent, *pt. s.* burnt, 4762; Brent, *pp.* burnished, 3696, 4913; Brend (Brent), burnished, 1713. See Brin.
- Breheid, *adj.* cuirassed, armed with a 'birnie' or breastplate, 66. See Brenys.
- Brenke, *s.* brink, bank of a river, 4741; edge of a dike, 699. See Brinkis.
- Brent, *adj.* steep, 4812. See Brant.
- Brenys, *pl.* 'birnies,' coats of mail, 1247, 2980; (Brenes), 2214; (Brynnes), 2622; (*used for the sing.*) Brenys (Brenes), a cuirass, coat of mail, 915; Breneis (Brenes), coat of mail, 1295. Icel. *brynja*, A.S. *byrne*.
- Brerys (Breres), *pl.* briars, 2985.
- Brest, *s.* breast, 224, 932, 970, 841\*; (Briste), 1599; Brestis (Brestes), 2162. See Brist.
- Breste, *s.* breast, 4097. (Prob. an error for *beste*, beast.) See Cowdrife.
- Brestes, *pr. s.* bursts, 728\*; Brest, *pt. pl.* burst, 5221; Brest, *pp.* broken, 2645. See Brosten.
- Bretage (Britage), *s.* battlement, parapet, 1416. "*Bretesche*, *Bretesque*, a port, or portall of defence in the rampire or wall of a towre;" Cotgrave. "*Bretage*, a parapet;" Halliwell. See Britage.
- Bretagid (Britagett), *pp.* fortified with wooden towers, 1152. See above.
- Bretayn, Britain, 5668.
- Bretens, *pr. s.* breaks, batters, 1307; Brettens, cuts in pieces, 3197; Brettenes, beats down, 5612; Bretned (Brityned), *pt. pl.* cut to pieces, 1263; Bretind, *pt. pl.* 3905 (See Alto-); Breten, *pr. s. subj.* may break in pieces, 3294; Bretend, *pp.* defeated, 5311; Bretind (Bryttynyd), beaten down, destroyed, 2479; Bretened (Bryttynett), *pp.* killed, 1328. Cf. A.S. *brytnian*, to dispense, distribute; *bryttian*, to dispense, allied to Icel. *brytja*, to chop. See Bretted.
- Bret-full, *adj.* brimful, 1548; Bretful, 4868. See Bred.
- Breth, *s.* breath, 970, 1274, 3233, 5583.
- Brethand, *pres. part.* breathing, smelling, 4839. Cf. A.S. *brðð*, an odour.
- Brethire, *pl.* brothers, 2512, 5363.
- Bretted (Brytynd), *pp.* broken to pieces, 2256; (Bryttynyd), destroyed, 2697. Icel. *brytja*, to chop, from *brjóta*, to break;



- Swed. *bryta*, to break. See Bre-  
tens.
- Breue, *s.* brief, letter, 1181. See  
Brefe.
- Breue, *ger.* to describe, 1374 ;  
Breues, *pr. s.* speaks, 984 ; (Bre-  
vys), utters, 3251 ; Breuys, *pr. s.*  
utters, 462 ; (Breues), 1797 ;  
Breue, *pr. s.* 1 *p.* mean, indicate,  
1898 ; Breuyd, *pp.* recorded as  
being, noted, 1172 ; Breued, *pp.*  
described, 35 ; assigned, 749\* ;  
Breueyd (Breuet), recorded, 764 ;  
Breue, *imp. s.* 2 *p.* tell, 2285. See  
Brefe.
- Brid, *s.* bird, 411, 503, 4982 ; Brid-  
dis, *pl.* 252, 4435, 4782 ; Bridis,  
5603 ; (Birdes), 1532.
- Brid, *s.* bride, 5204 ; (Birde), bride,  
854 ; spouse, 3104 ; Brides, *pl.*  
wives, 4046 ; Bridis, women, 4125.  
(Bridyll), bridle, 789\*.
- Brig (Brigg), bridge, 2587.
- Brigge, *ger.* to abate, mitigate, lit.  
abridge, 3803. *Short for* Abridge.  
(Brightfull), *error for* Bretfull, 1548.  
See Bretfull.
- Brilles, *pl.* beryls, 5135. Cf. F.  
*briller*, to shine, which is derived  
from a sb. *brille*\*, a beryl (Littré).
- Brin, *ger.* to burn, 3137 ; *v.* 3682 ;  
(Bryn), 2658. See Brene, Bryn.
- Bring, *v.* bring, 1199 ; *ger.* to carry,  
1715 ; (Bring), *v.* 2101 ; Bringes  
(Brynges), *pr. s.* brings, 927 ;  
Bringis (Bringes), 1653.
- Brinkis, *pl.* brinks, shores, 4377.  
See Brenke.
- Brist, *s.* breast, 2871. See Brest.
- Brist, *s.* want, need, 3819. Swed.  
*brist*, want, need, failure ; A.S.  
*byrst*, loss, defect. In this line  
& = than ; the sense is, 'more  
for the harm of their beasts  
than their own need.' See *burst*  
in Mätzner.
- (Bristes), *pr. s.* bursts, 872. See  
Brestes.
- Bristils, *adj.* bristly, 4746. A false  
form ; *read* And had bristils.
- (Britage), *s.* fortification, parapet,  
1301. See Bretage.
- (Britens), *pr. s.* destroys, 1037. See  
Bretens.
- Brixsill, *pr. pl.* 2 *p.* reproach, up-  
braid, blame, 4662. Icel. *brigzli*,  
*s.* shame, blame ; *brigzla*, to up-  
braid.
- Briht, *adj.* bright, 276, 427, 559,  
604 ; fair, 466 ; *as s.* bright one,  
5204 ; (Bright), 1524, 1715 ;  
(Bryght), 2337.
- Brihtens (Bryhtyns), *pr. s.* bright-  
ens, renders clear, 3357.
- Broches (Brochez), *pr. s.* spurs,  
2892 ; Brochis (Brochez), 2974 ;  
(Brochys), pricks, 1317 ; (Broch-  
cn), *pr. pl.* pierce, 787. F. *brocher*.
- Brode, *adj.* broad, 1898 ; (Brode),  
1553. See Brade.
- Brode, *s.* child, lit. brood, 1929.  
(Broke) ; see Broweke.
- Broken (Brokyn), *pp.* broken, 1223,  
1349.
- Brolle, *s.* child, brat, 1928. See  
Gloss. to P. Plowman.
- Bront, *s.* brunt, 783.
- Brosten (To-bristen, *pr. pl.*), *pp.*  
broken, 789. See Brestes.
- Brothire, *s.* brother, 5355 ; Brothirs,  
*gen.* 5344.
- Browden, *pp.* braided, woven,  
twisted, 1524 ; Browde, 4913.  
A.S. *brogden*, *pp.* of *bregdan*, to  
braid.
- Browe, *s.* brae, steep bank, 4837.
- Broweke (Broke), *v.* possess, use,  
enjoy, 3412. A bad spelling ;  
*read broweke*.
- Brozt, *pt. s.* brought, 974 ; (Brought),  
3118 ; Brozt (Brought), *pp.* 48, 727,  
1228 ; (Broughtyn), 3158.
- Brunt, *s.* sudden blow ; At a brunt,  
on a sudden, 3934. See Bront.
- Brusche (Broush), *s.* conflict, sud-  
den rush, swift movement, 783 ;  
(Brush), 2133.
- Bruschis (Brushes), *pr. s.* hastens,  
hurries, 1222, 1426 ; Brusches  
(Brushys), flings himself, 963.
- Brym, *s.* shore, 5557. A.S. *brymme*.
- Brym, *s.* river, 4080. A.S. *brim*,  
wave, surf, sea.
- Brym, *adj.* fierce, 496. See Breime.
- Brymly, *adv.* fiercely, 1222, 1333,  
5451. See Bremely.
- Bryn, *ger.* to burn, 4856 ; Brynt,  
*pt. s.* burnt, shone, 5648 ; (Bryut),

- pt. pl.* burnt, 2474; Brynnand, *pres. part.* burning, shining, 2639; Brynt, *pp.* burnished, 276, 2926; Brynd (Brynt), burnt, 2697. See Brin, Brene.
- (Bryn), *s.* burn, mark made by a brand, 751\*.
- Bryng furth, *v.* bring forth, 526; Bryngis (Bringez), *pr. pl.* bring, 1207.
- (Bryssyt), *pp.* bruised, broken, harmed, 2645; Bryssid (Bresyd), bruised, *hence* broken in, much experienced, 1003. See *brusen* in Mätzner.
- (Bryttynd), *pp.* broken to pieces, 3294; destroyed, 2697. See Bretens.
- Bucifalon, Bucephalus, 5582; (Bucifelon), 1316; (Bucyfall), 3178; Bucifelon, 3648; Bucifal, 3031.
- Bud, *pt. s. impers.* it behoved, 3793; Bud, *pt. s. subj.* would behove, 3274. See Bus.
- Buke, *s.* book, 17, 35, 192, 203, 881, 916; (Boke), book, i. e. Romance, 1371, 1570.
- Bule, *s.* bull, 4527; Bules, *pl.* 3903; Se-bules, sea-bulls, 3846.
- Bulle, *s.* writing, record, 4448.
- Bullok, *s.* bullock, 4527.
- Bunden, *pp.* bound, 3602, 5540; firmly settled, 5581.
- Burde, *s.* sport, play, 2500.
- Burde, *s.* board, plank, 1340; (Borde), table, 2969.
- Burde, *pt. s.* behoved, 510, 1966; (Burd), ought, 776\*; Burde, *pt. s. subj.* should prove to be, 4396. Icel. *byrja*.
- Burdeux, Bourdeaux, 5668.
- Burgaige, *s.* burgesses, people of the borough, 5221. See *bourgage* in Cotgrave.
- Burgh, *s.* city, 1559, 5243; Burgis, *pl.* boroughs, 4431; Burghes (Burges), towns, 1078.
- Burly, *adj.* burly, great, 4096, 4742; (Borely), 2632. See Borely.
- Burne, *s.* burn, brook, 3062. See Bourne.
- Burneschid, *adj.* burnished, 55.
- Burnet (Burnett), brown stuff, 1569. "Brunette, fine black cloth;" Cotgrave. Orig. a brown cloth; F. *brun*.
- Burze, *s.* town, borough, city, 218, 3746, 5415; Burz, 147; (Burgh), 928, 1037; (Burght), 1380, 2148; Bu[r]ze (Burgh), 2256, 2673; Burzes (Burghes), 2337; (Burgh-ez), 1446.
- Burze-walles (Burgh-walles), *pl.* town-walls, 2246; Burze-wallis (-walle, *sing.*), 1297.
- Bus, *pr. s. impers.* it behoves, 3354; (Buse), 3358; Buse, 1808. See Bos, Bud. *Short for* Behofis.
- Busche, *s.* bush, 3920.
- Buschels, *pl.* bushels, 4241.
- Busifolen, Bucephalus, 749\*. See Bucifalon.
- Buske, *ger.* prepare, 373; *v.* get ready, deck, 1511; (Buske), *v.* go, 2195; Buske þe, *v.* prepare thyself, 2908; Buske hym, *v.* prepare himself, 3126; Buskis (Buskes), *pr. s.* puts, 1506; (Buskes hym), gets ready, 811\*; arrays himself, 1295; Buskis (Buskez), goes, 1306; Buskis (Buskes), *pr. pl.* prepare, make ready, 774; (Buskys), *pr. pl. refl.* prepare themselves for, get themselves ready for, 2452; Buske, 2 *pr. pl. subj.* if (ye) come, if (ye) advance, 3752; Busked (Buskett), *pt. s.* prepared, 2676; Buskid, *pp.* made ready, 3609; (Busked), arrayed, 2214. Icel. *búa-sk*, to prepare oneself.
- (Buske), *s.* bush, stick, 1340; Buskis, *pl.* bushes, 2851.
- Buskest, *adj. superl.* readiest (?), 1247. (*But prob. an error for* Busket, *pp.* arrayed; see Buske). Cf. Lowl. Sc. *buskie*, fond of dress.
- But, *prep.* without, 1678, 3378; (Bout), 1340; Butt, 2380.
- Butlers (Botlers), *pl.* butlers, 2934.
- Buwne (Bowne), *ger.* to go, lit. get ready, set out, 1511. See Boun.
- Buxsom, *adj.* obedient, consenting, 323; (Buxme), obedient, 2805; (Buxum), 786\*.
- Buzes (Bownes), *pr. s.* turns, lit. bows, bends, 1181. See Bowe.



- Buzes (Boweze), *pl.* boughs, 2985.  
See Bowis.
- By, *prep.* by, 54, 250, 253; near, beside, 482, 681, 769\*; (Be), by reason of, for, 921. See Be.
- (Byd), *v.* offer, 1891.
- (Byde), *ger.* to dwell, 966; Bydis (Bydes), *pr. s.* abides, sits, 2963; Bydis (Abydez), *pr. pl.* wait for, 1116.
- Bydene, *adv.* forthwith, 2699. See Bedene.
- (Bydome), *error for* Beden, *pt. pl.* bade, advised, 2656.
- (Byforne), *prep.* before, 770\*.
- (Byggyd), *pt. s.* set up, 2673; *pp.* built, 1161.
- (Byheld), *pt. s.* saw, 780\*, 1600.
- Byi, *ger.* to buy, 4359.
- (Byliue), *adv.* soon, 857. See Belieue.
- Bynde, *v.* bind, 4762, 5516; (Bynd), *ger.* 2852; Bynd, *ger.* 3432.
- Bytand, *pres. pt. as adj.* sharp, biting, 122, 446.
- Caban, *s.* cabin, tent, 4775; Cabayne, 5173; Cabons, *pl.* 4177.
- Cablis (Cablys), *pl.* cables, ropes, 2599.
- Cacany, *Lat.* Cathomi, 5489.
- Cache, *v.* take, assume, 2417; *ger.* to gain, 4872; Cachis (Cachez), *pr. s.* goes, marches, 1049; (Caches), gathers together, 2134; Cache, *imp. s.* 2 *p.* catch; Cache vp þine hert, regain thy courage, 470; Caches (Kachez), *imp. pl.* take, 2564.
- (Cafe), *s.* cave, hollow, 730\*.
- Caffare, *error for* Chaffare (as *shewn by the alliteration*), *s.* chaffer, traffic, intercourse, 4603.
- Caggis (Cachez), *pr. s.* draws, fastens, 1521. See numerous examples in Mätzner of *caggen*, to bind, fasten.
- Caire (Care), *ger.* to go, 1688, 1832; Caire, *ger.* to go, to cross, 2588; Caire, *v.* return, 3507; Caire (Cayre), *v.* return, travel back, 3418; Caire, 1 *pr. s.* go, 2280; come, 1878; Cairis (Cares), *pr. s.* goes, walks, 859; Cairys, goes, 5173; Caires (Carys), goes, 953; (Carez), 1038; Caires, comes, 3964; returns, 3962; Cairis, *pr. s. refl.* goes, 3008; Caires (Cairen), *pr. pl.* go, 887; Cairis (Caires), go, 900; Caired, *pt. pl.* went, 2402; Caire, *imp. s.* turn, return, 3562; Caire (Carez), go thou, 1501; Caires (Cayrez), let them retreat, 3414; Caires, *imper. pl.* 2 *p.* go ye, 889. Cf. *Icel. keyra*, to prick on, urge, drive. See Kaire, Cares.
- Caitefe (Catef), *adj.* caitiff, vile, 1775.
- Caitefe, *s.* caitiff, wretch, 3078; Caiteffe, 3562. See Caytefe.
- Cait[if]este (Catyfest), *adj.* most caitiff, vilest, 1707.
- Calabree, Calabria, 5671.
- Calcidoynes, *pl.* chalcedonies, 5274.
- Cald, *adj.* cold, 1599, 4928; (Cold), 3169.
- Calde, Chaldea, 5669; Caldec, 90.
- Caldipol (Cadypolez), *a city*, 2151.
- Calistride (Lat. Talifrida), queen of the Amazons, 3711, 3721, 3778.
- Calke, *v.* calculate, 673.
- Call, *v.* call, name, 618; (Calle), call, 1479, 1848; Call, *ger.* 229; (Calle), *ger.* to call upon, 2244; Callis, *pr. s.* calls, 431, 1077; (Calles), 948; Calls, 5224; Cals, 4856; Callis, 2 *pr. s.* 1871; Cald, *pt. s.* 1 *p.* called, 3195; Callid, *pt. s.* 559; Callyd, *pt. pl.* 2138; Callid (Callyd), *pp.* called, 1046, 1903; summoned, 5198; Caled (Callyd), called, 823; Cald, *pp.* called, said to be, 1820; reckoned, 3908.
- Calodone (Calydon), Chalcedon, 1028; (Calidon), 1038.
- Calodoyns (Calodons), *pl.* men of Chalcedon, 1032.
- Calues, *pl.* calves, 3892; *gen.* of calves, 4476.
- Cambs, *pl.* combs, 5130.
- Camels, *pl.* camels, 2769.
- Camlyn, *s.* camlet, the name of a stuff, 4340.
- Camour, *Lat.* Cemarre, 5489.
- Can, *pr. s.* 1 *p.*; Can not þare-on, cannot agree to that, 3507; can bear, endure, 832; know, 260,

- 685; Can, *pr. pl.* can, 248, 250. See Kan.
- Candace, *prop. name*, 5090, 5105, 5177, 5245, 5263, 5281.
- Candill, candle, 4230.
- Candilstickis (Candelstyeke), *pl.* candlesticks, 1571.
- Candoyle, Candaules, 5092; Candoile, 5148, 5159; Candele, 5419.
- Canony, *a country*, 5669.
- Can[o]pe, *s.* canopy, 5266.
- Cantelle, *s.* portion, 4514. *Cantle* in Shakespeare.
- Capadose, Cappadocia, 742\*; Capados (Capadoce), 2761; Capidos, 90, 5669.
- Cape, *s.* cope, vault, 1537, 1755, 1871; (Cope), 2368.
- Capho Resey (Chaipho rosey), *a place-name*, 1077. See note.
- Captayns, *pl.* captains, 3590.
- Capyll, horse, 754\*.
- Caraptus, *prop. name*, 5094.
- Caratros, *prop. name*, 5337, 5343, 5364, &c.
- Carayne, *s.* carrion, 4524. See Carion.
- Carcas, carcase, 4524.
- Care, *s.* anxiety, 149, 166, 349, 1104, 3508, 4013; trouble, 5608; sorrow, 3239.
- Care (Kare), *imp. s.* be anxious, care, 2815.
- Carefull, *adj.* mournful, 3869; (Carfull), sorrowful, 1815.
- Careles, *adj.* free from anxiety, 405.
- Cares hym, *pr. s.* betakes himself, turns, goes, 730\*; Carez, goes, 768\*. See Caire.
- Carid (Cared), *pp.* cared, 1461.
- Carion, *s.* carcase, 5587; Carions, *gen.* body's, 4357; Cariouns, *pl.* carcasses, 4455. See Caryon, Carayne.
- Carpe, *s.* speech, talk, 3500, 3929, 4566, 5011; relation, 3112; meaning, 1794; story, tale, 3469; Carpe (Carpyng), *s.* speech, saying, message, 2346; speech, 748; story, 1455; decision, 1023.
- Carpe, *v.* talk, say, 592; Carpe, *ger.* 8; Carpis, 2 *pr. s.* speakest, 100; (Carpys), 2911; Carpis (Carpez), *pr. s.* speaks, 860; *miswritten*
- Crapis (Carpes), 833, 2490; *pr. pl.* speak, 1604; Carps, *pr. s.* says, 5367; Carpid, 1 *pt. s.* spoke, told, 3058; 2 *pt. s.* spakest, 234; *pt. s.* spoke, 230; Carped, *pp.* 108. Cf. Icel. *karpa*, to boast.
- Carpentaris (Carpenters), *pl.* carpenters, 1117; Carpentars, 4205.
- Carryg (Carrak), *s.* carrack, carrick, barge, 3376; Carrygis, *pl.* 63. "Carrague, the huge ship termed a carricke;" Cotgrave.
- Cartes, *pl.* carts, cars, 3058.
- Carte-wise, chariot-wise, 3629.
- Cartros, Caratros, 5353. See Caratros.
- (Carye), *put for* Cayre, *ger.* to go, cross, 2588. See Caire.
- Caryn faim, *pr. pl.* return, 3110. See Caire.
- Caryon, *s.* carcase, body, 4687. See Carion.
- Cas, *s.* case, 282; event, 940; chance, 292, 405, 719; (Case), circumstance, 2350, 2641; way, means, 1362; luck, 2163; (Cause), chance, 1104; Case, circumstance, 671, 848, 1464; misfortune, 401; Cases, *pl.* things, circumstances, 3727.
- Caspy, Caspian Sea, 3705.
- Cast, *s.* throwing, casting, 1302; Castis (Castez); *pl.* plans, 1764. See Kast.
- Cast, *ger.* to cast, 5155; *v. refl.* endeavour, 4671; Castis, *pr. s.* casts, 5587; (Castes), plans, 1361; (Kest), throws, 1537; Castes, casts, 1997; Castis, *pr. pl.* cast, 163. See Kast, Kest.
- Castans (Castanez), *gen.* of a chestnut; Of castans hewes, of the colour of a chestnut, 1086; (Castans), *gen. sing.* of the chestnut, of chestnut colour, 1537. See Kastand.
- Castell, *s.* castle, 1152, 2266, 3602, 5263; Castels, *pl.* 4442; Castells (Castellys), 3414.
- (Castell-jarde), castle-yard, 768\*.
- Castite, *error for* Chastite, *s.* chastity, 4603.
- (Castor), *prop. name*, 766\*.
- Cauatise, covetousness, 4562.

- Cauels, *pl.* fragments, 799. Icel. *kafli*, a piece, bit.
- Caues, *pl.* caves, 4020, 4049; Cauys, 4354.
- Caulus, *proper name*, 1229, 4907.
- Cause, cause, 577, 848, 921; cause, plea, side (in the dispute), 3993.
- Caused (Causyd), *pt. s.* made, 3278.
- Causles, *adj. as adv.* without a cause or reason, unreasonably, 3190; Causeles (Causles), 1817.
- Cayrayne (Caryon), *s.* carrion, 3255. See Carayne.
- Caytefe (Catyff), *s.* wretch, 3278; Caytefes (Catyffez), *pl.* wretches, 1754. See Caitefe.
- Cazt, *pt. s.* took, 5212. See Kajt.
- Cecile (Cesyll), Sicily, 2103.
- Cedres, *pl.* cedars, 5237.
- Cellis, *pl.* cells, 4024.
- Cerastis, *prop. name*, 916.
- Certayn, *adv.* certainly, 326; Certayne, 1101; For certayn, 183.
- Certifi, *v.* certify, 250; Certified (Certifyed), *pt. s.* informed, 2774.
- Certis, *adv.* certainly, 4360.
- Ceyle; see Sele.
- Chace, *s.* chase, 3057, 4736.
- Chache, *v.* catch, seize hold of (one), 1804; Chach, catch, derive, 4227; Chacches (Chakez), *pr. s.* brings together, 1281; Chache (Cache), *imp. s.* receive, 748.
- Chaffe, or Chasse, 468. It seems to mean 'great heat,' or 'a chafing-dish,' from F. *chauffer*, to heat, chafe. Or *chasse* may mean a jewel case of red gold. See Chasse.
- Chaiere, *s.* chair, 5515; Chaiare, 493.
- Chalang, *v.* challenge, claim, 4388; (Chalynge), claim, 1848.
- Chalk-quite (Chalke-white), white as chalk, 1584; Chalke-quyte, 468; *miswritten* Shalk-quyte (Chalke-white), 1562.
- (Chaltird), *pp.* 746\*. Sense unknown; the sense required is 'tightly bound,' with reference to the horse's jowl.
- Chambre, chamber, 53, 111, 151, 358; (Chamer), 944; (Chaumbre), 1762; (Chawmbre), 1113, 1181; Chambres (Chaumbres), *pl.* chambers, 2979.
- Chambirlayn (Chamerlayn, *MS.* chamernlayn), chamberlain, 1584.
- Champe, *s.* field, meadow, plain, 4719; space in which the gems were set, 3677.
- Chance, *s.* chance, accident, 144; (Chaunce), chance, 2788; Chanche misfortune, 403.
- Chance (Chaunce), *pr. s. subj.* (if) it befall, 1882; Chansid, *pt. s.* happened, 4801.
- Changis, *pr. s.* changes, 120, 382; (Chaungez), 1851; Changis (Changges), 2 *pr. s.* changest, 831; Changid, *pt. s.* changed, 377, 466; (Chaungett), 1119; Changand, *pres. part.* changing, 3271, 3687.
- Chape, *ger.* to escape, 2788; Chapid, 1 *pt. pl.* escaped, passed, 4215.
- Chaplayne (Chapelayn), chaplain, 1584.
- Chaplets, *pl.* chaplets, garlands, 3687.
- Charbocle, carbuncle, 4900; Charbocles, *pl.* carbuncles, 5647; Charbokles, 3677.
- (Chare), *s.* chariot, 822\*.
- Charge, *s.* amount, lit. weight, 403; Chargis, *pl.* loads, 5598; Charges (Charge), commands, 2660.
- Charge, 1 *pr. s.* charge, command, 1918; Charge[s], (Chargez), *pr. s.* charges, enjoins, 1194; Chargid, *pt. pl.* loaded, 5632; Chargid, *pp.* covered, 4719; Charge, *imp. s.* care for, mourn, 866.
- (Chariott), *s.* chariot, 802\*; Chariotis, *pl.* chariots, 3021, 3057.
- Charme, *s.* charm, incantation, 343.
- Chasse, *s.* 5647. One sense of F. *chasse* is 'a shrine for a relick' (Cotgrave); Lat. *capsa*. Here 'as a *chasse*' may mean 'as big as a box,' or 'as big (or as red) as a jewel-case.' See Chaffe.
- Chasteand, *pres. pt.* correcting (*but here apparently used in the sense of provoking*), 4607. O.F. *chastier*, to chastise, correct, amend.
- Chater, *v.* chatter, gabble, mutter, 115; (Chaterand), *pres. pt.* talking, 824\*.

- Chatrid, *pp.* filled, filled quite full (?), 4900. A doubtful word; cf. *chokkefull* in *Morte Arthure*, 1552.
- Chauele, 4924. Indistinct in the MS. Perhaps we should read *chanele*, which we might explain as 'hoary,' or 'whitened with age.' Cf. O.F. *chanes*, white hair, *chanuer*, to turn white, said of the hair; from Lat. *canus*, hoary.
- Chaufe, *pr. pl.* 1 *p.* warm, chafe, 4287; Chawfis, *pr. s.* chafes, 3519.
- Chaufing (Chawfyng), *s.* heat, 2545.
- Chaumbres, *pl.* chambers, 5601.
- Chaunce, *s.* chance, good fortune, 4388; Opon chaunce, perchance, 5609.
- (Chaungez), *pr. s.* changes, 1854; Chaungid, *pt. pl.* changed, i.e. turned sad in look, 5609.
- Chaunes (Chauncez), *impers. pr. s.* befalls, happens to, 1036.
- Chauyls, *pl.* jaws, 3696, 4984; Chaviles, 3632; (Chaelez), 746\*. A.S. *caeflas*, jaws.
- Chawfis; see *Chaufe*.
- Chaye, *s.* (*perhaps*) company, assembly, 3349. Roquefort gives O.F. *chaye*, company, assembly. The sense may thus be: 'an amethyst, which all the company consider rich (so says the romance), and, as for rankness of wines, it lets no drunkenness hurt them, viz. the men who bear it.' As to the virtues of the amethyst, see the note.
- Cheele, *s.* chill, cold, 4164. See *Chele*.
- Chefe, *adj.* chief, 115, 440, 493; excellent, 343; large, 3677.
- Chefe, *s.* chief, chieftain, 440.
- Chefe, *adv.* chiefly, 363.
- Chefe, *v.* happen, befall, 403; (Chefyd), *pp.* achieved, 2712. See Gloss. to *Troy-Book*.
- Chiefely, *adv.* especially, 2660.
- (Chefest), *adj.* chiefest, largest, 1985.
- Cheffire, *adj. comp.* chiefter, superior, 4801.
- Cheke, *s.* check, resistance, defence, 4801; Chekis (Chekez), *pl.* checks, victories, 3098.
- Chekis, *pl.* cheeks, 3942, 4984; (Chekez), 2782; (Chekys), cheeks, face, 1747.
- Chele, *s.* chill, 2545; Chelis, *pl.* 4287. See *Cheele*.
- Chelous, *adj.* zealous (?), 5446.
- Chere, *s.* face, countenance, 468, 743, 5302, 5609; appearance, 375; favour, 368; (Chere), look, 1815.
- Chere, *adj.* dear, loving, hence bright (?), 5302. A curious use of the word, as if confused with *cheerful*. *Ctere* would make better sense.
- Cheris, *pr. s.* cheers, 5447.
- Cherische, *v.* cherish, 368; Cherishest (*for* Cherischet), *pt. s.* cherished, comforted, 5446; Cherest, *pt. pl.* cherished, 594; Chereschest, *for* Chereschet (Cheryst), *pp.* cherished, made much of, 2562.
- Chesboll (Chessebollez, *pl.*), poppy, 1985. "*Hec papauer, chesbolle*;" Wright's Vocab. col. 644, l. 15.
- Chese, *v.* choose, 337; (Chose), 1773; (Chese), *ger.* 1178; Chese, 1 *pr. s.* 1020; Chese, *pt. s.* chose, 493; Chese him, chose for himself, 1194; (Chesez hym), chooses for himself, 1194; Chese, *imp. s.* choose, 363, 807\*, 4388; Chese (Chesse), *imp. pl.* 1922.
- Chese, *pt. s.* went, chose (to go), 5247. A badly selected word; merely introduced for the alliteration. See above.
- Chesses, *pl.* seed-pods of a poppy, called *cheeses* from the shape, 1985. See *Chesboll*.
- Cheualous, *adj.* chivalrous, brave, 3608; Cheualus, 655.
- Cheualry, *s.* chivalry, 3098; (Chevally), deeds of chivalry, 2712.
- Chenelere, *s.* hair, 4924. F. *chevelure*.
- Cheuer, *adj.* chiefter, superior, 1882.
- Cheuys, *pr. s.* achieves to be, 655; Cheues, *pr. pl.* prosper, 2379; Chevyd hym, *pt. s.* there happened to him, 739\*; Cheuyd (Chefyd), happened, happened successfully, 2788; Cheued (Chefyd), *pt. s. refl.* achieved, accomplished, 3098; 1 *pt. pl.* arrived, attained, 4215.

- F. *chevir*, to compass, &c.; Cotgrave.
- Chevalry, cavalry, 816\*.
- Cheyne, *pl.* chains, 1081, 3681, 4877, 5516; (*Chynes*), 1565, 2587.
- Chidis, *pr. s.* chides, 5319.
- Chiere, *s.* face, surface, 4719. O.F. *chiere* is given by Godefroy as a spelling of O.F. *chere*, face. See Chere.
- Chiftayne, *s.* chieftain, captain, 3021; Chiftan, 440, 655; Chiftane, 1194.
- Chifan (Cheftan), 1036; Chiftans, *pl.* captains, 5446; Chiftanes, 807\*, 824\*.
- Child, *s.* child, 594, 697, 835; knight, 825 (*in MS. D., where A. has kny3t*); With child, 393; Child, *gen.* child's, 824\*; Childir, *pl.* children, 1017; Childire, 256, 3116, 5576; Childer, 723\*; young men, 815\*; Childire (Childer), *gen. pl.* children's, 1773; (Chelder), *pl.* children, 2678.
- Childhede, *s.* childhood, 4215.
- Chill (Chyll), *s.* chill, i. e. frost, ice, 2541. See Chele.
- Choll, *s.* cheek, jowl, 746\*. E. *jowl*; from A.S. *ceaf*, jaw, cheek, whence M.E. *chaul*, *holl*.
- Choppid, *pt. pl.* chopped, cut, 3057; *pp.* hewn, cut, 4736.
- Chosely, *adv.* choicely, 594.
- Chosen (Chosyn), *pp.* chosen, 1562, 1985; Chosyn, *pp.* chosen, choice, 802\*; Chosene, 3786.
- Chosest, *adj. superl.* choicest, 337.
- Chur'es, *pl.* churls, savages, 4736.
- Chykin, *s.* chicken; Chykin-brid, *s.* young bird, 4984.
- Chymneys, *pl.* fire-places, 4287.
- Chynez, *pl.* chains, 746\*, 788\*. See Cheynes.
- (Cipriss), cypress, 790.
- Cite, *s.* city, 407, 1118, 1148; (Cyte), 1513; (Cety), 1510; (Site), 1144; Citis (Citez), *pl.* 2104, 2115; (Setez), 1694.
- Cite-ward; To be cite-ward, i. e. toward the city, 2487.
- Cithe, *s.* country, 209. (The *c* is hard, as *k*.) See Kithe.
- Citizens (Cytezeyns), *pl.* citizens, 3403; (Citesyns), 2199.
- Claggid, *pp.* clogged, sticky, 5427.
- Lowl. Sc. *clag*, to clog.
- Clambert, *name*, 5490.
- Clame, *ger.* to claim, 4562.
- Clame (Clam), *pt. s.* clomb, 2108.
- Clamp (Clampe), *s.* pinch, i. e. moment, 3263.
- Clappis (Clepys), *pr. s.* clasps, clips, i. e. embraces, 3237; Clappis, 384, 5252.
- Clarions, *pl.* clarions, 2617; Clarons (Clarions), 775.
- Clathe, *s.* cloth, 4687; Clape, 141; Clathe (Clath), clothing, garment, 1086; Clathis, *pl.* cloths, 236, 4149; garments, 4960; Clathis (Clathez), clothes, garments, 1498.
- Clatirs, *pr. s.* mutters, 412; Clatird, *pt. s.* muttered, 342; *pt. pl.* rattled, 555.
- Clause, clause, passage (of the text), 278, 885; story, 1613, 3361; short letter, message, 1794, 1955, 5095.
- Clayme (Clame), *v.* claim, 1848.
- Clede, *pt. s.* clad, 121; Cled (Clad), 2735; Cled, *pp.* 3693, 4955, 5210.
- Clees, *pl.* claws, 5432. A.S. *clés*.
- Cleke, *s.* snatch, clutch, 2163.
- Clekis, *pr. s.* draws, plucks, 282; snatches, 2937; (Clekez), seizes, 842. See Clyght. Lowl. Sc. *cleik*.
- Clene, *adj.* pure, 3822, 4700; good, 259; clear, 1479; fair, 495; bright, 1378; new, 978.
- Clene, *adv.* cleanly, 55, 1497; wholly, thoroughly, entirely, altogether, 19, 174, 209, 357, 671, 799, 900, 1023, &c.
- Clenly, *adv.* neatly, 1837; wholly, 555; 3904.
- Clennest, *adj. superl.* cleanest, purest, brightest, 5289; purest bred, 3775.
- Cleopas, Cleophas, 4907.
- Cleopatras, Cleopatra, 823, 835.
- Clepis, *pr. s.* calls, 534; (Clepys), 1507, 2184, 3117; Clepid (Clepypd), *pp.* 2884. A.S. *cleopian*.
- (Clepys); see Clappis.
- Clere, *adj.* clear, bright, 28, 259, 282, 1378, 3361; pure, 1571, 1892; fine, 1043; fair, 5090; illustrious, 2692.
- Cleres, *pr. s.* becomes clear, becomes

- bright, 4374; Clerid, *pt. s.* grew clear, 4815.
- Clerest, *adj. superl.* finest, 2372.
- Clerete (Clarite), *s.* brightness, 2052; (Clarett, *error* for Clarete or Clar-tee), radiance, 3147. O.F. *clarte*.
- Clergi, *s.* learning, skill, 54; Clergy (Clerge), clergy, 1509.
- Clerily, *adv.* clearly, 442.
- Clerire (Clarar), *adj. comp.* clearer, 2541.
- Clerke, learned man, scholar, 39, 121, 231, 370, 398, 514, 1353; poet, 2121; Clerkis, *pl.* 624, (Clerkez), 1549.
- Clethe, *v.* clothe, 4706; Cleth, *ger.* 820\*; Clethe (Cloth), *ger.* 1775; Clethis, *pr. s.* clothes, 140; Clethe, 2 *pr. pl.* put on clothes, 4670; Clethe (Cleth), *imp. s.* clothe, 2868; Clethid, *pp.* clothed, 4082, 5003; (Clethyd), 1624.
- Cletomacus (Clytomacus), Clytomachus, 2252, 2273.
- Cleuys, *pr. s.* cleaves, sunders, 4002.
- Cleuys (Clefy's), *pr. s.* cleaves, sticks, 3377.
- Clientis, *pl.* clients, subjects, 3411; attendants, 1549; (Clyentez), servants, 2940.
- Cliffe, *s.* rock, cliff, 4825; (Clyff), 775, 3008; Clife (Clyff), 3377; Clifis, *pl.* (Clyffe, *s.*), 2849.
- Clippis (Clepy's), *s.* eclipse, 2052. "The *clippys* of the son and moyn, *eclyppsis*;" Cath. Anglicum.
- Clohere, *s.* room, apartment, 5289. Cf. E. *closet*. See Closere.
- (Clodes), *pl.* clouds, 3081.
- Close, *ger.* to enclose, 2206; Clois, *pr. s.* encloses, 5483, 5502; Closed, *pt. s.* enclosed (himself), 3034; Closid, *pp.* enclosed, 3831; (Clozyd), wrapped up, 2912; (Closed), enclosed, 1378.
- Close, *s.* enclosure, fort, 5266.
- Closere, *s.* enclosure, chamber, 5250. See Clohere.
- Closettis, *pl.* closets, secret chambers, 153.
- Closure, *s.* enclosure, 4890.
- (Clothez), *pl.* cloths, 1515. See Clathe.
- Cloud, 5241. The sense is incom-  
plete: probably parts of one or two lines are omitted.
- Cloude, *s.* stone, rock; or *adj.* rocky, 4863. A.S. *clúd*, stone, rock; *clúdig*, rocky. (Or it may be short for *clouded*, covered with clouds.)
- Cloudis, *pl.* clouds, 555; (Clowdez), 2108.
- Clouen, *pp.* cloven, 4830, 5432.
- Clozes, *pl.* cloughs, ravines, *but used in the sense of* cliffs, 4863. So in Morte Arthure, 941.
- Cluster (Clostre), *s.* cluster, heap, 1438.
- Clustird, *pp.* clustered, 978; Clustert, 5249; Clustrid, 3668, 5383; thickly set, 2396.
- Clyentis, *pl.* vassals, retainers, 3195. See Clientis.
- (Clyftez), *pl.* cloven bits, splinters, 799.
- (Clyght), *pt. s.* snatched, 2937. Pt. f. of *cleke*; see Clekis.
- Clym, *ger.* to climb, ascend, 3353, 4399; Clyme, *v.* 1440.
- Clyne (Incline), *v.* incline, bend, 1901.
- Clynt, *s.* rock, crag, cliff, 4830. Icel. *klettr*, a crag; Swed. *klint*, top of a mountain; Dan. *klint*, a cliff.
- Clynterand, *pres. part.* forming crags, craggy, 4863. See above.
- Cocards, *pl.* foolish people, 4472. *Coquard*, "a proud gull, peart goose, quaint fop, saucy dolt;" Cotgrave.
- Cocatrices, *pl.* cockatrices, 3961; Cocatrice's, 4199; Cocatryse, *gen. sing.* cockatrice's, 3895.
- Cocken, *pr. pl.* strive, contend, fight like cocks, 2042; Cock, 1 *pr. pl.* dispute, 3311; Cockid, *pp.* contended, fought, 4013. A word borrowed from the sport of cock-fighting. See Cokke.
- Coddis, *pl.* pillows, 4916. "A cod, *cercuical, puluinar*;" Cath. Anglicum.
- Cofyre, coffer, chest, 807\*; Cofirs, *pl.* 4035; (Coffers), 3280.
- Cogill-stane, *s.* cobble-stone, round stone, 3895. O.Du. *kogel*, a globe, sphere, bullet; Hexham.



- Cointe, *adj.* quaint, curious, 4275.  
O.F. *cointe*.
- Cokke (Cok), 1 *pr. s.* contend, fight, 3169. See Cocken.
- Cole, *adj.* cool, 2541, 3800.
- Cole, *s.* cold water, 5506; cold sea, 5534. Merely the above *adj.* used as a *sb.* See two more examples in Mätzner. We still say, 'the cool of the evening.'
- Cole, *s.* coal, 606; Colis (Colez), *pl.* coals, 2247.
- (Colettes), *pl.* acolytes, 1549. "Colyte, *accolitus*;" Prompt. Parv. See Way's note.
- Colkins, *pr. s.* 2 *p.* dost gasp (?), dost gulp (?), 5323. Cf. l. 5320. Cf. O.Du. *kolcken*, 'to swallowe or to gulfe in,' Hexham; Dan. *kulke*, to gulp.
- Colit (Colt), *s.* colt, 2881. See Coltis.
- Color (Colour), colour, 3370; (Colour), 1086.
- Coltis, *pl.* colts, 3775. See Colit.
- Coltris, *pl.* 3794. Prob. an error for *coktris* = *cokatris*, i.e. cockatrices. See Cocatrices.
- Colwers, *pl.* adders, snakes, 3794. F. *couleuvre*, O.F. *coluevre*, an adder; Lat. *colubra*.
- Comande, *pr. s.* 1 *p.* commend, 3313, 5620; Comaunde, 5106; Comand (Comaund), 2778. See Comendid.
- Commandis, *pr. s.* commands, 1117; (Comandes), 1381; (Cominandes), 2283; Comandes, 3448; Comands (Commandez), 1810; (Comand, *pt. s.*), 1475; Comaundis (Commandez), 2213; Comand, *pt. s.* commanded, 821\*; (Cominand), 1177; Comande, 1064; Comandid, *pp.* commanded, 73; Comands (Comand), *imp. pl.* 1832.
- Commandment (Commoundement), commandment, 1192.
- (Comber), *pr. s. subj.* vex, 1480; Combrid, *pt. s. subj.* would embarrass, 1755. E. *cumber*.
- Come, *s.* coming, arrival, 54, 456, 1458, 1576, 3188, 3212, 3904, 3952; (Commyng), 1040.
- Come, *ger.* to come, 1256, 1362, Com (MS. Con), to come, happen, 292; (Come), *v.* 982; Comes, *pr. s.* comes 78, 940; Coms, 4741; Comes (Comez), 1501; (Commies), 2273; Comys, *pr. s.* comes, suits, 3316; Commies, comes, 768\*; Comes, it is becoming, 3974; Comys, *pr. pl.* come, 946; (Comes), 815; Comyn (Come), 983; Come, *pt. s.* came, 144, 503, 696, 882, 5418; it became, befitted, 627; Come, *pt. pl.* came, 815, 885, 905; Come, *pr. s. subj.* may come, 1104; Comen, *pp.* come, 1313; (Comyn), 2002; Come, 578; Comyn, 85, 3564; Comen (Common), 1613; Comen, *pp.* come, descended (from), 2650; Comen down of, descended from, 3156; Comand, *pres. pt.* coming, 63, 176.
- Comendid, *pt. s.* commended, 659; Comend, *pt. pl.* praised, 4015. See Comande.
- Comending (Commending), *s.* commendation, 2346.
- Comensure (Commensour), 2392. Prob. an error for *commentour*, i.e. commentator. Godefroy gives *commenteur*, a commentator.
- Comers, *pl.* comers, men who come, 3418.
- Comforth, *s.* comfort, pleasure, 8; Comfurth (Comforth), 859.
- Comforthis, *pr. s.* comforts, 4155; Comfurthis (Comforthez), 3008; Comfurthid, *pt. s.* comforted, strengthened, 3876; Comfurth (Comforth), *imp. s.* comfort, 3239.
- Comliest, *adj. superl.* comeliest, 3887.
- Comly, *adj.* comely, 354, 470, 1086, 1621, 1822; (Comle), 1281.
- Comly, *adv.* in a comely manner, 456; fittingly, 878.
- Comon, *adj.* common, 3895, 5393.
- Comonly, *adv.* publicly, 108.
- Comparrison (Comparison), *s.* comparison, 1721.
- Compas, *s.* compass, circumference, 278.
- Compas, *v.* contrive, 415; Compas, *pr. s.* compasses, contrives, 1361; Compast, *pp.* fashioned, contrived, 3629; constructed, 3219.
- Compere, *s.* peer, equal, 3396.
- Comyn, *adj.* common, *p.* 281, l. 89.
- Comyng (Commyng), *s.* coming, 953.

- Con (Can), 1 *pr. s.* can, 2837; *as auxiliary verb*, did, 115, 673, 2376; Con please, pleased, 3697.
- Conand, *s.* agreement, 5543. "A conande, *condicio, pactum*;" Cath. Angl.
- Concepcion, *s.* conception, 388.
- Concience (Conscience), *s.* conscience, 2422, 2577.
- Condicion, condition, stipulation, 2652.
- Coniurisons, *pl.* incantations, 58, 342. O.F. *conjuroison* (Godefroy).
- Connyng, *s.* knowledge, 4227; (Connyng), 1021.
- Connyng, *adj.* skilful, 2369.
- Conquire, *v.* conquer, 3096; Conquired, *pt. pl.* 209; Conquirid, *pp.* 10, 174.
- Conquires, conqueress, female conqueror, 5105, 5169; Conquyres, 3454; Conquirese, 3711, 3721; Conquiris, 3778.
- Conquirour, *s.* conqueror, 1501; Conquerour, 815; Conquiroire, 1480.
- Consaille (Counsell), *s.* counsel, 832; thought, purpose, 254; Consail, council, 1955; Consaille, counsel, 5359.
- Consaille, *ger.* to take counsel, 618; Consals (Councellys), *pr. pl.* advise, 1509; Consall, 1 *pr. pl.* (we) counsel, 3768.
- Consayue (Consau), *v.* conceive, 835; Consau, *pr. s. subj.* conceive, 3744; Consayued (Consaued), *pt. s.* conceived, contained, 1837; Consayued, *pp.* conceived, 349, 578; Consaynd, 429; Consayued (Consaued), conceived, understood, 2437.
- Constreynes (Constraynes), *pr. s.* constrains, 2496; Constrene, *pr. pl.* compel, 4562.
- Constru (Constrew), *pr. s.* 1 *p.* infer, 1901; Construed, *pp.* construed, made out, 2437.
- Consumed, *pp.* consumed, 894.
- Countenance, countenance, 484; demeanour, 2496.
- Contrarie, *s.* contrary, 5011; Contrari (Contrary), 2422; Contrare (Contray), 3263.
- Contraries (Contrarys) *pr. s.* is contrary to, contravenes, 2205; Contraris, 4323.
- Contre, *s.* country, 39; (Cuntree), 1122; Contries, *pl.* 108; Contres (Cuntres), 1056.
- Conyschance, *s.* cognisance, 3370; (Conyschaunce), badge, 1128; Conyschaunce (Conysaunce); appearance, 2868; Conyschantis, *pl.* tokens, cognisances, badges, emblems of rank, 193.
- Cop, *s.* top, 4890; Coppe, 4789.
- Coppis, *pl.* spiders, 3300. Hence E. *cob-web*, i. e. *cop-web*.
- Corage, *s.* heart, 2243; courage, 2369; Coragez, *pl.* hearts, courageous thoughts, p. 280, l. 35.
- Corageous (Coragious), *adj.* courageous, 1892.
- Corde (Acord), *v.* consent, agree, 2350; Cordis (Cordes), *pr. s.* accords, agrees, 878; Cordid (Cordyt), *pt. s.* agreed, 2652.
- Cordis (Cordez), *pl.* cords, 1521, 2224.
- Corecheffe, *s.* kerchief, 5249.
- Corne, *s.* corn, 3971; Cornes, *pl.* grains, seeds, 1998, 2070; (Cornez), 2025.
- Coronacle, *s.* coronal, circlet, coronet, head-dress, 3451; Coronacles, *pl.* 5130.
- Coronals, *pl.* capitals (of pillars), 3665.
- Corone, crown, 193; Coron, 1128; (Crowne), crown, chief, 2800; Courone (Croune), 2283; Corouns, *pl.* crowns, 5423.
- Coroned, *pt. pl.* crowned, p. 280, l. 31; Coround, *pp.* 5105.
- Coronest, *adj. superl.* most worthy of a crown, chiefest, worthiest, 624; Corounnest (Coroundest), 1910.
- Corporall, *adj.* bodily, 4560.
- Corrupcion, *s.* corruption, 3255.
- Cors, *s.* body, 349, 730\*, 1775, 2542, 2933; Corps (Cors), corpse, 3148; Cors, *s.* body, (living) frame, 3987; Corses, *pl.* corpses, bodies, 3129, 3933, 4454.
- Coruen, *pp.* carved, 129, 3665; (said of mullions), 4896; Coruyn, 426.
- Coruns (Corownez), *pl.* crowns, 1043. See Corone.



- Corruptible, *adj.* corruptible, 3459 ; (Corruptible), mortal, 1878.
- Corwaile, Cornwall, 5671.
- Corynthi (Corinthy), Corinth, 2266.
- Coste, *s.* coast, region, country, province, 1610, 3418, 3590 ; (Cost), 1028 ; Cost (Coste), region, 1843 ; side, 2641 ; Costis, *pl.* coasts, regions, 4407, 5564 ; (Costez), 1204 ; Costes (Costez), sides, 1522.
- Costious, *adj.* costly, precious, 3142, 3451, 4180 ; *put for* Costiousest, most costly, 3330.
- Costis, *pl.* ornaments, costly things, 4180.
- Costreynes, *pr. s.* constrains, forces, 5053. See Constreynes.
- (Cosyn, *for* Chosyn), chosen, 816\*.
- Cote, cottage, 1804.
- Coth (Cothe), disease, 2815. A.S. *cōðu*.
- Cotis, *pl.* coats, 5471.
- Couaitise, *s.* covetousness, 4399.
- Couatus, *adj.* covetous, 4509.
- Couatyng (Covetyng), *s.* coveting, desire, 1016.
- Coue, *s.* hollow, cove, 5427.
- Couent, meeting, assembly, 1576. "A couent, *conuentus* ;" Cath. Angl.
- Couer, *v.* recover, regain, 520, 5608 ; *ger.* 2163 ; Couers, *pr. s. refl.* covers himself, arms himself, 3034 ; Couert (*for* Couerit), *pt. pl.* gained their way, attained, 4815 ; Couerd, *pp.* won, lit. recovered, 3714 ; Couerid (Coueryd), *pp.* won, 1038 ; Couerd, covered, 5427. See Couir.
- Couertours, *pl.* coverings, tent-covers, 4177. "Couerture, a covering, apparel, a coverlet ;" Cotgrave.
- Conet (Couett), *v.* covet, 1754 ; Couet (Couett), 1 *pr. s.* 690 ; Couettis, *pr. s.* covets, 3353 ; (Couates), 2207 ; Couettis, *pr. pl.* desire, 8 ; Couett, *pr. pl. 2 p.* covet, 4442 ; Conet (Couett), *pt. s.* desired, 2542.
- Couir (Couer), *ger.* to recover, gain, get, 1755 ; Couire, 794 ; Couir, *v.* attain, 1362 ; Couirs (Couers), *pr. s.* covers, 1902 ; (Couerys), 3237 ; Couird (Coucred), *pp.* recovered, 2815. See Couer.
- Count, *s.* computation ; At a count (*or* At a-count), by computation, 3614.
- Countid, *pt. s. 1 p.* accounted, esteemed, 2501 ; *pp.* computed, 3338.
- Coupe (Cupe, Cope), *s.* cup, 2937, 2940 ; Coupis, *pl.* 3142, 3702.
- Conple (Cowpyll), *ger.* to couple, 828 ; Couplid, *pp.* 5337.
- Couresere, *s.* courser, 5443 ; Courseris (Coursours), *pl.* 2163.
- Courte, *s.* court, 78, 4275 ; Courete, 213.
- Couthe, *pt. s. 1 p.* knew, 354 ; (Couth), 685 ; Couth, *pt. s.* was able, could, 337 ; Couth, knew, 43 ; Couthe (Kowth), *pt. s.* knew, 2555 ; (Couth), knew how, 835\* ; Couth, *pt. pl.* knew, 25 ; Couth, *pt. pl.* knew, 160 ; (Couth), could, 1439.
- Cowdrife, *adj.* sluggish (Lat. *tarda*), 4097. Lowl. Sc. *caldrife*, *cauld-rife*, cold, slow.
- Coynt, *adj.* curiously arrayed, gaily dressed, 4671 ; Coynte, strange, 412 ; Coynt, curious, 5423. See Cointe.
- Coyntise, *s.* trick, wile, 5233. Godefroy gives 'ruse' as one sense of O.F. *cointise*.
- Cozres (*sic*), *pl.* 3822. Evidently a corrupt reading ; probably for *coferes*, i. e. coffers, boxes, which gives good sense.
- Crabbe-fische, crabfishes, 3892.
- Crabbis, *pl.* crabs, 5506.
- Crabbis, *pr. s. 2 p.* vexest, 5323 ; Crabbid, *pt. s.* made crabbed, angered, vexed, 4566 ; Crabbid, *pp. as adj.* angry, venomous, 3794.
- Craft, *s.* craft, art, 33, 650 ; skill, 3380 ; . work, dealing, 4953 ; Craftis, *pl.* crafts, skilful arts, 125, 414 ; feats, 9 ; employments, 4037.
- Crafti, *adj.* skilful, 3665.
- Craggis, *pl.* crags, 4025 ; Cragis (Craggez), 3375.
- Crasid, *pp.* broken, rough, 4830. (MS. *trasid*, wrongly.) See *crasen* in Mätzner.

- Craton (Crathan), *s.* a poor creature(?), 3078. Cf. Lowl. *Sc. crat*, puny, feeble; also, as a sb., a weakling. Godefroy gives O.F. *craton*, of which the sense is unknown.
- Craue, *ger.* to crave, 4326; (Crauen), to ask, 887; Craue, 2 *pr. pl.* 4442; Craues, *pr. s.* craves, desires, 4497. The last line means—'and every limb craves, as (it) pleases it, according to its own desire.'
- Create, *pp.* created, 3390.
- Creatour, creature, mortal, 3093; (Creature), creature, 1475, 3281; (Creatur), 1707; Creatours, *pl.* 5534.
- Creature, creator, 259.
- (Credylt), *pp.* cradled, 1707.
- Crepis, *pr. pl.* creep, 4025.
- Crest, *s.* crest (of the hill), 4790; crest, 1837; Crestis, *pl.* 3869, 5126.
- Crestyns, *pl.* panniers, vessels for carrying food, &c., 4687. O.F. *crestin*, the same as *cretin*, a sort of pannier; Godefroy.
- Creusses, *pl.* crayfishes, 3864. "*Escrevisse*, a crevice, or crayfish;" Cotgrave.
- Creuensis, *pl.* crevices, 4199; Creu-esse, 4025. "A creuense, *fissura, rima*;" Cath. Engl.
- Crie (Cry), cry, proclamation, 981, 1815, 2154; (Crye), 1604.
- Crie (Crye), *v.* cry, proclaim, 2294; *ger.* 1475; Crie (Cry), *ger.* 2252; Cries, *pr. pl.* cry, 2138; Cried, *pt. s.* 491; *pt. pl.* called out, 959.
- Cried, *pt. s.* created, 4446, 4519; *pp.* 1707, 3390 (*where D. has Create*). O.F. *crier*, to create (Roquefort); Span. *criar*.
- Crisopaces, *pl.* chrysoprases, 5274.
- Crispe, *adj.* curly, i. e. woolly, 4476.
- Cristall, *s.* crystal, 2541, 3221, 5280.
- Cristen, *s.* Christian, 3333.
- Croft, *s.* croft, small field, 3971.
- Croke, *pr. pl.* cross, go sideways, turn aside, 4872.
- Crokid, *adj.* crooked, 5423.
- Crom, *ger.* to cram, push, 4455; (Cromys), *pr. s.* crams, thrusts, 2937.
- Chronaclis (Cronacles), *pl.* chronicles, 940.
- Crosse; Ouire crosse, cross ways, diagonally, 4872.
- Crossis (Crosez), *pr. s.* crosses, 1049; Crosse (Crossyn), *pr. pl.* cross, go across, 2459.
- Croune, *s.* crown, 978; (Crowne), 817; (Corone), 1016; Croune, crown of the head, 121, 231, 639.
- Crowned (Crownyd), *pp.* crowned, 2280.
- Cruell, *adj.* cruel, 2650.
- Cubete, *s.* cubit; Cubete lenth, cubit's length, 3908; Cubettis, *pl.* 3987, 5635; Cubet, *pl.* 3338; Cubetis (Cubettes), 2118.
- Cumbre, *ger.* to oppress, lit. to cumber, 4032; (Combred, *for* Combre), *v.* trouble, vex, 1471.
- Cu[m]furth, 1 *pt. s.* comforted, 3508.
- Cumly, *adj.* comely, 4917. See Comly.
- Cunnyng, *s.* knowledge, 4244. See Connyng.
- (Cuntre), country, 742\*; (Cuntree), 827\*. See Contre.
- Cupido, Cupid, 4508, 4542.
- Cure, *s.* care, anxiety, 3386 (*kyng* is in the *dat.* case); Cures, *pl.* cares, 4275.
- Curre, *s.* cur, dog, 1804; Cure, 748.
- Curses, *s. pl.* courses, 28.
- Cursid, *pp.* cursed, 4509.
- Cursoure (Coursour), courser, horse, 2881; Cursoures, *pl.* 3629; Cursours (Coursours), 2621; Cursers, 3024.
- (Curtasly), *adv.* courteously, 835\*.
- Curtassy, courtesy, 5112; (Curtasy), 2718, 2743; Curtaissy, 9.
- Curtast (Curtasest), *adj. superl.* most courteous, 2388. Read *curtasest*, as in D.
- Curte, *s.* court, 149; (Courte), 887, 900, 981.
- Curten, curtain, 860; Curtyns, *pl.* 4916; (Cortyns), 860; Curteyns (Curtayne), 1521.
- Cussis, *pl.* kisses, 5385.
- Custum (Costome), *s.* custom, 2946.
- Cusus (*for* Curus), Cyrus, 3326; Cusys (Susys), *error for* Curyys, i. e. Cyrus, 3219.

- Cuthe (Couth), *pt. s.* knew how, could, 1364; Cuthe, 1 *pt. pl.* could, 4216; Cuthe (Couth), *pt. pl.* 1412, 1701.
- Cutt (Cutte), *ger.* to cut, 2850; Cutis (Cuttes), *pr. s.* 2599; Cuttis, 3859.
- Cyte, *s.* city, 335; (Cyte), 1362, 2110, 2189; Cytes, *pl.* 72.
- Daies, *pl.* days, 3462, 5529; Dais, 4814; (Dayes), 1172; (Days), 1024; Daies, *gen. pl.* 4810; On dais, for some days, 1363.
- Dale, *s.* dale, valley, 782; Dales, *pl.* 1337.
- Daliance, dalliance, pleasure, 1877.
- Dam (Dame), *gen. dam's*, 1769. See Dame.
- Dam, *s.* dam of a reservoir, the reservoir itself, 3928.
- Dainac; see Damaske.
- Damage, *pr. s.* hurts, 4274.
- Damaging (Damagyng), *s.* injury, 1188.
- Damaske, Damascus, or damask, 4673; Damac (Damask), Damascus, 1141.
- Dame, *s.* dame, lady, 322, 459, 3778, 5263; wife, 2678. See Dam.
- Damme-borde (Dame-borde), *s.* dam-board, sluice-gate, 1857.
- Dampnes, *pr. s.* condemnns, 2661; (Dampned), *pp.* condemned, 757\*.
- Damysens, *pl.* damsons, 4738.
- Dangell, or Daugell, 126. Sense unknown; the reading is probably corrupt.
- Dangird (Dangert), *pp.* legally bound, bound under penalty, 1176.
- Daniell, Daniel, 1655.
- Darid, *pp.* dazed (MS. D. has dasyd), 3044. See *darien* in Mätzner.
- Darius, 882, 895, 902, 1176, 1188, 1777, &c.; Dari, 2009; (Dary), 1958; Dary, 2005, 2066, 2140, 2144; Darie (Dary), 2607; Darye (Dary), 2663; Darys, 2035, 2058; Daris (Daryus), 2772.
- Darke, *v.* lie hid, 4045. See William of Palerne, 17, 1834, 2851, for the phrase 'to darke in a den.'
- Dartis (Dartez), *pl.* darts, 1299, 1396.
- Dart-wondid dart-wounded, wounded with a dart, 225.
- Dasches, *pr. s.* dashes, 3882.
- Dased, *pp.* dazed, 3997; (Dasyd), 3044.
- Dauncid, *pt. pl.* danced, pranced, 2618.
- (Dawes), *pl.* days; (On dawes), in your days, 1766. See Day.
- Dawid, *pt. s.* dawned, 3944, 4773. A.S. *dagian*.
- Dawyng, *s.* dawning, 431. See above.
- Day, *s.* day, 47, 158, 288; life, time, 518, 763\*; Daye (Day), 1802; Day, death-day, 1100; Days (Dayes), *gen. sing.* of the day; A litill days, a little of the day, soon, 858; Dayis, *pl.* days, 3955; Days, days (of life), 1112.
- Daynte, *s.* novelty, wonderful thing, 5298; dignity, 229. See Deynes.
- Dayntefull, *adj.* dainty, delicate, 4274.
- Day-raw, *s.* dawn, 392; Day-rawe, 5055. So in Allit. Poems, ed. Morris.
- Debate, *s.* strife, 4404.
- Debate, *v.* debate, 5416; Debatis (Debates), *pr. s.* fights, 1217.
- (Debates), *error for* Abates, 2506.
- Debonar, *adj.* courteous, p. 279, l. 12.
- Debonerte, *s.* humility, 3274.
- Declare, *v.* declare, 254, 442; Declaris, *pr. s.* declares, 514; (Declares), 1793.
- Declines, *pr. s.* hangs down, 5322; (Declynes), bows, 2289; Declynes (Declines), sinks, 2714; Declyne, *pr. pl.* 1 *p.* set aside, 4263; Declined, *pt. s.* 1 *p.* crushed, brought down, 2334.
- Decre, *s.* decree, decretal, 1583.
- Ded (Deth), *s.* death, 1112. See Dede.
- Dede, *s.* deed, 313; action, 3545; Dedis (Dedes), *pl.* deeds, 1095, 1863, 2058. See Deyd.
- Dede, *adj.* dead, 540, 718, 935, 1166, 1233, 2100, 3130, 3934. See Dee, Deyde.
- Dede, *s.* death, 532, 1789, 2661, 3886, 4798; (Deth), 3205. See Ded, Deth.

- Dedely, *adj.* mortal, 1877; Dede-like, 4057. See Dedly.
- Dedeyne (Disdayne), *s.* disdain, 3155; anger, 2942; (Dysdane), disdain, 2424; (Dysdene), 1711.
- Dedly, *adj.* mortal, 2733; (Dedlich), 1879. See Dedely.
- Dedly, *adv.* mortally, 1396.
- Dee, *ger.* to die, 4055; (Dey), *v.* 720; Dee, 1 *pr. s.* 400; Deed, *pt. pl.* 3069. See Deis.
- Deele, *s.* deal, part, 5568.
- Deere, *s.* harm, injury, 4235. See Dere.
- Defaute, *s.* default, lack of food, want, 2153, 4596.
- Defe, *adj.* deaf, 4747.
- Defence (*pl.* Defenceez), *s.* defence, 1151.
- Defend (Defende), *ger.* to oppose, 2139; Defend, *v.* defend, 349; Defendis, *pr. s.* forbids (to keep), 4455; (Defenden), *pr. pl.* defend, 1298; Defend (Defenden, *pr. pl.*), *vt. pl.* (with of), kept off, 1406; (Defendyng), *pres. pt.* defending, 1031.
- Defendoure, *s.* defender, 429.
- Defirred, *pp.* made to differ, 4223.
- Degradyd (Degrad), *ger.* to overcome (Lat. *superare*), 2670; De-grayd (Degradyd), *pp.* degraded, put down, overcome, 3125.
- Degree, *s.* degree, rank, 485; (Degree), rank, 3407. See below.
- Degree, *s.* step, 3344; Degrece (*for* Degrees), *pl.* steps, stairs, 1183, 3339, 5251; (Degrees), 3216; To degrece, to the steps, 3446; Degrees (*a double plural*), steps, 4878, 4887, 5636.
- Deis (Dyes), *pr. s.* dies, 1459; Deid, *pt. s.* 3448, 3471; Deid, *pp.* dead, 3476. See Dee, Dede, *adj.*
- Delauyly (Delavy). *adv.* abundantly, 1351. Cf. *E. lavish*. Godefroy gives: "*deslavage*, à la manière d'un grand lavage."
- Dele, *s.* part, portion, 432, 1368, 3475, 4391; (MS. adele), 521; A fewe dele, a small portion, 3703; Grete dele, great deal, 544; Iik dele, each bit of it, 3493; Neuire a dele (Neuer a dele), never a bit, 2913; Neuer a dele, not at all, 1355. See Deele.
- Dele, *ger.* to deal, to give, to impart, 736, 3475, 4058; (Dele), 1015; Dele, *v.* deal, 5032; Dele, 2 *pr. pl.* distribute, 4544; Dele, *pr. pl.* mark out, divide, apportion, 3992; Delt (Delytn), 1 *pt. pl.* dealt, 2091.
- Delingis, *pl.* dealings, 451.
- Delite, *s.* delight, 265; Delitis, *pl.* pleasures, nuptial joys, 3743.
- Deliteable, *adj.* pleasant, 4303.
- Delinere, *for* Deliuered, *pp.* delivered, 3564.
- Delume, *miswritten for* Deluuie, *s.* deluge, 4942. See the note.
- Delyte, *pr. pl.* please, 4381.
- Delyuire, *ger.* to deliver, 5218; Delyuire (Delyver), *v.* deliver, give; hence Let delyuire him, let be delivered to him, 997; Delyuird, *pt. s.* speedily destroyed, 3930; Delyuerd, *pp.* delivered, 548.
- Demaunde (Demande), *s.* demand, request, 1096; Demayndes (Demaundes), *pl.* demands, 3411.
- Deme, *v.* judge, esteem, 2122; decree, 1260; *ger.* to be considered, 5298; Deme, 1 *pr. s.* deem, consider, 1849; Demes, *pr. s.* represses (Lat. *reprimis*), 3349; (Demys), condemnns, 2661; Me demys, judges for me, 4576; Deme, *pr. pl.* 2 *p.* account, 4546; (Demys), *pr. pl.* assure, 3069; Demys, *pr. pl.* tell (us), 1231; Deme, *pr. pl. subj.* 2 *p.* decide, 400; Demed, *pt. s.* 1 *p.* decreed, ordered, 2663; *pt. s.* judged, 593; Demed, *pp.* decreed, doomed, 836; (Demyd), doomed, 2164; condemned, 757\*; appointed, 98, 313; (Deme), *imp. s.* judge, 735\*.
- Demerlayke, *s.* magic, jugglery, 414. See *duemerlak* in Mätzner.
- Demyd, *pt. s.* dimmed, 561.
- Den, *s.* a den, 1769; Dennes, *pl.* dens, 4045, 4354.
- Denys, Dionysius, *but put for* Dionysus, i. e. Bacchus, 3556.
- Departid, *pp.* parted, divided, 1941.
- Depaynt, *pp.* painted, coloured, 3692; Depayntid, painted, 5305.

- Depe, *adj.* deep, 225, 265, 336, 700, 1866.
- Depe, *s.* deep, sea, 64; (Depe), 1308.
- Depely, *adv.* deeply, passionately, 919; greatly, 1673; heavily, 1698; (Deply), deeply, 1186, 1363, 1396.
- Depest (Dyppest), *adj. superl.* deepest, 712.
- Depresse, *v.* cast down; Do me depresse, cause me to be slain, 5030.
- (Depriues), *pr. s.* deprives, 2311; Deprined (Depriffyd), *pp.* deprived, 2845; Depryued (Depriued), 895; (Deprevett), 1469.
- Depurid (Depuryd), *pp.* thoroughly cleansed, 2768.
- Dere, *adj.* dear, 1024, 1545; beloved, 479; precious, costly, 1655, 4438; pleasing, 1638; *as sb.* dear one, 265; For dere halde, hold dear, 4421.
- Dere, *adv.* dearly, 2122, 5143.
- Dere, *adj. comp.* dearer, liefer, 540.
- Dere, *s.* harm, 4322, 5554. See Deere.
- Dere, *v.* harm, 3351; Deris (Deres), *pr. s.* injures, 2041. A.S. *derian*.
- Derely (Derly), *adv.* dearly, earnestly, 2352; (Derely), heartily, 2699.
- Dere-worth, *adj.* precious, dear, 3194; (Darworth), worthy, noble, 2679.
- Derfe, *adj.* bold, 1958, 2667, 3850; (Derf), 3157; Derfe, presumptuous, 1811; strong, 2140; noble, 2772; steep, huge, 1211; rugged, 3868; severe, 2091, 2424; Derf, mighty, 2489; (Derf), strong, bold, 2607; (Derfe), firm, bold, 1024. A.S. *deorf*.
- Derfely (Darfly), *adv.* boldly, angrily, 2942; Derfly, boldly, 3006; (Derfly), 2489; Derfley, strongly, 1406.
- Derke, *s.* dark, night, darkness, 4773; (Dirk), 687; (Dyrke), 1505.
- Derknes (MS. Dreknes), darkness, 561.
- Derling, *s.* favourite, 3442.
- Derne, *adj.* secret, 4045. A.S. *derne*.
- Derrest, *adj. superl.* dearest, 1909, 2823; most worthy, 4644; most valuable, 5180.
- Dese, *s.* dais, throne, high seat, 47, 479, 902, 1720, 1841, 2009, 2066, 3085, 4214; (Deyse), 2924.
- Desert, *s.* desert, 406.
- Desiris, *pr. s.* desires, 922; (Desired), *pt. s.* desired, 922; Desyrid, *pp.* 5146.
- (Despersed), *pp.* dispersed, 1941.
- Despetously (Dyspytussly), *adv.* shamefully, 746.
- Destaned, *pt. s. impers.*; þam destaned, it was destined for them, 4115; Destaned, *pp.* destined, 313, 518; (Destinate), 692, 763\*, 836; Destand (Destinate), 809; Destayned (Destanet), fated, 1100.
- Destany, destiny, 706.
- (Destinate); see Destaned.
- Det (Dett), *s.* a debt, 1849; Dett (Dette), due, 895; Dettis (Dett), *pl. dues*, 887.
- Dete (Deteys, *pl.*), *s.* writing, letter, tale (lit. ditty), 2726.
- Deth, *s.* death, 512, 744, 836, 966; (Dede), 2196; (Deyde), 922; Dethe (Deth), 957; (Dede), 720, 1263. See Dede, Ded.
- Detiraty, *Lat.* Tyrum, 5596.
- Deu[i]dis, 2 *pr. s.* dividest, 4515.
- Devill, *s.* devil, 4487; Deuels, *pl.* devils, 4515, 5578.
- Deuire (Deuer), *s.* duty, 867; (Di-uour), 2383. F. *devoir*.
- De-vise, *ger.* to tell, 4919; (Deuised), *pp.* explained, 1905.
- Devoide, *ger.* to destroy, to get rid of, 3625; to escape, 2061; Deuoide (Voyde), *v.* escape, avoid, 2424; (Deuodes), *pr. s.* escapes, 2061; Devoide, *pr. pl. 1 p.* eschew, 4327; Deuoyde, 2 *p.* are free from, avoid, 4602; Deuoydid (Deuoyded), *pt. s.* hid away, 2938; Deuoidid, *pt. pl. 1 p.* emptied out, got rid of, 4218; Devoided, *pp.* avoided, put away, 4261; Devoidid, destroyed, 3875; Deuoidis, *imp. pl. 2 p.* lay aside, 4959.
- Devour, *s.* duty, p. 279, l. 20.
- Denowrid, *pp.* devoured, 3875.
- Deuydid, *pp.* divided, scattered, sundered, 2790.
- Deuyl's, *gen.* devil's, 414; Deuyls, *pl.* devils, 342; fierce animals, monsters, 4090.

- Deuynes, *pr. s.* divines, 145; (Devynnez), considers, 1363.
- Deuys, *s.* device, shape, 359; (Devyse), design, will, 830.
- Deuyse, *imp. s.* think, 4050; Deuysid, *pt. s.* perceived, 3053; made out, 5099; Devysid, *pp.* looked at, considered, 4612; (Denysid), devised, portrayed, 280; (Devysed), spoken, said, 2511. See below.
- Deuysid (Devyse(d) hath), *pt. s.* made out, read, 2691. (A bad use of the word; *deuyse* is rather to write or indite.)
- Dewe, *s.* dew, 3801, 4344.
- Dewe (Dew), *s.* due, right, 1176
- Dewessis, *pl.* goddesses, 3555. A curious fem. form of F. *dieu*.
- Dewis, *pr. pl.* avail, 4438. (A bad spelling of *dowis*; see Dowe.) Cf. Dedit below.
- (Dewly), *adv.* duly, 763\*.
- Dewt, *error for* Dowt (= doute), fear, 2618. Cf. Dewis above.
- (Deyd), *s.* dead, 1071. See Dede.
- (Deyde), *adj.* dead, 933\*. See Dede.
- Deyne (Dene), *s.* disdain, 1863.
- Deyne, *s.* dell, valley, 4075, 5421. A.S. *denu*.
- Deyne (Digne), *adj.* worthy, 882, 1958.
- Deynes, *pr. s. impers.* it deigns (me), i. e. (I) deign, 830; Deynes, *pr. s.* is it worth; Quat deynes *zow*, lit. what is it worth your while, why is it worth your while, 4006; Deyne, *pr. s. subj.* may deign, 3475; Deyned, *pt. s.* was thought worthy, 4225; Deyned, *pt. s. refl.* deigned; Deyned him na daynte, no dignity allowed him, his dignity did not allow him, 229.
- Deynes, *pr. pl. 2 p.* are disdainful, are filled with disdain, scorn (at), 4579. Misused for *dedeynes*
- Dialiticus (Dialecticus), dialectics, 1583.
- Diademe, *s.* diadem, 3240.
- Diates, *pl.* diets, feasts, 4438. See Diete.
- Did, *pt. s.* did, 414; put, 3440; Didd, did, acted (so to her), 346; Did on, put on, 487; D'id, *pt. pl.* did, 593; put, 3329.
- Die, *v.* die, 3298; *ger.* 2003; (Dye), 2164; Die (Dye), 1 *pr. s.* 1191; Dies, *pr. s.* 5430; (Dyes), 1908; Died, *pt. s.* died, 1908; Dies (Dyez), *imp. pl.* die, 1033. See Dye.
- Diete, *s.* diet, 4274. See Diates.
- Dietes, *pr. pl.* feed, 4738.
- Differris, *pr. pl. 1 p.* differ, 4617.
- Digne, *adj.* worthy, 1720.
- Dignite, *s.* dignity, 3240; Dignites (Dignitez), honours, 1905.
- Dike (Diche), *s.* ditch, 3274; (Dyke), 700, 712; Dikis (Dykez), *pl.* dikes, ditches, 2986. See Dyke.
- Dilectacion, *s.* delight, p. 279, l. 15; Delectacion, p. 280, l. 36.
- Dindimus, 4235; Dindyn, 4214.
- Dingis (Dynges), *pr. s.* dashes, strikes, 2041.
- Dint, *s.* blow, 3997; Dintes, *pl.* 3933; Dintis (Dyntes), 2091.
- Dire, *adj.* dear (?), 5349. (A bad spelling; read *dere*.)
- Discende, *ger.* to descend, to fall, 3051; *pr. pl.* descend, 4770; Discendid, *pt. pl.* descended, fell, 3654.
- Discheualer, *adj.* having ruffled hair, with loose hair, 3687. (Insert a comma after this word.)
- Disc[i]ple, *s.* disciple, 2124.
- Disciplyne, *s.* disciple, 4391.
- Disclosid, *pt. pl.* opened, 3632.
- Discrecion, discretion, 4243.
- (Diseassyd), *pp.* disturbed, 2842\*.
- Disese (Disease), disease, 2549.
- Dishonoure (Dishonor), dishonour, 1866.
- Disire, *pr. pl. 2 p.* desire, 4243; Disire (Desirre), 1 *pr. s.* 1673; Disired (Desirred), *pt. s.* 919.
- Disolatis, *pl.* desolate places, 4354.
- Dispersous, *pr. s.* reviles, insults, 746.
- Dispice (Dispyse), *v.* despise, 2504; Dispices, *pr. s.* 3985; Dispisis (Dispysys), 746; (Dispysez), 1709; Dispice, 2 *pr. pl.* 4222; Dispiced, *pt. s.* 1709.
- Dispite, *s.* contempt, scorn, 1711, 2497; (Dispyte), 1863.
- Dispoyle, *ger.* to despoil, rob, 2494.
- Dispoyse, *v.* dispose, p. 279, l. 15.



- Disserit, *s.* desert, 336, 3485, 3798 ; (Deserte), 2585.
- Dissires, *pl.* desires, 4289.
- Disspaire (Dispare), *s.* despair, 3269.
- Distourbid, *pp.* disturbed, 5159.
- Distressid (Distryssyd), *pp.* distressed, 2781.
- Distreyne, *v.* control, rule, govern, 4244. (See the note.)
- (Distrobles), *pr. s.* disturbs, 3167\*.
- Distroy, *v.* destroy, 1454, 1639, 1658 ; *ger.* 912 ; Distruye, *v.* 187 ; (Distroy), *ger.* 1027 ; Distruy (Distroye), *ger.* to destroy, 2216 ; (Distroyde), *pt. s.* 1941 ; (Distroyd), *pp.* 2088.
- Distruccion, *s.* destruction, 3253 ; 3733 (for *he pat* read *pat he*).
- Disworship, *s.* dishonour, p. 280, l. 37.
- Disyre, *v.* desire, wish for, 3563.
- Dite, *pr. s.* 1 *p.* indite, 1841 ; Ditis (Dytes), *pr. s.* indites, dictates, 2726 ; Ditis (Ditez), indites, 1909 ; Dites, commands, 3462 ; (Ditez), indites, 2005.
- Dites, *pl.* editings, declarations, 3509 ; sayings, 4558 ; Ditis, words, 1823 ; sayings, 1954 ; (Detes), writings, 1908 ; Dities, *pl.* greetings, 4214 ; sayings, words, 4695 ; (Dytes), sayings, 2411 ; (Ditez), 2009 ; (Dytes), letters, 2066. See Dytez.
- Diuiné, *pp.* explained, 1905.
- Diuinour (Deuinour), *s.* diviner, interpreter of dreams, 1355 ; wise man, 2393 ; diviner, sorcerer, 406, 431 ; Diuinours (Deuynours), sages, 1545 ; (Dyuyynours), augurs, 2349.
- Diuyse, *s.* order, 4207.
- Dizans, *pl.* (put for Dizans), sayings, 4307. *F. disant*, pres. pt. of *dire*. Cf. l. 4309, which speaks of *listening* to them.
- Diztes (Dytes), *pr. s.* appoints, 2662 ; Digtis, *refl.* prepares himself, 922 ; Digt, *pt. s.* got ready, 2005 ; (Dight), *pt. s. refl.* prepared himself, 922 ; Digt (Dight), *pt. pl. refl.* prepared themselves, 2472 ; buried, 3130 ; Digt, *pp.* dight, destined, 744 ; clothed, 232, 322, 3417 ; (Dight) prepared, ready, 3013 ; ordained, 1504 ; Digt (Dyght), *pp.* arrayed, treated, 3155 ; handled, treated, 3205.
- Do, *ger.* to do, 98, 736, 1260 ; *v.* 1071 ; Doo, 2 *pr. pl.* 4575 ; Do, *imp. s.* 2 *p.* ; Do on, don, put on, 5180 ; Do kith, do tell, 5168 ; Do, *imp. pl.* do ; Do lendis, do go on, 4992 ; Doo (Doys), *imp. pl.* 2 *p.* cause, 3422 ; (To do), i. e. to be done, 735\*.
- (Do), *s.* deed, 2733.
- Dobbed, *pt. s.* dubbed, i. e. arrayed, 3447.
- (Dochre), 1647. Prob. an error for *dochee*, i. e. *duchy*. Or it may be meant for *duchery*, like *E. dukery*, with the same sense.
- Doctoneus, *proper name*, 2122.
- Doctour, doctor, 232, 432 ; Doctours, *pl.* 1545, 1583 ; teachers, 4558.
- Doctryne, doctrine, 4225 ; Doctrine (Doctryne), 1655.
- (Doghty), *adj. pl. as sb.* doughty men, 2627, 3006, 3061, 3130, 3157.
- (Dokes), *pl.* dukes, 1326.
- Dole, *s.* a portion, part, 736, 3727 ; Forthing-dole, fourth part, 3844 ; (Dele), part, 2687.
- Dole, *s.* dool, grief, sorrow, trouble, 1877, 2472, 3863. *F. deuil*.
- Dolour, *s.* pain, 3305 ; Doloure, dolour, 935.
- Dom, *adj.* dumb, 4747.
- Dome, *s.* doom, judgment, sentence, fate, 521, 720, 1095, 2164, 3253, 3457, 5414 ; condemnation, 2602 ; trial, 2196 ; To dome, in accordance with judgment, justly, 4250 ; Domes, *pl.* sentences, decrees, 593 ; fates, fatal circumstances, 706, 736.
- (Domesman), *error for Dones man* ; see Dones.
- Domesmen, *pl.* magistrates, 4421 ; executioners, 3202.
- Domestyné, Demasthenes, 2352, 2393, 2436 ; Domestiane (Domestyn), 2411.
- Dompe, *v.* dive down, descend swiftly, fall, 4487. See *dumpen* in Mätzner.
- Don, *imp. p.* don, put on, 3240. *Short for do on.*

- Done, *pp.* caused, made, done, 346, 1186; put, 3476; destroyed, 3713; (Done), ended, 692.  
 (Done), *adv.* down, 2088. See Doune.  
 Dones, *in phr.* Quat dones man, i. e. a man of what make, what sort of man, 2906, 5167. (See note, p. 304.)  
 Dones men; þa dones men, those men of that kind, such men, 3202; þe dionesmen, 1811. (But prob. in both cases an error for *domesmen* (as in D.), i. e. judges, great men, nobles.) See Dones, and see Domesmen.  
 Dore-nayle, *s.* door-nail, Dom as a dore-nayle, dumb as a door-nail, 4747. Cf. 'deaf as a door-nail,' a proverb.  
 Dos, *pr. s. 2 p.* dost, 5167; (Dose), 2 *pr. s. as fut.* shalt do (*read* dose on = shalt put on), 3240; Dose, *pr. s.* does, 226, 406; (Doys), 793; Dose him (Doys hym), goes, departs, 2678; Dose him, *pr. s.* goes, gets him (out), 2181; Dose, *pr. s. as fut.* will do, 4250; Dos (Doys) on, makes one (of his men), 3111; Does him furthe (hym furth), advances, 1024; Dose, *pr. pl.* do, 528; Dose þam in, go in, 902. See Duse.  
 Doubeletis, *pl.* doublets, 4673.  
 Douce, *fem. adj.* sweet one, 830.  
 Doufe, *s.* dove, 4533. See Dowfis.  
 Doughty, *adj. as sb.* valiant men, 3205. In D. 2349, it is better to *read* douth, as in A.  
 Doukand, *pres. part.* ducking, diving, 4090.  
 Doune, *adv.* down, 332, 452, 547; (Downe), 791; (Doun), 853; Doun (Downe), 1183; (Done), 2088.  
 Dounes, *pl.* downs, hills, 3486, 4045.  
 Doute, *s.* doubt, 5610; terror, fear, 2015; (Dowte), 1166.  
 Doute, *ger.* to fear, 1965; (*for* Doutes), *pr. s.* fears, 532; (Dout), 2 *pr. pl.* fear, 1801; Dout, 2 *pt. pl.* feared, 3509.  
 Douth, *s.* manhood; *also, collectively,* a band of young men, a band, host, army, soldiery, 1647, 2100, 2349, 2627, 2663, 2733, 2775, 5006, 3061, 3130, 3157, 3205, 3351, 3890, 3928, 4113. A.S. *duguð*, manhood, army; cf. G. *Tugend*.  
 (Dow), 2015. A false reading; *read* ne doute, as in A.  
 Dowble, *adj.* double; Be dowble, by double, twofold, 3322.  
 Dowe, *pr. s. 1 p.* avail, am able (to do), 4058. A.S. *dugan*.  
 Dowfis, *s.* doves, 5604. See Doufe.  
 Dowis, *pl.* doves, 3937. See note.  
 (Downe), *adv.* down, 730\*, 2057.  
 (Dowte), *s.* doubt, 2196.  
 Doykis (Dukez), *pl.* dukes, 791.  
 (Doyngesz), *pl.* doings, 1823.  
 Doztir, *s.* daughter, 3315, 5253; (Doghter), 823, 2633.  
 Dotyly, *adv.* doughtily, 5590.  
 Drabland, *part. pres.* trailing, 232. M.E. *drablen*, to dirty, Prompt. Parv.; Sc. *drabble*, to dirty; hence prov. E. *drabble*, to draggle in the mire (Halliwell).  
 Drafe, *pt. s.* drove, went quickly, rushed, 336, 487, 561, 712; came, 2035; (Draue), 1141; (Drof), 2585; Drafe (Drofe), went (to meet him), 2906; (Drafe hym), *pt. s.* went, gat him (out), 2181; (Drafe), 1 *pt. pl.* drove, dealt (blows), 2091.  
 Dragon, *s.* dragon, 378, 451; Dragons, *pl.* dragons, 3868, 4792; Dragons, *gen. sing.* dragon's, 359.  
 Dragon-hame, *s.* dragon-covering, 487. A.S. *hama*, a covering.  
 (Drawe), *ger.* to draw, 818\*; Drawis (Drawes), *pr. s.* draws, pulls, 1308; (Drawys), comes, 2924; Drawis (Drawes), *pr. pl.* draw, 706; Drawe, *imp. s.* draw, go, 1769; Drawen (Drawyn), *pp.* drawn, 3269. See Drazes.  
 Drazes (Drawez), *pr. s.* draws, drags, 1857; Drazen, drawn, hence covered, 4207; (Drawen), drawn, acquired, tried to get, 2734. See Drawe.  
 Drazt, *s.* drawing, picture, 280; Drazte (Draught), draught, 1106; drawing (of a bow), 1067.  
 Drechet, *pp.* vexed, spoilt, 4942; Drechid, destroyed, 1106. A.S. *dreccan*, *dreccean*, to vex.



- Dred (Drede), *s.* dread, fear, 2140 ; Drede, 2015.
- Dred, 1 *pr. s.* dread, fear, 400 ; Dredis, *pr. s.* 532, 669 ; Dred, *pp.* afraid, 2489, 2913 ; Dred, *imp. s.* dread thou, 98 ; Drede, *imp. s.* fear, 322.
- Dredfull, *adj.* dreadful, 359.
- Dredles, *adv.* without dread, *i. e.* doubtless, 1472 ; (Dredles), 1965.
- Dreis, *pr. s.* endures, 531. *Sc. dree.* See Dreze.
- Dreme, *s.* dream, 474.
- Dreme, *v.* dream, 346 ; Dremyd, *pt. s. refl.* 432.
- Drench, *v.* be drowned, 3274 ; Drenches, *pr. s.* drowns, 1308 ; Drenchis (Drenchez), 1857 ; Drenchyd, *pt. s. subj.* should drown, 2590 ; Drenchid, *pp.* drowned, 5506.
- (Drenchett), *error for* Drechett, *pp.* destroyed, 1106. See Drechet.
- Drenke (Drynkez, *pl.*), *s.* drink, potion, 2564.
- Drepars (Drepers), *pl.* murderers, slayers, 3422.
- Drepe, *ger.* to kill, slay, 867, 1777, 3632 ; Drepis, 1 *pr. pl.* 4291 ; *pr. pl.* 4546 ; Drepid (Drepyd), *pt. s.* slew, killed, 1067 ; Drepid, *pt. pl.* 5562 ; Drepid, *pp.* killed, 3169, 3713, 4134, 4734, 5350 ; (Drepyd), 744, 961, 1233. *A.S. drepan*, *Ice.* *drepa*.
- Drepe, *adj.* dreary, 4804. (But the MS. reading *dreze* should have been retained ; see Dreze, *adj.*)
- Drerely, *adv.* drearily, sadly, 976 ; Drerily, sorrowfully, 2699.
- Drery, *adj.* dreary, sorrowful, sad, 2472, 2989, 3085.
- Dressis (Dressyd, *pt. s.*), *pr. s.* directs, sends, 1711 ; (Dresse), 2 *pr. s. subj.* appoint, 801\* ; Drest (Dressyd), *pp.* dressed, adorned, 2801. See Drissis, Drysse.
- Dreunyn, *pp.* driven, 1647, 3305 ; (Dréven), passed, 1337 ; (Dryven), gone forward, 687.
- Drewe (Drew), *pt. s.* drew near, 1337 ; Drewe *vp.* 336.
- Dreze (Dre), *v.* suffer, endure, 3194. *Sc. dree.* See Dreis.
- Dreze, *adj.* tedious, weary, long, 4441 ; severe, 2091. See below.
- Dreze, *adj.* tedious, wearisome, 4804. This is the reading of the MS., and should have been retained ; see the footnote. See *drež* in Mätzner.
- Dreze, *s.* annoyance (lit. tediousness), 5578. See *dreze* in Mätzner.
- Dreze, *pt. pl.* drew, 3629, 5554. See Drawe.
- Drežest, *adj. superl.* chief, greatest, most considerable, 5568. *Lit.* 'most tedious,' see Dreze, *adj.*
- Drežt (Drožt), *s.* length, extent, 1112. Spelt *dreight* in the Troy-book, l. 10,633. See Drižt.
- Drifes, *pr. s.* drives, 225 ; Driffe (Dreffe), *pr. pl. refl.* drive themselves, endeavour 2733. See Drue, Dryfe.
- Drifte, *s.* drift, 1756.
- Drinke, *s.* drink, 1106.
- Drinkles, *adj.* drinkless, without drink, 3798 ; Drinkles, 4679.
- Drissis, *pr. s.* prepares, arrays, disposes, 3182 ; Drised (Dressyd), *pp.* dressed, robed, 1935. See Drysse.
- Drue (Dryve), *ger.* drive, scour, 1198 ; Driues (Dryves), *pr. pl.* 1396 ; Driuand (Dryvand), *pr. pt.* driving, hurrying, 882. See Drifes.
- Drize, *s.* interval, space of time, 4788. See Drižt, Drežt.
- Drižt, *s.* duration, length, interval, 4874, 5062. See Drežt, Drize.
- Drižt, *s.* host ; O drižt, in a host, 3868. *A.S. dryht, driht.*
- Drižten, *s.* a lord, the Lord, 809 ; Drižtin, 3457, 5400 ; Drižten (Drihten), 1260 ; (Dryhten), 1472 ; Drižten (Dryhten), 2734 ; (Dryhtyn), 3291 ; Drižtyn, 518 ; Drižten, *pl.* lords, 3555 ; Drižtins, 4546 ; gods, 4183, 5118 ; Drižtens (Drihtenez), *gen.* Lord's, 1504. *A.S. dryhten.*
- Dromondaris, *pl.* dromedaries, 3850, 4792.
- Dromonds, *pl.* swift vessels, 64. *Low Lat. dromondus*, from *Gk. δρόμων*, a swift ship.

- Dronken, *pp.* drunken, drunk, 2936; Dronkin, 4552.
- Dronkynnes, *s.* drunkenness, 3351.
- Drope, *s.* drop, 3863, 4941. See the note to l. 4941.
- Dropis (Dropes), *pr. s.* drops, lets drop, i. e. discloses, 1363; Dropid, *pp.* dropped, 3801.
- Drones (Draſes), *pl.* droves, flocks, 1211; (Drawes), 1233.
- Droune, *v.* be drowned, 3274; Drowned, *pt. s.* was drowned, 3032; Droune, *pr. pl. subj.* be drowned, 2590.
- Drowe, *pt. pl.* drew, 3024. See Droze, Drawe.
- (Drowpys), *pr. s.* droops, falls, 734\*.
- Droze, *pt. s.* drew, drew nigh, 4773; (Drogh), drew, 1067; (Droght, error for Drogh), 2963; Droze, *pt. pl.* drew, 3847, 5478; went, 3798. See Drawe, Drowe.
- Druits, *pl.* friends, 5123. O.F. *dru*, *dru*, a friend; see Godefroy, *s. v. dru*; also Lex Salica, ed. Hessels and Kern, *s. v. druchte*.
- Drye, *s.* dry land, 5554.
- Dryfe (Dryve), *ger.* to drive, 1777; Dryffe, *v.* drive, hasten, 2860; Dryfes (Dryffes), *pr. s.* drives, 1231; Dryfes, *pr. pl.* 64; (Dryfen), drive, rush, 3202; Dryfuys (= Dryfvys), *pr. pl.* they drive, 791. See Drifes, Driue.
- Dryi, *adj.* dry, 4093.
- (Drynched), *pt. s.* drowned, 3072. See Drench.
- Drynke, *pr. pl.* drink, 3816.
- Drysnynge, *s.* drizzling, few drops, 3801. From A.S. *drosen*, dregs (Leo).
- (Drysse), *v.* prepare, 2860; Drysse, 1 *pr. s.* I direct, send, 5123. See Dressis, Drissis.
- Dryue (Dryfe), *v.* drive, go, 2860; Dryues (Dryvez), *with vp, pr. s.* drives, sends, 718; Dryue[s], drives on, 3061.
- Duale, *v.* poison, put to a mortal sleep, 5026. Cf. *dwale* in P. Plowman.
- Duchepers (Docesperes), *pl.* peers (lit. douce-peres), 791. O.F. *doze pers*, the twelve peers (of France).
- Ducsses, *pl.* 1965. An obvious error for Dueses, q. v.
- Duelle (Dwelle), *ger.* to dwell, 830; Duell (Dwell), *v.* remain (so), 2842; Duellis, *pr. s.* dwells, remains, 2989; Duell, 1 *pr. pl.* 4050, 4355; Duells, 4354; Duellis, *pr. pl.* dwell, 5534; Duellid (Dwellyd), *pt. s.* dwelt, 913, 2848; Duellid (Dwellid), *pt. pl.* 1045; Duelled, 3795.
- Duesses, *pl.* goddesses, 4515, 4558, 5114; *miswritten* Ducsses, 1965. O.F. *dieusses*, goddess; Roquefort.
- Duke, *s.* duke, leader, general, 1211, 1231, 1442; (Duk), 1879; Dukis, *pl.* 64, 480; (Dokez), 1141; Duykis, 47.
- Duly (Dewly), *adv.* duly, 836, 895.
- Durand (Endurand), during; Durand his lyfe, while his life endures, 1188. See Dure.
- Dure, *v.* endure, last, 540, 4055; Dures, *pr. s.* 1687; Durid, *pt. s.* 5610; Dured, *pt. s.* endured, lasted, lived through, 158.
- Dure, *s.* door, p. 282, l. 122.
- (Durely), *adv.* with difficulty, hence (*perhaps*) mournfully, 976. (Apparently only used for the alliteration; cf. *dure*, difficult, in Halliwell.)
- Durst, 1 *pr. s. subj.* if I durst, 1673; (Durst), 2 *pt. s.* durst, 1966.
- Dusan, *adj.* dozen, twelve, 280.
- Drse him (Dose hym), *pr. s.* goes, lit. does him, 2299. See Dos.
- Dust (Duste), dust, 782.
- Dute, *adj.* afraid, 3555. From O.F. *duter*, *douter*, to fear.
- Duykis, *pl.* dukes, 47. See Duke.
- Duztiest, *adj. superl.* doughtiest, 3654.
- Dwaze (Drawgh), *s.* a feeble person, puny creature, 1752. Jamieson gives Scot. *dwaub*, a feeble person, *dwable*, flexible, weak, *dwaffil*, pliable. The spelling *drawgh* probably stands for *dwaugh*.
- Dwerze, *s.* dwarf, 1752. A.S. *dweorg*.
- Dwinyng (MS. A. dwinnyng, MS. D. dwynnyng), a diminutive person, 1752. From A.S. *dwinan*, to dwindle.

- Dyademe, *s.* diadem, 3329; (Diademe), 2801.  
 Dyanaas (*Dubl. MS.* Dianas, *for* Dianas), *gen.* Diana's, 2299.  
 (Dyd), *pt. pl.*; (Dyd þaim), went, 902.  
 Dye, *ger.* to die, 1100, 1874, 2155; (Dy), 692; Dyi (Dye), *v.* 1260; Dye, *pr. s.* 1 *p.* die, 990; Dyi (Dye), 1638. See Die.  
 Dyke bothum, bottom of the ditch or dyke, 712. See Dike.  
 Dym, *adj.* dim, 5395.  
 Dymed (Demmyd), *pt. s.* grew dim, 782.  
 Dymly, *adv.* dimly, faintly, 718.  
 Dyn, *s.* din, noise, 2618; (Dyne), 935.  
 Dyndyn, Dindimus, 4644.  
 Dyntis, *pl.* blows, 451.  
 (Dytez), *pl.* enditings, words, 2842\*. See Dites.  
 Dyuerse, *adj.* diverse, 85.  
 Ebland, *prep.* amongst, 160, 3723 (where it follows its case), 4023, 4086; Eblande, 4315, 5444. Dan. *iblandt*, *prep.* among.  
 E-blande, *adv.* among, 4973; Ebland, amongst (them), together, also, 3910, 4994. See above.  
 Ebru, Hebrew, 5072; Ebrues, Hebrews, 5661.  
 Ebyn, *s.* ebony-wood, 3682.  
 Ebyn-tree, *s.* ebony-tree, 3681, 5135.  
 Echchewis, *pr. pl.* 2 *p.* eschew, 4603. [MS. Ethchewis.]  
 Eddirs, *pl.* snakes, adders, 4198.  
 Eddyfyed, *pp.* built (a house), *p.* 281, l. 88.  
 Ee, *s.* water, stream, 5464. A.S. *éa*. (Eey), *s.* eye, 2491. See Eje.  
 Effecte, *s.* work, 357.  
 Effosym, Ephesus, 5661.  
 Eft, *adv.* again, 140, 185, 511, 1359, 2821, 3126, 3159, 3510, 3783; Efte, in return, 2141, 5051.  
 Efter, *prep.* after, 2. 95. 518; for (i. e. sends for), 352; (After), for, 3152, 3183; according to, in the likeness of, 191; Eftir, *prep.* according to the likeness (of a prince), 5642.  
 Efter, *adv.* afterwards, 205, 309, 478, 4773; Eftire, 360, 614; (Aftir), 1551.  
 Eftirsons, *adv.* again, 408. See below.  
 Eftsones (Eftsons), *adv.* again, immediately, 2281; Ef[t]sones, afterward, 1083.  
 Egg, *s.* egg, 507, 509; (Egge), 893. (Egen), (*for* Ege), fear, care, 731. Read *eje*, as in MS. A. The final *n* is wrong.  
 Egge, *s.* edge of a hill, backbone of hills, 4876. Wenlock *Edge* (Salop) is a long ridge; and so elsewhere.  
 Eggis, *pl.* (*for* Heggis), hedges, 4137.  
 Eging (Eggyng), *s.* egging, instigation, 2409.  
 Egypt, Egypt, 23, 71, 135, 173, 233, 239; Egipte (Egipt), 1132; Egist (Egipt), 1121.  
 Egirly, *adv.* sharply, 551, 580; eagerly, 3151; fiercely, 3848; (Egerly), 703, 1205.  
 Elacion, elation, 1729.  
 Elanda, *prop. name, put for* Hellada, i. e. Greece, 2514 (see note, *p.* 303); 3100, 3106 (see note, *p.* 305). In l. 3106, perhaps Elam is meant.  
 Eld, needle; Ane eld = a neld, i. e. a needle, 1370. MS. D. *has* nedyll.  
 Elde, *s.* age, 622, 657, 764\*, 5132; old age, great age, 184, 4838; Eld, age, 646; (Elde), 1001.  
 Elder (Helder), *adv.* rather, 1016. *Properly spelt* helder; cf. Icel. *heldr*, rather.  
 Eldest, *for* Heldest, most especially, 1765. See above.  
 Eldire, *adj. comp.* older, 616; (Alder), 1619; (Elder), elder, 1474.  
 Eldire, *s.* greater age, 4215.  
 Eldirs, *pl.* forefathers, 3491; (Elders), ancestors, 2465; (Aldours), 2483; (Alders), elders, 2844; Elders, parents, 838\*; Eldris, *pl.* parents, elders, guardians, 4628.  
 Eldist, *adj. superl.* eldest, 3577; (Eldest), chief, 2006.  
 Element, *s.* element, 60; Elementes, *pl.* elements, 542, 580; El[e]mentis (Elementes), 784.  
 Elfe, *s.* elf, spirit, 5258.

- Elie, *adv.* alike, 536, 1225, 1258, 1422, 4283; continually, 560; Elie (Elik), 1401; Ay elie, ever the same, 1288; Euer elie, continually, 340.  
 Elie-dele, in like measure, similarly, 4158.  
 Elis, *adv.* else, 107. See Ellis.  
 Elkend, *pt. pl.* adored, propitiated, 164. Cf. A.S. *ðleccan*, to adore, flatter, soothe.  
 Elleuen, *num.* eleven, 4814; Elleuyn, 646.  
 Elleuynt, *adj.* eleventh, 4139.  
 Ellis, *adv.* else, otherwise, 181, 290, 395, 477, 570, 685; (Elles), 841, (Ellez), 1814; (Ellys), 1761. See Elis, Els.  
 Ellyn (Elne), ell, 800.  
 Els, *adv.* else, otherwise, 13, 5426; (Ellys), besides, 1685; Ells, anything else, 4279; Els, *conj.* except, 4671. See Ellis.  
 Els-quare, *adv.* elsewhere, 5633.  
 Els-quat, *adv.* otherwise, 4557.  
 Emaug, *prep.* amongst, 47, 104, 565, 1163, 3489; Emange, 628, 4331; Emaunge, 4817.  
 Emaunge, *adv.* among, in the midst, 4901.  
 Emell, *prep.* amongst, 4613; (governing *us* understood), 4263. Dan. *imellem*, between.  
 Emperoure (Emperour), emperor, 975, 1125, 1516, 1607, 1720, &c.; Empeure (Emperour), 882; Emperouris, *gen.* emperor's, 5196; Emperours, *pl.* 189.  
 Empire, *s.* rule, empire, 1001, 3983.  
 Emyddis, *prep.* amidst, 4538.  
 Emynelaus, *proper name*, Eumulus, 2875; Emynelows, 3005.  
 Enarmed, *pp.* fully armed, 652, 1397, 1787, 2020, 2137, 3019, 3601, 3749, 5152, 5641. (Enarmed), 2685, 2982; (Enarmed), 954.  
 Enbawmed, *pp.* embalmed, 3319.  
 En-blanchid, *pp.* whitened, made white, 3690.  
 Enbrouden (Enbrowden), *pp.* embroidered, 1569. See Brouden.  
 Euchatis, *pr. s.* inflames, 2545.  
 Enchant, *v.* make enchantments, 115; Enchantis, *pr. s.* 412.  
 Enchantmentis, *pl.* enchantments, 377.  
 Encheson, *s.* occasion, cause, 4607. O.F. *encheson*, *encheison*, occasion.  
 Enclosed, *pt. s.* surrounded, came round, 3812.  
 Enclynes, *pr. s.* inclines, bows, 3114; (Inclines), *pr. pl.* bow down, 1603; *refl.* bows (himself), 495.  
 En[c]ounbre (Combre), *v.* vex, trouble, harass, 2550. See Encumbre.  
 Encontres, *pr. s.* encounters, 3993.  
 Encressis (Encresses), *pr. s.* increases, grows, 891; Encreses, 2492.  
 Encumbre (Combre), *v.* destroy, overcome, 1881; Encumbrid, *pt. s. subj.* should trouble, should vex, 1480; Encumbrid (Encombred), *pp.* destroyed, 1817. See Encounbre.  
 Ende, *s.* end, 880; death, 1103; End, (one) end, 173; death, 739\*;  
 Endis (Ende), *pl.* ends, parts, 1733; districts, 3721; Ends, *pl.* ends, limits; Of clene a'l þus ends, of all those limits (*or* boundaries) entirely, 3479.  
 Endentid, *pp.* indented, engraved, 3671.  
 (Endered), *for* Hendered, 1 *pt. s.* hindered, opposed, 2497.  
 Endis, *pt. s.* ends, puts an end to, 1220; Endid (Endytt), *pp.* ended, 1486; Endid, *pt. s.* finished, killed, made an end of, 453.  
 Enditis (Inditez), *pr. s.* indites, 1955; (Inditid, *pt. s.*), 1836; Endited (Indited), *pt. s.* indited, 1823.  
 Endles, *adj.* endless, 60, 1916.  
 Endurand; see Durand.  
 Enduris, *pr. s.* endures, 527; *pr. pl.* 1483; (Indurett), *pt. pl.* 1483; Endured, *pp.* 7.  
 Enentes (Anentes), *prep.* anent, about, concerning, 3245.  
 Enerid (Enhered), *pt. s.* inherited, possessed, 1132. See Enherit.  
 Enfamyschist (Eufamyschyd), *pp.* famished, 2153.

- Enfeffid, *pt. s.* encoffed, gave (them) lordships, 2793.
- Enforce, 2 *pr. pl.* enforce, bid, 2804 ; Enforced (Enforced), *pp.* strengthened, 1155.
- Enfourme, *s. put for* Enfourmer, informer, teacher, 626. (See the context.)
- Enfourmes (Enformes), *pr.* prepares, 2751 ; Enformed, *pt. s.* indited, 2413 ; Enfourmed, *pp.* instructed (in), informed (of), 3747 ; informed, 306 ; (Enformed), 904, 1897.
- Engine, *s.* engine, machinery, 5292 ; Engynes, *pl.* engines, 1302, 1415 ; (Engynez), 2218.
- Englaymed, *pp.* ensnared, 4668. Lit. caught as with birdlime ; see *engleimen* in Mätzner.
- Engrauen, *pp.* engraven, 279.
- Enhabetis, *pr. pl.* inhabit, dwell, 245 ; Enhabet, *pt. pl.* 23 ; *pp.* 3493.
- Enhansis (Enhaunses), *pr. s.* enhances, exalts, 2714 ; En-haunsid, *pt. s.* 1 *p.* enhanced, raised, 5068 ; Enhansid (Enhaunsed), *pp.* advanced, increased, 2513 ; (In-haunsyd), 3406 ; Enhansed (En-haunsyd), exalted, 2498.
- Enherestis (Inheretes), *pr. s.* 2 *p.* dost inherit, 1870. See below.
- Enherit, *v.* inherit, 588. See *Enerid*.
- Enioyne, *v.* enjoin, lay a command, 1191 ; Enioyne (Enjoyne), *pr. pl.* 2 *p.* bid, 2664 ; Enjoyned, *pp.* compounded, put together, 3694 ; enjoined, 1493.
- Enlympyd ; *error for* Limpid.
- (Enmite), *error for* Enmy, enemy, 2681.
- Enmy, *s.* enemy, 819, 2681, 3096 ; Enmys, *pl.* 60, 453, 1916, 4291 ; Enmes, 206 ; (Enmys), 1251, 2096.
- Enmyte, enmity, 1729, 2560.
- Enoze, *adj. pl.* enough, sufficient, abundant (this *pl. adj.* always follows its substantive), 2135 ; (Enogh), 1663 ; Enoghe, 3931 ; Enogh, 38 ; (Enowe), 1350, 819\*.
- Enoze, *adv.* enough, sufficiently, 41 ; (Enogh), 1324, 782\*.
- Empire (Empyre), *s.* empire, 2292, 2327 ; (Empire), 1899.
- Enproched (Aproched), *pt. s.* approached, 2902.
- Enquere (Enquire), *ger.* to ask, 2420 ; Enquire (Inquire), *imp. s.* ask, 1110 ; Enquirid, *pt. s.* enquired, 239.
- Ensampill, *s.* example, 3878 ; parable, 4659 ; Ensampl (Ensampl), example, 1802 ; Ensampl (Ensampyll), example, instance, 730 ; (Sanpyll), ensample, 3279.
- Ensence, incense, 163.
- Ensuirid, *pp.* promised, 2633.
- Enterely, *adv.* entirely, wholly, 2790, 3243, 5662 ; Enterly, 2584 ; Enterely (Entirely), 1899 ; (Enterly), 2327, 2465.
- Enteris, *pr. s.* inters, buries, 4017 ; Enterid, *pp.* interred, buried, 3323.
- Enteris, *pl.* approaches, entries, ways of approach, 71.
- Enteriment, interment, 738\*.
- Entre, *ger.* to enter, 2419 ; *v.* 2514 ; Entire (Entre), *ger.* 1760 ; (Enter), *v.* 1359 ; Enter, 511 ; Entris, *pr. s.* enters, 381, 4075, 5009, 5421 ; Entres, 450 ; Entirs, 53 ; (Entrees), 1039 ; Entirs him (Entrez hym), *pr. s.* enters, 1125 ; Entird, *pt. s.* entered, 490 ; Entred, 1433 ; Entrid (Entred), *pp.* 1916 ; Entird, 206.
- Entring, *s.* entering, beginning, 4158.
- Entyre (In tere), *adj.* entire, in detail, 1261.
- Envemonde (Enuenmonyd), *pp.* envenomed, 1390.
- Enverom, *ger.* to surround, 3617 ; Envïroumis, *pr. s.* environs, 5527 ; Enveronis, environs, surrounds, 4632 ; Enverrouns, resounds through, pervades, 4780.
- Enuy, *s.* envy, 4256 ; (Enuye), 1729. (Enys), *adv.* once, 1191 (*but a misreading*).
- Epocrise, hypocrisy, 4652.
- Equinox, *s.* equinox, 4158.
- Er, *pr. pl.* are, 1013 ; (Er), 949, 797\*.
- See *Ere*.
- Erاند, *s.* message, 1467, 2770. See *Errande*.
- Ercules, Hercules, 703, 2184, 4538.

- Erd, *s.* earth, 551, 580, 3493; country, land, region, 239, 246, 453, 3983; Erd, *s.* dwelling-place, 3737; land, native land, native country, 2842; Erde, earth, 271; region, land, 1046, 2348, 5258; native country, 135, 206, 4043; (Erth), land, 912, 975. A.S. *eard*. Erd, *pr. pl.* 1 *p.* dwell, 4648; Erdid (Erdyd), *pp.* dwelt, 2681.
- Erd-growyn (Erth-growen), *adj.* earth-grown, 1753.
- Erdis (Erdes), *pr. s.* buries, 975. See Erþed.
- Erdly (Erthlich), *adj.* earthly, 1612.
- Ere, *pr. pl.* are, 1, 12, 14, 104, 105, 437, 542, 789, &c. See Er.
- (Ereles), *pl.* earls, 1121. See Erle.
- Eris, *pl.* ears, 3941, 4635; Eres, 3151, 4748.
- Erle (Erell), *s.* earl, 1612; Erlis, *pl.* 153; Erles, 64; (Ereles), 1001, 1166; (Erelez), 907, 1578.
- Erles, *pr. s.* governs, lit. is the earl of, 4646. A coined word; from the sb. above.
- Erly, *adv.* early, 3444.
- Ermed, *pp.* armed, 3935.
- Ermets, *pl.* hermits, 4020.
- Ermony, Armenia, 907, 912, 942, 5662; Ermonye, 2560; (Ermony), 1046.
- Erne, *adj.* eager, anxious, 340. Put for *jern*; see two other examples in Mätzner, *s. v.* *eorne*.
- Ernest; On earnest, in earnest, 1359.
- Ernestly, *adv.* earnestly, 2348.
- Errande, errand, 5216. See Erand.
- Errogaunce, arrogance, 4327.
- Erroure (Errour), *s.* wrong, 1699.
- Erryd, *pp.* erred, wandered, 3267.
- Erst, *adv.* first of all, 1531.
- Ert, 2 *pr. s.* art, 102, 834\*, 1738.
- Erthe, *s.* earth, 158, 1190; country, land, 1046; Erth, earth, 509, 784; land, country, territory, 23, 173, 233, 942, 2560; Erthes, *gen. s.* earth's, 5503.
- Erþed, *pp.* buried, laid in the earth, 588. See Erdis.
- Ertid (Ertyd), *pt. s.* urged, 2409. O.F. *arter*, Span. *artar*, to compel, from Lat. *arcare*. See *arten* in Mätzner.
- Erytage (Herytage), *s.* heritage, 3243.
- Es, *pr. s.* is, 663, 1008, 1713. (Eschapys), *pr. s.* escapes, 2987.
- Eschilus (Esculus), Æschylus, 2348, 2409.
- Ese (Ease), *s.* ease, 1829; Esee, 3861, 5342. See Esse.
- Esid, *pp.* eased, rested, 4790.
- E-soundir, *adv.* asunder, 510; Esoundire, 3977; Esondre (In-souder), 760. See Esundire.
- Esse (Ease), ease, peace; At esse, in peace, 1047. See Ese.
- Est, *s.* east, 20, 445, 4902.
- Esundire, *adv.* asunder, 338. See Esoundir.
- Esye (Easy), *adj.* easy, peaceful, 2477.
- Esyngis (Esynges), *pl.* easings, eavesings, eaves, edges of the roofs, 1522.
- Ete, *pt. pl.* ate, 3941.
- Ethfully, *adv.* easily, 3647. A.S. *ēaþ*, easy.
- Ethis, *pr. s.* conjures, 340. See the note.
- Ethyope, Ethiopia, 140.
- Ethyops, Ethiopia's, 5132; Ethiops, Ethiopians, 5661.
- Etill (Atthill), *pr. s.* 1 *p.* direct, 2322; Ettillis, attempt, intend, 15; Etille (Attelyd, 1 *pt. s.*), 1 *pr. s.* purpose, aim, intend, 2419; Etils (Ettlys), 2 *pr. s.* attemptest, intendest, 2829; Etils (Etellez), *pr. s. refl.* attempts, 1157; Etlyd, *pt. s.* intended, sought, 2821; Ettild (Ettled), 2 *pt. pl.* attempted (as regards), 2484; Ettild (Etteld), *pp.* designed, proposed, purposed, intended, 3165; Ettild (Attelytt, 1 *pt. s.*), *pp.* attempted, 1819. Icel. *ætla*.
- Etyn, *pp.* eaten, 774\*.
- (Euell), *adj.* evil, 1759.
- (Euell), *adv.* evilly, ill, 1066.
- Euen, *s.* evening, 697.
- Euen, *adj.* straight, smooth, 2598; as sb. fellow, antagonist, 2281. See Euyn.
- Euen, *adv.* exactly, 1357, 4810; even, 731\*; (Euen), evenly, 1127; (Euen onon), just immediately,



- 940; Even-furth, straightway, directly, 53.  
 Euen, *ger.* to make equal, 4483; Euens, 2 *pr. s.* art equal, 1870.  
 Euer, *adv.* ever, 16, 158.  
 Euer-like, continually, 340, 781\*; Euerelike, 972; (Euerelike), always alike, 2046; (Euerilyke), ever the same, 1288. See Elike, Eueryllyke.  
 (Euerilke), each, every, 1497, 1802; (Euerylke), 999.  
 Euer-mare, *adv.* evermore, 205.  
 Eueryllyke, *adv.* continually, 727\*. See Euer-like.  
 Eufestyus, *prop. name*, 813\*.  
 Eufrates, Euphrates, 2598; Eufra-ten, 2586, 2770.  
 Euill, *s.* evil, harm, 1699.  
 Euire, *adv.* ever, 329, 1165; (Euer), 1067.  
 Euire in ane (Euer onon), continually, 2184.  
 Euire-ilk, *adj.* each, 4497.  
 Eumare, the river 'Thamar,' 4103; Eumaure, 4124.  
 Euor, *s.* ivory, 3680; Euour, 275.  
 Europe, Europe, 1046, 2327; Europ, 3765, 4395.  
 Enyll, *adj.* evil, 703.  
 Eyn, *adj.* even, equal, 5132. See Euen.  
 Eyn, *adv.* exactly, fully, even, just, 18, 140, 542, 551, 646, 1045; (Euen), alike, 1381; Eyn on (Euen ouer), *adv.* even on, fully throughout (the host), 1793.  
 Eyn, *s.* evening, eve, 350, 3055, 3699; Euyns, *gen. as adv.* in the evening, 375.  
 Euynsange, evensong; Euynsange-tyme, the hour of evensong, 4139.  
 Ewrus, *s.* Eurus, the east wind, 4144.  
 Excludit (Exclud), *pp.* shut out, 2842.  
 Exidrares, *pl.* a nation of Gymnosophists, 4020.  
 Exorjise, *ger.* to exorcise, practise charms, 340. (Here 3 stands for z.)  
 Eze (Egen), *s.* fear, heed, care, 731. A.S. *ege*.  
 Eze, *s.* eye, 222, 1589; Ezen, *p<sup>l</sup>*. eyes, 344, 498, 603, 3151, 3940; (Eghen), 688, 1133, 2242; (Eughen, *for* Eghen), 1782; (Eeyn), 3285. See Eey.  
 Fa, *adj.* few, 106.  
 Faa, *s.* foe, 54; (Foe), 3421; Faas, *pl.* 452; (Foes), 2700. See Faes, Fais.  
 Fable, *s.* fable, 1886.  
 Face, *s.* face, 600, 965; Face to face, 357.  
 Facultes (Facultez), *pl.* possessions, 1847.  
 Fadere (Fader), father, 2323; (Fadre), 1491; (Fader), 701, 910, 961; Fadire, 600; (Fadir), 741, 1652; (Fadre), 824, 874; Fadirs, *pl.* fathers, 3; (Faders), 1675.  
 Fadis, *pr. s.* fades, 5309; (Fades), 1007.  
 Faes, *pl.* foes, 2061, 2096; (Foes), 1238, 2364, 2804. See Faa, Fa's.  
 Fage, *pr. pl.* 2 *p.* flatter, soothe, 4669. See *fagen* in Mätzner.  
 Faile, *v.* fail, 102, 341; (Faille), 1643; Failes, *pr. s.* fails, 1274, 1325; (Failez), 1443; (Falys), is wrong, 2965; Us failis, (Vs faicz), fails us, 1006; Failed, *pt. s.* it failed; Fayled me, it failed me, I failed, 3285; Failid, *pt. s.* 2 *p.* failedst, 5588; Failis, *pr. pl.* fail, are absent from, 4279; fail, 844.  
 Faile, *s.* failing, error, 1886. Read fable, *as in* Dublin MS.  
 Faire, *adj.* fair, 601, 1725, 1847; good, 454; (Fair), 1541, 2116.  
 Faire, *adv.* fairly, well, exactly, 195, 424, 535, 878, 899, 1041; kindly, 1695, 1700; completely, 2230; courteously, 2750; (Fair), kindly, 1897, 2478; (Faire), quickly, 2250.  
 Faire (Fare), *s.* welfare, 2019.  
 Faire, *prop. name*, 91.  
 Fairere, (Feirare, *in MS.* feirhare), *as s.* greater part, 1238.  
 Fairnes, *s.* courtesy, 1745.  
 Fais, *pl.* foes, 136, 186, 217, 810, 1945, 5382; (Faes), 1034. See Faa, Faes.  
 Faithly, *adv.* truly, certainly, verily, 3874; (Faythfully), 3175, 3282; (Fathfully), 2279.

- (Faldes), *pr. s.* folds, bends, 779\* ;  
 Falden, *pp.* folded, 2401.
- Falle, *v.* befall, happen to, happen, 1109 ; Fall, 172, 295, 1641, 2722 ; (Falle), 1897, 3257 ; Fall (Fale), *ger.* to fall, 849 ; Fallis, *pr. s.* falls, 78, 509, 568 ; (Falles), 846 ; (Fallez), 1135 ; (Falles hym), falls before him, 779\* ; Fallis, *pr. s.* betakes him, 4587 ; befalls, 405 ; happens (to), 3767 ; Falis, befalls, 4638 ; Fallys hym, falls away from him, 2482 ; Fallis, *pr. s.* suits, 4457 ; (Falles), befits, 975, 1927 ; Fallis me, suits me, 829 ; (*with to*), befits, 864 ; belongs, is fit for, 1549 ; (Falles), belongs, 896 ; Fallis, *pr. pl.* fall, 815, 1822, 2055 ; Fall on, attack, 2132 ; Fall þe, *pr. s. subj.* if it befall thee, 2279 ; (Fall þon), if thou succeed, 2279 ; Fall (Fallez), *pr. s. subj.* may befall, may concern, 1192 ; Fall (Fallys), befall, 2600 ; Fall (Falle), happen, 1785 ; Fallyn (Fallen), *pp.* fallen, 1756 ; (Fallyn), 2323 ; Falne (Fallyn), 856. And see Falne.
- Falne (Fallyn), *pp.* fallen, (but misused in the sense of 'felled'), 2087.
- Falowis, *pr. s.* turns pale or yellow, 5308.
- Fals, *adj.* false, 1697 ; (art) false, mistaken, 715 ; (False), false, 2186.
- Fals, *adv.* falsely, 298.
- Falshede, *s.* falsehood, 4366.
- Fame, *s.* foam, 5604.
- Famen (Faynen) *pl.* foemen, 2208.
- Fames, *pr. s.* foams, 2974 ; Famand (Fonand), *pres. part.* foaming, 3203.
- Famyd (Famed), *pp.* famed, 2387.
- Famyschist (Famyshyd), *pp.* famished, 1167 ; Famyscht, 4596.
- Fand, *pt. s.* found, 536, 2110, 2300, 3063, 3664, 5364 ; Fande (Fand), 1053.
- Fand (Fond), *ger.* to try, prove ; To fand with my wittez, to try my wits against, 2336 ; Fande, (Fonde), *ger.* to go, 1196 ; Fandis, *pr. s.* is trying, 681 ; tries, exercises, 376 ; (Founde), goes, advances, 2671, 2594 ; takes, 2977 ; Fand (Fonde), *imp. s.* advance, go, 2867. A.S. *fundian*. See Fonde.
- Fang (Fange), *s.* hold ; In fang, in the embrace, in the hold, in the protection, 1725. Cf. Icel. *i fang*, in the grip or hold.
- Fange, *v.* take, 2879 ; Fange (Fonnge), *v.* receive, accept, 3186 ; (Fang), catch, get, 2168 ; Fange, *ger.* to take, 110 ; Fang (Fange), to receive, 1692 ; (Fannge), to receive, 1257 ; Fangis, *pr. s.* takes, 411, 508, 4781 ; (Fange), takes, 819\* ; Fanges hym, *pr. s.* receives for himself, 760\* ; Fangis, *pr. s.* (Fange, *pt. s.*), seizes, 2971 ; (Fonges), takes, 766 ; (Fange), collects, 1332 ; Fanges (Fonges), takes, 877 ; (Fannges), gathers, 2059 ; Fangis (Fange), catches, 2197 ; Fangis (Fonges), 2 *pr. s.* catchest, obtainest, 2720 ; Fange, *pr. pl.* 1 *p.* take, 4636 ; *pr. pl.* catch, take, 2642, 3055 ; Fangis, 2028 ; Fang (Fangen), 899 ; Fangid, *pt. s.* took, 819 ; gained, 500 ; (Fonge), took, 2217 ; Fangid (Fonge), 2 *pt. pl.* received, 2478 ; Fangid (Fonged), *pp.* taken, 2629 ; Fange (Fonge), *imp. s.* take, 2867 ; Fange (*with to*), hold to, keep to, 1990 ; Fang þe, *imp. s.* take to thyself, 805\* ; Fange vp (Fongez vp), *imp. pl.* pluck ye up, 988. A.S. *fón*.
- Fanons, *pl.* maniples of the priests, 1581. "Fanon, *fanula, manipulus*;" Cath. Anglicum.
- Fant, *s.* infant, 4629 ; (Faunt), son, 1788 ; child, 1477.
- Fantasy, *s.* fancy, 5513.
- Far, *adv.* afar, 831\*.
- Farand ; see Fare, *v.*
- Fardill, *s.* burthen, 5136. O.F. *fardel*.
- Fare, *s.* journey, march, 2250 ; equipment, 3694 ; doings, acts, manner of action, behaviour, 300, 1990, 2242, 4366 ; business, welfare, 172, 433, 672 ; affair, 925 ; condition, state, 2554 ; circumstance, 513, 569, 3257.



- Fare, *v.* fare, prosper, 1788; go, 5202; Faris, *pr. s.* fares, goes, 847; Fares, 2116; Faris *vp.* gets up, 545; Faris (Farys) with, 2 *pr. s.* behavest, 2944; Fares, *pr. pl. 1 p.* go, 3748; Fare, *pr. pl. 2 p.* act, 5366; Farne, *pp.* gone, 216; past, 3901; departed, 2323; (Faren), gone, 1004; Farand, *pres. part.* going, walking, 5549; *as adj.* seeming, 5437; good, excellent, 2. A.S. *furan*.
- Farkis (Ferkys), *pr. s.* goes, 766; Farkis furth, goes forth, 545. See *ferken* in Mätzner, p. 102. See Ferkis.
- Fast, *adj.* fast, constant, firm. 4616; close, 1369; enduring, 3259.
- Fast, *adv.* fast, 505; steadfastly, 1034; earnestly, searchingly, 2570; close, closely, 433, 672; hard by, 3285; soon, 2575, 5307; quickly, soon, 380, 891; As fast as, as soon as, 3944; Faste, close, 626.
- Fast, *ger.* to fast, 1477; Fastand, *pres. part.* fasting, 5522.
- Fast, fastened, 747\*.
- Faster, *adv. comp.* faster, 847, 943; Fastir, more quickly, 1805; more, 4689.
- (Fastnes), *s.* stability, 3259.
- Fattest, *adj. sup.* fattest, 759\*.
- Fanchon, falchion, 448.
- Faucon, *s.* falcon, 5257.
- Faund, *pt. pl.* found, 4116.
- (Faunys), *pr. s.* fawns, 785\*.
- Faute, *s.* lack, deficiency, 4587.
- Fautis (Fawtes), 2 *pr. s.* lackest, wantest, 2710; Fautis, *pr. s. impers.* lacks, 2482; Fauted (Fautyd), *pp.* been in fault, erred, done wrong, 2659.
- Fax, *s.* hair, 601. A.S. *feax*.
- Fay, *adj.* dead, 591; (Fey), dying, 792. Icel. *feigr*. See Fey.
- Faylis, *pr. pl.* fail, 3492; Fayle, *pr. s. subj.* may give way, 1372; (Faylett), *pt. s. subj.* 1372; Faylid, *pp.* proved wanting to, 1462.
- Fayn, *adv.* gladly, 1, 5230.
- Fayn, *ger.* to gladden, 2; Fayne, *v.* be glad, rejoice, 1745; Faynes, *pr. s.* gladdens, 4681; Fayns, *pr. s. impers.* pleases, delights, 4626.
- Fayne, *adj.* glad, 2264.
- Faynt, *adj.* faint, weak, feeble, 2359, 3717, 4358; (Faynte), 1275, 1738.
- Fayntir (Faynter), *adj. comp.* weaker, 2085.
- (Fayr when vs likez), let us go on when it pleases us, 740\*. See Fare.
- Fayre (Faire), *adj.* fair, 2019.
- Fayre, *adv.* fairly, honourably, 164. (Fayrnes), fairness, beauty, 753\*.
- Faythly, *adv.* faithfully, 3808.
- Fazl, *pt. s.* fought, 643; *pt. pl.* 5434.
- Febill, *s.* weakness, 4280.
- Feble, *adj.* feeble, weak, 1710, 1275; mean, poor, 1516; Febill (Feble), 1013.
- Feche, *ger.* to fetch, 884; Feches (Faches), *pr. s.* fetches, 806.
- Fedare, *s.* feeder, provider, 2961.
- Fede, *ger.* to feed, 1775; Fed, *pp.* fed, 1, 575, 3592; Fedd, 3495; (Fed), 2173; Fede, *imp. pl. 1 p.* let us feed, 591.
- Fedill, *adj. (perhaps)* fattened, well-fed, in good case, 5604. This is a guess; cf. "*Altillis, fedels*" in Wright's Glossaries, ed. Wülcker, col. 190. If the word be of French origin, it may mean 'faithful,' from O.F. *fedel*, Lat. *fidelis*.
- Fee, *s.* reward, 2284; Fees, *pl.* offerings, 4466; Fees (Feys), fiefs, 1847; To fee, i.e. as a tribute, 5139.
- Feete, *pl.* feet, 844, 4168; (Fete), 2852; (Fote, *sing.*), 1360; Feet, 199.
- Feete (Feetez), *prob. for* Feetes, *pl.* (cf. the Dublin MS.), feats, deeds, works, acts, 3105.
- Feetis, *pr. s.* acts; Feetis him forth, acts beyond him, surpasses him in feats, 3989. See *feted* = acted, behaved, in Sir Gawayne and the Grene Knight, 1282. From *feet*, sb. See Fetid.
- Feetles, *s.* a vessel, small vat, 1350. See *fettes* in Stratmann.
- Feetly, *adv.* well, excellently, 4219; Feetely, 3694.

- (Feffys), *pr. s.* enfeoffs, 2793.  
 (Feght), *s.* contest, fight, 910, 2270.  
 (Feghtyn), *pr. pl.* fight, 2042.  
 (Feghys), *pr. s.* fastens, 1369. A.S. *fegan*; see *fegen* in Mätzner.  
 Felaw (Felow), fellow, comrade, 864. See Feloze.  
 (Feld), *s.* field (of battle), 1004.  
 Feld, *pt. s.* felt, perceived, 3257. See Fele.  
 Fele, *adj.* many, numerous, 448, 471, 803\*, 1005, 1037, 1155, 1215, 2001, 2055, 2071, 3059, 3717. A.S. *fela*.  
 Fele (Feyle), *pr. pl.* 2 *p. subj.* feel, 2357; (Fele), *for* Feld, *pt. s.* felt, perceived, 3257. See Feld.  
 Fele, *s.* feeling, perception, hence power over oneself, 850.  
 Feleschip, *s.* company, 4548.  
 Felire, *adj. comp.* more in number, 2084. See Fele.  
 Fell, *adj.* furious, 3180; fell, fierce, 613, 906, 3881; (Fell), 1220, 2075; (Fele), 825, 861, 2197; (Feyle), 2279; Fell, destructive, 1756, 5581; terrible, 1697; sharp, cruel, bitter, severe, 91, 1795, 3925, 4165.  
 Fell, *pt. s.* fell, 56, 550, 1133; happened, 501, 2085, 3063; Him fell, it was fitting for him, 4017; Fell (Felle), *pt. pl.* were born, 2081; Fell, *pt. pl.* (which) fell, 567.  
 Felle, *v.* fell, kill, 3011; Fellis (Felles), *pr. s.* fells, 1215; Fellis (Felles), *pr. pl.* they fell, 792; Fellid, *pt. s.* felled, 5561; Fellid, *pt. pl.* felled, killed, 1406, 5434; Fellyd, 2055; Fellid, *pp.* overcome, 3550; (Fell), *imp. s.* fell, 1360.  
 Fellis, *pl.* skins, 5083, 5139; (Fellys), 2766.  
 Fellis, *pl.* fells, hills, 4046; (Fellys), 1211.  
 Fellis (Fylls), *pr. s.* fills, 3065.  
 Felly, *adv.* savagely, fiercely, boldly, 1053, 2971, 5440; (*miswritten* Fellyd), terribly, 1795; furiously, 3839; bitterly, 3647; (Felly), fiercely, 906; keenly, 1341.  
 Felons, stern warriors (not in a bad sense), 819\*.  
 Fe'loure, *s.* foliage, 4821. "*Fueil-lure*, leaviness, also leaves;" Cotgrave. See the note; and see Feylour.  
 Felowis, *pr. pl.* follow, 1555.  
 Feloze (Felow), *s.* companion, equal, 3282. See Felaw.  
 Felsen (Filson), *ger.* to aid, assist, 829; Felsyn, *v.* perform, fulfil, 5230; Felsen, 2 *pr. pl.* aid, foster, 4669. The same word as *filstnen*, in Ormulum, 6170; from A.S. *fylstan*, to aid.  
 (Femand), *pr. pt.* foaming, gushing, 1133.  
 Femony, a country, 5674.  
 Fen, *s.* clay, 4358.  
 Fendere (Fender), defender, 1839.  
 Fendid, *pt. pl.* defended; Fendid of, repulsed, 1031.  
 Fendis, *pl.* fiends, 4802, 5571.  
 Fendis, *pr. s.* shifts, makes a shift, 3366. (Doubtful. The right reading is probably *fynis*, i.e. comes to an end, corrupted to *fyndes* in *Dubl. MS.* See Feyne, Feyned.  
 Fenix, *s.* phoenix, 4993.)  
 (Fennder), *s.* defender, 2961.  
 Fens, *s.* defence, 4753.  
 Fenyschid (Fenyshyd), *pp.* finished, ended, 2144; Fenyyst (Fynyshytt), 1107; (Fenyshit), put an end to, 1766\*.  
 Fer, *adv.* far, by far, 3922. See Fere.  
 Ferd, *pt. s.* went, 813\*; Ferd (Fared), journeyed, 1057; (Faryd), went, 2118; Ferd, 1 *pt. pl.* fared, 3510; went, 1943; *pt. pl.* went, 4966; went about, 5549; (Faired), went, stepped, 2049. See Fare.  
 Ferd, *s.* host, 5577. A.S. *fyrð*.  
 Ferd, *adj.* fourth, 3344; (Fourte), 3368.  
 Ferd, *pp.* afraid, 395, 569, 851, 1443; Ferde, 846; (Ferd), 2447.  
 Ferd, *s.* fear, terror, 136, 2590.  
 Ferdfull, *adj.* frightful, terrible, 3036, 750\*.  
 Ferdship (D. frendshipys), terror, 988.  
 Fere, *s.* fellow, comrade, companion, 3282, 4078; consort, husband, 397; wife, 434, 497, 2728, 5202, 5350; Feres, *pl.* companions, 5149; Feris, 637, 643, 2409, 3751, 3967. A.S. *gefēra*.

- Fere*, *adj.* far, 136, 217, long hence, 308; far, i.e. outer, 4853.  
*Fere*, *adv.* far, by far, 1738. See *Fer*.  
*Fere*, *s.* fear, dread, 1167, 1276; danger, 2155.  
*Fere*, *adj.* healthy, 4282. *Icel.* *færr*.  
*Fere*, company; In *fere*, together, 4123, 5136.  
*Feree*; see *In-feree*.  
*Fereles*, *adj.* fearless, 4993.  
*(Ferer)*, *adv.* farther, 847.  
*Ferid*, *pp.* terrified, 101.  
*Feris*; see *Fere*, *s.* (p. 368).  
*Feris*, *pr. s.* assemblies, provides (for himself), 3592. This verb is perhaps formed from *fere*, sb., a companion. It answers rather (perhaps) to A.S. *gefēran*, to go, also to obtain, allied to *gefēra*, a 'fere,' than to A.S. *geferian*, to convey. Both are from *faran*, to go.  
*Ferkis* (*Ferkez*), *pr. s.* sallies, 926. See *ferken* in Mätzner, p. 102. See *Farkis*.  
*Ferlied*, *pp.* wondered, 4761; *Ferlid*, astonished, amazed, 4991; *Ferlyd* (*Farlyd*), wondered, 3228.  
*Ferly*, *adj.* strange, wondrous, 601, 5083; large, 5577. A.S. *fīrlic*, sudden.  
*Ferly*, *adv.* wonderfully, 4922; strangely, 513; extremely, very, exceedingly, 380, 457, 3189; (*Ferly*), 3036.  
*Ferly*, *s.* wonder, 395, 501, 925.  
*Ferlyd*; see *Ferlied*.  
*Ferme*, *adj.* firm, 3259; (*Ferme*), strong, 1057.  
*Fermes*, *pl.* farms, rents, 4012; (*Fermez*), 1847.  
*Fernes* (*Fernesse*), *s.* distance; *O fernes* (*On fernesse*), in the distance, 1424.  
*Ferre*, *adj.* far, distant, 210, 1057, 3900.  
*Ferre* (*Fere*), *adv.* far; To *ferre*, too far, by too much, 2085.  
*Ferre*, *adj. comp.* farther, more advanced, 633; more, 5460.  
*Ferre*, *adv.* farther, 3492, 3878, 4396; (*Ferrer*), 1455.  
*Ferrir*, *adv. comp.* further, 4671; *Ferrire*, 208; *Ferryre*, 98; (*Ferre*), 2600.  
*Ferrom*, *adv.* afar; On *ferrom*, far off, 5520. Cf. A.S. *feorran*, *adv.* *Ferryr*, *adv.* farther, 4312.  
*Fers*, *adj.* fierce, proud, strong, 216, 657, 884, 899, 2007; (*Fers*), 743\*; (*Ferce*), 1167, 2087, 2357; (*Ferse*), 836\*, 1839. See *Firs*.  
*Fersere*, *adj. comp.* fiercer, 3922; (*Forcer*, *for Fercer*), 2031.  
*Fersly*, *adv.* fiercely, 1031, 1406; *Fersely* (*Fersly*), 2208; (*Fersly*), 1053.  
*Feruent*, *adj.* hot, 3871.  
*Fesike*, *s.* physic, 4611.  
*Fesisiane* (*Fysycyan*), physician, 2554.  
*(Fessid)*, *prob. for Feffid*, *pp. as adj.* enfeoffed, 2320. See below.  
*Fest*, *pp. as adj.* established, set, 2320. See above. (Perhaps for *feft*, i. e. enfeoffed.)  
*Feste*, *s.* feast, 480; *Fest*, 821, 856, 2946; (*Feste*), 825, 1828; company, 492; *Festis*, *pl.* feasts, 3742.  
*Festes*, *pr. s.* fastens, 5518; *Festis*, *pr. s.* holds him fast (?), 3366 (but prob. an error for *fraystes*, as in *Dub. MS.*); *Fest*, *pr. pl.* fasten, set, 2230; *Fest*, 1 *pr. s. subj.* (if I) fasten, (if I) set, 2470; *Festid*, *pt. s.* fastened, 5307; *Fest*, *pt. pl.* fastened, plighted, 1259; *Feste* (*Fest*), *pp.* fastened, 2972.  
*Festid*, *pp.* feasted, 1.  
*Festing* (*Festynyng*), *s.* fastening, 2590; (*Festyng*), support, lit. fastening, firm hold, 2482.  
*Fete*, *pl.* feet, 133, 505, 779\*, 850, 1135, 1348, 2482, 3946; feet, i. e. heels (in departing), 3246. Cf. the phrase 'to shew a fair pair of heels.'  
*Fete*, *s.* action, movement, lit. feat, 30; feat, doings, 4366; (*Fetez*), *pl.* feats, 817\*.  
*Fetelakis* (*Fete-lakez*), *pl.* fetlocks, 2049.  
*Fepir*, *s.* plumage, 5604; *Fethirs*, *pl.* feathers, 4985.  
*Fethirhame*, *s.* clothing or covering of feathers, 3694; *Fethire-harnes*, *pl.* plumage, 380, 2710. A.S. *feðer-hama*.

- Fetid, *pp.* fashioned, made, 4356, 4633. O.F. *faitier*, to arrange (Godefroy); from O.F. *fait*, sb. See Feetis.
- Fetoure, *s.* feature, fashion, make, 2959; Fetour, feature, 600.
- (Fett). *ger.* to fetch, 884.
- Fettild, *pp.* prepared, 626; (Feteld), fitted, 2995.
- Fenire (Feuer), *s.* fever, 2546; Feuyre, 4279. Written ffeuyre; the ff is merely the (sole) way of writing the capital letter.
- Fewe, *adj.* few, 251, 501, 654, 2061.
- Fewis, *for* Fewist, *adj. superl.* fewest, 3738. See Fewist.
- Fewist; At þe fewist, at least, 3599.
- Fewlis, *pl.* birds, 3690.
- Fewtine (Fewtre), *s.* rest for a lance, 2621. O.F. *fuutre*, *feutre*, in Godefroy.
- Fey, *adj.* dying, fated to die, ready to die, 1215, 2055, 2087, 4002\*; (Faye), 1034; Fey, dead, 2153, 2323, 4018, 4781, 5371, 5561. Icel. *feigr*. See Fay.
- Feyle, *adj.* many, 2055; (Fele), 2460, 3268.
- Feylour, *s.* foliage, 5004. See Felour.
- Feyne, *v.* feign, 1745; Feynys (Fenys) *pr. s.* 2 *p.* feignest, assumest, 2242; Feyned (Fenyd), *pp.* feigned, pretended, 715, 2197.
- Feyne, *error for* Fyne, *imp. s.*; Fyne of = cease from, 3458. See below.
- Feyned, *pt. s. error for* Fynynd (as in *Dubl. MS.*), ended, died, 3100. The same error recurs in l. 3458.
- Feynes, 2 *pr. s.* dost faint, art discouraged, 101. O.F. *faindre*, 'hésiter, manquer de courage'; Godefroy.
- Fegt, *ger.* to fight, 217, 910; *v.* 3767; (Feght), *v.* 2208; Fegtis (Feghtez), *pr. s.* 1401, 2039; Fegtis (Foghten, *pt. pl.*), *pr. pl.* fight. 1262, 1441; (Fighten), 2228; Fegtand, *pres. pt. as adj.* fighting, 91; (Feghtand), 2080; (Feghtyng), 1315; (Fightand), 2535.
- ffeuyre. See Feuyre.
- ffurrers. See Furrers.
- Ficesyens, *pl.* physicians, 4363.
- Fiches, *pr. s.* fixes, 1369, 4853 (see the note); Ficchid, *pt. s.* fixed up, 5556; *pp.* fixed, 4641; Fichid, *pp.* stuck, 4372. O.F. *ficher*.
- Fifte, *ord.* fifth, 3901; Fift, 3372.
- Fight, *s.* fighting, 817\*.
- Fight, *s.* fight, 2051. An error for *sight*: note the alliteration.
- Figour, *s.* figure, form, 360.
- Fild, *s.* field, also field of battle, 450, 454; (Feld), 926, 961, 1238; (Felde), 770, 819; Filde, 500, 2061; Fildis, *pl.* 4136.
- Filetts, *pl.* filets, 4338.
- Filies, *Lat.* Philonis, 5497.
- Filisphire (Philosofre), philosopher, 2347.
- Fill, *ger.* to fulfil, grant, 3173; (Fylle), to fulfil, 2660; Fillis, *pr. s.* fills, 56; fulfils, 547; (Fillez), fills, 1661.
- Fill, *s.* fill, 4761; (Fyll), 3228.
- Filling, *s.* the being full, 4265.
- Filour, *s.* thread-work, filagree-work, 3690. F. *filure*, a spinning.
- Findis (Fynde), *pr. s.* finds, 1125, 2034.
- Finely, *adv.* well, 5139.
- Fineschid, *pp.* finished, 3900.
- Fingire, finger, 4674.
- Fire, *s.* fire, 558, 4167; (Fyre), 2230; A fire, on fire, 2470.
- Fire (Fyre), *ger.* to set on fire, 2217; Fired (Fyryd), *pp.* set on fire, 2478.
- Firment, *s.* firmament, 3363; Firment, 30.
- Firmes (Fermes), *pr. s.* fastens, makes firm, 1369.
- Firs (Fers), *adj.* fierce, 770, 2961. See Fers.
- First, *adj.* first, 657; (Frist), 893, 1429; Firste, 375.
- First (Frist), *adv.* first, 1366, 2423; first of all, 1712.
- Fisch, *s.* fish, 4282; Fischis, *pl.* 4270, 5083.
- Fist, *s.* fist, hand, 4674; (Fistez), *pl.* 799.
- Fitt, *s.* fit, division, canto, passus, 4018, 4714, 5626; (Fytt), 3203; Fittis, *pl.* 3473. Cf. A.S. *fittan*, to sing.
- Fizt (Fight), *ger.* to fight, 759;

- Figtis (Feghtez), *pr. s.* 1225, 1301; Figtis (Feght), *imp. pl.* 2 *p.* fight ye, 1034.  
 Figt, *s.* fight, 1004; fighting, 3495; battle, 418, 3550. For the second *figt* in l. 3550, read *folk*; see the note.  
 Flabband, *pres. part.* flapping, 4807. See Flappid.  
 Flaggis, *pl.* flakes, 4165. Lowl. *Se. flag.*  
 Flames, *pr. s.* burns, flames, 558; Flammund, *pr. pt.* flaming, inflaming, 1133; Flamband, *pres. part.* flaming, glowing, 3690.  
 Flammes, *pl.* flames, 5574. See Flawmes.  
 Flandres, Flanders, 5674.  
 Flane, *pl.* arrows, 3839; Flanes, 2210; Flanis, 5448; Flanyis, 3045. A.S. *flán*, *pl.* arrows; *flan-es* is a double plural. See Flayne, Flonys.  
 Flange (Flonge), *pt. s.* flung, 1348.  
 Flappid, *pt. pl.* flapped, 5440.  
 (Flashed), *pt. s.* flashed, rushed suddenly, 1133.  
 Flat (Flatt), *adv.* flat, 1135.  
 Flaw, *s.* flake, mass of snow, 1756. See Flaggis.  
 Flawmes, *pl.* flames, 3871, 4784. See Flammes.  
 Flay, *ger.* scare away, 5448; *v.* terrify, 110; Flays, *pr. s.* appeases, lit. drives or frightens away, 4608. "To flay, *terrere*;" Cath. Anglicum.  
 (Flayne), *pl.* arrows, 1767\*. See Flane.  
 Flee, *v.* flee, 988; Flees (Fleen), *pr. pl.* flee, go, 3180; Fled, *pt. s.* fled, 136.  
 Flees (Fleys), *s. pl.* flies, 3011.  
 Flekirs, *pr. s.* flutters, 505. A.S. *flicerian*.  
 Flame, *v.* banish, 300. A.S. *flýman*.  
 Flesche, flesh, 569; (Fleche), 1006.  
 Fleschely, *adv.* carnally, 308.  
 Flete, *s.* train, host, 803\*. Cf. E. *fleet*. See Flote.  
 Flett (Flete), hall, 821. A.S. *flet*, a floor, a house, a hall.  
 Flextirs, *pr. s.* flutters, 505. See Flekirs, Fliztir.  
 Flinges, *pr. s.* hurls, shoots, 3839; rushes, darts, 3967; (Flyngez), rushes, 1218. See Flonge.  
 Flisch (Flechett, *pt. s. subj.*), *pr. s. subj.* may bend, may give way, 1372. F. *fléchir*.  
 Flitt, *v.* remove, advance, 4861; Flittis, *pr. s.* removes, 3784; (Flittes), 2173, 2439; Flites (Flyttes), 3184. Cf. Icel. *flytja*.  
 Flizand, *pres. pt.* flying, 380.  
 Flizt, *s.* flight, 110, 508, 5521; (Flyzt), 1236; *miswritten* Flizt (Flyght), 2788; sudden blast, 4143; On flizt, to flight, 3905.  
 Fliztir, *s.* flight, 3944.  
 Flizt-loomes (Flyght-loomes), *pl.* implements of flight, means of flight, 2710. A.S. *lōma*.  
 Flode, *s.* flood, sea, 558, 2460; river, 2119, 3814; water, 56; flood (of tears), 1133; (Flodez), *pl.* floods, 1350. See Fludis.  
 Flode, *error for* Fynd (see note), 1 *pr. s.* find, 4734.  
 Flode-zatis (Flode-zates), *pl.* flood-gates, 1856.  
 Flokkis (Flokkeez), *pl.* flocks, 2533.  
 Flonge owt, *pt. s.* rushed out, 831\*. See Flinges.  
 (Flonys), *pl.* arrows, 3045. See Flane.  
 Florantis, *pl.* florins, 3820. (The Lat. has *qui aurum eius portabant*, which seems to have suggested this translation.) The right form is rather *florencis*. Mätzner (*s. v. florin*) gives examples of the *pl. florences* and *floranse*. Hence "with his florantis" means "with his florins," i.e. to carry his florins or money. See Florantis.  
 Flore, *s.* floor, 3220; (Floure), 1348; Flores, *pl.* floors, flat surface, 4168.  
 Florentis, *pl.* (read with florentis), florins, 4074; Florens, 819\*. See Florantis, and cf. 3820.  
 Florischt, *pp.* overgrown, 4717; Floryscht, flowered, adorned, 4379.  
 Flosches (Flosshez), *pl.* pools, 2049. See *Flosche* in Halliwell; cf. prov. E. *floss*, as in 'The Mill on the Floss.'  
 Flote, *s.* (lit. fleet), armament, host,

- 3592; company, 1210, 1758, 1943, 2001, 2264, 4871; Flote (Flete), company, 1196, 1581; band of men, 770. Icel. *floti*, a raft, a fleet. See Flete.
- Floum, *s.* river, 2898. See Flum.
- Floure, *s.* flower, 1007; profit, 2603; victory, 500, 819, 3982; flour, 3822; Floures (Flourez), *pl.* flowers, 1539.
- (Flowe), *pr. pl.* flow, 1350.
- Floze, *pt. s.* flew, 503, 508; *pt. pl.* flew, 3936, 4784, 5574; Flozen, *pt. pl.* fled, 1392.
- Flozes (Flowes), *pr. s.* flows, 2053.
- Fludis (Flodez), *pl.* floods, waters, 1155. See Flode.
- Fluin (Flume), *s.* river, 2118; Flumme, 3829, 4739; Flummes (Flomes), *pl.* rivers, 2595. O.F. *flum*. See Floum.
- Flynt, flint, rock, 4447.
- Fode, *s.* food, meat, 2, 1174, 3497, 4605, 4723; Fodis, *pl.* food, kinds of food, 4302, 5426.
- Fode, *s.* child, i.e. one who is fed, 270. (Not uncommon.)
- Fodeles, *adj.* foodless, without food, 2155.
- (Foes), *pl.* foes, 810. See Faa.
- Foke, *s.* folk, 3053. See Folk.
- Folawand, *pres. pt.* following, 803\*; (Folowand), 1248.
- Fold, *s.* earth, the earth, 3, 30, 251, 312, 429, 792, 1135, 2502, 4636; land, 3105; ground, 2087; (Falde), 1641; On fold, on the battle-ground, 3623.
- Fold-ward, earthward, 3363.
- Fole, *s.* foal, horse, 133, 808, 1218, 1236, 743\*, 753\*; Foles, *pl.* 805\*; (Folez), 2049, 2155. A.S. *folā*. See Foole.
- Fole, *s.* fool, 1766\*, 1990.
- Folewis (Folowez), *pr. s.* follows, 1860.
- (Folez), *pl.* follies, 1766\*.
- Folite, *s.* folly, foolishness, 5366.
- Folk, people, 1; Folke, 91, 375, 454, 591, 1174, 2084, 5561; *written* Fokke, 5311; Foke, 3053.
- Folowe, *v.* follow, 640; Foloze (Folow), *ger.* to follow, 829; Folowis, *pr. s.* follows, 14; Foloweth, 4569; Foloweth, 736\*; Folozes (Folows), 2250; Folowis, follows (*perhaps an error for* Flowis, flows), 1350; Foloze, *pr. pl.* (they) follow, 3829; Folozes (Folows), 2080; Folowis (Folows), 1783; Folow (Flowen), *pr. pl.* follow, go (*but an error for* flow or flowen, fled), 1697; Folowid (Foloued), *pp.* followed, 1675; Folowand, *pres. pt.* following, 1758, 3473; Folo3and (Folowand), 3268.
- Foly, *s.* folly, 736\*, 2470, 4641.
- Fon (Fonne), *s.* fool, 2944. So in Chaucer.
- Fonde, *v.* advance, 3492, 4701; Fonde, *ger.* to go, 2210; Fondis, *pr. s.* attempts, endeavours, 4753; Fondis, *pr. s.* goes forward, advances, 2502, 4716; (Fonndez), 2129; Fondis, goes, 5579; (Fondes), goes, 2311; (Fonndez), goes, 1856; Fonde, *pr. pl.* explore, 4871; Fondand, *pres. pt.* going, 5277. A.S. *fandian*. See Fonndis, Founde.
- Fonden (Founden), *pp.* found, 3144; Fondyn, 2171.
- Fonden, *pp.* founded, 4641. Miswritten for *fonded*; the *pp.* *fonden* can only mean 'found.' See above.
- Fondere, founder, 4711.
- Fone, *adj.* few, 3180. Stratmann suggests that the form should be *foue*; but we also find *fon*; and *u* (= *v*) is never a *final* letter.
- Fonges, 2 *pr. s.* receivest, 3101; (Fongez), *pr. s.* takes, 819; Fonge, *pt. pl.* took, 3634. A.S. *fōn*.
- Fonndis, *pr. s.* advances, 2439; (Fonndez), 2114. See Fonde.
- Fonned, *adj.* fond, foolish, 5513. See Fon.
- Foole, *s.* foal, horse, 5588; (Fole), 2879, 3032; Fooles (Folez), *pl.* horses, 3072. See Fole.
- For, *prep.* on account of, because of, 169, 1164, 1801; as, as being, 35; from, 285; in spite of, 4196; as a defence against, to prevent, 747\*, 3959.



- For, *conj.* because, 2136, 2478, 2651, 4013; forasmuch as, 3550; for, 138, 173; in order that, so that, 141.
- For to, to (*with gerund*), 147, 160, 217, 313, &c.
- For-bede, *imp. s.* forbid, 5590.
- Forbod, *s.* prohibition, 4154.
- Force, force, strength, 1006, 1443, 1738, 3989; (Forse), 850; Na force, it is no matter, 471.
- Forcelett, *s.* fortress, defence, 4358. See Forslet.
- Forces (Forcez), *pr. s.* matters, 2001; Forced, *pt. s. subj.*; Him forced, it would signify to him, 5371; Forced (Forsyd), *pp.* compelled, 2659.
- Fore, *pt. s.* fared, 457. See Fare, *v.*
- Forelange, *s.* furlong, 2898, 3065, 3967; Forelang, *as pl.* 5460. See Forlange.
- Forfet, *pp.* forfeited, done amiss, 471.
- For-fetils, *pr. s.* appears lean (?), 4401. Apparently from the verb *fetill*, to fettle, prepare, set in order, with the prefix *for-*, giving it a sinister sense; hence *for-fettle*, to disorder, to mar, which is here used in the intransitive sense, 'to seem marred' or 'to seem disordered,' to be out of condition.
- For-fotnen, *pp.* exhausted with fighting, 3917; (For-foughten), 1271.
- Forgais, *pr. s.* forgoes, gives up, 188.
- For-gatt, *pt. s.* forgot, 3276.
- For-geue (Forgyfe), 1 *pr. s.* forgive, 2434.
- Forge[f]nes, *s.* forgiveness, 3525.
- Forgid, *pp.* fabricated, made, 3346; Forged, 3703; (Forgett), 1542, 1590; (Forgyd), 2995.
- For-helid (Foreheld), *pp.* covered over, 1063. A.S. *helan*.
- Forlange, *pl.* furlongs, 3833. See Forelange, Furlange.
- Formast, *adj. superl.* furthest, extremest, lit. foremost, 4102.
- Formed, *pt. s.* made, 1611.
- Forne, in front, 3925.
- Fornicacion, fornication, 4485.
- Forrayouris, *pl.* foragers, scouts, 2171.
- For-quy, why, wherefore, 4584; Forqui, 4325.
- Forsake, *ger.* to give up, 2840; Forsaken, *pp.* 824.
- Forsen (Frosyn), *pp.* frozen, 2883.
- Forslet, *s.* stronghold, fortalice, 3834. See Forcelett.
- For-sothe, *adv.* of a truth, forsooth, verily, 665, 2808; Forsothe, 498; Forsoth, 1070.
- For-sworn (Forsworne), *pp.* forsworn, 1465.
- Forthe (Forth), *adv.* forth, 827; Forth, 371; (Forth), 749, 732\*.
- Forthe (Forth), *v.* afford, 1774. A.S. *forðian*.
- Forthi, *conj.* therefore, 3465; Forþi, 241, 1012, 4279; on that account, 4609; wherefore, 1767.
- Forthing-dole, *s.* fourth part, quarter, 3844. Lit. 'farthing-deal.'
- For-thinkis (For-thynkez), *pr. s. impers.*; Him for-thinkis, it repents him, 1464.
- Forthire, *adv.* further, 523; (Forthier), 1907, 1989; (Ferþer), 2314; Forthere (Ferther), 1693.
- Forthire (Furthers, *error for Furthere*), *v.* further, help, assist, 2700; (Forthier), *ger.* to help, 1948.
- Fortoun (Forton), fortune, 1851, 1856.
- For-top, forehead, 319.
- For-trauailid (For-traveld), *pp.* worn with travail, 1009.
- (For-tyred), *pp.* tired out, 1009.
- Forward (Forwardez, *pl.*), *s.* agreement, 1259.
- Forward (Forthward), forward, 847.
- Forwith (Forewith), *prep.* until, 1675; before, 861, 2242; in presence of, 15.
- Fosterd, *pt. s.* brought up, 2729; Fostard, *pp.* nourished, 3495.
- Fostring, *s.* fostering, bringing up, 575.
- Fote, foot, 1236; A fote (On fote), a single foot, one foot, 2423; (Fute), 3220; (Fote), 844; On fote, on foot, 2250; Fotes, *pl.* feet, 4851; *mis-written* Fortes, 199. The curious plural *fotes* (= *foots*), occurs also in Sir Gawain and the Grene Knight.

- Foteman, *s.* foot-soldier, 3175; Fote-men, infantry, 3059.
- Fote-thike (Fute-thyke), *of* a foot thick, 2883.
- Foule, *s.* fowl, bird, 4993; Foules, 4271. See Fowell.
- Foule, *adj.* unclean, 3936.
- Foule, *adv.* foully, 746; in an ugly manner, dirtily, 4082.
- Foules, *pr. pl.* 1 *p.* trample, tread on, 4626; Foulis, 4681.
- Foulire (*for* Foule hire), tread her, i. e. the town, 1360. See below.
- Foun, *pp.* found, 159; (Funde), 3259.
- Founce, *s.* bottom, 4130. O.F. *fons* (Burguy); from Lat. *fundus*. See Allit. Poems, ed. Morris.
- Founde, *v. go*, 5529; advance, 5038; Found, *go*, 5230; (Found), *go*, 2879; Foundis, *pr. s.* marches, advances, proceeds, 450, 2423; (Fundes), departs, 3246; Foundes (Fondytt, *pt. s.*), *pr. s.* goes forward, 1145; Founde, 2 *pr. s. subj.* mayst go, 4936; Foundid (Foundez, *pr. s.*), *pt. s.* went, took, 1236; Foundid, *pp.* gone, 169. See Fonde.
- Foundid, *pp.* founded, built, 5291; (Fondyn, *wrongly*), 1649.
- Founding, *s.* going, advance, 4154.
- Foure, *num.* four, 633, 764\*; On alle four, on all fours, 5277.
- Fourme, *s.* manner, way, 172, 4219; form, shape, 312, 359, 613; (Forme), 987, 1708; disposition, 1276.
- Fourmed, *pt. s.* formed, prepared, 2413; (Formede), made, 1739; Fourmed, *pp.* formed, made, 3, 275, 576, 3459, 4616.
- (Fourte), *ord.* fourth, 3368.
- (Fourth), *adv.* forth, 887.
- Fowell (Foule), *s.* bird, 2264 (alluding to a common proverb, "as fain as fowl of the day"); Fowlis, *pl.* birds, 5448, 5589; Fowles, 3146; Fowls, 3944. See Foule.
- (Fowly), *adv.* foully, evilly, greatly, 934.
- Foxes, *pl.* foxes, 3932.
- Fozten (Foughten), *pt. pl.* fought, 2460; (Feghten), 2375; (Feyten), 2090.
- Fra, *prep.* from, 56, 136, 139, 173, 296, 332, &c.; (Fro), 3245; from the time, 2323; Fra *pat*, from the time when, 2019, 2373; Fra now, from this time, 1094.
- Fraid, *pp.* afraid, 3458. See Frayed.
- Fraist (Fraysted), *pp.* enquired about, 2019. Icel. *freista*, to make trial of. See Fraystes.
- Frache (Fraunches), *s.* freedom, franchise, 917. See Fraunches.
- (Franches), *pr. s.* enquires, asks, 832\*; 2 *pr. s.* askest, 2305. See Frayne.
- Frantites (Francides), the name of a country, 1057.
- Fraunche, *adj.* without flaw, excellent, 4356. Cf. E. *free-stone*.
- Fraunches, *s.* franchise, freedom, 4617; (Franchiez), 2486; Fraunchis, *s.* benefit, good quality, 4684; Fraunches, *as pl.* liberties, 4012.
- Fraward, *prep.* from the direction of, away from, 1335, 1759; (Froward), 1289.
- Frayed, *pp.* frightened, 3567; (Frayd), 3036. See Fraid.
- Frayne, *v.* enquire, ask, 3837; Frayn (Frayne), *ger.* to ask for, enquire, 2655; Fraynes, *pr. s.* asks, 267, 433, 457; (Franches), 2067; (Franez), 1700; Frayns, 672; Frayned, *pt. s.* enquired, 2305. A.S. *frignan*, Icel. *fregna*. (Fraystes), *pr. s.* tempts, tries, puts to trial, 3366. See Fraist.
- Fre, *adj.* free, 4616; noble, 497.
- Freke, *s.* man, 270, 298, 360, 672, 675, 851, 2186, 2642, 813\*; Frek, 101; (Freke), 1477, 2659; (Frekes), *pl.* 1992, 3268. A.S. *freca*.
- Freke, *adj.* eager, 5521. A.S. *frec*.
- Frekind, *adj.* freckled, spotted, 4988.
- Frekly, *adv.* quickly, soon, greatly, 1795. (Ill used.)
- Frelettis, *pl.* frailties, 3268.
- Frely, *adj.* noble, 270; (Frelich), 2728.
- Frely, *adv.* freely, liberally, 4012, 785\*; courteously, 1695; well, 429; very, 4082.
- (Frend), friend, 814\*; Frendis, *pl.* 619.
- Frendly, *adv.* friendly, 1695.
- Frengs, *pl.* fringes, 4338.



- Fresche (Fressh), *adj.* new, 891; (Fresh), fresh, 1350; (Freshe), 1007; Fresch, bright, 5604; Fresch (Fresh), *adj.* fresh, 1174, 2766; (Frehse), fresh, 1235; vigorous, 792, where the Dublin MS. has *fers*.
- Freschely, *adv.* eagerly, 3816; Freschly (Freshly), vigorously, 2132; (Fresly), quickly, 923; Freschely (Freshly), boldly, 1031; Freschly, boldly, or quickly, 906.
- Fresons, *pl.* Frisians, i. e. men in cloth of Frieze, men roughly clad, 1758. F. *frison*, a Frisian; also a cloth of Friesland (Littré).
- Fresys, *pr. s.* freezes, 2896.
- Fretis, 2 *pr. pl.* fret, vex, irritate, 4400; Freten, *pp.* devoured, 5589.
- Frett, *pp.* adorned, decked, covered, 4766; Fret (Frett), 1542. A.S. *frætwian*.
- Frettis, *pl.* ornaments, 4338. A.S. *frætwæ*.
- Frejt (Frit), *pp.* frightened, 1441.
- Frigie, Phrygia, 5674; (Frige), 2116. (Frist), *adv.* first, 805\*, 1067; (On be first), among the first, 2347 (where MS. A. has *on first*).
- Frithis, *pl.* friths, forests, woods, 4131.
- Frithmen, *pl.* woodmen, men of the wood, 5597.
- Fro, *prep.* from, 2691; (Fro), 742\*, 842, 1056; *conj.* from the time that, 725\*. See Fra.
- (From), *prep.* from, 831\*.
- Frosen, *pp.* frozen, 3063.
- Frusch (Frush), *s.* charge, rush, onset, 1215. See the Troy-book.
- Frute, *s.* fruit, 4608; offspring, 575; Frutis, *pl.* fruits, 4636; Frutes, 5238; (Frute, *s.*), 2426.
- Frynde (Frend), friend, 864; (Frende), 2944; Frynd (Frend), 2720; Fryndis (Frendes), *pl.* 3421; Frynde (Frendes), *pl.* 1258.
- Fude (Fode), *s.* food, 2168. See Fode.
- (Fulgyll), *imp. s.* fulfil, 3173.
- Full, *adj.* full, 56, 65, 66, 112, 358, &c. In l. 1275, the phr. 'full of themselves' seems to mean full of their troubles, full of anxieties. In l. 2168, we have *at the full* = fully.
- Full, *adv.* very, 55, 129, 143, 171, 176, 234, &c.; (Ful hey), very high, 779.
- (Fully), *adv.* full, 1530.
- Fulth, *s.* plenty, abundance, fullness, 2171.
- Fundirs (Fonders), *pr. s.* founders, trips up, 846.
- Furelange, *pl.* furlongs, 3856. See Forlange.
- (Furelenth), *s.* furrow's length, furlong, 2898.
- Furrers, *pl.* furs, 4338. O.F. *fourrure*, fur.
- Furth, *adv.* forth, 53, 120, 286, 335; far on, 375; forward, 636, 3829; Furthe, forth, away, 333, 408, 621; Furth in with eyn, forth into the even, far advanced in the evening, 3055.
- (Furthers), *imp. pl.* assist, 2700.
- Fute, *s.* foot, 545. See Fote.
- Fuyll (Ful), *adv.* full, very, 2197. See Full.
- Fyaunce (Fiance), confidence, 1641.
- Fyfe, five, 633.
- Fyfte, fifth, 3345.
- Fyftene, fifteen, 1078.
- Fyfti, *adj.* fifty, 3785.
- Fygis, *pl.* figs, 4821.
- Fygour (Figour), *s.* figure, 2867; appearance, 312; Figoure, 613.
- Fyld (Feld), *s.* field, 1943.
- (Fyll), 1 *pr. pl. subj.* may fill, 2168\*.
- Fynde, *ger.*; To fynde, to be found, 3799; Fynd, 1 *pr. s.* I find, 24, 272, 300, 308, 643; Fyndis (Fyndes), *pr. s.* finds, 821, 1315, 1656; (Fynde), 962, 1078, (Fyndes hym), *pr. s.* finds himself, finds out his true value, comes to himself, 3366.
- Fyne, *adj.* fine, 1542, 1590; good, 814\*; fine, clear, transparent, 4853.
- Fyne, *adv.* finely, 2766.
- Fynely, *adv.* finely, 3220.
- Fynes, *pr. s.* finishes, ends, dies, 4002\*; ends, 740\*, 5626; Fyne, *imp. s.* cease, 1990; (Fynynd), *pt. s.* ended, died, 3100; Fyne,

- imp. s.* cease, leave off trying, 2720.
- Fynesch, *ger.* to finish, to put an end to, 3976 (it means—it suits him better to finish the fight himself); Fynyst (Fynyshit), *pt. s.* finished, ended, died, 808; (Fynesshit), *pp.* accomplished, 797\*; Fynyst (Fynyshyt), finished, 687.
- Fynest, *adj. superl.* finest, 3368.
- Fynger, finger, 1089; Fyngirs, *pl.* 673.
- (Fyre), fire, 750\*; Fyris, *pl.* 3859; see Bale-fyre.
- Fyrmauent, firmament, 567.
- Fyrs, *adj.* fierce, 418. See Fers.
- Fysche-hale (Fyssh-hole), *adj.* as sound as a fish, 2575. Cf. "As sound as a trout," and "as sound as a roach"; see the note, p. 303.
- Fyschis, *pl.* fishes, 3947.
- Fysyke, *s.* physic, 4280.
- Fytt, *s.* fit, canto, 740\*. See Fitt.
- Fyue (Fyfe), *num.* five, 1196, 1372, 3175.
- Fyjt, *s.* fight, 450.
- Gaa, *ger.* to go, 5515; (Go), depart, 1826; to move about, 5296; Ga, *ger.* to go, 966; (Go), 2873; Gaa, *v.* proceed, 636; Ga (Go), *v.* go, 1717; Ga (Gay), *pr. s.* 1 *p.* I go, 1671; Ga, 2 *pr. pl.* go, 459; Ga, *imp. s.* 5406; Gaes (Gose), *pr. s. refl.* goes, 3016; Gais him (Gase), goes, 1451; Gais him *vp.* goes up, 535.
- Gadirs (Gaders), name of a place, 1200, 1243, 1335.
- Gafe, *pt. pl.* gave, 1070; (Gau), 742; Gaffe, uttered, 5157.
- Gai, *adj.* gay, 3797.
- Gaiest, *adj. superl.* gayest, 5124.
- Gailis (Galays), *pl.* galleys, 2474. See Galays.
- Gais; see Gaa.
- Gais, *an error (probably) for Girt*, *pp.* struck, 3645. Cf. *thurgh-girt* in Chaucer.
- Galawis (Galouse), *pl.* gallows, 1813.
- Galays, *pl.* galleys, 2456; Gales, 65. See Gailis.
- Gale, *s.* gale, a kind of plant, 4094.
- "Gayle, *mirtus*;" Cath. Anglicum, q. v.
- Gales (Galez), *pr. s.* speaks, 2257; (Galet), *pp.* announced (lit. sung, said), 798\*. Icel. *gala*.
- Galt, *s.* boar-pig, 4743. See *Galle* in Cath. Anglicum.
- Garnarody, *name*, 5491.
- Gamen (Gamme), *s.* sport, amusement, 2280, 2604; Gammen (Gamen), 2272; (Gamez), *pl.* 2259; (Gammez), 1773.
- Gamen, *v.* play, sport, 4370.
- Gan, *pt. pl.* did, 201.
- Gane, *pp.* gone, 5553; dead, 4008; Gane many winter, many years ago, 692, 3556.
- Gang, *ger.* to go, 5535; Gange, 1257; *v.* 5047.
- Gangem, Ganges, 4188; Gangan, 4715.
- Gapand, *pres. part.* gaping, 3870.
- Gardens, *pl.* guardians, 3409.
- Garettis, *pl.* watch-towers (lit. garrets), 5601; Garettis (Garrates), 1417.
- Garisons, *pl.* stores, treasures, 4430, 5631; (Garison), 1809. O.F. *garison*. See Garsons.
- Garland, *s.* garland of victory, 818; Garlands, *pl.* 4599.
- Garment, *s.* garment, 1588.
- Garnad, Granada, 5667.
- Garnyscht, *pp.* garnished, 4451; Garnest (Garneshed), adorned, 1533.
- Garsons (Garisons), *pl.* rewards, 1662; Garsons, tributes, sums, 1074. See Garisons.
- Garysons, *s. pl.* (Garyson, *sing.*), garrisons, 3015. See Garisons.
- Gas; see Gase, Gaa.
- Gasa (Gaza), Gaza, 1451, 1453.
- Gascoyne, Gascony, 5667.
- Gase, *pr. s.* goes, 631; Gase him, goes, 332, 1183; Gase (Goys), 1285; (Goyse), 3216; Gas (Gays), 1648; Gase, *imp. pl.* go ye, 3522.
- Gast, *s.* spirit, 4065; life, 726\*.
- Gat, 1 *pt. s.* begat, 724\*; Gatt, *pt. s.* 1190; Gate, *pt. pl.* got, 3653.
- Gate, *s.* way, road, passage, 3339, 4625, 812\*; Gate *vp.* ascent, 5636; Gatis, *pl.* roads, 143; paths,

- tracks, 4830; (Gatez), streets, 1519; His gate, on its own way, in its own direction, 1310.
- Gaude (Gaud), *s.* trick, 2966; Gaudis (Gawdes), *pl.* gauds, ornaments, vanities, 2732.
- (Gauē), *pt. s.* gave, 726\*; Gauē (Gafe), 1778.
- (Gay), *adj.* gay, 790\*; Gay, *adv.* gaily, 1533.
- Gayly, *adv.* gaily, 4911; Gaile, beautifully, 3346.
- Gaynes, *pr. s.* avails, 181; Gayn, *pr. pl.* advance, promote, 2746. Icel. *gagna*, to help, be of use.
- Gaynest, *adj. superl.* nearest, shortest (way), 3484; At the gaynest (ganest), by the nearest way, 1137, 1318. See below.
- Gaynir, *adj. comp.* nearer, 5512. Icel. *gegn*, near, convenient.
- Gedire (Gedir), *v.* gather, 2531; (Geder), 1809; Gedire (Geder), *ger.* 2101; (Gedder), *ger.* 3129; Gedirs, *pr. s.* gathers, 1334; Gedirs him, gathers for himself, 911; Gedirs, *pr. pl.* gather, 3958; (Gerdyn, for Gedryn), 2054; Gedird, *pt. s.* gathered, 3480; Gedird, *pp.* 338, 5439; (Gederit), 1739; (Gedderyd), 2830.
- Geere (Gere), *s.* stuff, gear, provision, 3177.
- Geet, *pr. pl. 2 p.* get, 4468.
- Gefe, *ger.* to give, 3772; (Gefe), *v.* 1980; (Gyfe), *v.* 1826; Geffe, *pr. s. imp.* may give, 5254; Gefe, *imp. pl. 1 p.* let us give (up), 181; Gefes, *imp. pl.* give, 1035. See Geue.
- Gemetry, geometry, 339; Gemetri, 43; *written* Gremetry, 410.
- Gemmes, *pl.* gems, 3670; (Gemmys), 978, 1535, 2396; Gemmys, 3224; Gemes, 3951.
- Generall, *adj. as s.* a general meeting, 1507.
- Genosophis, *pl.* gymnosophists, 4022.
- Gentill, *adj.* gentle, 4022; (Gentyll), 705; Gentils, gentry, 3402.
- Gentilli, *adv.* skilfully, completely, thoroughly, 43.
- Gentill-man (Gentell-man), *s.* gentleman, 2664.
- Gere, *s.* gear, dress, 4599; equipment, 824\*, 3034; implements, 131; warlike preparation, 2129; trappings for a horse, accoutrements (used of a bridle), 790\*; (Gere), dress, 2905; Geris, *pl.* toys, playthings, 1773.
- Gernets, *pl.* pomegranates, 4724; Gernetts, 5238.
- Gerrethis, *pl.* girths, bands, 5536.
- Gers, *pr. s.* makes, 1219, 4441, 4762; causes, 5155; Gert, *pt. s.* made, 5535; caused, 3860; *pt. pl.* made, 5480; Gert make, caused to be made, 191. Icel. *gjöra*.
- Gesse, *v.* suppose, 5000; discern, 4216; Gesse, 1 *pr. s.* suppose, imagine, 990, 5632; (Ges), 2732; Ges (Gesse), 577, 2507; Gessis, *pr. s.* supposes, 5512; Geses (Gessed, *pt. s.*), 2071; Gessis (Gessys), *pr. s. refl.* expects, 2670; Gesse, *pr. pl. 2 p.* suppose, 4495, 4578; Gesses (Gessyn), *pr. pl.* suppose, 2905; Gessid (Gessyd), *pp.* guessed, supposed, 3266.
- Gesse, *s.* guess, thought, supposition, 3552.
- Gest, *s.* guest, 5254; Gestis, *pl.* 485, 497; bedfellows, 460; (Gestes), guests, 2948.
- Gest, *s.* story, 4022.
- Gett, *v.* get, 188, 1440; *ger.* to win, 794; Geten, *pp.* begotten, 473, 3578; (Gettyn), 756, 973; won, 1453; Getis, *imp. pl.* get, obtain, 2468.
- Gett, *s.* child, one who is begotten, 391, 435, 473, 577.
- Geue, *ger.* to give, 5377; Geues (Gyfez), *pr. s.* 1662; Genys (Gyfez), 1074; Geuyn (Geven), *pt. pl.* gave, 2327; Geuyn (Gefyn), *pp.* given, 1883; Geuyn vp, *pp.* given up, 813. See Gefe.
- Gide, *s.* guide, 4953, 5047.
- Gidis, *pr. s.* guides, 5387; Gidid, *pp.* guided, 4425.
- Gife, *conj.* if, 565.
- Giffe, *v.* to give (*but an error for* Giffis, gives), 4184.
- Giftis, *pl.* gifts, 3777; (Gyftes), 3128; (Gyftez), 1660, 2027.

- Gilden, *adj.* golden, 3667, 4985; Gildin, 5601.
- Gile, *s.* guile, treachery, 2574.
- Gilid, *pt. s.* beguiled, 417.
- Gill-stremes, *pl.* cascades, 3231. (*Wrongly* gylle-stormez in the Dublin MS.) Icel. *gíl*, a ravine.
- Gilt, *s.* guilt, fault, offence, 2384, 2434, 3525; (Gilt), 3213.
- Gilt, *adj.* gilt, gilded, 1873; (Gilt), 790\*.
- Gilt (Giltyd), *pt. s.* offended, 2430; Giltid, *pp.* sinned, 472.
- Giltén, *adj.* gilded, 3456, 4451.
- Gilty (Gylty), *adj.* guilty, 2574.
- Ging, *s.* gang, following, host, company, 3484, 4715; (Genge), 3015; (Gyn), 1213, 2038; Ginge, 3618, 5456; (Geng), 2674; Gingis (Gyng), *pl.* followers, retinue, 1648; companies (of you), 2435. In ll. 1213, 2038, the Dublin MS. has *gyn* = device, plan (wrongly).
- Gingere, ginger, 5426.
- Girdill, girdle, 181; (Girdyll), 758. See the note to l. 179, p. 288.
- Girdis, *pr. s.* strikes, pierces, 1219; (Girdes), 1213; Girdes (Grydes), throws, flings, 2278; Girdis out (Gyrdes oute), bursts out, 3159; Girdis, *pr. pl.* beat, 2474; strike, 796; Girds, strike, spring, leap, 3845; Girdis (Gyrdyn), throw, 2227; Girdis (Girdes), *pr. pl.* strike, 1417; Girdis *vp* (Gyrdes *vp*), rush up, climb up, 1435; Girdid, *pt. pl.* burst, rushed, 3231; Gird, *pp.* beaten, 1865; Gird (Girde), struck, 2787; Girdand, *pres. part.* dashing, rushing, 1243. See *gurden* in Mätzner, p. 332.
- Girdis, *pr. s. refl.* surrounds himself, 2038. The Dublin MS. has *girdez in*, strikes in, attacks.
- Giugne, *s.* June, 3537.
- Glaain, *s.* clamour, loud talking, 5504. Icel. *glam*, noise.
- Glace (Glas), *s.* ice, 3002.
- Glad, *adj.* glad, 1257; Glade (Glad), *adj.* glad, rejoicing, 3244.
- Glade, *v.* rejoice, 4370; Gladis, *pr. s.* gladdens, cheers, encourages, 485, 3929; (Gladdes), 966; (Glad), 1 *pr. s. subj.* may please, 724\*.
- Gladen, *s.* gladdon, a kind of flag or iris, esp. the stinking iris (*Iris fatidissima*), 4094.
- Gladen, *s.* a lucky moment, 131. "A gladen he waytis," he watches for a lucky moment. This is clearly the sense. The Icel. *glæðr* means (1) glad, (2) bright, said of sky or weather. Hence Icel. *glæðna*, to brighten up, said of the weather, from which verb the word here used is derived. Similarly, we have prov. E. (Northern) *gladden*, explained as (1) a glade [E. D. S. Gloss. 1] or (2) a void space free from encumbrances [E. D. S. Gloss. 17], i. e. a clear space, with reference to *space* instead of *time*.
- Gladnes (Gladnesse), *s.* gladness, 1971.
- Glas, *s.* glass, 4463, 5536. (Glasynand); see Glyssynand.
- Glanir, *s.* glaver, chattering, noise of tongues, 5504. See Mätzner.
- Gledis, *pl.* burning coals, glowing or live coals, 226, 3627, 3898; (Gledes), 2474; Gledes, 2975. A.S. *gléd*.
- Gleme, *s.* gleam, 2044, 4817.
- Glent, *pt. s.* glinted, shone, 4817.
- Glesenyd, *pt. pl.* glistened, 3797; Glesenand, *pres. pt.* 603.
- Gletirand, *pres. pt.* glittering, 3346.
- Glett, *s.* mud, slime, 4516; clay, 4490. See Mätzner.
- Glide, *v. pass.* come, 358; Glidis, *pr. s.* glides, flows, 3233; (Glydes), glides, 1310; Glidis (Glad, *pt. s.*), *pr. s.* glides, 2451; Glid, *pp.* glided, 2857; Glidand (Glydand), *pr. pt.* gliding, 1079.
- Glittered, *pt. s.* glittered, 4957; Gletirand, *pres. part.* 3797; Gletirand, 3686; Glitterand, 5536.
- Glode, *s.* way, path, track, road, 1334. A.S. *gelád*.
- Glorand, *pres. pt.* staring, gazing fixedly, glaring, 4552, 4728; gleaming, 3627. Icel. *glóra*, to stare, glare like a cat's eyes.
- Glori, *s.* glory, 1730; (Glory), 1983; Glorie (Glory), 1883, 1971.

- Gloriosest (Gloriest), *adj. superl.* most glorious, 1611.  
 Glorius, *adj.* glorious, 2776.  
 Glotony, *s.* gluttony, 3265.  
 Gloue (Glofe), *s.* glove, 1984;  
 Gloues, *pl.* gloves, 2767; *see* Nethire.  
 Gloumes, *pr. s.* becomes gloomy, is overcast, 4142. Cf. *E. glum.*  
 (Glowys), *pr. s.* glows, 3368.  
 Gluttis, *pl.* gluttons, 4552. So in P. Plowman's Crede. O.F. *glout*; Roquefort.  
 Glyffe, *ger.* to dazzle, glare, look bright, 4599. Cf. Lowl. Sc. *gliff*, a glimpse.  
 Glyssynand (Glasynand), *pres. part.* glistening, glittering, 3015.  
 Gnaistes, *pr. s.* gnashes, 5321.  
 (Go), 1 *pr. s.* go, 2280. *See* Gaa.  
 Gobet, *s.* gobbet, morsel, 4516; (Gobett). piece, 1310.  
 Goblets, *pl.* goblets, 3701; Goblettis, 5131; Gobletis (Goblettes), 2935; Goblettis (Goblettez), 2948.  
 Goblyn, *s.* goblin, 5491.  
 Gode (God), *s.* God, 329, 1073, 2905; Godis (Goddess), *gen.* God's, 876; Gods (Godez), 1591; Godis, *pl.* gods, 307, 5410; Goddis, 271, 5394.  
 (Gode), *adj.* good, 804\*.  
 Goddesses, *pl.* goddesses, 1874.  
 Godhede, *s.* godhead, 5622.  
 Godlaik, *s.* goodness, virtue, 4688.  
 Godness (Gudnes), *s.* goodness, 3270.  
 Gods (Gudez), *pl.* goods, wealth, 3280.  
 Gogg, Gog, 5487.  
 Golanand, *pres. pt.* blowing; hence, rainy, tempestuous, 4796. Cf. Icel. *gola, gula*, a fair breeze, *gol*, a breeze; *E. gale*.  
 Gold, *s.* gold, 276, 436, 607; gold (spurs), 5458 (see the note); (Goldes), *pl.* gold coins, 1847.  
 Golden, *adj.* golden, 201; (Go'd), 1533; Golde, 425.  
 Gols, *s.* red, gules, a red colour (see the note), 4819.  
 Gome, *s.* man, 391, 417, 435, 516, 742, 818, 966, 1467, 1691, 2259, 2384, 3276; (Grome), 1190, 1936; Gomes, *pl.* men, 1417, 2054, 3387, 3552; (living) men, 3686; statues of men, 5276; (Gomez), 1657, 1739, 2531; Gomes, *pl. gen.* of men, 4272.  
 Gone, *pr. pl.* go, 3456.  
 Gorge, *s.* throat, 3627; Gorg, neck, 4985.  
 Gorred, *pp.* gored, 3645.  
 Gose, *pr. s.* goes, 5050.  
 Goste, *s.* spirit, soul, 4484. *See* Gast.  
 Gostid, spiritual, endowed with spirits, 1874.  
 Gotis, *pl.* streams, 4796. A *gote* is properly a mill-stream; cf. "*goyts* of mills, where the stream passes out;" E. D. S. Gloss. B. 17.  
 Gouverne (Goueryne), *v.* govern, rule, 3387 (where the Ashmole MS. has *gounere*); (Gouern), 1973.  
 Gouvernoure (Gouernour), *s.* governor, 1623, 1936; (Gubernare), 852; Gouverners, *pl.* rulers, 3552.  
 Goules, gules, red, 4989, 5060; of a red colour, 3368.  
 (Goys), *pr. s.* goes, 2111.  
 Grace, *s.* favour, grace, 307, 358, 994; success, glory, 2534; Gracis, *pl.* prayers, lit. thanks, 5394.  
 (Graceux), gracious, 798\*.  
 Gracious, *adj.* beautiful, 3667; (Graciously), gracious, 1748, 1844; (Gracieux), favouring, 1964.  
 Graciousest, *adj. superl.* most handsome, 4909.  
 Gradid (Gradit), *pp.* degraded, 2430.  
 Graffis, *pl.* graves, 4451.  
 Graithe, *v.* prepare (myself) to go, direct (myself), 3522; Graithes (Grathez), *pr. s.* prepares, 3016; Graithes him, arms himself, 911; (Grathez hym), prepares himself, 3159; Graith, *pr. pl.* 2 p. appoint, 4499; Graithed (Grathed), *pt. pl.* prepared, 1933; Graithid (Grathed), *pp.* arrayed, 1844; Graithis, *imp. pl.* yield, prepare, 1904. Icel. *greiða*. *See* Grathez.  
 Graithely (Grathly), *adv.* readily, worthily, 756; Graithly, readily, 201. Icel. *greiðr*.  
 Graithist (Grethest), *adj. superl.* best prepared, hence, richest, 1865. Icel. *greiðr*.  
 Gramere, grammar, 631.

- Granate, *s.* garnet, 3344, 3368.  
 Grane, *v.* groan, 1219; Granys (Granes), *pr. s.* 717; (Gronys), 3252.  
 (Grane), *s.* groan, 726\*.  
 Grant (Graunt), *ger.* to grant, to ransom, 3103; (Graunte), *v.* grant, 1671, 1676; Grantis, *pr. s.* grants, 362; Grant (Graunt), *pr. s. subj.* grant, allow, 3125; 2 *pr. pl.* grant, 1826; Grantid, *pp.* granted, 5317. See Graunt.  
 Granton (Grantum), the river Granicus, 3002, 3016, 3062, 3133; (Gratun), 2882.  
 Grape, *s.* grape, 2426; (Grope), 1347; Grapis, 3667, 4724, 5239.  
 (Grase), *s.* grass, 2426.  
 (Grathez on), *pr. s.* puts on, dons, 790\*; (Grathes hym), gets ready, 812\*; Grathis (Grathen), *pr. pl.* get ready, 2456; Graped, *pp.* prepared, ready, 131; Grapid (Grathed), arrayed, 1588; (Grathyd), made, 3387; (Grathed), armed, 1213. See Graithe.  
 Grattest, *adj. superl.* greatest, 5131.  
 Graue, *v.* engrave, 201; *ger.* to bury, 1330; Graue, *for* Graues, *pr. s.* buries, 3659; Grauen, *pp.* buried, 3319, 5417; engraved, graven, 436, 1591, 3343; Grauen (Grafen), engraved, 3145.  
 Granys, *pl.* graves (*s.* Graue), 2101; Graues (Grafys), 3130.  
 Graunt, *pr. s.* 1 *p.* grant, 516, 1684, 804\*; Grauntis (Grauntez), *pr. s.* 2295; Graunt (*for* Graunted), *pp.* granted, 3296. See Grant.  
 Graunt, *adj.* great, 1737, 5668; Graunt mercy, many thanks, gra-mercy, 370, 458.  
 Graunt, *s.* permission, 990.  
 (Graunt), *s.* grant, grace, 2387. (Corrupt.)  
 Gray, gray, 1330, 2044.  
 Grayd, *adv.* excellently, 3689. Cf. Scot. *graid*, made ready, short for *grathid*; also *grayd* for *grathyd* in lines 3339, 3348.  
 Grayne, *s.* grain, small portion, 5622; (Grane), grain, seed, 2426; Graynes (Granes), *pl.* seeds, 1984, 2071; granulcs (?), 3375; grains, spots, 4989; Grayns (Granes), seeds, 2024.  
 Grayne, *s.* arm (of the sea), branch (of the sea), 2451. Icel. *grein*. See *Grain* in Jamieson.  
 Grayne, *meaning uncertain*, 2767; *perhaps it means* (skins) dyed in grain. (*Grayue* means a greave, but this hardly helps us.) In fact, we find *greyn* used in the sense of 'stuff dyed in grain' in the Babees Book, p. 178—"whepur he were saten, sendell, vellewet, scarlet, or *greyn*." Or it may actually mean 'tanned leather'; for Hexham gives a Middle Du. verb *granen*, to tan leather, and *graner*, a tanner; whilst Jamieson gives *grainer*, the knife used by tanners and skinners for stripping the hair from the skins.  
 Graythe (Grath), *v.* prepare, get ready, 2873; Grayth, 5535; Graythe (Grath), *pr. s.* 1 *p.* direct, 1984; Graythis (Grathez), *pr. s.* gets ready, 3133; Graythes (Grathes), prepares, 2129; Graythis (Grathes) him, *pr. s. refl.* prepares himself, 1453; Graythid, *pt. s.* prepared, 3480; Graythed, *pp.* prepared, 4878; Graythid, formed, constituted, 1874; Graythid (Grathyd), adorned, set, 2935; prepared, 2767; *shortened to* Grayd, prepared, 3339, 3348; Graythe, *imp. s.* 2 *p.* get ready, 5037. Icel. *greiða*. See Graithe.  
 Graythe, *s.* machine, gear, contrivance, 5518. From the verb.  
 Graythist, *in comp.* Alpire-graythist, i.e. most excellent (or benevolent) of all, 162. See Graithe.  
 Grayuyn, *pp.* engraven, 425. See Graue.  
 Gre, *s.* degree, hence victory, 3296 (for *ere* read *is* in this line); (Gree), 3125; prize, 818. See Gree.  
 Grece, Greece, 852, 994, 1435, 1657, &c.; *written* Grace, 1753.  
 Grece, *s.* stairs, 535, 5050; Grecis, 332. Grece = *grees*, *pl.* of *gree*, a step. Grecis = *gree-es*, a double plural.



- Grecen (Greken), *gen. pl.* of the Greeks, 3216.  
 Gredely, *adv.* greedily, eagerly, 1435.  
 Gree, *s.* victory, superiority, 3518, 3651, 3756, 5456; (Gre), 994, 1883, 2278. O.F. *gre*, from Lat. *gradus*. See Gre.  
 Grief, *s.* grief, 1285; harm, 4157; Gref (Grefe), grief, trouble, 2435. (Grefully), *adv.* extremely, 973. Put for *gref-fully*, i. e. grievously.  
 Grege (Grig), *s.* grig, cricket, 1753.  
 Greke, the Greek language, 5009.  
 Grekin, Grecian, 5504, 5639.  
 Grekis (Grekez), *pl.* Greeks, 986, 1179, 1279, &c.  
 Greme, *s.* anger, 4157. Icel. *gremi*. (Gremly), *adj.* terrible, 726\*.  
 Grene, *adj.* green, 5536.  
 Grese, *s.* grass, herbs, 338.  
 Grete, *s.* a kind of stone, 1330. Properly 'gravel' (A.S. *grēot*); but see examples in Mätzner, *s. v. greot*, of its use for sepulchral purposes.  
 Grete, *adj.* great, 26, 65, 358, 852, 1809; great with child, 459; (Grett), 1873; great (one), 1347; Gret (Grete), 1254; (Gret), 1352.  
 Grete, *ger.* to weep, 872, 5042; *v.* 3159; Gretis, *pr. s.* 3320; (Gretes), 1285; (Grettez), 973; Grete, *pr. pl.* 1 p. weep, 4370; Gretis, *pr. pl.* 155. A.S. *grétan*.  
 (Grethest), *adj. superl.* most excellent, 1591. (But read *grettest*, as in the Ashmole MS.)  
 Gretis, *pr. s.* greets, 79, 535; (Gretes), 1488; *pr. pl.* 1603; Grete (Gret), 1 *pt. s.* saluted, 1623.  
 Gretly, *adv.* greatly, 472; (Grettly), 2746.  
 Gretter, *adj. comp.* greater, 5300; Grettir, 1334; (Gretter), 1267.  
 Grettest, *adj. superl.* greatest, 271; (Grethest, *wrongly*), 1591; (Grettest), 1904, 1911; Grettist, 307.  
 Grettis, *pl.* great (men), 3651.  
 Gretyng, *s.* weeping, 3238.  
 Greues, *pr. pl.* pain, 2012.  
 Greues, *pl.* greaves, 3898.  
 Greues, *pl.* groves, 4044; Greuys, 4584, 4953; Greues (Gravez), 2857.  
 Greuously, *adv.* grievously, 973, 2787; Greuously, 796.  
 Greuys, *pr. s.* grieves, 472; Greued (Grefyd), *pt. s.* grieved, harmed, 2544; Greued, *pp.* grieved, vexed, troubled, 874; Greuyd (Grevyde), 1342; (Greved), 1467; Greues (Grefez), *imp. pl.* grieve, 2434.  
 Grew, *pt. s.* 1 p. grew, became, 3280.  
 Grew, Greek, 4710, 5012.  
 Grew, *s.* (for Gree), degree, bit, 3270. (The Dublin MS. has dele.) It can hardly be the Gk. γρῦ.  
 Grewis, *pl.* groves, 4725. See Greues.  
 Gridis, *pl.* outcries, 544. Such seems to be the sense; but the preservation of this O.F. form *gride* is remarkable, as the usual O.F. form is always *cri*; only Italian has the form *grido*, a cry, shriek, outcry. The Span. has *grita*, but *grida* occurs in O. Spanish. See Diez, *s. v. gridare*.  
 Griffons, *pl.* griffins, 5439, 5518.  
 Grindand, *pres. pt.* grinding, 4552.  
 Gripis, *pr. pl.* seize, 5453.  
 Gripis, *pl.* vultures, 5439; Gripis gripis of our gomes, vultures seize upon our men, 5453.  
 Grippis, *pl.* pangs, 544.  
 Grisely, *adj.* grisly, horrible, 4728; *adv.* frightfully, 3870.  
 Gro, *s.* shuddering, horror, 3238. (But perhaps read *grone*, as in Dublin MS.) Cf. Dan. *gru*, horror.  
 Groched, *pp.* begrudged, 1467.  
 Grofe, *s.* cave, 5394. *Grove* is the regular word for 'mine' among the Derbyshire miners; E. D. S. Gloss. B. 10.  
 (Grome), *s.* man, 2101.  
 Grond, *s.* ground, land, 3077, 4705; origin, 5410; (Ground), ground, 2787, 2857; Gronde, ground, 188; (Grund), land, 1973; (Grunde), ground, 1215. See Ground.  
 Gronde, *pr. pl.* 2 p. ground, found (upon), base (upon), rely (upon), 4490. See Grond.  
 (Grone), *s.* groaning, 3238.  
 Groned, *pt. s.* groaned, grunted, 4743.

- Grouelings, *adv.* in a grovelling posture, bending forward, 5276.
- Ground, *s.* real reason, source, 476; ground, earth, 162, 1964; Grounded (Grund), ground, 2278.
- Growis, *pr. s.* grows, 3683; *pr. pl.* (or *s.*), grow, 2426; Groued, *pt. s.* grew, 4978; Growen, *pp.* grown, 5622; mature, 1347; Growand, *pres. part.* growing, 5238.
- Grub (Grob), *s.* grub, 1753.
- Grune, *pp.* ground, pounded, 338. Short for *grunden*.
- Grym, *adj.* grim, terrible, threatening, 26, 65, 5408, 5435; large, 1079; (Grymme), 1085; Grym (Greme), *adj.* bitter, sad, 3238.
- Grym, *pr. pl.* 1 *p.* grow angry, or rather *adj.* angry (are being understood), 4653. The M. E. *verb* is *gremen*.
- Grymly, *adv.* terribly, 603; fiercely, 796.
- Gryn, *adj.* (for Grym), grim, 5491.
- Grype (Gripe), *s.* bunch of grapes, cluster, lit. handful, 1347. So the O.F. *grappe* means 'a cluster,' not a single grape.
- Grysely, *adj.* terrible, 5397; horrible, 4743; (Gryslyche), terrible, 3238.
- Grysely, *adv.* horribly, grisly, severely, 3645; (Grysly), terribly, 796.
- Gud, *adj.* good, 459; (Gude), 1074; (God), 731; precious, 1662; Gude, 390, 3128; sufficient, 3585 (in which line read *vs* for *30w*).
- Gud (Gude), *adv.* well; And þaim gud þinke, if it seem well to them, 2948.
- Gude (Goode), *s.* property, 1778. See Gudis.
- Gud's (Godez), *pl.* goods, wealth, property, possessions, 1852; (Goddez), 1865; Gudis (Gudez), *pl.* goods, wealth, 2738; Gudes (Gudez), possessions, 2683. See Guds.
- Gudly, *adv.* fairly, well, 485, 516.
- Gudman (Godman), master, lord, 2407; sir, 436; Gudmans, *gen. s.* hero's, 3433.
- Gudnes, *s.* goodness, mercy, 1747, 3103; (Goodnesse), 1676.
- Guds, *pl.* goods, property, 5377. See Gudis.
- Gun, *pt. s.* began, did, 394. See Gan.
- Gunnes (Gunnez), *pl.* guns, engines for casting stones, 2227.
- Gurds, *pl.* gourds, 3701.
- Guttars, *pl.* gutters, 4796; Gutars (Gutters), small streams, 3231.
- Gy (Gye), *ger.* to rule, direct, 3387.
- Gyane, Guienne, 5667.
- Gydid, *pp.* guided, governed, 197.
- Gyes (Gydez), *pr. s.* guides, 1642.
- Gyfes, *imp. pl.* give, 1904.
- Gyloffre, *s.* cloves, 5426.
- (Gyn), *s.* device, 812\*, 1213, 2038. But in all three places it is obviously an error for *gyng*, a troop. See Ging.
- (Gynge), *s.* gang, company, 2129. See Gynge.
- (Gyrddand), *pres. pt.* bursting, 3231.
- Gyse, manner, fashion, 631.
- Haare, *s.* hair, 5476.
- Habet, *s.* habit, dress, 3513.
- Habitacle, *s.* habitation, 4334.
- (Hable), 2 *pr. s. subj.* mayst strengthen, lit. make able, 1768.
- Hade (error for Haue as in Dublin MS.), have, get, obtain, 2839.
- Hafe, *pr. s.* 1 *p.* have, 461; (Haue), *pr. pl.* 1 *p.* 1004; Hade, 1 *pt. s.* had, 584; 2 *pt. s.* hadst, 5327; Had (Hade), 2 *pt. s. subj.* had, 1739; Hade, *pt. s.* 592; Had, 71, 190; Hadd, 346, 3204; Had (Haddon), *pt. pl.* had, i.e. made way, 803; Hadd, had, 571; (Haddyn), 1447.
- Haile, *interj.* hail! 228, 235, 4929, 4932; (Hale), 1066.
- Haile-stanes, *pl.* hailstones, 3047.
- (Haille), *s.* health; Euill haille, ill success, 1759.
- Hailsis, *pr. s.* greets, salutes, 4929.
- Icel. *heilsa*. See Haylsid.
- Haire (Heer), *adj.* hoary, bare, 776.
- Ice!. *hárr*, hoary, white. The reference is to the hoary appearance of old bare trees in winter. The epithet 'hoary,' better spelt *hare* [for *haire* and *heer* properly



- mean 'hair']. is the stock epithet of trees and forests in alliterative poetry, so that the sense is certain. Cf. 'hore okez' in Gawain and the Grene Knight, 743. Jamieson gives examples of 'ane hare wode,' a hoary wood, from Wyntown, viii. 26. 228, and 'ane hare wode' from Douglas's Virgil; but wrongly supposes the etymology to be from A.S. *hár*, hair. It is from A.S. *hár*, hoary. See also Hare (below), and note to l. 70.
- Hald**, *v.* hold, keep, 1093; perform, 366; (Held), hold, keep, observe, 1075; **Hald**, *ger.* to hold, 5542; to keep, 1596; **Halden** (Hald), *v.* to hold it, 2296; **Hald**, *pr. s.* 1 *p.* hold, account, 1102; hold (it as right), recommend, 5048; consider, 4579; (Halde), esteem, 1862; **Haldis**, *pr. s.* ho'ds, 57; esteems, 3722; beholds (lit. holds), 1527; (Haldez), 948; **Haldis** (Haldez), *pr. s.* holds, 917; **Haldis** on (Heldes on), proceeds, 820; (Haldez), holds, 780\*: **Hald**, *pr. pl.* 1 *p.* keep, 4267; (Halden), *pr. pl.* hold (their way), go, 1123; **Halden**, *pp.* kept (so), 5522; seized, 2808; held back, 4759; bound, 5341; beholden, bound, 1679; held, 441; **Halden** (Haldyn), *pp.* esteemed, 2389; (Halden), held as, 1913; (Haldyn), *pp.* considered, hence, named, 2540; esteemed, 2150.
- Hald**, *s.* hold, grip, 1440.
- Haldit** (Heldit), *pp.* inclined, given way, 2141. *Icel.* *halla*, to incline, swerve, lean over; *Dan.* *helde*, to tilt over.
- Hale**, *adj.* whole, 441, 5126; sound, 102; complete, 632; solid, 4072; safe and sound, 820; whole, unburst, 4437; sound, good, 810\*. *Icel.* *heill*.
- Hale**, *v.* uplift (lit. hale, drag), 724; draw quickly, come, 2817; *pr. pl.* hale, drag, 5524; **Halis**, *pr. s.* rushes, 962; (Hales), hales, hauls, 854; **Halis** (Halez), *pr. pl.* hale, drag, 2224.
- Half**, *s.* side, region; *Fra* half to halfe, from realm to realm, 4060; **Halfe**, side, 731; **Halfis**, *pl.* sides, 5451.
- Halfe**, *adj.* half, 1368.
- Halfe-dede** (Halfe-deyde), *adj.* half-dead, 962.
- Halidoms** (Halydoms), *pl.* holy relics, 1466. *Icel.* *helgidómr*, *Du.* *heiligdom*.
- Hall**, hall, 490; **Halle**, 2922; (Halle), 854.
- Hall's**, *pl.* (for *Halis*), tents, 4148. "Hale, a tent, pavilion;" see *Halliwell*.
- Halowe**, *ger.* to consecrate, keep as a holy day, 3463.
- Halows**, *pl.* holy ones, saints, 4915.
- Hals** (Halse), neck, 2654. *A.S.* *heals*.
- Halsis** (Halsys), *pr. s.* embraces, 2576; (Halsys vumbe), *pr. s.* embraces, 3250; **Halsid**, *pt. s.* embraced, 5029.
- Haly**, *adj.* holy, sacred, 584, 1457, 1600, 1636, 4939, 4996; (Holy), 1637.
- Haly**, *adv.* wholly, 257, 1946; (Holy), 1780, 2744.
- Hame**, *s.* home, 148, 461, 820; abode, dwelling, 4902, 5279; (Home), 2921; **Hames**, *pl.* homes, 4048, 4352, 4650; (Homez), houses, 3135.
- Hame-come**, *s.* home-coming, return, 2890.
- Hames**, *pl.* plumage, lit. coverings, 4986. *A.S.* *hama*.
- Hampire**, *pr. pl.* torment, vex (lit. hamper), 4559 (*Lat.* text *cruciant*); **Hampird**, *pt. pl.* hampered, harassed, 4800.
- (**Hanchyd**), *pp.* eaten, gnawed; *Some hanchyd of the heued*, some with the head gnawed of, 774\*. "*Hancher*, to graspe, or snatch at with the teeth;" *Cotgrave*.
- Hand**, *s.* hand, 57, 114, 198; *On hand*, close at hand, 4791; *At hand*, near, 81; **Hande**, hand, 448, 980; *To hande* (*To hand*), to close combat, 1256; *Vndire hand* (*Vnder hand*), for manual skill, 2237; **Handis**, *pl.* hands, 5568, &c.

- Hand-ball (Hand-balle), *s.* ball to play with, 1895.  
 Handille, *ger.* to handle, 2480.  
 Hand-quile, *s.* short space of time, 5524; Hand-quyle, 632; (Hand-while), 3260, 3290. So in P. Plowman.  
 Hand-tame, *adj.* hand-tame, so tame as to come to the hand, 504.  
 Hand-werke, *s.* handiwork, 4346.  
 Hangid (Hanged), *pp.* hanged, 2657.  
 Hant, *ger.* to assemble, come together (lit. to haunt, frequent a place), 4729; Hantis, 2 *pr. pl.* practise; *pe* self hantis, practise the same, endeavour after that very thing, 4667; Hant, *pr. pl.* 2 *p.* practise, 4484. O.F. *hanter*, to frequent, practise.  
 Happe, *s.* fortune, 4346; Hap (Happe), good fortune, 3272; Happis, *pl.* haps; Apon happis, perhaps, haply, 4937.  
 Happend (Happynd), *pp.* chanced, 2364.  
 Hard, *adj.* hard, stiff, 2981; severe, 512, 527.  
 Hard, *adv.* hardly, severely, 3287, 728\*; hardly, 839.  
 Hard, *s.* difficulty, 3004.  
 Hardere, *adj. comp.* harder, 3894.  
 (Hardly), *adv.* boldly, 777\*.  
 Hardy, *adj.* hard, 84; bold, strong, 2876. In l. 84 we should rather read *hard for to rekyn*.  
 Hardynes, hardiness, 615, 658.  
 Hare, *s.* hair, 227, 854; Haris, hairs, 320; (Horez), 1009.  
 Hare, *adj.* hoary, gray-headed, 4996; hoary, hoar, bare, 70. See the note to l. 70, and remarks on Haire (above).  
 Hareest, *adj. superl.* most hoary, whitest, 1062.  
 Harlotry, *s.* evil-doing, wickedness, lechery, 4484, 4555.  
 Harne, *s.* harm, 285, 638, 2220; Harmes, *pl.* injuries, crimes, wicked deeds, 3437.  
 Harmes, *imp. pl.* 2 *p.* do harm, do execution, 3879.  
 (Harnez), *for* Armez, arms (of the body), 3237, 772\*.  
 Harnais, *s.* harness, armour, 3791.  
 Harnas (Harnes), *imper. s.* let him harness, 998; Harnest, *pp.* armed, 3785. See above.  
 (Harnepanne), 1902; see Hernepan.  
 Harow, *s.* harrow, 4267; (Harrow), 1063; Harows, *pl.* 5573; Harowis, 3907.  
 Has, *pr. s.* 2 *p.* hast, 348, 460, 463; Hase, 2712; Hase, *pr. s.* has, 2380; Has, 81; Hase, *pr. pl.* 2 *p.* have, 2201; Has, *pr. pl.* have, 10, 471. See Hafe, Haue.  
 (Haslokst), *adj. superl.* 1864. Certainly a corrupt reading; see the Ashmole MS. As it stands, it is a bad spelling of *hastlokest* = *hastilokest*, *superl.* of *hasty*, quick, rash.  
 Hast, *s.* haste, 2817; In haste, 379.  
 Hastely, *adv.* hastily, soon, speedily, 3784; Hastily (Hastely), 1457.  
 Hastis, *pr. pl. refl.* hasten, 1116; Hast (Hastyd), *pt. s.* 3014.  
 Hat, *pt. s.* was called, or *pr. s.* is called, 4903; Hatt, *pr. pl.* are called, 2199; (Haten), *pp.* named, 836\*. See Hatten.  
 Hate, *adj.* hot, 4080.  
 Hate, *s.* hate, hatred, 921, 1979.  
 (Hated), *error for* Heded, beheaded, 2582.  
 (Hatellayke), *put for* Hathellayke, *i. e.* nobleness, 2505. See Hathill. But it is a false reading; read *lytillaik*.  
 Hately, *adv.* hotly, 2910.  
 Hathill, *adj.* noble, 447, 741, Hathille (Athell), noble, good, brave, 3164; Hatill (Athelles), *adj.* 1945. The spelling *athell* is the correct one; from A.S. *æðele*, noble. See below.  
 Hathill, *s.* noble one, noble person, prince, lord, 84, 285, 1102, 2120, 4518; (Athell), 734, 777; Hathill (Athyll), prince, 3272; Hathills, *pl.* nobles, warriors, 584; (Hatels), 1002; (Athellys), 2086; (Hatelys), 1920. See above. In l. 747 it is misspelt Hatill.  
 Hatirly (Hetterly), *adv.* severely, 2544; Haterly, passionately, 264. See *heter* in Stratmann. See Hatter.

- Hatis (Hatez), *pr. pl.* hate, 2732.  
 (Hatness), *s.* hotness, rage, 2835.  
 Hatt (Hat), *s.* hat, 1714, 1895; (Hatte), 1900; Hattis (Hattes), *pl.* hats, 2981.  
 Hatten, *pp.* called, named, 40, 914, 1913, 2037, 2319, 2540, 4720, 5093; (Haten), 2106, 2297. A.S. *hāten*. See Hat.  
 Hatter, *adj.* cruel, 702; savage, 490. See *heter* and *hatel* in *Stratmann*; and see *Hatirly*.  
 Hatterly (Heterly), *adv.* fiercely, 803. See above.  
 Hattir, *s.* clothing, 4118. See *hatre* in *Stratmann*.  
 Haue, *ger.* to have, possess, 747, 919, 1669; Haue, *v.* 355, 575; Haue, *pr. s.* 1 p. 258, 585; Have, 98; Haues, 2 *pr. s.* hast, 1728, 3101; Hauys, 428; Hauys (Hase), *pr. s.* has, 1807; (Haue), 2 *pr. pl.* have, 734\*; Haue, *pr. pl.* 272; Haue, *pr. s. subj.* if he have, 4537; 2 *pr. s. subj.* 470, 951; Haue, *imp. s.* 97, 731, 2240. See Hafe.  
 (Haven), *s.* haven, 1160.  
 Hauen-lest, *adj.* neediest, least possessed of wealth, 1864. A false superlative form of the *adj. hauenles* = A.S. *hafenléas*, poor. Shropshire *avenless*, shiftless.  
 Hauke, 1 *pr. pl.* hawk, 4271.  
 Hauntis, 1 *pr. pl.* practice, 4329; enjoy, 3743; track to their home, pursue to their home, 4122; Hauntis, *pr. pl.* practise, use, show, 4021, Hauntid, *pt. s.* practised, used, 16, 4414.  
 Hauten, *adj.* haughty, 4255. F. *hautain*.  
 Hautes, *s.* haughtiness, 2835. O.F. *hautesse*, haughtiness; see *Cotgrave*.  
 Hawe, *s.* haw, the value of a haw, a whit, 2097.  
 Haylsid (Haylsed), *pt. s.* 1 p. worshipped, 1622. See *Hailsis*.  
 Haythen, *adj.* heathen, 5673.  
 He, *adj.* high, 70, 4863; On he, upwards, 2855.  
 He, *pron.* he, 19, 41, 42, &c. (He); see Heze.
- He, he (*where the Dublin MS. wrongly has Ere, formerly*), 3291.  
 He, *for* ze, ye, 4487.  
 (Hed), *pt. s.* had, 812, 2976; 750\*, 765\*, 776\*.  
 Hede, *s.* head, 438, 445, 494, 2552; chief, 2647; king, 148; (Hed), 702; (Heued), 2283; On hede, *adv.* headlong, 962; To hede, with respect to its head, 1375; Hedis, *pl.* heads, 3433; (Heddez), 2981.  
 Hede, *s.* heed, 3094.  
 Hedid, *pp.* beheaded, 2582, 3439; (Hedit), 2086; Heded, 2377.  
 Hedire, *adv.* hither, 5373; (Hyder), 2914; (Heder), 1923.  
 Hedire-to (Hyder), hitherto, 2364.  
 Hediretoward, *adv.* hitherto, 3517.  
 Hedirward (Hyderward), *adv.* hithertoward, 740.  
 Hedis (Hedes), *pr. s.* takes heed, observes, looks, 3226; pays attention, 678; (Hedys), heeds, observes, 2627; (Hedes), 1527; Hedis, *imp. pl.* pay heed, 3879; (Hedes), take heed, 3094.  
 Hedous, *adj.* hideous, dreadful, 3926, 4862.  
 Hedously, *adv.* hideously, 5566; (Hydusly), 1150.  
 Heede (Heyd), *ger.* to watch, heed, 2220.  
 Heelis, *pl.* heels, 5476.  
 Heere, *s.* army, 4800, 5162; host, number, collection, 5126. A.S. *here*.  
 Heere (*for Wode, as in the Dublin MS.*), 776. See *Haire*.  
 Heff, *ger.* to heave, raise, exalt, 2708.  
 Heggis, *pl.* hedges, sticks, 5463.  
 (Hegh), *adj.* high, tall, 744\*; (On heggh), on high, 1589; Heghe, high, 445.  
 (Heght), *pt. s.* hight, was called, 914.  
 (Heght), *s.* height; On heght, on high, 678.  
 Held, *ger.* incline, bow down, 726; (Heldes), *pr. s.* inclines, bows down, 726; sinks, 933\*; Heldis, *pr. pl.* bow, 983; Heldid, *pt. s.* inclined, 227; (heldit), *pt. pl.* 983.

- See note to *l.* 227. A.S. *heldan*, *hyldan*.  
 (Heldes), *pr. s.* holds (*for* beholds), 1589; Held, *pt. s.* held, had hold, 1346; Held, *pt. pl.* held; Held in, pressed in, 3912; (Heldyn), kept, 1616; Held, 2 *pt. pl.* (Halden, 2 *pr. pl.*), kept, 2436; Held, 1 *pt. s. subj.* should (not) have kept, 3437; (Held on), *imp. s.* hold on, continue, advance, 810\*.  
 (Heldest), *adv.* most; (All the heldest), most of all, 2509; (Allþar heldest), 1855. See Heldire.  
 (Heldest), eldest, 2319.  
 Heldire, *adv. comp.* sooner, 2714; (Helder), sooner, rather, 1016, 1633\*, 1805, 2097, 2589. See Elder. Icel. *heldr*.  
 Heldyd, *pp.* inclined (?), 829\*. See Held; but the reading is probably corrupt. Perhaps read *held*, i. e. held. But we should rather read—Had rasyd vþ a rude hoste, and *rode* hym ayaynez.  
 Hele, *s.* health, safety, 3512, 4573, 5386; (Heale), 741; (Heyle), 2503, 2665; (Heyll), 2552; Hele (heyll), recovery, 2576; health, 2806 (in which line *I* should be omitted, as in Dublin MS.).  
 Hele, *v.* be healed, 2817.  
 Hele, *ger.* to cover, 4118.  
 Heles, *pl.* heels, 5458; Helis (Heles), 1758.  
 Helle, hell, 5571; Hell, 562.  
 Hellid, *pp.* poured, 3813. Icel. *hella*.  
 Helme, helmet, 1715, 3802, 3811; Helmes, *pl.* 804, 5498.  
 Helpe, *v.* help, 404; Help, *ger.* 309, 1256, 1314, 2220; Help, *pr. s. subj.* help, 1472; Helpid, *pt. pl.* helped, 5625; Help, *imp. s.* help, 950.  
 Helpe (Help), *s.* help, 1636; Help (Helpe), 1946.  
 Helpere (Helpar), *s.* helper, assistant, 2647.  
 Hemmes, *pl.* (*sing.* Hem) hems, 1538.  
 Hemp, *adj.* made of hemp, 2224. (Hem-selſe), themselves, 2268.  
 Hen (Henne), *s.* hen, 893.  
 Hend (Hand), *pl.* hands, 1440; (Hendez), 774\*.  
 Hend, *adj.* courteous, gentle, 669; (Hende), 2876; Hende, 5029, 5400; Hend, *adj. as sb.* gentle one, lady, 264, 291, 4757, 5162. A.S. *gehende*.  
 Hende, *adv.* courteously, 212.  
 Hendlaike (Hynlake), *s.* courtesy, 2715.  
 Hendly, *adv.* gently, 494; excellently, 883; tamely, 780\*.  
 Hent, *v.* catch, 520; (Hynt), seize (*for* himself), get, 810; Hentis, *pr. s.* seizes, grasps, 780; (Hentez), 1402; (Hentes), 936; Hentes, 3880; Hent, *pr. pl.* 1 *p.* catch, take, 4271; Hent (Hynt), *pt. s.* caught, 2544; Hent (Hyntes, *pr. s.*), seized, 1066; Hent, *pt. pl.* drew, 3838; Hent, *pp.* taken, caught, 4783; Hent, *imp. s.* take, receive, 747.  
 Hepe, *s.* heap, crowd, number, people, company, 1679, 1780, 1946, 2086; Hepis, *pl.* heaps, 552; (Hepes), 1418; (Hepys), 2247; On hepis, into heaps, 1308.  
 (Her), *adv.* here, 740\*.  
 (Her-aftir), hereafter, 714.  
 Heraud, *s.* herald, 1596, 4729; Heraudis (Harraldes), 883; (Harraldes), 2715.  
 Herberd, *pt. pl.* harboured, sheltered, 5390.  
 Herbis, *pl.* herbs, 336, 408; (Erbes), 2852; Herbys, 4379.  
 Herde (Place), *s.* home, place, 3227. *For* Erde.  
 Here, *adv.* here, 366, 830; (Her), 951, 1864.  
 Here, *ger.* to hear, 67, 982, 1164; Here, *v.* 1, 212, 416; Here, 1 *pr. s.* hear, 2498; Heres, *pr. s.* 2315, 5503; Here, *pr. s. subj.* he may hear, 146; (Here), *imp. s.* hear, 740; Here, let him hear, 146; Herd, *pt. s.* heard, 51, *refl.* 669; (Harde), 2968; Herd, *pt. pl.* heard, 1616; (Harde), 1122; Herd, *pp.* heard, 1492; Herd of þour happ, heard (by your gods) concerning your fortune (Lat. *si exaudierint te dii tui*), 4554. See Heris.

- Here, *s.* army, host, 5457; (Heir), 1256; (Heer), 2798; (Heyre), 820; (Here), 810\*; Heres, *pl.* armies, hosts, 4729. A.S. *here*.
- Here (Heere), chief, lord, 3160; Heris (Herez), *pl.* 1920. Icel. *herra*.
- Here man, *better* Here-man, lord, master, 4938. Compounded of *here*, lord, and *man*. So Icel. *herramaðr*, lord, knight, lordly man. See above.
- Here, *s.* hair, 4559. The Lat. text has—*quæ* te velut mortuum cruciant et tormentant. The Eng. seems to mean—‘pull you by the hair.’ Or read *herte*, i. e. heart.
- Hered, *pp.* praised, adored, 1637; (Heret), praised, 1616. A.S. *herian*. See Herid.
- Her-eter (Her-after), *adv.* hereafter, 1111, 2921; Here-efire, 583.
- Here-efterward, hereafter, 732.
- Here-fore, *conj.* therefore, for this reason, 4565.
- Here-wedis (Here-wedes), *pl.* armour, lit. battle-garments, 1010.
- Herid, *pp.* praised, 2200. See Hered.
- Heris, *pr. s.* harries, greatly harms, 4484; Herid, *pt. pl.* harried, ravaged, worried, 4800; Herid, *pp.* harried, despoiled, killed, 5457; Heried, vexed, 3517; defeated, 3731. A.S. *hergian*. See Hery.
- Heris, *pr. s.* hears, 925, 5244; (Herys), 952, 2667; Heris, *imp. pl. 2 p.* hear, 3502. See Here.
- Heris (Herez), *pl.* lords, 1920. See Here.
- Herken, *ger.* to listen to, 6; to hear, 2304; *v.* listen, 212; Herken, *imp. s. 2 p.* hearken thou, 740.
- Hernepan, *s.* cap, head-piece, 1713, 2499; (Herne - payn), 1895; (Harnepanne), 1902; Hernepanne, helmet, 1771. Lit. ‘brainpan.’
- Hernes, *pl.* brains, 839, 2545. O. Icel. *hjárn*.
- (Heron), upon it, 832.
- Herre (Hyer), *adj.* higher, superior, 2364.
- (Hersouns), *pr. s.* glorifies, 1600; Hersid, extolled, 2200; Hersude (Hersud), extolled, 2498; (Hersound), 810\*. Cf. Icel. *hersir*, a lord, chief.
- Hert, heart, 2, 225; courage, 470, 658; Hertis (Hertes), *pl.* hearts, courage, 988, 1809, 2054, 2161.
- Hert, *s.* hart, 1062, 1069; Hertis, *pl.* 110.
- Hertis, *pr. s.* heartens, encourages, 5576.
- Hertly, *adv.* heartily, 1659, 2576, 728\*.
- Hery (Herye), *ger.* to harry, 2509; (Hery), 3164. See Heris.
- Herys, *pr. s.* hears, 3188. See Here.
- Hes, *pron.* his, 1232; (Hys), 3212.
- Hesils, *pl.* hasel-trees, 5241. Icel. *hesli*. (The line is obscure.)
- Hest, *s.* promise, 366; Heste (Hest), command, 2141; Hestes (Hestez), *pl.* promises, 1075; Hestis, *pl.* (Heste, *s.*), commands, 2350; Hestis (Heestes), hests, commands, 3122.
- Hete, *s.* heat, 3791; (Het), 1518; Hetis, *pl.* heat, 3803; heat, burnings, 3633.
- Hete, *v.* promise, 1075, 2686; 1 *pr. s.* 2869, 3175; Hetes (Highten), *pr. pl.* promise, 2398. A.S. *hátan*, Icel. *heita*.
- Heterly, *adv.* vehemently, 669, 678; (Hetterly), keenly, greatly, 2855; (Heterly), *adv.* extremely, 1659; Hetterly (Heterly), *adv.* earnestly, 1075; (Hetterly), sharply, fiercely, 2910; Hettirly, 3912; extremely, 4169. See Hetire, Hatirly.
- Hethen, *adv.* hence, 4487, 4565, 4650, 4936. Icel. *hæðan*.
- Hethenward, hence, 734.
- Hething (Hethyng), *s.* scorn, 1714; Hethyng (Hetlunge), 1869. Icel. *hæðing*.
- Hetire, *adj.* cruel, 520; Hetter, bold, fierce, 615. A.S. *hetol*, full of hate. See Hatter.
- Heued, *s.* head, 2457, 3920, 5322; (Heued), 751\*, 774\*, 812; chief, 1433.
- (Heued), *for* Heueded, *pp.* beheaded, 2377.
- Heuen, *s.* heaven, 56, 84.
- Heues, *pr. s.* lifts, 1589; (Hefys),

- raises, 3290 ; Heued (Hefyd), *pp.*  
 raised, 2827 ; levied, raised, 2608 ;  
 Heues (Hefes), *imp. pl.* lift, 3094.  
 See Heuys.  
 Heuy, *adj.* heavy, 1010, 5572 ;  
 (Hevy), stupid, dull, 2708.  
 Heuyd, *s.* head, 426. See Heued.  
 Heuydman (MS. Heuysdman), chief  
 man, 441.  
 Heuyn, heaven, 42, 250, 553, 568 ;  
 (Heuen), 713 ; Heuyns (Heuens),  
*pl.* heavens, 1528.  
 Heuys (*vp.*), *pr. s.* heaves, lifts,  
 raises up, 677 ; Heuyd, *pt. s.*  
 heaved, i.e. raised, 3014. See  
 Heues.  
 Hewe, *v.* hew, cut, 3433 ; Hewis  
 (Hewes), *pr. s.* hews, 1224 ; Hewis,  
*pr. pl.* hew, 803 ; Hewen, *pp.* hewn,  
 cut, 1127, 5598 ; (Hewyn), 3384 ;  
 (Heven), 3150 ; Hewyn, 5463 ;  
 Hewis, *imp. pl.* 2 *p.* hew, 5576.  
 Hewe, *s.* hue, 467 ; Hew, 5309 ;  
 Hewes, *pl.* 1086, 3687 ; Hewis,  
 3864, 5125 ; Hewys, 605.  
 Hewid, *pp.* hued, coloured, 3945,  
 4986.  
 (Hey), *adj.* high, 779, 933\*.  
 (Heyle), *s.* prosperity, 3272. See  
 Hele.  
 (Heyre), *s.* heir, 838\*.  
 Hezare, *adv.* higher, 2097.  
 Heze, *adj.* high, great, 3731 ; (Hye),  
 883, 3288 ; (He), 3291 ; On heze,  
 aloud, 4929 ; To heze (To hygh),  
 too high, 2714.  
 Heze (Hegh), *adv.* loudly, 948.  
 Heze, *ger.* to enhance, further (*lit.*  
*exalt*), 2806.  
 Heze (Hyen), *pr. pl. refl.* hasten,  
 hie, 3214.  
 Hid, *pt. s.* hid, 146.  
 Hide, *s.* skin, 4437 ; Hidis, *pl.* 4118,  
 4207.  
 Hidirto, *adv.* hitherto, 4903.  
 Hidous, *adj.* hideous, 5236.  
 Hie, *v.* honour, exalt, 329.  
 Hied, *pt. pl.* (Hyen, *pr. pl.*), hast-  
 ened, 2981.  
 Hiest, highest, most, 1765.  
 Hieze, *adj.* high, great, 329.  
 (Hight), *pp.* named, considered,  
 2200.  
 Hight, *'s.* height, *p.* 282, 1. 122.  
 Hild, *pt. s.* concealed, 146 ; *pp.*  
 covered (only), 3450 ; covered,  
 5241 ; Hildid, *put for* Hild,  
 covered, 1010 (*where the Dublin*  
*MS. has hold*). Icel. *hylja*.  
 Hildire, *adv. comp.* rather, more,  
 4657. See note ; and see Heldire.  
 Hildis, *pr. s.* leans ; Hildis him *vp.*  
 leans up, raises himself a little,  
 3250 ; Hildis (Heldes), *pt. s.* falls,  
 3201 ; Hilds, *pr. s.* pours, 3811 ;  
 Hildid (Heldit), *pt. s.* 1 *p.* bowed  
 down to, 1622. A.S. *hyldan*.  
 Hill (Hille), hill, 1093 ; Hilles, *pl.*  
 4137 ; Hillis, 1211, 4862 ; (Hillez),  
 776.  
 Hilla! *interj.* halloa! 1066.  
 Him, *dat. and acc.* to him, him, 48,  
 50, &c. ; for himself, 113. *Put*  
*for* þam, them, 409.  
 Him-self (Hym-self), *pron.* him,  
 2834 ; Him-self'e, himself, 500 ;  
 Him-self, 83 ; Him-seluen, him-  
 self, 46, 1120 ; Him-seluy, 411.  
 Hirdire, 1 *pr. s.* oppose, 2497.  
 Hinge, *v.* hang, be hung ; Hinge  
 mon, must hang, 4565 ; *ger.* to  
 hang, 5519 ; Hingis, *pr. s.* hangs,  
 27 ; Hingand, *pres. part.* hanging,  
 3260, 4877.  
 Hirdis (Herdez), *pl.* herds, keepers  
 of the flocks, 1224.  
 Hire, *pron.* her (said of a fortifica-  
 tion), 1308 ; her, 222, 236 ; *dat.*  
 for her, 305.  
 Hire, *pron. poss.* her, 224, 264.  
 Hire-sel'e, herself, 266, 347.  
 His, his, 45, 47, 49, &c.  
 Hismon (Hisman), *name*, 2237.  
 Hissis, *pr. s.* hisses, 4757.  
 Hit, *v.* hit, attain, 445 ; hit, 1065 ;  
 Hittis, *pr. s.* hits, 839 ; *pt. s.* hit,  
 put, 512 ; (Hitte), hit, 839.  
 Hit (It), *pron.* it, 1374.  
 Hitterly, *adv.* vehemently, 5322.  
 See Heterly.  
 Hize, *adj.* high, great, 61, 596, 726 ;  
 (Hye), noble, 1920 ; high, 812 ;  
 (Hegh), 1002, 1123 ; On hize, on  
 high, 678.  
 Hize, *ger.* to exalt, 1679 ; Hizen,  
 4701.  
 Hize, *v.* hasten, 5187 ; Hizis, *pr. s.*  
 2 *p.* hastenest, 4060 ; Hizis him



- (Hyes hym), *pr. s.* hastens, 777;  
 Hize, *pr. pl. 1 p. refl.* hie, hasten, go, 4650.  
 Hize, *adv.* highly, 5316; (Heyly), 2200.  
 Hizely, *adv.* highly, 658.  
 Hizare, *adj. comp.* higher, 810; (Hyer), 1368; (Hegher), 1375.  
 Hizare (Hyer), *adv. comp.* higher, 724; Hizhare (Heyere), 5295.  
 Higt, *s.* height, 3988, 5481; (Hight), 700; Higte, 3989; On higt, on high, 57, 1518; Higt (Hert, *wrongly*), *s.* height, majesty, 2706; Higt, *pl.* heights, glories, 3584.  
 Higt, *s.* hope; Withouten higt, without hope, hopelessly, 5313. Or it may mean—without expectation, unexpectedly. A.S. *hyht*, hope, expectation.  
 Higt, 1 *pr. s.* am called, 5167; am named, 5401; Higt (Hyght), 1 *pr. s.* am called, 2286; (Hight), 1 *pt. s.* was called, 2187; Higt, *pt. s.* was called, 2170; Higt, *pp.* called, 3926.  
 Higte, *pr. s. 1 p.* promise, 5404; Higt, 1 *pt. s.* promised, 3436; Higt (Hyght), *pt. s.* 2651; Higt (Hight), *pt. pl.* promised, 2196; Higt (Hyght), *pp.* 2565.  
 Higtild, *pt. s.* ornamented, decked (for himself), 1541 (MS. D. has *heghtlet*, set, put); Higtild, *pp.* ornamented, decked, 4540, 5126; decked, prepared, set in order, 4969. See Allit. Poems, ed. Morris, B. 1290. Cf. *Hiztly* in Gloss. to Sir Gawayne.  
 (Hocour), *s.* mockery, derision, 1714. A.S. *hōcor*.  
 Hodere, *s.* 5241. The line is plainly imperfect. See the note, which gives the original Latin.  
 Hoge, *adj.* huge, large, 490, 568, 924, 3926, 4749, 5389; (Hoge), 744\*, 821, 1062, 1541, 2827.  
 Hoge, *s.* hog, 4278; Hoggs, *pl.* 5342.  
 Hogely, *adv.* earnestly, attentively, 269; (Hugely), extremely, 3226.  
 Hogere, *adj.* huger, greater, 3047. (Hoghez), *pl.* houghs, hams, 3151.  
 Hokis, *pl.* hooks, 5519.  
 (Hole), *s.* hole, 777\*; Holes, *pl.* holes, hiding-places, 3214; Holis, *pl.* holes, caves, 4045, 4122.  
 Hologhe, *adj.* hollow, 4072; Holoze, 3802; Holuze, 3486; Holewe (Holys, for Holow), 1900.  
 Holtis, *pl.* holts, woods, 4137; (Holtez), 776.  
 Home, *s.* home, 27.  
 Homore, Homer, 2121.  
 (Honest), *adj.* seemly, splendid, 1496.  
 Honest, *pp.* brought to shame, destroyed, 3791. From the stem (*honiss-*) of the pres. part. of O.F. *honir*, to disgrace. See Hunyschist.  
 Honge, *pp.* hung, 779.  
 Hongir, *s.* hunger, 4608.  
 Honoryd (Honourd), *pp.* honoured, 3160.  
 Honour, *s.* honour. 2125, 2248; Honouris, *pl.* praises, 2121.  
 Honourable, 223, 310. See Honourable.  
 Honoure, *v.* honour, 1059; Honours, *pr. s.* 1073; Honourd, *pt. s.* (Honours, *pr. s.*), 2117; Honourd, *pp.* honoured, 995; Honoured (Honoured), *pp. as adj.* 2008.  
 Honourable (Honorable), *adj.* honourable, 1840; Honourable, 223, 310.  
 Hony, *s.* honey, 3855.  
 Hoo, 2 *pr. pl.* desist; Be ze hoo, by the time that ye desist, 4437; *imp. s.* stop, cease, 2835.  
 Hope, 1 *pr. s.* suppose, 3548, 3749; Hopis (Hopys), 2 *pr. s.* expectest, 1765; Hopis, *pr. s.* expects, 3288; hopes, 1640; Hoped (Hopyd), *pt. s.* expected, 679; (Hoppyd), 1633\*; Hoped, *pt. pl.* (Hopen, *pr. pl.*) supposed, 596, 935; Hope, *imp. pl.* imagine, 2648.  
 Hope, *s.* hope, 1859.  
 Hope, *s.* dingle, sheltered spot, 5390. See Grein's note on A.S. *hóp*.  
 Hoping, *s.* hope, 4518.  
 Horned, *pp. as adj.* having horns, 4267, 5566.  
 Hornes, *pl.* horns, 319, 752\*.

- Hors, *s.* horse, 777; (Horse), 744\*; Horsis, *pl.* horses, 2156, 2399, 5632; Hors (Horsez), *pl.* 883; Horsis (Horse, *pl.*), 1250; Hors, *gen. pl.* horses', 2852. A.S. *hors*, *pl. hors*.  
 (Horse-fleshez), horseflesh, 2161.  
 Hoste, *s.* host, army, 2036, 829\*; (Host), 1793; Hostis, *pl.* hosts, armies, army, 3008, 3704; (Hostez), 1694.  
 Hote, *adj.* hot, severe, 702.  
 Hottre, *s.* contempt, derision, 1714; *miswritten for* Hoccre = Hocer. A.S. *hócor*. Chaucer has *hoker*. The Dublin MS. has *hocour*.  
 Houen (Heuen), *pp.* lifted, heaved, 1864. See Houyn.  
 Hous, *pr. s.* dwells, remains, 4902; (Hewen), *pr. pl.* await, 2530; Houys, *pr. pl.* (Hoved, *pt. pl.*), tarry, hover, 2212; Houande (Hofand), *pres. part.* hovering, tarrying, 3260; Houe (Hofe), *imp. s.* tarry, wait, 734, 2890. Cf. E. *hover*.  
 Houndreth, *num.* hundred, 5370.  
 Houre, *s.* hour, 572, 3830.  
 Hous, *s.* house, 4903.  
 Housing, *s.* shelter, covering, 4355.  
 Houyn, *pp.* raised (lit. heaved), exalted, 2708. See Houen.  
 How, how, 7, 117; Howe, how, 4345; How þat, how (is it) that, 459.  
 How, *interj.* ho! *used as sb.* a shout, outcry, whoop, 4732.  
 Howis, *pl.* hills, 3486. Icel. *haugr*. (Howre-selfe), ourselves, 1855.  
 Hojes, *pl.* houghs, hocks, hams, 3150. A.S. *hōh*.  
 Huge, *adj.* huge, great, 821, 1062, 1150; (Hoge), 1282, 2876.  
 Hugin (Hoger), *adj. comp.* huger, 1368.  
 Hum (*wrongly for* Him), him, 1717.  
 Hunde, hound, 321, 494.  
 Hundrethe, *num. adj.* hundred, 94; (Hundreth), 1043; Hundreth, 66, 1316, 1426, 1562; Hundret, 5127.  
 Hunger, *s.* hunger, 1168.  
 Hungry, Hungary, 5673.  
 Hunyschist, *error for* Hunyschit (Honyshyd), *pt. s.* shamed, disgraced, hence, killed, 3004. O.F. *honnir*, *honir*. See Honest.  
 (Hup), up, 3049.  
 Hurkils, *pr. s.* crouches down, nestles, 504. See Glossary to Allit. Poems, ed. Morris.  
 Hurle (*in Ashmole MS. wrongly for* perle, *which is in Dublin MS.*), sound, rush, noise (of the sea), 1154. See Hurling.  
 Hurlled (Hurlett), *pt. pl.* hurled, 2224.  
 Hurling, *s.* roaring, 4794. F. *hurler*, to howl, yell; Cotgrave.  
 Hurte, *s.* hurt, 285.  
 Hurtis (Hurtez), *pr. s.* hurts, 1224.  
 Hurtles, *adj.* unhurt, safe, unwounded (lit. hurt-less), 102.  
 Hus (*for* Us), *dat.* for us, 3518.  
 Hydis, *pr. s.* hides, 504; Hydis (Hyden), *pr. pl.* 3214; Hyddyn, *pt. pl.* hid, 3105.  
 (Hye), *ger.* to hasten, 2806; (Hyes), *pr. s.* hies, 965; (Hyed), *pt. pl.* hastened, 1202; Hy, *imp. s.* 2 p. hie thee, 734.  
 (Hye), *adj.* high, 700, 1491, 1636; illustrious, 841\*.  
 (Hyst), highest, 726.  
 Hym, *pron.* him, 682, 725\*.  
 Hym-selfe, himself, 1058.  
 Hynd (Hend), *adj.* courteous, 2744; (Hynde), obedient, 820. See Hend.  
 Hyndelaik, *s.* courtesy, 615; (Hynd-laik), 2718. See Hendlaik.  
 Hyndely (Hendly), *adv.* courteously, 3250; Hyndly, 2920.  
 Hyne, *adv.* hence, 4456; (Hyne), 799\*. Du. *heen*.  
 Hyne (Hynes), *pl.* men, servants, 2220. E. *hind*.  
 (Hyneward), hence, 734. See Hyne.  
 (Hynget), *pp.* hung, 779.  
 (Hynten), *pr. pl.* seize, 780. See Hent.  
 Hyre, *pers. pron.* her, 412.  
 Hyrnes, *pl.* corners, lurking-places, 3214. A.S. *hyrne*.  
 (Hys), his, 679, 680, 695, 696.  
 Hyue, *s.* hive, 3855.  
 I, *pron.* I, 15, 21, 24, 76, &c.  
 Iacobs, Jacob's, 4823.



- Iape, *s.* jest, hence pleasant offering, 4526; Iapis, *pl.* tricks, arts, 43, 339; pranks, 4411.
- Iapid, *pl. s.* seduced, 4415.
- Iaspre, jasper, 4444.
- Iaudas, *name*, 1488; (Iaudes), 1652; Iaudis (Iawdez), 1171; Iaudes, 1469.
- Iayll, *s.* jail, 4321.
- (Iche), each, 1647.
- Ieants, *pl.* giants, 4722.
- Iemmes, *pl.* gems; but clearly miswritten for gummies, i. e. resinous gums, 4974. See the note.
- Ientill-man (Gentilman), gentleman, 2249, 2400.
- Ientilly, *adv.* excellently (Lat. *mirifico opere*), 3340.
- Ierusalem, 1171, 1454, 1470, 1488, 1652.
- Iesserand, *s.* coat of mail, 4961; Iesserantes (Iesserauntez), *pl.* coats of mail, 2450. See *Iaseran* in Cotgrave.
- Iettand, *pres. pt.* making a great show, 4444.
- Iettis, *pl.* proud gestures, 4676.
- Iettoure, *s.* bragger, 4415; Iettir, flaunter, 4504.
- Iewis (Lewes), *pl.* Jews, 1191, 1587, 1601, 1620, 1652; Lewes, 1171.
- (Lewres), an error for Iewis, judgment, doom, 1191. O.F. *juise*. The right reading is—I shall seche Iewis on the Lewes enioyne or I dye.
- Iewry, Judæa, 1546.
- If, *conj.* if; But if, unless, 13; If, though, 231, 258.
- Ile (Yle), *s.* isle, 2106, 2116; district, 1057; Ile (Ylez, *pl.*), district, 1039; Ilee, 3736, 5503; Iles, *pl.* islands, 3536, 3683; Iles (Yles), *pl.* regions, provinces, 2800. See Yles.
- Ilk, *adj.* each, 1334, 3603; (Ilke), 731, 777; (Iche), 1379; same, 350, 418; Ilke, same, 861, 2927.
- Ilka, each, every, 521, 999; (Ilke), 1080; (Iche), 3412; Ilka (Ilke), each man, 1258; Ilke a, every, 432. For ilk a.
- Ilkane, each one, every one, 1593, 5430; (ilk one), 2765; (Ichone), 2548, 3154; (Ilkon), 2115; Ilkan, 3635.
- Ill, *adv.* ill, unpropitiously, 2308.
- Ille, *s.* ill, 4216; (Ille), 1699; (Illys), *pl.* evils, 3267\*.
- Imagis, *pl.* images, idols, 4068, 4459. See Ymage.
- Impid, *pp.* set; Impid in, set with, marked with, 5649.
- Impis, *pl.* shoots, 4819. See the note.
- In, *prep.* in, 23, 24, &c.; (Into), in, 1852.
- In with = in-with, *prep.* within, 3900.
- In-bland with, *prep.* together with, in medley with, 2786. See Ebland.
- Inchantment, enchantment, 337.
- Incheson, *s.* occasion, cause, reason, 343.
- Inclosid (Enclosyt), *pp.* enclosed, 1837.
- Inclynes, *pr. s.* inclines, bows, 5207.
- In-dities, *pr. s.* indites, 4041.
- Indityngs (Dityng), *pl.* inditings, 1801.
- (In-fere), *adv.* together, 3366; In-fere, 1259, 1276, 3602, 3933, 4273, 5434.
- In-feree, for In-fere, *adv.* together, 5597. See above.
- Infirmite, *s.* infirmity, sickness, 5581; Infirmitis (for Infirmites), *pl.* infirmities, 4279.
- Infourmed, *pp.* informed, 3341; (Informed), 1915; Infourmede (Enformed), 1531.
- England, England, 5663.
- Inbabet, *pr. pl.* inhabit, dwell, 4020.
- Inhabetting, *s.* habitation, dwelling, 3736.
- In-hanses (Enhaunses), *pr. s.* enhancements, i. e. advances, promotes, 3290.
- Inioynes, *pr. s.* commands, orders, instructs, 3040; (Inioneyd), *pp.* enjoined, 2400.
- In-myddis, *prep.* in the midst of, amid, 1586.
- Innes, *pl. as sing.* inn, dwelling, residence, 2920.
- Inowe (Enowe), *adj. pl.* enough, 2291. See Enoje.

- In-parkis, *pr. s.* encloses, 5499; Inparkid, *pp.* 4702.  
 Impossible, *adj.* impossible, 2707. (Insew), *v.* sew in, 1925.  
 In-sondire (In-sonder), asunder, 798.  
 Instrumentis (Instrumentes), *pl.* instruments, 1564; Instrumentis, 145.  
 In-till, *prep.* into, 4764.  
 Into, *prep.* into, 151, 153; to, 724; in, 797\*; (Vnto), unto, 1503.  
 Ioglour, *s.* juggler, 4526; Iogloure, 410.  
 Iogis, *pl.* judges, 1546.  
 Iogis, *pr. s.* jogs, i. e. stirs up, 1507.  
 Iolite, *s.* agreeableness, delight, 3537; pleasant season, 4202; honour, revels in honour of, 4458; Iolyte, happiness, 3108; Iolite (Iolyte), mirth, 1469.  
 Ioly, *adj.* beautiful, 4823, 5261.  
 Iolye, *adv.* jollily, joyously, 705.  
 Iopone, *s.* short coat or doublet worn under the armour, 4961; Iopons, *pl.* 3042, 4722; (Iompons), 2450. "Iupon, a short cassock;" Cotgrave. Dimin. of O.F. *gipe*, later *juppe*, a frock, &c.  
 Iosaphat (Iosaphatt), the vale of Jehoshaphat, 1197, 1284.  
 Iournais (Iornays), *pr. s.* journeys, travels, 2249.  
 Iournay (Jornay), journey, 1197.  
 Ious, *s.* juice, 339. See Iuse.  
 Iowell, jewel, 2400.  
 Iowke, *pr. pl.* sleep, lie torpid, 4202. A term applied to hawks. "Se jucher, to roost, or perch;" Cotgrave. See *Iouken* in Gloss. to P. Plowman.  
 Ioy, *s.* joy, 486, 704, 1469; Ioye (Ioy), 1914; jest, 2188; O Ioy, of joy, i. e. joyful to behold, excellent, 3042.  
 Ioyen, *pr. pl.* 2 *p.* (for Ioyen), (ye) join, build together, 4458.  
 Ioyes, *pr. s.* gladdens, 4378; rejoices, 1659; (Ioyes), 2128; Ioyes, 456; Ioy, *pr. pl.* 1 *p.* delight in, possess, enjoy, 4035; Ioyed, *pp.* rejoiced, gladdened, full of joy, 242, 3455, 4947, 5426; Ioyd (Ioyned, error for Ioyed), 2235. (Ioyfully), joyfully, 705.  
 Ioyles, *adj.* joyless, 1284, 2249.  
 Ioyly, *adj.* joyful, joygiving, delightful, 3340. (But prob. an error for *Ioly* = jolly, good.)  
 Ioynes (Iniones), *pr. s.* enjoins, 1197; Ioynes him, *pr. s.* marches, approaches, 1284, 1454; Ioyned, *pp.* constructed, 5261; framed, 4504; constructed, joined together (Lat. *constructi*), 3340; composed, put together, 3464; (Ioned), joined, 2450.  
 Ioyntly (Iontly), *adv.* together, 1470.  
 Ioynttours, *pl.* joints, limbs, 4722.  
 Ire, *s.* anger, rage, 733, 737, 805, 1504, 2185, 2424; Iree, 4504. In l. 1504 the Dublin MS. has *ayre*.  
 Ireland, 5663.  
 Iren, *s.* iron, 3628, 3826, 4085, 5516, 5519; Iryn (Irne), 3376.  
 Is, *pr. s.* is, 4, 67, &c.; Is, 1 *pr. pl.* (we) are, 4312; *pr. pl.* are, 178, 5361; (Er), 2478.  
 (Is), for His, his, 697, 903, 2052.  
 Isodry, Isidore, 3683.  
 It, *pron.* it, 13, 36, 56, &c.; It-selfe, 277.  
 Itaile, Italy, 5663; (Ytalle), 2528; Itale, 5110; Italee (Ytale), 1039.  
 Ithis, *pl.* waves, 63. A.S. *ȝð*. See Ythes.  
 Iubiter, Jupiter, 705, 3108. See Iupiter.  
 Iugemen (Iuggez), *pl.* judges, 3402.  
 Iugid (Iugged), *pp.* judged, 2664.  
 Iulus, *s.* July, 3537; Iuly, 4202; Iuli, 3789.  
 Iuno, Juno, 4504.  
 Iupiter, Jupiter, 4411, 4415.  
 Iurdan, Jordan, 4823.  
 Iuse, *s.* juice, 410. See Ious.  
 Iustice, *s.* justice, judge, 4321; Iustis (Iustice), *pl.* justices, 1601, 3402; (Iustes), 1546.  
 Iusting, *s.* jousting, 3042.  
 Iusule, *s.* lechery (?), 4411. The alliteration shows it is not *Insule*, as in Stevenson's edition. It is perhaps for F. *jeu seul*; but it is difficult to guess at the true etymology.  
 Iuwels, *pl.* jewels, 4035, 4444.  
 I-wis, *adv.* certainly, truly, clearly,

- verily, 11, 203, 3262, 3580, 4933 ; (Iwys), 2203 ; (I-wisse), 2018 ; I-wisse, 3119, 3436 ; I-wys, 348.
- Kaire me (Caire me), *v.* turn myself, go, 828 ; Kaires, *pr. s.* returns, 5419 ; (Cairez), turns, 1056 ; Kairis, *pl.* go, 153. See Caire.
- Kall (Calle), *s.* call, 983.
- Kan, *pr. s.* 1 *p.* can, 100, 577. See Can.
- (Karyn), *pr. pl. refl.* go, 2792 ; (Karys), *imp. pl.* go, 2770. See Kaire.
- (Kast), *s.* contrivance, 2484 ; Kastis (Castyng), *pl.* casts, throwings, 1395. See Cast.
- Kast, *v.* contrive, 415 ; Kast out, cast aside, 184 ; Kastis (Castes), *pr. s.* overthrows, 2281 ; (Kyst, *pt. s.*), intends, 1688 ; Kast, *pr. pl.* throw, hurl, 1395 ; Kast vnder, *pp.* overthrown, 138 ; Kast (Castyn), cast, 2247 ; Kast (Kest), thrown down, 1421. See Cast.
- Kastand (= Kastanid), *pp. as adj.* made like the chestnut, i. e. of a chestnut colour (Castans in the Dublin MS.), 1537. See Castans.
- Kay, *s.* key, 5289. See Keys.
- (Kayres), *pr. s.* returns, 3005 ; *refl.* goes, 2637 ; Kayres hym, goes, 2680. See Kaire.
- Kazt (Kacht, in MS. Katht), *pt. s.* seized, caught hold of, 2070. See Cazt.
- (Keches), *pr. s.* takes (leave), 1693.
- (Ked) excellent, 1229. See Kid.
- Kellis, *pl.* cauls, hair-nets, 4600. "Kelle, *reticulum*;" Prompt. Parv.
- Kell-wyse ; Opon kellywyse, in the manner of a caul, 3300. See above.
- Kempe, *s.* soldier, hero, warrior, 5499 ; (Kemp), 2216. A.S. *cempa*.
- Ken, (1) *v.* inform, 2353 ; teach, 4706 ; (Kenne), show, teach, 1192 ; Ken, *ger.* teach, 1982, 3278 ; make known, 2023 ; Ken, *pr. pl.* disclose, manifest, 4554 ; Kend, *pt. s.* told, instructed, 5543 ; showed, 5407 ; showed, gave, 5383 ; Kend, *pp.* informed, taught, 650. See below.
- Ken (2), *ger.* to know, 690 ; *v.* know how, 4078 ; Ken, 1 *pr. s.* know, 577, 843\*, 2718 ; perceive, 278 ; Kennes, *pr. s.* knows, 3991 ; Ken, 1 *pr. pl.* know, 4678 ; Kend, 1 *pt. s.* recognised, 3281 ; *pt. s.* knew, 696, 5548 ; discerned, 2849 ; Kend, *pt. pl.* knew, 2933 ; 2 *pt. s.* knewest, 4939 ; Kend, *pp.* known, discerned, 3148.
- Kendly, *adv.* kindly, greatly, 2594. Better read *kenly*, as in the Dublin MS.
- Kene, *adj.* keen, 427, 3971 ; shrill, 1604, 1815, 2345 ; sharp, 1804, 3818 ; eager, 1892 ; brave, bold, 90, 176, 748 ; *adv.* quickly, 746.
- Kenely, *adv.* sharply, 639 ; carefully, 1361 ; strictly, 821\* ; quickly, 1353 ; sorely, 4151 ; eagerly, 412 ; loudly, 2154 ; bravely, boldly, 58, 384, 1064 ; (Kenly), *adv.* keenly, greatly, 2394.
- Kenere, *adj. comp.* keener, 544 ; Kenir, bolder, 3583.
- (Kengez), *gen. s.* king's, 1040.
- Kepare, *s.* keeper governor, 5177.
- Kepe, *v.* keep, protect, 285, 405 ; be kept (*after latt*), 581 ; Kepe, *ger.* to keep, i. e. for men to keep, 5172 ; to keep, 1292 ; to observe, 1192 ; to guard, 72, 1480 ; to heed, care for, 3096 ; to look, pay heed, 821\* ; Kepe, *pr. s.* 1 *p.* care for, heed, 3557 ; care, 2417 ; Kepis, *pr. s.* preserves, 3356 ; Kepe, *pr. pl.* 1 *p.* heed, observe, 4386 ; Kepis (Kepys), 2 *p.* care, heed, 1455 ; (Kepe), *pr. pl.* defend, 1395 ; Kepid, *pt. s.* governed, kept, held, ruled, 5088 ; *pt. pl.* kept, 594 ; Kepid (Kepyd), *pp.* kept, 3413 ; Kepe, *imp. s.* keep thou, 97 ; Kepis 3ou, *imp. pl.* 2 *p.* take heed to yourself, 2564.
- Kerue[s], *pr. s.* cuts, 1056 ; Keruand, *pres. pt.* cutting, 63, 3024 ; biting, bitter, 3818. A.S. *ceorfan*.
- Kest, *v.* cast up, reckon, 673 ; *pt. s.* cast, 2052, 3147 ; imagined, 5233 ;

- cast, contrived, took up with, 921; *refl.* cast himself, flung himself, 794; Kest vp, *pt. s.* cast up, lifted up, 484; *pt. pl.* cast, 1604, 2154; devised, 3190; Kest in fewtire, laid their lances in rest, 2621.
- Keys (Kees), *pl.* keys, 2147. See Kay.
- Kid, *pp.* renowned, famous, 514, 4091, 4205; (Kyd), 959, 2151, 2207, 2761, 3114; proved, 1824; Kidd, renowned, illustrious, 3974, 5418. Lit. 'made known.' See below; and see Ked, Kyd.
- Kid, *pt. s.* showed; (Kyd), 1 *pt. s.* showed, 2743; Kide him, made himself known, 213. A.S. *cýðan*.
- Kid, *s.* kid, 4524; Kidis, *gen. pl.* of kids, 4476.
- Kiddest, *adj. superl.* most famous, most renowned, 33, 1934, 5103; (Kyddest), 2367; Kiddist, 3709; Kideest (Kyddest), 1885.
- Killid (Kyllyd), *pp.* killed, 2377.
- Kind, *s.* nature, 4264, 4386; (Kend), character, 3386.
- Kindiles, *pl.* young ones, broods, 4199. See *Kyndlyn* in Prompt. Parv.; and see *Kyndild*.
- Kindille (Kyndyll), *v.* kindle, be set on fire, 2724; Kindill (Kyndle), *pr. s. subj.* be kindled, 1979; Kindils, *pr. s.* kindles, 3859; is kindled, 149; Kindlis (Kyndeles), *pr. pl.* are kindled, 1730.
- Kindling (Kyndylling), *s.* kindling, ardour, 3292.
- Kindly (Kendly), *adv.* by nature, naturally, 3281.
- King, *s.* king, 50, 184, 456; Kinge (Kyngez), *gen. pl.* kings', 3414.
- Kingis, *error for* Kinnes; Of many kyngis werkes, of works of many a kind, 4530.
- Kindid, *error for* Nilid (Dublin MS. has knellyd), *pt. pl.* clanged, resounded, 775. "Knyllynge of a belle, *tintillacio*;" Prompt. Parv.
- Kirke, church, 1549; temple, 4542.
- Kirnels (Kernels), *pl.* battlements, 1421. O.F. *crenel*.
- Kirnels, *pl.* kernels, 2070.
- Kirtill, *s.* kirtle, 4956; Kirtils, *pl.* 4340.
- Kisses, *pr. s.* kisses, 384; Kist (Kyssitt), *pt. s.* 878.
- Kist, *s.* coffin, 3148; chest, coffer, 1043; Kistis, *pl.* coverings; *used in the sing. sense*, cover, covering, 4357; (Kystez), 1043.
- Kithe, *s.* country, 184, 3962; (Kyth), 1871; Kith, 144, 2011, 3562; (Kyth), 2769; Kithis, *pl.* countries, 4697; Kithes (Kythez), 889; Kitthis (Kytthez), 1204; (Kithes), 2011. A.S. *cýðe*, native land. See Cithe.
- Kithe, *v.* make known, proclaim, 3469; Kith, tell, 5168; Kithis, *pr. s.* tells, 5011. A.S. *cýðan*.
- Kithid, *s.* kindred, 3507. (Prob. an error for *kithe*.) See Kithe.
- Kith-ward; In-to oure kith-ward, towards our country, into our country, 4032.
- Knafe (Knaffe), knave, male, 835; Knaf, man-child, 3744; (Knaffe), knave, wretch, 3078; Knaue, boy, 592; (Knaffe), boy, 2501.
- Knaw, *v.* know, 100; (carnally), 308; *ger.* 1455; Knawe, 679; Knaw, 1 *pr. s.* 1878; Knawe, 183; Knawis, *pr. s.* 2 *p.* knowest, 875, 2523; (Knawys), 869; Knawes, 1962; Knawis (Knawys), *pr. s.* knows, 848; Knaw, 2 *pr. pl.* 627; (Knawe), 2205; Knaw, 2 *pr. s. subj.* mayest know, 2014; Knawen, *pp.* known, 204; Knawyn, 5234; renowned, 33; (Knawyn), known, 719. See Knew.
- Knawlage, *s.* knowledge, 3727.
- Knawlage, *pr. s.* 1 *p.* acknowledge, 3093.
- Kneis (Kneys), *pl.* knees, 983; (Knees), 1603; Kneys, 78; Knes, 1822; Knese, 4014; (Knes), 815.
- Knelis, *pr. s.* kneels, 4183; Knele, *pr. pl.* 2941; Kneland, *pres. part.* kneeling, 1599.
- Knew, *pt. s.* knew, 28, 63; Knewe, 211. See Knaw.
- Knew, *pt. s.* made known, 2872. A wrong sense; due to miswriting *he knew* for *be-knew*, as in the Dublin MS.
- Nilid; see Kindid.
- Knjzt (Knyz'), *s.* knight, 1617, 1229;

- Kniȝtis (Knyghtez), *pl.* 981, 1002, &c. See Knyȝt.
- Kniȝthede (Knyghthode), knight-hood, 1824; (Knyghthod), 2205. See Knyȝt-hede.
- Kniȝtly (Knyghtly), *adj.* knight-like, bold, 2448.
- Knok, *v.* knock, 639; Knockis (Knokez), *pr. s.* 1599.
- Knopis, *pl.* knobs, buttons, 4917.
- Knottis, *pl.* knots, 4917.
- Know (Knaw), *v.* to know, 1104. See Knaw.
- Knyfes, *pl.* knives, daggers, 3024, 5364.
- Knytt, *pr. pl.* knit, 3300.
- Knyȝt, *s.* knight, 100; (Knyght), 729\*, 835\*; Knyȝtis, *pl.* knights, men, 117, &c. See Kniȝt.
- Knyȝt-hede, knighthood, 659; Knyȝthode, 9. See Kniȝthede.
- Knyȝtly, *adv.* knightly, 484.
- Kokell, *adj.* shaky, unsteadfast, 2588. Cf. *coggle*, to be shaky, Halliwell; *cocklety*, unsteady; *id.* Jamieson cites *cockle-headed* from Sir W. Scott's Rob Roy: "he's crack-brained and *cockle-headed* about his nipperty-tipperty poetry nonsense." See Rob Roy, ch. xxi.
- Koyntis, *pl.* adornments, quaint ornaments, 4917. See Cointe.
- Kutt, *pp.* cut, 1421.
- Kyd, *pp.* shown, 719; renowned, famous, 52, 742\*, 767\*, 1987. See Kid.
- Kyn, *s.* kin, kindred, 3316.
- Kynd, *s.* kind, nature, 28, 3380, 3911, 5432; race, 3268; (Kend), nature, race, lineage, 2800; (Kynde), nature, 3147; Kynde, nature, 578, 2894; race, 696; manner, 650; Kyndis, *pl.* natures, 5428.
- Kynd, *for* Kyndled, *pp.* kindled, 2247. The Dublin MS. *has* kyndlett.
- Kyndild, *pt. s.* came forth, was born, 669. See Kindiles. "Kynled, or kyndelyd, in forthe-bryngynge of yonge beestys, *Fetatus*;" Prompt. Parv.
- Kyndill, *ger.* to kindle, 3139; Kindils, *pr. s.* kindles, excites, 166; (Kyndels), *pr. s.* takes fire, is kindled, 2871; Kyndild (Kyndlett), *pp.* kindled, 2231; (Kyndlett), 2247.
- Kyndlaike, *s.* kindness, 2718.
- Kyndly, *adv.* heartily, 4946.
- Kyndmen, *pl.* well-disposed men, hence, bold men, 2459. Dublin MS. *has* *kene men*.
- Kyndnes, *s.* natural inclination, 4700; kindness, 1982.
- Kyng, *s.* king, 39, 73, 78, 97, &c.; Kyng, 193, 202, 215; Kyng, *gen.* king's, 618, 627; Kyngis, *gen.* king's, 5181; (Kyngez), 823; Kyngis, *pl.* kings, 388; (Kengez), 885.
- Kyngdome, *s.* kingdom, 138. (Kynne); Some *kynne* gamez, games of some kind, 2259.
- Kyssis, *pr. s.* kisses, 456, 495, 3250; Kys, *imp. s.* kiss, 5252.
- Kythe (Kyth), *v.* manifest, show, 2433; show, 690; Kythis, *pr. s.* makes known, declares, 5367; Kyth (Kythen), *pr. pl.* show, manifest, 1021.
- Kythe, *s.* country, 219; (Kyth), 827\*, 843\*; Kythe (Kyth), region, 1049; Kythis, *pl.* countries, lands, 136, 4376; (Kythes), 1777, 1990; (Kythez), 2817.
- Labourde, *pt. pl.* laboured, toiled, 4814.
- Lacedoyne, Lacedæmonia, 2440; Lacedone (Lacidon), 2471; (Lacydon), 2443.
- Lachen, *v.* take, 3861; Lache, *v.* grasp at, 4347; (Lache), seize hold of, 1439; Lache, *ger.* to take, 2149; Laches, *pr. s.* takes, 5283; wins, 1055; (Lacchys), 2976; (Laught), *pt. s.* seized, 1055; Laches, *imp. pl.* catch ye, 1923; Laches (Lachys), *imp. pl.* catch, gain, 2604.
- (Lachynge), *s.* taking, capture, 1835.
- Lackis, *pr. s.* fails, is deficient, 4811.
- (Lad), *pt. s.* led, 793\*.
- Laddis (Laddez), *pl.* lads, low fellows, 1734; (Laddes), camp-followers, 2591, 772\*.

- Ladisman, *s.* leader, guide, 4967 ; (Lodesman), 2341. From A.S. *lād*, a leading.
- Lady, *s.* lady, 223, 302, 370, 517 ; Lade, 5351 ; Ladi, *gen.* lady's, 379 ; Ladys, *pl.* ladies, 156 ; Ladis, 213, 595, 3739 ; (Lades), 1602, 3116 ; Ladis (Ladys), *gen.* *s.* lady's, 2415.
- Ladyschip, *s.* ladyship, 3715.
- Laftyn, *pt.* *pl.* left, 886 ; Laft, *pp.* left, 824 ; (Left), 1331.
- Laghe, *adj.* low, short of stature, 3985.
- Laghtnes, *s.* lowness (?), humility (?), 3293. Probably corrupt ; the line gives no sense ; see the Ashmole MS. *Laucht* = low, occurs in Barbour, xii. 19 (MS. E.).
- Laghtyn ; see Layt.
- Laide, *pt.* *s.* laid, 494 ; (Lade), 893 ; Laide, *pp.* 382.
- Laike, *s.* game, sport, jest, play, 644, 4367, 5358 ; sin. vice, lit. game, 4685 ; Laikis (Lakez), *pl.* games, 1761. Icel. *leikr*. See Layke.
- Laike, *v.* sport, 5480 ; (Layke), *ger.* to amuse, disport (thylself with), 1770.
- Laingire (Langer), *adv. comp.* longer, 2195.
- Laire, *s.* earth, clay, soil, loam, 4445, 5088. Icel. *leir*. See Halliwell, and see note to l. 5088.
- Laite, *v.* (Lates, *imp. pl.*), seek, find out, 2341 ; *ger.* to seek, 152. Icel. *leita*. See Layte.
- Laith, *adj.* hateful, harmful, 5495 ; ugly, 4748 ; noxious, 4793 ; hideous, 3866.
- Lake, fault, defect, blame, 1816.
- Lamprays, *pl.* lampreys, 5085, 5473.
- Lance (Launce), *s.* lance, 1223 ; Lances (Launcez), *pl.* 1399 ; (Lancez), 788.
- Land, *s.* land, country, people, 109, 118, 168 ; Lande (Land), 757, 1760 ; Landis, *pl.* 10, 73, 210, 217 ; (Landez), 900.
- Landace, Laodicea, 2762.
- Lang (Lange), *adv.* long, 1145 ; Lange, 299, 461, 645.
- Lang, *v.* belong, 1682 ; Langis, *pr. s.* longs, 385 ; Lange, *pr. s. subj.* may remain, remains, 3715 ; If þe langis, if it belongs to thee, if thou dost long, 5358 ; Lange, *imp. s.* long, 5405. (In l. 3715 the reading *lenge* would be better, as that is the spelling usual with that sense ; see *langen* and *lengen* in Stratmann).
- Langage, language, 240.
- Lang on, *prep.* along of, dependent on, 4606.
- Lange, *adj.* long, 602 ; (Lang), 757, 920, 1325 ; (Long), 1399.
- Lange, *adv.* ; see Lang.
- Langing, *s.* longing, 6.
- Langir, *adv.* longer, 3311, 3560 ; (Langer), 1411 ; Langer, 801 ; Langire (Langer), 734 ; (Langre), *adv.* longer, 811\* ; Na langire (No lenger), no longer, 1344.
- Langour, *s.* languor, pining sickness, 3810 ; (Langor), 2807 ; ill fortune, 3289 ; Langor, pining, 7.
- Langwysches, *pl.* languishings, attacks of weakness, 2810.
- Lante, *pp.* lent, 4348.
- Lanterns, *pl.* lanterns, 5398.
- Lape, *s.* lap, 507.
- Lappid, *pt. s.* folded, 4568.
- Lare, *s.* lore, doctrine, teaching, learning, 36, 287, 633, 644, 1674, 4228 ; language, 5652 ; story, 523. See Lore.
- Large, *adj.* large, 602.
- Largely (Largly), *adv.* bounteously, 1351.
- Largenes, largeness, extent, 68 ; grace, 3404.
- Laschis (Lashes), *pr. s.* lashes, draws swiftly, 1325 ; darts, 553 ; Lasch (Lashe), *pr. pl.* strike, 1392 ; Laschid, *pt. pl.* lashed, drew, 801. See *lash* in Jamieson.
- Lasse, *s.* girl, 3746.
- Last, *adj.* last, 592 ; latest, i. e. very recent, 2785. At þe last, at last, 1007.
- Last, error for Lest (as in the Dublin MS.), least, 2818.
- Lastis, *pr. s.* lasts, lives, 989 ; (Lastes), 1678 ; (Lasvez), 1220 ; Lastis (Lastes), *pr. s.* lasts (where I should be omitted, as it is in the



- Dublin MS.), 2806 ; Lastid, *pt. s.* lasted, 3643 ; (Lastyd), 2047.
- (Lat), *s. bar* (lit. lath), 770\* ; (Lates), *pl.* 756\*. A.S. *lætta*.
- Lat, *v. let*, permit, allow, 355 ; (Latte), 1674 ; (Latt), *ger.* to let, 1677 ; Lattis, *pr. s.* lets, 3351 ; Latis (Lettes), 2665 ; Lat lightly (Letes lyghtly), consider lightly of it, think little of it, 2557 ; Latt, 2 *pr. pl.* act, go on, 4470 ; Lattis, *pr. pl.* let, i.e. suppose (themselves to be), 11 ; Lat *imp. s.* 2 *p.* let, permit, 588, 2711 ; Lat thou (Lett þou), let thou, 724 ; Lat (Latt), let, 2888 ; Latt, let, 581 ; (Lat), 865, 1014 ; Lat, 102, 355 ; Lat ane (Lett be), let (it) alone, let (it) be, 2688 ; God lat, God grant, 364 ; Lat, let him, 997 ; Latis, *imp. pl.* let, 4413 ; Lattes (Lettes), *imp. pl.* let, bid, 2579.
- Late, *adj.* late, 1736, 5051 ; On late, lately, 3549, 4394 ; Opon late (On late), lately, 2331.
- Late, *adv.* lately, 2705, 3434, 4221.
- Late, *s.* lightning, 553. See *laite* in Gloss. to the Troy-Book. Icel. *leiptr*.
- Late, *s.* aspect, manner, 491 ; voice, song, 4384 ; Latis, *pl.* gestures, port, 152, 4743, 5184 ; outward habits, 4664 ; behaviour (of the onlookers), 3998. Icel. *lati*.
- Latens, Latin, lit. of the Latins, 5652.
- Lathely, *adj.* loathly, hideous, 491. See Laythely.
- Lathely (Lothly), *adv.* loathingly, 2931.
- Lathire, *adj. comp.* loather, more loath, 1258.
- Lathis, *imp. pl.* loathe, abhor, 5115. (Lathys), *pr. s.* invites, 1828. A.S. *laðian*.
- Latine, *adj.* Latin, 4709, 5073.
- Latoun, *s.* latten, a mixed metal, 4464.
- Lattire, *adj. comp.* latter, 3891. See Neuer.
- Laue, *adj.* drooping, 4748. Cf. Icel. *lafa*, to droop, dangle as a flap. "Lave-eared, long-eared ;" Halliwell.
- (Laughtyn), *pt. pl.* drew, 801. See Lache, Lazt.
- Launce, *s.* lance, 1325. See Lance.
- Launde, *s.* plain, open space, lawn, 4818.
- Law, *adv.* low, 2289 ; (Lawe), 2362 ; Lawe, lowly, humbly, 196, 495, 1012, 1620.
- Lawe, *adj.* low, 1868 ; On lawe, low down, below, 199, 728 ; (In law), 3261, 3553. See Low.
- Lawe, *s.* law, 1546, 1582, 1682, 3402 ; (Law), 1568 ; Lawis (Lawe), *pl.* laws, 2996.
- Lawe, *s.* mountain, hill, 4812, 4887, 5485, 5514 ; (Low), 1090.
- Lawene, *pp.* brought low, humiliated, 3293.
- (Lawer), *adv. comp.* lower, 2714 ; Lawere, 5406.
- Lawes, *pr. s.* lows, bellows, 4744.
- Lawest, *adj. superl.* lowest, worst, 2092.
- Lawid, *pt. s.* glowed, 226. Icel. *loga*.
- Lawly, *adv.* lowly, humbly, 3172.
- Lawnes (Lownys), *s.* lowness, littleness, 2706.
- Lay, *s.* faith, religious belief, 3425.
- Lay, *pt. s.* lay, 3230. See also Lies.
- Layd, *pt. s.* laid, stretched, 778\* ; *pp.* laid, 507.
- Layke, *s.* play, 385. See Laike.
- Lays, *pl.* lays, 6.
- Layte, *v.* seek, 372. See Laite.
- Laythely (Lothlyche), *adj.* loathly, dreadful, 3230. See Lathely.
- Laythly, *adv.* with loathing, 1709, 3985.
- Lazand, *pres. part.* laughing, merry, 4367 ; Lajes, *pr. s.* 2725, 3760.
- Laze, *s.* law, 4306 ; custom, 4402 ; Of a laze, by a law, with good reason, 4666 ; Lajes, *pl.* laws, 4007, 4222 ; observances, 4412.
- Lazt, *pt. s.* took, 77 ; Lazt leue, took leaue, 331 ; Lazt his leue, 5232 ; Lazt (Laghtyn), *pt. pl.* drew, 3193 ; Lazt, *pp.* seized, conquered, taken, 4394 ; Lazt (Laght), caught, 2807 ; derived, 2522 ; (Laughten), taken, 2028.
- Lazter, laughter, 96 ; Laztir, 5303 ; (Laughter), 2197.

- Lebany, Lebanon, 4972.  
 Lebards, *pl.* leopards, 3573, 3849.  
 Leche, *s.* leech, physician, 2573.  
 (Leches), *pr. s.* heals, 1331; Lechid, *pp.* healed, cured, 2814.  
 Leddids (Ledderys), *pl.* ladders, 1439.  
 Lede, *s.* man, 96, 226, 240, 438, 664, 757, 834, 858, 1090, 1292, &c.; (Led), 2241; Of na lede werkis, of the works of no man, of no human contrivance, 4833; Ledis, *pl.* men, 7, 77, 141, 199, 4347; (Ledes), 2067, 2253, 2413, 2762, 3171; Lede, *put for* Ledes, men, 42, 1392. In l. 461, we may take *lede* = woman, but it would be better to read *lady*. In l. 3293, *lede* = man (but in the Dublin MS. it is a verb). In l. 4494, the repetition of *lede* is due to some corruption; perhaps the second *lede* should be *land*, i. e. country. In l. 4590, dele the commas before and after *lede*.  
 Lede, *s.* nation, people, country, 240, 1503, 3100, 3750, 4494 (where it may be an error for *land*), 844\*.  
 Lede, *s.* lead (metal), 4464.  
 Lede, *s.* language, 5007. *Short for* leden.  
 Lede, *ger.* to lead, 3787, 816\*; *v.* 939; (Lede), guide, 3293; Ledis, *pr. s.* leads, 1645, 3887; (Ledes), 877, 1202, 2079; Ledes, conducts, 2875; Lede, *pr. pl.* bring, 5633; Led (Lede), *pt. s.* led, 697; carried, 2976; Lede (Ledyn), *pt. pl.* led, 1124; *pp.* taken, 621; Ledis (Ledes), *imp. pl.* lead, 1923.  
 Lelderly; see Lethirly.  
 Lee, *s.* lea, field, 3561.  
 Lee, *s.* shelter, escape, 2060. See Jamieson. Cr an error for *lyfe*, as in the Dublin MS.  
 Lee, *s.* delight, 5615. "*Lee*, joy, pleasure, delight"; Halliwell.  
 Leege; see Lege.  
 Leeve, *pr. pl.* I p. leave, 4328.  
 Lefe (Leue), *v.* live, 1607; Lef (Leue), 1609. See a'so Leue.  
 Lefe, *v.* to leave; hence Lefys, *pr. s.* leaves, 330; Left, *pt. s.* left, 393; remained, 800; Lefe, *imp. s.* leave off, 5035; Left, *pp.* left, 814, 1269, 2253; (Laft), 728.  
 Lefe, *s.* leave, 1826, 2079; (Lefe), 1816.  
 Lefe, *s.* leaf, page, 4041; leaf (of a book), 1656; (Lefte), 1932.  
 Lefe, *v.* believe, 287.  
 Lefe, *adj.* dear, 653; (Leyue), 893.  
 Lefe (Leue), *adv.* lief, gladly, 1082.  
 Lefe, *ger.* to live, 3810; (Leuc), *v.* live, 1605, 1607, 1609; (Lefys), *pr. s.* 989; Lefis (Lefyn), *pr. pl.* live, dwell, 3397.  
 Lefyng, *s.* living, mode of life, 4248; Lefing, 4699.  
 Legaunce (Legeance), allegiance, 2791.  
 Lege, *adj.* liege, 1607, 1948; (Leyge), 3087; (Leege), 987.  
 Lege, *s.* liege lord, 5624; Leggis (Leigez), *pl.* lieges, subjects, 3386.  
 Lege, *s.* leg, 5473; Leggis, *pl.* 4748, 4959; (Leggez), 772\*.  
 Legeman (Lege man), liege man, 3172; Lege men (Legemen), *pl.* liege men, 1918.  
 Leke, leek: Of a leke, to the extent of the value of a leek, 4228. See the note.  
 Lekyn; see Lycken.  
 Lele, *adj.* leal, true, 3116; loyal, 1948; trusty, 2818.  
 Lele, *adv.* truly, 5020.  
 Lelist (Lelyst), *adj.* most loyal, 2877.  
 Lely, *adv.* leally, faithfully, 880, 1682; loyally, 4306.  
 Leme, *s.* light, ray, flame, 226, 4174, 4374. A.S. *lōma*.  
 Lemes, *pr. s.* glows, 5004; Lemed, *pt. s.* 4910; Lemed, *pt. s.* flashed, shone, 3335 (omit the first *s.* in this line); Lemand, *pres. part.* glowing, shining, 553, 5398.  
 Lemetis, *pl.* limits, bounds, 5038.  
 Lemett, *pp.* limited, fixed, 4283.  
 Lemmans, *pl.* lovers, 7.  
 Lend, *v.* go, journey, march, 2192, 2888, 3520, 4889; ascend, 221;  
 Lende, go, 3498; Lend, *ger.* to go, cross, 2591; Lendis, *pr. s.* comes, goes, 333, 858; (Lendez), arrives, 1693; Lendes, 1482; advances, 2149; Lendis, *pr. s. refl.* goes, 2410; Lendis him vp, goes



- up, 573; Lendis, *pr. pl.* go, 3656; Lendis þaim, come, 3849; Lendis (Lenden) þaim, *pr. pl.* land themselves, arrive, 3193; Lendid, *pt. s.* arrived, 379; Lend, *imp. s. 2 p.* go thou, 1980; Lendis, *imp. pl.* go, advance, 4992. See Lent.
- (Lendes), *pl.* loins, 965.
- Lenes, *pr. s.* leans forward, 1708; Lened, *pt. s.* leaned, 262; (Lenytt), 1708; Lene, *imp. s. 3 p.* let him lean, incline, 5069.
- Lenes (Lennys), *pr. s.* lends, grants, 3108.
- Leng, *ger.* to tarry, 5544; Lenge, *v.* live, linger, 1104; remain, abide, sojourn, stay, dwell, 273, 372, 2192; (Lenge), 1682; Lengis, *pr. s.* dwells, 1482; tarries, 1029; (Lengez), 1082; (Lenges), 2128; remains, 1293, 3535; Le[n]gis (Lenges), *pr. s.* abides, 2442; Lenges, tarries, 418; remains, 3746; Lengys (Lengez), continues, remains, 1144; Lengis (Lenges), *pr. pl.* are found, 2769; Lengid, *pt. s.* dwelt, 5538; (Lenged), 1293; *pp.* tarried, stayed, 461; Lenge (Leng), *pr. s. subj.* linger, 2162.
- Lengthe (Lenth), *s.* length, 800; A lengthe, in length, 3987; Lenghe (*for* Lengthe), length, 5086. See Lenthe.
- Lennthe, *v.* lengthen, p. 281, l. 65.
- Lent, *pt. pl. 1 p.* went, lit. arrived, 1942; *pt. pl.* came, 3902; Lent, *pp.* arrived, 5079; Is lent, is put, 3527 (perhaps from inf. *lene*); Lent ware (wer), had remained, 3068.
- Lenthe, *s.* length, 4750; Lenth, 68, 3908. See Lengthe.
- Lenxis, *pl.* lynxes, 3573.
- Lenþh, *s.* length, 3299. See Lenthe.
- Leon, *s.* lion, 109; Leons, *pl.* lions, 3849, 3902.
- Lepards, *pl.* leopards, 5084, 5140, 5438; Leopards, 4793.
- Lepis (Lepys), *pl.* leaps, dances, 1761; (Lepys), 791\*.
- Lepros, *adj.* leprous, 4593.
- Lere, *v.* learn, 36, 4589 (see note to this line); *ger.* 621; Leres, *pr. s.* learns, 629; Leris, *pr. s.* teaches, 4551; Leric, *pt. pl.* taught, 36; Leric, *pp.* learned, instructed, 653; Lered, learned, 3732; (Leryd), learnt, 765\*. Properly 'to teach'; but frequently misused.
- Lere, *s.* face, 379. A.S. *hléor*.
- Leres, *pl.* lessons, 3759. See Lare.
- Les, *adj.* less, 1055, 4228.
- Les, *adv. comp.* less, 472.
- Les (*for* Lest), lest, 732. The Dublin MS. has *lest*.
- Lesards, *pl.* lizards (probably crocodiles), 3573.
- (Lese); see Lose.
- Lesias (Lesyas), Lysias, 834; (Lysyas), 866.
- Lesing, *s.* leasing, lying, 4362; legend, fiction, 4. The use of this word in l. 4 is very remarkable, as it usually has a bad sense.
- Lesis (Lossez), *pr. s. 2 p.* shalt lose, 2306.
- (Lesse), *adj.* less, 1596.
- Lessen, *pr. s. 2 p. subj.* lessen, take away, 5368.
- Lest, *adj.* least, 3301, 3643, 3908; Leste, 5127.
- (Lest), *adv.* least, 2546.
- Lest, *conj.* lest, 2141, 4167; (Lest), 1372, 1981.
- Lesten, *ger.* to listen, 523; At lesten, to listen to, 4309; Lestyn, *ger.* 8; Lestin, *v.* listen to, 3468; Lesten, *v.* hearken to, 4949.
- (Let), *ger.* to let, 750; Letes, *pr. s. refl.* behaves, accounts himself, 1726; Lete, *pt. s.* let, 750, 1828; made, 491; behaved, 612; Lete, *pt. pl.* let, 5; Lett, *pp.* permitted, 2192; Lete, *imp. s.* cease, let go, 5332; Lett, 3 p. let, 1497; Letis (Lettes), *imper. pl. 2 p.* let ye, 988; Lettis (Lett), let, 1800. A.S. *létan*.
- Let (Lett), *v.* hinder, let, 1781; Lettis (Lettes), *pr. s.* hinders, 2807, 4065, 4847; Lett, 2 *pr. pl.* 4418; (Lett), *pt. pl.* delayed, 801.
- Letere, *s.* bed (lit. litter), couch, 4910.
- Leth, *v.* listen to, 4470. A bad spelling of *lithe*; see Lithe, Lythe.

- Cf. the Lat. text—'facias vt exaudiant preces tuas.'
- Leth, *s.* alleviation, healing, cure, 4593. See *Lith* in Glos. to Havelok.
- Lethire, *adj.* evil, wretched, 3548; (Lethir), cowardly, 2445; wicked, 2362; Lethir, vile, 3732; Leper (Lether), wicked, 840. A.S. *lyðre*.
- Lethirly, *adv.* shamefully, 2791; (Lederly), badly, ill, 2376; Lethire'y (Letherly), wickedly, 1465. See Lithirly.
- Lett, *s.* hindrance, 118.
- Letter, *s.* letters, reading, 624, 644; Lettir (Lettre), letter, 1463, 1719, 1806; Lettirs, *pl.* letters, 201; (Lettres), 1170, 1868, 1995, 2010; Lettris, 5100; Letteris, 5639.
- Letterure (Lettre), *s.* story, 2170.
- Letlird, *adj.* lettered, learned, 199; Lettrid (Lettred), 2241.
- Leue, *v.* leave, 1193, 3498; leave off, 1744; (Lefe), 2149, 3080; Leue (Leven), *ger.* 1258; Leue (Lefe), 1 *pr. s.* leave, 2950; Leues, *pr. s.* 1047, 4340; 4264 (to which line see the note); Leues (Lefys), 2486; he (God) grants, 2508; (Leuys), 1283; Leuys (Lefys), 2887; Leues, *pr. pl.* leave, 886; remain behind, 3750; Leuys (Lefes), leave, 3202.
- Leue, *s.* leave, 331, 766, 899, 1012, 2028; Be ȝoure (yonr) leue, by ȝour leave, 1680, 1681, 3465; departure, 1693.
- Lene (Lefe), *v.* live, 2814, 3171; Leve, *ger.* 933; Leues, *pr. s.* lives, 1722, 4284; (Leues), 880; Leueth, p. 281, l. 66; (Leued), *pt. s.* 920; Leuand, *pres. part.* living; Leuand of lyue, living in life, living alive (tautological), 2877.
- Leue, *ger.* to believe in, 5552; Leue, 1 *pr. s.* believe, 1781, 2688, 3715; Leuys (Leues), 2 *pr. s.* 1760; Leues, 2 *pr. pl.* believe, expect, 4482; (Leue), 2 *pr. s. subj.* mayest believe, 1986; (Leuyn), *pr. pl. subj.* may believe, 2688 (misused for the singular); Leued, 1 *pt. s.* believed (myself), 3282; Leued, *pt. s.* expected, 3874.
- Leue, *adj.* dear, 4, 287, 573, 697, 4882; Leue (Leyfe), *adj. as sb.* sir, lit. dear one, 2688.
- Leuefull, *adj.* lawful, permissible, 1674.
- Leuell, *s.* level, 3261.
- Leuely, *adv.* dearly, with welcome, 4949. See Leue, *adj.*
- Leuer, *adv.* rather, 1465.
- Leues, *pl.* leaves (of a book), 5073; leaves, 3957, 5005. See Lefe, and Leuys.
- Leuir, *adj.* rather, 4947.
- Leuir, *s.* liver, 4606.
- Leuire, *ger.* to deliver, 3718; Leuird, *pp.* delivered, 5344.
- Leuyng, *s.* living, manner of living, 4222.
- Leuys, *pr. s.* leaves, 77, 135; Leuyd, *pt. s.* left, 148.
- Leuys, *pl.* leaves, 3666, 4145. See Leues.
- Leuys, *pr. pl.* live, 4942; Leuyand, *pres. pt.* 5287. See Leue.
- Lewis, *pr. s.* becomes warm, 4374.
- Leyge. See Lege.
- Leȝe, *pr. s.* 1 p. lie, tell falsely, 314.
- Leȝt, *s.* 4980. Evidently a misspelling; and probably an error for lēȝt = length, a spelling which occurs in l. 3299. Of leȝt large = of length large, i. e. of a large length, of a great height. Compare the parallel phrase "of a longe lengthe," i. e. of great length, in P. Plowman, B. xiv. 241.
- Libertes, *pl.* liberties, 4348, 4418.
- Liche, body, 141; Liches, *pl.* 4517. A.S. *lic*.
- Licherous, *adj.* lecherous, 4328; Licherus, 4551.
- Lichid, *pt. s.* (for Lechid), healed; It lichid him for euire, it healed him once for all (viz. by killing the man), 4785.
- Licken, *ger.* to liken, compare, 3095; 1 *pr. s.* 438; Lickyns (Likens), *pr. s.* 2 p. likenest, comparest, 2706; Lickenand, *pres. pt.* likening, hence alike, 666; Lickned, *pp.* likened, 3553; (Lykkynd), 3095; Licknud, made like, 4350.
- Lickid, *pt. pl.* licked, 3826.

- Licknes, *s.* likeness, 3679; (Liknes), 1709. See Liknes.
- Licoure (Liquor), *s.* liquor, juice, 1351; Licor (Liconr), draught, 2569.
- Liddis, *pl.* lids, eye-lids, 965.
- Lies, *pr. s.* lodges, 1145; (Lay), *pt. s.* lodged, 1145. See also Lay, Ly.
- Life, *s.* life, 1918; (Lyfe), 2162; Lifis, *pl.* lives, 5.
- Lift, *s.* air, sky, 4814; Lifte, 674.
- Liftis, *pr. s.* lifts, raises, 3289; (Lyftes), 965; Lift (Liften), 1 *pt.* *pl.* lifted (up), rose (up), 1942; Lift, *pt. pl.* 196; Liftid, *pp.* lifted, 5514; Lift (Lyft), 728.
- (Lig), *v.* lie, 756\*; Ligge, 345; Ligg, *ger.* to lie, 5591; Ligg, *v.* lay (*misused*), 2101; His buke on to lig, for his book to lie on, 1570; Liggis, *pr. s.* lies, 5173; (Liggez), stays, rests, 3176; (Ligges), 730\*; Liggis, lies, repose, 4775; Liggis, *pr. pl.* lie, 4845; (Liggez), 772\*. See Lies.
- Light; see Ligt.
- (Lighter), *adv.* more easily, 1055.
- (Lightyd), *pp.* relieved, cured, 2814. See also Ligtis.
- Like, *adj.* like, 240, 599, 654, 666; (Leke), 2445.
- Like, *s.* body, 2931, 3232, 4785. See Liche.
- Likis, *pr. s.* (it) pleases, 22, 292, 523, 3522; (Likez), 987; Likis (Liked), likes, 2013; (Likez), 2 *pr. s.* likest, 1765; Like, *pr. s. subj.* may it please, 5115; Likid, *pt. s.* liked, 146; pleased, 373; Likid, *impers. pt. s.* it would please, 5544; (Liked), might please, 2172; would please, 1948; Likand, *pres. pt.* pleasing, 4606.
- Likkys, *pr. s.* licks, 778\*.
- Liknes, *s.* likeness, shape, 382. See Licknes.
- Limpe, *v.* happen (to), 3759; Limp (Lymp), befall, happen, 2162; Limpis, *impers. pres. s.* happens, 3891; Limps (Lympys), happens, suits, 3095; Limpis, belongs, 3563; Limpes, 2 *pr. s.* chancest, 3754 (rather read *if þe limpes*, if it happens to thee); Limp, *pr. s. subj.* may happen (to thee), 3297; Limpid (Enlympyd), *pt. s.* happened, succeeded, 1881; (Limpyd), was secured (for him), 2060; Vs limpyd (Limpyd), *pt. s. impers.*, it befell us, 209.
- Limy, *name*, 5495.
- Lind, *s.* lime-tree, *used for* tree, 5003; Lindis, *pl.* trees, 5038, 5237; lime-trees, 2851, 4765, 4942.
- Line (Lines), *s.* line, 1932; (Lyne), line of writing, 2047. See also Lyne.
- Lionesses, *pl.* lionesses, 5140. See also Lyon.
- Lippis, *pl.* lips, 3942.
- Lire, *s.* flesh, 3942. A.S. *lira*.
- List, *pr. s. impers.* pleases, 3297, 3810; it pleases (me), 3472; pleases (it), 3563; List vs, it pleases us, 4347; List, does it (not) please, 4942; (Lyst), it pleases, 2149; Liste (List), *pr. s. subj.* may please (thee), 1761; List, 2 *pr. pl.* (MS. lift), are (ye) pleased, do (ye) desire, 5356; List þow, may it please you, 3465; List, *pt. s.* it pleased, 5023.
- Lite, few, 2079, 2128, 4394; (Lyte), 2253; (Lityll), 2306. See Lyte.
- Lite, *s.* a little, 1942.
- Lithe, *v.* listen, hear, 5023; listen to, 3468; *ger.* to listen to, 4384. Icel. *hlýða*. See Lythe.
- Lithe, *ger.* to soften, render pliant, hence, to subdue, 3754. A.S. *gelīðian*.
- Lithirly (Lythirly), *adv.* wickedly, evilly, 3100. See Lethire.
- Lithis, *pl.* limbs, 3750. A.S. *lið*. See Lyth.
- Lithis, *pl.* pleasures, 5615. Allied to Lithe, *v.*
- Litill, *adj.* little, 113, 331, 503, 507; few, 2128, 5147; (Lityll), 866, 965; (Litell), 1754. See Littill, Lytill.
- Litillaikie, *s.* littleness, smallness of stature, 2505; (Litilayke), 1709; (Lityllaikie), littleness, 2931; (Lityllake), pitifulness, 2706.
- Litill-quat, somewhat, 4392.

- Littid, *pt. pl.* delayed, 801. Bad spelling for *lettid*.  
 Littill, *adj.* little, 130, 227, 1981; *as s.* a little, 139, 541; *adv.* 1054. See Litill.  
 Littis, *pl.* dyes, colours, 4336. Icel. *lita*.  
 Liuers (Delyuerys), *pr. s.* delivers, 3152.  
 Liȝt, *adj.* bright, 553; white, 4464; royal, 5184; (Light), cheery, cheerful, 2604, 5332.  
 Liȝt, *s.* light, 3335; (Light), 1781, 2976; Liȝtis, *pl.* lights, 4231.  
 Liȝter, *adj. comp.* lighter, i.e. delivered, 572.  
 Liȝt-hertid, *adj.* light-hearted, 2814.  
 Liȝtis, *pr. s.* lights, alights, 4153; (Lightes), 1560; Liȝt, *pr. pl.* 886; Liȝt, *pr. pl. subj.* alight, light, fall, 732; Liȝt, *pt. s.* alighted, 4785; Lightȝd, *pt. pl.* 886; descended, was born, 599; came down, 2362; Liȝt, *pp.* alighted, 2404; Liȝt, *pp.* born, 4494 (cf. l. 599).  
 Liȝtis, *pr. s.* feels light, is glad, 5255.  
 Liȝtis, *pr. s.* lights, kindles, 4232; Liȝtid, lighted, 4231.  
 Liȝtly, *adv.* quickly, 77; without a cause, 3506; (Lightly), easily, 1932.  
 Liȝtlyere, *adv.* lightlier, more easily, 1055.  
 Lo, lo! 399, 713, 985. See Loo.  
 Locerhes; *written* Locerhes in the MS., but *prob. an error for* Leches, *pl.* leeches, 4197.  
 Lockis, *pr. s.* locks, fastens, 5495.  
 Lockis, *pl.* locks (of hair), 602.  
 Lofe, *pr. s.* 1 *p.* praise, 259, 5624; (Lofe), 2577; Lofed, *pt. s.* praised, 658. Icel. *lofa*.  
 Lofe, *s.* praise, fame, 664. Icel. *lof*.  
 Lofe, *s.* love, 226.  
 (Lofely), *adv.* lovingly, 3172. See Lufly.  
 Lofes, *pr. s.* loves, 880. See Lufe.  
 Loft, in *phr.* On loft, aloft, on high, 196, 221, 385, 426; Fra þe loft, from above, 393; Apon loft (Vpon lofte), aloft, 778; Of loft (On-lofte), aloft, 1392.  
 Loge, *s.* lodge, defence, hold, 1292; lodge, 886, 1158; lodging, 372; apartment, 4910; lodge, i.e. palace, 3335 (omit the former *as* in this line); abode, 791\*.  
 Logis, *pr. s.* lodges, 1082; (Loges), 3657, 4882, 5580. See Loygid.  
 Lokars (Lokers), *pl.* keepers, 2591.  
 Loke, *ger.* look for, 372; *v.* look, 273; Lokis (Lukes), 1 *pr. s.* (I) look, expect, 2810; Lokis, *pr. s.* looks, 603, 674, 677, 1129; looks to, 1331; (Lokys), 2241; (Lukes), 965; Lokes (Lukes), *pr. s.* looks, 2942; (Lokez), 840\*; seems, 750\*.  
 Loke, *s.* look, 5256.  
 Loken, *pt. s.* covered, 5005, 5237; Lokin, roofed, 4383. A.S. *locen*, *pp.* of *lúcian*.  
 Lokid (Lukkyd), *pp.* decided, decreed, 3404.  
 Lokis, *pl.* locks, 4956.  
 Lome, *s.* tool; Odd lome, privy member, 4750. A.S. *lóma*.  
 Longe, *adj.* long; At longe, at last, 3498.  
 (Longen), *pr. pl.* belong, 1549.  
 Loo, lo! 4417; (Lo), 705, 1821. See Lo.  
 Loose, *s.* loss, 3891.  
 Looue (Lofe), palm of the hand, 2569. Icel. *lófi*. See Loue.  
 Loran, *s.* bit, 793\*. O.F. *lorain* (Roquefort).  
 Lord, lord, master, 152, 1656, 1828; (Lorde), sir, 1012; Lorde (Lord), Lord, 848; Lordis, *gen.* lords, 5; Lord (Lordez), *gen.* lord's, 2604; Lordis, *pl.* lords', 196; (Lordez), 814, 1602.  
 Lording (Lordȝng), lord, 2573.  
 Lordschip, *s.* dominion, 1687, 2306; lordship, 1503; Lordschips, *pl.* titles of honour, 4347.  
 Lore, *s.* instruction, command, 2791. See Lare.  
 Lorell (Losell), mean fellow, rascal, 1760. *Lor-el* and *los-el* are mere variants, meaning 'lost' or abandoned wretch.  
 Lores, *pl.* laurel-trees, 4972.  
 Lorne, *pp.* lost, 5. A.S. *loren*, *pp.* of *lēosan*.

- Lose (Lese), *v.* to lose, 3087; Loste (Lost), *pt. pl.* lost, 3068; Lost, *pp.* 118, 152, 840, 2785.
- Lose (Losse), *s.* loss, 3171; Los (Losse), 866.
- Lose, *s.* praise, fame, 1881, 2604, 3527; (Loyse), 2505. O.F. *los*.
- Losed, *pp.* praised, 5316; (Losyt), renowned, 2505.
- Losell; see Lorell.
- Losengere (Losynger), *s.* liar, 1923; Losangere, 3543; Losengers (Losyngers), *pl.* 1734.
- (Loth), *adj.* loath, 1258.
- Lothlyche; see Laythely.
- Loude, *adv.* loudly, 491, 612, 1609.
- (Loudly), *adv.* loudly, 1709.
- Loue, *v.* love, 369; (Loued), *pt. s.* loved, 813\*; Loues, *pr. pl.* desire, 2318; Loued (Lofed), *pp.* beloved, 2562.
- Loue, *s.* love, 1687.
- Loue, *ger.* to praise, to be praised, 4590; 1 *pr. s.* praise, 458; Loues, *pr. s.* praises, 5207; Loued, *pp.* praised, 2505. Icel. *lofa*.
- Loue, *s.* palm of his hand, 2067. Icel. *lofi*. See Looue.
- Louely, *adj.* dear, 2289; (Lofely), 3579.
- Louely, *adv.* beautifully, 426; kindly, 369; (Louely), lovingly, 880.
- (Loughly), *adv.* lowly, 1012.
- Loute, *ger.* to render obedient, 3494; to bow down to, 3549; Loute, *v.* do obeisance, 369; (Lowte), submit to, 993; Loutis, *pr. s.* bows to, 4238; (Loutez), bows to, 785\*; Loutis (Loutes), bows down to, 3211; *pr. pl.* obey, 5674; Louted, *pp.* revered, bowed down to, 3454. A.S. *hlutan*.
- Louyng, *s.* praise, 3754.
- Low; On low, a-low, low, 788\*.
- Low, *s.* a mountain; see Lawe.
- Lowde, *adj.* loud, 96; (Lowd), 1392.
- Lowe, *s.* flame, 4177, 4179. A.S. *log*.
- Lowere, *s.* reward, guerdon, recompense, 5368. O.F. *louier*, *loier* (Roquefort); *loyer*, 'reward, guerdon'; Cotgrave.
- Lownys; see Lawnes.
- (Lowsed), *pp.* praised, 1960. See Losed.
- Lowsys, *pr. s.* loosens, 788\*.
- Lowtes, *pr. s.* bends, 788\*.
- Loygid (Loget), *pp.* lodged, 1952.
- Loze, *pt. s.* laughed, 96.
- Loze, *s.* lake, 3899. A.S. *lagu*; Icel. *lög*.
- Luctus, *name of a place*, 2170.
- Lufe, *v.* love, 664; Lufe, 1 *pr. s.* love, 289; 1 *pr. pl.* 3768; Lufed (Lofyd), *pp. as adj.* beloved, 3425.
- Lufe, *s.* love, 6; (Loue), 920.
- Lufe, *error for* I love, I praise, 2577. See the Dublin MS.
- Lufly, *adv.* lovingly, 1693. See Lofely.
- Luggid, *pt. pl.* pulled, dragged, 3942.
- Luke, *v.* look, see, 68, 221; Lukis, *pr. s.* 1527.
- (Lukkyd); see Lokid.
- Lurkare, *s.* lurker, skulker, 3543.
- Lurkis, *pr. pl.* lurk, 3991.
- Lust, *s.* pleasure, 4497; Lustes, *pl.* 4328.
- Ly, *v.* lie, 770\*.
- Lycken (Lekyn), *v.* liken, 1740.
- Lyes, *pr. s.* lies, is, 920.
- Lyfe, life, 34, 42; (Lyue), 1188; O lyfe, alive, 663; On lyfe, 540; (On-lyue), 1269; Lyfes (Lyue), *gen.* life's, 880; (Lyfez), *pl.* lives, 1826.
- Lyfe, *s.* person, living person, 599, 5287. So in P. Plowman and Gower.
- Lyfe-days, days of my life, 369.
- Lyft, *s.* sky, 4174. See Lift.
- Lyft, *v.* lift, exalt, 3293; (Lift), 1090; (Lyftes), *pr. s.* 731\*. See Liftis.
- Lyftyng, *s.* lifting, raising; As a hand lyftyng, like what can be lifted in the hand, i. e. as large as could just be raised by hand, 567. (Lygez), *pl.* legs, 3150.
- (Lykkynd); see Licken.
- Lyly, *sb.* lily, 3902.
- Lym, *s.* limb, 666, 4497; (Lymez), *pl.* 1918; (Lymnes), *s.* 772\*.
- Lyme, *s.* lime, 5088.
- Lymit, *s.* limit, 5069.
- Lymp, *v.* happen, 299; Lympid

- (Limpyd), *pt. s. subj.* should happen, 2220.  
 (Lypys); see Limpe.  
 Lyn, *adj.* linen, 141.  
 Lyndis, *pl.* lindens, trees, 3957, 4447.  
 See Lind.  
 Lyne, *s.* line, 1656; (Line), 1821; story, 2060; line (of the book), 1439; Lynes, *pl.* lines of the writing, 2573.  
 Lyon, *s.* lion, 612; Lyons, *gen.* 426, 602; Lyon, *gen.* 438. See also Lionesses.  
 (Lyre), *s.* face, look, 3232. A.S. *hléor*.  
 Lyse, 1 *pr. s.* (I) lie, 2810; (Lyes), *pr. s.* lies, 1816.  
 Lyte, *adj.* little; To lyte, too little, very little, 1754.  
 (Lyth), *s.* limb, form, 2931. A.S. *lið*. See Lithis.  
 Lythe, *ger.* to listen to, 4; Lythis (Lightez), *pr. s.* listens, 1650.  
 Lythirly; see Lithirly.  
 Lytill, *adj.* little, 478.  
 Lyne, *s.* life, 2123; Lyes, *gen.* life's, 5615; On lyue, alive, 5085; Of lyue, alive, 3732; out of life, 4333; Broght of lyue (liue), brought out of life, killed, 1442; Lyes (Lyfez), *pl.* lives, 3071; Lyuys, 1595, 2476.  
 Lyeur, *adj.* delivered, 3746.  
 Lyeur (Delyver), *ger.* to deliver, 3120; Lyuers (Leuerys), *imp. pl.* deliver, 3116.  
 Ma (for Me), me, 729. See note.  
 Maa (Make), *v.* make, perform, 1761.  
 Maa (Mo), more, besides, 1273.  
 Macchis (Mache), *pl.* mates, 831.  
 Maces, *pl.* clubs, 4100.  
 Mache, *ger.* to match themselves, 3607; Macches, *imp. pl.* 2 *p.* match; Macches 3ow, match yourselves, 1033.  
 Mad, *pt. s.* made, caused, 3449; Made, 235, 469; Mad, *pp.* made, 3921; Made, 318, 1130.  
 Madame, madame, 229, 874.  
 Madding, *s.* madness, 1743, 3546.  
 (Made); an error for Nad, had not, 1462. See the footnote.  
 (Madeus), 729; see Maideux.  
 Magen, *Lat.* Magehon, 5492.  
 (Mageste), *s.* majesty, 1491. See Maieste.  
 Magged, *pp.* mangled, 1268. Cf. Lowl. Sc. *magil*, *maggie*, to mangle, to hash.  
 Magnife (Magnyfy), *imp. s.* magnify, 2838.  
 Magogg, Magog, 5487.  
 Mai, *pr. s.* may, 3552.  
 Mai, May, 3699.  
 Maideux; So maideux, i. e. so m'aide deus, so may God aid me, 5024. The words *m'aide deus* are Anglo-French. Cf. note to l. 729.  
 Mai[d]ons, *pl.* maidens, 3722.  
 Maied, *pp.* dismayed, 5399. Short for *esmaied*. See Mayes.  
 Maieste, majesty, 2275; (Mageste), 1947, 1969.  
 Mailes (Malys), *pl.* coats of mail, 803, 2454, 2624; Maillis (Males), 1219.  
 Maire (Mair), mayor, 1557.  
 Maister, master, 235, 268, 310, &c.; tutor, 5617; Maistre (Maister), 2238, 2251; (Maistir mair), Mr. mayor, 1557; Maistris, *pl.* masters, lords, 3400; (Maisters), 1545, 1920; Maistirs, lords, 985; (Maisteres), 767\*.  
 Maister, *adj.* chief, 2037, 5404.  
 Maister-like, *adv.* with dignity, 228.  
 Maisterlingis, *pl.* princes, 481; Maisterlings, 3310.  
 Maistres, *s.* mistress, queen, 3763, 4530.  
 (Maistrett), *pp.* conquered, 1270.  
 Maistri, *s.* mastery, rule, dominion, 3306; Maistrie (Maistre), 1969; Maisterris, *pl.* masteries, conquests, 4502; Maistryse, *pl.* powerful charms, feats of astrology, 333.  
 Makare (Maker), *s.* Maker, Creator, 3267.  
 Make, *ger.* to make, 205, 333, 868; *v.* 356, 583; to be made, 191; Makis (Mase), *pr. s.* 2 *p.* makest, 2908; (Makys), dost, 834\*;  
 Makis, *pr. s.* 544, 641, 704;  
 Makis (Mase), *pr. s.* disposes, 2210 (better insert *to fonde*, as in the Dublin MS.); Makis, *pr. pl.*



- make, 1266; (Made), *pt. pl. made*, 1266; Maked, *pt. s. made*, 3326; Makid, *pp. made*, 3345, 4358; Maked, 3441; Make, *pr. s. subj.* 890; let him make, 999.
- Make, *s. mate*, wife, 574, 5153; fellow, 5430. A.S. *gemaca*.
- Make (Makke), *s. make*, form, construction, 3218.
- Maleces, *pl. works of malice*, p. 279, l. 7.
- Malegreffe (Mawgre), *prep. in spite of*, 2782; Malegreue (Mawgre), 1747.
- Malicoly, *adj. melancholy*, 2382; Malicole (Malycole), *melancholy*, sad, 2741.
- Malicoly, *s. ill-humour*, anger, 1981.
- Malidy, *malady*, 4281; (Maledy), 2127.
- Malstrid, *pp. bewildered*, 1270. Written for *malscrid*; see *Malskrid* in Will. of Palerne, *malskren* in Stratmann, and *malscrung* in Wright's Vocabularies.
- Mammlere, *s. ready speaker*, fluent utterer, 4498. From M.E. *mamel-len*, to chatter.
- Man, *s. man*, 185, 211, &c.
- Man (May), *pr. pl. subj. may*, 1681.
- Manars, *pl. manners*, 4223. See Maner.
- Manas, *s. menace*, 3570.
- Mandment, *s. mandate*, commandment, 3531, 3541.
- Mane, many, 104.
- Mane, *s. moan*, lament, 5027; (Mone), 1266.
- Maner, *s. custom*, 2953; *manner*, sort, 684, 1130; *Manere*, kind, sort, 1498, 4353, 4535; *Maners*, *pl. manners*, 2515.
- Manerly, *adv. courteously*, 3953.
- Mangery, feast, 831. See P. Plowman.
- Mankit. See Alto-maukid (*sic*).
- Manly, *adv. boldly*, 762.
- (Manly), *adv.*; *an error for Maynly*, i.e. severely, 3200. (The Ashmole MS. has the right reading.)
- (Manours), *pr. s. governs*, 837\*.
- Manslatir, *s. manslaughter*, 4486.
- Manslajt, *s. manslayer*, 4498.
- Mantill, mantle, 3236, 4956, 5181; (Mantyll), 2864.
- Many, *adj. many*, 13, 86, 94, 124; (Mony), 692; Many day (Mony day), long ago, many a day, 919, 1186. See Mane.
- Many-fald, *adj. manifold*, 3763.
- Manykins; Of manykins hewis, of hues of many a kind, 3864.
- (Manysflesche), man's flesh, 748\*.
- Marble (Marbyll), *s. marble*, 1330.
- Marbryn, *adj. of marble*, 4353.
- Marchandise (Merchaundyse), *s. merchandise*, 3419.
- Marchands (Marchaundez), *pl. merchants*, 1557.
- Marche, *s. border*, frontier, region, boundary, country, 97, 245, 762, 913, 1625, 2012, 3452, 3538, 837\*; Marchis (Marches), *pl. marches*, borders, 2696; Marches, 1241, 1972, 2037. See Merche.
- Marchesmen (Marche-men), men of that march or region, 2540.
- March-gats, *pl. lines of march*, 5076.
- Marcipy, Marsipius, 5093.
- Marcure, Mercury, 4498; (Mercury), 704; Marcure (Mercurius), *gen. Mercury's*, 2865.
- Mare, *adj. more*, greater, 118, 130, 182, 1743, 1746, 2584, 2813, 4395.
- Mare, *s. mare*, 4434.
- Margarits, *pl. pearls*, 3669. See Margrite.
- Margon, *s. muttering*, 628. It seems to refer to the muttering of a crowd of boys engaged in learning a task. Cf. Lowl. Sc. *murgeon*, a murmur, the act of grumbling, q. v. in Jamieson. Stevenson explains it by 'sullenness.'
- Margrite, *s. pearl*, 4901.
- Market, *s. market*; To make his market, to do his business, 421.
- Marras, *s. morass*, marsh, 3893, 3952.
- Marres, *pr. s. wounds*, 2040; Marris, *pr. pl. injure*, 1420; Marre, hurt, spoil, 4409; (Merred), *pt. pl.* 1420; Marrid, *pt. s. spoilt*, 3546.
- Mars, Mars, 4502.
- Marthyney, *name*, 5492.
- Martrid (Martyred), *pp. murdered*, 1268; Martird, slain, 3644.
- Mary, *ger. marry*, 3773.

- Mas (Makes), *pr. s.* 2 *p.* makest, 831; (Makys), 2741; Mas, makes, causes, 2587, 3501, 3570, 3616, 4739; (Makes), 1330, 2277, 2674; (Makez), 1518, 1956.
- Mascles, *pl.* spots, 4989, 5138. The F. heraldic term *macle* (from Lat. *macula*) is in E. heraldry spelt *mascle*. See *macle* in Cotgrave.
- Mased, *pp.* confused, amazed, confounded, 3885; (Masyd), bewildered, 1270.
- Massy, *adj.* huge, heavy, 3332. (Massydon), Macedonia, 837\*.
- Mast, *adj.* most, greatest, 1462, 3082, 3669, 3921; (Most), 2687; (Moste), 1115; Maste, 4820.
- Mast, *adv. superl.* most, 5078; Maste, 1725, 2072; (Most), 2416.
- Mast, *s.* mast, *put for pl.* masts, 69.
- Mastif, mastiff, 321.
- Mast-quat, for the most part, 5010.
- Matches (Maches), *pr. s.* provides a match for, 2277.
- Mater (Materys, *pl.*), matter, 2780.
- Matid (Mated), *pp.* exhausted, 1270.
- Maumentry, idolatry, 4486.
- Maunderment, *s.* commandment, *but here* commendation or message, 4237.
- Mawe, *s.* maw, stomach, 4508; Mawis, stomachs, 4434; open gullets, 4728.
- May, 1 *pr. s.* may, 464; (if I) may, 327; 2 *pr. s.* canst, 366, 1090, 1986; *pr. s.* may, 179, 520, 636; 2 *pr. pl.* can, 684; *pr. pl.* 592.
- Mayden, *s.* maiden, 4266; Maydens, *pl.* 3177.
- Maydese, *for* m'aide Deus, so may God aid me, an oath, 4446. See note; and see Maideux.
- Mayes, *imp. pl.* 2 *p.* be ye dismayed, 3010; dismay, 3570. *Short for* Smayis, *imp. pl.* of smay. Cf. O.F. *s'esmayeur*, to be astonished; Cot. See Maied.
- Maylis, *pl.* mail-armour, coats of mail, 3615; Mayles (Males), 2226.
- Mayn, *adj.* chief, choice, 3777; strong, complete, 3018; large, 3932.
- Maynes, *pr. s.* maims, wounds, 5153; Mayned, *pp. as adj.* maimed, 1273; *hence*, wretched, miserable, 4544.
- Maynly, *adv.* exceedingly, extremely, 399, 934, 1341; strongly, severely, 3200; vehemently, 3434; (Manly), boldly, 1033, 1173, 1951; fiercely, vigorously, 2042; strongly, 1217, 1379; greatly, 2235; Maynely, strongly, 3969; fiercely, 3885.
- Maynyng, *s.* maiming, injury caused (by), 4088. See Maynes.
- Mayntenance (Mayntenaunce), maintenance, 1179.
- Maytene, *v.* defend, 1972; Mayntaines, *pr. s.* keeps up, 4522; Maynten, *pr. pl.* maintain, keep, defend (his body), 1265.
- Maȝte, *adj.* mighty, great, 4787 (see footnote), 4883; Maȝten, 3938.
- Me, *dat.* for me, 3170; to me, 214; *acc.* me, 208; myself, 3093.
- Meane, *s.* mean, means, way, method, *p.* 282, *l.* 105.
- Meche, *adj.* great, 3306.
- Meche, *error for* Methie, *s.* moderation, 3102. See Meth.
- Medcye, *s.* medicine, 4281; (Medycine), 2555.
- Mede, *s.* meed, reward, 1092, 3191, 4534, 5226; ransom, 3120; Wyrship to mede, honour for their reward, 3423; Medis, *pl.* (Mede, *s.*), rewards, 2428.
- Mede, *s.* mead, 4824.
- Mede, Media, 88, 4843, 5105; (Medy), 2528, 3107; Medi, 1681.
- Medill, *adj.* middle, 315.
- Medilhnast, *adj. superl.* middlemost, 5093.
- Medis, *pl.* Medes, 3644, 3969, 5312, 5632.
- Medy, Media, 2583, 3616.
- Meenes (Menys þe), 2 *pr. s.* be-moanest, lamentest, 2741. A.S. *mēnan*.
- Meere, *s.* mare, 3921; Meeris (Merys), *pl.* 2853.
- Meere, *s.* boundary, 5058; limit allotted period, 5024.
- Meere, *s.* mere, lake, 4093.
- Meeve, *ger.* to move, 5292.



- Megire (Meger), *adj.* as *s.* meagreness, famine, 1164.
- Meke, *adj.* meek, humble, 1747.
- Meke, *ger.* to humble (himself), 1746; Meke (Mekyn), *imp. s.* humble, render meek, 2838.
- Mekely, *adv.* meekly, 816, 1947, 2098.
- Mekely (*for* Mekilly), *adv.* largely, 3691. (Or an error for *metely*, meetly).
- Mekill, *adj.* great, 396, 927, 3313; great, 437; Mekil, great, 69; (Mykle), great, 1947; Mekil quat, many things of various kinds, 130 (see the note), 5468.
- Mekill, *s.* much (see the note), 4397.
- Mekill, *adv.* much, 268, 464, 513, 659; (Mykyl), 897.
- Mekills, *error for* Mekill, *adj.* much, 4310.
- Mekly (Mekely), *adv.* meekly, 1686.
- Meknes (Mekenes), *s.* meekness, 3286.
- Mele, *ger.* to speak, tell, 147, 5120; Melis (Melles), *pr. s. 2 p.* speakest, 2911; Melis (Mellys), *pr. s.* speaks, 2078, 2953; Melid, *pp.* spoken, told, 5113. A.S. *mēlan*.
- Meliager, 1195, 1201, 1217, 1237, &c.
- Mell (Melle), *ger.* to meddle, 735; to contend, fight with, 1743; (Mell), intermeddle, 1989; Mellis, *pr. s.* cohabits, 5430. O.F. *mesler*.
- Mellis, *pr. s.* tells, speaks, 4310; (Mellys), 2 *pr. s.* tellest, 729. (Badly spelt; read *melis*, *melys*; but see further examples *s. v.* Mele).
- Mellis, *pl.* mallets, 4100.
- (Meltyn), *v.* melt, 3082; Meltis, *pr. s.* 2899.
- Me[m]bree, *s.* member (of the body, limb, 4493; Membris, *pl.* 4328, 4495.
- Memory, *s.* remembrance, 1118.
- Men, *pl.* men, people, 49, 88, 90, 147, &c.
- Menbry (*for* Membris), *pl.* limbs, members, 3806, 4513, 4544; (Membrys), 2552; (Menbres), 771\*.
- Mendid, *pp.* mended, improved, made more fat, 464.
- Mene, *ger.* to mean, signify, 437, 3389; to signify, to say, 4944; Mene, *pr. s. 1 p.* mean, 2740; Me[ne], 315.
- Mene, *adj.* mean, poor; Al be þe metire bot mene = although the metre be but mean, 3464.
- Mene qwile (Meyne qwyle), mean while, 905; (Meynne tyme), 1163.
- Mene, *s.* mean, moderate state, the golden mean, 4591.
- Menere (Meyner), *adj. comp.* meaner, lesser, 1267.
- Menes (Meane), *pr. pl. refl.* be-moan themselves, lament, 2154; Menyde, *pt. pl. refl.* complained, bemoaned themselves, 3489. A.S. *mēnan*.
- Menest, *adj. superl.* meanest, 3332. (This sense is inappropriate; prob. an error for *metest* = fittest; or for *mainest* = chiefest.)
- Meneyhe (Meynþey), *s.* household, 3120; (Meynþe), multitude, 1586; Meneþe (Meynþe), followers, army, 2629; company, 1597. O.F. *maisnee*.
- (Meng), 1 *pr. s.* call to mind, 2505. See P. Plowman.
- Menske, *s.* honour, respect, 1237, 1746, 4492 (see the note), 5226; *miswritten* Menseke, 1746.
- Menske, *v.* honour, 5342; Menskid, *pp.* 4591.
- Menskefull, *adj.* honourable, 2953. (Menskefully), *adv.* honourably, 737\*.
- Meny, *s.* company, 5420; (Menþe), 2219; train, 823\*. See Meneyhe.
- Menys, *pr. s.* means, 253; (Menys), *pr. pl.* tell, relate, 1615; Menyde, *pt. s.* meant, 2292.
- Merche, *s.* marches, borders, 4324. See Marchis.
- Mercure, Mercury, 4535.
- Mercy, mercy, 816.
- Mere, *s.* mere, lake, 3853.
- Merely, *adv.* merrily, pleasantly, 4769.
- Meri, *adj.* merry, 1179; (Mery), 2235.
- Meriest, *adj. superl.* merriest, joy-fullest, 2438.
- Meris (Mers), *pl.* marches, frontiers, boundaries, 1209. See Meere.

- Merke, *s.* mark, 4631; note, 2113; boundary, 1108; (Merke), 684.
- Merke, *s.* mirkness, darkness, 374.
- Merke, *v.* reach, attain, 5404; Merkid, *pt. pl.* marked, i. e. cut down deeply, penetrated, 3674; Merkid, *pp.* marked, 318, 3923; (Markyd), 2636; (Merkyd), made, 1130.
- Merote, *s.* merit, desert, 5226.
- Merris, *pl.* boundaries, 211. *Put for* Meris, *which see.*
- Merryd, *pp.* marred, harmed, 325.
- Meruailed þam (Amervale þaime), *pt. pl.* were astonished, 1615; Merualid þam (Mervalett), 897; Mervalled (Mervaylled), *pp.* astonished, 3218.
- Meruail, *s.* a marvel, 549; (Mervell), 1245; Meruale, 1061; Mervale, 318; (Mervell), 1164; (Mervayle), 771\*; Mervale, 565, 1814; Mervall, 5292.
- Mervailous (Mervalous), *adj.* marvellous, 2864.
- Mery, *adj.* merry, 2740; pleasing, bright, 2864.
- Meryly, *adv.* merrily, 3862.
- Mesopotane (Mesopothany), Mesopotamia, 2528; Messopotane, 2596; Mesopotayme, 5664; Mesepotayme, 88.
- Messadone, Macedon, 455, 481, 2012; (Massidon), 913; Messadon, 143; Messedone, 215; (Massydon), 985; (Masidon), 1989, 2002, 2126; (Mas-ydon), 762, 1625, 1785, 2033; Messedoyne, 211, 905, 1972; Messidoyne, 228.
- Messadones (Mesidons), *pl.* Macedonians, 934, 1341; Messedones (Masydons), 1253, 1265, 1279, 1434; Massedons, 2040; Messedoyne (Massidons), 1179.
- Message, *s.* message, 1257, 3419.
- Messagere (Messynger), *s.* messenger, 1690; Messagere, *error for* Messagers, *plural (see the* Dublin MS.), messengers, 2403.
- Messangere (Messenger), *s.* messenger, 2911; (Messyngere), 2235; (Messynger), 1951; Messangirs (Messyngers), *pl.* messengers, 897, 905, 1814.
- Messelyne, *s.* meslin, a kind of brass, 4583. A.S. *mæstling*.
- Mestire (Mister), need, 1774. See *mister* in Cath. Anglicum.
- Mesure, *s.* measure, 25, 1374; Out of mesure, beyond measure, 3056.
- Mete, *ger.* to meet (i. e. to meet and pass each other), 1324; to meet, 774, 1512; Mete, *v.* meet, 325; Metis, *pr. s.* meets, 455, 770, 1061; (Metes), 926, 1210; Metis on, meets with, 4631; Metis (Metyn), 1 *pr. pl.* 1943; Metis, *pr. pl.* 796, 3538; Mett, *pt. s.* met, 1429; 1 *pt. pl.* 3510; *pt. pl.* found (for him), 5469; Mete, 2 *pr. s. subj.* 1981.
- Mete, *ger.* to measure, 1350; Metis, *pr. s.* measures (his way), goes, proceeds, 143, 455, 4803; Meten, *pp.* measured out, completed, 3853; fulfilled, come, 564, 5058; (Metyn), measured, 1108; gone, 1209.
- Mete, *s.* meat, 4435; much food, 464 (see the note); food, 748\*; Metis, *pl.* food, 4607.
- Meteles (Metelesse), *adj. as s.* want of provisions, 1164. Better read *metelest*, sb. = A.S. *metelēast*.
- Meth, *s.* moderation, 816, 1981; hence, Meth, pity, 147; mercy, 4324. A.S. *mæð*. See *Meche*.
- Metire, *s.* metre, 3464.
- Metis, *pr. s. refl.* dreams, 422. A.S. *mātan*.
- Mett, *s.* dimension, 25.
- (Metyn), *pr. pl.* meet, 770, 796.
- Metyn, *pp.* measured, fulfilled, fully come, 374. See *Mete, v.*
- Meve, *v.* move, 1989; Mevis (Mefis), *pr. s.* moves, comes, 1951; Mevis him (Mefez), moves, 2033; Meue, *pr. pl.* 2 *p.* move, 2382; Meued (Mefed), *pt. s.* 1 *p.* moved, 2331; Meuyd (Mevyd), *pt. s.* 3200; Meuand, *pres. pt.* moving, 2865, 3893.
- Mew (Mefe), *imper. s.* 2 *p.* move, remove, 1785. See above.
- Meyhe, *error for* Meynhe or Meyne, *s.* troop, host, army, 3604, 3619, 5495. See *Meneyhe*.

- (Meynyd), *pt. pl.* bemoaned, 1265.  
See Menes.
- Mezne (Meynhe), *s.* company, band, 1269; (Meynze), 2084. See Meneyhe.
- Mi (My), *pron.* my, 2159, 2289.
- Michare, *s.* truant, petty thief, 3541.
- Miche, *adj.* much, 5602; (Much), great, 2269.
- (Michefe), *s.* misery, 1774.
- Midil-erth, middle earth, the world, 5525.
- (Might), *s.* might, 816, 1981.
- Mikille, *adj.* great, 5530.
- Mild, *adj.* as *s.* mild one, 5097, 5218.
- Milke-quite, *adj.* white as milk, 1579, 3776, 4533, 5468.
- Mille, written as a contraction for thousand, 2685, 3071, 3738.
- Minerua, Minerva, 4530.
- Minister (Mynyster), *s.* servant, 2911; Ministris, *pl.* servants, 1557.
- Ministere, *v.* govern, 1738.
- Ministracion, *s.* service, 3554.
- Miracle, wonder, 5602.
- Mirke, *adj.* dark, 2042, 3851, 4077; (Merke), 3056; Mirk, 4803.
- Mirre, *s.* myrrh, 4809, 4975, 5468.
- Mirthe, *s.* pleasure, 1853, 4378; Mirthis, jests, 4367.
- Mirthe, *v.* make merry, 5342.
- Mischife (Mischefe), mischief, mishap, 1163.
- Miserie, *s.* servitude; *pi* miserie, servitude to thee, 3550; misery, 1774.
- Missyng, *s.* want, lack, 4595.
- Miste (Myssyd), *pt. pl.* missed, 1343.
- Mistris, *pr. s.*; Vs mistris, there is needful for us, 4281. See Mestire.
- Mitre (Myter), *s.* mitre, 1541.
- Mijt, *s.* power, control, 3306; might, 307; Mijtes, *pl.* powers, 115; Mijtis (Mightez), *pl.* powers, 1657; strength, 1226; feats of strength, 1403.
- Mijt (Might), *pt. s.* 2 *p.* mightest, 1972; Mijt, *pt. s.* might, 598, 1160; could, 124, 845, 937, 1200; could (go), 1370; Mijt (Mighten), *pt. pl.* might, 1509.
- Mijtfull, *adj.* mightful, mighty, 1491, 5492; (Mightfull), 2040, 2059; (Myghtfull), 3424; Mijti-full (Mightfull), *adj.* mighty, 1201; (Mightyfull), 1420.
- Mijti (Myghty), *adj.* mighty, 1089; Mijty, 985.
- Mijtist, *adj. superl.* mightiest, 3722; (Myghtiest), 1241.
- (Mo), more in number, 2084.
- Mocian, i. e. Ocean, 2540. See note.
- Mode, *s.* mood, 3546.
- Mode, *adj.*; see Mody.
- Modire, *s.* mother, 951; (Moder), 2002; (Modre), 827, 855, 2017; Modir (Moder), 2033; Modyre, 600; Modire, *gen.* mother's, 550.
- Modirson, mother's son, i. e. every man, 4326, 4409; Modire-son (Moderson), 1379, 1429, 2098, 2592; Modirsons, *pl.* mothers' sons, 2438.
- Mody, *adj.* brave, bold, 1195, 2078, 3327; Modi, 228, 1114; Mode, 215, 704, 5399; proud, 704.
- Moghe, *s.* heap of corn, 4434. E. *mow*.
- Mold, *s.* earth, ground, 550, 1130, 3120, 3141, 3267; To mold bring, bury, 3310.
- Molle, *s.* labour, moi, 628; labour, trouble, 4446.
- Mon, *pr. s.* 1 *p.* must, 691, 707; *pr. s.* must, 1502, 3352; will, 2258; Mon, 2 *pr. pl.* must, 4565. Icel. *munu*.
- Monand, *pr. pt.* bemoaning, sorrowful, 1114.
- Mone, *s.* moon, 281, 3862, 4077.
- Mone-tree, moon-tree, 5010.
- Monestis, *pr. s.* admonishes, charges, warns, bids, 2592; (Monyshit, *pt. s.*), 1379; Monest (Monyshest), *pt. s.* admonished, 3127; Moneste (Monyshytt), 1173; (Monyshyd), 2592.
- Moneth, month, 4533; Monethis, *pl.* months, 5025, 5616; Moneths, *pl.* months (*error for* Moneth, *s.* month), 3699.
- Montayne (Mountane), mountain, 1089, 2669; Montayns, *pl.* 3862, 5097.
- Monte, mountain, 5058; Montts, *pl.* 5117 (see l. 5097). See Mounte.

- Mony, *adj.* many, 2126, 3776 ; (Many), 1005.  
 More, *adv.* more, 322, 786\*.  
 Morewane, *s.* morning, 4769. See Morne.  
 Morne, *s.* morning, morrow, 350, 430, 564, 1114, 1353, &c.  
 Morne-qwile (Morne-while), *s.* morning-season, *but prob. an error for* Mene qwile, mean season, 2771.  
 Morsels (Morsellys), *pl.* morsels, pieces, 1268.  
 Morsure, *s.* biting, 4088.  
 Morth (Morte), death, murder, 1279.  
 Mosardry, *s.* indolence, idle dreaming, 4486. "*Musardie*, a muse, dump, study, dreaming; a pawse, delay, lingering;" Cotgrave.  
 Mose, *v.* muse, 333. See above, and see Muses.  
 Most, *adv.* most, 808\*.  
 Mot (Most), must, 1773 ; Mote, *pr.* *pl.* 2 *p.* may, 1834.  
 Mote, *s.* building, castle, 3832, 4353 ; palace, 3218, 3324, 5602. "*Motte*, a clod, little hill, a fit seat for a fort or strong house ; (hence) also, such a fort or house (of earth) ;" Cotgrave. *E. moat.*  
 Mote, *ger.* to discuss, dispute, 5120. *E. moot.*  
 Move (Mefe), *v.* move, 1989 ; Moue (Mefe), 1967 ; Moues, *pr. s.* moves, 5420 ; Mouys (Mefes), 1201 ; Movis, *pr. pl.* (Meffyd, *pt. pl.*), move, 2403 (read *messagers*, *pl.*) ; (Moved), *pt. s.* 2032 ; Moued (Amoved), *pp.* moved to anger, 1217 ; Moves, *imp. pl.* 2 *p.* move, go, 5048.  
 Mounte, *s.* mountain, 4898 ; Mountis, *pl.* 5063. See Monte.  
 Mountane, *s.* mountain, 4787 ; Mountey[n]s (Montannez), 1967.  
 Mournes (Murnez), *pr. s.* mourns, 1136, 2032 ; *pr. pt.* 1265, 1341.  
 Mournyng (Murnyng), *s.* mourning, 1853.  
 Mouth, *s.* mouth, 321, 495 ; Mouth, 245, 904 ; Mouthis, *pl.* 4429. (Mouthed), *pt. s.* ate, 748\*.  
 Mozt (Mott), *pr. s. subj.* may, 1605, 1607, 1609 ; Mozt (Myght), *pt. s.* might, could, 3412.  
 (Much), *adj.* great, 927, 955, 1249.  
 Muld, *perhaps for* Malt ; *pi* muld = *pi* malt, thy toll, 4535. Cf. M. E. *multure*, fee or toll for grinding corn. But the Lat. text has *mella*, which the translator perhaps misread or misunderstood. Cotgrave has the F. spelling *mouldure*, which he explains by 'multure, grist.' The proper sense of *muld* is mould or earth ; see below.  
 Mulde, *s.* mould, earth, 25.  
 Mulis (Mulez), *pl.* mules, 2853.  
 Multitude, *s.* 69, 104, 927.  
 Munster, 1173. The simplest correction is to read *minister*, i.e. servant. The sense is—He (Alexander) admonished him (Jaudas) as being his (Alexander's) servant. The Ashmole MS. has—He (Alexander) admonished him (Jaudas) as being his (Jaudas') master ; which comes to precisely the same thing.  
 (Murnand), *pres. pt.* mourning, 1114.  
 Muscles, *pl.* mussels, 5469.  
 Muses, *pr. s.* 2 *p.* thinkest, 3551 ; Muse, 2 *pr. pl.* meditate, 268 ; Mused (Musyd), 1 *pt. s.* mused, 1629.  
 Muses (Musys), *pl.* muses, 2113.  
 Musike, music, 2238 ; (Musik), 2113.  
 (Must), *pr. s.* must, 707, 1502, 1927.  
 Mustours, *pl.* dials, clocks, 130. From O.F. *moustrer*, to shew ; lit. 'shewers, pointers' ; cf. F. *montre*, orig. the hand of a watch or clock ; Ital. *mostra*, "a watch or a dyall of the sunne;" Florio.  
 My, my, 250, 270 ; (Myne), 1724.  
 Mydday, *s.* mid-day, 564, 4769.  
 Myddest, *adj. superl. us s.* midst, 5396.  
 Myddis, *s.* midst, 3501.  
 Myddis þe way (In myd way), mid-way, in the midst of his journey, 1061.  
 Myd-fild (Myd-feld), mid-field, 955.  
 Mydill (Medyll), *adj.* middle, 1108.  
 Mydnyȝt, *s.* midnight, 4077.  
 Myd-ouir-vndorne, the middle of the period succeeding 'undern,' 3853.

- Mydsomere, Midsummer; Mydsomere euen, Midsummer eve, 3698.
- Myld, *adj.* mild, gracious, 234; *as s.* mild one, 235. See Mild.
- Myle, *s.* mile, 1209; I may a myle knawe, I can tell a mile off, 3286; Mylis, *pl.* 2403.
- Mylk-quyte (Milke-whitte), *adj.* milk-white, 1498. See Milke-quite.
- Mylnestane, *s.* millstone, 5525.
- Myn, *ger.* to mention, relate, 565; (Mene), 2782; (Meyn), to take heed of, notice, relate, record, 1690; Myn, *v.* remember, record, 583; 1 *pr. s.* call to mind, speak of, 2506; Mynnys, *pr. s.* 2 *p.* mentionest; Mynes, *pr. s.* reminds, 4613; (Menys), remembers, 2956; Myns, *pr. s.* intends (to go), 4787; Mynes (Menys), *pr. s. refl.* I remember, 1625; Me mynes, I remember, 2771 (where the Dub'in MS. has *me of menys*, i. e. people relate of him); Mynes (Menys), *pr. pl.* tell, record, 1249; Mynned, *pp.* remembered, 1094; Mynes, *imp. pl.* remember ye, 3474.
- Mynde, *s.* mind, 738; remembrance, 1094, 1118; mention, 583; Mynd, attention, 269; memory, 437, 1884; remembrance, 205; recalling (of facts), 1245; In gret mynd, in a great mind, 1254; Out of mynde, beyond memory, hence countless, 3018; (For to mynd), as I can remember, 3018.
- Myndles, *adj.* mindless, stupefied, 5399.
- Myne, *poss. pron.* mine, my, 364, 498, 582, 668, &c.; Myn, 1883, 1912; Myne, i. e. my (rules), 2519.
- Mynes (Mynyn), *pr. pl.* mine, penetrate, dig, 3141.
- Mynesch, *v.* minish, be diminished, 2629.
- Mynistris (Ministers), *pl.* ministers, servants, 1267.
- Mynstre (Mynster), minster, temple, 2174, 4353; Mynstire, 1564.
- Myntis, *pr. s.* points, 1089; (Myntyd), *pt. s.* pointed, 1089. A.S. *myntan*.
- Myrrour, *s.* mirror, 3286.
- Myrys (Mires), *pl.* marshes, bogs, lit. mires, 2986.
- Mys, *pl.* mice, 3932; Myse, 1762.
- Myschefe, *s.* mischance, misfortune, 399, 3646; Myscheffe (Mischeff), trouble, 2782.
- Myselfe, myself, 183, 258, 537; (My-selue), 1976; (My-seluen), 991.
- (Myssys), 2 *pr. s.* missest, art in the wrong, 2649; Myssid, *pt. pl.* missed, 149.
- Myster (Mister), need, necessity, 1462. See Mestire.
- Mysters, *pr. s.* is needful, 5117. See Mistris.
- Myte, *s.* mite, 4426.
- Myter, mitre, 1589.
- Myzt, *pt. s.* might, 68, 415, &c.; (Might), 1 *pt. s.* 1629.
- Myztes, *pl.* powers, 615.
- Myzty, *adj.* mighty, 315.
- Na, *adj.* no, 51, 52, 160, 180, 182, &c.; Na mare, no more, 829; Na ma, 890; Na langer, no longer, 830; Na nothire, for Nan othire, nothing else, 364, 1683; Na way, no way, 341.
- Nabizanda, Nabuzardon, 5614.
- Nabb, *s.* projecting point of a hill, scar, 5494. Cf. *Nab Scar*, near Grasmere.
- Nacion, nation, 993; Nacions, *pl.* 449.
- Nad, *pt. s.* had (he) not, 1462.
- Naite, *ger.* to use, enjoy, 4341. Icel. *neyfa*, to use, enjoy. See Naytes.
- Nakens, *imp. pl.* 2 *p.* make bare, 4959. See *nakin* in Stratmann.
- Nakid, *adj.* naked, 4043; Naked, 4026; Nakid, stripped (bare), 4756; *adj. as sb.* naked part of the body, 4182.
- Nakin, no kind; Nakin metall, no sort of metal, 4583. See the note.
- Name, name, 79, 619, 993; To name, as a name, 2734; Names (Namez), *pl.* 1591.
- Namely, *adv.* in particular, espec-

- ally, 582, 4791; precisely, 293; (Nonely), especially, 2011.
- Namely, *adv.* (*error* for Manely = mainly or manly), 1033.
- Nane, *adj.* none, no one, 45, 52, 74; (not) any, 3935; no, 989; (None), not at all, 1148.
- Nanes; For þe nanes, for the nonce, occasion, 3592, 4729, 5276, 5522; (For þe nonest), 3021; For þe nanys (nonest), 1985.
- Nany; A nany, for An any, *erroneously written* for Any, any, 4919. (The right reading clearly is—Or any [curious] clerke, &c.)
- Naples, 5672.
- Nappill; A nappill, an apple, 4777.
- Narawe (Arow), arrow; A narawe = an arawe, 1066.
- Narrowly, *adv.* with difficulty, 1370.
- Nase, *s.* nose, 4519; Nasee, 4634.
- Na-þing (Noping), nothing, 735.
- Nafy, *name* (cf. *Rothe* in the Lat. text), 5494. See note to l. 5497.
- Natour, nature, 4027; (Nature), *s.* natural power, 3379.
- Naue, navy, fleet, 67, 76; (Navy), ships of war, 1160; ship, 3376.
- Naue, *pr. pl.* have not, 1876.
- Nauernes, *pl.* men of Navarre, 5672. (Nawne); þi nawne = þin awne, thine own, 1356.
- Nay, *adv.* nay, 298, 470, 1016, 5405; (Nay), *as s.* a refusal, 1460.
- Naylid (Nalyd), *pp.* nailed, 3376.
- Naytely (Nataly), *adv.* quickly, 2896; (Naytly), 828\*. The lit. sense is 'usefully'; Icel. *neytr*, good, fit for use.
- Naytes (Nates), *pr. s.* employs, 2518; employs himself, sets about, begins, 2968; Nayte, 2 *pr. pl.* use, 4605; Naytis (Naytes), *imp. pl.* use, employ, 2468. Icel. *neyta*. See Naite.
- Ne, *adv.* not, 710; nor, 46, 52, 74, &c.
- Ne, *adv.* nearly, 539. Well ne, very nearly.
- Nebb, face, 807, 3940, 4519.
- Necessari, necessary, 125.
- Necke (Neke), *s.* neck, 3251.
- Neddire, *s.* adder, snake, 4757, 5526; Neddirs, *pl.* 3865, 4090, 4200, 5422, 5565.
- Nede, *adv.* needs, of necessity, 3274; (Nedes), 2309.
- Nede, *s.* need, peril, 2518; Nedis, *pl.* necessities, 3419.
- Nedill, *s.* needle, 4026.
- Nedis, *pr. pl.* are needful, 125; Nedid, *pt. pl.* were necessary, 3823.
- Nedis (Nedes), *pr. pl.* compel, urge, 1819.
- Neg, *in phr.* A neg = an eg, i. e. an egg, to the value of an egg, 676.
- (Negh), *adv.* nigh, nearly, 1370, 2153.
- Neghis, *pr. s.* approaches, 4791; Neghes, 3901.
- Nekard (Neker), mean person, nig-gard, 1743.
- Neke, *s.* neck, 3236; Nek (Neke), 2777; (Nek), 807; Nekis (Nek-kys), *pl.* necks, 2339; (Nekez), 1812.
- (Nekyd), *pp.* denied, 1460. Cf. Icel. *neita*, to deny. See Nyk.
- (Nemmys), *imp. pl.* name, 2468.
- Nemellus, *pl.* enamels (?), 3671.
- Nemyll (Nemyll), *adj.* nimble, quick, 1065. From Icel. *nema*, to take, A.S. *niman*.
- Nend; Ilka nend for Ilkan end, each end, 5649; A nende, an end, 4860.
- Nerand; A nerand = an erand, an errand, a message, 1460.
- (Nere), *adj.* near, 1161.
- Nere, *adv.* near, closely, 1370; nearly, 400, 489, 1908, 2153, 3995.
- Nere, for Ne were, were not, 2404. It means that the messengers had only gone a few miles before they alighted.
- (Nerehand), *adv.* nigh, nearly, 3055.
- Nerre, *adv.* more nearly, 590.
- Nest, *s.* nest, 506.
- Nestild, *pt. s.* nestled, 506.
- Nete, *pl.* neat cattle, 1227.
- Nethire, lower; To the nethireward, downward, 5048.
- Nethirgloue, *s.* nether-glove, i. e. shoe, boot, 4959; Nepire-gloues (Lat. *calciamenta*), 2767.
- Nettild (Netlett), *pp.* nettled, 737.
- Neuen, *ger.* to tell, 4881; (Nevyn), to name, 2365; Neuyn, *ger.* to



- name, tell, 318, 449; Neryn, to reckon, 1466; Neuyñ (Newyn), to name, number, 2021; Neuen, *v.* tell, relate, name, 1105, 1456, 1719; Neuyñ, 293, 5044, 5655; (Neuen), 1673; Neuyñ, 1 *pr. s.* name, 4601; mention, 260; tell, say, 5306; Neuens, *pr. s.* names, 1119; (Neuen, *for* Neuens), tells, 1485; (Neues), names, calls, 2119; Neuynes, *pr. s.* 2 *p.* namest, 4940; Neuyns (Neuens), 2187; Neuendyd, *pt. s.* 1 *p.* named, mentioned, 76; (Neuynd), *pt. s.* 2293; Neuened, 1 *pt. s. subj.* should name, 5031; Neuend, *pp.* named, told, 5413; (that can be) mentioned, 5257; Neuyned, named, 619; Neuen, *imp. s.* name, tell, 833\*. Icel. *nefna*.
- Neuen, *s.* even; A neuén (An euen), an even, an evening, 1082.
- Neuer, *adv.* never, 45, 62, 563; Neuir, 1874; Neuire, 254, 950.
- Neuer-þe-lattir, nevertheless, none the less, 5332; Neuer-þe-latter, 299, 844\*; Neuire-þe-lattir (Neuer-þe-leter), nevertheless, 2413.
- Neuer-the-les (Neuer-þe-lesse), *adv.* nevertheless, 1105.
- Neuer þe mare, none the more, 325; Neuer þe more, 322.
- New, *adj.* new, 1240, 1460; On newe time, newly, 2011.
- Newid, *pt. s.* created, lit. made new, 4491.
- Newly, *adv.* newly, soon, 4740.
- Next, *adj. superl.* nearest, next, 619, 1456; On next, in the next place, at once, 2795.
- Neyd, *for* Neyd, *pt. s. subj.* would vex, would tire, 4881; (Neyt), *for* Noyt, would tire, 771. See Noy.
- Neighbour (Neghburs), *gen. s.* neighbour's, 3245.
- Neje, *v.* approach, 324; (Negh), 1160; Nejis, *pr. s.* approaches, draws nigh, 1240, 2221, 2615; Nejes, 2111, 3863, 4067; touches, 4182 (see the note); Nezehis, 396; Neje, 1 *pr. pl.* approach, 4341; Nejes, 2 *pr. pl.* 4605; *pr. pl.* 5243; (Neghez), *pr. pl.* 2615; Neje (Negh), *pr. s. subj.* approach, draw nigh, 3376; (Neghed), *pt. s.* 2221; (Neghyd), *pt. s.* 1240; Nejed, *pp.* approached, drawn nigh, 2983.
- Neje, *adv.* nigh, severely, 3825; almost, 1274; (Nej), nigh, 728\*.
- Nejen, *num.* nine, 4810.
- Nicollas (Nicholas), *name*, 737, 753, 771, 793, 807.
- Ninus, Ninus, 3144.
- Nite, *pp.* denied, refused, 1460. *F. nier*, to deny.
- Nizt (Nyght), *s.* night, 1084, 1345, 1485; On niztes (Of nyghtys), by night, 2896.
- No, *adj.* no, 435, 809\*; No more, 725\*.
- No, *for* Ne, nor, 3570.
- Nobilnes, nobleness, majesty, 2777.
- Noblay, *s.* nobleness, 2716; noble array, 4881.
- Noble, *adj.* good, 3132; noble, 39, 985; noble (people), 1266; Nobles, *pl.* nobles, 481.
- Noble, *s.* the coin so called, 3673; Nobill, 4898.
- Nobly, *adv.* excellently, 260.
- Noke, *s.* nook, corner, 506, 3144, 4831.
- Nold, *pt. s. subj.* might not, should not, 4167. See the note to l. 4168.
- Noll (Nole), noddle, head, 807. A.S. *hnol*.
- Nombre, *s.* number, 60; (Nowynbre), 1554.
- Nombrid, *pp.* numbered, 1992.
- (Nomyn), *pp.* taken, 1094. A.S. *niman*, to take, *pp. numen*.
- None, *s.* noon, 3025, 4740; Nonytyme, noon-tide, 563.
- (None), *adj.* no, 735\*; Non, not one, 4582.
- (Nonn), *s.* nun, 2179.
- Noose, *s.* nose, 4380.
- Nor, nor, 46, 316.
- Norisch, *v.* be nourished (*after* latt), 582.
- Norway, 5672.
- Nostanday, *proper name*, 2777; Nostanda (Nostandy), 2773, 2795.
- Note, *s.* employment, business, 3025; work, 324, 4605; fabric (said of a cobweb), 3302; fabric (of the world), 4491; occurrence, circum-

- stance, 1456, 1485, 5044; For that note = on that account, 1160; host, troop, 1240, 1471; fleet, 76; Notis, *pl.* deeds, doings, employments, 1876, 3712; (Notes), 1819; acts, 260; instruments, 125; occurrences, 2365, 3091. A.S. *notu*. Note, *s.* tenour (of a letter), 1719. In this sense probably from F. *note*.
- Note, *adj.* excellent (used with *men*), 1227, 4870. See *Nait* in the Troy-book; and cf. Note, *s.* employment, above.
- Notesman, *put for* Note man, i.e. excellent one; hence, as a form of address, sir, 833\*. See above.
- Notis (Notez), *pr. s.* indites, 2795; Notid, *pt. s.* indited, 4569; Note, *imp. pl.* note, observe, 5655. F. *noter*, to note.
- Nopire, *adj.* another (after a), 184; Na nopire = nan opire, none other, 180, 364, 3275; Na nopir, 1988.
- Nothire, *conj.* neither, 402; (Nowder), 1444; Nother, 146, 1372.
- Nouches (Ouchez), *pl.* ornaments, 3134. E. *ouch* (see my Etym. Dict.).
- Nounbre, *s.* number, 89, 215, 449, 3641; (Nowmbre), 763, 771, 955.
- Noupire, *conj.* neither, 180, 575, 800; Noupir, 675; Nouper, 600.
- Nouthire-quare (Nopewhere), nowhere else, 993.
- Nowe, now, 101, 188, 193; Now, 80, 212.
- (Nowmbre), number, 1094. See Nounbre.
- Nowte, *s.* neat, ox, 4744; *pl.* cattle, 3823. Icel. *naut*.
- Nowpire, *conj.* neither, 364. See Noupire.
- Nox; A nox = an ox, 4744.
- Noy (Noye), *s.* harm, misfortune, 3245; trouble, 67.
- Noy, *v.* annoy, vex, 676; To noy (ney) þus [read vs] to neyn, such as would vex us to number, i.e. innumerable, 2021; Noyis, *pr. s.* injures, hurts, 4182; Noyes, wearies, 771; Noyed, *pt. s.* hurt, 1227; Noyd (Noyed) annoyed, 2983; Noyed, *pt. pl.* harmed, 3935. See Neyd.
- Noys, *pr. s.* makes a noise, 4744.
- Noyse, *s.* noise, 4732.
- Nozt, *adv.* not, 100, 102, 103, 107; (Noght), 721; Nozt bot, only, 270, 686, 1460, 1670, 3755.
- Nozt (Noght), *s.* a naught, a thing of no value, 1742.
- Noztid (Noztid), *pp.* set at naught, 753.
- Nurtrid (Norturrid), *pp.* well-nurtured, well grown, plump, 3177.
- Nychometis, *pl.* (used to translate Lat. *onichimata*), stones of the onyx kind, 3671.
- (Nyckying), *s.* nicking, slight mention, 2968. Cf. E. *nick*.
- Nyf (Yf), *for* Ne yf, if not, 1976.
- Nyfls, *pl.* trifles, 3807. See Stratmann.
- Nyk, *pr. pl. 2 p. subj.* say nay, 2339. See Sir Gawayn and the Grene Knight, l. 607.
- Nykid, *s.* small bit, a very little, a trifle, 3935. "Nicket, a small short faggot, *West*"; Halliwell.
- Nyll he so will he, will-he, nill-he, whether he wish to do so or not, 301.
- Nymne, *v.* take, acquire, 5352; Nymmes, *pr. s.* takes, 5077; (Nynmez), 3236; Nymes him (Nymmez hym), *pr. s.* takes, seizes, 793; Nymes, *pr. pl.* 4870; Nymes of, *imp. pl.* take off, doff, 4959. A.S. *minan*.
- Nynche, inch; A nynche = an ynche, 3675.
- Nyngkiling, *s.* inkling, slight mention; A nyngkiling = An yngkiling, 2968.
- Nyppid, *pt. pl.* nipped; Nyppid fra, nipped from, 3940.
- Nyzt, night, 344, 419, 563.
- Nyztar-tale, *s.* night-time, 324. Icel. *náttar-tal*.
- O, one, a, 3306; (O), 1147.
- O, *prep.* on, in; O lyue, in life, alive, 4055. O bourde, in jest, 462.
- O, *for* Of, of, 3267, 3385, 3636; cf. l. 276; (some) of, 4781



- O newe time (Anew), of late times, recently, 2716; O new time, 1460. Here *o* = of; cf. *of newe*, anew, in Chaucer.
- Obedience, *s.* obedience, 1965; (Service obidiens), obedience of service, 1937.
- Obevi, *v.* obey, 3983; Obey, *imp. s.* 2837; Obien (*for* Obeien), *pr. pl.* 5671.
- Obesche (Obey), *v.* obey, 2416; Obeschen, *pr. pl.* 1937; Obeschen (Obeysshyng), *pr. pl.* 2694; Obeschid (Obeyd), *pt. s.* made obeisance to, 1620.
- Obeyaunce, obedience, 5106.
- Obeysiant, obedient, p. 279, l. 10.
- O-bofe, *prep.* above, 4912.
- Obrede (Of brede), in breadth, of breadth, 2898.
- Occident, *s.* west, 1045.
- Occyan, *s.* ocean, 5503; Occiane, 2328.
- Occpy, *ger.* to use, perform, 1478; (Occupy in), to be employed about, 1478.
- Odd, *adj.* distinguished, illustrious, 2121; special, privy, 4750; (Odde), 2631; Od, *adj.* odd, notable, excellent, 94; Odde, notable, 27.
- Oddest, *adj. superl.* most famous, 2008, 3579; Oddist, 189; Oddiste, 1751.
- Odly, *adv.* curiously, excellently, 275.
- Odnen, *pl.* chieftains, lit. odd (excellent) men, 3783.
- Of, *prep.* of, 4, 6, &c.; by, 73, 619, 1106, 3122, 3205, 3621, 3635; from, 210, 1045, 4227, 4844; out of, 1410, 3920; Of lyfe, out of life, 716; Of þe werld, out of the world, 2164; with, 56, 1390; for, 1041, 2576; because of, 1040; at, 302, 456; as regards, 307; at the hands of, by, 739\*.
- Of, off, 3151, 5035, 774\*.
- Of (*for* þof), in *Dubl. MS.*, 862.
- O-ferrom, *adv.* on far, at a distance, 397.
- Off, *adv.* of, from, 599.
- Offire (Offre), *ger.* to offer, 2177; to sacrifice, 1478; Offirs, *pr. s.* offers sacrifice to, 3658; (Offers), sacrifices, 1073; Offirre, 2 *pr. pl.* offer, 4468; Offird, *pt. s.* sacrificed, 1651.
- Offyrings, *pl.* offerings, 164.
- (Of-lofte), aloft, 791\*.
- (Of-ragthe), lit. attained, pp. of *ofrechen* (but a corrupt reading), 1040.
- Oft, *adv.* often, 106, 145, 667; Ofte, 1852.
- Oire (*wrongly in MS. for* Oure), our, 2162.
- Ol-aethre, *Lat.* Aleghthor, 5493.
- (Old), old, 741.
- Oleues, *pl.* olive-trees, 4972.
- Olifant, *s.* elephant, 3922; Olifantis, *pl.* 3630; Olifants, 3680, 5136, 5293; Olifauntis, 3621. See Olyfautes.
- Olimpadas (Olimphades), 1840, 2008. See Olympadas.
- Olle, *v.*; Olle on, to triumph over, scorn, contemn, 1861. From *A.S. oll*, scorn, contumely, only used in the phr. *mid olle*, which occurs twice; see Wulfstan's Sermons, ed. Napier, p. 164, l. 19, and Ælfrie's Homilies, ii. 166, l. 15.
- Oloft, *adv.* aloft, 4889; O-loft (On-lofte), 858.
- Olyfautes, *pl.* elephants, 3593; Olyfants, 3601. See Olifant.
- Olympadas, Olympias, 223, 310, 572; (Olympades), 824; (Olimphades), 879. See Olimpadas.
- O-lyue, alive, 3899, 4310; (On lyue), in life, alive, 1331, 2253; Olyfe, 814. For *on lyue*; see below.
- O-lyue, out of life, 1304; (Of lyfe), 1228. For *of lyue*; see above.
- O-mys, *adv.* amiss, 4326.
- On, *prep.* upon, on, 3, 83, 133; upon, 678; in, 13, 230, 341, 666, 1114, 3790; into, in, 4177, 4179; if, 442; at, 214, 3218; upon, over, 3153; Him on, against him, 3783; On first, in the first place, 438; On hand, in hand, 713; On lawe, a-low, low down, 728; On loft, on high, 221; On loude (On lowde), *adv.* aloud, 834; On lyve, alive, 966.
- On, *adj.* one (man), 2346; a, 851; (On), an, 964.

- Oane, *adv.* anon, forthwith, straightway, 79, 95, 191, 290, 352, &c.; (Anone), 2216.  
 One; By hym one, by himself, 755\*.  
 Onest (Honest), *adj.* seemly, splendid, 1496. *For* Honest.  
 On-loft, *adv.* aloft, up, 3193, 3261; (On-lofte), 1440, 731\*.  
 On-lyue, alive, 1875; On lyfe, 540..  
 Onone, *adv.* anon, at once, 3110, 3460, 3930; (Anone), 1278; (Onon), 1045.  
 On-slepe, asleep, 1486.  
 On-tald, *pp.* untold, 3515.  
 Ony, *adj.* any, 3895; (Ony), 951, 1102, 1993.  
 Onycles, *pl.* onyxes, 5269.  
 Open (Opyn), *adj.* 2142. See Opyn.  
 Opence, *pr. s.* (*for* Opens), opens, shews, clearly, reveals, 2422; Opens (Opyn), *pr. pl.* open, 1466; Open (Opyn), 2 *pr. s. subj.* open, 1496.  
 Openly (Opynly), *adv.* openly, 824, 868, 1381, 1793; Openly, 145, 1111.  
 Opon, *prep.* upon, 158; in (see Kellwyse), 3300; Opon lyfe, in life, alive, 42.  
 Opressing, *s.* oppressing, 5336.  
 Opyn, *adj.* open, 2446. See Open. (Opynly); see Openly.  
 Or, ere, before, 3, 171, 308, 381, 1670, 2915, 3215, 3471, 3728, 4053; Or þat, ere that, 3558; Or þen þat, ere the time when, 3187.  
 Or, *conj.* or, 3, 67, 107, &c.  
 Oratori (Oratory), oratory, 1651.  
 Ordane (Ordayne), *v.* order, prepare, allot, 3176; Ordans (Ordains), *pr. s.* orders, prepares, endites, 3160; orders, 3408; *refl.* prepares himself, 3184; Ordand, *pt. s.* ordained, arrayed, prepared, 52; Ordand, *pp.* ordained, commanded, 3787; formed, made, 3680.  
 Ordere, order, 27.  
 Ore (Or), *conj.* or, 2260.  
 Orfrays, *pl.* embroideries, 5269. "Or-frais, broad welts, or gards of gold, or silver embroidery;" Cotgrave.  
 Oriathire (Oryather), Oriathar, 2512.  
 Orient, *adj.* eastern, 5269.  
 Orient, *s.* the east, 94, 1111, 3079.  
 Origyne, *s.* race, 91.  
 Orisons, *pl.* prayers, 1478, 4477.  
 Oritorie (Oratory), oratory, 2177.  
 Osses (Ossus), *pr. s.* prophesies, 2263; Ossed, *pp.* 2307. See Oss in Halliwell.  
 Ossing, *s.* attempt, 868; Ossyngis, *pl.* 732. See Oss in Halliwell.  
 Ost, *s.* host, army, 52, 81; (Hoste), 1381; (Oste), 765; Oste, 499; (Ost), 772; (Hoste), 1617; Ostis, *pl.* hosts, 3787; (Hostes), 2848; (Ostez), 1115, 1987, 2031, 2173.  
 Oper, *adv.* either, 3.  
 Opire, *adj.* second, 2611; the other, 173; Opir, second, 280; Oper, other, 1014, 727\*; Opire, *pl.* others, 29, 94, 125, 275, 471; other signs, 240; Othyre (Oper), others, 3377; (Othre), 2098.  
 Othire-quile, *adv.* at times, 4231; (Oper-while), sometimes, 726.  
 Oper-wyse, *adv.* otherwise, 2013. (Ouchez); see Nouches.  
 Ouer, *prep.* over, 27, 64; (Oure), 1027; (Owre), 1039.  
 Ouer, *adv.* over, 1028; All ouer, wholly, 766\*.  
 Ouer-comyn, *pp.* overcome, 10, 174.  
 Ouer-comers (Ouercommer), *for* Ouer-comer, *s.* conqueror, 1903.  
 Ouerhand, *for* Ouer hand, upper hand, 810.  
 Ouer-heldis, *pr. s.* overturns, is overturned, 726.  
 Ouer-laike (Ouerlayke), *s.* conquest, lit. over-play, success in battle, 1861. See Ouirlaike.  
 Ouer-qwelmys, *pr. s.* overwhelms, rolls over (said of the sea), 560.  
 (Ouer-rade), *pt. s.* rode over, 1216.  
 Ouer-sheet, 2 *pr. s. subj.* overshoot (thy shot), 1767\*. Read Ouer-sheet in one word.  
 Ouer-sigt (Ouersight), circumspection, 1020.  
 Ouerjede, *pt. s.* overpassed, passed away, 350.  
 Ouir, *error for* Our, *pron. poss.* our, 4622. See the note.  
 Ouire, *prep.* over, 18, 233; (Ouer),

- 1182; beyond, 5038; above, 4263 (see the note); against, 4154.
- Ouire-comen (Ouercomyn), *pp.* overcome, 1903; Ouircomyn (Ouercomyn), conquered, 1610.
- Ouircomere (Ouercominer), overcomer, conqueror, 1610.
- Ouire-drafe (Ouer-drafe), *pt. s.* passed away, passed over, 1505.
- Ouire-folden, *pp.* folded or covered over, 5463.
- Ouire-gos (Ouergose), *pr. s.* surpasses, 2534.
- Ouirlake (Ouerlake), *s.* conquest, success, supremacy, 3101. See Ouer-lake.
- Ouir-lende, *v.* pass beyond, 5069.
- Ouirmast, *adj. superl.* uppermost, 3347.
- Ouire-sett (Ouersett), *pp.* overcome, conquered, 2698.
- Ouire-stride, *pt. s. subj.* (if there) strode or crossed over, 5477.
- Oure, *pron.* our, 5, 177, 404, 476, 1006.
- Oures, *pl.* hours of prayer, 1478.
- Oure-selfe, ourselves, 3528, 3745; (Our-selfe), ourself, i. e. I myself, 1727.
- Out-bred, *pp.* outspread, unfurled, spread abroad, 2615.
- Out-by, *adv.* near beyond, just beyond, 2762.
- Oute, *prep.* out, 86; (Owt), 1091; Out of, 218; Out of, 93, 94, 117, 135.
- Oute, *adv.* out, far away, 23; out, 75; Out, 145, 339; Oute, in existence, well-known (just as in modern slang), 598, 4574, 5410.
- Outhire, *conj.* either, 464, 1777; (Other), 851, 1236; (Owther), 1033; Oupir, or, 4981.
- Outhire (Other), *pron.* another, 1111.
- Outragez, *for* Outrageouz, *adj.* excessive, p. 293, l. 126.
- Outwith, *prep.* without, outside, 5538.
- Ouyre, *prep.* over, 192.
- Owder; see Authere.
- (Owre), *pron.* ours, our own, 1423; (Owr), our, 1006.
- Owt, *prep.* out, 752\*; Owt of, out of, 773\*.
- Owte, out, i. e. existent, 2574. (As in mod. E.) See Out.
- Owpir, *conj.* either, 4579.
- Ozt, *s.* aught, 290; Ozt bot, anything except, 5352.
- Ozt, *adv.* in anywise, by any means, at all, 299; (Oght), 684, 689, 757, 1090.
- Paa, *s.* peacock, 4983. M.E. *po.*
- Pacience, patience, 2841.
- Paintid, *pp.* painted, decked, 3028.
- Paire, *ger.* injure, impair, 74; (Pare), 1187.
- Paise, *ger.* to poise, ponder, consider, weigh, 4618.
- Paise, *s.* weight, 5470. Anglo-F. *peis.*
- Paiters, Poitiers, 5658.
- Pake, *s.* pack, crowd, host, band, 648, 954, 1554, 2025, 2083, 2435, 2854, 3009; pack, number, set (of us), 4318; (Pakke), 3009.
- Pakoke, *s.* peacock, 4529. See Paa.
- Palais, *s.* palace, 220, 355, 952, 3135, 4891; (Palace), 938; (Palass), 901; (Palasse), 997; Palas, 151, 365.
- Palestyne, Palestine, 5677.
- Pall, *s.* fine cloth, rich robe, 4178; (Palle), 3393.
- Pallen webis (Pallen webbes), *pl.* fabrics of pall or fine cloth, 1517.
- Palme, *s.* palm (tree), 114, 4541; palm (of victory), 826, 3751.
- Palmetres, *pl.* palm trees, 3146.
- Pamphalie, Pamphylia, 5657.
- Pan, *s.* skull, brain-pan, 3994.
- Pancere, *s.* coat of mail, 4960. Lit. a covering for the paunch.
- Panthers, *pl.* panthers, 5138.
- Panthi, Parthia, 5656; Panty, 5312.
- Panthy, *for* Parthy, Parthians, 87; Panthis (Peranthis), Parthians, 2529.
- Pape-ioyes, *pl.* parrots, 5129.
- Pappis, *pl.* paps, 4117.
- Paradyse, *s.* paradise, 4905; Parades, 5259; Paradyce (Paradyse), 3217; Parades (Paradyse), 2595; Paradise, *gen.* of paradise, 5270.
- Paraile, *s.* apparel, 4676.
- Parailed (Paraeld), *pp.* well apparelled, 1552.

- Paramour, *s.* wife, 5222; Paramours, *pl.* lovers (female), wives, 4337; lovers (male), 3769.
- Parcele, *s.* part, section, portion, 4496; Parcels, shares, 4318.
- Parchement, *s.* parchment, 5305; (Perchemyn), 1704.
- Parde, for *par Dieu*, 2707.
- Pared, *pp.* prepared, made ready, 4208. *F. parer.*
- Pargestis, *probably for* Pargeste, *pp.* pargetted; Pargeste of plate, covered over with gold plate (Lat. *de laminis aureis cooperti*), 3673.
- Pariet, *s.* wall, side-wall of a room, 5286.
- Parlour, *s.* parlour, 5304.
- Parraills (Apperels), *pr. s.* apparels, prepares, 765; Parreld, *pp.* prepared, 480; got ready, 4208; Parraillid, apparelled, 5285.
- Parray, *s.* nobles, nobility, assembly of nobles, 4028. O.F. *parroye*, with the same sense as O.F. *parage*, rank, quality; see Roquefort.
- Parroke, *s.* park, enclosure, 4702. A.S. *pearruc*.
- Part, *s.* character, 361; Parte, part, 2157.
- Parti (Party), part, 1115; Partie, 4257; Partys, *pl.* 3764; Partis, *pl.* parts, regions, 139; (Partez), 1731; (Parteez), 2056; Partise, 3560; Partese (Partez), 2267; Partyse (Partyes), *pl.* parts, regions, 2799; Partise, parties, sides, hostile armies, 3992; Partys, parties, people, 3312.
- Partis, *pr. s.* parts, 5418; (Partes), 807; divides, gives, 1660; im-parts, gives, 2027; Part (Departyd), *pr. pl.* part, break, 1931; Part, *pp.* parted, divided, 4318.
- Party, *adj.* separate, different, 668.
- Parysch, *s.* Paris, 4659.
- Pas, *v.* pass, go on, advance, 3584; go, 997, 5386; depart, 2665; Pas, *v.* pass (from life), die, 4003; Passe, surpass, 635; Pase, *ger.* pass, march, 50; Pas, *ger.* to march over, 444; to go, 1019; (Passe), to go, 1187, 1919; Pas, *pr. s.* passes, goes, 3779, 3788, 4649, 5599; Passis, goes, 132, 133, 334, &c.; Passes, goes, 1076; marches, 170; Passes, surpasses, 656, 2520; Pas, 1 *pr. pl.* go, 1852; Passe, *pr. pl.* 1397; Pas, 1 *pr. pl. subj.* go, 2167; Pas (Passe), 2 *pr. s. subj.* departest, 1099; Past, *pt. s.* went, 139; surpassed, 3988; Past vp, went up, 944; Paste vp, 220; *pt. pl.* passed, 3052; Pas (Passe), *imp. s.* 2 *p.* pass, go thou, 1499; Passand, *pres. part.* surpassing, 4242; Passid (Passyd), *pp.* past, 1008; (Passed), 825\*.
- Pas (Passe), *s.* pace, 2062.
- Passage, *s.* passage, course, orbit, 32; Passag (Passage), passage, crossing over, 2904.
- Passandly, *adv.* surpassingly, 1999, 3596; extremely, 3455.
- Passe, *s.* passing, departure, 2978.
- Passe, *s.* passus, fit, canto, 2845. See Passus.
- Passing, *s.* surpassing excellence, 45.
- Passing (Passyng), *prep.* surpassing, beyond, 1750.
- Passus, a division of a poem; see pp. 7, 17, 27, 42, 58, 78, 96, 114, 132, 152, 166, 178, 190, 206, 212, 216, 223, 231, 235, 241, 245, 251, 257, 264, 270, 275.
- Passyngly (Passandly), *adv.* passingly, exceedingly, 2904.
- Pastours, *pl.* pastures, 1198; Pastors (Pasturs), 1234.
- Pasturde, *pp.* fed, 5425.
- Paues (Pafvyd), *pp.* paved, 3220.
- Pauelson, *s.* pavilion, tent, 2175, 4760; Pauillions, 4178; Pauyl-yons, 4149.
- Pauement (Payment), pavement, 1517.
- Paues, *pl.* pavises, large shields, 1389; (Pavyce), 2223. O.F. *pauois*, 'a great shield'; Cotgrave.
- Paunche, *s.* paunch, belly, 4536; Paunches, *pl.* 4435.
- Paouure, 1 *pr. s.* fear (?), 3242. (The context requires 'beseech.') Probably corrupt, as the alliteration does not require a word with *p.*

- Pausanna (Pausana), Pausanias, 914, 930, 936, 952.
- Pavyce; see Paues.
- Pay, *s.* satisfaction, 4208.
- Pay, *ger.* to pay, 1180; Paye (Pay), 1176; Pays, *imp. pl.* pay ye, 3719.
- Payne, pain, 530, 3828; Payn, 1782, 1783, 3235; A payn, on pain, 1595; Paynes, *pl.* pains, 3305; effort, difficulty, 2223.
- Paynt, *v.* paint, adorn, 4427; Payntid (Depayntyd), *pt. pl.* painted, depicted, 1704; Payntid, *pp.* depicted, 5642; painted, 4149.
- Payntour, painter, 5145.
- Payse, *s.* weight, balance; In payse (On payse), in the balance, 3260. (Passe), weight, 2397.
- Pece; A pece, apiece, 5474; Peces, pieces, 2998.
- Pees (Pease), peace, 1041.
- Peesse (Pese), the value of a pea, 2370.
- Pegge (vs), *ger.* to stuff ourselves, 4278. Cf. mod. E. slang *to peg away*, i. e. to eat heartily; prov. E. *peck*, to eat.
- Pelare, *s.* pillar, 4707, 5065; Pelers, *pl.* 3666.
- Pellicans, *pl.* pelicans, 5129.
- Pellid, *pt. s.* beat, 117. See *Palle*, to beat, in Glos. to P. Plowman.
- Pelloure (Pelour), *s.* fur, rich fur, 2768; Pelour, 3393, 4036. See *pelure* in Jamieson.
- Penance (Pennance), penance, 1483.
- Pennes, *pl.* pens, wings, 4529; feathers, 3692; Pennys, 4988.
- Pennons, *pl.* pennons, streamers, 3028.
- Pense (Pensey), *adj.* pensive, lost in thought, 2990.
- Pentapol, Pentapolis, 5677.
- Pentests, *pl.* gems or precious stones so called, 5268. (Not found elsewhere.)
- Peny, *in phr.* Peny-hoge, i. e. penned hog, hog in a sty, 4278. *Perhaps we should read* pen-hoge.
- Peper-cornes, *pl.* pepper-corns, 2025.
- Pepill (Peple), *s.* people, 2223, 3208; nation, 3412; Peple, 1389. See Pupill.
- Pepir, *s.* pepper, 5425; (Peper), 2026, 2074; (Piper), 2023.
- Per cas, *adv.* perchance, 4227.
- Peralus, *adj.* perilous, 530.
- Perce, *v.* pierce, 3374; Percid, *pp.* 264; (Persyd), 3378.
- Perchemen, *s.* parchment, 5142.
- Percynne (Persyens, *gen. pl.*), Persian, 2885.
- Pere, *s.* peer, equal, 647, 3009, 4905; peer, noble, 2036, 2954, 3113; Peris, *pl.* peers, 72, 4926; Peris (Pers), peers, companions, 3033.
- Pere, *v.* appear, 3769; Perid, *pt. pl.* appeared, 5466. Short for *apere*.
- Peree (Peir), *for* Pere, equal, 1723.
- Perell, *s.* peril, 2520.
- Perell (Perle), pearl, 1888.
- Peres, 2 *pr. s.* comparest thyself, thinkest thyself equal, 1842; Pere, 2 *pr. pl.* (ye) are like, 4703. See *Pere*, *s.*
- Perfite, *adj.* perfected, finished, 194.
- Perill (Perle), peril, 1783.
- Perill (Perle), pearl, 1569.
- Perisch (Perische), *ger.* to perish, 1165; Perische, 2 *pr. pl.* perish, 3809; Perischist, *pp.* (*for* Perischist), perished, slain, 4170.
- Perlaous (*for* Peralous), *adj.* perilous, 3949. See *Perlious*.
- Perle, *s.* pearl, 4036; Worth a perle, to the value of a pearl, 4331; Perles, 3677; (Perelez), *pl.* 1663. (Perle), *s.* purl, i. e. rush of water, used poetically for stream, wave, 1154. "*Purl*, to eddy, as a stream;" Halliwell.
- Perlious, *adj.* perilous, 5431. See *Perlaous*.
- Permeon, Parmenio, 1617, 2559, 3113; Permes (Permeon), Parmenio, 2581.
- Perpetuall, *adj.* perpetual, 3312.
- Perrils (Perlez), *pl.* pearls, 1542. See *Perill*.
- Perrour, *error for* Purer (*as in the* Dublin MS.), purer, 1536.
- Perry (Perre), *s.* precious stones, 1536. See *perreye* in Glos. to P. Plowman. And see *Pirre*.
- Pers, Persia, 3240, 3309, 3616, 5109.
- Pers, *s. pl.* peers, nobles, 3064, 3781,

- 5166; (Peres), 2267, 2759. See Pere.
- Persayue, *v.* perceive, understand, 142; Persayued, *pt. s.* perceived, 3998.
- Perse, *ger.* to pierce, 4071; *v.* 3897; Persee, 5537; Persed, *pp.* 3675.
- Persee, Persia, 170, 187, 207, 4843; (Pers), 2703; Perse, 175.
- Persens, *pl.* Persians, 1639, 2099, 3481, 3806, 3968, 5312; Perseyns, 87.
- Perses, *pl.* Persians, 3644.
- Pershed, *pp.* pierced, 2657.
- Pesid, *pp.* pierced, 5158.
- Persie (Perse), Persia, 901.
- Person, *s.* person, outward appearance, 1704; person, 1552; figure, 820\*.
- Personele, *adj.* personal, 5142; Personale, 668.
- Persopole (Persipoll), Persepolis, 2111.
- Persy, Persia, 50, 74, 117, &c.; (Perse), 1716, 1869; (Pers), 3161; Persye la graunt (Perse le graunt, great Persia, 1737; Persye (Perse), 1658, 1911.
- Persyn (Persen), Persian, 2665; Persyns (Persens), *pl.* 2026, 2083; (Persyens), 2904; Persyns, Persians, 3185.
- Persys, *pr. pl.* pierce, 5560; Persyd, *pt. s.* 2617.
- (Pert), *adv.* openly, 2917; So pert, so openly, quite publicly, 2295.
- Pertenys, *pr. s.* pertains, 4309; Pertines (Pertenys), *pr. pl.* 1772.
- Pertly, *adv.* openly, 255.
- (Perty), *error for* Pouerty, *i. e.* distress, 2156. See the Ashmole MS.
- Peruyk, *for* Peruynk, *s.* periwinkle (flower), 4541. "*Pervinca, Anglice pervynke*;" Wright's Vocab. col. 602, l. 27.
- Pes, *s.* peace, 3312, 3779, 3992, 4042; (Pease), 3412; Pese (Pease), 2841, 3420; Pesse (Pes), 2665.
- Pesan, *s.* gorget, 4960. It occurs, spelt *pesane*, in the allit. Morte Arthure; and, though left unexplained in the Glossary, is rightly explained in Halliwell's Dictionary (with a reference to that very passage) as "a gorget of mail or plate attached to the helmet." See also *pesane* in Jamieson.
- Pese, *s.* pea; Charge of a pese, value of a pea, 403.
- Pesid, *pt. s.* calmed, grew calm, 4159; Pesed, *pp.* pacified, appeased, 5379; Pesse, *imp. s.* pacify, 5362.
- Pete, *s.* pity, 5041; (Pite), 2240, 3235; (Pyte), suffering, 1169.
- (Pete), *adj.* little, lit. petty, 2025. *F. petit.*
- Petusly, *adv.* piteously, miserably, 3620.
- Philip, 397, 418, 434, 450, &c.; (Philop), 891, 917; (Philopp), 884, 906; (Philipp), 2570; Philips, *gen.* 1788.
- Philosophour, *s.* philosopher, 4219; Philosofer (*written* Philofr), 814\*; Phylsofyre, 434; Philosophours, *pl.* 2336.
- Picard, Picardy, 5657.
- Pickid, *pp.* pitched, 4208.
- Piers, *pl.* stones, 4356, 5270.
- Pik, *s.* pitch, 4172, 5546.
- Pike, *s.* peak, 4818.
- Piktagaras, Pythagoras, 46.
- Pilage (Pelage), *s.* pillage, plunder, booty, 3179.
- Pilars, *pl.* pillars, 5068, 5275.
- Piple (Peple), people, 1561. See Pepill.
- Pirnes, *pl.* long straight shoots or twigs, 4981. Northern E. *prin*, a pin (Halliwell); A.S. *preon*, gloss to *fibula*, in Wright's Vocab. col. 152, l. 37; Icel. *prjonn*, a knitting-pin. See *pirn* in Jamieson.
- Piromancie, *s.* pyromancy, divination by means of fire, 4612.
- Pirre, *s.* precious stones, 4036; jewellery, 3954; Of pirre, adorned with precious stones, 4149. See Perry.
- Pirs, *pl.* peers, 5614. See Pers, Pere.
- Pistill, *s.* epistle, 1791, 3160, 3084; (Pistell), 1836, 1909, 1930; (Pistyll), 2026, 2065; Pistils (Pistellys), *pl.* letters, 3420; Pistils (Pistell), 1801.



- Pite, *s.* pity, sorrow for the dead, 3321; sorrow, 1286; (Pyte), pity, 754; (Pety), misery, 2156.
- Pizt, *pt. s.* set up, erected (lit. pitched), 4707, 5061; (Pyth), pitched, 2130; (Pyzt), 2175; Pizt, *pt. s. subj.* should pitch, 4594; Pizt, *pp.* set, 3666; set, stuck, 5268; established, settled, 4320; brought, put, 3441; ornamented, 194; Pizt (Pight), reared, 3135.
- (Pizt-full), *adj.* pitched full, filled, 2284.
- Place, *s.* place, 194, 334, 355, 365; (Place), house, 952. "Place, a house or residence;" Halliwell.
- Plaid, *pp.*; Did bot plaid, did no more than played, merely played, 3947.
- Planet (Planett), *s.* planet, 682; Planetitis, *pl.* 32; Planetis, 4172.
- Plangid, *pt. pl.* plunged, 4130. See Plunge.
- Planir, *adj.* flat, 4138. Cotgrave has *planier*, flat, as well as *plain*.
- Planke, *s.* plank, 3740.
- Plant, *pp.* planted, set, 3146, 5656; (Plantyd), 1654.
- Plants, *pl.* plants, trees, 4995.
- Plate, *s.* (gold) plate, 3673; (Playte), plate, 1590; Platis, *pl.* plates (of gold), 4894; plates, 3689; Platis (Plates), armour-plates, plate-armour, 2214; Platis (Platez), plates, plate-armour, 1247, 2450; Plates, 911, 917; (Platez), 1378; (Playthes), 1213.
- Platea, Platea, 2297.
- Plate-rofes, *pl.* roofs made of plates of gold, 5260.
- Plate-werkis, *pl.* works of plate, plated work, 3223.
- Plato, Plato, 46.
- Play, *ger.* to play, 1772, 5053; to play, to see the (Corinthian) games, 2267; Playe (Play), *v.* play, 1929; With to play (for the child) to play with, 1712; Playd, *pt. s.* amused herself, 4416.
- Play, *s.* game, amusement, 2284, 823\*.
- Playn, *adj.* level, flat, 4138, 4375, 4818; (Playne), plain, revealed, 1099; (Plane), clear, free, unim-
- peded, 3417; Playn, plain, whole, 5402.
- Playn, *s.* plain, 2169, 3655; Playnes, *pl.* 1198, 1210, 4826.
- Playnely (Playnly), *adv.* evidently, plainly, 1654, 1896; Playnly, 3764; (Playnly), 1791.
- Playntes, *pr. s.* complains, 2312 (the Dublin MS. has *planettyts*, corruptly); Playnt (Plenyd), *pt. pl.* complained, 1698. "*Plaindre*, to plaine;" Cotgrave.
- Playntis, *pl.* complaints, 1791. *F. plainte.*
- Plede (Plete), *v.* plead, debate, 2861; Plede (Pledyn), 2 *pr. pl.* plead, declare, 1893.
- Plegg, *s.* pledge, 1783, 3514.
- Plente, *s.* plenty, 1852, 1888, 2167.
- (Plenys), *pr. s.* laments, 729\*. See Pleynys.
- Plesaunce, *s.* pleasure, 3382; Plesance, 3162.
- Plese, *ger.* to please; The werd with to please, to please the world with, 4598; (Please), 1180; *v.* 2275; Plesis, *pr. s.* pleases, 5386; Pleses, 4368; Plese, *for* Plesis, *pr. s.* pleases, i. e. it pleases us (to regard them) no longer, 3560; Ples, 2 *pr. s.* pleasest, 2719; Plece, *pr. s. subj.* may please, 365; Plesed, *pp.* 593.
- Pletours, *pl.* fighting-men, lit. pleaders, 1731. "*Plait*, sute, controversie;" Cotgrave.
- Pletyng, *pres. pt.* pleading, p. 281, l. 78.
- Pleynes, *pr. s.* laments for, 4052; complains, pleads, 5360; *refl.* laments, 399; Pleynes (Plenys), *pr. s.* complains, 1147; (Pleyniez), laments, 972; Pleynis, *pr. s. refl.* laments, 1169; Pleynys (Plenys), laments, 1286; Pleyn, *pr. pl.* 1 *p.* lament, 4370; Pleyne (Plenys), 2156; Pleyned, *pt. s.* lamented, 4204.
- Pleynys, *pr. s.* laments, 1286. See Plenys.
- Plied, *pp.* (with ouir), overlaid, 5260. "*Plier*, to fould, plait, ply, bend, bow;" Cotgrave.
- (Plight), *s.* peril, 1783. See Plizt.

- Plite, *s.* plight, sad state, 3636 ; state, condition, 635 ; way, manner, 4042 ; (Plite), condition, 1165. A word of French origin, and quite distinct from the word below. See Supplement to my Etymological Dictionary, *s. v.* *Plight* (3) ; and see *Plyte*.
- Pliyt, *s.* danger, 4682, 4951. A.S. *plihht*. See *Plight*.
- Plukis, *imp. pl.* 2 *p.* pluck, 5445.
- Plunge, *s.* pool, place to plunge into, 5546.
- Plyes, *pr. s.* spreads, lit. folds, 1517. See *Plied*.
- Plyte, plight, condition, state, 305. See *Plite*.
- Pointid, *pt. pl.* secured, 5546.
- Poisei, *s.* poesy, poetry, 4612. (*Better poisie or poesie*.)
- Poliponenses, Peloponnesus, 825\*, 2375 ; Poliponens, 5677.
- Polisch, *v.* polish, 4427 ; Polischt, *pp.* 5129 ; Polischid (Polyshyd), polished, 3223.
- Poll (Polle), poll, head, person, 1497 ; Pollis, *pl.* heads, men, 3069.
- Pollis, *pl.* poles, 3028.
- Pompe, pomp, 2334. (The Ashmole MS. has *ponpe*.)
- Pond, *s.* pound, 5470 ; Pond, *pl.* 5474 ; Ponde (Pound), *pl.* 2397.
- Popill (Peple), *s.* people, 2854, 2930.
- Populande (Populand), *adj.* rushing, foaming, bubbling, 1154. "*Popple*, to bubble up, *North* ;" Halliwell. "*Pople*, to bubble up, purl, ripple ;" Jamieson.
- Pore, *adj.* poor, 1661, 4021.
- Porpure (Purpure), *s.* purple, 1824.
- Porris, *pr. pl.* thrust, push, 5560. "*To porre in* ; vide *thrust*, and *stuffe* ;" Baret's *Alvearie* (1580), § 579.
- Porrus, Porus, 3162, 3183, 3540, 3575, 3588, 3596, 3636, 3655, 3661, 3781, &c.
- Port, *s.* port, bearing, appearance, 4983.
- Porte, harbour, 2453.
- Portingale, Portugal, 5658.
- Possede, *v.* possess, 2841. O.F. *posseder*.
- Posterne, postern, small back gate, 132 ; Posternes, *pl.* 2453.
- Postis, *pl.* pillars, 3664, 5278, 5628.
- Poudire, *s.* powder, dust, 1865, 2334, 3082, 4178, 5206 ; (Poudre), 2658 ; (Powder), 2998.
- Pouerte, poverty, distress, 2156, 4052, 4317 ; Pouert (Pouerte), 1852, 1893.
- Pouret, *pt. pl.* poured ; Pouret out, poured out, i. e. burst out, 3427.
- Pouwere (Power), *s.* might, army, 2056. See *Powere*.
- Powarfull, *adj.* powerful, 3242.
- Powere, *s.* power, 117, 5402 ; host, 207 ; army, 3963 ; (Power), 2023, 2295 ; an army, help, 3183. See *Pouwere*.
- Poynt, *s.* point, 682, 3897 ; circumstance, 305 ; Poynte, circumstance, 3636 ; In poynt, at the point, 1165 ; Poyntis, *pl.* points, 32 ; minute points, 255 ; Poyntez, *pl.* points, 808\*.
- Practisirs, *pl.* practicers, men of experience, 1582 ; (Practyf men), 1582.
- Pray, *ger.* to pray, 1477 ; Pray, *pr. s.* 1 *p.* pray, 826 ; Prai, 5362 ; Prayes, *pr. s.* 2 *p.* prayest, 2803, 4247 ; Prays (Prayes), 1105 ; Prays, *pr. s.* beseeches, 5141 ; Pray, *pr. pl.* 1 *p.* pray, beseech, 4243 ; Prays, *pr. pl.* 1041 ; (Prayd), *pt. pl.* 1041 ; Prayd, *pp.* prayed, asked, 3183.
- Pray, *s.* prey, 1335 ; Prai (Pray), 1206.
- Prayris (Prayers), *pl.* prayers, 1483.
- Prayse, *pr. s.* 1 *p.* praise, 661 ; Prays, esteem, 328 ; Prayses, *pr. pl.* praise, 3751 ; (Praysez), 1750 ; Prayse (Prasen), 1022 ; Praysed, *pt. s.* praised, approved of, 3440 ; Prased, *pt. pl.* (Prasen, *pr. pl.*) praised, 2394 ; Praysed, 898 ; Praysed, *pp.* praised, lauded, 2666 ; (Prassed), 995 ; Praysid, 5225.
- Precep (Precept), precept, instruction, 982.
- Preciosa, the name of a country, 5080.
- Preciouse, precious, 820\*.



- Precioussest, *adj. superl.* precioussest, 4891.
- Predestayned, *pp.* predestined, fore-ordained, 2745; (Predestinate), 4062; Predestend, 305.
- Predicessour (Predecessour), predecessor, i. e. chief, 1723.
- Prefe, *pr. s.* 1 *p.* prove, find out, 4640.
- Prekars (Prekers), *pl.* prickers, riders, 1234.
- Preke, *ger.* to spur, to ride, 3483; *v.* 652; Preke on, ride upon, 2897; Prekis, *pr. s.* pricks, rides, spurs, 5445; (Prekes), 938, 1335; (Prekys), 2169; (Prekys forth), *pr. s.* rides on, 823\*; Prekis (Prikkyn), *pr. pl.* spur, ride hard, 2982; Prekand, *pres. part.* pricking, riding, 1578.
- Prektane, Priscian, 46.
- Prelate, *s.* prelate, 1529; Prelatis (Prelatez), *pl.* prelates, 1499, 1554; (Prelates), 1660.
- Prematis, *pl.* primates, 1582.
- Prenys, *pl.* 1250. Probably a scribal error for *bernys* (cf. *bernes* in the Dublin MS.), i. e. men. The sense is obvious.
- Pres, *s.* throng, press of battle, 3968; Prese, throng, 3972; (Prese), 2637; Presse (Prese), heat of battle, 1019; Pres (Preese), *s.* pressure, 3382.
- Presand, *pr. s.* 1 *p.* present, 5138; *pr. pl.* 2 *p.* 4529; Presentes, *pr. s.* 5145; Present, *pr. pl.* deliver, 1791; Presandis (Present), *pr. pl.* make presents, 1041.
- Presands, *pl.* presents, 5466; Presandis (Presandez), 1716, 1772; Presand (Presentes), 1869.
- Prese, *ger.* to attack, 3483; *v.* to overcome, 5109; Presis (Preses), *pr. s.* presses, hastens, 954; Preses, *pr. pl.* press, throng, 151, 3638; (Presen), 2223; (Pressen), 2453; Presis (Prese), press forward, 1389.
- Presens, *s.* presence, 367, 982; Put þam in-to presens, came to court, 3328.
- Present, *s.* present signature, 3162. Cf. "know all men by these presents." (Present), *adj.* present, 982.
- Presidine, *error* for Presidence (Presydence), *s.* presidence, authority, 2414. (But the text is corrupt.)
- Presons, *pl.* prisoners, 4703. See *prison* in Glos. to P. Plowman.
- Prest, priest, 328; Prestis (Pristez), *pl.* 1499; (Prestez), 1529, 1582; (Pristes), 1554.
- Prestly, *adv.* quickly, promptly, soon, 1198, 2277, 2833; (Pristly), 1919, 2027; fully, 1397; (Prestely), 2581. O.F. *prest*, F. *prêt*.
- Preualy, *adv.* privily, secretly, 132, 220, 355, 361.
- Preuate, *s.* privacy, silence; In preuate, privately, silently, 4997; Preuates, *pl.* secrets, 255; Preuatez, 1582; Preuates, private marks of friendship, special kindnesses, 5386.
- Preue, *adj.* privy, confidential, 3588; secret, 3740; under, 4960; (Prevay), private, 944; (Preuay), private, small, 823\*.
- Preue, *v.* prove, experience, 4249; Preues, *pr. s.* lit. proves, hence, gains experience, 4630; Preued, *pl. s.* proved, experienced, 45; Preuyd, gained, 4539; Preued (Preuett), *pp.* proved, 1004.
- Price, *s.* renown, glory, 826.
- Prickis (Prikkez), *pr. s.* pricks, 2628.
- Prid (Pride), 1 *pr. pl.* pride, 2745.
- Pride, pride, 724, 936, 1639.
- Prik, *s.* point, high point or reach of wisdom, 45; Prike, *s.* time, age (lit. point of time), 4630.
- Prikid, *pp.* inscribed, marked, lit. pricked, 5074.
- Prime, *s.* prime of day, orig. 9 A.M., 4836.
- Prinus (Priamus), *name*, 1911.
- Prince, *s.* prince, 914; Prince, *gen.* prince's, 4760; Princes, *pl.* 151, 480; Princis, 51.
- Princes, princess, 5099.
- Principalete, principality, 2311; Principalte (Principalite), 1737; chief place, 648.
- Printe, *s.* impression, imprint (on the seal), 1931.
- Pris, *s.* renown, 5099; Prisse, price, value, 4242; Prise, prize, 1860, 2284.

- Pris (Pris), *s.* praise, fame, 2508. (Perhaps an error for *perse*, Persia.)  
 Priues, *pr. s.* quenches, takes away, 4682; Priued, *pt. s.* (Priues, *pr. s.*), deprived, 2381; Priued, *pp.* deprived of, 2657; (Depriued), deprived, 2292.  
 Proces, *s.* full account, 4259. "*Proces*, story, relation;" Halliwell.  
 Procession, *s.* procession, 1552, 1561.  
 Proches (Prokes), *pr. s.* makes extravagant demands, arrogates to himself, 1926. "*Prokkyn*, or styfly askyn; *Procor*, *procito*;" Prompt. Parv.  
 Prodest, *adj. superl.* proudest, 3661.  
 Prode, *adj.* proud, 4375.  
 Profe, *v.* prove, 367.  
 Profe, *s.* excellence, benefit, profit, 4309. Apparently the same word as M.E. *prow*. "*Prow*, idem quod *profyte*;" Prompt. Parv. O.F. *prou*.  
 Profectez, *pl.* profits, p. 280, l. 37.  
 Profet (Profett), *pt. s.* profited, 2370.  
 Profurs, *pr. s.* offers, 4052; Proferne (Profre), 2 *pr. pl.* offer, 2202.  
 Progenie, progeny, race, 4021.  
 Proiecte, *s.* design, 3331.  
 Prolouge, *s.* prologue, announcement, 5066; (Proloug), preamble, 2730.  
 Promicid, *error for* prononsid (*pt. s.*), or pronounsand (*pres. pt.*), 3395. (Pronounsand), *pres. pt.* pronouncing, uttering, 3395.  
 Propertes, *pl.* properties, peculiarities, 4257.  
 Prophecy, *s.* prophecy, 1099; Prophasys (Prophecyes), *pl.* 1654.  
 Prophesid (Prophecied), *pp.* prophesied, 1896.  
 Prophet, prophet, 261, 328; *written* Proplete, 142.  
 Prophetese, prophetess, 4412; Prophetas (Prophett), 2300.  
 Propire, *adj.* correct, certain, 367. See Propure.  
 Proporcion, proportion, 668; Proporcions, *pl.* 5142.  
 Propure (Propre), *adj.* proper, correct, 2885. See Propire.  
 Propurest, *adj. superl.* most ornamental, 3331.  
 Propurly (P[ro]prely), *adv.* entirely, 1926; (Propyrly), wholly, 3283.  
 Prose, *s.* prose story, 2062, 2397, 3328, 5041.  
 Proserpyne, Proserpine, 4412, 4416.  
 Pro[s]perite, prosperity, 1860.  
 Proud (Proude), *adj.* proud, 944, 1000, 1169; Proude, 652, &c.; rich, splendid, 480, 2027; noble, 1660; (Pround), 729\*; Proudis, *pl.* proud ones, 5468.  
 Proudly, *adv.* splendidly, 652; Proudely, honourably, 4017.  
 Proue, *ger.* prove, shew, 261, 334; test, 4071; Proued, *pt. s.* employed, 647; (Preved), proved, 2072; Proued, 1 *pt. s.* described, spoke of, 4867; Provid, *pt. pl.* were usual, were easily found, 5082; Proued, *pp.* proved, 1789; approved, 914, 808\*.  
 Prouidens, *s.* foresight, prudence, 3990; providence, 4062; Prouidence, *as dat.* for thy forethought, 2707.  
 Prouince, province, 187, 825\*. See Prouynce.  
 (Pround), 729\*; see Proud.  
 Prouwis (Prowez), *s.* prowess, excellence, 2745.  
 Prouynce, province, territory, 72, 1737, 1941, 3123; *pl.* provinces, 444. See Prouince.  
 Prouys (Preuez), *pr. pl.* prove, 2000.  
 Prowde, *adj.* proud, 3481. See Proud.  
 Prowis, *s.* prowess, valour, 444, 614, 3990, 4539; (Prowes), 936.  
 Pruddest (Proudest), *adj. superl.* proudest, 2202.  
 Pruto, name of a country, 5657.  
 Prynce, prince, 99.  
 Prynt, *s.* mark, seal, 3162.  
 Pryse, praise, fame, 614. See Prise.  
 Pull, *s.* throe, 530.  
 Pull, *ger.* to pull, 938; Pullis him, *pr. s.* draws himself, 2074.  
 Punesch (Ponysh), *ger.* to punish, 2733.  
 Pupill, people, 87; (Peple), 1497, 1658, 1999, 2295; Puple, 142, 175.  
 Pure, *adj.* pure, 2300; complete, excellent, 3990; clear, 1154;

- simple, small, 3496; mere, 1869; single, 5108; very, 2099.
- Pure, *adv.* very, 3242.
- (Pure), *adj.* poor, 1661.
- Pured, *pp.* purified, 4465; (Puryd), purified, cleansed, well prepared, 2768.
- Purely, *adv.* completely, 187; entirely, 3283; totally, 1639; clean, 1658; (Purely), entirely, 3243; Purly, 4062.
- Purfire, *s.* porphyry, 5275.
- Purgis, *pr. s.* puts away, clears away, 4682.
- Purid, *pt. pl.* grew calm, grew clear, cleared away, 4185.
- Purpose (Purpasse), *s.* intention, 1767.
- Purpose, *pr. pl. 2 p.* intend, 682.
- Purple (Purpure), *adj.* purple, 1532; Purperyn, 4375.
- Purple, *s.* purple colour, 4986; Purpree, 1588.
- Purse, *s.* purse, bag, 1661, 2023.
- Purtrayour, portrait-painter, 5141.
- Purway, *v.* provide, p. 279, l. 11; Purvaid, *pp.* provided, equipped, 175; Puruayd, *pp.* purveyed, provided (for thyself), 1731; Purueid, provided, foreseen, 5107.
- Put, *v.* put, 982; put, place (*with* to = into), 2861; (Puttes), *pr. s.* 777\*; Put vp, *pt. s.* put up, 227; Put, *pt. pl.* put, placed, 816; Putt, *pt. pl.* put, put (themselves) forward, 3968; (Putten), set (themselves), 1483; Put (Putt), *pp.* 1930.
- Putfull, *adj.* put full, filled (*but read* pijt-full), 2284.
- Pylars, *pl.* pillars, 5064.
- Pynche, *ger. (prob. error for Pycche)*, i. e. pitch, place, set, 5064.
- Pyndis, *pr. s.* impounds, pens up, imprisons, 5187.
- Pyne, *s.* torture, pain, 2723, 3506; trouble, 1206.
- Pyne, *v.* torture, 1789; Pyned, *pt. s. subj.* would put to pain, would trouble, 3333; Pynaund, *pres. pt.* causing pain, vexatious, 4172.
- Pyned, *pp.* tormented, vexed, 4702. A far better reading would be *pynned*, i. e. pinned, penned.
- Pyte, *s.* sad fate, 729\*.
- Qua, *pron. inter.* who, 636; (Wha), 1092; Qua sa, whoso, whoever, 146, 1439; (Who so), 1527, 1718, 1780; As qua, as one who, 4659; As qua sai, as who should say, as if he would say, 2240.
- Quadrentis, *pl.* quadrants, 129. (MS. In adrentes; see the note.)
- Qualite, *s.* quality, dignity, 4660; kind, 1556; rank, 3303; sort of character, 1703.
- Quam, *dat.* whom, 463; (Whom), 1637; (Whome), 1624.
- Quantite, *s.* size, 1703.
- Quappid (Wappyd), *pt. pl.* struck violently, 2226. E. *whap*, to hit; M.E. *quappen*, to throb, as in Chaucer.
- Quare, *adv.* where, 104, 363, 373; *conj.* (Quar), whether, 2370.
- Quare-of, whereof, 4249, 4380, 5462; (Wher-of), 1566.
- Quare-on, *adv.* whereon, whereupon, upon what, 268, 269.
- Quare-purje (Whar-porow), whereby, 2544.
- Quare-with, where-with, 5434.
- Quarrels (Qwarels), *pl.* bolts (for the cross bow), 2226; Quarels, 1414.
- Quarto, *adv.* whereto, to what purpose, 4060; (Whare-to), wherefore, 2242.
- Quas (Whoys), *pron.* whose, 1192; Quase, *pron. rel. gen.* whose, under whose rule, 4192.
- Qua-sum-euire (Who-someuer), *pron.* whosoever, 3362.
- Quat, *pron.* what, 171, 251, 253, 295, &c.; why, wherefore, 2519, 3492, 5355; (What), how, 2523; Quat, reason why; For any quat, on any account, 581; Quat so (Qwat so), whatever, 1640; All quat, all what, i. e. all sorts of things, 3046; Mekill quat, much of various sorts, 3777. And see Mekill.
- Quat euire (What euer), whatever, 680.
- Quatkyn, what kind of, of what kind, 305, 312, 5007.
- Quaynte, *adj.* quaint, curious, 129.

- Quayntid him, *pt. s.* made himself acquainted, 213.
- Quedire, *adv.* wherever, 3499; Que-der, *adv.* whither, in what direction, 166.
- Quele, *s.* wheel, 3303; Queles, *pl.* 5294. See Qwele.
- Quellis (Whelles), *pr. s.* kills, 1307.
- Quen, *adv.* when, 149, 159, 194, &c.; (When), 745; Quene, 3509.
- Quene, queen, 362, 669, 822; (Whene), 919, 938, 944, 1851.
- Question, *s.* question, 1110.
- Quethe, *v.* tell, 4325; Queth, 1 *pr. s.* as *fut.* shall tell, 1110.
- Quethin, *adv.* whence, 4192, 5216.
- Quethire, *conj.* whether (interrogatively), 2161, 3805; Quepir, 3810; whether (introducing a new clause), 5606; (Wheper), although, 2090; Queper ȝit, nevertheless, however, 581.
- Quethirs (Whirres), *pr. pl.* whizz, fly whizzing, 1414. See *quhidder* in Jamieson, and *quhedirand* in Barbour.
- Qui (Why), why, 1620, 2645.
- Quike, *adj.* alive, 4469.
- Quikly (Whikly), *adv.* quickly, 1414.
- Quile, *s.* space of time, while, 331, 249, 3861; þar-quile, at that time, 157.
- Quilk, *error for* Quil, while, whilst, 4629.
- Quilke (Whilke), *pron.* which, 519, 679, 1447; (which), 3421; what, 1888; Quilk (Whilk), which, 996.
- Quils, *conj. and adv.* whilst, 3535; (Whils), 1678; (Whil), 3416; (Whille), 1687; (Whilse), 989; Quills, 19.
- Quirris (Whirrez), *pr. pl.* whir, i. e. go forth with a buzzing noise, 1556; Quirys (Whirres), whir, hurl, 2226.
- Quirys (Enquirez), *pr. s.* asks, enquires about, 1703.
- Quirland, *pres. part.* whirling, 5294.
- Quite, *adj.* white, 4534, 5603; (White), *s.* white robes, 1556.
- Quod, *pt. s.* said, 97, 183, 242, 270, &c.
- Quy (Whi), why, 2945. See Qui.
- Quyche (Which), *pron.* what, how great, 1807.
- Quyle, *s.* while, time, 546, 581; (While), 1239, 1861. See Quile.
- Quyte, *adj.* white, 129; (White), 1562; (Whitte), 1498. See Quite.
- Qwaite, *v.* await, 1109. Put for *Waite*, as in *Dest. of Troy*, 13245.
- Qwat, what, 740, 1272; Qwatt, 849.
- Qwatis, *pr. s.* (probably) becomes quiet, is lulled again, 560. See *quate*, *quait*, to lull, in Jamieson, ed. 1880. The sense seems to be that the sea was violently agitated, and again suddenly lulled to rest again. *Euer elike* = continually.
- Qwaynt, *adj.* quaint, curious, 5548.
- Qwele (Whele), *s.* wheel, 1851, 1854; round, circle, 4660. See Quele.
- Qweme, *adj.* convenient, 5078. A.S. *gecwēme*.
- Qwen, *adv.* when, 374, 392, 649.
- Qwene, queen, 221, 228, 234, &c.
- Qwer, *adv.* where, 1515.
- Qweryns (Quernes), *pl.* cracks, edges of ice on each side of a crack, 3003. Cf. O.F. *carne*, an edge or corner (Cotgrave); and note that the O.F. *carnel*, a battlement (spelt *carneau* in Cotgrave), is spelt *quarnell* in Jamieson. *Carne* is merely another form of F. *cren*, a notch, cleft, breach, Lat. *crena*.
- Qwete, *v.* requite, satisfy, 2420. For *to question enquire* read *questions to enquire* (see the Dublin MS.); the line means—But to enquire questions of you, and to satisfy my wits with them. *Qwete* is the M.E. *quitten*, to quit, requite, also to satisfy.
- Qwete, *s.* wheat, 4511.
- Qwepire (Wheder), whether, can it be that, 2910.
- Qwile, *s.* short time, 653.
- Qwi (Whi), *adv.* why, 2287.
- Qwilke (Whilke), *pron.* which, 1046.
- Qwill, *conj.* until, 507.
- Qwirre (Whirre), *s.* whir, whirl, 1854; In a qwirre, with a whizzing sound, 560.
- Qwistounes, *pl.* beggars, 4660. O.F. *quistoun*, a beggar; Roquefort. Cf.

1. 3303. The wheel of Fortune is here called the wheel of beggars, contemptuously, because those who cling to it as it whirls have a chance of being exalted from the lowest condition; see the context.
- Qwistsumnes, 3303. A corrupt reading; the MS. has 'qwistsūnes', which may also be rendered 'qwistsunnes', an error for 'qwistunnes' = qwistoūnes, i. e. beggars. See 1. 4660, where the phrase recurs; and see above.
- Rabetis, *pl.* war-horses, chargers, 1320. See two examples, s. v. *rabite*, in Halliwell. Cf. O.F. *arabi*, an Arab-horse (Godefroy).
- Rabies, *error* for Ribans (in Dubl. MS. rybans), *pl.* borders, streaks, 1538.
- (Rachez hym), *pr. s.* prepares himself, 2031. Cf. Lowl. Sc. *rax*, to stretch.
- Rad, *adv.* speedily, 2428. See Radly.
- (Raddest), *adj. sup.* most afraid, 2510. Cf. Swed. *rädd*, Dan. *ræd*, afraid. See Redd.
- Raddour, *s.* violence, 2329. O.F. *rador* (Roquefort), later *roideur*, strength, violence.
- Rade, *pt. s.* rode, 3704.
- Radly, *adv.* readily, quickly, soon, 409, 430, 1354, 1382, 1494, 1950, 2031, 2973, 3449, 4846, 4961, 5360.
- Raged, *pt. s.* was angry, 638; Ragid, *pp.* been wanton, 460.
- Raggid, *adj.* jagged, ragged, 5133.
- (Raght), *pp.* reached, taken, 799\*. *Pp.* of *rechen*.
- Raikis, *pr. s.* proceeds, goes, 5284, 5555. Icel. *reika*, to wander.
- Railed, *pp.* covered, decked, bordered, 1538, 5128. From A.S. *hrægl*, a garment. See Gawane and the Grene Knight, and *hræilen*, in Stratmann.
- Rais him, *pr. s.* arrays him, prepares himself, 2031. Short for *arayis*.
- Rake (Rakke), course, road, way, track, 3383, 5070. See Gloss. to Gawain and the Grene Knight. "Cartrack, a cart-rut;" Halliwell. See Raikis.
- Ramys, name of a country, 5670.
- (Ran), *pt. s.* ran, 794\*.
- Rancour (Rankour), *s.* rancour, anger, 2701.
- Range, *pt. pl.* rang, 5157.
- Ranke, *adj.* luxuriant, well-grown, 3060.
- Rankest, *adj. superl.* thickest, 1319.
- Ransons (Raunsons), *pl.* rich gifts, lit. ransoms, 1665.
- Rapis (Rapez), *pl.* ropes, 1520; (Rapes), 747\*.
- Raryfey, name, 5496.
- Raschis (Rachen), *pr. pl.* hurry along, 1239. Cf. E. *rash*.
- Rase, *pt. s.* rose, 392, 430, 1216, 1566, 2354, 3817, 5055; (Rose), 1354, 2354.
- Rase (Rese), race, hurry, 1513. A.S. *rés*.
- (Rastelyng), *s.* tumult, 943.
- (Rasyd vp), *pp.* raised up, levied, 829\*.
- Rasyn (Raysyn), raisin, grape, 1352.
- Rathere (Rather), *adv.* rather, 1178.
- (Rapest) (MS. rāpeest), most quickly, 726.
- Ratland, *pres. part.* rattling, screeching, 4531.
- Ratons, *pl.* rats, 1762.
- Rauneste (Reuest), *pp.* decked, attired, 1500. Lit. re-vested.
- Rauth (Rathe), *adv.* quickly, soon, 2824. See Rather.
- Rauyst, *pp.* ravished, torn away, 4424.
- Ravyn, raven; Nijt ravyn, night-raven, i. e. owl, 4531.
- Raw (Rawe), row, rank; On a raw = in a row, 1500; Be rawe (*pl.* Rawes), in a row, along a row or line, 1320; Rawis (Rawez), *pl.* lines, 2843; rows, lines (of the letter), 2701.
- Raxsils, *pr. s.* stretches out, 4930. See Glos. to P. Plowman.
- Ray, *s.* king, 5496. O.F. *rei*.
- Rayme, *ger.* to spread over, overrun, rule oppressively, plunder, 4563; *v.* 177; (Rame), 2488; Raymed (Raymet), *pp.* 1940, 2378;

- Raymed, *m.* taken away from 2510. Halliwell has "*rayme*, to rob plunder: *Lanc.*" also *rayme*, to rule oppressively. But the true sense is not certain. —
- Rayme, *s.* plunder 4565. The line seems to mean— For plunder and robbery to rob men of their goods. But *rayme* should not occur twice.
- Rayn, *s.* rain. 4176.
- Rayn-bowe Rayn-bowe, rain-bow 4466.
- Raynes, *pr.* *s.* rains. 566.
- Raynes fine cloth or linen of Rheims, 4229. (Raynes, 1550.)
- Raynes, *pr.* *s.* raises, in. raises, 5174.
- Raynely, *adv.* excellently, 1584. From a false reading. Cf. *g-awth*.
- Reat *pt.* *s.* reached, arrived 5510. Delivered 5545: laid hold of 5284: departed, got away 3852: Raught, caught 2966. 2973: Raught, went on, 1042.
- Reaim, realm. 754. 799\* 923\*
- Rebell, *adj.* rebellious. 5504. Rebelhez, 1054.
- Rebelte, rebellion 1498.
- Reche, *s.* reach. 1461. Reche *error* for Reche *per* 5526: Reche *vy* (type), *s.* give over 758 see the note. Reche, *pr.* *s.* gives, hands over 1654. Reche, *pr.* gives, 1665: reaches out to, 1996. Reche, Reches, offers, 1906: Reche *vy*, *pr.* *pl.* reach up, 817: Reche, reach, 817: Reche, Reche, reach, hand over, 1791: Reche, Reche, *vy*, *pr.* *pl.* hand up, deliver up, 938: Reind Taught, *pr.* *pl.* reached 1405.
- Reche Reche, *pr.* to relate 1374: Reched, *pp.* related. 521. A.S. *reccan*.
- Reche, *s.* riches treasure. 3951.
- Reckend, *pp.* reckoned 5501.
- Records, *pr.* *s.* records informis tells. 114: Recordex, 709 1044: Recordex, 2060.
- Recount, *pr.* *s.* won, gained, 19.
- Recount Rechner, *imp.* *s.* recover win for himself, 754.
- Reed, *adj.* afraid, full of dread 1040.
2510. Swed. *rädd*, Dan. *ræd*. See Rædoest.
- Rede, *v.* advise, 2337; *per.* to read, 630; 1 *pr.* *s.* counsel, advise, 2166, 2454, 2601, 3115; read, 1646: Redis, *pr.* *s.* 2 *p.* teliest, 244: Redes, *pr.* *s.* reads, 1182, 1296; Redis (Redes), counsels, 1175: Rede, 1 *pr.* *pl.* read, 1077; Redes (Redyn), *pr.* *pl.* 1922; Redd, *pt.* *s.* 1 *p.* 1 read, 3855; Redd *pt.* *pl.* read, 2471; Redd (Redyn, *pr.* *pl.*), advised, 2872; Red, read, 2344; Redd, *pp.* read, 3588: Rede (Redde), 2843: Red, 1950: Rede, *imp.* *s.* advise, 5194. A.S. *reðan*.
- Rede, *s.* counsel. 1040. See above.
- Rede, *adj.* red. 25, 425, 1665, 1779, 4176: Redes, 3951.
- Rede, *adj.* ready 3584. See Redy.
- Rede, read. Rede-ryse, read-rushes, reads 3558: Redis, *pl.* 3515, 3832, 4206.
- Redell, *s.* curtain 4930. O.F. *ridel*, F. *rideau*.
- Reden (Rider, *pp.* ridden through, 1940. Redyn (Rydyr), ridden, 1203.
- Reder, *adj.* without counsel, at a loss 1040.
- Redy, *adj.* ready. 1382 5558.
- Redy (Rede, *adj.* red, ruddy, 3569.
- Rede, *adj.* red. 5510.
- Redis, *pl.* reads. 5461. See Rede.
- Refert, *pr.* *pl.* 2 *p.* feed, refresh yourselves 4587. Formed from L. *refectus*.
- Refis, *pr.* *s.* parties off, 5153; Refid, *pp.* ref. 5175. See Refi.
- Refreshind, *pp.* refreshed 3808.
- Refrayne, *pr.* *pl.* 2 *p.* only, refrain, 4638.
- Refi, *pt.* *s.* with *vy*, tort up, 409; Refi, *pp.* taken away (from), 2510, 4910. See Refis.
- Refuse, *s.* refuse, 1287. A false reading: see Ashm. MS.
- Regiol, *s.* regiol, 992; Regions, *pl.* 19, 1048, 1054.
- Regne, Reines, *pl.* *s.* realm, 1949. See Regne.
- Regne, kingdom, 1140, 3090, 3164; Realne, 2653.



Reigne, *ger* to reign, 314, 436.  
(Reyne), *a* 1502; Reigned, *pt* *a*.  
13.

Rehers, *a* rehearse, relate, describe,  
21; consider, 329.

Rehevis, *gr* *a* cheers, encourages  
(them), 3999; revives, revives his  
courage, 3320. "Reheviser Re-  
heviser encourager reprendre  
des forces." Roquefort.

Rejoyed, *pp* rejoiced, glad, 2260,  
3227; Rejoiced, 3407.

Rejoyced, *pp* rejoiced, 3112.

Rekanthis, *pl* chains, 3129. See  
Rekanthis.

Reke, smoke, incense, 1566.

Reken, *ger* to reckon, account, tell,  
150, 1206, 1443; to calculate,  
count, *tl*, 2269; Reken (Reken),  
*ger* to reckon, 771; Reken, *gr* *a*  
relates, 1280; Rekind, *l* *pt* *a*  
related, 4124; Rekind, *pt* *a* pro-  
nounced, uttered, 4381. See  
Reken.

Rekanthis, *pl* chains, 3642. A.S.  
*rekanthis*, *leal* rekenr. Hence  
*prov* E. *rekanthis*, *leal* chain-  
crock (Halliwell). See Rekan-  
this.

Reks, *a* odour perfume, 4377.  
A.S. *reks*.

Reks, *gr* *a* smokes, smokes, 366.  
See above.

Rekenly (Rekenly) *adv* hastily,  
2334; Rekenly, quickly soon,  
2329; Rekenly, 794. A.S.  
*reken*.

Reken, *ger* to count, 84; Reken,  
*a* account, 1404; Reken Re-  
ken, *gr* *a* utters, 2334. E.  
*reken*.

Reken, *a* control, takes head to, 21.  
A.S. *reken*, to count.

Relecks (Relecks), *pl* cullies, 1372.

Remembres (Remembres), *gr* *a* re-  
members, 2544; remem, 1233.  
Remembres, 2555; Remembrat,  
1095.

Remnant, *a* part, 22.

Removes (Removes), *a* removes, with-  
draw, 1373; Removes, *gr* *a* re-  
moves, 4333; Removes Removes,  
2538; Removes Removes, 2035.  
(Removes), comes up, 2943; Re-

moved, *pt* *a* removed, 1048,  
1450; Removed, 3704.

Removes, *pl* cullies, 86.

Rem (Rem), *a* man, 3363.

Rem, *a* refuse, 3554. O.T. *rem*  
Lat. *remigere*.

Removed, *adv* *ger* for Removmt,  
removed, 2823. The English  
MS. has removed, *a* removed,  
tomb.

Rems, the same as Rems, man,  
466.

Rems (Rems), *gr* *a* rings, 1385.

Remsmt, *pp* *to* *adv* passionate,  
339. See Remmt.

Rems, man, 330, 339, 377, 392,  
1203, 1211, 2336; Rems, *pl*  
man, warriors, 21, 177; Remsmt,  
2374; Remsmt, 368. A.S. *rem*.

Rems, *a* cunt, 1450.

Rem, payment tribute. To come in  
payment, in tribute, 4331.

Rem, *pp* *rem* broken, 177.

Remsmt, *adv* furious, 2941; Re-  
msmt, passionate, loud, 387; "Re-  
msmt, furious North."—Halliwell.

Remsmt, *adv* vehemently vigor-  
ously 4331. See above.

Rems, *gr* *pl* *l* *g* *curum*, 3795.

Reportant, *gr* *pt* reporting, unde-  
ring, or sounding back, 2414.

Reprms Reprms, *a* reprms, man,  
2421.

Reprms, *gr* *pt* *l* *g* *reprms*, man,  
4362; Reprms, *pp* *adv* *adv*,  
1784.

Reprms, *pp* *adv* *adv*, *adv* *adv*,  
3443.

Reprms, *pp* *adv* *adv*, 2265.

Reps, *a* war build, 4361; Reps,  
2265; Reps, *pt* *a* *adv*, 1031;  
*pp* 4068; Reps, *adv*, 31;  
(Reps), *adv*, 1773.

Reps, *a* *adv*, *adv*, 138; Reps,  
387; Reps, *adv*, 2900. A.S.  
*reprms*.

Reps (Reps) *a* *adv* *adv*, 2974.  
See Reps.

Repsmt (Repsmt), *a* *adv*, 324.

Repsmt, *gr* *a* *adv*, 2223;  
*gr* *pt* 32; Repsmt, *pt* *a*  
removed, *adv*, 3174; removed,  
1182; Repsmt, *pt* *pt* 1430,  
2428; Repsmt, *pt* *pt* *adv*,  
2428.

- 1124; Resayue (Resaue), *imp. s.*  
 3115; Resayues, *imp. pl.* 3315;  
 Resayued (Resaued), *pp.* received,  
 1646.  
 Resche, *s.* rush, 4126, 4726.  
 Reschowe, *ger.* to rescue, aid, 5162;  
 (Rescew), 2813. See Reskowe.  
 Rese (Rase), *s.* hurry, 1996. A.S.  
*ræs.* See Res.  
 Resild, *pp.* reticulated, covered with  
 network, 4126. O.F. *resel*, F. *ré-*  
*seau*, from Low Lat. *retiolum*, net-  
 work. The sense is 'as covered  
 with network as a rush,' which  
 probably means no more than  
 'furrowed like a rush,' or rough,  
 without any very close resem-  
 blance to actual network. Other-  
 wise, if the reading be corrupt,  
 the easiest correction is to read  
*refild*, or rather *rifeld*, i. e. rivel-  
 led, wrinkled.  
 Reskowe, *ger.* to rescue, 5202. See  
 Reschowe.  
 Reson, reason, 1670; cause, 244;  
 talk, 3524; sentence, 387; Resons,  
*pl.* accounts, 1280.  
 (Ressynnys); see Risonis.  
 Reste, *s.* rest; To reste (At rist), at  
 rest, set, spoken of the sun, 686.  
 Resyn, *pp.* risen, 82, 351.  
 Rethere, *pl.* the cattle, 1239. See  
*hreoðer* in Stratmann. A.S. *hrīðer*,  
*hrýðer*; *pl.* *hrīðeru*.  
 Retorik, rhetoric, 4360.  
 Reuere, *s.* river, 5595; (Reuer),  
 2894; Revers, *pl.* 4822.  
 Reuerence, *s.* reverence, respect, 197,  
 1124, 1182, 1646, 3463.  
 Reuerence, *pr. s.* does reverence to,  
 1600; Reuererst, *pt. pl.* 2344.  
 (Reuerently), *adv.* reverently, 817.  
 Reueschid (Reuest, *pp.*), *pt. s. refl.*  
 dressed himself, 1530.  
 Reuest; see Raeste.  
 Reuffully, *adv.* sadly, 3083.  
 Reuire, *s.* river, 5279; Reuir, 3852.  
 Reuth, pity, 2244; Reuthe (Reuth),  
 sorrow, grief, 1280, 2813.  
 Revell, *ger.* to spend in revelling,  
 3463.  
 Reviles (Revylez), *pr. s.* reviles,  
 739.  
 Rew (Rewe), *v.* rue, repent, 1975;  
 Rewis, *pr. s.* 3137; (Rewys), *pr.*  
*s. refl.* repents, 871; Rewid, *pt.*  
*pl.* repented, 3524; Rewis, *imp.*  
*pl.* have pity, 3314.  
 Rewfully, *adv.* ruefully, sadly, 2843.  
 Rewill, *s.* rule, 4422; (Rewle), rule,  
 ritual, 1500; Rewle, 2894.  
 Rewle, *ger.* to guide, 5542; to order,  
 3609; (Rewle), *v.* rule, 799\*; Re-  
 welle, 1 *pr. pl.* rule, 4332.  
 Rewme, *s.* kingdom, realm, 49, 80,  
 82, 185, 197; (Realme), 813,  
 3241; (Reme), 1740; Rewmys  
 (Realmes), *pl.* kingdoms, 2363.  
 Rewthe, *s.* pity, sad sight, 4010.  
 See Reuth.  
 Reyne, *s.* rein, 2973.  
 Rezt, *adv.* rightly, 1740.  
 Rezt (*perhaps*), *adj.* right, upright,  
 2943. For the spelling, see above.  
 Rial, *adv.* royally, grandly, 4360.  
 Riall, *adj.* royal, 244, 941, 3314.  
 Rially, *adv.* royally, 1530, 1572;  
 (Ryally), 3210.  
 Rialme, *s.* realm, dominion, 20.  
 Rials, *pl.* men of the royal rank or  
 kin, 3443.  
 Rialte, *s.* royal power, rule, 3534;  
 royalty, royal state, 22, 5122;  
 (Riallte), royalty, pride, 2428.  
 Ribans; see Rabies.  
 (Ribbez), *pl.* ribs, 775\*.  
 Ricchest, *adj. superl.* richest, 4822.  
 Richas (Richez), *s.* riches, 1178.  
 Riche, *adj.* rich, powerful, 197, 351,  
 871, 992, &c.; (Ryche), 1530.  
 Riches, *s.* wealth, 20, 1663.  
 Riches, *pr. s. refl.* prepares himself,  
 5056. See Gloss. to Gawayne  
 and the Grene Knight.  
 Richest, *adj.* richest, 1572.  
 Ridars (Ryders), *pl.* riders, knights,  
 1054.  
 Ridding (Riddyng), *s.* clearing, ras-  
 ing (a town), 2244.  
 Riddour (Raddour), *s.* harshness,  
 2329. See Raddour.  
 Ride, *ger.* to ride, 82, 999; (Ryde),  
*ger.* to ride over, 1731; *v.* 1502;  
 Ridis (Rydez), *pr. s.* rides, 943,  
 2062; (Rides), 1319, 1450; Riden  
 (Ryde), 1 *pr. pl.* ride, 1850; Ride  
 (Rydyn), 1 *pr. pl. subj.* 2166;  
 Ride (Ryden, MS. dyden), *pr. pl.*



- ride, 1803; (Ridyn), *pr. pl.* ride, 796.
- Rife, *adj.* abundant, 1663.
- Rifte, *error for Riste or Reste, ger.* to rest, 4064. See note.
- Rige (Rigge), *s.* back, 2973; (Rige), 784\*; (Riggez), *pl.* 775\*.
- (Right), *adj.* right, 784\*.
- (Right), *adv.* just, 798\*.
- (Rightes hym), *pr. s.* sits upright, 839\*.
- Rime (Reme), *s.* rim, 1850.
- Ringe, *s.* ring, border, 1850; (Rynggez), *pl.* ring-mail, lit. rings, 2980.
- Risches (Rechez), *s.* riches, treasure, 3115.
- Rise (Ryses), 2 *pr. s.* risest, 1494; Risis (Ryses), *pr. s.* rises, 2347.
- Risonis (Ressynynys), *s. pl.* heads of oats, 3060. "*Rizome*, the head of the oat; *Chesh.* 'A plume, or bell, or bunch of oats, and such other corn as does not grow in an ear;' Kennett, MS. Lansd. 1033." — Halliwell. Cf. Prov. Swed. *ressma*, an ear of corn, especially of oats, a spike of corn (Rietz).
- Rist, *v.* rest, leave off, 22; Ristis, *pr. s.* 5654; Ristes, 4920.
- Riued (Ryfe), *adj.* abundant, full of abundance, 1740, 1779. Icel. *rifr*, rife; *reifa*, to bestow.
- Rigt, *adv.* right, immediately, 95, 431; just, exactly, 101; (Right), exactly, 1365; (Ryght), just, 2483; Rigt as (Right as), just as, 1756.
- Rigtis (Rightez), *pl.* rights, 3241.
- Rigtwisnes, righteousness, 4424; Rigtwysnes (Ryghtwysnes), 3383.
- Robies (Rubies), *pl.* rubies, 1663.
- Robry, *s.* robbery, 4563.
- Roche, *s.* rock, 5496; Rochis, 4864; Roches, 4877.
- (Rode), rude, 829\*.
- (Rodely), *adv.* rudely, boldly, 784\*.
- Rodogarus, mother of Darius, 3314; Rodogars (Rodogors), 2819; (Rodogoras), 2824.
- Rofe, *pt. s.* tore, hurt, 638.
- Rogh, *adj.* rough, 4864; Rogh, 4126, 5133.
- (Roke), *s.* rock, 4849; Rokkis, *pl.* 4864.
- (Rolland), *pres. pt.* rolling, galloping, 794\*.
- Romance, *s.* the original Romance, 488, 4133; (Romayns), 2900; Romaunce (Romanys), 1077.
- Romayn, Roumania (?), 5670.
- Rome, Rome, 2328, 4649.
- Romys, *pr. s.* roars, cries, 612. Cf. A.S. *hréam*, noise, cry. (Better spelt *remys*.)
- Ronde, *adj.* round, 1502.
- (Rongen), *pt. pl.* rang, 775.
- (Ronke), *adj.* rank, abundant, 1762.
- Ronkenes, *s.* rankness, 3350.
- Ronsees, *pl.* (Rounsey, *s.*) horses, 2887. M.E. *rouncy*, in Chaucer. See Rounsy.
- Roomes, *imp. pl.* roam, stretch out, 2466. See *roam* in my Etym. Dict.
- (Rooues), *imp. pl.* rove, roam (after), 2466.
- Ropand, *pres. part.* rushing down, falling swiftly, 4176. Icel. *hrapa*, to fall, fall in ruin.
- Rosan, Roxana, 315, 3449, 3463.
- Rose, *s.* rose, 4543.
- Rose, 1 *pr. pl.* praise, 4313; Rosid, *pp.* celebrated, 5122. Icel. *hrósa*.
- Rote, *s.* root, 4424; Rotis, *pl.* 409, 3941.
- Rottillyng, *s.* disturbance, 943. Cf. E. *rattle*, which is often provincially pronounced *rottle*.
- Roue, *pt. s.* rived, pierced, 1216.
- Roune, whisper, secret, 244.
- Rounsy, charger, 817. See Ronsees.
- Route, *s.* company, set, 2378; throng, 1319; (Rowte), rout, host, 958, 1239.
- Row (Rawe), *adj.* rough, 2980.
- Rowme, *s.* room, 4920; place, 330.
- Rowme, *adj.* roomy, large, 1762. A.S. *rūm*.
- (Rowmyd), *pt. s.* made room for (*but read Removed*), 1048.
- Rowste, *s.* voice, 488. Icel. *raust*, Dan. *röst*.
- Rughe, *adj.* rough, 4726, 4877.
- Rughere, *adj.* rougher, 3815.
- Ruschid (Rushes, *pr. s.*), *pt. s.* hurled, 1320.

- Russe, Russia, 5670.  
 Ruyde, *adj.* rough, turbulent, 5595.  
 Ruze, *adj.* rough, 3852; wild, 1762.  
 Rybans; see Rabies.  
 Ryde, *ger.* to ride, 915, 2813, 762\*;  
   Rydes, *pr. s.* rides, 1284; Rydis  
   (Ryden), *pr. pl.* 1239; Rydyn,  
   *pr. pl.* ride (or *pt. pl.*), rode, 1256.  
 Ryfe, *adj.* rife, plain, evident, 1352.  
 Ryfenes, *s.* rifeness, plenteousness,  
   abundance, 1887.  
 Ryft, *s.* rift, cleft, 1756.  
 (Ryfyng), *s.* rending, 747\*.  
 Rymed, *pt. s.* stretched, 4931.  
 Ryn, *ger.* to run, 1352; Rynnes,  
   *pr. s.* 1323, 1513; (Rynnys),  
   2900; (Rynny), *pr. pl.* 2979;  
   Rynand, *pres. part.* running,  
   3737.  
 Rynge, ring, 425, 436.  
 Rynges, *pr. s.* rings, 775.  
 Rynoceros, rhinoceros, 4133; Rynos-  
   eros, 5133.  
 Rype, *adj.* ripe, 1347.  
 Ryse (Rise), *v.* rise, 2438; Rysis,  
   *pr. s.* 330, 392; (Risez), 782;  
   Rysys, 2871; Ryse (= Risis),  
   557; (Rysys); (Rysys), 2870.  
 Ryse, *s.* rushes, 3858. See note.  
 Ryst (Rist), rest, 2516; To ryst,  
   at rest, 374.  
 (Rytte), *pp.* torn, 775\*. Icel. *rita*,  
   to scratch, cut (hence also to tear,  
   as G. *reissen*); cognate with A.S.  
   *uritan*.  
 Sa, *adv.* so, thus, 146, 259, 268, 269,  
   459, &c.; (So), 840.  
 Sa ma aydeus (So madeus), so may  
   God aid me, 729. *For* So m'aide  
   Deus, so may God aid me.  
 Saarde, Sardis, 5666.  
 Sable (Sabyll), *adj.* sable, black,  
   1126.  
 Sable, *s.* sable, black colour, 3946.  
 Sacchell (Sachell), *s.* wise man, phi-  
   losopher (?), 716. Used ironi-  
   cally; it seems to be formed from  
   O.F. *sache*, wise (Roquefort), Low  
   Lat. *sapius*, wise  
 Sacrife, *v.* sacrifice, 5098 (*where read*  
   sacrific[e]); Sacrifyce, *pr. s.* sacr-  
   fices, 1083; (Sacrificed), *pt. s.* 1083.  
 Sacrifis, *s.* sacrifice, 4461; (Sacrif-  
   fese), 1486; *miswritten* Sacrife,  
   2182.  
 Sacrilag, *s.* sacrilege, 4561.  
 Sad, *adj.* settled, 2895; Sadd, *adj.*  
   full, complete, 3883; Sadd sowme,  
   close rank, lit. close (or full)  
   number, 5559; Sadd (Sad), *adj.*  
   close, firm, resolute, 2614; sad,  
   5052. A.S. *sæd*.  
 Sadils, *pl.* saddles, 5453. See Sadyll.  
 Sadly, *adv.* seriously, 347; fixedly,  
   1859; forcibly, 4146; firmly,  
   securely, 2568; with determin-  
   ation, 1139; Sadli, sadly, 5584.  
 Sadnes (Sadnesse), *s.* staidness, so-  
   berness, steadiness, 1017.  
 (Sadyll), saddle, 790\*, 795\*, 839\*.  
   See Sadils.  
 Safe, *adj.* safe, 1677; Safe vouch  
   (Saue woche), 2 *p. pr. pl. subj.*  
   vouchsafe, 2355; and see Vouchid.  
 Saffron, *pp.* coloured with saffron,  
   4600.  
 Safirs (Saphirez), *pl.* sapphires, 1535;  
   Safers, 4880.  
 Sage, *adj.* wise, 1649, 4704.  
 Sagely, *adv.* wisely, 3359.  
 (Sagh), *pt. s.* saw, 770\*.  
 Saghe, *s.* saw, saying, 4997.  
 Sagittarius, the name of a place,  
   1070.  
 Sai, *v.* say, tell of, 5551; Sais (Says),  
   *pr. s.* 2 *p.* sayest, 730; Sais, *pr. s.*  
   says, 80, 192; (Says), 881, 1371;  
   Sais, *pr. pl.* say, 1732; Saied, *pt. s.*  
   said, 4941; Said, 96, 228; (Sayde),  
   1355; Said (Saydyn), *pt. pl.* 1815;  
   Sai, *imp. s.* 2 *p.* say, 5193; Sais  
   (Says), *imper. pl.* 2 *p.* say ye, 890.  
 Saiee (Sayle), *ger.* to sail, 1026;  
   Sailand, *pres. pt.* sailing, 61.  
 Sailers, *pl.* sailors, 4359.  
 Sailid, *pt. pl.* assailed, 5559. *Short*  
   *for* Asailid.  
 (Saire), *adv.* sorely, 2313.  
 Sake, *s.* sake, 5, 1813, 2022; guilt,  
   3213. A.S. *sacu*.  
 Salamon, Solomon, 1649.  
 Salcary, *Lat.* Soltani, 5501.  
 Sale, *s.* hall, chamber, room, 48, 222,  
   332, 487, 502, 1183, 1830, 2063,  
   2929, 3074, 3229, 3685, 4432,  
   5339; Sales, *pl.* halls, tents, 4016.  
   A.S. *sæl* (Grein).

- Sale (Saule), *s.* soul, 1640.
- Sall, 1 *pr. s.* must, am to, 3194; Sall, *pr. s.* 2 *p.* shalt, 688, 774; Sall, *pr. s.* shall, 177, 184, 251, 403, 519; Sal, 388; Sal (Shal), *pl.* 1358.
- Salmary, *s.* baggage, collection of instruments, &c., 126. Low Lat. *salmaria*, the same as *sagmaria*, baggage.
- Salt, *adj.* salt, 154.
- Salve, *s.* unguent, 4976; Salves, salves, 4343; Saluys, 3132.
- Salve, *v.* heal, 3132; Salues, *pr. s.* salves, heals, 4683.
- Salus, *s.* salutation, 4647.
- Salutis, *pl.* salutations, greetings, 3088; (Salutes), 1914; (Salutez), 1490; Salutes, *pl.* greetings, 2759, 2802.
- Same, *adj.* same, 288, 741\*.
- Same, *in phr.* In same, i. e. together (though here used as a mere expletive), 2646. "They gaderyd hem *insame*;" Rich. Coer de Lion, ed. Weber, 4386.
- Samen, *adv.* together, 162, 175, 2351, 3671; (Sampnen), 1550; In samen, 5295. See Samme.
- Samme, *adv.* together, 5098. See Samen.
- Sammen (Samme), 1 *pr. s.* collect, assemble, 3168; Sammes (Sampnez), *pr. s.* gathers, 1520; (Sampnes), *pr. pl.* collect, assemble, 2351; Samed, *pt. s.* assembled, 1026; Samyd, 51; Sammed, *pp.* assembled, 2614; Samed (Sampned), collected, 1732; Samed (Sammyd), *pp.* assembled, gathered, 2828; Sammed, *pp.* filled, gathered full, 5290. A.S. *samnian*.
- Sampill, *s.* sample, example, proof, 5306; see Ensampill.
- Sampson, 1202, 1221, 1264, 1288.
- Sand, *s.* land, 4299.
- Sande, *s.* message, 3780; Sand (Sond), embassy, 2524; Sandis (Sondez), *pl.* messages, 890.
- Sande, 1 *pr. s.* send, 3168.
- Sandisman, *s.* messenger, 4234; (Sondesman), 2866, 2964; Sandisnen, *pl.* messengers, 2399, 5100; (Sandesmen), 1830; (Sondesmen), 1790; (Sendesmen), ambassadors, 1170.
- Sange, song, 253, 1645.
- Sannd, *s.* sand, 5555.
- Sanng, *pt. pl.* sang, 3698.
- Sanys (read Sauys), *pr. pl.* save, preserve, 1749.
- Sapience, wisdom, 253, 1022; Sapient, 3725; knowledge, 622; Sapient (Sapience), wisdom, 2374; (Sapiens), 2526; Sapientis, *pl.* wise acts, 4449.
- Sarazens (Sariauntez), *pl.* Saracens, 1510.
- Sare, *s.* sore, harm, 3771; Saris, *pl.* 3132, 4343.
- Sare, *adj.* sore, severe, 797.
- Sare, *adv.* sorely, 385, 531, 856, 1464; (Sore), 2532, 2698.
- (Sarkenly), 2401. Perhaps an error for *sekirly*, as in A.; or miswritten for *certainly*.
- Saroparis (Satrapers), *pl.* satraps, 1913.
- Sary, *adj.* sorry, miserable, 665, 1735, 4417; poor, 4037.
- Sat, *pt. s.* sat, 482; Satte, 3336.
- Satraparis (Satrapars), *pl.* satraps, 2758; Satrapaires, 2694; Satrapairs (Satrapers), 1937.
- Sattild, *pp.* settled, 4429.
- Sauagyus, *pl.* savages, 3914.
- Sauand, saving, except, 4037; Sauand bot, except, 3707.
- Saudid (Sawdett), *pp.* stuffed, set, 1535. F. *souder*, to solder, lit. to make firm; Lat. *solidare*.
- Saudiours (Saugeours), *pl.* soldiers, 1921, 2105; (Songeours), 2828; (Sowiours), 763. See Saugeours.
- Saue (Safe), *v.* save, heal, 2558, 3087; Sued, *pt. s.* saved, 5586. See Sauyd.
- Sau, *prep.* save, except, 3842.
- Sauely, *adv.* safely, 3771. See note.
- (Saugeours), *pl.* soldiers, 2172. See Audiours. Cf. prov. E. *sodger*.
- Saule, soul, 742, 754, 3089, 3474; (Sawle), 1786, 2628; Sauls, *pl.* 4429.
- Sauour, *s.* smell, sense of smell, 4634.

- Sauour, *s.* knowledge, 4429, 4474.  
Cf. F. *savoir*.
- Saute, *s.* assault, 1388, 2221, 2380, 3360; (Sawte), 1156, 1431, 1452, 1766, 2135; (Sawt), 1968.
- Sauyd (Saud), *pt. s.* 1 *p.* saved, 2093; (Saffed), *pp.* preserved, 2668. See Saue.
- Sawe, *ger.* to sow, 4404; 2 *pr. pl.* 4580; Sawis, 1 *pr. pl.* 4268.
- Sawe, *pt. s.* saw, 266; (Saw), *pt. pl.* 1616.
- Sawe, *s.* speech, saying, 1845; (Saw), 863; Sawis, *pl.* words, 5115; sayings, 51, 99, 200, 262; (Sawes), 1655; Sawes, 3567; (Sawes), *proj. ecies*, 797\*.
- Sawis, *pl.* saws, 5557. See Saze.
- Sawourd, *pt. s.* savoured, tasted, 4821.
- Say, *s.* silk, 4600.
- Say, *v.* say, tell, 51, 165, 1097; *ger.* 240, 253, 294; Say, *pr. s.* 1 *p.* say, address, 2735; Sayes, *pr. s.* says, 5002; (Says), 1207; Sayn, *pr. pl.* tell, 2112; Sayd, *pt. s.* 1 *p.* said, 447; 2 *pt. s.* said-est, 246; *pt. s.* 167, 268; *pp.* 262; Say, *imp. s.* tell, 288.
- Saynes, *pl.* nets, 4270. F. *seine*, L. *sagena*.
- Sayntis, *pl.* saints, 4.
- Saynt-ware (Sanctuary), sanctuary, 1567. O.F. *saintuaire*.
- Saze, *s.* saying, saw, 4220; sentence, 5192; answer, 751; (Sagh), 3249; Sazes, *pl.* sayings, words, 4478; (Sawes), 1795, 2322, 2774; (Sawez), 1818; (Sawys), *pl.* sayings, 2356.
- Saze, *s.* saw, 4096. See Sawis.
- Saze, *pt. s.* 1 *p.* saw, 475; (Sawe), 1635; *pt. s.* 61, 222, 419, &c.; (Sawgh), 2072; (Saw), 1433, 2112; (See), 2301; (Se), 1796; Saze, *pt. pl.* saw, 1383, 4003; (Seghen), 2854. See Se.
- Saztill (Saghtyll), *imp. s.* make peace, be reconciled, 865. A.S. *sahltian*.
- Scales, *pl.* scales, 3895.
- Scalid, *adj.* scaled, furnished with scales, scaly, 3865.
- Scamandra, Scamander, 2119.
- Scath, *s.* harm, 3915.
- Scence, *s.* incense, 4976.
- Sceptoure (Septour), *s.* sceptre, 3161.
- Scere, *ger.* to scare, 3865.
- Shade, *s.* shade, 3800.
- Schaft, shaft, spear, 780; shaft of a spear, 1402; Schaftis, rays, 4816; (Shaftez), shafts, 789.
- Schaftis, *pl.* chaps, jaws, 4797. *Put for* Chaftis. Icel. *kjaptr*, jaw.
- Shakis, *pr. s.* shakes, 551.
- Schalk, man, 469; Schalkis (Shalkys), *pl.* men, 929; (Shalkez), 2454.
- Schame (Shame), *s.* shame, 1800; disgrace, 748.
- Schamed, *pp.* ashamed, 469.
- Schap, *s.* shape, body, 4301; destiny, 180; Schapp, shape, 4761.
- Schapid, *pt. s.* escaped, 3004. *For* Aschapid.
- Schapis, *pr. s.* shapes, forms, 4026; Schape, *pr. s. subj.* incline, work towards, 3371; Schapen, *pp.* decreed, 178.
- Schard, *pp.* cut, i.e. formed, 4675. From the weak verb *scharen*, of which the *pt. t.* *scharde* occurs in Sir Degrevant, 1630. See Halliwell.
- Scharpe, *adj.* sharp, 602.
- Scharpid, *pp.* sharpened, 3580.
- Scharply (Sharply), *adv.* sharply, 1299, 1391.
- Schathill (Schatell), *adj.* harmful, dangerous, powerful to injure, 2992. See *Scapel* in glos. to Allit. Poems. Goth. *skathuls*.
- Schatird, *pt. s.* shattered, 4150. See Alto-schatird.
- Schauadry (Cheualdry), *s.* baseness, 3371. 'Shavelder, an idle vagabond;' Halliwell.
- Schauyn, *pp.* shaven, 231.
- Schaw, *s.* shaw, wood, 4730, 4731; Schawis, *pl.* groves, thickets, 4382.
- Schawe, *ger.* to shew, 601; Schawid, *pp.* 4390.
- Scheld, *ger.* to shield, protect; To scheld with oure schap, to protect our forms with, 4301.
- Schell, *s.* shell, 3695; Schellis, *pl.* 5469.
- Schel'is, *pl.* sheilings, shelters, 4049. Cf. Icel. *skjól*.

- Schemerand, *pres. pt.* glittering, shimmering, 483, 5592. See Schondirhand.
- Schend (Shend), *v.* disgrace, 3371 ; Schende (Shende), *ger.* to destroy, 870.
- Schene, *adj.* beautiful, 5592 ; splendid, 483, 780 ; *adj. as sb.* bright one, fair maid, 4759.
- Schering (Sheryng), *s.* shearing, cutting, 2624.
- Schethe (*pl.* Shethier), sheath, 802.
- Scheue, *s.* shive, splinter of a broken spear, 1402. *Better* Schiue ; but see below.
- Scheuerand (Sheuerand), *pr. pt.* shivering, splintering, 789.
- Scheuyn (Sheuen), *pr. pl.* shake, 776. Cf. *cheveren*, to quiver, shiver, in the *Morte Arthure* and *Troy-book*.
- Schew, *s.* cloud, sky, 4865. Cf. Icel. *ský*, a cloud ; Halliwell gives *skew* = sky, from MS. Cot. Vesp. D. 7.
- Schewe, *ger.* to show, 15 ; (Shewe), 2029 ; *v.* 255, 684 ; Schewis, *pr. s.* shews, 286 ; (Schiewez), beholds, 2669 ; Schewys, shews, 608 ; (Schewez), 2919 ; Schewid, *pt. pl.* shewed, 4049 ; Schewid, *pp.* shewn, 180 ; Schewyd, 474 ; Schewid (Schewed), 1896.
- Schewere, *s.* mirror, 4854.
- Schidis (Shidez), *pl.* splinters, fragments, 789. A.S. *scide*.
- Schild (Sheld), shield, 780 ; (Shelde), 1402 ; Schildis, *pl.* shields, 3797, 5560.
- Schilde, *pr. s. imper.* shield, defend, forbid, 3521.
- Schilli (Shilly), *adv.* shrilly, loudly, 929. "Schylle, *Sonorus* ;" Cath. Anglicum.
- Schilling (Schelyng), *pl.* shillings, 3174.
- Schind, *v.* disgrace, 5335. See Schend.
- Schipis, *pl.* ships, 65, 113 ; (Schippes), 1367 ; Schippis (Slippes), 1159.
- Schire, *adj.* bright, 483, 5018 ; sheer, mere, 4301. Icel. *skirr*.
- Schirkind, *pt. pl.* cleared, rendered bright, brightened, 4816. Cf. Icel. *skira*, to brighten, cleanse.
- Scho, she, 241, 257, 268, 352.
- Schogs, *pr. s. refl.* shivers, shakes, trembles, 5018. See *Shog* in Halliwell.
- Schoke, *pt. s.* shook, 5018.
- Schomes (*in MS. for* Schoures), *pl.* showers, 1299.
- Schondirhand, *pres. pt., error for* Schemerand (*Shemerand in D.*), shimmering, gleaming, 780. See Schemerand.
- Schondirhed (Shenderet), *pp.* slain, 2048. *Formed as if from a verb* Schonderen, or Schenderen, frequentative of Schonden, Schenden, to disgrace ; see Schend, Schont.
- Schont, *s.* jest, disgrace, 469. *Put for* schond ; see *schand* in *Stratmann*.
- Schontid ; see Schoutis, Schount.
- Schort, *adj.* short, 630.
- Schote (Shote), *s.* shot, i.e. stone shot from engines, 2624.
- Schote (Shote), *ger.* to shoot, 1064 ; Schotes (Shoton), *pr. pl.* 1391 ; Schot (Shoton), *pp.* shot, 1299.
- Schount, *ger.* avoid, 180. E. *shunt*.
- Schouris, *pl.* showers, hence sorrows, woes, 529. See also Schomes.
- Schoute, *s.* shout, 4730.
- Schoutis (Shotes), *pr. pl.* shout, 929 ; Schoutid, *pt. pl.* shouted, clamoured, 580 (but here we should rather read *schontid*, i.e. removed, shrank, lit. *shunted*). See the note, and see Schount.
- Schowid, *pp.* shoved, used force, 4759.
- Sc[h]rewe, *s.* mischievous creature, 4854 ; Schrewis, *pl.* ill-disposed lads, 628.
- Schrikis, *pr. pl.* shriek, 3866 ; (Srikes), 929.
- Schrine, *s.* shrine, 5592. See Schryne.
- Schroude, vestment, robe, 483 ; covering, 4301. A.S. *scrúd*.
- Schryne, *s.* shrine, 4675. See Schrine.
- Schudering (Shoderyng), *s.* crashing, clashing, lit. shuddering, 2624.

- Schuldire, *s.* shoulder, 5240 ; Schulder (Shulder), 1090.
- Schurrys, *pl.* sheds, 4049. Icel. *skúrr*, a shed.
- Schut (Shotyn), *pr. pl.* shoot, 1413.
- Schynes, *pr. s.* shines, 3862 ; (Shynes), 705.
- Sckerres, *pl.* scars, scaurs, rough rocks, 4865. Icel. *sker*.
- Sekonfet, *pt. s.* discomfited, 4802.
- Scott (Shotten), *pt. pl.* shot, dashed, leapt, hurried, 2454.
- Scoghe, *s.* wood, shaw, 3915. Icel. *skógr*.
- Scolaid, *pt. s.* studied, 645. Chaucer has *scoleye*, Prol.
- Scole, school, 621, 641, 645 ; Scolis, *pl.* 4363, 4610.
- Scolere, scholar, 641.
- Scopid, *pt. pl.* escaped, 3915. *Put for Scapid*.
- Scopulus, a look-out place, 1575. See the note.
- Score, *s.* score (twenty), 1372, 4200 ; ix score, one hundred and eighty, 3177.
- Scorpions, *pl.* scorpions, 3865, 4200.
- Scortis, *pr. s.* (for Schortis), grows short, wanes, 3298.
- Scoures (Showrez), *pl.* showers, 2048.
- Scriptour (Scripture), writing, 2119 ; Scripture (Scriptur), text, 1575.
- Scutis, *pr. pl.* project, 4865. Icel. *skúta*.
- Se, *v.* see, 250, 344 ; (See), 688 ; Se, *ger.* 356 ; to look upon, 1528 ; Se (See), 1 *pr. s.* 1998 ; 2 *pr. pl.* 1802 ; Se, *pr. pl.* 1 *p. subj.* see, 1846 ; (Se), *pt. s.* saw, 1590 ; Se, *imp. s.* 1914 ; (See), 702.
- Se, *s.* sea, 83.
- (Seche), *adj.* such, 1191, 1819.
- Seche, *ger.* to seek, 408 ; Seches (Sekes), seeks, goes, 1056. See below.
- Sechis, *pr. pl.* come, 4976. A better reading would be *as sykis out of wellis*, like streams out of wells. *Siche* is a Southern form of *sike*, a stream, torrent.
- Sechus (Sichus), Zethus, 2215.
- Secund, *adj.* second, 2303, 3660 ; Secunde, 3356.
- Sede, *s.* seed, 586, 1991, 4268 ; race, 4333 ; Sedis, *pl.* 3725, 4404.
- Seder, *s.* cedar ; Seder-tables, tables of cedar, 5290. See Sedrisse.
- Sedill, *adj.* (probably) chaste, modest, gentle, 3937. Formed from A.S. *sidu*, good manners, lit. custom ; cf. *sedefull*, modest (Ormulum) ; Icel. *siðugr*, well-bred ; Dan. *sædelig*, modest ; G. *sittsam*, modest. The suffix is A.S. *-ol*, as in *wac-ol*.
- Sedrisse, *pl.* cedars, 4973. See Seder.
- See, *s.* sea, 26, 61, 411 ; Sees, *pl.* 4406.
- See, *v.* see, make out, 5605 ; *ger.* to attend, 754\* ; Sees (Seys), 2 *pr. s.* seest, 3279 ; Sees, *pr. s.* sees, 943 ; perceives, 5360 ; See, *pr. pl.* 3208 ; (Seen), 1253 ; See, *pt. s.* saw, 657, 733\* ; Seis, *imp. pl.* 2 *p.* behold, 3878.
- See-bule, *s.* sea-bull, 4098 ; (read See-bulis, *pl.*), 4197 ; See-bules, *pl.* sea-bulls, sea-cows, 3846.
- Seele (Seale), *s.* seal, 2344 ; (Sealle), 1914.
- Seelis, *pl.* seals (sea-animals), 5471 ; Seeles, 3846.
- Seerties, *pl.* varieties, 4654. See the note ; and see Sere, *adj.*
- Seet, *pt. s.* (for we read he, see note), set, appointed, 4654 ; *pp.* set, situate, 5333.
- Seete (Sete), *s.* seat (*supply in, as in the Dublin MS.*), 2995.
- Sege, siege, 1029, 1144, 1156, 3020 ; camp, 2442 ; Sege (Seige), siege, 1282, 1336.
- Sege, *s.* seat, chair, 236, 262, 536, 548, 1872, 2324 ; throne, 3325, 3388, 5182, 5630, 5643 ; Sege (Seyge), seat, throne, 3284 ; Segis, *pl.* thrones, 3456 ; seats (Lat. *sedilia*), 3337.
- (Seget), *pp.* called, 2234. From *seggen*, to say ; but the right form is *seid*. The reading is probably corrupt.
- Segge, *s.* man, 111 ; (Sege), 1316 ; (Seghe), 2286 ; Segg (Segge), 2526 ; (Segh), 1626, 1633 ; Seg (Sege), 1580 ; Sege, 2251, 2390 ; (Segge), 2296 ; Seggis (Seggez),



- s. pl.* warriors, men, 1137, 2020, 3168; (Segges), 1329; (Seges), 797, 1796, 2199; (Segez), 2103; Segges (Seges), 2291; Segis, 34, 86; (Seges), 1787, 2043; (Seggez), 2137; Segge, *gen. pl.* of men; Of segge werke, of the work of men's hands, 4473.
- (Seggen), *pr. pl.* say, 1070.
- (Segh), *pt. s.* saw, 3291.
- Segid, *pp.* besieged, 4296.
- Seis (Sittes), *pr. s.* sits, 980.
- Seising, *s.* seizing, conquest, 4396.
- Seke, *v.* seek, 908, 5532; find, 1364; go, 3081; advance, 1735; Seche, seek, attack, 2020; Seke (Sech), seek to go, aim, 3295; (Sekyn), go, 3081; (Seke), *ger.* to seek, 1968; Seke (Seche), 1 *pr. s.* seek, seek to fight, advance, 2748; Sekis (Sekez), *pr. s.* goes, 924; (Sekys), goes, 2189; Sekis, 2 *pr. s.* seekest, 1759; Sekand, *pres. pt.* seeking, 154.
- Seke, *adj.* sick, ill, 856, 2003, 2017, 2548. A.S. *séoc.*
- Sekeman, *s.* sick man, 5605.
- Sekire, *adj.* certain, 5370; true, very, 4479; (Sekir), trusty, 2646; certain, sure, 2840, 2891; (Sekyr), good, sterling, genuine, 1042; Sekir (Syker), good, 763; trusty, 1202.
- Sekire (Sekerly), *adv.* assuredly, 2748.
- Sekirly, *adv.* for a certainty, 303; securely, 2401; (Sekerly), certainly, 1634.
- Seknes, *s.* sickness, 2808; Sekenes, 4440.
- Selcuth, *adj.* strange, great, 3598; valiant, 3043. A.S. *seldcúð*, strange.
- Selcuthē, *s.* wonder, marvel, 3663, 5533; Selcuthis (Selcouthez), *pl.* wonders, 2112.
- Selcuthely, *adv.* wonderfully, 3076; strangely, 5291; (Selcouthly), wonderfully, 1022; Selcuthly, wondrously, exceedingly, 5584; (Selkouthly), wondrously, 2822.
- Selcuthest (Selcoutest), *adj. superl.* wonderfulest, famousest, 1244.
- Seldoum, *adv.* seldom, 4220.
- Sele (Sealle), *s.* seal, 1845, 1931, 2802; (Seale), 1717.
- Sele, *s.* happiness, bliss, good luck, 249, 1855, 4547; (Ceyle), prosperity, 1862. A.S. *sdl.*
- Sele (Syle), *ger.* to ceil, roof, cover, 1519.
- Sele, *perhaps an error for* Soile, i. e. soil, 2760. Or from A.S. *sele*, a house, dwelling; hence, habitation, land. (Probably corrupt.)
- Selere, *s.* cellar, apartment, 5291. *But clearly an error for* Solere, a summer-chamber. (Error of *e* for *o* is common.)
- Selfe, *adj.* same, very, 288, 498, 3388, 4895; (Self), 3229; (Seluen), 754.
- Selfe, self; your-selfe, yourself, you yourself, 875; Selfe, himself, 435.
- Selid, *pp.* sealed, 5100; (Selett), 1170.
- Sell (Self), *pron.* self, 2524.
- Selle; see Selly.
- Selly, *adj.* strange, marvellous, 326, 570, 1580; (Sellich), 1732; strange, i. e. great, 5575; vast, 2089; Selle, *adj.* strange, wonderful, great, 4884; vast, 89.
- Selly, *adv.* strangely, extremely, 3567.
- Selly, *s.* marvel, 2551; Sellis, *pl.* wonders, 5551.
- (Selue), *adj.* very, 1998, 741\*.
- Semand, *pres. part.* seeming, 1252. See Seme.
- Semblance, *s.* appearance, demeanour, 5192; Sembalaunce, 4098.
- Semblant, *s.* appearance, face, aspect, 4141; (Sembland), 1627, 841\*.
- Semble, *s.* assembly, army, 3978; encounter, meeting, 797; Semle (Semble), assembly, 1573.
- Semble (Assemble), *v.* assemble, 1921; Semble, *ger.* to assemble, meet in battle, 759; Semblis, *pr. s.* attacks, 1333; (Sembles), assemblies, 2668; Semblis, *pr. s.* assemblies, 1282; Semblis (Assembles), *pr. pl.* assemble, 2351; Sembled, *pt. s.* (Sembles, *pr. s.*), assembled, 2489; Sembled, *pt. pl.* assembled, 617; Semblid (Seimblyd), *pp.* assembled, 1244, 2536;

- Sembild (Semblyd), *pp.* assembled, 2270.
- Sembling (Semblyng), *s.* assembling, 769.
- Seme, *v.* beseem, suit, 979; Semes, *pr. s.* beseems, 747, 5209; (Semys), 2000; it seems, 1349, 3196; Semys, seems, 1634; it beseems, 716; Semed, *pt. s.* seemed, 635, 1156; (Semyd), seemed, 1423; beseemed, 2779; Semed (Semyd), seemed likely, 2003; seemed, 1375; seemed (to reach), 2108; Semyd, seemed, 70, 1528.
- Seme, *ger. error for Sene*, to see, 682; the Dublin MS. has *se*.
- Semely, *adj.* comely, 238; seemly, 1281; seemly person, 2003; fair one, 5264; (Semlych), 2179; (Semelych), 2017, 3043.
- Semely, *adv.* fitly, 281; fittingly, 198; comelily, 424.
- Semple (Semble), *v.* assemble, 2796; Sempble (Assemble), *ger.* to assemble, 2803.
- Semylacre (Symylacre), *s.* image, 2997; Semylacris, *pl.* images, effigies, 5637.
- Sen, *conj.* since, 179, 465, 1105, 1850, 2950, 3438, 3544, 4258; (Seth), 891; (Syon), 1864.
- Send, *v.* send, 1833; Sende, *ger.* 1868; (Send), 1254; Sendis, *pr. s.* sends, 352, 1716; (Sendes), 1711; (Sendys), 1170; Send, *pr. pl.* 1042; Sent, 2 *pt. s.* sentest, 2022; Send, *pt. s.* sent, 4234; Sent, 670; (Send), 1463; Sente, *pt. pl.* sent, 3774; Sent (Send), *pp.* 1490.
- Sendale, fine linen, 1519.
- Sene (See), *ger.* to see, 1061; *pp.* seen, 62, 1551.
- Seneour, *s.* senior, lord (*but a false reading*), 2760. See below.
- Seneours, *pl.* elders, princes, 2487; Seneiours (Senyours), *pl.* seigneurs, lords, 1614. See Senioure.
- Senescalls (Senescallez), *pl.* seneschals, 3400; Seneschalls (Senescals), 2753.
- Senioure, *s.* prince, 3073; Seniour (Seneour), lord, 2634; Se[n]ioure (Senyours), *s.* ruler, lord, 3198;
- Seniours (Senyours), *pl.* lords, 1937. See Seneours.
- Seniourie (Senory), *s.* dominion, 1913, 1976.
- Sens, *s.* incense, 4184.
- Sensitife, *adj.* sensitive, 4381.
- Sensours (Censours), *pl.* censers, 1565.
- Sent, *s.* feeling, perception, 4615.
- Sent, *s.* assent, 617. *For* Asent.
- Senture, *s.* cincture, girdle, 4963. *F. ceinture.*
- Senurie (Senyours), *s.* lordship, 2778.
- Senyours, *s.* lord, 5600.
- (Sepe), *ger.* to sink, fail, 716. (Such is the sense required; it is evidently miswritten for *seye* = *seze*.) See Sejes, and cf. the reading of Ashmole MS.
- Septer, sceptre, 502; (Septour), 980; Septere (Septur), 1128; Septour, 198, 2324, 3325.
- Sepulture, *s.* sepulchre, 3143.
- Seraphens, *pl.* Seraphim, 4915.
- Seraphis (Serapys), Serapis, 1084; (Seraphys), 1101.
- Ser, sir, lord, 161, 513, 637, 771, 869, 3239; (Sir), 695, 1005; (Sire), 765; Seris, *pl.* sirs, 182; (Sirys), lords, 2491.
- Serche, *ger.* to search, 3132.
- Sercle, *s.* circle, 3736, 4373; Serclis, *pl.* 277.
- Sere, *adj.* various, separate, divers, 86, 277, 570, 1083, 1535, 1567, 1694, 1889, 2010, 2104, 2112, 2765, 3707, 4453, 4461, 4915; various, many, 2753.
- Sere-lepy, *adj.* separate, 4521; various, sundry, 4440, 5125; Serelympy, different, 605; Serelepis, *adj. pl.* various, 4893.
- Serenon, Ceres, 4510, 4536.
- Seriantis (Sergeantes), *pl.* serjeants, officers, 2475; Seriant (Sergeantez), serjeants, 3403.
- Serke, *s.* shirt, sark, 4963; Serkis, *pl.* 4339, 4672.
- Serop (Syroppe), syrur, drink, 2578; (Syrope), 2558; Serep (Syroppe), 2568.
- Seropis, Serapis, 4460.
- Serpentis, *pl.* serpents, 3707, 3883, 4197.



- Serres, Seres, i.e. Chinese, 3956, 3958.  
 Sertan, *s.* certain amount, 5121.  
 Sertane, *adj.* certain, 3956.  
 Sertis, *adv.* certainly, 4371.  
 Seruage, *s.* service, 2778, 3528; (Seruage), 918; Seruage (Seruyce), servitude, 1937.  
 Seruand, *s.* servant, 2779; (Siruand), 1962; (Siruant), 1727; Sernandis (Seruandes), *pl.* servants, 2753.  
 Seruand, *error* for Seruise (*as in the* Dublin MS.), service, 2694.  
 Serue, *v.* obey, 2410; serve, suit, 1364; Seruyd, *pt. s.* served, was of service, 2374; Serued, *pp.* served, 1685, 5282.  
 Serue, *pr. pl. 1 p.* deserve, 4389; Serued, *pp.* earned, 3426. *Short for* Deserue.  
 Serues, *s.* service, 918.  
 Seruitute, *s.* servitude, 4349.  
 Sese (Sesyn), *v.* (1) seize, 1776; Sesis, *pr. s.* seizes, lays hold of, 5283; (Seses), takes, 1452; (Sesez), seizes, 2115; Sesid, *pt. s.* put, placed, 5637; Sesynd, seized, 1142; Sesid, *pt. pl.* seized, took, 4119; Sesid, *pp.* taken, 2386, 5403; (Sesynd), 1358; Sesynd, 2380; Sese, *ger.* (2) to seize, i.e. to give possession (of), put in possession (of), 5220; (Seyse), *ger.* to put in possession, 2566, 2633; Sesid, 1 *pt. s.* put in (thy) possession, 2578; Sesid, *pt. s.* put (him) in possession (of), 4210; Sese, *pp.* seized, put into possession, delivered up, 5313; Sesid, seised, possessed, put in possession, 3161; Sesid, seised, possessed, 3558; Sesid (Sesynd), *pp.* seized, taken possession of, 1449.  
 Sesis (Seses), 2 *pr. s.* ceasest, 2736; Sesis, *pr. s.* ceases, 546, 4377; stops, 4683; Sesid (Sessyd), *pt. pl.* ceased, 2045; Sesis, *imp. pl.* cease, 182.  
 Seson, season, 881; (Seasun), 2895.  
 Sesonde (Sesund), *pp.* seasoned, prepared, 2923.  
 Sesse (Seys), *pr. s.* sees, 2532.  
 Sesyng, *s.* seizing, seizure, 3490.  
 Set (Sett), *v.* set, 2796; Sett, *v.* 1766; *ger.* to set, to be set, 1365; to set, 1158; (Set), 2296; Sett, 1 *pr. s.* 1802; Settis, *pr. s.* 2 *p.* buildest, 5403; Settis, *pr. s.* sets, 3049; (Settes), 1431, 1452; Setis (Settez), sets, dashes, 1221; Set, sets, 1859; Settis (Settes), pitches, 1143; Settis (Settes) vpon, begins, 2135; Settes owt, *pr. s.* thrusts out, 841\*; Set, *pt. s.* 1 *p.*; Set agayns, attacked, 2082; Sett, *pt. s.* established, 4305; ordered, 4951; Set, *pt. pl.* set, 1139; (Sett), appointed, 759; Sett, *pp.* set, placed, 281, 605, 1291; appointed, 179, 443, 522, 5412; established, 1649; rendered, 3911; Sett, seated, 238, 502, 536; set against, opposed to, 1316; Settis (Settes), *imp. pl. 2 p.* set, 2142.  
 Sete, *s.* seat, 238, 482, 979, 2962, 3392; throne (Lat. *solium*), 2676; seat, habitation, dwelling, 1749. And see Sette.  
 Sete, *adj.* suitable, fit, 249; (hence) short, 546; Sete quile (Sete qwyle), suitable time, 2356. From A.S. *sittan*, to sit, M.E. *sitten*, to sit. See *sete* in Stratmann.  
 Seten (Settyn), 1 *pr. pl.* sit, 1850.  
 Seteqwile (Sete-while), *s.* fitting while, convenient while, i.e. short time, 3081. See *Sete, adj.*  
 Sethen, *adv.* afterwards, 282, 424, 495, 631, 2325.  
 Sethen (Syne), *conj.* since, 2292.  
 Setnes, *s.* set time, 5553.  
 Sett, *s.* setting, 2045.  
 Sette, *s.* seat, habitation, 4952. (*Error for* Sete.) See *Sete*.  
 Sette, *s.* set (*either* company or those set or put), 3284.  
 Settynge, *s.* setting, 5508.  
 Seuen, *num.* seven; "pe seven" = the seven deadly sins, 4293; (Seuen), 1961. See *Seuyn*.  
 Seuent (Seuynnt), *adj.* seventh, 2342. (Seuenter), seventeen, 795\*.  
 Seuyn, *num.* seven, 44; (Seuen), 1528, 1677. See *Seuen*.  
 Seuynnt (Seuent), *adj.* seventh, 2157; (Seuente), 3388.  
 Seuynnte, *num.* seventy, 634.

- Seuyntene (Senentene), seventeen, 2105.
- Seuyrd, *pt. s.* was separated, 579.
- Sewe, *ger.* to follow, 2105, 3534 ; *v.* pursue, go on, 2840 ; make suit, sue, 5161 ; imitate, 2515 ; Sewis, *pr. s.* follows, 5507 ; Sewes, 3091 ; (Sewes), 2502 ; (Sewyd), *pp.* followed, been used to, 795\* ; Sewe, *imp. s.* follow, 686.
- Sewe, *v.* sew together, 1925 (the Dublin MS. *has* Insew) ; Sewys, *pr. s.* sews up, 423.
- Sewes, *pl.* pottages, 4275. See *Sew* in Halliwell.
- Sex, six, 5470.
- Sexes, Xerxes, 2361, 3558 ; (Serxes), 3136 ; (Seryxes), 3097 ; Sexis, 5600 ; (Sixes), 2483 ; (Serexies), 2994.
- Sext, *ord.* sixth, 3346, 3384.
- Sextene, sixteen, 3821.
- Sexti (Sexty), sixty, 1042 ; (Sexty), 806\*.
- Seys (Sezes), *pr. s.* goes, 1573.
- (Seysyd), *pp.* seized ; Seysyd to hym, seized for himself, 3187. See *Sese*.
- Sejes, *pr. s.* sinks, falls, 4333 ; passes, goes, 2182 ; Sejes, *pr. pl.* sink, fall, drop, 2043, 2057, 3641 ; Seje, 4844 ; Sejen, *pass.* go, 1481 ; Sejes, *pr. pl.* (*with* to), approach, advance to (the city), 1388. A.S. *sēgan*, to cause to sink, confused with *sīgan*, to sink, fall. Note also *Seye*, to go, *Sejen*, arrived, in Gloss. to Gawayn and the Grene Knight, and *Seie* in the Troy-book.
- Sejis, 2 *fut. s.* shalt see, 5022 ; *pr. s.* sees, 3053 ; Sejes, heeds, 3291 ; perceives, 5583 ; Sejis, heeds, 4478 ; *lit.* sees, *but used with the sense of* seems, 4704.
- Sejt, *s.* sight, 5537.
- Shaftis (Shaftez), *pl.* shafts, rays, 1544.
- Shalkis (Salkez), *pl.* men, 1391 ; (Shalkez), 3267\*.
- (Shall), *pr. s.* shall, 809\*.
- (Shamesly), *adv.* shamefully, 739\*.
- Shapid (Echapyn, 1 *pr. pl.*), 1 *pt. pl.* escaped, 1944.
- Shapis, *pr. s.* forms, shapes, 113 ; Shap, 2 *pr. pl.* intend, 2143 ; Shapen (Shapyn), *pp.* ordained, 2260 ; (Shapyn), ordained, 3267\* ; Shapid (Shapyd), *pp.* decreed, 809.
- (Sharpe), *adj.* sharp, 957.
- Sharpid (Sharped), *pp.* sharpened, 1890.
- Shauys, *pr. s.* shaves, 121.
- Shaw, *ger.* to shew, 321 ; Shawis, *pr. pl.* shew (themselves), 3429.
- (She), she, 948.
- Sheet, 1767\*. See *Ouer-sheet* and *Shote*.
- (Shelde), *pr. s. subj.* shield, 1472.
- Shemerand, *pres. part.* shimmering, 1544.
- (Shendes), 2 *pr. s.* spoilest, 1767\* ; (Shendit), *pp.* spoilt, destroyed, 2236.
- (Shendship), *s.* disgrace, 3267\*.
- Shethe (Sheth), *s.* sheath, 2639.
- Shewe, *v.* shew, 1827 ; *ger.* 1666 ; Shewis (Shewys), *pr. s.* shews, 928 ; Shewid, *pt. pl.* 1704.
- Shildis (Sheldez), *pl.* shields, 787.
- (Shillynges), *pl.* shillings, 807\*.
- Shipis (Shippez), *pl.* ships, 2454.
- Shire, *adj.* bright, sheer, clear, pure, 113, 1544, 2454, 4675 ; (Shire), 807\*, 2048.
- Sho, *pron.* she, 3928 ; (Sho), 733\* ; Shoo, 5145.
- (Shote), *s.* shot ; Shote ouer-sheet, overshoot thy shot, 1767\*. Read ouer-sheet.
- (Shote), *ger.* shoot, cast, 807\* ; (Shotyn), *pt. pl.* shot, 3041 ; (Shott), *pp.* 1544.
- Shount, *ger.* to escape, 2143. E. *shunt*.
- Showte, *s.* shout, 1392.
- Shrewe, *s.* mischievous person, 1706.
- Shuldirs (Shulders), *pl.* shoulders, 812 ; (Shulders), 731\* ; (Shuldres), 773\*.
- Sibbe, *adj.* akin, 4492. See *Syb*.
- Sibbire, *adj. comp.* nearer of kin, 586.
- Siche, *adj.* such, 83, 1889 ; Sich, 1076.
- Sichim (Sychim), Sichem, 1759.
- Sichomures, *pl.* sycamores, 4973.

- Sicistrus (Sicistrens or Sicisterus), *proper name*, 2234.  
 Side, *s.* side, direction, 1221, 1520, 5021; Sidis, *pl.* sides, 773, 1424, 2215, 4672; parts, regions, borders, 1921, 2115; Of *pa* sidis, in those quarters, 3867. See Syde.  
 Side (Syde), *adj.* long, 1925.  
 Sidlings, *adv.* sidelong, 2057.  
 Sighinges, *pl.* sighs, 5052.  
 Sighis, *pr. s.* sighs, 5584.  
 Signes, *pl.* wonders, 4935. See Sygnes.  
 Sike, *adj.* such, 126, 3607; (Sike), 868, 1015; Sike, such (men), 946; such (things), 4272; (Suche), 2580; (Slyke), 2047.  
 Sike, *v.* sigh, lament, 2313.  
 Silis, *pr. s.* turns, goes, 111, 161, 335, 5264; (Sylez), goes, 2922; comes, 1087; Siles, *pr. pl.* subside, drop, fall, 3043; Silis, go, 161. See *Sile* in the Troy-book; and see Sylis.  
 Silke, *s.* silk, 4016; (Sylke), 2401.  
 Silkin, *adj.* silken, 5295; Silkyn, 236; Silken (Sylkyn), 1520.  
 Silloure, *s.* canopy, 4915. See *Sylure* in Prompt. Parv.; and see Sylours.  
 Siluer, silver, 276, 1571, 1588, 1889; Siluyre, 129.  
 Silueryn (Syluer), *adj.* of silver, silvern, 1565.  
 Similitude, *s.* parable, 2735; likeness, similitude, 1627, 2024, 4229.  
 Simpill, *adj.* simple, 4664; ignorant, 4404. See Sympill.  
 Simplenes, *s.* simplicity, 4040, 4051.  
 Sinagoges (*sing.* Sinagoge), *pl.* synagogues, 1481. See Synagoge.  
 Sindid, *pp.* burnt, 2236. Cf. A.S. *sinder*, cinder.  
 Siphagoyne (Prynphagoyne), *place-name*, 2759.  
 Sipris, *s.* cypress-wood, 5290; Sipirs, 4453; Sipresses, *pl.* cypresses, 4973. See Sypirs.  
 Sipris, Cyprus, 4600.  
 Siraphis, Serapis, 200; Sirapis, 5409; Sirraphis, 161.  
 Sire, *s.* sire, master, lord, 303, 311, 1131; sir, 363, 517; father, 1786; (Syre), father, lord, sire, 1126, 2251; (Sir), 1004; (Syr), 691, 1720; Siris, *pl.* sirs, lords, 3436; (Syres), 2268; Sirs (Sirres), 1185; Sirres (Sirs), 2286. See Syre.  
 Sire soile, fatherland, soil of thy sire, 5021.  
 Sireland (Surry), Syrian land, Syria, 1614.  
 Sirie (Surry), Syria, 1137.  
 Siriens (Surriens), *pl.* Syrians, 1696; (Sariens), 1447.  
 Sise, *s.* size, 26.  
 Sit (Sitte), *v.* sit, 1855. See Sitt.  
 Sithe, *s.* time, 4204. A.S. *sit*.  
 Sithe, *s.* scythe, 3971.  
 Sithen, *conj.* since, p. 282, l. 92.  
 Sithid, *adj.* scythed, armed with scythes, 3598, 3821.  
 Sithin, *adv.* afterwards, then, 5385; (Syne), 1537.  
 Sitiles (Siteles), City-less, without a city or home, 2286.  
 Sitt, *v.* sit, 592; (Sitte), dwell, 1677; Sittis (Sittes), 2 *pr. s.* sittest, 1872; Sittis, *pr. s.* sits, 161; 1 *pr. s.* sit, 1724; Sitt, *pr. pl.* sit, remain, be left, 3807. See Sit.  
 Sizis (Sighez), *pr. s.* sighs, 3076.  
 Sigt, *s.* sight, 1252, 2051, 2270; glance, look, 4855; (Sight), 967, 1551.  
 Skapis, *pr. s.* escapes, 642; Skapid (Scapett), *pt. s.* escaped, 2992.  
 Skarlet, *adj.* scarlet, 467.  
 Skars, *adj.* scarce, short, 5040. (For *fra* read *for*.)  
 Skatheles (Schatheles), *adj.* unharmed, 2992.  
 Skathely, *adv.* with difficulty, with injury, 642.  
 Skathill, *adj.* harmful, 4802. Cf. Goth. *skathuls*, harmful.  
 Skautand, *pres. pt.* pushing, darting violently, 4200. Halliwell gives *scaut*, to push violently; cf. Icel. *skota*, to shove, allied to E. *shoot*.  
 Skelp, *v.* beat, 1924. See Jamieson.  
 Skere, *s.* scare, fright, 4731.  
 Skerrid, *pt. s.* scared away, 4802.  
 Skewys, *pl.* skies, 561.  
 Skifte, *v.* change, die (lit. shift), 5040; Skiftis, *pr. s.* shifts, changes, 4622. See Skyftis.  
 Skilfull, *adj.* skilful, 645.

- Skill (Skely), *s.* reason, 1575.  
 Skinnēs, *pl.* skins, hides, 4114.  
 Skire (Skyre), *adj.* sheer, bright, 1824. See Shire, Skyre.  
 Skirmand, *pres. part.* screaming, 5157.  
 Skirtis (Skirtez), *pl.* skirts, 1533.  
 Skitly, *adv.* suddenly, swiftly, 5040. Cf. M.E. *skeet*, swift.  
 Sklendire, *adj.* slender, 4923.  
 Skorge (Scourge), *s.* scourge, 1924.  
 Skorne, *s.* scorn, 641.  
 Skowis, *pl.* woods, lit. shaws, 5157. Icel. *skógr*.  
 Skrike, *s.* screech, shriek, 4731; Skrikes, *pl.* 5157.  
 Skyftis, *pr. s.* changes, 467. See Skifte.  
 Skynnes, *pl.* skins, 5084. See Skinnēs.  
 Skyp, *pr. s. subj.* skip aside, leap aside, 642.  
 Skyre, *adj.* bright, sheer, 467; (Skyr), pure, 2119. See Skire, Shire.  
 Slaa, *ger.* to slay, 5412; *v.* 4403, 5330; Sla, *ger.* 2566; Sla (Slaye), *v.* 1766; Slaes, *pr. s.* slays, 3883, 4841; Sla, 2 *pr. pl.* 4547; Slaa (Sla), 3198; Slayn, *pp.* slain, 722, 1329, 2057; Slay (Slayn), 1264; Slayne, 691, 2089; Slayne *vp.* *pp.* wholly slain, 1449; Slane, 4733, 4844, 5575.  
 Slaare (Slaer), slayer, murderer, 967.  
 Slade (Slode, Slayde), *pt. s.* slid, passed quickly, 2870, 2962; (Slayde), 2962.  
 Slakis (Aslakes), *pr. s.* ceases, 857; Slakid, *pt. pl.* slackened, ceased, 3050.  
 Slane; see Slaa.  
 Slauyn, *s. a* (pilgrim's) mantle, 1925. See *Slaveine* in Halliwell.  
 Slawth, *s.* sloth, 4293.  
 (Slayde), *pt. s.* slid, 2962; see Slade.  
 Slayn, Slayne; see Slaa.  
 Slaytere, *s.* slaughter, 3049; Slayter (Slaughther), death, 708; Slaytir, *s.* deadly effect, lit. slaughter, 4855. (The glance of the basilisk caused death.)  
 Sleely, *adv.* slily, cautiously, 5174.  
 Slees, *pr. pl. 2 p.* slay, 4461. See Slaa.  
 (Sleghtly), *adv.* quickly, 2057. Cf. Icel. *sléttir*, smooth; *slétt*, smoothly.  
 (Slengers), *pl.* slingers, 2219.  
 Slepe, *s.* sleep, 351, 375, 419, 1084, 1512; Slep, 344.  
 Slepe, 1 *pt. s.* slept, was asleep, 475; Slepit, *pt. s.* slept, was sleeping, 4849.  
 Sletis, *pr. s.* hastens, 380. Cf. A.S. *slētan*, to hunt.  
 (Slew), *pt. pl.* slew, 2043.  
 Slejly (Shyllghly, *sic*), *adv.* slily, 2962. See Slely.  
 Slezt, *s.* sleight, cunning contrivance, 4857; (Sleght), 2634; Slezt (Sleght), sleight, skill, 1022; stratagem, 1364; Slezt (Sleghtes, *pl.*), skill, 2374; (Slyght), trick, 2566; Sleztis, *pl.* sleights, arts, 38, 334; (Sleghtez), stratagems, 1445.  
 Slide, *pp.* slidden, gone away, 4456. See Slade.  
 Slike, *adj.* such, 11, 38, 62, 399, 539, &c.; like, 4229; (Slyke), 1752; (Sike), 1742; (Siche), 1516; Slik, such, 67, 69, &c.; (Slyke), 1641; (Suche), 2389; All slike, just such, 3084.  
 Slingis (Slengers), *pl.* slings, 2219.  
 Slippe, *v.* slip away, pass away, come to naught, 179.  
 Slire, *wrongly for* Skire, sheer, pure, 2119. The Dublin MS. has *skyr*. See Skire.  
 Slizly, *adv.* slily, silently, 2870.  
 Slowefull, *adj.* slothful, p. 279, l. 16.  
 Slowmand, *pres. part.* slumbering, 5174. "*Sloum*, to slumber, *Yorkshire*;" Halliwell.  
 Sloze (Slogh), *pt. s.* slew, 1431; Sloze, *pt. pl.* slew, 3904, 4113, 5567; (Slogh), 3421; (Slew), slaughtered, 1139; (Sloghen), 3213; Sloze, *pt. pl. 1 p. subj.* (if we) were to slay, 5351.  
 Slughe, *s.* slough, outer skin, 4456; Slozis, *pl.* sloughs, skins, 5085. See the note.  
 (Slyghtly), *adv.* quickly, 2870.  
 (Slyke), such-like, such, 2219. See Slike.

- Slymand, *pres. pt. as adj.* slimy, claylike, 4456.
- Small; In small, in small bits, 1309.
- Smallire, *adj. comp.* smaller, 1334.
- Smaragdane, *s.* emerald, smaragdus, 3556; [S]maragadane, 3342; Smaragdans, *pl.* emeralds, 3678; Smaragdens, 5424; Smaragdins, 5272; Smaragdins, 3670, 5643.
- Smert, *adj.* rough, 1309.
- Smert, *adv.* smartly, promptly, 5515.
- Smeten, *pp.* beaten, 3678; hence, stuck, decked, 5272; (Smytyn), smitten, 1309. See Smyte.
- Smeth, *adj.* smooth, 3311, 3670, 3678.
- Smethe, *v.* smith, forge, 5515.
- Smithis, *pl.* smiths, 5515.
- Smyles (Smylez), *pr. s.* smiles, 2461; (Smyllys), 2725.
- (Smyte), *v.* smite, 843; Smytis (Smytez), *pr. s.* smites, 1222; Smyten, *pp.* lit. smitten, hammered out, made, 3342; (are) smitten, 3082; Smytten, smitten, beaten, 5424. See Smeten.
- Smythis, *pl.* smiths, 5424.
- Snakis, *pl.* snakes, 3794.
- Snape, *s.* (probably) winter-pasture, patch of grass, 1560. Cf. Icel. *snöp*, 'scanty grass for sheep to nibble at in snow-covered fields'; Vigfusson. Hence, in this passage, it must mean a patch of grass for winter-pasture.
- Snapirs (Snappers), *pr. s.* stumbles, 847. See note, p. 294.
- Snart, *adj.* severe, 3633. See Gloss. to Gawayne and the Grene Knight. Cf. Lowl. Sc. *sнарre*, severe.
- Snatirs, *pr. s.* staggers, stumbles, 3995. See Snapirs.
- Snawe, *s.* snow, 4925, 5482; Snawe, 4165; Snawe (Snaw), 1560, 1756.
- Snayles, *gen.* snail's, 4095.
- Snaypid, *pt. s.* disconcerted, marred, 3995; nipped, caught suddenly, checked, severely wounded, 3633. North. E. *sneap*, to check, chide.
- Snelle, *adv.* quickly, swiftly, 3995. A.S. *snel*, quick.
- Snowte, *s.* snout, trunk, 3633.
- Snyppand (Snappand), *pres. part.* dazzling, 1560. See Jamieson.
- Snyth, *adj.* (probably) smooth, 4095. The lit. sense is 'cut', from Icel. *sníða*, to cut. Cf. prov. E. *snod*, smooth; Sc. *sned*, to cut, prune.
- Snyzes, *pr. s.* issues, creeps (out), 4095. Cf. Icel. *snigill*, a snail.
- So, *adv.* so, 14, 69, 140; And so, i. e. and so forth, and the like, 2551, 4184; And soo, and the like, 3821. (A curious phrase.)
- Sobband, *pres. part.* sobbing, 3249.
- Sobire, *adj.* sober, 4266.
- Sobirly, *adv.* soberly, 4643; discreetly, 5340; calmly, 2356.
- Sobirte, sobriety, 4040.
- Socure (Socour), *s.* succour, 959, 1463, 2252.
- Socurs (Socours), *pr. s.* succours, aids, 2834.
- Sodanly, *adv.* suddenly, 1052, 3391; Soda[n]ly, 2862; (Sodenly), 1626; (Sodandly), 1859.
- (Sofre), *v.* suffer, 2435.
- Soft, *adv.* softly, 2401.
- Softe, *adj.* soft, 2000; Soft (Softe), 2024; (Softe), 2071.
- Softly, *adv.* at ease, 482; gently, 548; in an under tone, 2952; Softely (Softly), gently, 698.
- (Soght), *error for* Sothe, i. e. true, 1806. See the Ashmole MS.
- Soiet (Sugett), *s.* subject, 2682. (*Soiet* = *sojet*.)
- Soile, *s.* soil, country, 1749, 3728; ground, 3284; Soile (Soyle), 3161.
- Solas (Solace), solace, comfort, 1490.
- Solast, *pt. s.* solaced, comforted, 2072.
- Solayne, *adj.* solitary, single, 3805. Hence E. *sullen*.
- Solempnite, solemnity, pomp, 1645.
- Solers, *pl.* upper-rooms, 3684. See *Soler* in Halliwell.
- Solp, *v.* pollute, 4292. "*Sulpen*, polluere;" Stratmann.
- Some, some, 568; (Som), 774\*; a certain, 755\*; Some tyme, once, 1132.
- (Some), *adj.* same, 2063.
- Somere, *s.* summer, 3959; (Somer), 2895.
- Somere-hall, summer-hall, 5264; (Somer-hall), 2922.

- Somir-bathis, *pl.* summer-baths, 4343.
- Somme, *s.* sum, number, 83; (Some), 1889; host, 1026; (Soume), number, 2089, 2189; Some, *s.* sum, number, 62; host, 924; (Somme), host, 1144; (Some), *s.* sum, quantity (*but an error for fone*), 3180.
- (Somme), 1 *pr. s.* (*the same as Samme*), collect, 3168.
- (Somned), *pt. s.* gathered, 2219. See Sammen.
- Son, *s.* son, 572, 584, 618, 627; (Sone), 686; (Sonn), 697; (Sonne), 863; Sonnes, *pl.* sons, 4403; Sons, 5091; Biche sons, sons of a bitch, *or read* Biche sous, bitch-sows, 5482.
- Son, *s.* sun, 34, 281, 427, 543, 556; sun-rise, 2303; Sonn (Son), 1723; Sone (Son), 1518; Sonne, 442, 736, 1842; Son, *gen.* sun's, 62; Vndire son, under the sun, 4300; With vp sun, with sun up, with sunrise, 4067. Cf. *sundown*.
- Sond, *adj.* sound, safe, 5245.
- Sonde, *s.* sound health, soundness, security, 5616. See above, and see *sunde* in Stratmann.
- Sonders, *pr. s.* breaks asunder, 3067; Sondres, breaks up, 4377; Sondre, *pr. pl.* 1 *p.* plough, lit. sunder, sever, 4268; Sondird (Sunderd), *pt. pl.* broke asunder, 3003.
- Sondire; In-sondire, asunder, 4150.
- Sone, *adv.* soon, 59, 116, 222, 266, 362, 400; Son, 730; Sone as, as soon as, 394.
- Sonere, *adv. comp.* sooner, 4295.
- Son-sett, *s.* sun-set, 3050.
- Son-tree, *s.* sun-tree, 5008, 5018.
- Soo, *adv.* so, 4772; thus, 179, 3911; so, *i. e.* the like, 3821 (cf. lines 2551, 4184). See So.
- Sope, *s.* sup, small quantity, 3805. See *Sope* in Halliwell.
- Soper, *s.* supper, 2923.
- Sophistri, *s.* sophistry, 4364.
- Sopp, *s.* company, body, troop, 2351. See *Soppe* in Halliwell. Cf. *Icel. soppr*, a ball.
- (Sorastes), *name*, 916.
- Sorely, *adv.* surely, 165, 688.
- Sorement, *for* Serement, oath, 1464.
- Soroze, sorrow, 249, 529; (Sorow), 2051; trouble, 2157; Sorowe (Sorow), *s.* pitiful creature, 1753; Sorozes (Sorowys), *pl.* sorrows, 1447; Sorojis (Sorowez), *pl.* sorry fellows, 1735.
- Soroze, *v.* lament; Fand hire soroze, found her lamenting, 536; Sorozes, *pr. s.* grieves, 4051; (Sorowez), 703; Sorowis (Sorows), 1288; Sorowis, *pr. s.* grows dark, lit. grows sad, 4141; Soruzes, *imp. pl.* sorrow ye, 182.
- Sorsery, sorcery, 38; Sorsry, 5291.
- Sorte, *s.* sort, quality; in sorte (of sorte), according to their rank, 1555.
- Sotellest, *adj. superl.* subtlest, 34; Sotelest, most skilful, 2373; Sotelest (Sotellest), most delicate, most choice, 2923.
- Sotellte, subtilty, skill, 258.
- Sothe, *adj.* true, 327, 1806; (Soth), 722.
- Sothe, *s.* truth, 165, 261, 463, 5412; (Sothe), 729; (Soght), 2286; For soth, of a truth, 99.
- Sothely, *adv.* verily, truly, 688; (Sothly), 691, 1640; Sothly, 5008.
- Sott, *s.* sot, fool, 1776, 4704; (Sot), 1862; Sottes, *pl.* foolish men, 2232; Sottis, fools, 4417; (Sottez), foolish ones, *hence*, innocents, children, 1602.
- Sott, *ger.* to besot, stultify; To sot with the pepill, to befool the people with, 4364.
- Souerayn, *s.* sovereign, king, lord, 154; (Soueren), 1818; (Souerand), 1512; Souerane, 2774; (Soueren), 801\*; Souerayne (Souerend), *gen.* lord's, 1813; (Souerand), 2914.
- Souerayne (Souerane), *adj.* supreme, 1724; Souereayn, 4210.
- Soueraynest (Soueranest), *adj. superl.* chiefest, 1913; Souerynest (Soueranest), most supreme, 3097.
- Soueraynete (Souerente), *s.* lordship, dominion, 1859.
- Soueraynly (Souerandly), *adv.* chiefly, 1288.
- (Souerente), *error for* Soueren, sovereign, lord, 2774.



- Soukand, *pres. part.* sucking, 4197.  
 Soume, *s.* number, 1202; company, 1244; host, 1282; Soume (Sume), sum, 1787; (Some), 763; Soumme (Soume), 1968. See Somme, Sowme.  
 Sounde (Sunde), *adj.* sound, unwounded, 2232.  
 Sounde, *adv.* safely, 5532.  
 (Sounderytt), *pt. s.* broke asunder, 3067.  
 Soundire; In soundire (sonder), asunder, 1416.  
 Souorly, *adv.* savourily, 4381. (*Error for Sauorly.*)  
 Soupe, *v. sup.* 2915.  
 Soure, *adv.* bitterly (lit. sourly), 2313. See l. 5348; and see Sowe.  
 Soute, *s.* under part (?); In soute, beneath (?), 4880. Such seems to be the sense of this doubtful word. Cf. *soute* in Littré, where it is explained that it represents Lat. *subtus*.  
 Sowe, *v. refl.* gall, vex, grieve; in the *phr.* Soure suld him sowe = bitterly shall it vex him, 2313, 5348. See *Sow* in Jamieson.  
 Sowme, *s.* sum, number, 2532, 3914, 4285, 4799; sum (of men), host, 2796; (Some), sum, number, 3019; (Soume), 2020, 2082; Sowme (Soumez, *pl.*), sum of men, army, 2620; Sowmes, *pl.* quantities, 4433.  
 Sowme (Soume), *v.* number, 1986.  
 Sowping, *s.* supping, 4439.  
 Soyle, soil, 1252; (Sole), 1724.  
 Soyned (Soned), *pt. s.* excused, 1464. See *essoin* in Supplement to my Etym. Dict.  
 Soyte (Sote), *s.* suit, livery, 1580; (Sott), 1550; In soyte, in his suit (of robes), or among his suite (of men), 3336; Of a soyte, in a suit, alike, 3684.  
 Sozt, *pt. s.* sought, went, got up, 2962; went, 3049; (Soght), went, 1137, 1694; Sozt him (Soght on), *pt. s.* advanced, 3207; Sozt, *pt. pl.* sought, 163; Sozt, *pp.* arrived, 3003.  
 Space, *s.* space of time, 630, 971.  
 Spacly (Sarply, for Spacly), *adv.* speedily, quickly, 2975. See Spakly.  
 Spakid, *pt. s. refl.* soothed herself, was quieted, 237. Cf. Icel. *spakr*, Dan. *spag*, gentle, quiet.  
 Spakly, *adv.* swiftly, 786. See Gloss. to P. Plowman; and see Spacly.  
 Spare, *v.* spare, 364; Spared, *pt. s.* spared, refrained, 5320.  
 Sparis (Sparrys), *pr. s.* starts, darts, 2975. See *spar*, to box, in my Etym. Dict.  
 Sparke, *s.* spark, 2975.  
 Sparles, *adj.* plentiful, lit. spare-less, 5467. The opposite of *sparing*, i. e. scanty.  
 Sparth, *s.* halberd, battle-ax, 1403; Sparrethis (Sparthys), *pl.* 2458. Icel. *sparða*.  
 Speche, speech, 234, 237, 739, 897; story, 1884.  
 Speches (Spekes), *pr. s.* speaks, 834.  
 Specke (Speke), *s.* speck, 743.  
 Spede, *v.* speed, prosper, 2178; Spedis (Spedes), *pr. s.* speeds, 931; pushes on, puts forth, 1226; (Spedes), *refl.* 3033; Sped, *pt. s.* hastened on, 1403; *refl.* made speed, 630.  
 Spedely, *adv.* speedily, 1419.  
 Spedfull, *adv.* speedy, short, 971.  
 Spek, *ger.* to speak, 5320; Spekis (Spekes), *pr. s.* 733; (Spekys), 1088, 2185.  
 Speke, *s.* speech, 3318.  
 Spell, *s.* word, question, discourse, 3840.  
 Spell, *ger.* to spell, 630; Spellis, *pr. s.* spells, tells, 4691; Spellis, *pr. pl.* say proverbially, 4397.  
 Spelonk, *s.* cave, den, cavern, 5392. See Gloss. to P. Plowman.  
 Spend, *ger.* to destroy, consume, kill, 2458; Spends, *pr. pl.* spend, give, 5467.  
 Spene, *s.* space (lit. span), 4162. See *Spenne* in Gloss. to Gawayne.  
 Spere, spear, 651, 1218, 1226, 1318; (Sper), 793; Speris (Speres), *pl.* 786; (Sperez), 790.  
 (Sperete), *s.* spirit, 2178.  
 Sperid, *pt. s.* speared, pierced with a spear, 3649.

- Speris, *pr. s.* shuts, 5545; shuts up, 5494; *pr. pl.* shut, 1466.
- Sperpolid, *pt. pl.* dispersed, scattered, 4162. See *Sarpil* in Halliwell.
- Spetous, *adj.* spiteful, contemptuous, 4567; Spetous (Spitous), angry, hence terrible, destructive, 2458.
- Spices, *pl.* spices, 4724, 5427.
- Spill, *ger.* to kill, 3190; (Spyll), 2663; Spillis (Spyllez), *pr. s.* kills, 1318; Spillen, *pr. pl.* spill, shed, 3060; Spill, die, 3798; Spille, *subj. pr. s.* 1 *p.* kill, 5346; Spilt (Spilten), *pt. pl.* spilt, scattered, 1419; Spilt, *pp.* overthrown, 4162.
- Spire, *ger.* to ask, enquire, 2178; Spird, *pt. s.* asked, 3840; Spird, 237. A.S. *spyrian*.
- Spirris (Sparres), *pr. s.* spurs, 1226.
- Spise, *v.* despise, 3533; Spises (Dispysys), *pr. s.* 2 *p.* despisest, 2746; Spised, *pt. s.* despised, 4567.
- Spitid, *pt. s.* despised, 2346. *Short for* Despitid.
- Spittis (Spittes), *pr. s.* spits, 745.
- Spittyng (Sptytyng), *s.* spitting, 743.
- Splene, *s.* spleen, 5054.
- Spoilis, *pr. s.* divests, unclothes, 4962; Spoiles, *pr. pl.* 2 *p.* despoil, rob, 4419.
- Spokin (Spokyn), *pp.* spoken, 745; Spoken, 243, 298.
- Spon[ges], *pl.* sponges, 5467.
- Sporne, *v.* spurn, contemn, 3533.
- Spouse, *s.* wife, 2677, 3315, 5217.
- Sprede, *v.* spread, 1884; (Spredes), *pr. s.* 1514.
- Sprengis (Sprynges), *pr. s.* springs, 931.
- Sprent, *pp.* sprinkled, 743. *Pp.* of M.E. *sprengen*.
- (Sprenten), *pr. pl.* fly out, fly forward, 786. *Sprenten*, prosilire; Stratmann.
- Sprete, *s.* spirit, 3318, 4779, 5000, 5320; (Spirit), 971. See *Sprite*.
- Spring, *v.* spring, 1884; Springis, *pr. s.* springs, 1318; arises, 2044; rises, 1505; Springe, *pr. pl.* grow up, 4769; Sprong, *pt. s.* has spread abroad, 5111; arose, 2044; Sprongen, *pp.*; Of sprongen, sprung from, 4213.
- Sprite, *s.* spirit, mind, 5054; Sprites, spirits, 58, 5392.
- Sprotis (Sprotes), *pl.* splinters, 790. Icel. *sproti*, twig, stick, rod.
- Sprygaldis (Springaltez), *pl.* catapults, engines for shooting heavy missiles, 1419. Miswritten for *spryngaldis*. See *springal* in Halliwell.
- Spurnes, *pr. s.* thrusts, 786; Spurned, *pt. pl.* kicked, 3898.
- Spynnes, *pr. s. refl.* goes swiftly, 3033. Cf. "to go at a *spinning* pace."
- Spyse (Spysyn), *pr. pl.* despise, 2931. *Short for* Despyse.
- Spyte (Spite), spite, 745. *Short for* Despite.
- (Stable), *s.* stable, 755\*, 758\*.
- Stable (Stabyll), *adj.* stable, 3259.
- Stable (Stabill), *ger.* to make stable, to build up firmly, 1367; *v.* fix, 1091; Stablis, *pr. s.* settles, 4631.
- Stad, *pp.* placed, 465; beset, 499. Icel. *staddr*, placed.
- (Staddes with), *pr. s.* ponders, resolves, settles within himself, 2960. Cf. Icel. *steðja*, to fix, appoint, resolve; *pp. staddr*. But probably a false reading.
- Staffe, *s.* round or rung of a ladder, 1438; Stafe (Staffe), staff of a sling, 1444.
- Staffull, *adj.* quite full, 1543, 4897.
- Stagis, *pl.* floors, stories of a building, 5265; rows of windows above one another, 4897.
- Staire (Stare), *s.* stair, i. e. ladder, 1438.
- Staire, *adj.* steep, sheer, 4828. A Yorkshireman told me that the ascent of Ingleborough from the West was 'a *steer* clim.' And so it is. See *stayre* in Gloss. to Allit. Poems.
- Stairis, *pr. s.* ascends, 4834.
- (Stakez), *pr. s.* staggers, 845. See below.
- Stakirs, *pr. s.* staggers, 845. Icel. *stakra*, to stagger.
- Stallid, *pt. pl.* placed, 195; Stall, *imp. pl.* 1 *p.* let us install, place, 589.



- Stallis, *pl.* stalls, choir-seats, 4543.  
(Still common.)
- Stalworthe, *adj.* stalwart, strong, 3017; Stalword, 3937.
- Stalworthly, *adv.* stalwartly, valiantly, 1149; (Stalwartly), 2625; (Stalworthly), stoutly, 745\*.
- Stamping (Stampyng), *s.* stamping, 781.
- Stampis, *pr. s.* stamps, pounds, 409.
- Stand-dede, *for* Stan-dede, *adj.* stone-dead, dead as a stone, 4845.
- Stand-quile, *s.* instant; *prob. an error for* Stound-while = Stound-while, the period of an hour, short-time, 4186.
- Stande, *v.* stand, 636, 1013; Stand, 1322; Standis (Standez), *pr. s.* stands, 861; Stand (Standes), *pr. s. subj.* stands, lasts, 2255; Standis (Standes), *pr. pl.* stand, 2165; Standen, *pp.* stood, 5585; Stand, *imp. s.* 2 *p.* stand, be, 5186.
- Stane, stone, 192, 263, 1127, 1136; Stanes, *pl.* stones, 1300, 1415, 2227; Stanys, 284, 566; Stanes, stones, gems, 483, 804, 1534, 3334; (Stanez), gems, 1074, 1662.
- Stanecast, *a.* stonecast, stone's throw, 3614.
- Staned, *adj.* built with stones, 4352.
- Stank, *s.* pool; *Vp* þe stank, upon the pool, beside the pool, 3918.
- Staplis, *pl.* staples, 1081.
- Starid, *pt. s.* stared, 263; Stared, *pt. pl.* glittered, 3796; Starand, *part. pres.* shining, gleaming, 804, 1534, 2880, 3615, 5286, 5396. See Prompt. Parv. See Sterind.
- (Startyn), *pr. pl.* leap, 778.
- State, *s.* state, kind, 5646.
- Statour, stature, 667; Statoure (Statute), 1702.
- Statute, *s.* statue, 5641. Lat. *statua*.
- Staues, *pl.* rounds, steps of a ladder, 2481.
- Staunke, *s.* stank, tank, reservoir, pool, 3854, 3923.
- Stayrand, *pres. part.* climbing, mounting, hence, advancing, 3923. "Staree, to go up and down as it were over steps and stairs; *Devon.*"; Halliwell. And see Staire.
- Stedd, *v.* place, 3977. From *stede*, sb.
- Stede, place, 195, 465, 589, 1069, 1091, 1574; stead, position of responsibility, 1013; stead, 5585; In stede, in good stead, 2165; Stedis (Stedes), *pl.* places, 1495; Steds (Stedes), 2884.
- Stede, *s.* steed, horse, 930, 1229, 5594; Stedis, *pl.* 1251; (Stedes), 781, 785.
- Stedill, *v.* stand still, 3977. Cf. prov. E. *steddle*, to make steady (Halliwell).
- Stee (Stegh), *s.* ladder, 2481. "Stee, a ladder, *North*;" Halliwell.
- Stekis, *pr. s.* fastens, 5485; (Stekys), sticks, is fastened, 683; Steke, *pr. pl.* 1 *p.* shut, close, 2139. See *steken* in Strattmann.
- Stele, *s.* steel, 788, 3374; armour, 1378.
- Stele-bowe, *s.* stirrup, 778.
- Stele-graunyn, *adj.* steel-engraven, 284.
- Stelid, *adj.* steeled, hardened; Wele-stelid, well hardened, 3897.
- Stelis, *pr. s.* gives stealthily, 5385; (Stelez), goes quietly, 2638.
- Stem, *v.* aim, attempt, 2480. Icel. *stefna*, *stemna*, to aim at, &c.
- Stemes (Stempmys), *pr. s.* speaks (to himself), 2960; Stemes, 5301. In l. 5301 read—'þan stemes he with, þe stoute king,' i.e. then he, the stout king, considers with himself. Icel. *stefna*, *stemma*, to summon, A.S. *stefnian*; A.S. *stefn*, *stemn*, the voice. So in Gawayn and the Grene Knight, *stemmed* = considered, pondered, not stopped, as given in the Glossary; i.e. it is allied to Icel. *stefna*, not to Icel. *stemma*, to obstruct.
- Step, 4845. Perhaps *To step* = in a steep direction downwards, i.e. headlong. See Stepe.
- Stepe, *adj.* steep, 4828.
- Steppis (Steppys), *pr. s.* steps, 2481; Stepis (Steppyn, *for which MS. wrongly* Spettyu), *pr. pl.* step, climb, 1437.
- Stere (Stirre), *v.* stir, 2809; Steris, *pr. s.* stirs, moves, 5075;

- animates, encourages, 5046; (Sternyn), *pr. pl. refl.* bestir themselves, 2625; Sterid, *pt. pl. refl.* bestirred themselves, 2625; Sterid, *pp.* stirred, excited, 4256.
- Stere, *ger.* to manage, control, 5363.
- Stereys, *pl.* stirrups, 3615. See Sterops.
- Sterind, *pres. part.* shining, gleaming, 5385. See Starid.
- Stering, *s.* stirring, 781.
- (Sterne), *adj.* stern, strong, 1131. See Sternyn.
- Sterne, *s.* star, 678, 683, 703; Sternes, *pl.* 127, 282, 604, &c.; Sternys, 1993; (Sternez), 3224. Icel. *stjarna*.
- Sternes, *pl.* the stars (but prob. an error for *stours*, i. e. battles), 3495. See above.
- (Sternly), *adv.* sternly, 840\*.
- (Sterops), *pl.* stirrups, 840\*; (Steropes), 792\*.
- Sterres, *pl.* stars, 4372. See Sterne.
- Stertes, *pr. s.* starts, springs, 778; Stert, *pt. s.* started, p. 283, l. 140.
- Sternyn, *adj.* stern, fierce, 611, 4256; (Sterne), 1386.
- Steuen, *s.* voice, 252, 1131; (Stevyn), 2254; Steuyn, 611, 1831; noise, 1386; (Steuen), noise, 1251.
- Stejid, *pt. pl.* mounted, 2194.
- Sticking (Stykkyng), *s.* stabbing, 2623.
- Sties (Styes), *pl.* ladders, 1437. See Stee.
- Stiffe, *adj.* harsh, strong, 611, 1149, 2139; valiant, 4758; (Styffe), stern, 2298; stubborn, 1321; Stife (Styffe), *adj.* unyielding, 1015; (Styff), strong, 2589, 3374.
- Stifly (Styfly), *adv.* strongly, 1081.
- Stiggis, *pr. s.* starts, feels abashed, 5301. Cf. Icel. *stygga*, to shun; used reflexively, to become shy, to start.
- (Stighillys), *pr. s.* appoints, assigns, 755\*. Put for Stightillys; see *stytle* in Gloss. to Sir Gawayn, and see Stiztill.
- Stike (Steke), *s.* stick, bit, piece, fragment, 1311.
- Stike (Steke), *v.* stick fast, 1438.
- Stikill, *adj.* piercing (?), 4186.
- Stile, *s.* style, title, 2693; (Style), 2754 (where supply *in*, as in the Dublin MS.).
- Still, *adj.* still, 263.
- Still (Stilly), *adv.* silently, 2032.
- Stilly (Stylly), *adv.* stilly, silently, 1136.
- Stingis, *pr. s.* vexes, 667.
- Stinkand, *pres. part.* stinking, 4838.
- Stinke, *s.* stink, 4840.
- Stint, *pp.* stayed, stopped, 4186. See Styntis.
- Stire (Stere), *v.* stir, 1091; Stirs (Stirrez), *pr. s. refl.* moves, 1327.
- Stith, *adj.* stiff, strong, 1069, 5461; Stithe, severe, 2050; stout, 1327; great, loud, 1251; strong, well-defended, 4352.
- Stithest, *adj. superl.* strongest, 5265.
- Stithli (Styfly), *adv.* severely, 2429.
- Stize, *pt. s.* ascended, 3467.
- Stijt, *pp.* set (lit. disposed), 4897; set, stuck, 5385; (Stight), set, 1543; (Styght), with *in*, disposed, ordered, hence written, 2693. A.S. *stihtan*, to dispose. See below.
- Stizthed, *pt. pl.* set firmly, 195. Put for Stizted. See above.
- Stiztill, *ger.* to order, govern, 589; Stiztill, *pr. s. imper.* may (He) dispose of, 3467; Stiztild, *pp.* set, placed, 5396; made, 5265; (Stizlet), established, 2298.
- Stode, *pt. s.* stood, 1136; (Stodyn), *pt. pl.* 2271.
- Stody (Study), *v.* take thought, 2480; Stody, 2 *pr. pl.* study, gaze intently, 683.
- Stody, study, thought, 263.
- Stoken, *pp.* stuck, fastened, 1081, 2201. Pp. of *steken*.
- Stolis (Stolez), *pl.* stoles, 1581.
- Stollen, *pp.* stolen, 465.
- Stomake, *s.* stomach, 4436.
- Stomling (Stomblyng), *s.* stumbling, 2623.
- Stonaid, *pt. s.* astonished, dismayed, 2589; Stonayd, astonished, 611; (Stoned), *pt. pl.* were astonished, 2589.
- Stonde, *s.* hour, 2831; time, 1468; short time, 655, 3470; (Stounde),

- short time, 2625; (Stound), moment, 1327.
- Stondis (Stoundis), *pl.* pains, 2809. "*Stound*, to ache, to smart with pain, *North*;" Halliwell.
- Stonen (Stonon), *adj.* stone, made of stone, 1574.
- (Stones), *pl.* gems, 1889.
- (Stonndes), *pr. s.* stands, 681.
- Stoppis, *pr. s.* stops, walls up, 5496; stops up, 4073; (Stoppys), stops, 970.
- Storbis, *pr. s.* disturbs, troubles, 667; Storbet, *pp.* disturbed, troubled, 3605. *Short for* Distorbis, Distorbet.
- Store, *adj.* strong, great, large, huge, 1367, 1534, 2165, 3937; (Store), 745\*; (Sture), 1741, 2050, 3017; Store ben, *for* Store-baned, i. e. strong of bone (the Dublin MS. has Sture-baned), 1702. Icel. *stórr*.
- Store, *s.* story, 3854, 4828.
- Store, 1 *pr. pl.* (we) store up, 4352.
- Story, *s.* story, tale, 2050.
- Stott, *s.* ox, 4754; Stottis, *pl.* oxen, 4267. See Halliwell.
- Stounde, *s.* short time, 3962, 5198; moment, 252, 453; Stound, 2408, 5063; Stounde (Stound), 1311; Stoundis, *pl.* times, occasions, 3622. A.S. *stund*.
- Stourbed (Stourblett), *pp.* disturbed, troubled, 934. See Storbis, Strublid.
- Stoure, *s.* agitation, 5046; conflict, battle, tumult of battle, 452, 499, 1251, 1332, 1415, 2050, 2832; Stoure (Stowre), shock of battle, 1015; Stoure, troop, host, battalion, army, 785, 3017, 3501, 3977; Stour, host, 3923; army, 3597, 5075; Stouris, *pl.* battles, 5585; Stoures, *pl.* armies, 5485. O.F. *estour*.
- Stoure, *s.* post (to support the tester above), 5646 (where for *wall* read *was*); (Stoure), the round of a ladder. "*Stour*, the round of a ladder;" Halliwell. Icel. *staurr*, a pole, post.
- Stoute, *adj.* stout, strong, 195, 284; (Stout), bold, 2429.
- Stoutly, *adv.* proudly, 1495; deeply, 279.
- Stra, *s.* the value of a straw, 2165.
- Strad (Strode), *pt. s.* strode; Strad vp himselfe, mounted, 2880.
- Straite, *adj.* narrow, 5485.
- Strake (Stroke), *pt. s.* struck (up), resounded, 1386 (in the Dublin MS. read *vp* for *upon*); Strakid (Stroken), *pp.* plighted, lit. struck, 3192.
- (Strakez), *pr. s.* strokes, 784\*.
- Strakid (Straked), *pt. pl.* (they) sounded, blew, 1386. "*Stroke*, a blast of a horn, a term formerly used by hunters;" Halliwell. Hence the verb.
- Strakis (Strakez), *pl.* strokes, blows, 1015.
- Strama (Struma), *proper name*, 2884.
- Strande, *s.* shore, 3066; Strandis, *pl.* banks, 3814; Strands, banks, 5461; Strandis, *pl.* streams, 4202, 5280, 5507. The latter sense is not uncommon. See Jamieson.
- (Stranes owt), *pr. s.* stretches out, 840\*. E. *strain*. See Strenys.
- Strange, *adj.* strong, 1149, 3017; Strang, 2381.
- (Strange), *adj.* strange, 826\*.
- Strangild, *pp.* strangled, 4758, 5577.
- Strasageras (Strasagera), Strasagoras, 2298; Strasagera, 2429; Strasagirs (Strasagera), 2381.
- Straungers, *pl.* strangers, 2688.
- Strayned, *pp.* constrained, 3549.
- Straȝt (Straughten), *pt. pl.* stretched, radiated, 1543; Straȝt, *pp.* stretched, raised, elevated, 3077.
- Straȝtill, *adj.* (probably) far-stretching, i. e. long, lengthy, 4838.
- Streke, *adv.* straight, 3854.
- Streken, *pp.* stricken, 3077; set, 3224.
- Strekiland, *pres. part.* sprinkling (it); *but the reading* Strenklet, i. e. sprinkled, *is far better*; 1534. See Strenkild.
- Strekis (Straughtit), *pr. s.* stretches, 1953; Strekis, *pr. pl.* extend, 5063.
- Streme, *s.* stream, 1432, 1953, 1995, 2032; Stremes, *pl.* streams, 1056; (Stremez), 1049; Stremys, 75.
- Stremed, *pt. pl.* gleamed, 5286;

- Stremand, *pres. part.* streaming, flashing; Ai stremand, continually, flashing, 3797.
- Strenkild, *pp.* sprinkled, thickly covered, 3676; Strengkyllyd, 3224. See *Strenkle* in Halliwell.
- Strenth, strength, 662, 1702; Strenthe (Strenth), 1741, 1983, 2139, 2194; Stre[n]the (Strenthe), strength, 2468; (Strenthez, *pl.*), 1013, 1824; Strenthe, castle, stronghold, fort, 5265; (Strenth), 1367; Strenth, 1311; Strenthis, *pl.* forces, powers, 3296, 3716; (Strennthes), 1270; Strenthis, forts, 4352.
- Strenthid, *pt. s.* strengthened, 499.
- (Strenys), *pr. s.* strains, stretches out, 792\*. See *Stranes*, *Streyn*.
- Stretis (Stretes), *pl.* streets, 1475, 1495, 1514.
- Streynne (Strene), *v.* strain, exert, 2809; Streyned (Strenyd), *pp.* constrained, compelled, 3121. See Halliwell.
- Strejt, *adj.* straight; Strejt on, straight upon, near, 1574.
- Strejt, *adv.* straight, 452, 3066; (Streght), 1321, 1995; Strejt, straightway, 4758; (Strejt *vp.*), 792\*.
- Strejt him (Straght hym), *pt. s.* directed himself, went, goes, 3206.
- Strejtis, *pr. s.* marches, 2032.
- Stridris, *pr. s.* strides, 778; (Striden), *pr. pl.* 778.
- Strike, *ger.* to strike, 843; Strikis, *pr. s.* strikes, 452, 804; clashes, 785; (Strikez), strikes, 1321; hits, 1069; (Striken), *pr. pl.* strike, 804; clash, 785; Striken (Stryken), *pp.* stricken, i. e. advanced in years, 1001.
- Strinds, *pl.* sons, children, 5104. A.S. *strýnd*, progeny.
- (Strippyng), *s.* stripping, uncasing, 781.
- (Strode), *pt. pl.* strode, went, 2194.
- Stroubid, *pp.* troubled (lit. disturbed), 3818; (Stourbed), 2855. See *Stourbed*.
- Strowid, *pp.* strewn, 4543.
- Stroyes, *pr. s.* destroys, 4840; Stroyed (Stroyde), *pp.* wasted, 1917.
- Strubled (Stroblet), *pp.* troubled, 856. Cf. *Storbis*.
- Struma, *prop. name of a river*, 1953, 1995, 2032, 2064, 3206.
- Stryfe, 1 *pr. pl. subj.* strive, 5356. See *Stryue*.
- Strykis, *pr. pl.* strike; go swiftly; Strykis *vp.* dart aloft, 1415; (Strykyn), *pp.* stricken, set, 3224; advanced, gone, 826\*.
- Stryue, *ger.* to strive, contend, 3758, 4006.
- Stryuys, *pl.* strivings, conflicts, 4251.
- Stude, *pt. s.* stood, 4754; (Stode), stood, i. e. was, 2408; Stude, *pt. pl.* stood, 279.
- Studis (Stodes), *pr. s.* studies, considers, 2960.
- (Stuffe), *s.* stuff, gear, 2980\*.
- Stuffis, 2 *pr. pl.* stuff full, 4436.
- Stullis, *pl.* great pieces, 4436. "*Stull*, luncleon, great piece of bread, cheese, or other eatable; *Essex*." —Halliwell.
- Stumbils (Stombles), *pr. s.* stumbles, 845.
- Sturbid, *pp.* disturbed, troubled, 513, 1341. See *Stourbed*.
- Sturte, *s.* impetuosity, swift attack, 3758.
- Sturten, *adj.* impetuous, 3758; quarrelsome, 4257.
- Stuynes, *pr. s.* is astounded, is amazed, 2960. Cf. "*stoin'd*, astounded;" Halliwell.
- Stye, *s.* path, 4834; Styes, *pl.* 5063.
- (Styff), *adj.* strong, 1327; severe, 2050; (Styf), strong, great, 745\*, 1251; Styffe, strong, 1069, 2165.
- Styntis, *pr. s.* stops, ceases, 5046; (Styntyd), *pt. s.* halted, 826\*. See *Stint*.
- Stythe, *adj.* brave, stout, bold, 3605. A.S. *stíð*.
- Subiet (Seget), *s.* subject, 1727; Subiectis, *pl.* subjects, 4245. (The fourth *subiectis* should be *subiect*; see the note to l. 4246, p. 311.)
- Successoure, *s.* successor, 4286.
- Suche, such, 711; (Such), 720.
- Sudanly (Sodonly), suddenly, 3198.

- Sued, *pt. pl.* followed, 3598.  
 Suffice, *pr. s. subj.* may suffice, 3196.  
 Sufficient, *s.* sufficient, 4396.  
 Suffire (Suffre), *v.* suffer, endure, 1011; Suffire, allow (me), put up with (me), 3465; Suffire (Suffre), *ger.* to endure, hold out, 2698; Suffirs, *pr. s.* suffers, undergoes, 512, 530; (Suffred), 1146; (Sufers), 2052; Suffirs, 2 *pr. s.* sufferest, permissit (to live), 4298; Suffir (Sofre), *pr. s. subj.* undergo, 1858; Suffire (Suffre), 2 *pr. s. subj.* suffer, 1974; Sufird, *pt. s.* suffered, 5554; Suffird (Suffred), *pt. pl.* suffered, 1699; Suffirand, *pres. part.* suffering, temperate, 4266; Sufird (Sofferd), *pp.* 2160; (Sufferd), permitted, 892.  
 Suget (Sogett), *s.* subject, 863, 918; Suggets, *pl.* subjects, men under control, 4664.  
 Suget (Sogett), *adj.* subject, 908.  
 Suld, 1 *pt. s.* should, 273, 664; *pt. s.* 100, 118, 119, &c.; Sulde (Suld), 1515; Suld, *pt. pl.* 141, 618, 908; Suld (Suldyn), should do, 1696.  
 Sullepe, *adj.* sole, 4305. *Put for* Surlepe.  
 Sun, some, 2, 6, 8, 11, 12, &c.; *dat.* to some, 4; (Some), 1330; (Som), 1413; Sumine (Soume), 1696.  
 Sunquat (Somqwatt), somewhat, 679.  
 Sum-quile, *adv.* formerly, 3136; Sum-quyle (Some-while), some-while, 2994.  
 Sum time; In sum (som) time, at one time, 2361.  
 (Sun), sun, 1870.  
 Sundres; Be sundres, separately, severally, 3909.  
 Superfluyte, superfluity, 4277.  
 Suppose, *v.* suppose, 577; Suppose, *pr. s.* 1 *p.* suppose, 586; (Suppose), 892, 1640; Suppose, 1806; Supposez, 2 *pr. s.* dost suppose, 842\*; Supposis (Supposes), expectest, 1776; (Supposye), 1 *pr. pl.* 1855; Suposid, *pt. s.* 1 *p.* formed my opinion, 2578; Suposed (Supposyd), *pt. s.* 2073; Supposand, *part pres.* supposing, 204.  
 Supowell, *s.* support, extraneous aid, 4300. *See* Suppoelle in Halliwell.  
 Suppe, *pr. s. subj.* 1 *p.* sup, drink, 3805.  
 Supplied, *pt. pl.* supplicated, 163.  
 Supposez, 2 *pr. s.* supposest, 842\*. *See* Suppose.  
 Suprise (Sussprise), *v.* surprise, take by surprise, 2390.  
 Surcote, *s.* surcoat, 4339.  
 Sure, *adj.* sure, 2010.  
 Sure, *adv.* bitterly (lit. sourly), 5348. *See* Sowe.  
 (Sured), *pp.* promised, 2633.  
 Surely, *adv.* surely, 475, 1833; (Scurly), 1986.  
 Surement, *s.* assurance, 2748.  
 Surfete, *s.* surfeit, 4439; Surfet, surfeiting, gluttony, 4277, 4293.  
 Surgens, *pl.* surgeons, 3132.  
 Surmontes, *pr. pl.* surpass, 4449; Surmountid (Sirmountyd), *pt. s.* overcame, 2361.  
 Surples, *pl.* surplices, 1550.  
 Surquidry, *s.* pride, arrogance, presumption, 4293; Surquित्रy, 4254, 4561; (Surqidry), 2736; (Surquydry), 3295.  
 Surre, Syria, 5666; Surry, 2760; Surre (Surry), 3143.  
 Sustenance (*error for* Substance, *as in the* Dublin MS.), 3391.  
 Sustene, *v.* sustain, 3805; Sustenes, *pr. s.* sustains, 2834; Sustaynes, *pr. pl.* sustain, 1749.  
 Sustinance, *s.* sustenance, 4269.  
 Susys, Susa, 2847, 2866, 3073; Susys, 3512; (Susys), 3207; Susses, 3109.  
 Sute, *s.* suit, set, same kind, 2929.  
 Suth (Sothe); With a suth, truly, 1846.  
 Suthely (Sothly), *adv.* truly, 1962.  
 Swa, *adv.* so, 346. *See* Sa.  
 Swallow, *s.* swallow, throat, 4507.  
 Swanes, *pl.* swans, 4276.  
 Swappis (Swappys), *pr. s.* strikes, smites. 957; (Swappez), 1232; (Swappyn), *pr. pl.* cast, 1299.  
 Sware, *v.* answer, 5007; Swaris, *pr. s.* answers, 2183, 2523; Swares, 674; Swaris (Sweres), 2273; (Swerez), 1621; (Aunswars), 2798; Swaris, *pr. s.* 2 *p.*

- answerest, 5331; Sware, *pr. pl.* answer, 2656; Sware, *pr. s. subj.* may answer, should answer, 750; Swarid, *pt. pl.* answered, 4193; Sward, 2069.
- Sware, *s.* answer, 1184, 4999, 5019, 760\*.
- (Sware), *pt. pl.* swore, declared, 2069.
- Swart, *adj.* swarthy, 3969.
- Swayfe (Swaffe), *s.* blow, 806. Cf. *E. sway.* See Gloss. to Allit. Poems.
- Sweling, *s.* squealing, 4112. Here *sw* = *squ*.
- Swelle, *ger.* to swell, fill up, 4276; Swellis (Swelliez), *pr. s.* swells, 2701.
- Swellis, *pr. s.* burns up, consumes (said of fire), 4181. A.S. *swēlan*. Read *swelis*.
- Swelme, *s.* heat, glow, fury, 750. See Gloss. to Allit. Poems.
- Sweltid, *pp.* rendered faint, 3790. See Gloss. to Allit. Poems.
- Swemyle, *pr. pl.* feel dizzy or faint (with sorrow), 156. Cf. prov. *E. sweem*, to swoon; *Icel. swimra*, to be giddy.
- Swepe, signification (lit. sweep), 248.
- Swerd (Swerde), sword, 957, 1232; Swerde, 1325, 1402; Swerdis, *pl.* swords, 3193; (Swerdes), 801; (Swerdez), 1399.
- Swere, *ger.* to swear, 1186; Swere, 1 *pr. s.* swear, 754; call to witness, 3424; Sweren, *pr. pl.* swear, swear obedience, 2104.
- Swete, *adj.* sweet, 362; good, 5325.
- Swete, sweet one, darling, 2826.
- Swete, *s.* sweat, great heat, 3790; blood, life, 3068. Cf. A.S. *swát*, sweat, blood.
- Swete, *pr. s.* 1 *p.* sweat, 5325.
- Swettir, *adj. comp.* sweeter, 3855.
- Sweuyn, *s.* dream, 248, 325, 353, 417, 1354. A.S. *swefn*.
- Swey, *pr. pl.* sway, force, 3970; (Sweyd), *pt. pl.* swayed, fell, 2057.
- Swezand, *pres. part.* resounding, 5019. A.S. *swégan*.
- Swiere, *s.* esquire, personage (used with reference to Bacchus), 4507; Swiers, *pl.* esquires, 156, 4108; Swiars (Swyers), 1184.
- Swiftly, *adv.* quickly, 1184, 1851; (Swyftly), 2069.
- Swike, *v.* deceive, 4999. A.S. *swícan*.
- Swilke, *adj.* such, 584.
- Swire, *s.* throat, gullet, 4507. A.S. *swira*. See Swyre.
- Swollen, *pp.* swollen, 3790. (Swone), *s.* swoon, 734\*.
- Swouned, *pt. pl.* swooned, 156.
- Swoze, *s.* sound, soughing noise, 5019. A.S. *swógan*, verb.
- Swozing, *s.* soughing, 4385. See above.
- Swyftnes, swiftness, hastiness, 1017.
- Swym, *v.* swim, 5505; Swymme, *ger.* 3841.
- Swyne, *pl.* swine, 4108. See note.
- Swyng, *s.* swing, 1232.
- Swyngis (Swyngez), *pr. s.* swings, 957; (Swynnges), 806.
- Swyre (Shwyre), *s.* neck, 779. See Swire.
- Swyth, *adv.* quickly, 248, 508, 1410, 1453, 2069, 3128, 4108; soon, 1304, 2310; (Swyth), greatly, 1265; Swythe, *adv.* greatly, 1261; soon, 1393; immediately, 1117; (Swithe), quickly, 761, 1717; (Swith), speedily, soon, 998, 1618; strongly, mightily, 806; (Swyth), quickly, 706; Swyth (Swythe), 1379. (Swythily), *adv.* quickly, 1184.
- Syb, *adj.* near akin; Sib men, kinsmen, 617; Sybb, akin, 397. See Sibbe.
- Sychim, *prop. name*, 89.
- Sycile (Secyll), Sicily, 2487. See Sysyll.
- Syde, *s.* side, part, 1052, 1200, 1388, 3978; quarter, 86; coast, 1142; Syd (Sydes), 2892; Sydis, *s. pl.* sides, 348. See Side.
- Sydoyne (Sydone), Sidon, 1142.
- Syeze, *ger.* to sink, fail, 716. A.S. *sigan*.
- Sygnés, *s. pl.* signs, 32, 250, 570; (Signes), ensigns, banners, 946. See Signes.
- Sygnfyfys, *pr. s.* signifies, 443; Signified, *pt. s.* signified, 515. (Syke), such, 1968.
- Sylis, *pr. s.* goes, 698; Sylez, *pr. pl.*



- go, 1555; (Syland), *pres. pt.* dropping, 733\*; going, 698. See Silis. "*Sile*, to siuk, drop, flow;" Halliwell. See Gloss. to Allit. Poems.
- Sylours (Silours), *pl.* ceilings, canopies, 1519. See Silloure.
- Sylus, *error for* Nylus, the Nile, 2598. See the note.
- Symolacries, *pl.* similitudes, images, figures, 4460; Symolacres, statues, 3685.
- Sympill, *adj.* simple, innocent, humble, 3083; Sympull, weak, 3550. See Simpill.
- Syn, *conj.* since, seeing that, 1874; (Sen), 1619.
- Synagoge, synagogue, temple, 1058; Synagog (Sinagoge), 2182. See Sinagoges.
- Synagyns, *pl.* monsters (?), alluding to the griffins, 5452. The true meaning is quite uncertain.
- Synches (Lat. Thinthisus), 5401.
- Syne, *adv.* since, 1008; after that, afterwards, 900, 1119, 1137, 1633, 2578; next, 4886, 806\*; afterwards, continually, 4217.
- Synfull, *adj.* sinful, 3663.
- Synge, *v.* singe, burn, 5206.
- Synnars, *pl.* sinners, 4417.
- Synned, *pt. s.* 2 *p.* thou sinnedst, 875.
- Synnys, *pl.* sins, 4403.
- Sypirs, *s.* cypress (wood), 3684. See Sipris.
- Syraphis, Serapis, 167, 183; Syraphas (Serapys), 1097.
- Syre, sire, lord, 1219; sir, 214; father, 701; Syre, *gen. sing.* sire's, father's, 754; Syris, *pl.* chiefs, 790; lords, 4432. See Sire.
- Syre, Syria, 89. See Surre.
- Syres, *a country*, 5666.
- Sysed, *pt. s.* lit. assised, hence constituted, 4654. See note, p. 312.
- Sysyll, Sicily, 5666. See Sycile.
- Syte, *s.* grief, 182; sorrow, pain, 546. Cf. Icel. *sút*, grief; *sýta*, to wail.
- Sythe-bladis, *pl.* scythe-blades, 3023.
- Sythen (MS. cythen), *adv.* afterwards, 411.
- Sythiis, *pl.* scythes, 3058. See Sithe.
- Sythiis, *pl.* times; Oft sythiis (Oft sythez), oftentimes, 1203.
- Sytt, *ger.* to sit, 627; to sit down, 235; to dwell, 4024; Syttis, *pr. s.* sits, 47, 479, 977; (Syttis), 902; Syttis, *pr. s. impers.* it befits, 3359, 5119; Sytt (Sitt), *pr. s. subj. impers.* befit, become, 862; Syttand, *pres. pt.* sitting, 548. See Sitt.
- Taa; þe taa = þet aa, that one, the one, 3978. See Tane.
- Taa, *s.* toe, 3365. (The Dublin MS. has *tocs.*)
- Tabernacle, *s.* shrine, 3688 (see the note); tabernacle, 5593, 5645.
- Table, table, 833, 1830; tablet, 274; Tablis (Tables), *pl.* tables, 853; tablets, 639; (Tabels), tablets, 1568.
- Taburs (Taburnes), *pl.* tabors, 1385.
- Tacchis, *pr. s.* fixes, sets, 5065; Taches, *pr. pl.* pierce, 2622; Tachid, *pp.* attached, fastened, 319; Tacchid, *pp.* fixed, fastened, set, 5573; set, 4970; (Tachyng), *pres. pt.* piercing, 2622. Cf. Prov. E. *tuck*, a slight blow; to attack, to fasten to (Halliwell); and see Glos. to Troy-book.
- Tafeta (Taffata), taffety, a sort of thin silk, 1515.
- Tailis, *pl.* tails, 5438.
- Taite, *s.* joy, exultation, 1208; play, game, lit. joy, 3979. Icel. *teiti*, joy, play.
- Take, *ger.* to take, 1197, 2149; *v.* 360, 1812; Takis, *pr. s.* takes, 55, 353, 410; (Takes), 713, 749, 1829; captures, 2148; gives, 3154; (Takez), takes, 1142, 1181; Takis (Takys), gives, 2749; delivers, 2026; (Takez vpp), *pr. pl.* take up, plight, 760; Taken (Token), 1 *pt. pl.* took, received, 2091; Take (Takes), *imp. pl.* seize, 1922.
- Taken (Token), *s.* token; To taken, as a token, by way of indication, 2109; Takens, *pl.* tokens, signs, 283, 5608; peculiarities, 4448.
- Takyng, *s.* taking, capture, 2123; (Takyng), taking, 1344; Takynges, 1835.

- Tald, 1 *pt. s.* told (of), 3829; *pt. s.* 200, 353, 2123; *pt. pl.* 906; *pp.* 190, 272, 693.
- Tale, *s.* tale, reckoning, number, 3022, 4879, 5127; account, 609; tale, story, 1448, 1886, 5175; tale (or perhaps account), 888; Be tale, in number, by tale, 2213; Talis, *pl.* tales, 190; accounts, 283.
- Talent, for Talentés (Talentés), *pl.* talents, 1666; talents, large sums of money, 3154.
- Talkis, *pr. s.* talks, says, 267, 660; (Talkez), 752; (Talkys), 1997.
- Taloghid, *pp.* tallowed, 4208.
- Talons, *pl.* talons, 5454.
- Tamed (Tamyd), *pt. pl.* pierced, lit. broached, 2622. *Short for* Atamed.
- Tane, *pp.* taken, 2582, 3491; oppressed, 3825; gone, 1289; be-taken, 463.
- Tane, *adj.* the one (in *phr.* *pe* tane), 606, 4069. See Taa.
- Tangid, *pp.* stung, 3637, 3886, 4798. Cf. prov. E. *tunging-nadder* (lit. stinging adder), the large dragon-fly.
- Tarbyn, *Lat.* Thirbei, 5500.
- Tare (Taure), mount Taurus, 2109.
- Targetis (Targettes), *pl.* shields, 2622.
- Tarrayn (Tartaren), *short for* Tarrayn, made of Tartary stuff, 1547. See below.
- Tars, *s.* silk of Tartary, 1515, 4673. *Also called* Tartaryn.
- Tartary, 5665.
- Tartaryns, *pl.* Tartars, 5484.
- Tary, *v.* delay, 1448; Taryed, *pt. s. subj.* would delay, 1261.
- Tas, *pr. s.* takes, 4886; (Takys), 1644, 2970; (Takes), 1666; Tas, *imp. pl.* go, betake you, 3719. See Take.
- Tasse, Tharsus (?), 5676.
- Tastis, *pr. s.* tastes, 1997; (Tastez), 2074.
- Taunde, *s.* tawney-colour, dark dye, 4335. For *taune* (with excrement *d*); cf. O.F. *tane*, *tanne*, tawney.
- Tebies, *pl.* (Tebettes), Thebans. 2427.
- Tebet (Tebe), Thebes, 2198; Tebis (Tebet), *gen.* of Thebes, 2228.
- Teche, *v.* teach, tell, 165; Teches, *pr. s.* 1171.
- Teche, *adj.* touchy, quarrelsome, ready to quarrel (*hence*, formidable), 663. See *Techy*, *Tetchy* in Halliwell.
- Techis, *pl.* habits, 4390; (Teches), 787\*; Tecches, 4640; faults, crimes, 4561; Land-techis, habits of our country, 4248. M.E. *tache*.
- Teching, *s.* teaching, 37.
- Teldid (Tyldet), *pp.* built, 1159; (Telde), 2174. From *teld*, sb., below.
- Teldis, *pl.* tents, 552. A.S. *teld*.
- Tell, *v.* tell, 248, 524; (Telle), 1112; Tell, *ger.* to tell, 67, 283, 515; to count, 1988; (Telle), 1164; (Telle), 1 *pr. s.* I tell, 1965; Tellis, 2 *pr. s.* tellest, 245, 366, 729; Tellis, *pr. s.* tells, 17, 35, 203, 278, 432, 437; informs us, 144; (Telles), 1613; (Tellez), 885; (Tellys), 699; Telles, *pr. pl.* tell, 903; Tellis, 1485; Tell, 296; Telle, *imp. s.* 5412; Tell, 463; Tellis, *imp. pl.* 896.
- Telle, *v.* till, cultivate, 4581.
- Telomew, Ptolemy, 4964, 5165, 5171, 5195, 5199.
- (Tembret), *pp.* built, lit. timbered, 2110.
- Temes, *pl.* instructions, rules of action, lit. themes, 2519.
- Temperoure, *s.* temper, due order, 543.
- Tempire, *v.* temper, refresh, 3466.
- Temple, *s.* temple, 1478, 1499; (Tempyll), 1060; Templis, *pl.* temples, 522.
- Ten, ten, 649.
- Tend, *pp. as adj.* kindled, flaming, 4179. See *tenden* in Stratmann.
- Tende, *ger.* to attend, to wait upon, 4534.
- Tendire, *adj.* tender, gentle, careful, 3317.
- Tene, *s.* shame, vexation, 3637, 5321; affliction, 3519; distress, 2315; sorrow, grief, 150; sorrow, loss, 3000; harm, 1978, 4405; enmity, 2427; anger, 853.
- Tene, *ger.* to damage, 2228; Tened



- (Tenyd), *pt. s.* harmed, vexed, 1212; Tened (Tenyd), *pt. pl.* were angry, 2193; Tene, *imp. s. refl.* be angry, vex thyself, 2309.
- Tenefull, *adj.* sorrowful, miserable, sad, 3149; harmful, 3907.
- Tenelis (Tynkyll), *pr. pl.* play, resound (lit. tinkle), 1385.
- Tenour, *s.* tenor, meaning, 4239; contents, 3566.
- Tent, tent, 1829; Tentis (Tentes), *pl.* tents, 1143, 2130, 2404; Tentis, *pl.* tents, *put* for tent, *sing.*, 475.
- Tent, *s.* notice, heed, 3317; attention, 4251.
- Tent, *imp. s.* 2 *p.* take thou heed, pay attention, 3729.
- Terand, *s.* tyrant, 4405; Terant, 5321; Terands, *pl.* tyrants, kings, 5484; (Tiraundez), rulers, 1294.
- Tere, *adj.* tiresome, tedious, difficult, 150, 1404; see *tere* in Stratmann.
- To tere, too tedious, 4767, 4918.
- (Tere), *v.* tire, 1404; Terid, *pp.* tired, 1009.
- Teres, *pl.* tears, i. e. drops, 4974; tears, 733\*; Terys, 154, 3238.
- Tergarontes, *name of a place*, 2174.
- Terme, *s.* term of life, term, while, 478, 1678, 5040; Termes, *pl.* boundaries, 4038; (Terme, *s.*), bounds, boundary, 2315.
- Termyn, *v.* terminate, end, 3979; Termen (Terme), *ger.* to put an end to, 1336; Termens (Termys), *pr. s.* puts an end to, 1304; Termynd, *pt. pl.* finished, ended, put an end to, 3640; Termynd (Termyd), *pp.* ended, 2784; (Termyd), ended, 2901.
- Terne, *s.* tarn, pool, 3860.
- Ternen, *pr. pl.* turn; Ternen of, turn off, strip off, 4114.
- Terrandry, *s.* tyranny, 4251.
- Tessale, Thessaly, 5676.
- Tessaloyne (Thessalon), Thessalonica, 986.
- Testre, *s.* tester, head-frame of a bed, 4914.
- Tetchis, *pl.* habits, 4413. See Techis.
- Tethe, *pl.* teeth, 609, 4097, 4114.
- Tethiest (Thethiest), *adj. superl.* bravest (?), 2198; (Tithiest), 2784. See Tithiest.
- Tetragramaton, word of four letters, 1592. See the note, p. 297.
- Tewid, *pp.* tawed, curried, 5139.
- Texalte, *for* To exalte, p. 281, l. 73.
- Text, original text, story, tale, 214, 525, 916, 1592; (Text), 741\*, 1044; Textes (Texte), *pl.* the (Latin) text, 1231.
- Teze (Tizt), *pt. s.* drew, went, 2174. See below.
- Tizt, *pt. s.* approached, 525, 649. See *tuhten* in Stratmann.
- Pa, *pron. pl.* those, 12, 51, 73, 92, 1027, 1224; (po), 2232; they, 2042; (pai), 1253, 2472.
- paes, *pron.* those, 1667.
- pai, *pron.* they, 13, 35, 105, 149, &c.; (pai), those, 2104.
- pai, *error for* par (as in the Dublin MS.), their, 2374; so also in 5458.
- paim, *pron.* them, 928, 1117; themselves, 816, 982; *dat.* to them, 181, 202; païem, 1180; (paime), 1210.
- paim-selfe, *pron.* themselves, 3489; (paim-seluen), 1275; (paim-selfe), by themselves, 698.
- (pair), there, 1145.
- paire, *poss. pron.* their, 3, 7, 14, 33, &c.; (pair), 799, 3201.
- pam, *pron. pl.* them, 11, 61, 106, 201, 203, &c.; (paim), *dat.* for themselves, 759.
- pam-selfe, themselves, 660.
- Dan, *adv.* then, 48, 75, 120, 352, &c.
- Thankis, *pr. s.* thanks, 371; (Thankez), 2576; Thankid, *pt. s.* 1686.
- par, *pron.* their, 150, 152, 154, 206, &c.
- par, *adv.* there, 140, 237, &c.; where, 211, 3792; (pair), where, 1366.
- par as, there where, 730\*.
- par-agaynys (par-agayns), there beside, 1264.
- pare, *adv.* there, 201, 221, 229, 246, &c.
- Thare, *pr. s.* need; þe thare, it is needful for thee, thou needest, 5377. See Thurt.
- pare, their, 2. See par.
- pare as (Thar as), whereas, 2430.
- pare-fore (parfore), *adv.* for it, 922; (parfore), on that account, 876.

- Pare-with (*Par-with*), therewith, 1890.  
 (parforne), *adv.* beforehand, 2456.  
 Par-in, therein, 503, 1078, 1292.  
 (Tharmes), *pl.* entrails, 773\*. A.S. *þearm*; Du. *darmen*, *pl.*  
 Tharne, *error* for Tharned (Tharnyd, D.), *pt. s.* needed, wanted, 2859. Thus the Ashmole MS. has *him tharned*, there needed for him; the Dublin MS. has *he tharnyd*, he needed. See below.  
 Parnes, *pr. s.* lacks, 2709; Tharned, *pt. pl.* lost, 3071, 3889. See *par-nen* in Stratmann.  
 Par-of, thereof, 876.  
 Par-on, thereon, 832, 1129.  
 Par-out, *adv.* out of it, 511; (*par-owt*), 945.  
 Par-quile; see Quile.  
 Par-to, *adv.* thereto, also, moreover, 760, 1872, 2371.  
 Pas (*pees*), *pron.* those, 1278; *þase*, 1823, 3536; (*base*), 1441.  
 Pat, that, 16, 17, 18, &c.; who, 5, 12, &c.; in order that, 221, &c.; With *þat*, thereupon, 111.  
 Pe, *pron.* thee, thyself, 80, 98, 292, 5313; *dat.* 253, 256; The, 1871; *þe put for þu*, thou, *voc. case*, 107.  
 Pe . . . þe, the . . . the, 847.  
 Thebes, Thebes, 2371; Thebie (Tebe), 2274; Thebea (Tebea), 2190; Theby (Tebet), 2292; Thebees (Tebe), *gen.* of Thebes, 2193.  
 Thebies (Tebes), *pl.* Thebans, 2333.  
 Thede, *s.* nation, country, region, 1710, 1803, 2859, 3889, 3955, 4419, 4737, 4806; tribe, nation, people, mass of men, 1246, 2537, 3747, 3824; Thedis, *pl.* nations, people, 2424; Thedes, 5016. A.S. *þéod*.  
 (Thees), *pl.* thighs, 773\*.  
 (pees), *pl.* these, 693, 1087, 1604; this, 936.  
 Thefe, *s.* thief, 1821, 2494, 3543; (Thief), 1881; Thefis, *pl.* thieves, wretches, 4520; Thefes (Theffes), thieves, 3199. See Theues.  
 Theftis, *pl.* thefts, 4652.  
 Then, then, 95, 143, 267; than, 130, 1104, 787\*.  
 Þens, *adv.* thence, 4870.  
 Theosellus (Teosellus), 1212; (Thoo-sellus), 1230.  
 Þer, there, 45, 85, 378, 800; þere, 517; (Thare), 1125; Bot *þer* aboute, except in the case where, 105.  
 Þer, their, 5, 14, 149, 197.  
 Þer-efire, in like manner, 3879.  
 Þer-fra, therefrom, 4638.  
 Þerto (Þarto), thereto, 1033.  
 (Þes), these, 897, 984.  
 Thestir, *adj.* dark, gloomy, 4173, 4804. A.S. *þéostre*.  
 Thestres, *pl.* darknesses (?), 4627. The sense is hopeless; for it is clear that this line should follow 4624 immediately, and that the line which should succeed this is lost.  
 Thethen, *adv.* thence, 5431; (*Þine*), 1068, 1076; Þethin, 5563.  
 Theues, *pl.* thieves, 1789; Theuys (Thefez), 1734. See Thefe.  
 Thewis, *pl.* customs, 3747, 4226; qualities, 3990; (Thewys), manners, 2744; (Thewez), conduct, 2932; Thewes, manners, habits, 4577; Thewys, 4700. A.S. *þéaw*.  
 Þi, *pron.* thy, 80, 102, 254.  
 Thickest (Thikest), thickest, 1323.  
 Þik (Thik), *adv.* thickly, 707.  
 Thike, *adj.* thick, solid, 4073; numerous, 69; fat, 5433; (Thyke), heavy, clumsy, 2709; (Thike), 1219; Thik, thick, hard, 529.  
 Thikefald, *adv.* thickly together, 1407.  
 Thikest, densest, 1427.  
 Thikire, *adj. comp.* denser, 4176.  
 Þine, *pron.* thine, 256, 470, 688.  
 Þine, *adv.* thence, 1036, 3848, 4075. See Thethen.  
 Þing, *s.* thing, 2; Thing (Thyng), 1685; (Þing), quantity, 1375; (Thynge), 2072; Þingis, *pl.* things, 275, 412, 726; (Þingez), 1567; (Thyngez), 1710; Any thinge, in any respect, at all, 2275.  
 Þingis, *for* Thinkis, *pr. s.* thinks, 672.  
 Þinkis, *pr. s. impers.* it seems, 363; Thinkes, 1101; Thinkis, 1351,

- 1580; Thinke, it seems, 925, 1461, 1846, 2094, 2203; Me thinke, methinks, it seems to me, 326, 867; Me pink, methinks, it seems to me, 3299; Thinke, *pr. s. subj. impers.* may seem fit, 3293; may seem, 1638.
- Thinke, *pr. s.* intends to go, 1121; (Pinkez), thinks, 1640.
- Pir, *pron. demon. pl.* these, 167; pire, 262, 347, 462, 660, 752, 3192, 3548, 4546, 5502; (pees), 1797; pire, those, 95; (pir), those, 797. Common in Barbour; still in use.
- Pis, *pron. this*, 59, 119, 230; Pi[s], this, 761; *pl.* these, 190, 2009, 2514; (pees), 860.
- Pi-selfe, thyself, 328, 356, 730, 5372; (Pi-seluen), 732, 850, 1843.
- Po, *pron. pl.* those, they, 3136, 3676; (Po), 1172, 1635; po (Poes), 1056; (Poe), 1954; (Poes), 1445.
- po, *adv.* when, 10, 277.
- Pof, *conj.* though, 1739, 1880; (*written Of*), 723, 862; as though, 5259; (Pof), 3168; Pofe, 254, 471, 1858, 4396; (Pof), 3244.
- Thole, *ger.* to suffer, endure, 1015, 1178; *v.* 707; Tholis, 1 *pr. s.* suffer, 539; Tholes, *pr. s.* remains, tarries, 3955; Poled, *pt. s.* suffered, 3876; Tholid, (she) suffered, endured, 529; Tholid, *pt. pl.* suffered, 2329. A.S. *þolian*.
- Thonere, thunder, 554. Read *thone-re-thrastis*, i. e. thunder-claps.
- (Poo), *pl.* those, 2842\*.
- Thornes, *pl.* thorns, 3815.
- Thorps (Thorpus), *pl.* villages, 1803.
- Pos, *pl.* those, 5639.
- pou, *pron. thou*, 97, 98, 100, 107, &c.
- Thousand, thousand, 1042, 1427, 2084; (Thowsand), 1832; (Thouusand), 1246, 2163; Thousandis, *pl.* 1436.
- (Pow), *error for yow*, you, 1845.
- poze, *conj.* though, 51.
- pozt, *pt. s.* thought, 240; (Thoght), 1710; *pt. pl.* 3215.
- pozt, *imp. pt. s.* seemed; him pozt = it seemed to him, 70, 419, 1346.
- pozt (Thought), *s.* thought, 1461; Thoztis, *pl.* thoughts, 676, 4314; anxieties, 574.
- Thra, *adj.* bold, 2218, 3824; severe, 554; (Tra), strong, 1631; (Thro), eager, keen, 1246; Thra (Throo), strong, 3071; Praa, stiff, rigid (as a corpse), 4452. Icel. *þrár*.
- Thra (Thro), *s.* struggle, victory, 2282; (Tro), 2259; lordship, 5016. Icel. *þrá*, a struggle.
- Thrall, *s.* thrall, slave, 4520.
- Thraly, *adv.* eagerly, 371; hardly, desperately, 2090. See Thra.
- Thrang, *pt. s.* pressed, 1427.
- Thrange, *adj.* oppressed, 4813.
- Thrange, throng, 1323.
- Thrast, *pt. s.* thrust, 2939.
- Thrastis, *pl.* claps (of thunder), 554. See Thonere.
- Thrat, *pt. pl.* threatened, 529.
- Þrathly, *adv.* (error for *þrally*), severely, 707. MS. D. *has* thrally.
- Thraw, inoment, 1436; Thrawe (Thraw), 1326; On a thrawe, at a time, 1476; Thre dais out a thraw (in a thraw), fully three days at a time, 2046. A.S. *þrág, þráh*.
- Thraw, *ger.* to throw, hurl, 2218; Thrawyn, *ger.* to throw, to wind (corpses), 4452.
- Thre, *num.* three, 277, 436, 1476, 2046, 2090, 2259.
- (Thred), *adj.* third, 1485.
- Threpis, *pr. s.* asserts, 4423; contends, 3125; Threpid, *pt. pl.* strove, 3642; Threp, *pr. pl.* (Threpyd, *pt. pl.*), dispute, 2046. A.S. *þréapian*.
- Threpild (Threpelytt), *pp.* congregated, assembled, 1476. Cf. *þroben, þrublen*, to press; see gloss. to Allit. Poems.
- Threschis, *pr. s.* thrashes, beats, 1326.
- Thret (Thratt), 1 *pt. s.* threatened, 2494; (Thrett), *pt. s.* exhorted, 1631; *pp.* threatened, oppressed, 707.
- Threte, *s.* threat, 2742.
- Thretti, *adj.* thirty, 3642; (Threti), 1246; Thretty, 3603, 3843; Be thretty, to the number of thirty, 3610.
- Threuen, *pp. as adj.* well-thriven,

- experienced, 2259, 3007; excellent, 2537; well-grown, 5137, 5433; grown up, hence, strong, mighty, 1326; (Thrifén), experienced, 1407; (Thryffyn), overgrown, 2709.
- Threw, *pt. s.* reached, 2939.
- Threyst, *adj. superl.* strongest (?), 2371. Reading uncertain; perhaps for *thraest*; see Thra.
- Thrid, *adj.* third, 281, 3343; (Thryd), 2282.
- Thrill, *s.* hole, 4073.
- Thrillis, *pr. s.* thrills, pierces, 224.
- Thringes, *pr. s.*; Thringes to, presses forward, joins in the contest, 2282; Thringis, *pr. pl.* rush, throng, 3843; Thringes (Thronge), press, crowd, 1436. A.S. *þringan*.
- Thrise (Thrisse), *adv.* thrice, 2279.
- Thrist, *s.* thirst, 4683.
- Thristis, *impers. pr. s.* thirsts; Him thristis, he is thirsty, 3848; Thristes, 2 *pr. pl.* thirst, 4443.
- (Thristez), *pr. s.* thrusts, 1326; Thristis (Thraste, *pt. s.*), *pr. pl.* thrust, 1407; Thristid, *pt. pl.* thrust through, pierced, 554; (Thrist), *pp.* thrust, 773\*.
- (Thristyn), *error for* Thrist in or Thrast in, thrust in, i. e. hid it away, 2939.
- (Thro), *adj.* strong, 2537. See Thra.
- (Throo); see Thra.
- Throm (Thrume), *s.* company, troop, 3007; On a throm, in a heap, i. e. successively, 3642. A.S. *þrymm*, a troop.
- Throtis, *pl.* throats, 1812.
- Throtild, *pp.* throttled, choked, 4813.
- Throw, *s.* short time, moment, 3843. See Thraw.
- Thryfandly, *adv.* thrivingly, prosperously, i. e. for her good, 3747.
- (Thryme), *adj.*; *an error for* Thrynen, 1326. See Threuen.
- Thryngis, *pr. pl.* 2 *p.* thrust, 4419. See Thringes.
- Thu, *pron.* thou, 1987; þu (þou), 2910.
- Thurghis, *pl.* coffins, 4452. A.S. *þruh*.
- Thurgh-out, *adv.* in all, continually, 4737. See Þurze-out.
- Thurt, *pt. s.* needed; Him thurt, it needed him = he needed, 1461. See Thare, and þarf in Stratmann.
- Þurze, *prep.* through, 140, 147, 225, 444, 487, 500; (þorow), 1427, 1636, 1960; Thurgh (þorow), 803; Þurze (Thurgh), 1729; throughout, 571.
- Þurze-out, *prep.* throughout, 3229; (þorow), right through, 2640; (Out-þorow), *adv.* continually, 2090.
- Þus, *adv.* thus, 35, 135, 178, &c.
- Þus-gate, *adv.* in this way, thus, 516, 1933, 4030; (Þus-gates), 2257.
- Thyn, *adj.* thin, 320.
- Thyngis, *pl.* things, 436.
- Thynkes, 2 *pr. s.* thinkest, 1988.
- Thys, this, 811\*.
- Tid, *adj. (for Tidy)*, excellent, 1060. See Tidiest.
- Tide (Tyde), *v.* happen, 2145, 2309, 3729, 4945; Tidis (Tydes), *pr. s.* happens, 2288; Tidis (Tydez), *pr. s. as fut.* will happen, 1988; Tidis, *pr. pl.* betide, await, 4549; Tid (Tyde), *pt. s.* betided, happened, 1193. See Tydis.
- Tidiest, *adj. superl.* ablest, 2367.
- Tield (Teld), *v.* build, 2258. (The line is corrupt; for *tilld* read Tebet, i. e. Thebes; see the note, p. 301.)
- Tiffid, *pp.* cut out, carved, lit. prepared, 4465. O.F. *tiffer*.
- (Tight), *pt. s.* went, 2304. See Tigt.
- Tigirs, *pl.* tigers, 3850; Tigris, 3573.
- Tigre (Tygre), the Tigris, 2610. See Tygre.
- Tild, *s.* building, 1343, 4581; (Teld), 1296, 1304, 1373; palace, 3000; (Tylde), 1159; (Tild), fort, 1366. A.S. *teld*.
- Tild, *v.* pitch, set, 3860; Tildis, *pr. s.* builds, 5593; Tildid (Tyl-det), *pt. s.* covered, defended, 1151; Tilld (Teld), *pt. s.* built, 2258 (but the line is corrupt; for *tilld* read Tebet, i. e. Thebes); Tildid, *pp.* built, raised (up), 5645; enshrined, built canopies (over), 4462; built, 3688; (Tyldit), 2110;

- Tild, *pp.* set, pitched, 4140; built, 2110. See above.
- Till, *prep.* to, 340, 463, 1828, 3814, 4875, 5389; (To), 2511; Tille, 1072, 5431; unto, 2909.
- Till, *conj.* until, 564, 4875; Tille, 646.
- Tillid, *pt. pl.* enticed, 5479.
- Tiltis, *pr. s.* tilts, upsets, 1303; Tilt, *pt. pl.* overturned, 1418.
- Time, *s.* time, 1460, 2011; (Tyme), 1109; Times, *pl.* 2259. See Tyme.
- Tinds, *pr. s.* kindles, sets on fire, 4179. Cf. A.S. *ontyndan*.
- Tint (Tynt), *pt. s.* 1 *p.* lost, 2683; Tint, *pp.* lost, 2901; (Tynt), 2784. See Tynt.
- Tirantes, *pl.* tyrants, 3640.
- Tire, Tyre, 1446, 2367, 5676; (Tyre), 1344, 1356. See Tyre.
- Tire (Tyre), *v.* attire, address, 1632; Tire, *pr. pl.* prepare (lit. attire), 2398; Tired, *pp.* attired, 3603; (Tyrett), 1547. See Tyris.
- Tirement, *s.* adornment, 4918.
- Tite, *adv.* quickly, 219, 3719; Titte, 5165. See Tyte.
- Tithandis, *pl.* tidings, 5175. Icel. *tíðindi*. See Tythandis.
- (Tithiest), *adj. superl. (put for Tidiest)*, most famous, 2371. See Tidiest. Cf. Icel. *tíðr*, famous, skilled.
- Titild, *pp.* named, inscribed with names, 5640.
- Titill, *s.* title of a letter, hence, letter, 3566, 4239; inscription, 5071; title, claim, 896; text, 1044; Title, 1592.
- Titly (Titely), *adv.* quickly, soon, 888, 1283, 1812, 4886; Titely, 267, 1525, 1632, 3999, 738\*; (Tytely), 2213; Tittly (Tyte), quickly, 1175.
- Tittire, *adv.* more quickly, sooner, 2519.
- Tittis, *pr. s.* pulls, 853; Titt, *pt. pl.* pulled, dragged, 5454; (Tit), *in phr.* Tit to, pulled to, fastened up, 2193. Lowl. Sc. *tyte*, to snatch, pull; Jamieson.
- Tizt, *pt. s.* drew, went, 1336, 2174; (Tight), *refl.* went, 1162; (To-
- teght), drew towards, approached, 1060; Tizt, *pt. pl. refl.* prepared, set about, 2333. A.S. *tihstan*, to draw. See Gloss. to Allit. Poems.
- Tizt, *pp.* erected, built, 2174; (Tight), fastened, 1373. Lit. *tied*; or else the same word as above.
- To, *prep.* to, 48, 58, &c.; for, 1070, 3786; until, 2160; as far as to, 4078; in comparison with, 3587.
- To, *conj.* until, 1034, 3853.
- To, *adv.* too, 316, 317, 461, 2077, 4256.
- To (Two), two, 2599.
- To-brest, *v.* burst in two, 640. A.S. *tóbrestan*.
- To-brissid (To-brysed), *pp.* badly bruised, 1274.
- (To-brountes), *pr. s.* destroys, 1214.
- (Tochett), *pt. pl.* touched, referred to, 888.
- To-clatirs (Claters), *pr. s.* shivers, bursts in pieces (with a noise), 799.
- To-clefe, *pt. pl.* cleft asunder, were rent asunder, 555.
- To-combirs (-bers), *pr. s.* discomfits, 1302.
- To-drawn, *pp.* drawn fully out, 5364.
- To-gedire, *adv.* together, 61, 377; Togedre, 1873; Togeder, 104.
- Toghid, *pp.* dragged, tugged, pulled, 4628.
- To-hewid, *pt. pl.* 1 *p.* cut in pieces, slew, 3430.
- Toile, *s.* tool, 4708. See Toyliis.
- Toke, *pt. s.* took, 127.
- (Toldyn), *pt. pl.* told, 906.
- Tole (Tule), tool, implement, 3373 (in the *nom.* case); Toles, *pl.* 4581. See Toile.
- Tolls, *pr. pl.*; Tolls of, pull off (their horses), 3640. See *tollen* in Stratmann.
- Toly, *s.* scarlet dye, scarlet colour, 4335. See *Tuly* in Halliwell.
- Tombe, *s.* tomb, 5593; Tombis, *pl.* 4451.
- Tomble, *pr. pl.* tumble, 552.
- To-morne, to-morrow, 1493.
- Tonacles, *pl.* tunicles, 1547.
- Toname, *s.* nickname, 2288.

- Tone; *þe tone* = *þet one*, that one, i. e. the one, p. 282, l. 101.
- Tone, *s. tone*; Out of tone, beyond measure, 1343.
- Tonge, *s. tongue*, language, 150, 3926; (Tong), 1404, 2075; (Tounge), 2885; Tongis, *pl. tongues*, languages, 21, 4031, 4428, 5071.
- Tonn, *s. tun*, tub, 5535.
- Toure, *adj. strong*, 5500. Cf. Icel. *tur-*, *prefix*, difficult. See Torfare.
- Top (Topp), *s. top*, 3365; (Toppe), 1303; Top, 2110; Topp, 4070; (Top), top of his head, 752\*; Topp-haris, hairs of the top of our heads, 1009.
- Topas, topaz, 3343, 3360; Topaces, *pl. topazes*, 5644.
- To-paschis (To-paschys), *pr. s. is dashed*, becomes broken, 2998.
- To-pligt, *pp. pledged to* (*are being understood*), i. e. we are never pledged to it, addicted to it, viz. to vice, 4330.
- To-ponyscht, *pp. severely punished*, 4330.
- Topoures (Tapers), *pl. tapers*, 1568.
- Tor (Towre), *s. tor*, hill-top, 2109; Torres, *pl. tors*, tower-shaped hilltops, 4863. Still in use in Devon.
- To-raised, *pp. torn up*, 2088.
- Torche, *s. torch*, 2970; Torchis (Torchez), *pl. torches*, 1563.
- Torettis (Torrettes), *pl. turrets*, 1418.
- Torfare, *s. hardship*, misery, 3729; difficulty, peril, 4101; Torfere (Torfer), trouble, 1261; Torfar (Torfer), hardship, 1193. Cf. Icel. *torferra*. The prefix *tor-* answers to Goth. *tuz-*, Gk. *δυσ-*.
- Torkans (Torkys), *pr. s. turns* (*himself*) (*towards*), turns (*towards*), 2967. Here *with* = *towards*, in the direction of what is said. See my article on *turken* in N. and Q. 6 S. V. 165.
- To-scailed, *pt. s. scattered*, dispersed utterly, 4150. *Skail*, to disperse; Jamieson.
- To-spryngis, *pr. pl. fly to pieces*, *are shivered*, 790; (To-sprungen), *pt. pl. flew to pieces*, 790.
- (Tote), *v. peep*, 694. See Tute, Toton.
- (To-teght), *pt. s. approached*, 1060. See Tigt.
- To-terid, *pt. s. tore asunder*, 4148.
- Tothe, *s. tooth*, 3907.
- Tothed, *pp. furnished with teeth*, 5482.
- Tothir, *adj. second*, 3342; *þe tothire*, that other, the other, 300, 607, 879, 1368, 3978; *þe toþir* = *þet oþir*, the second, the next, 3006.
- (Toton), *pr. pl. stick out*, 752\*. See Tote, Tute.
- Touches, *pr. s. touches*, 386, 3301; Touchis, *pr. pl. touch*, refer to, 888; Touchid, *pt. s. touched* (*upon it*), 5190; Touched (Touchyd), *pt. s. touched*, 2967; Touch-and (Tochand), *pres. part. touching*, 1894; Touchid, *pp. touched*, i. e. attached, 2580 (but read *tachid*). See *Glos. to Allit. Poems*.
- Toune, town, 216, 1163, 1446, 1525; (Towne), 1283, 1385; Toun, 2111, 2150; Tounes, *pl. towns*, 4024.
- Tou[n]les (Tounles), *adj. town-less*, without a town, 2288.
- Toure, *s. tower*, 1283, 1303, 3603; dungeon, 3149; (Towre), 1159; (Toure), 1446; Touris, *pl. towers*, 552; (Toure, *s.*), 2228; (Tourez), 1376; Toures (Towrez), 1151, 1418, 2267.
- Tourment, *s. torment*, 3515; struggle (*lit. torment*), 4251; (Turement), trouble, 1448.
- Toward, *prep. towards*, 843, 1089.
- (Town), town, 815\*; (Towne), *gen. town's*, 2135; A town, in the town, at home, p. 283, l. 127.
- To-wraiste, *pr. pl. wrest or twist in pieces*, 798; (To-wrasted), *pt. pl. twisted to pieces*, 798.
- (Towre), *s. tower*, 1296. See Toure.
- Toylis, *pl. implements*, *lit. tools*, 286. See Toile, Tole.
- Toze, *adj. tough*, 1812.
- Traces (Tracez), *pl. Thracians*, 986.
- Trainmes, *pl. instruments*, 127. Bad spelling for *trammes*; see Tram.
- Traistis, *pr. s. 2 p. trustest*, 5026; Traist (Trasten), 2 *pr. pl. trust to*,



- 2467; Traisted (Traistytt), *pp.* trusted, 3270.
- Traitours, *pl.* traitors, 3192.
- Tram (Trame), engine, machine, 1373; Trammys (*written* trammys), instruments, 286. And see Traumes, Traimmes. See the article on *tram* in my Etym. Dict.
- Transmitte, *pr. pl.* 1 *p.* send about, send from one place to another, 4335.
- Trappour, *s.* trappings, 4179.
- Trased, *pt. s.* traced, portrayed, 4914.
- (Trasped), *error for* Trespast, *pp.* trespassed, 2385. (The Ashmole MS. has *trispast*.)
- Trauail (Travell), *s.* labour, trouble, 2683.
- Trauld, *pt. s.* travailed, was in labour, 525; Trauailid, *pp.* disturbed, 543.
- Traumes (Trawynns), *pl.* engines of war, 1296. See Tram.
- Trayne, *s.* treachery, deceit, snare, 2580, 2582; train, plot, 5028.
- Trayvelles, 2 *pr. pl. refl.* labour, toil, *p.* 281, *l.* 68.
- Tre, *s.* tree, 4978; Tree, wood, 4465; Treis, *pl.* trees, 70, 4994, 5007.
- Trebut, *s.* tribute, 3719. See Tribute.
- Trecherous, *adj.* treacherous, 5028.
- Trechory, *s.* treachery, 3439; Trechoure (Trichory), 3192.
- Trechoure (Trechour), traitor, 1768, 2582.
- Trede, *v.* tread, 1515; Tredis (Tredes), *pr. s.* treads (on), 1348. (Trefe), *for* Threuen, *pp.* thriven, experienced, 3007.
- Treid, *put for* Tried, choice, pure, 5065; tried, attempted, 3439. See Tried.
- Trekild, *pt. pl.* trickled, 4974.
- Trelest, *adj.* trelliced, adorned with cross-bars or with gems arranged in crossed rows, 3343.
- Trenes, *for* Trines, goes, 4888. See Trines.
- Treson, *s.* treason, 1768, 5028.
- Tresory, treasury, 1666.
- Tresour, *s.* treasure, 123, 1807, 2677; thing of value, 5372; Tresore (Tresour), great wonder, marvel, 2094.
- Trest, *pr. pl.* trust, hope, expect, 1344; (Tristed), *pt. pl.* hoped, 1344.
- Tretis, *pr. s.* treats with, entreats, 5340.
- Tretis (Tretes), treatise, history, 2109; (Tretetz), 2190; Tretice (Tretes), *pl.* treatises, 1568.
- Treuly (Trewly), *adv.* truly, 2094, 2309.
- Treuth, *s.* truth, 515, 729.
- Trew, *adj.* true, 272, 3174; Trew (Trew), 986.
- Trewly, *adv.* truly, 2292.
- Treyned, *pt. s.* proceeded, 694. See Trines, Trenes.
- Tribochetes (Trebgetes, *for* Trelgetes, *as in* MS.), *pl.* engines for casting stones, 1296. O.F. *trebuchet* (Roquefort).
- Tribute, tribute, 888, 896, 1044. (Trichory), *s.* treachery, 3192.
- Tried, *pp.* well-tried, 3022; select, approved, choice, 1060, 2198, 3739, 5101, 5640, 5644; picked, 815\*.
- Triest, *adj. superl.* choicest, 4970; (Triest), 2198, 2367.
- Trimblis, *pr. s.* trembles, 5308; Trimblland, *pres. part.* trembling, 4914. See Trymblid.
- Trines, *pr. s.* goes, proceeds, 5171, 5195, 5231. Dan. *trine*, to step; *trin*, a step.
- Trispast, *pp.* trespassed, 2385.
- Trissis, *pl.* tresses, plaits of hair, 3450.
- Tristly, *adv.* trustfully, confidently, 1632.
- Tro; see Thra.
- Trod-gate (Troyde-gate), track, beaten path, 2988.
- Troi, Troy, 2123. See Troy.
- Trombling, *error for* troubling (Trublyng in the Dublin MS.), troubling, 3000.
- Trompes (Trompez), *pl.* trumpets, 773; Trompis, 2222.
- Trone, throne, 161, 977, 1490, 1724, 2776, 3406; Trones, *pl.* thrones (one of the nine orders of angels), 4914.

- Trottis him, *pr. s.* trots, 2610; (Trottes), 2988; Trottes, *pr. pl.* trot, 1208.
- Trouage, *s.* tribute, 3491, 3559, 5101, 5658; (Truage), 884, 903, 1904, 2957; (Trowage), 2525; Trouag (Truage), *s.* tax, 1678. O.F. *truage* (Roquefort).
- Troubild, *pp.* troubled, 543; (Turblett), 1343.
- Troumpis, *pl.* trumpets, 3965.
- Trouthe (Trewth), *s.* truth, faith, 1356; Trouthis (Trewthez), *pl.* trothis, pledges, 760.
- Trouthles, *adj.* false, 4462.
- Trowe, *v.* believe, throw, 141, 464; *ger.* 3663; Trowe, *pr. s.* 1 *p.* believe, trust, 730; Trow (Trowe), 1886, 2690; Trow, *pr. pl.* 2 *p.* trust in, 4548; Trowe, 2 *pr. s. subj.* mayst believe, 1986; Trowid, *pt. s.* believed, 4833; (Trowyd), 2293; Trowid, *pt. pl.* trusted, expected, 3191; Trowde, 1148; Trowe, *imp. s.* believe, 5372.
- Trowthis (Trowth), *pl.* trothis, 3192.
- Troy, Troy, 3020, 5665.
- (Trublett), *pp.* troubled, 1341.
- Truches, *pr. s.* 2 *p.* failest, 1988. A.S. *trucian*.
- Trufils (Trufles), *pl.* trifles, 1894.
- Trumpis, *pl.* trumpets, 3037, 3610; (Trompettes), 1386.
- Trusses, *pr. s.* packs (it), 123; Trussis (Trussys), *pr. s. refl.* sets out (lit. packs up), 1143. See *Trusse* in Gl. to P. Plowman.
- Tryi, *ger.* to choose, select, 663. See Tried. O.F. *trier*.
- Trymbld, *pt. s.* trembled, 569; (Tremblyd), 1252. See Trimblis.
- Tuanti, *adj.* twenty, 3930.
- Tufe, *adj.* tough, 319.
- Tuke, *pt. s.* 1 *p.* took, received, 2683; took (myself), put (myself), 3515; Tuke, *pt. s.* took, 286, 1044, 1446; (Toke), 2075; took, i. e. went upon (it), took to (it), 2901; Tuke, *pt. pl.* took, 190, 4114; Tuke *vp.* *pt. pl.* took up, plighted, 760.
- Tuke *vp.* *pr. pl.* blow, 3610; (Tuk-
- kyn *vp.*), 773. Properly to beat a drum; here used of the blowing of trumpets. *Tuck of drum*, beat of drum; Jamieson. "*Tuck of trump*, blast of a trumpet," *Glos.* to Troy-book.
- Tukkid; see Tulkid.
- (Tule); see Tole.
- Tulke, *s.* man, soldier, knight, 752, 1212, 2258, 2274, 2970; Tulk, 5372; (Tulke), 2580, 3174; Tulkis, *pl.* men, 3149, 3439, 3566, 3999, 4798; (Tulkes), 2075; (Tulkez), 1304, 2367, 2685. Icel. *tulkr*.
- Tulkid, *for* Tukkid, *pt. pl.* beat, 2427. "*Tuck*, to beat;" Jamieson. In MSS. we often find *kk* written more like *lk*, the double letter being denoted only by doubling the down-stroke. Hence we may correct *tulked* to *tukked* in the Gloss. to Allit. Poems, which is incorrect. See Tuke *vp.*
- Tunne, *un*, large quantity, 1807.
- Tupis, *pl.* rams, tups, 5566.
- Turbils, *pr. s.* becomes cloudy, is obscured, 4140; Turbled, *pp.* troubled, disturbed, 3637; Turbild, 4063.
- Turestis (Torrettes), *pl.* turrets (*but read* Turretis), 1151.
- (Turht), *for* Thurt, *q. v.*
- Turke, Turkey, 5665.
- Turmentis, *pl.* torments, 4549.
- Turnay, *pt. pl.* tourney, i. e. fight, 5429.
- Turne, *s.* turn, bout, 2276, 5429; Turnes (Tournays), exploits, 1404.
- Turne, *v.* turn back, 1631; return, 2607; depart, 5606; Turnes, *pr. s.* turns, 1071, 1854; (Turnes), 1332; turns, goes, 1336; Turnys, 31, 383; Turnes him, *pr. s.* turns, 752; Turne, 2 *pr. s. subj.* return, 1786; *pr. s. subj.* 401; Turned, *pt. s.* went, 2304; (Turned), 694; (Turnyd hym), 752; Turned, *pp.* 218; (Turnyd), 1289; Turne, *imp. s.* turn, return, 1768, 1978.
- Turred, *pt. pl.* butted, 5567. "*Turr*, to but as a ram does;" Halliwell.
- Tuscane, Tuscany, 5665.
- Tuskis, *pl.* tusks, 610, 4114.
- Tute, *ger.* to peep, gaze; Tute in,



- to gaze upon, observe, 127, 694 ;  
Tutand, *pres. part.* looking, peer-  
ing, 4776. A.S. *tótian*.
- Tuthe (Tothe), tooth, 1997.
- Twa, two, 317, 319, 348, 353, &c. ;  
Tway, 284, 545.
- Twelfe, twelve, 1079 ; (Twelf), 815\*.
- Twelmonth, *s.* year, 5429.
- Twenti, *num.* twenty, 3886.
- Twiggis (Twygges), *pl.* twigs, 1895.
- Twinglepi, *adj.* twofold, 5013. Cf.  
Anlepi.
- Twyggis (*Dubl. MS.* Wiggez), *pl.*  
twigs, 1714. See Twiggis.
- Twynnes (Twynmys), *pr. s.* parts,  
2750 ; (Twynnon), *pr. pl.* 760 ;  
Twyned, *pt. pl.* parted, 760.
- Twyse, *num.* twice, 1605, 3988, 5637.
- Tydis, *pr. s. impers.* betides, 106 ;  
Tyd, *pt. s.* betided, happened, 478.  
See Tide.
- Tygre, Tigris, 2597, 2785. See  
Tigre.
- Tymbre (Tembre), crest of the  
helmet (lit. timber, the crests  
being originally made of wood),  
1230.
- Tyme, *s.* time, 33, 204, 214, 272,  
525, &c. ; Tym, 478 ; Tymes, *pl.*  
times, seasons, 283 ; Be tyme, be-  
times, 2830 ; soon enough, 3728 ;  
In tymes, at times, now and then,  
4122. See Time.
- Tyn, *s.* tin, 4465.
- Tynd, *pt. pl.* ; Tynd to, shut to,  
closed, 2193. A.S. *týnan*.
- Tyndis, *pl.* teeth, tines, 3907, 5133,  
5567, 5573 ; tines, horns, prongs,  
3925, 752\* ; (Tyndez), 1063.
- Tyne, *adj.* tiny, 507.
- (Tynkyl), *pr. pl.* tinkle, i. e. resound,  
1384.
- Tynt (Tyntt), *pp.* lost, 903. See  
Tint.
- (Typys), *pr. s.* tips over, 1303 ;  
(Typed), *pt. pl.* tipped over, up-  
set, 1418. See *Glos.* to Allit.  
Poems.
- Tyre, Tyre, 1141, 1193, 1208, 1289,  
1294, 1336. See Tire.
- Tyris, *pr. s.* attires, 5195 ; Tyrid,  
*pp.* decked, 5644. See Tire.
- Tyte, *adv.* quickly ; As tyte as, as  
soon as, 693. See Tite.
- Tythandis (Tithanndez), *pl.* tidings,  
2304. See Tithandis.
- Vacant, *adj.* vacant, 4774 ; free  
(from), 5116 ; Vacand, vacant,  
4665.
- Vaile (Wale), *s.* vale, valley, 1205,  
1289, 1313.
- Vaile, *s.* defeat (?), 3980. Cf. F.  
*avaler*, to put down, Cotgrave.  
Or it may even mean 'valley.'
- Vaile, *v.* avail, 3545 ; Vailes, *pr. s.*  
avails, 103 ; Vailes (Valys), *pr.*  
*pl.* avail, 3122.
- Vailes (Wales), *pl.* veils, 2300.
- Vale, *s.* valley, 4164, 5432 ; Vales,  
*pl.* 4121.
- Valour, *s.* valour, 2493.
- Vanite, *s.* empty space, 4774 ;  
(Vanyte), vanity, 2731 ; Vanyte,  
1730, 1784.
- Vant, *imp. s.* 2 *p.* vaunt, 2713.
- Variand, *pres. part.* varying, various,  
4637 ; Variant, 4336, 5651.
- Variaunce, *s.* variety, 4632.
- Vaunte (Vaunt), *s.* vaunt, boast,  
1880.
- Vaward, *s.* vanward, vanguard,  
3617, 4842.
- Wayne, *adj.* vain, 389 ; (Vayn), 1784 ;  
(Wayn), 1113.
- Wayne-glori (Vaneglori), *s.* vain  
glory, 2731 ; (Vaynglory), 1730 ;  
Vayn glorie (Vaneglori), 3265.
- Ve, *for* We, we, 4328.
- Vebbis, *pl.* webs, woven cloth, 4335.
- Velany, villany, wickedness, 4550.
- Velans, *adj.* villainous, horrible,  
4164. It may be *velaus* ; Jamie-  
son has *vylaus*, and the *Glos.* to  
the Troy-book has *vilas*. But  
these examples are not at all  
decisive. Cf. F. *vilain*.
- Vemon, *s.* venom, poison, 4797.
- Vemons, *pr. s.* envenoms, poisons,  
4842.
- Vencust, *pp.* vanquished, 3122, 3948,  
3980 ; (Venkest), 950 ; Vencuste,  
3875.
- Vengeance, vengeance, 1484.
- Venge, *v.* avenge, 186, 950 ; *ger.*  
5326 ; Vengid (Vengyd), 2096 ;  
(Venged), 969.
- Venus, Venus, 4410, 4414, 4512.

- Venyson, *s.* venison, 4121.  
 Verdure, *s.* verdure, 4979.  
 Vermeon, *s.* vermilion, 3945. See Vermylion.  
 Vermylion, *s.* vermilion colour, 4336.  
 Vermyn, *s.* vermin, 3948, 5422;  
   Vermyns, *gen. pl.* of the vermin,  
   of the monstrous creatures, 4797.  
 Verraly (Veraly), *adv.* truly, verily,  
 2928.  
 Verray, *adj.* true, 5527; Verra, 389.  
 Vertu, virtue, 103; strength, 5527;  
   valour, 5324; Vertous, *pl.* virtues,  
   4410; Vertuse (Vertuez), good  
   qualities, 2958.  
 Vessall, *s.* vessel, *often used in plural*  
*sense of vessels*, plate, 4351; Ves-  
   sale, 3700; Vessell, 116; Vessell  
   (Veseall), vessels, 2945.  
 Vestoure (Vesture), vesture, gar-  
   ment, 1539.  
 Viaunce, *s.* food, viands, 4121. *Put*  
*for* Viauns = Viaunds.  
 Victore (Wictory), *s.* victory, 2096.  
 Victour, victor, 950; Victoure, 186;  
   (Victor), 1484; Victor, 389, 1880.  
 Vile, *adj.* vile, 186; harmful, 4164;  
   cowardly, 3617.  
 Violet (Vyolet), *adj.* violet, 1539.  
 Violet, *s.* violet hue, 4336.  
 Virgyns, *pl.* virgins, 4665.  
 Virre, *s.* glass, 4351. *F. verre.*  
 Vise, *ger.* to look, 1539, 3946; *To*  
*vise on*, to look upon, in appear-  
   ance, 3945; Vise, *pr. pl.* 2 *p.* look  
   out for, seek out, 4686; Visid, *pp.*  
   seen, 5651.  
 Vision, *s.* vision, 1508.  
 Visit (Viset), *ger.* to visit, 2033;  
   (Visytt), 2004; Visitis (Viseten),  
   *pr. pl.* visit, 1964.  
 Vitaill (Vitale), victual, 2171.  
 (Vith), *prep.* with, 1536.  
 Vmbe, *prep.* around, 2209; (Vmbe),  
   3393; Vmby (Vmbe), round about,  
   1154; (Vmby), 779.  
 Vmbe, *adv.* around, 2762, 3250.  
 Vmbe-gildid, *pp.* gilded round, 4899.  
 (Vmbelappes), *pr. pl.* beset, sur-  
   round, 2473. See Vmlapis.  
 Vmbe-thonrid, *pp.* encompassed,  
   surrounded, 4806; Vmby-thon-  
   red (*printed* Vmby-thorned), 3857.  
   Sense clear; spelling doubtful.  
 (Vmbrayd), *s.* reproach, 1800. See  
   Vnbraydis, Vpbraide.  
 Vmby-clappis, *pr. s.* surrounds, em-  
   braces, 4171; Vm-clappis, *pr. pl.*  
   invest, beset, surround, 2473;  
   Vm-by-clappid, *pp.* surrounded,  
   3451.  
 Vmfaldin, *pp.* encompassed, 4717.  
 (Vmhedde), *imp. s.* look about you,  
   731.  
 Vmlapis (Vmbelappes), *pr. s.* sur-  
   rounds, 2134; Vmlapped (Vnlap-  
   ped), *pp.* encompassed, 920. See  
   Vnlappis.  
 Vm-loke, 2 *pr. pl.* surround, 4672.  
   (Here *loke* = mod. *E. lock.*)  
 Vmquile, *adv.* formerly, 23, 1132,  
   3594, 4511; sometime, 3079;  
   sometimes, 4744, 4745.  
 Vmse, *imp. s.* 2 *p.* look thou around,  
   bethink (thyself), 3728.  
 Vn-ably, *adv.* without ability, fool-  
   ishly, weakly, 2308.  
 Vn-behalde (*for* Vm-behalde), *imp.*  
   *s.* look about you, 731.  
 (Vnbende), *v.* unbend, unstring  
   (your bow), 1744; (Vnbenden),  
   1974. See Vnbynd.  
 Vn-blythe, *adj.* sorrowful, joyless,  
   152; Vnblyth, 48.  
 Vn-braydis, *pr. s.* 2 *p.* upbraidest,  
   2739. *Error for* Vmbraydis; see  
   Gloss. to Troy-book; and see  
   Vmbrayd, Vpbraide.  
 Vnbynd, *v.* ungird (thyself), 1744;  
   Vnbynde, 1974.  
 Vncacchid, *pt. pl.*; *in phr.* Vncac-  
   chid hertis, let loose their hearts,  
   i. e. lost their courage, 2588. See  
   the note, p. 303.  
 Vn-callid (Vn-callyd), *pp.* uncalled,  
   832.  
 (Vnchaunce), mischance, 822\*.  
 (Vncleue), *adj.* as *s.* unclean sub-  
   stance, poison, 1106.  
 Vncleues, *s.* uncleanness, 4218.  
 Vncles, *pl.* uncles, 3443.  
 Vnclethe, *v.* unclothe, 5505.  
 Vncorsayd, *adj.* unriden, lit. un-  
   coursed, not tried in the course,  
   3775.  
 Vn-corumpid, *pp.* uncorrupted,  
   4334.  
 Vndede, *adj.* undead, alive, 158.

- Vndedlynnes, *s.* immortality, 2734; Vnde[d]lynnes, 3545, 4058.
- Vndefoulid (Vndefowled), *pp.* not trodden down, undefeated, 2630. See Foules.
- Vnder, *prep.* under, 992, 1156; Vndere, 34. See Vndir.
- Vndere-putt, *pp.* subjugated, 5402. See Vndire-put.
- Vndid, *pt. s.* unfolded, 521. See Vndo.
- Vndir (Vnder), *prep.* under, 1845; Vndire, 247, 1092, 1799. See Vnder.
- Vndire-put (Vnder-put), *pp.* subjected, 2025. See Vndere-putt.
- Vndireling (Vnderlinges), *s.* subject, 1861.
- Vndire-take (Vndertake), *pr. s.* 1 *p.* undertake, 1356; Vndire-tuke (Vndertuke), *pt. s.* understood, 2967.
- Vndirfangid (Vnderfonged), *pt. s.* undertook, 910; Vndirfange, *pt. s.* (Vnderfongez, *pr. s.*), received, 2793; Vndir-fong (Vnderfangez, *pr. s.*), *pt. s.* received, 1700.
- Vndirstandings, *pl.* intelligences (an astrological term), 279. See the note to l. 274, p. 289.
- Vndirstandis, *pr. pt.* understand, 252; Vndirstode (Vnderstonde), *pt. pl.* understood, 1794.
- Vndistreynd (Vndistreynynd), *pp.* without being commanded, uncompelled, 2779.
- Vndistrobbed (Vndistourblett), *pp.* undisturbed, untroubled, 3418.
- Vndo, *v.* declare, disclose, 1112; Vndone, *pp.* undone, 1472. See Vndid.
- Vndorne, *s.* the third hour, at first 9 A.M. (but afterwards later), 3853. Here *myd-ouir-vndorne* = middle of the period just after undern, i. e. (as I suppose), the middle of the period from 9 to 12, or about half past 10.
- Vn-esid, *pp.* disturbed, not eased, 5054.
- Vne-slayne (Vnslayne), *pp.* unslain, not slain, 2475.
- Vneth, *adv.* scarcely, 2060. See below.
- Vnethes, *adv.* scarcely, 937; Vne-this, with difficulty, 4437; (Vneth), 1370, 2093; (Vneth), 937.
- Vnfaire, *adj.* terrible, frightful, 4864.
- Vnfaire, *adv.* extremely, beyond measure, 1189, 1212, 3873, 3903, 4566; fiercely, cruelly, terribly, 2041, 4741, 4837; grievously, severely, 1224, 3637; indignant-ly, 837; horribly, 555; Vnfare (Vnfaire), exceedingly, 1409. See Gloss. to Troy-book.
- Vnfaldis, *pr. pl.* unfold, display, 3027.
- Vnfryndschip, unfriendship, enmity, 2722.
- Vngastly, *adv.* unspiritually, in a worldly way, 4430.
- Vnhalesome, *adj.* unwholesome, unsuitable, 4387.
- Vn-happe, *s.* ill luck, 4554; Vnhapp (Vnhappe), 3287.
- Vnhappeiste (Vnhappiest), *adj. superl.* unhappiest, most unfortunate, 713.
- Vn-hele, *s.* misery, 3291. See Jamieson. (Perhaps *he* should be *ere*, as in the Dublin MS. But in both MSS. the line is corrupt, and the alliteration is at fault.)
- Vn-helid, *pp.* uncovered, 3450.
- Vnhemed (Vnhemmyd), unrestrained, 2835.
- Vn-hewyn, *pp.* not hewn down, unslain, 1945.
- Vnhid, *pp.* discovered, made public, 3437.
- Vnhome, *s.* 5530. Almost certainly an error for *vnhone*, i. e. haste. The phrase *with mikel vnhone* is merely the equivalent of the phrase *withouten hone*, i. e. without delay; see *hone* in Stratmann. Thus *vnhone* is the opposite of 'delay,' i. e. haste.
- Vn-honourable, *adj.* dishonourable, 2950.
- Vnhurt, *adj.* unhurt, 5530.
- Vnicornes, *pl.* unicorns, 3593.
- Vnknawen, unknown, 3715; (Vnk[n]awyn), 825\*.
- Vnlappis (Vnlappyd, *pt. pl.*), *pr. pl.* unfold, 1932. Cf. Vmlapis.

- Vnlikly, *adj.* unlikely, 5552.  
 Vnmete, *adj.* unmeasured, immense, very long, 143.  
 Vn-metely, *adj.* unfitting, unseemly, 321.  
 Vnneth, *adv.* scarcely, 4185, 4801; (Vneth), 1774; Vnnethe (Vnneth), with difficulty, 2788. See Vneth.  
 Vnnethes, *adv.* scarcely, 4078. See above.  
 Vnnombirable (Vnnowmerable), *adj.* innumerable, 2365.  
 (Vnnowmyrd), *pp.* unnumbered, 1992.  
 Vnpossible, *adj.* impossible, 4249.  
 Vn-prophetable, *adj.* unprofitable, 3560.  
 Vnprouednes, *s.* unprovedness, inexperience, 1019.  
 Vnpussible, *adj.* impossible, 635. See Vnpossible.  
 Vnreproued, *pp.* without reproach or reproof, 3092; (Vnreprefytt), 3092.  
 Vnrde (Vnrde), *adj.* cruel, harsh, 871; Vnrde (Vnrde), 739; Vnrde, rough, wanton, 460. See *Vnrde* in Halliwell.  
 Vnrldly, *adv.* fiercely, 638; Vnrldly, 566.  
 Vn-samen, *adv.* not together, far apart, 605.  
 Vnschent, *pp.* unharmed, 2143.  
 Vnsele, *s.* misfortune, evil fortune, ill luck, 1106, 4471. See Sele.  
 Vn-semely, *adv.* unseemly, 862; *adj.* 99.  
 Vnsene, *adj.* unseen, i.e. unique, extraordinary, 1026; unequalled, 2536.  
 Vnsesid, *pp.* untaken, 5334.  
 Vnseson; In vnseson, out of season, at an unseasonable time, 4439.  
 Vnslayne, *pp.* not killed, 2668; Vnslayn, 2093, 2232.  
 Vnsowmyd (Vnsoumed), *pp.* unnumbered, 1991. Lit. 'unsummed.'  
 Vnsure, *adj.* insecure, 2136.  
 Vntald (Vntalde), *adj.* uncounted, countless, 2677.  
 Vnthanks, *adv.* against (your) will; At 3our vnthanks, against your will, 4698.  
 Vn-to, unto, 173, 623, 706, &c.  
 Vnwarly, *adv.* unawares, heedlessly, 5329.  
 Vnweried, *pp.* unwearied, or uninjured, 3622.  
 Vn-wetandly, *adv.* unknown, secretly, 134.  
 Vnwondid (Vnwoundet), *pp.* unwounded, 1235.  
 Vnworthely (Vnworthly), *adv.* unworthily, 869.  
 Vn-wyn, *s.* sorrow, woe, lit. un-joy, joylessness, 531. See *unwonne* in Stratmann, p. 605, col. 1.  
 Vn-zarkid, *pt. pl.* unfastened, 3209; Vnzarked, unbarred, 2147.  
 Voice, *s.* voice, 1000, 1479; (Voyce), 1508; Voice, 2958.  
 Voide, *v.* get rid of, 4112; (Voyde), *ger.* to avoid, 1484; to give up, 1784; Voidis, *pr. s.* gets rid of, 4169; leaves, 3655; (Woydez), departs, 1113; Voidis, *pr. pl.* render void; Voidis down þe leuys, bring down the leaves off the trees, 4145; Voidid, *pp.* deprived, 3980; got rid of, 3948; (Woydett), removed, 1338; Voidid, departed, 4650.  
 Volatile, *s.* fowls, birds, 4637.  
 Vouchid safe, vouchsafed, 303.  
 Vowtriére, *s.* adultréss, 4532. *Short for* Avowtriére.  
 Vowtres, *pl.* vultres, 3945. See note to l. 3944, p. 309. The usual O.F. form is *voltour* = Lat. acc. *vulturem*; mod. F. *vautour*. But here we have a form *voutre* = Lat. nom. *uultur*; cf. Span. *buitre*, Port. *abutre*, a vulture.  
 Voyce, voice, 718. See Voice.  
 (Voyde), *v.* avoid, 2424; Voydis (Woydes), *pr. s.* 2 p. dost empty, 2945; Voydis, *pr. s.* removes, 122. See Voide.  
 Vp, up, 80, 82, &c.; Vpp, 760; (Vppe), 758, 977; Vp set, set up, 198; With vp son, with sun-rise, 4067.  
 Vp, *adv.* open, 2142; (Vppe), 783\*.  
 Vpbraide, *s.* reproach, 1800. See Vn-braydis, Vnbrayd.  
 Vp-liftis (Vpp lyftes), *pr. s.* uplifts, 805.  
 Vryn, *s.* urine, 3826.

- Vs, *us*, 22, 82, &c.; *dat.* for *us*, 1674.  
 Vse, *s.* use, custom, usage, 2950.  
 Vse, *v.* use, 1674; Vsyd, *pt. s.* used, was accustomed, 3594; Vsed, used, 645; (Vsed), *pt. pl.* were accustomed, 738\*; Vsyd, *pp.* used, 4324; customary, 4023.  
 (Utterly), *adv.* utterly, 1472.  
 Vulturnus, *s.* the west-wind, 4145.  
 Such seems to be the required sense; but the true sense is "a south-east by-one-third-south wind;" Lewis and Short.  
 (Vyce), *s.* fine appearance, 1539.  
 See Vise.  
 Vyne, *s.* vine, 1346; Vynes, *pl.* vines, 4899.  
 Vysage (Visage), *s.* visage, face, 2958; (Vysage), 3362.  
 Vyse, *ger.* to look, 2928; to behold, 3700; Vyses, *pr. s.* pays heed to, considers necessary, 126. *Short for* Avyse; see *Aviser* in *Cotgrave*.  
 Vysite, *ger.* to visit, 573; (Visitt), 859.  
 Wa, *s.* woe, sorrow, calamity, 528, 539, 1103, 1168; pain, 2721; (Wo), 2812; misery, 3075; (Woo), 3153; Waa, woe, misery, 3435; illness, 5606; Wa, *interj.* woe, 4564; Wa is me, woe is me, 1468; Waa (Woo), *as adj.* sorry, 2999; Waes, *pl.* miseries, 4592.  
 Wacche-men, watchmen, 5164.  
 Wacchis, *pl.* watchmen, sentinels, 5215.  
 Wacken (Wakyn), *ger.* waken, arouse, 2276.  
 Wadis, *pr. s.* wades, goes away, 4141. Perhaps put for *vadis*, i. e. fades.  
 Waes, *pl.* woes, miseries, 4592. See Wa.  
 Waest (Woest), *adj. superl.* most wretched, most sorrowful, 2004. See Wa.  
 (Wafe), *imp. s.* send, 2866. See Wayfe.  
 Wage, *s.* hire, reward, wages, 3426.  
 Waged (Wagged), *pt. s.* wagged, nodded, 968.  
 Waghe (Wagh), *s.* wall, hence, a bank of drifted snow, 1757. A.S. *wāh*, a wall. See Wawes.  
 Wai, *s.* way, 4847; (Way), road, 1324; Waies, *pl.* ways, 3852; Waies, 2330; ways, wise, 2013. See Way.  
 Waik, *adj.* weak, 3917; (Waikē), 3587; (Wake), 1271, 2077.  
 Wailaway, *interj.* woe! 4564.  
 Waite, *v.* pay heed, look, 3354; Waitis, *pr. s.* watches, 4776; looks, 59; (Wates), looks, 956; Waites, *pr. pl.* look, 4129; Waite, 3630; (Waytyn), look, 2930; Waitid, *pt. s.* 1 *p.* looked, considered, 5621; Waited (Wayted), observed, 1764; Waiteand, *pres. part.* looking, 3835; Waite, *imp. s.* 2 *p.* see, take heed, 4949. See Waytis.  
 Wakens, *pr. s.* awakes, arises, 2222; (Wakned, *pt. s.*), 2222; Wakyns, *pr. s.* awakes, comes to himself, 3249; (Wakens), *pr. s.* remains awake or alive, 725\*; Wakand, *pres. pt.* waking, whilst awake, 356.  
 Wald, *pt. s.* 2 *p.* wouldst, 311, 354, 1097; (Wold), 690; Wald, *pt. s.* would, 159; required, 128, 485; (Walde), desired, 1667; Wald it, i. e. would it please, 2684; Wald, *pt. pl.* would, 1, 13, 36; would like to, 3164.  
 Wald-eyed, *adj.* wall-eyed, 608. Icel. *valdegðr*. See Wawil-eyed.  
 Waldis, *pl.* woods, wolds, 3792, 3799.  
 Wale, *adj.* excellent, choice, good, valuable, famous, 75, 294, 809\*, 827, 841, 949, 1189, 1287, 1376, 2018, 2261, 2287, 2311, 2783, 2932, 3256, 3435, 3515, 3561, 3720, 4153, 4304; chosen, appointed, 4772; respected, 2742; Wale quile, good time, short period, 4597; (Wale), valuable, 2150.  
 Wale, *v.* choose, 1667; *ger.* to choose, 4655; *imp. s.* 1014, 806\*. Goth. *waljan*.  
 Wales; see Vailes.  
 Walke, *v.* walk over, overrun, 519;

- Walkis, *imp. pl.* walk about, 541.
- Walke, *s.* walk, march, 3799.
- Wall, *error for* Was, was, 5646.
- Wall, *s.* wall, 1369, 1405; Wallis, *pl.* walls, 1376; (Walle, *s.*), 1153, 1384; (Wallis), 1161, 1359, 1420; (Wallez), 1030.
- Walld, *pt. pl.* would, 5335. See Wald.
- (Wallez); see Wawes.
- Wallid, *pp.* walled, 1149.
- Walowand, *pres. part.* wallowing, whirling, 4064. A.S. *wealwian*, to turn about.
- Walows, *pr. s.* fades, grows dull, 4627. Better *wclows*; see *welhen*, *welwen* in Stratmann.
- Walt (Weld), *pt. s.* wielded, 838.
- Wambe, *s.* womb, 550, 579; Wame, 386, 531, 538; Wambs, *pl.* bellies, 3813; (Wambes), 2168\*; Wames, 4276. A.S. *wamb*.
- Wan, 1 *pt. s.* got, begot (lit. won), 587; came, 3458; Wan, *pt. s.* 2 *p.* didst win, 949; Wan, *pt. s.* won, 616, 811; conquered, 3471; Wan, *pt. s.* got; Wan up, got up, climbed up, 1384; Wan of, stripped off, 2543; arrived, came, 5213; Wan to wax, attained his full growth, 3986.
- Wand, wand, 57.
- Wande (Wonnd), *v.* hesitate, 2723; Wand (Waned), *pt. pl.* flinched, 1411. A.S. *wandian*. (The spelling *waned* is bad.)
- Wandreth, *s.* peril, 528. Icel. *vandræði*.
- Wane, *v.* decrease, 4772.
- Wanes, *pl.* dwelling, abode, quarters, 134, 3748; (Wane, *s.*), rooms, 3222. Cf. A.S. *wunian*, to dwell.
- Wannes, *pr. s.* lit. makes pale, causes to fade, dims, 4627; grows pale, 4142.
- (Want), *v.* lack, be lacking, 809\*; Wantis, *pr. s.* fails, 4586, 5480; lacks, needs, 3497; (Wantes), lacks, 996; is lacking, 2168; Wantis (Vantes), it is lacking (to us), 1854; (Wantes), fails, 1325; (Wantyd), *pt. pl.* lacked, 3150.
- Wanton, *adj.* wanton, irregular, 12.
- Wapen, *pl.* weapons, 3884; (Wapens), 1400; (Waypynnez), 958; Wapens, *pl.* weapons, 65, 4958. A.S. *wdpen*, sing. and *pl.* (neuter sb.).
- Wapened (Wapenned), *adj.* armed, 1250.
- Wapp, *s.* stroke, blow, 5318; At a wapp, in a moment, at once, on a sudden, 3040; At a wap, 4142.
- Ward, *s.* guard, 5614; troop, 3040; keeping, 5314; Warde, *s.* charge, 77; keeping, 5172; patronage, 4500; protection, 4500.
- Wardan, warden, 75.
- Warde, *ger.* to keep, guard, 5374.
- Wardrere (Wardrer), club, truncheon, warder, 838.
- Ware, *pt. pl.* were, 3, 72, 84, 199; Ware, *pt. s. subj.* were, would be, 13, 150, 225; might be, seems to be, 101, 391.
- Ware, *adj.* aware, 59, 75, 119; wary, skilful, 202; (War), aware, 1585, 3212.
- Ware þe, *imp. s.* beware, take heed to thyself, 2830.
- Warisch, *v.* be cured, recover, 5606; *ger.* to heal, cleanse, 4217. O.F. *warir*, *garir*, F. *guérir*. See Warysche.
- Warke (Werk), *s.* ache, pain, 2811.
- Warlazes, *pl.* warlocks, sorcerers, 4425; evil beasts, monsters, 3795. E. *warlock*. See Warlow.
- (Warloked), *pp.* fettered, 769\*. The same as *warroked*; see *Warroke* in Gl. to P. Plowman.
- (Warlow), *s.* deceiver, 1706. See Warlazes.
- Warne (Werne), *pr. s.* 1 *p.* warn, 2014; Warned, *pt. s.* 1 *p.* refused, 1468; Warned, *pp.* refused, 1467; told by way of warning, 4221.
- Warnes, *s.* wariness, caution, 3354; foreknowledge, 3256.
- Warnyng, *s.* warning, 571.
- (Warpdy), *pt. pl.* twisted, 798.
- Warre, *pt. s. subj.* were, 582. See Ware.
- (Warryd); see Weried.
- Warysche (Warysh), 1 *pr. s. subj.*



- may be healed, hope to recover of, 2811. See Warisch.
- Waryson, *s.* gift, reward, 3431. See *warison* in Halliwell.
- Was, *pt. s.* was, 17, 37, 39, &c.; Wasse (Was), 1366; Was, *pt. pl.* were, 73, 2002.
- Waspe, wasp, 738; Waspis, *pl.* 3011.
- Wast, *adj.* waste, unproductive, 3561.
- Wast, *s.* waste, desert, 3487, 3906, 5565; Wastis, *pl.* waste places, 3792, 4044.
- Wast, *ger.* to waste, destroy, 5382; Wast, 1 *pr. pl.* (Wastyd, 1 *pt. pl.*), 2330; Wastid, *pp.* wasted, 1941; defeated, 4008; (Wastyd), destroyed, 1311, 2141.
- Wastoure, *s.* waster, destroyer, 5310.
- Wate, *pr. s.* 1 *p.* know, wot, 3436, 4153; 2 *p.* knowest, 107; 2 *pr. pl.* know, 3090; (Wayte), 2379.
- (Wates), *pr. s.* waits, looks, gazes, 781\*, 1129, 1527; (Watyn), *pr. pl.* gaze, 700. See Waite.
- Wathe, *s.* danger, peril, 119, 5586; (Wothe), 1103; Wathe, evil, harm, 1411, 3523; harm (Lat. text *impericia*, want of skill), 3355. Icel. *vaði*; see Stratmann.
- Wath, *adj.* (*error for* Wale, i.e. choice), 2150. The Dublin MS. *has* Wale.
- Watir (Water), *s.* water, stream, 1303, 2152; Water, 59, 1290; Watere, 112, 2539; Watre, 5470; Wattre, 3737; Wattir, 4299; Waters, *pl.* rivers, 1079; Watirs (Waters), 1967.
- Watirles, *adj.* waterless, dry, 3487. (Waueschyd), *pp.* put away, 822. See Wayue.
- Wawes, *pl.* walls, 5644; (Wallez), 3222; Wawis (Wallez), 1523. See Waghe.
- Wawil-ēzed (Waugle-eghed), *adj.* wall-eyed, 1706. See Wald-ēzed.
- Wawis (Wawes), *pl.* waves, 1153; Wawys, 26; (Wawes), 3167\*. See Wages.
- Wax, *v.* grow, increase, 4772; *ger.* 3986.
- Wax, *s.* wax, 113.
- Way, *s.* way, 132, 428, 1310; Ways, *pl.* ways, tracks, 4105; Way (Ways, *pl.*), way, wise, 1643.
- Wayfe, *v.* remove, put away, 297; (Wayfe), *ger.* to send, 1868; Wayfe (Wafe), 1 *pr. s.* allow, grant, waive, 723; (Wayfez), *pr. s.* sends, despatches, 1716; Wayfid, *pp.* put away, 822; Wayfe, *imp. pl.* quit, leave, 2469. See Wayue.
- Waykis (Wakens), *pr. s.* becomes weak, 1006.
- Wayne, *error for* Wayue, *v.* give, deliver, 3426. See Wayue.
- Waynes (Waynez), *pl.* wains; Waynes to mete, for wains to pass each other, 1324.
- Waynest (Vanyshit), *pt. s.* *refl.* vanished, 1113.
- Wayns (Vaynes), *pl.* veins, 1730.
- Wayrngle, *s.* a little villain, 1706. From A.S. *wearg*, Icel. *vargr*, a felon. Cf. *wariangel*, a butcher-bird, Chaucer, C. T. (D. 1408). The suffix is the A.S. *-inzel*, as in *ráp-inzel*, a little rope.
- (Waystes), *pr. s.* wastes away, 3254.
- Waytis, *pr. s.* looks, 265; perceives, 3636; (Wates), looks, 1585; Waytes, looks, gazes, 700, 945; waits for, looks for, 131; Wayted, *pt. pl.* looked out, found, 194; Waytid, *pp.* looked, 4233. See Waite.
- Wayue (Wafe), *ger.* to send, deliver, 2431; (Wayfe), 1175; Wayue, *pr. s.* 1 *p.* give up, 5134; Wayues, *pr. s.* despatches, sends, 4691; (Wayfes), sends, 2316; Wayues, *pr. s.* puts aside, waives, 4656; Wayued, *pp.* transmitted, 4221; sent, 2695; (Wayfed), conveyed, 1728. *Not* Wayne; see Wayfe. Mod. E. *waive*. See *waiven* in Stratmann.
- Wayues, *pr. s.* leans (?), 945. *But* D. *has* Wayfes *vp* a window, i.e. lifts up a window, opens a window. See above. The reading *out* was due to thinking of *waytes*, i.e. looks, in the latter part of the line.

- Wages (Wawes), *pl.* waves, 1309.  
See Wawis.
- We, *pron.* we, 178, 180, &c.
- We, *s.* man, 541, 3080, 4655; (Wye), 1858, 2302, 2389. See Wee, Wye.
- Webbis, *pl.* fabrics, woven cloths, 4911, 5295; (Webbys), 1547; Webbis, cobwebs, *rather than* webs of cloth, 4807; Webis (Webbes), fabrics, 1577; (Webbez), 1523.
- Wed, *v.* wed, 297; Wedd, *pt. s.* wedded, 3454; 1 *pt. s.* 587; Wed him (Weddit hym), *pp.* wedded, 822.
- Wede, *s.* weed, 413.
- Wede, *s.* garment, 120; (Wedes, *pl.*), stuff, lit. garment, 2229; (Wede), dress, armour, 809\*; Wedis, *pl.* weeds, garments, 232, 3796, 3959; armour, 3015; (Wedes), 1506, 1530, 2768; robes, 1559; Wedes, *pl.* weeds, garments, 2886; Here-wedis (-wedes), garments of iron, coats of mail, 1010.
- Wede, *pr. s.* 1 *p.* go mad, 539; Wedis (Wodez), *pr. s.* goes mad, 1926. A.S. *wēdan*.
- Weding (Weddyng), *s.* wedding, 827.
- Wedire, *s.* weather, 4142; Wedirs, *pl.* weathers, tempests, 557; Wedres, storms, 4796.
- Wedowe, widow (*Dubl. MS.* albedo for a wido), 1977; Wedow, 5089; Wedous, *pl.* widows, 1558.
- Wee, *s.* man, 134, 314, 383, 477, 2521, 5317, &c.; (Wy), 725, 1628; (Wye), 855; (Weght), 1993; Wees, *pl.* men, 3264, 4190, 5374; (Wies), 1030; (Wyes), 1250, 2212. See We, Wye.
- Welcun, *pp. as adj.* welcome, 3211; Welcom, 2302.
- Weld, *v.* rule over, obtain, 3423; Welde (Weld), *ger.* to wield, to govern, 2994; Welden, to wield, 651; Weldes, 2 *pr. s.* wieldest, rulest, 4932; (Weldes), *pr. s.* wields, possesses, 3247; (Weldyd), *pt. s.* ruled, 827\*.
- Wele, *adv.* well, 30, 44, 171, &c.
- Wele, *s.* weal, 4621; (Whele), 1858.
- Welk, *pt. pl.* walked, 4190.
- Welken, *s.* sky, 247, 1566, 3038; (Welkyn), 714; Welkyn, 554.
- Well ne, well nigh, very nearly, 539. See Wele.
- Wella (Wele), *adv.* very, 1970.
- Welland, *pres. part.* welling, boiling, 4080.
- Wellis, *pl.* springs, streams, 4385; springs, 4976.
- (Welt), *an error for* Wilt = Willid, *pp.* gone astray, 2984. See Willid.
- Welth, *s.* wealth, 3247, 3582; happiness, pleasure, 2276; success, 937; Welthe, prosperity, 3272; Welthis, *s. pl. as sing.* prosperity, 3290; Welthys, *pl.* riches, 4467.
- Weltid, *pt. pl.* rolled, 839; (Weltyn), *pr. pl.* 839.
- Wemen, *pl.* women, 528, 3755.
- Wemles, *adj.* stainless, 4949; unhurt, untouched, 4066.
- Wenchis (Wenches), *pl.* wenches, maidens, 1558.
- Wende, *v.* go, turn, 865; *ger.* to go, 910; (Wend), *v.* go, 1632; (Wynd), *ger.* depart, 2949; Wendis, *pr. s.* wends, goes, 120, 371, 406; comes, 511; departs from life, dies, 933; (Wendes), goes, 976; Wendis (Wendyn), *pr. pl.* go, 1994. See Went.
- Wene, *s.* weening, supposition, 3516; *also as v.* I suppose, 3516. See below.
- Wene, *ger.* to suppose, 390; (Wene), *v.* 3119; Wenes, 2 *pr. s.* weenest, supposest, 3548; (Wenys), dost expect, 1736; Wenys (Wenes), *pr. s.* weens, expects, 844, 939; Wend, *pt. s.* thought, supposed, 2644; (Wende), 2546; (Wenyd), 933; Wend, *pt. pl.* thought, supposed, 3631; expected, 3431; Wenand, *pres. part.* expecting, 3587, 4308; Wene, *imp. s.* suppose, 3275; Wenys, *imp. pl.* ween, think, 1938.
- Wengis, *pl.* wings, 413.
- Went him, *pt. s.* went, 749; Went, went, 37, 428; *pt. pl.* 1410; (Wenden), 901; Went, *pp.* gone, 159. See Wend.
- (Wepe), *ger.* to weep, 872; Wepis,



- pr. s.* weeps, 972; (Wepys), 963, 1287, 727\*; Wepand, *pres. part.* weeping, 2999.
- (Wer), were, 764. See Were.
- (Werayour), *s.* warrior, soldier, 2643. See Werreour.
- Werbild (Werblet, *pt. pl.*), *pp.* blown, lit. warbled, 2222.
- Werd, *s.* world, 18, 24, 37, 40, 247, 519, 3471; earth, 4142; plain, 4136; (Werld), world, 995, 1051; (Warld), 2653; (World), 2255; Werde, world, 189, 389, 441, 1963, 4305, 5289; Of þe werde, in the world, 3597; þe litill werde, the little world, the microcosm, or world within a man, 4494; in l. 3301, the former *werd* = world, but the latter is an error for *werk* = work; see l. 3299. See Worde.
- Werd, *s.* fate, 3247; Werdes, *pl.* destinies, fates, 257, 270, 949; Werdis, 283; (Werdes), 1099; (Werdez), 702, 2260. See Wird, Werid.
- Werdly (Wordly), *adj.* worldly, 3262.
- Were, 2 *pt. s. subj.* were, mightest be, 368; *pt. s. subj.* 142, 193, 239, 421, &c. See Wer.
- Were, *s.* war, 651, 5586, 5598; conflict, 2260; (Were), 808\*; Weris, *pl.* wars, 4400, 4502; Weres, 2365; Of weres, in war, 2373.
- Were, *ger.* to wear, 3959, 5123.
- Were ye (*read* Were þe), *imp. s.* defend thyself, 2830.
- Were (Wery), *v.* worry, 2533. See Wery.
- Weres, *pr. s.* wars, 3536.
- Weried (Warryd), *pp.* accursed, 3212. See *Warien* in Stratmann.
- Werid (Werd), *s.* weird, fate, 689. See Werd.
- Weris, 2 *pr. s.* wearest, 2308; Werid, *pt. s.* wore, 3635. See Werrid.
- Weris (Weres), *pl.* men, 1300. A.S. *wer.*
- Werke, *s.* work, deed, 1423, 3199; doing, 2856; (Werk), work, 1290; fortification, 1298; Werk, work, 1071; Werkis, *pl.* works, deeds, 12, 38, 3271; (Werkez), 727\*.
- Werke, *s.* pain, 539. The same word as the above.
- Werkis, *pr. s.* pains, 531.
- Werld, *s.* world, 3254; (Werlde) 1502.
- (Werld), *error for* Werd, *s.* fate, 3247. See Werd.
- Werpis, *pr. pl.* warp, twist, 798; (Warpyn), cast, 1300; Werpe vp, cast up, *hence* rise up, 557; Werp-id, *pt. s.* uttered, 202; (Warpyd), spake, 709; Werpel (Warpyd), cast, flung, set, 1526; Werp-id (Wappyd, *wrongly for* Warpyd), *pt. s.* threw, flung, 1432; Werp-id, *pp.* uttered, 243; Werpis (Warpez), *imp. pl.* 2 *p.* throw, 2142.
- Werray (Werre), *ger.* to war upon, fight against, 2689; Werrays (Warreys), *pr. s.* wars, carries on war, 2495; Werrais (Werrys), wars, makes war, 3166; Werraid, *pt. s.* warred, carried on war, 3730. O.F. *werreier* (Burguy).
- Werreour, *s.* warrior, destroyer by war, 5310; Werraour (Weryour), warrior, 3211; Werreours, *pl.* warriors, 2643; Werriouris (Weriours), 1014; (Weryours), 1798; Werriours (Wereour, *s.*), *pl.* warriors, 2206; (Weryours), 2325; Werrayouris, warriors, 3568; Werraours, they who make war (upon us), 4294; Werrayours, *pl. gen.* of warriors, 4007.
- Werre (Were), war, 2202; Werres (Werez), *pl.* 1928.
- Werrid (Wered), 2 *pt. pl.* wore, 2290. See Weris.
- Wers, *adj. comp.* worse, 3199.
- Werst, *adj.* worst, 532, 4656.
- Werstillare (Wristiller), wrestler, 2287.
- Wery, *adj.* weary, 1271, 3488, 3917.
- (Wery), *ger.* to worry, 759\*. See Were.
- Weryd, *pt. s.* wore, 3330.
- Weschid (Wessh, *pt. pl.*), *pt. s.* washed, 2543.
- Wessell (Vessell), *s.* plate, 2928.
- West, *adj.* west, 1733.
- Wete, *v.* wit, know, 241, 304, 680,

- 5016; *ger.* to know, 714, 1718; to wit, 1728; Wētis, *pr. pl.* 2 *p.* know ye, 3516; know, 294; Wete, *pr. s. subj.* may know, may wit, 2783; Wete, *imp. s.* know, 1970; Wete, *imp. pl.* know, 4007; Wētis (Wetes), 1938.
- Wete, *v. error for* Wene (*as in D.*), suppose, 3119.
- Wethire, *adj.* Wethire halfe, left side, wrong side, evil direction (*Lat. in sinistrum*), 3355. A.S. *wīðer*. Cf. *Widdersinnis* in Jamieson.
- Wethris, *pl.* wethers, 4476.
- Wetirly, *adv.* truly, 4222; (Witterly), certainly, 2856; Weterly, certainly, surely, 304; (Witterly), 1423.
- Wetis, *pr. s.* waits, watches, 241. See Waite.
- Wex, *pt. s.* 1 *p.* grew, 5621; *pt. s.* 616, 629; (Wex), became, 1189. (Weyle), *v.* choose, 759\*. See Wale.
- West, *s.* weight, 5473.
- (What), what, 682, 683; (Whatt), 1147; What of, what with, 528; *interj.* what! 723\*.
- When, when, 42, 119, &c.
- (Whene), *s.* queen, 733\*.
- (Where), where, 683.
- Whepire, *conj.* whether, 249.
- Which, who, 828\*.
- (Whil), *conj.* while, 2255; (Whils), whilst, 2172; (Whilse), 1220.
- (Whistely), *adv.* silently, 1851.
- Whit, *for* With, with, 3013; (Whit), 1613.
- Who, who? 834\*.
- (Whyne), whence, 834\*.
- Whytin (Within), within, 1290.
- Wiche-craft, *s.* witchcraft, 378.
- Wicket, *s.* small door, 5545.
- Wickid, *adj.* wicked, 2425.
- Wickidly, *adv.* wickedly, 2425; (Wikedly), 1728.
- Wickidnes, *s.* wickedness, evil, 3277, 4425.
- Wide, *adj.* wide, 37; (Wyde), 1970; Wid open (Wide hopyn), *adv.* wide open, 1526.
- Wife, wife, 297. See Wyfe.
- (Wight), *adj.* nimble, 765\*.
- (Wightly), *adv.* actively, 1405, 1428.
- Wild, *ger.* to rule, 3477; (Weld), *ger.* to rule, govern, 994, 2653; rule over, 3086; to wield, possess, 1669, 1736; Wild (Wilde), to possess, 939; (Wyld), 2949; Wild, *v.* wield, possess, 301; Wild (Welde), *v.* rule, possess, 3227; Wild (Wyld him), possess for himself, 1667; Wild, *ger.* to possess, 1669; Wildis, *pr. pl.* possess, 4481; Wildid (Weldit), *pt. s.* governed, 2303.
- Wild, *adj.* wild, 378, 557, 1250; (Wilde), 1153; (Wyld), 1540.
- Wild, *for* Will, *s.* will, desire, 4622. *Lat. text*—*uoluntas*.
- Wildare (Weldar), *s.* governor, ruler, 3166. See Wildire.
- Wild-hedid, *adj.* wild-headed, 12.
- Wildire (Welder), wielder, ruler, 1608. See Wildare.
- Wildirnes, *s.* wilderness, 3487, 4044.
- Wile, *s.* wile, guile, 416, 5233; Wiles, *pl.* 4365; (Wilez), 1764; (Willes), stratagems, 1363.
- Wilily (Willyly), *adv.* with guile, carefully, 1764.
- Will, *s.* wish, desire, 14, 386, 1718, 4604; will, 323; intention, 304; power, disposal, 3503; power to dispose of, 3123; (Wille), will, wish, desire, 680, 2013; (Wyll), 1973; Wille, will, resolution, 106; (Willes), *pl.* desires, 1890; At will, 939; To will, at his will, 301.
- Will, *pr. s.* desires, 636; will, 297, 301; (Wille), will, 1471; (Wyll), 1754; Will, 1 *pr. s.* 294; 2 *pr. pl.* 416, 446; Will 3e, if ye will, 212; Willis, *pr. s.* 2 *p.* willest, desirest, 4240; Willis, *pr. s.* wills, desires, 291, 3494.
- Will (Wille), *adj.* at a loss, 1272. So in Barbour. Icel. *villr*. See Willid.
- Willi (Willy), *adj.* willing, ready, disposed, 2689.
- Willid, *pt. pl.* strayed, 4132; Willid, *pp.* lost, bewildered, astray, 2984. Cf. Icel. *villr*, astray; see Will, *adj.*

- (Wilnet), *pt. s.* desired, 680; Will-ne, *imp. s.* inquire of, ask, 5036. A.S. *wilnian*.
- Wilnyng, *s.* desire, 1876.
- Wilson, *adj.* wild, waste, desolate (lit. wildsome), 4076, 5565.
- Winde (Wende), 1 *pr. s.* wend, go, 827. See Wend.
- Wing (Wynge), wing, portion, district, 1051; Wingis, *pl.* wings, 5523.
- Wintre (Wynter), *s.* winter, 2895; Wintir (Wynter), 2152; Wintir, *pl.* years, 4441; Wintire, years, 3556; Winter (Wynter), 692; Wintris, *gen.* winter's, 3959.
- Wird, *s.* fate, 443; Wirid, 2260; Wirdis, *pl.* weirds, destinies, fate, 41, 178, 4950; Wirdes, 2307, 2379. See Werd, Werid.
- Wirke, *v.* work, do, 937; *ger.* to do, 2013; to act, 160; (Werke), to do, 2949; (Wirche), to act, 3359; Wirke, *pr. pl.* 2 *p.* work, 3092; Wirkis (Wirkyd), *pr. pl.* work, 1412.
- Wirling (Wirlyng), *s.* dwarf, 1706; Wirlinges (Wyrlyngez), dwarfs, 1733. Sc. *wirl, wurl*, a dwarfish person; Jamieson.
- Wirschip, *s.* honour, 11, 616, 662, 5586; (Worschip), 723, 811, 1949, 2261; Wirschips, *pl.* honours, 3712.
- Wirschip (Worshipypis, *pr. pl.*), *pp.* worshipped, honoured, 1963.
- Wirschipfull, *adj.* worshipful, worthy, 243.
- Wirstill (Wrastyll), *v.* wrestle, 2276.
- Wis, *imp. s.* make known, declare, explain, 4997; (Wisscz), *pr. s.* instructs, guides, 793\*; Wissid (Wist), *pp.* made known, 689. A.S. *wissian*.
- Wisdom (Wisdom), wisdom, 898. (Wisely), *adv.* wisely, 765\*.
- Wist, *pt. s.* knew, 171, 937, 1189, 3080, 762\*; *pt. pl.* 159, 1148, 5465.
- Wit, *s.* wisdom, 662; (Witte), 1858. See Witt.
- Wite, *s.* blame; read Na wite, no blame, 477. A.S. *wite*.
- Wite, *v.* blame, 876. See above.
- Wite, *ger.* to depart, 3277; Wite, *v.* send, make to depart, 5032. A.S. *gewitan*, to depart. See Witis.
- Witerwarde, for Witherwarde, *adj.* adverse; þa witherwarde, those who are openly adverse, 4297.
- With, *prep.* with, 49, 64, 82, 83, 85; by, 2079, 2397, 2562, 3493, 3578, 4733, 5589; against, 3166, 3607; To saue with oure lyuys, to preserve our lives with, 4269; With þat, thereupon, 330, 3054; provided that, 343.
- With-draw, 1 *pr. s.* retreat, 2015; With-drewe, *pt. pl.* retreated, drew back, 5449.
- With-in, *adv.* within, 14, 1030; *prep.* 206, 211, 348; With-inen, *prep.* 251.
- With-out, *prep.* outside, 3919; (With-owte), 815\*; Without, without, 148.
- With-out, *adv.* outside, 1306; (With-owte), 1032.
- Withouten, *prep.* without, 118; (With-owtyn), 1103, 2196; besides, 3600; Withouten, *prep.* without, outside, 133, 335; (With-owte), 698; (With-out), beyond, 1209.
- Withouten (Withowte), *adv.* outside, 1389.
- With-sitt (Withsitte, *ger.*), *v.* oppose, 2410.
- With-stande, *v.* oppose, resist, 5624; (Withstonde), *ger.* 1738; With-stand (Wit-stande), *ger.* 2077; With-standis (Withstandyn), *pr. pl.* withstand, 1138; Withstand, 1443; With-stude (Withstondyn), *pt. pl.* withstood, 1405; (Withstonde), 1053; (Withstode), 1443; With-stude (With-stondyn), *pt. pl.* 1031.
- Witis, *pr. s.* departs, 5318. See Wite.
- Witles, *adj.* witless, unwise, 107.
- Witnes, *pr. s.* witnesses, shows, 916; (Wittnes), 1439, 2900; Wittnes, witnesses, 488; (Wittnesse), 1592.
- Witrely, *adv.* verily, 422. See Witter.

- Witt, *s.* wisdom, 3092; wit, knowledge, 45, 259, 898; mind, 489; fancy, 5531; Witt (Witte), wit, knowledge, 2689; reason, 1410; Wittis, *pl.* wits, senses, 2336, 2420; dispositions, 14; Man wittis, man's wits, 5552; Wittes, *pl.* understandings, 1890. See Wit.
- Witter, *adj.* knowing, 629. Icel. *vittr.* See *witer* in Stratmann.
- (Wittily), *adv.* wisely, 2245.
- Wijt (Wight), *adj.* strong, active, vigorous, 1014, 1798, 2206.
- Wijtis (Wightez), *pl.* wights, men, 3212.
- Wijtly, *adv.* nimbly, 651, 3040; vigorously, 2245; quickly, 120, 3774; (Wightly), quickly, 1030; bravely, 1298.
- Wlattis, *pr. pl.* disgust, 4277; Wlated, *pp.* disgusted, nauseated, more than satisfied, 5634.
- Wlonk, *adj.* proud, 5089. A.S. *wlanc.*
- Wod, *s.* wood, forest, 70, 2984, 3795; Wodd, 3906; (Wode), 776; Woddis, *pl.* woods, 4116, 4382, 4721, 5242.
- Wode (Wod), *s.* wood (of a spear-shaft), 798.
- Wode, *adj.* mad, 738, 1410, 5346; angry, 3167; (Wod), raging, 1168. A.S. *wód.*
- (Wode), *adv.* madly, 1189.
- Wodnes, *s.* madness, fury, 4400.
- Wodwose, *pl.* (though the form is *sing.*), satyrs, fauns, 1540. "Wode-wese, *uowyse*, woodwose, Siluanus, satirus;" Prompt. Parv.
- Wold (Wald), *pt. s.* would, 751.
- Wolfe, wolf, 2533; Wolfes, *pl.* 5242.
- Woll, *s.* wool, 4166; Wolle, 3957.
- Woman, woman, 348, 428.
- Wombe, *s.* womb, 755. See Wame.
- Won, *pp.* won, 454; reached, arrived, 4136, 5523; got, passed, 4196; (Wonne), 942; Wonn (Wonne), 818; Wonn (Wonnez, *wrongly*), *pp.* won, 1238.
- Won, *v.* live, dwell, 4044 (see note); *ger.* to dwell, 4310; Wons, *pr. s.* dwells, is, remains, 5565; Wones, *pr. s.* dwells, 3089; Wonand, *pres. part.* dwelling, 5475. And see Wont.
- Wond, *adj.* 5428. Read *woud*, i.e. mad, furious, highly excited. See Wode.
- Wonde (Wound), *ger.* to wound, 2212; Wondid, *pt. pl.* wounded, 3939; Wondid (Woundit); *pp.* wounded, 933; (Woundytt), 3131; (Woundett), 1277.
- Wonden (Woundit, i.e. wounded), *pp.* wound, involved in, 2811 (where we should insert *of* before *my* in the Ashmole text); Wondyn, *pp.* wound, wreathed; applied to a wreathed snow-drift, 1757.
- Wonder, wonder; *as adj.* strange, 811, 841.
- Wonder, *adv.* wonderfully, 629.
- Wondid, *pp.* wounded, 3150. (*But an error for wontid, pt. pl. wanted, lacked.*)
- Wonding, *s.* wounding, 4795.
- Wondire, *s.* wonder, 13, 549; (Wondre), 852, 1150, 1616; Wondre, 3917; Wonder, 514.
- Wondirfull, *adj.* wonderful, 416.
- Wondirly (Wondrely), *adv.* wonderfully, 1300; (Wonderly), 933; Wonderly, 898.
- Wondirs (Wonderys); Me wondirs, it is wonderful to me, 3119; Vs wondres, it is wonderful to us, 4033; Wondird (Wounderyd), *pp.* amazed, 2904.
- Wonn, *adj.* wan, pale, white, 1757.
- Wont, *pt. s.* dwelt, 134; Wont, *pt. pl.* dwelt, 4721; Wont, *pp.* wont, 725.
- Wonynge-stede, *s.* dwelling-place, 3734. Cf. Du. *woonstede*, a dwelling-place.
- Worche, *ger.* to work, perform, 313.
- Worde, *s.* word, tale, 243; fame, report, 37; (Word), 709; Out of worde, beyond word, beyond telling, 3099 [the Dublin MS. has *oute of warde*, beyond guard, past restraint]; Wordis, *pl.* words, 95, 167, 202, 287; (Wordes), 840; (Wordez), 984.
- Worde, *s.* world, 5131. See Werd.
- Wordly, *adj.* worldly, p. 279, l. 16.

- Worm, *s.* serpent, snake, 511;  
 Worme, 383; Wormes, *pl.* serpents, 4795, 5428; reptiles, 4198; worms, 5589.  
 (Worship), *s.* honour, 2248.  
 Worth, *v.* be, 691; become, 4228; come to pass, happen, 3080, 3552; Worth, *v.* get ready (lit. become), 2004; Worth, *v.* get up (lit. become), 2878; (Worth), come to pass, happen, 714, 3275; become, attain, 762\*; Worthe, *v.* be, 1834; become, 189, 4597; take place, happen, 119, 171, 341; (Worth), become, 1272, 1881; befall, 2255; Worthe, *ger.* to be, 1817; (Worth), to be, 2084; to become, to turn to, 3391; Worthis, *pr. s.* becomes, 383, 385, 468, 722; is, 4860; mounts, mounts up (lit. becomes), 2973; [*spelt* Worthes], 3613; Worthis, becomes, turns, 3254; goes, 3302; (Worthes), becomes, 2521; Worthis, *pr. s.* (*as fut.*) will happen, will come to pass, 4059; shall be, 477; Worthis (Worthez), happens, 1736; Worthis, *pr. s. impers.* it is, it needs, 4294; Worthis, 2 *pr. s.* becomest, Worthis thaim ouire, gettest the better of them, subduet them, 4297; Worthe, 2 *pr. pl.* (ye) become, 4452; (Worthen), are, 1034; (Worth), 2 *pr. s. subj.* mayst be (MS. *wroth*), 810\*; Worthe, become, 103; Worthe (Worth), *pr. s. subj.* happen, 1978; Worthe (Worthen), 1 *pr. pl. subj.* become, be, 2445; Worthid, *pt. s.* happened, occurred, 2310, 2317, 5531; became, 378; (Worth), *pt. s.* happened, 3090; Worthid, *pt. s. subj.* should come to pass, should be so, 3275; Worthe (Worthen), *pt. pl.* (or *pp.*) became, or become, 1443 [*the form worthen is a pp.*]; Worthe, *pp.* become, turned to, 4524; (Worthen), become, 722; Worthid, become, 591.  
 Worth, *v.* esteem worthy, 2124; Worthid, *pt. s.* 1 *p.* esteemed, 3090.  
 Worthe, *adj.* worthy, 302, 3426; (Worth), worth, 2830; (Worthi), worthy, 755; (Worthy), 2287; Worthi, worthy, deserving, 3436; (Worthy), 1798, 2078, 765\*.  
 Worthili, *adv.* worthily, 1405; (Worthyly), highly, 2150.  
 Worthines, *s.* worthiness, 662; highness, 3163; (Worthynes), 1938; worship, 2684; Worthenes (Worthiness), worthiness, 1825.  
 Worthist (Worthiest), *adj. superl.* worthiest, 1608.  
 Worthly, *adv.* worthily, 1428.  
 Worjt (Wroght), *pp.* wrought, caused, 3264.  
 Wose, *s.* juice, 413. A.S. *wós*.  
 Woud, *adj.* mad, furious, excited, 5428. See Wode.  
 Wounde (Wound), *s.* wound, 1411; Woundis (Woundez), *pl.* wounds, 1331.  
 (Woundes), *pr. s.* wounds, 1214; Woundid, *pt. s.* wounded, 1214; Woundid (Woundit), *pt. pl.* wounded, 3200; Woundid (Wounden, *pr. pl.*), 1396; Woundid (Woundett), *pp.* 2086.  
 Woundird (Wonderytt), *pp.* amazed, struck with wonder, 2856.  
 Woydis (Woydez), *pr. s.* puts away, dismisses, 879; (Woydez), *imp. pl.* quit, leave, 2469. See Voyde.  
 Woze (Wogh), injury, wrong, harm, 2812. A.S. *wóh*.  
 Wozes, *pl.* walls, 3300. A.S. *wáh*.  
 Wraa, *s.* corner, retired spot, 4190; Wra (Wray), corner, 1585. Icel. *rá*, Dan. *vraa*.  
 Wraiste, *adj.* perverse, variable, 4622.  
 Wrake, *s.* vengeance, 1412; Wrak, 2721. A.S. *wracu*.  
 Wrangle, *s.* wrong, 2812.  
 Wrate, 1 *pt. s.* wrote, 2431; (Wrote), 3163; Wrate (Wrote), *pt. s.* 1825; Wrate, *pt. pl.* wrote, 203.  
 Wrath, *adj.* angry, wroth, 738, 841, 2245; Wrathe, 3589.  
 Wrath, *s.* fit of anger, 2310.  
 Wrathfull, *adj.* wrathful, 3167.  
 Wrawid, *pp.* angry, peevish, 3167. See *Wrah* in Stratmann.  
 Wreke, *v.* avenge, wreak, 3199; Wrekis (Wrekes), *pr. s.* avenges,

- 855; Wrekis (Wrekas), *pr. pl.* avenge, 1410.  
 Wrengis, *pr. s.* wrings, 339.  
 Wrenkis, *pl.* tricks, 4365. A.S. *wrenc.*  
 Wrestild (Wrystyllyd), *pp.* wrestled, 784.  
 Wreten, *pp.* written, 643; (Written), 1600, 1637; (Wrytten), 1845.  
 Wreth, *s.* wrath, 855, 865.  
 Wrethen, *pp.* writhen, coiled up, 5526.  
 Wricchidnes, *s.* wretchedness, misery, 4589.  
 Wriche, *s.* wretch, 3075, 4059; Wriches, *pl.* wretches, 4005, 4564; Wricchis, 4597; (Wrechez), 1733.  
 Wristilling (Wristylyng), *s.* wrestling, 2260.  
 Write, 1 *pr. s.* write, 2009; (Writtez), 1 *pr. pl.* 127.  
 Writh, *s.* wrath, ire, 4389, 4847, 5326; Writhe, 4153.  
 Writhing, *s.* angering; For writhing, for fear of angering, 5036.  
 Writhis, *pr. s. impers.* it makes (you) angry, 4639 (see the note, p. 312); Writhis, *pr. s.* becomes wrath, 2593; *refl.* 1189; Writhis (Wrathen), *pr. pl.* become angry, 1409.  
 Writt, *s.* writing, 24; original text, 608, 709; (Writte), 1376; Writte, writing, 2152; (Writte), letter, 2022; Write, letter, 5102; Writ (Writte), writing, 2316; Writtis, *pl.* writings, letters, 3735, 4233; (Writtis), 881, 2112, 2695.  
 Wrigtis, *pl.* wrights, workmen, 4205.  
 (Wroght), *pp.* made, 1149. See Wrojt.  
 (Wroght), *for* Wrath, angry, 2245.  
 Wroken, *pp.* banished, driven, limited, 4428.  
 (Wroth), *adj.* wroth, angry, 1189.  
 Wrothe, *s.* wrath, 2077.  
 (Wrothed), *pt. s.* became angry, 2593.  
 Wrothir-haile, destruction, calamity, 1759. (Usually *wrotherhele.*)  
 Wrojt, *pt. s.* wrought, 416; (Wroght), 2 *p.* wroughtest, 869; Wrojt, *pt. pl.* did, 2330; (Wroght), 2 *pt. pl. subj.* should do, 2204; Wrojt, *pp.* wrought, 386, 422; (Wroght), 1290, 1540.  
 (Wrychednes), *s.* wretchedness, misery, 3277.  
 (Wy), man, 727\*, 762\*, 782\*; (Wyes), *pl.* 809\*. See We.  
 Wyde, *adj.* wide, 571, 1324.  
 Wyfe. *s.* woman, 390; wife, 587, 828, 5178. See Wife.  
 (Wykydly), *adv.* severely, 1214.  
 (Wylde), *s.* dominion, 1608. Lit. *wielding.*  
 Wyll, *s.* wish, 782\*.  
 Wyn, *v.* win, conquer, 519; win (to), reach, attain, 4697; (Wynne), win, 1629, 2302; (Wynne), get, go, 1440; Wynn, win, conquer, 449; Wyn (Wynne), *ger.* to win, 1892; to make their way, 1148, 1156; Wynn (Wyn), to win, 2248; Wynnes, *pr. s.* goes, advances, 1428; (Wynnez), wins, conquers, 1037, 2278; Wynnys, *pr. s.* wins, 648; conquers, 5611; Wynes, *pr. s.* comes, 5530; Wynnes him vp, *pr. s.* snatches up, 828; Wynnes, *pr. pl.* get; Wynnes away, get away, get off, 3622; Wynnes (gow vp), *imp. pl.* get up, rise up, 541.  
 Wynd, *s.* wind, 557, 1757; Wynde, 4159; Wyndis, *pl.* 4143.  
 Wynde (Weynde), *v.* go, return, 1835; Wynde, *ger.* to scale, climb, ascend zigzag, 4878; Wynd (Wende), *pr. s.* 1 *p.* depart, 2014; Wyndis, *pr. s.* wends, 3325; (Wendes), goes, 2150, 2177, 2189, 2487, 2971; Wyndis, *pr. pl.* turn, go, 3631, 3741; (Wenden), 2453; Wynde (Wende), 2 *pr. s. subj.* depart, return, 2915.  
 Wyndles, *adj.* breathless, 1271.  
 Wyndou (Wyndow), window, 945; (Wyndow), 769\*.  
 Wyne (Wynne), *s.* wine, 1350; Wynes, *pl.* wines, 3350, 4303, 4436.  
 Wynes, *pl.* vines, 3667.  
 Wyngis (Wengez), *pl.* wings, 1769, 2709.  
 Wynly, *adv.* quickly, readily, 5545.  
 Ray gives "*winly*, quietly"; but I suspect it rather means 'can- nily,' i.e. quickly, but without



- fuss; in the Troy-book, it means 'readily, quickly' in l. 1165, and 'readily, easily' in l. 8655. From the verb *win*, to get, come by. Quite distinct from *winly* = pleasantly.
- Wynter, *pl.* winters, years, 634, 646, 719, 920; (Wyntre), 1005; Wynthir (Wynter, 1677.
- Wyothy, *a city*, 2150.
- Wyrkys, 2 *pr. pl.* work, 2425.
- Wyse, *adj.* wise, 11, 41, 629; (Wise), 725; Wyse man, *gen.* sage's, 2124.
- Wyse, *s.* wise, manner, way, 13, 230, 2263; guise, 2863; be same wyse, in the same way, 3352.
- Wysest, *adj. superl.* wisest, 24; Wisest, 247.
- (Wysez), *pr. s. refl.* considers, 751. For Vysez = Avises.
- Wysid (Wysett), *pp.* sent off, directed (to go), 2064. A.S. *wisian*.
- Wyssis (Vysys), *pr. s.* shows, 2988.
- (Wyssyng), *s.* instruction, 3256.
- Wyst, *pt. s.* knew, 509.
- Wysti (Wistus), *adj.* (perhaps) desolate, deserted, 1757. See *wysty* in Sir Gawain and the Grene Knight, 2189, where it is an *adj.*, not a *sb.* Cf. M.E. *westi*.
- (Wyth), *prep.* with, 1202.
- Wyues (Wifes), *pl.* wives, 1558.
- Ydill; In ydille, in vain, 3975.
- Ydolatry, idolatry, 4459; Ydolatris, *pl.* 4261.
- Ydres, *pl.* hydras, water-snakes, 4089.
- (Ye), ye, 986.
- Yeldis (geldes), *pr. s.* gives up (to), 2951.
- Yeuen, *pp.* given, 1713.
- (Yf), *conj.* if, 951, 1097, 2164; (Yff), 1850. See *If*.
- (Yhe), ye, 682, 683, 1034. See *ye*.
- Yles (Ylez), *pl.* isles, 1027; (Ylez), 1039. See *Ile*.
- Ymage, image, likeness, 191, 1126, 3362; Ymagis (Ymagez), *pl.* images, 1564.
- Ynde, India, 3160, 3183, 3484, 4102; (Inde), 1523, 2797; Yndee, 5663.
- Ynde, Indian, 5012.
- Yndis, *pl.* Indians, 3639; Yndes, 3617.
- Yndoyes, the Indian language, 5009; Yndoys, 5072.
- (Yoke), *s.* yoke, 818\*.
- Yone, *pron.* that man, 1634.
- (You), *dat. pl.* you, 1013.
- (Your), your, 987; (Yowr), 1825.
- (Yren), iron, 746\*, 756\*, 1081. See *Iren*.
- Yse, *s.* ice, 2883.
- (Ysyd), *pp.* iced, frozen, 2883.
- Yssanna, name of an island, 2106.
- Ytaile (Itale), Italy, 1027.
- Ythes, *pl.* waters, waves, 1039. See *Ithis*.
- Yynde (Inde), India, 2799.
- 3a, *adv.* yea, 354, 541, 889, 1822, 1834, 2142, 5353. See *zha*.
- 3acora, *a nun*, Zacora, 2179.
- 3ald (zolde), *pt. pl.* yielded, surrendered, 1140; (Yeld), 2147.
- 3alow, *adj.* yellow, 607.
- 3ape, *adj.* vigorous, strong, 3304; (3ope), keen, bold, 2201. A.S. *geap*.
- 3apely, *adv.* readily, 2406; eagerly, boldly, quickly, 80, 114, 2107, 2909, 4866; (3opely), vigorously, 1393; 3apeli, 761.
- 3apest, *adj. superl.* most active, most eager, 818\*.
- 3are, *adv.* readily, 607; quickly, early, 1107. A.S. *gearo*.
- 3are, *adv.* yore, long ago, 1008.
- 3arely, *adv.* promptly, 1035; (3arle), speedily, 1140; (3arly), quickly, readily, 818\*, 1382.
- 3aris, *pr. s. refl.* prepares himself, 4866; 3are þe, *imp. s.* prepare thyself, 80, 2909.
- 3arkid, *pt. s.* prepared, 114; 3arkid to (3arken to), shut to, fastened, 2449; 3arkid, *pp.* prepared, 4894. A.S. *gearcian*.
- 3armand, *pres part.* yelling, bellowing, 4745. See *3arme* in Halliwell, p. 951. Cf. Icel. *farmr*, a bleating, crying; W. *garmio*, to shout.
- (3ate), *s.* gate, 783\*; 3atis, *pl.* gates, 496, 3209, 3705, 4892; (3ates), 768, 1080, 762\*.
- 3e, *pron.* ye, 21, 212, 268, &c.; (Ye), 1802; (Yhe), 1801, 1866, 1893.
- 3e (for þe), the, 3055.
- 3edire, *adj.* vehement, 5042. Cf.

- Icel. *geð*, Norweg. *gjed*, mood, mind, humour; whence Norweg. *gjedad*, bold. See Allit. Poems.  
 3ee, *pron.* ye, 2120, 4433. See 3e.  
 3efes (Yevez), *imp. pl.* 2 p. give ye, 1035.  
 3eld, *v.* give, 3126; (3elde), 1808; 3eld, *ger.* to yield, pay, 892; to yield, 1276; to give, 1891; (3elde), 1968; (Yelde), 924; 3elde, *ger.* to give (battle), deliver (battle), 137, 830\*; 3eld (Yeld), 1 *pr. s.* give, 863; 3eld (3elde), *pr. s. subj.* should give up, 2313; 3eldis, *pr. s.* yields up, 4286; (3eldez), yields, 971; gives, 1184; 3eldis (3elden), *pr. pl.* yield up (themselves), 2792; (3eldyn), give, 1388; 3eldis, *pr. pl.* (golden, *pt. pl.*), surrender, 2232; 3eld, *pt. s.* gave, 751; 3eld him, *imp. s.* let him yield himself, 3124; 3eld, *imp. pl.* yield, 1035.  
 3eme, *ger.* to take care of, 4505; 3emed, 1 *pt. s.* governed, 3304; 3emyd, *pt. s.* kept, had charge of, 1233. A.S. *gýman*.  
 Zephall, Zephir, 3800.  
 3erand, *pres. part.* screaming, chattering, 4745. A.S. *georran*, to chatter, sound, creak. See 3erre.  
 3erde, *s.* rod of office, sceptre, 813; yard (measure), 4750; sceptre, wand or emblem of office, 1035; 3erd, wand, 114.  
 3ere, *s.* year, 288; *pl.* years, 633, 649; 3eris, *pl.* years, 654; (3eres), 1008; (Yherez), 1107; 3eris, 316; 3erys, 251.  
 3erely (3erly), *adj.* yearly, 2406.  
 3erne, *adv.* earnestly, 457; bitterly, 667; greatly, 1265; (3arne), eagerly, 1315, 1700. A.S. *georne*.  
 3erne (3arne), *pr. s.* 1 p. yearn, desire, 3124.  
 3erre, *s.* outcry, loud lament, 5042. See 3erand.  
 3et, *conj.* yet, nevertheless, 565, 1140, 3742, 4628; (3ett), 919. See 3it.  
 3eten, *pp.* gotten, obtained, attained, 1107.  
 3ettes, *pr. s.* flows, gushes, 3233; 3ett, *pt. pl.* burst (out), lit. poured (out), 5042; 3eten, *pp.* molten, cast, 607, 4894. A.S. *géotan*.  
 3eunyn (3efen), *pp.* given, 2107. (3ha), yea, 724\*. See 3a.  
 (3heldez), *pr. s.* yields, gives up, 726\*; gives, 751.  
 3iff him, *imp.* let him give himself, 3124.  
 3ildis, *pr. s.* 2 p. givest, deliverest, 5192; 3ildis (3eldyn), *pr. pl.* repay, 1393; 3ild, *pr. s. subj.* may yield, 3187; 3ild vp, *imp. s.* yield up, 80. See 3eld.  
 3is, *adv.* yes, 2079.  
 3it, *adv.* again, still, 3163; yet, nevertheless, moreover, 51, 185, 233, &c.; (3itte), 815\*. See 3et.  
 3ode, *pt. s.* went, 1140; 3ode him (hym), *pt. s.* went, 761; 3ode, *pt. pl.* went, 1123, 1256, 3208; (3odez), *pt. pl. subj.* should go, 822\* (where read 3ode).  
 3oke, *s.* yoke, 3124; 3okke, 2909.  
 3olden (3elden), *pt. pl.* yielded, 2326; 3olden, *pp.* yielded, given up, delivered up, surrendered, 1328, 1358, 1449, 1614, 2378, 3981; paid, 4531; 3olden (Yolden), *pp.* yielded, 813, 2107; (3holden), 1899; repaid, 967; (3oldyn), 2104; 3old, 3504. See 3eld.  
 3onder (Yonder), *adj.* yonder, 1090.  
 3onder, *adv.* yonder, 702, 705; 3ondire (3ond), 1637; (Yonder), 1093.  
 3one, *adj.* yonder, yon, that, 498, 1093, 4993. See Yone.  
 3onge, *adj.* young, 185, 594; 3ong (Yong), 761, 794.  
 3onger, *adj. comp.* younger, 1014; 3ongire (Yonger), 1474; 3ongir (Yonger), 1619.  
 3ope; see 3ape.  
 3oskinges, *pl.* sobbings, sobs, 5042. A.S. *giscian*, to sob; prov. E. *yex*.  
 3oten, *s.* giant, 4745. A.S. *eoten*.  
 3oure (Your), *pron.* your, 1680, 1866, 2161; 3our, 21, 168, &c.  
 3our-selfe (Your-seluen), yourselves, 1867, 2205; 3our-self, 301.  
 3outhe (Youth), *s.* youth, 1008, 1107; 3outh, 316.  
 3ow, *pron.* you, 15, 172, 186, &c.; (You), *dat.* 987; 3owe, 361, 1823, 1845.  
 3ustirday, yesterday, 3304.  
 3ymmes (Gemmys), *pl.* gems, 2935.





**RETURN  
TO →**

**CIRCULATION DEPARTMENT**

Main Library • 198 Main Stacks

LOAN PERIOD 1 <b>HOME USE</b>	2	3
4	5	6

**ALL BOOKS MAY BE RECALLED AFTER 7 DAYS.**

Renews and Recharges may be made 4 days prior to the due date.

Books may be Renewed by calling 642-3405.

**DUE AS STAMPED BELOW**


GENERAL LIBRARY - U.C. BERKELEY



8000809825

